

*Compact Anthology of*

# WORLD LITERATURE

## PART TWO

The Middle Ages

Editor-in-Chief:  
**LAURA GETTY, PhD**

Co-Editor:  
**KYOUNGHEE KWON, PhD**





*Compact Anthology of World Literature* is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-Share-Alike 3.0 United States License.

This license allows you to remix, tweak, and build upon this work, even commercially, as long as you credit this original source for the creation and license the new creation under identical terms.

If you reuse this content elsewhere, in order to comply with the attribution requirements of the license please attribute the original source to the University System of Georgia.

NOTE: Permission was granted by rightsholders, or the texts were used in accordance to their respective licenses. Please refer to the licensing information provided for these resources.

Image Disclaimer: All images and figures in this book are believed to be (after a reasonable investigation) either public domain or carry a compatible Creative Commons license. If you are the copyright owner of images in this book and you have not authorized the use of your work under these terms, please contact the University Press of North Georgia at [upng@northgeorgia.edu](mailto:upng@northgeorgia.edu) to have the content removed.

ISBN: 978-1-940771-22-9

This title is a product of a Complete College Georgia grant.

Produced by:  
University System of Georgia

Published by:  
University of North Georgia Press  
Dahlonega, Georgia

Cover Design and Layout Design:  
Corey Parson

For more information, please visit <http://ung.edu/university-press>  
Or email [ungpress@ung.edu](mailto:ungpress@ung.edu)



If you need this document in another format, please email the University of North Georgia Press at [ungpress@ung.edu](mailto:ungpress@ung.edu) or call 706-864-1556.

# Table of Contents

|                                                 |            |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>CHAPTER 5: EUROPE</b>                        | <b>1</b>   |
| The Parliament of Birds                         | 2          |
| The Canterbury Tales                            | 2          |
| The Decameron                                   | 37         |
| The Divine Comedy                               | 52         |
| The Lais of Marie de France                     | 198        |
| Lancelot, the Knight of the Cart                | 207        |
| The Song of the Cid                             | 246        |
| The Travels of Marco Polo                       | 277        |
| <b>CHAPTER 6: MIDDLE EAST</b>                   | <b>313</b> |
| The Rose Garden (Golestan OR Gulistan) of Sa'di | 314        |
| The Quran                                       | 319        |
| Divani Shamsi Tabriz and Masnavi                | 344        |
| Shahnameh                                       | 348        |
| The Thousand and One Nights                     | 398        |
| <b>CHAPTER 7: CHINA</b>                         | <b>419</b> |
| Li Bo, Selected Poems                           | 420        |
| The Romance of the Three Kingdoms               | 424        |
| <b>CHAPTER 8: JAPAN</b>                         | <b>491</b> |
| Atsumori                                        | 492        |
| The Tale of Genji                               | 513        |
| <b>CHAPTER 9: SOUTH ASIA</b>                    | <b>569</b> |
| Tukaram, Selected Poems                         | 570        |
| <b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>                             | <b>593</b> |
| <b>APPENDIX</b>                                 | <b>596</b> |

# Acknowledgements

This anthology is the product of a Complete College Georgia grant, and I would like to thank the Board of Regents of the University System of Georgia for making this project possible. Many individuals at the University Press of North Georgia worked long hours on various aspects of the anthology, and I appreciate their time and effort; in particular, I would like to thank Corey Parson, managing editor, for her professionalism and support during this long process. Terri E. Bell, senior library assistant/ copyright compliance at UNG-Dahlonega, had the vital job of checking copyrights and researching the public domain content for this open access project, and I am grateful for her hard work and dedication.

*Written by Editor-in-Chief Laura J. Getty, Ph.D.*

A large part of my portion of this textbook came to fruition while time-traveling with my World Literature I students to familiar and unfamiliar places in the Ancient, Middle Ages, and Renaissance periods. I am first grateful for those students' participation and insights, and I give special thanks to Dr. Joyce Stavick, head of the English Department at UNG, who kindly arranged for me to teach those classes during the time of my writing. This textbook could not have been made possible without our past, present, and future students who are willing to take the journey to different parts of the world in different times.

Important acknowledgments go to the Complete College Georgia Grant that critically funded this project. I also express my sincere gratitude to Dr. B. J. Robinson, director of the university press, for her thoughtful leadership, Dr. Deborah Prosser, dean of libraries, for providing helpful feedback, and Terri E. Bell, senior library assistant, for her extensive work on public domain research and copyright compliance, as well as to the anonymous peer-reviewers. My gratitude also goes to Dr. Laura Getty, editor-in-chief, with her seasoned teaching experience and broad knowledge. I am also grateful to Corey Parson, managing editor, Amy Beard, assistant managing editor, and Matthew Pardue, project editor, for their tireless work. Last but not least, I thank my family for their support and understanding during the time I spent on this project.

Despite multiple examinations of this textbook, there may be errors and areas of improvement. Fortunately, this online textbook can be periodically updated. I hope that this textbook will be of good use to students and teachers alike.

*Written by Co-editor Kyounghye Kwon, Ph.D.*

# Introduction

---

Reading about any culture foreign to one's own tends to create a form of culture shock in the reader. In a world literature class, students frequently face texts that are completely unfamiliar to them, and the typical culture shock reactions set in. We tend not to like things that we do not understand, in part because we do not like the feeling of not knowing something. I have had students complain that they did not "like" a story before we discussed it in class, and then the same students decide after the class discussion that they now like it. Again, understanding and liking go hand in hand. Give the literature a chance; something that might not make sense at first may end up being one of your favorite stories after finding a way to approach it.

That being said, whether students like a story is not the point of reading that text in a literature class. We read literature in these classes to learn something. It is a nice addition to the experience if students like the works, but we can read and analyze texts that we do not enjoy just as effectively as the ones we do: In some cases, it is actually easier. Critical thinking comes from taking something that is unfamiliar, breaking it down into manageable chunks of information, fitting it back together, and using the experience to replicate the process in other situations in the future.

A literature class is, of course, a perfect place to learn critical thinking skills. When interpreting a text, pretend that you are a lawyer in a courtroom arguing a case. Not all cases have smoking guns; most are won or lost on circumstantial evidence alone. The interpretation needs to be based primarily on evidence from the text; therefore, there can be more than one possible approach, but some interpretations can be wrong if there is no support in the text for the generalizations that the student uses. Evidence is the key; based on what the text tells us, what do we actually know? Expert opinions (secondary sources) may help, but remember that both sides in a court case usually can call some expert who will agree with them. Authorial intention is not entirely out of bounds in such an argument, but it operates on the same principles: What can we actually argue, based on the evidence? For instance, any knowledge of Hemingway's personal history makes it unlikely that the story "Soldier's Home" could be interpreted as unsupportive of soldiers. Alternately, there are cases when the author's life is of little or no help. Faulkner refused to tell an interviewer what the meaning of "A Rose for Emily" was, preferring perhaps that the reader not be limited by a simple (or simplistic) explanation of meaning.

In every interpretation, remember to distinguish between the views of the original audience and the views of the modern reader. While a text may remind students about their grandfathers, that association does not often help when interpreting a story written by someone years ago who did not know their grandfather. (It may, of course, help students interpret their interpretations, but, except for the very best reader response theorists out there, that approach is more commonly found in a different field of study.) If the story is about a grandfather in ancient Greece, the comparison with their grandfather would be most useful if it helped focus them on what the characters in that time period in Greek society thought about grandfathers (or treated them, or talked to them, etc.) back then that is similar to or different from modern expectations. In other words, what does the work tell us about the expectations of the original audience? Without at least a solid guess about what the original audience thought about the work, it is impossible to discuss whether the author is writing something that conforms to society's expectations or argues against them, let alone what the original audience was expected to learn from the story, or how it expected to be entertained.

The expectations of the audience bring us full circle to the issue of culture shock once again. Students in U.S. universities often feel more comfortable with American or British literature, since the K-12 school system in the U.S. usually emphasizes those works. Even if some students have not lived through the 1960s in the U.S., there is still a sense of familiarity to students raised in the U.S., although they might not understand as much of the deeper social context as they think they do. A world literature class may be the first place that some students have encountered European works, let alone non-Western texts. The emphasis in this anthology, therefore, is on non-Western and European works, with only the British authors who were the most influential to European and non-Western authors (such as Shakespeare, whose works have influenced authors around the world to the present day). In a world literature class, there is no way that a student can be equally familiar with all of the societies, contexts, time periods, cultures, religions, and languages that they will encounter; even though the works presented here are translated,

students will face issues such as unfamiliar names and parts of the story (such as puns) that may not translate well or at all. Since these stories are rooted in their cultures and time periods, it is necessary to know the basic context of each work to understand the expectations of the original audience. The introductions in this anthology are meant to be just that: a basic overview of what students need to know before they begin reading, with topics that students can research further. An open access literature textbook cannot be a history book at the same time, but history is the great companion of literature: The more history students know, the easier it is for them to interpret literature.

These works can help students understand the present, as well. In an electronic age, with this text available to anyone with computer access around the world, it has never been more necessary to recognize and understand differences among nationalities and cultures. The literature in this anthology is foundational, in the sense that these works influenced the authors who followed them. For Western literature, it is necessary to know something about the Trojan War (and the Trojan Horse) to understand everything from literary references to them (for almost three thousand or so years) to why a computer virus would be named a “Trojan Horse” because of what it does. In India, the characters in the *Mahabharata* and the *Ramayana* still show up in regular conversations, and it would be impossible to read modern Indian literature without a basic knowledge of these texts, which are referenced frequently. Chinese literature is infused with Confucian concepts, which influenced Chinese culture for thousands of years. These are just a few of the examples of why these texts are important to this day, and the introductions will explain the influence of each work.

A word to the instructor: The texts have been chosen with the idea that they can be compared and contrasted, using common themes. Rather than numerous (and therefore often random) choices of texts from various periods, these selected works are meant to make both teaching and learning easier. Students often learn better when there is a theme or a set of themes that they can use to make sense of the stories. For example, the differences among cultures and time periods in the definition of a hero are found throughout the anthology. As the time periods progress, the type of hero changes as well: warriors in the ancient world, knights and samurai in the medieval period, and soldiers in works set in the Renaissance. Many of the works examine the role of women in society, and each time period contains numerous works of social commentary. There are epics across world literature to compare, belief systems from the Greek pantheon of gods to Native American origin stories, and philosophical questions about ethical and moral behavior.

It is by comparing similar topics and themes that students are most easily able to see the significant differences in the cultures. If I ask students to discuss a work such as the *Analects* of Confucius, they often do not know where to begin or what to say. If I ask students to suggest what would happen if Gilgamesh were dropped into the environment of the *Analects*, they immediately see the problems: Gilgamesh is not a “gentleman” by Confucian standards, nor does he have the temperament to attract gentlemen retainers, who would expect courteous and proper behavior from him.

While cultural expectations are not universal, many of the themes found in these works are. Human beings have always cared about friendship, love, and finding their place in the world; we still read and watch stories of heroic journeys, bravery in its many forms, family relationships (good and bad), and the triumphs and tragedies of people who are not so different from ourselves.

As an example, the following assignment is one possible way to compare the texts in the Ancient World section.

Culture Shock Essay: take a character such as Achilles and place him in a story with a culture that would be completely foreign to him (such as the *Mahabharata*). How would he react to the people around him, and what would they think about him/his behavior? This topic could be mixed and matched: Hector in *Gilgamesh*, Arjuna in the *Aeneid*, Aeneas in the *Art of War*, etc.

Again, by asking the students to compare cultures, it is easier for them to identify differences. Obviously, a similar type of essay would work in the medieval period and the Renaissance, and Ancient World texts could be compared to medieval or Renaissance texts as the term progresses.

A note about calendar systems: The anthology uses B.C.E. (Before Common Era) and C.E. (Common Era). As a world literature text, it seeks to be as inclusive as possible of belief systems around the world. Of course, the numbering system used comes from the Christian calendar’s B.C. (Before Christ) and A.D. (Anno Domini—in the year of our Lord); basically, Christianity is the determiner of what is Common Era and before. Since there needs to be a way of comparing time periods across these cultures, and today’s world uses the numbering system that stems from the Christian calendar, it is the system used throughout. It would be too unwieldy to use all of the relevant calendar systems, although it is worth noting to students that they exist. For instance, 2015 C.E. is the year 5776 in the Hebrew calendar, the year 4713 in the Chinese calendar, and 1436 in the Islamic calendar. For Hinduism, the current Epoch of this cycle of the universe (which is destroyed and remade numerous times) started in 3012 B.C.E., and the current Era in that Epoch started in 78 C.E. Obviously, it would be both difficult and confusing to employ more than one system.



# PART TWO

## The Middle Ages



The term “Middle Ages” is primarily a Western construct: It is the middle because it comes between the European Ancient World and the European Renaissance (also a Western construct, since it means the *re-naissance*, or rebirth, of ancient Greek and Roman ideals and literature). The European Renaissance was self-named by writers of that time (a fact that will be discussed in greater depth in the Renaissance section of this anthology), and they labeled everything that came between them and the Ancient Greeks and Romans as “the Middle Ages.” Renaissance writers in Europe had a vested interest in portraying that time period as somehow lesser than their own; as the readings in this section will demonstrate, there is nothing lesser about the works in this time period.

Some parts of the world have middle periods in their literature, but not with the same connotations as the European term. In China, for example, the Middle Period is considered the Golden Age of poetry, although the “middle” in this case means the middle of the dynastic period, which starts in 221 B.C.E. and ends in 1911 C.E. To the extent that the term itself means anything on a worldwide stage, it is used here to compare time periods in a chronological manner. Readers can see what is happening in literature in roughly the same times around the world.

In Japan, the Heian period (794-1185 C.E.) saw the flowering of Japanese literature. In the Japanese Imperial Court, men were expected to learn Chinese; aristocratic women, who were expected to write poetry and take part in the culture of the court, began writing in Japanese. The first novel in world literature dates to about 1000 C.E. and was written by Lady Murasaki Shikibu.

In China, Li Bo wrote some of the best poems of the Golden Age of poetry, while in the Middle East Jalal al-din Rumi wrote Persian poetry that is admired on a worldwide stage to this day. In Korea, *sijo* poetry flourished and continued to be a vibrant poetic form to the present.

Epics remained important in the medieval period, although in altered form. Dante wrote his *Divine Comedy* as Christian epic, playing on previous epic conventions. Ferdowsi’s *Shahname* includes an epic section, as well as mythological, heroic, and historical material. In many cases, epic literature was evolving into heroic literature. Previously, although scholars now believe that the Trojan War did happen, the events in the *Iliad* were the stuff of speculation, rather than history. In medieval times, both the Chinese *Romance of the Three Kingdoms* and the Spanish *Song of the Cid* were based on historical events in recorded history. The characters in the *Romance* and the *Cid* are based on historical figures; they are the strongest, the smartest, and the best that humans can be, but they are nonetheless humans, without the supernatural characteristics of ancient world epic heroes.

In Europe, social commentaries and the role of women took on particular prominence in this time period. Both Dante’s and Chaucer’s works showcase those themes dramatically and insightfully. Marie de France and Boccaccio examine the workings of courtly love, often to comic effect, as does Chrétien de Troyes in a more serious tone.

#### **FOR STUDENTS:**

The works in this section are meant to be compared and contrasted. Consider the following questions while reading:

- What is the definition of a hero for each society, and why? How do the heroes in *The Romance of the Three Kingdoms* compare to the heroes in the *Shahname* and the *Song of the Cid*? How are they similar to or different from earlier epic heroes?
- What is the definition of a leader for each society, and why? How is it/isn’t it different from the definition of a hero? How is leadership in the *Golestan* different from leadership in *The Romance of the Three Kingdoms*?
- What role does romantic love play in the medieval period? How are the romantic relationships in the works of Chaucer, Boccaccio, and Marie de France different from the romantic relationships in the *Shahname* and the *Tale of Genji*?

The texts also can be compared and contrasted with earlier time periods:

- In what ways have the depictions of women changed from the ancient world to the medieval period?
- How is an ancient world warrior different from and similar to a medieval knight?
- How has the role of religion in these societies changed, especially where pantheons of gods have been replaced by monotheism in its various forms?
- How do Li Bo’s poems continue and develop themes in earlier Chinese poetry? How are they similar to and different from the Korean *sijo* in this section?

# 5

## Europe

---

As mentioned in the introduction to Part Two, both the terms “the Middle Ages” and “the Renaissance” are specifically European constructs. The European Renaissance was self-named, with writers in that time period identifying themselves as the “re-birth” (or re-naissance) of classical Greek and Roman ideals and literature. Everything between the classical world and their time period was referred to as the “middle”—or Middle Ages. The term, therefore, should be taken with a grain of salt; obviously, to promote themselves, Renaissance writers were often harsh in their criticism of their immediate predecessors, as most new literary periods are to the previous literary period. To this day, popular culture in the West still has traces of the negative Renaissance attitude towards anything “medieval.” European authors such as Dante would have been quite surprised (and indignant) to hear that he was part of a time period that supposedly was lesser than what followed. Since Dante’s Divine Comedy ranks among the best of world literature to this day, he would be justified in feeling that way.

In chronological terms, the Middle Ages in Europe traditionally are dated from the fall of Rome in 476 C.E. to the arrival of Columbus in North America in 1492 C.E. These dates are not exact, but they at least give us the general magnitude of the time period: roughly a thousand years. Within that stretch of time, scholars usually break the time into early, middle, and late periods of literature.

The selections in this chapter focus on the transformation of a hero and the role of courtly love in aristocratic culture. There are still epic heroes, but now they are often knights (with different sets of concerns from ancient world warriors); in Dante, he takes the previous epic form even further by creating a Christian epic, with a hero who does not need to be a knight (or even all that brave, as long as he has divine help). There is a debate about whether courtly love ever existed outside of literature (or whether it actually inspired knights and ladies to act the way that they did in the stories), but the concept of courtly love drives many medieval stories. Historically, in aristocratic circles, marriage was almost exclusively a business transaction between families; your average knight might not have much chance of marrying the woman he loved, but (courtly love suggests) he might try to get her attention by performing brave deeds. In the most proper scenarios, he would serve her from afar, never expecting a reward for his attentions. It is that kind of courtly love that Cervantes would satirize during the Renaissance in *Don Quixote*. In more risqué scenarios, the knight might try to convince the (often married) lady to return his affections. Stories in the works of Chrétien de Troyes and Boccaccio play with that theme to both comic and dramatic effect. In the selections found here from Chaucer’s works, Chaucer makes it clear that he finds the whole concept of courtly love questionable (especially from the woman’s point of view) and sometimes outright objectionable. Dante distances himself from his own background as a love poet, turning from earthly love to spiritual love in his writings; the lady he loves from afar (and with whom he never had a relationship) leads him to a love of God.

### AS YOU READ, CONSIDER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

- How are medieval epic heroes (such as the Cid and Dante) different from and similar to the warriors of the ancient world?
- What kind of relationship do the heroes have to their societies, their leaders (rulers), their families, and their religion?
- How does the text approach courtly love, especially in terms of the behavior expected from knights and ladies? Does it support it or question it?
- What themes from the ancient world appear in the Middle Ages? In what ways are the stories a continuation of issues and concerns found in works from Part One?
- How has the role of religion changed in the stories, now that there are no pantheons of gods?

## THE PARLIAMENT OF BIRDS

Geoffrey Chaucer (ca. 1342- 1400 C.E.)

(ca. 1381-1382 C.E.)

England

## THE CANTERBURY TALES

Geoffrey Chaucer (ca. 1342-1400 C.E.)

(ca. 1387- 1400 C.E.)

England

Geoffrey Chaucer's influence on later British literature is difficult to overstate. The most important English writer before Shakespeare (who re-wrote Chaucer's version of the Troilus and Criseyde story), Chaucer introduced new words into English (such as "cosmos"), and his stories draw on a wealth of previous authors, especially Ovid and Boccaccio. Unlike Shakespeare, Chaucer's writing is often translated, since Middle English is substantially different from even the Early Modern English of Shakespeare. The selections in this anthology are focused on a single theme: Chaucer's revisionist, revolutionary approach to courtly love. Courtly love poetry often focuses on the male perspective exclusively; the female is the object to be obtained, and she usually is not given a voice (or, ultimately, a choice) in the matter. The Parliament of Birds (also called The Parliament of Fowles) gives the female a voice, if not necessarily a choice, while the General Prologue to The Canterbury Tales offers, among many other things, a satirical look at how courtly love can be misused: The Prioress and the Monk are only two examples. The Wife of Bath's Tale and The Franklin's Tale both offer fascinating alternatives to the regular courtly love scenario, while The Miller's Tale is a mocking revision of the genre by the Miller, who is responding to the story of courtly love that had just been told by the Knight.

*Written by Laura J. Getty*

## CHAUCER: PARLIAMENT OF FOWLS

### [THE PARLIAMENT OF BIRDS]

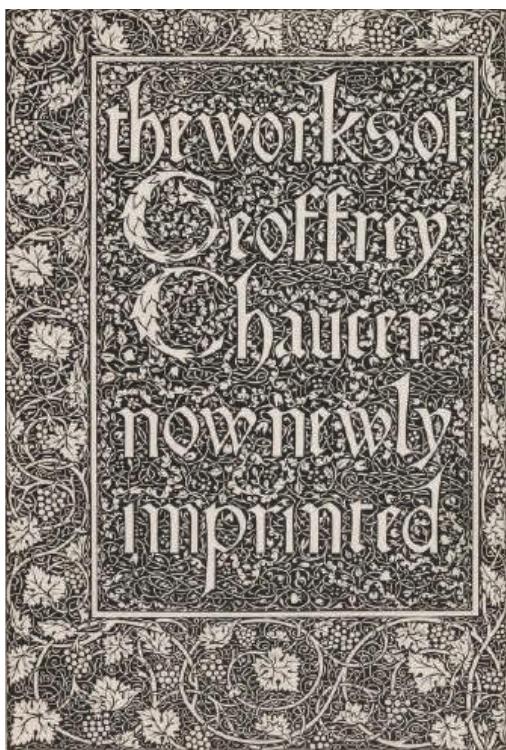
License: Copyright Gerard NeCastro

Geoffrey Chaucer, Translated by Gerald NeCastro

The life so brief, the art so long in the learning, the attempt so hard, the conquest so sharp, the fearful joy that ever slips away so quickly—by all this I mean love, which so sorely astounds my feeling with its wondrous operation, that when I think upon it I scarce know whether I wake or sleep. For albeit I know not love myself; nor how he pays people their wage, yet I have very often chanced to read in books of his miracles and his cruel anger there, surely, I read he will ever be lord and sovereign, and his strokes will be so heavy I dare say nothing but, "God save such a lord!" I can say no more.

Somewhat for pleasure and somewhat for learning I am in the habit of reading books, as I have told you. But why speak I of all this? Not long ago I chanced to look at a book, written in antique letters, and there I read very diligently and eagerly through the long day, to learn a certain thing. For, as men say, out of old fields comes all this new corn from year to year; and, in good faith, out of old books comes all this new knowledge that men learn. But now to my theme in this matter: it so delighted me to read on, that the whole day seemed to me rather short. This book of which I speak was entitled Tully on the Dream of Scipio. It had seven chapters, on heaven and hell and earth, and the souls that live in those places; about which I will tell you the substance of Tully's opinion, as briefly as I can.

First the book tells how, when Scipio had come to Africa, he met Masinissa, who clasped him in his arms for joy. Then it tells their conversation and all the joy that was between them until the day began to end; and then how Scipio's beloved ancestor Africanus appeared to him that night in his sleep. Then it tells how Africanus showed him Carthage from a starry place, and disclosed to him all his good fortune to come, and said to him that any man, learned or unlettered, who loves the common profit and is virtuous shall go to a blessed place where is joy without end. Then Scipio asked whether people that die here have life and dwelling elsewhere; and Africanus said, "Yes,



**IMAGE 5.1: THE WORKS OF GEOFFREY CHAUCER FRONTISPICE** | An intricately designed black and white frontispiece featuring ivy vines featuring the text “The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer now newly imprinted”

**Author:** Edward Burne-Jones  
**Source:** Archive.org  
**License:** Public Domain

cask, the lover that he has his lady. I cannot say whether my reading of Africanus was the cause that I dreamed that he stood there; but thus he spoke, “You have done so well to look upon my old tattered book, of which Macrobius thought not a little, that I would requite you somewhat for your labor.”

Cytherea, you sweet, blessed lady, who with your fire-brand subdues whomsoever you wish, and sends me this dream, be my helper in this, for you are best able! As surely as I saw you in the north-northwest when I began to write my dream, so surely do you give me power to rhyme it and compose it!

This aforesaid Africanus took me from there and brought me out with him to a gate of a park walled with mossy stone; and over the gate on either side, carved in large letters, were verses of very diverse senses, of which I shall tell you the full meaning:

“Through me men go into that blessed place  
 Where hearts find health and deadly wounds find cure,  
 Through me men go unto the fount of Grace,  
 Where green and lusty May shall ever endure.  
 I lead men to blithe peace and joy secure.  
 Reader, be glad; throw off your sorrows past.  
 Open am I; press in and make haste fast.”

On the other side it said:

“Through me men go where all mischance betides,  
 Where is the mortal striking of the spear,  
 To which Disdain and Coldness are the guides,  
 Where trees no fruit or leaf shall ever bear.

without doubt,” and added that our space of life in the present world, whatever way we follow, is just a kind of death, and righteous people, after they die, shall go to heaven.

And he showed him the Milky Way, and the earth here, so little in comparison with the hugeness of the heavens; and after that he showed him the nine spheres. And then he heard the melody that proceeds from those nine spheres, which is the fount of music and melody in this world, and the cause of harmony. Then Africanus instructed him not to take delight in this world, since earth is so little and so full of torment and ill favor. Then he told him how in a certain term of years every star should come into its own place, where it first was; and all that has been done by all mankind in this world shall pass out of memory.

Then he asked Africanus to tell him fully the way to come into that heavenly happiness; and he said, “First know yourself to be immortal; and always see that you labor diligently and teach for the common profit, and you shall not fail to come speedily to that dear place that is full of joy and of bright souls. But breakers of the law, in truth, and lecherous folk, after they die, shall ever be whirled about the earth in torment, until many an age be passed; and then, all their wicked deeds forgiven, they shall come to that blessed region, to which may God send you His grace to come.”

The day began to end, and dark night, which withdraws beasts from their activity, bereft me of my book for the lack of light; and I set forth to my bed, full of brooding and anxious heaviness. For I both had that which I wished not and what I wished that I had not. But at last, wearied with all the day’s labor, my spirit took rest and heavily slept; and as I lay in my sleep, I dreamed how Africanus, in the very same guise in which Scipio saw him that time before, had come and stood at the very side of my bed. When the weary hunter sleeps, quickly his mind returns to the wood; the judge dreams how his cases fare, and the carter how his carts go; the rich dream of gold, the knight fights his foes; the sick man dreams he drinks of the wine

This stream shall lead you to the sorrowful weir  
Where fish in baleful prison lie all dry.  
To shun it is the only remedy."

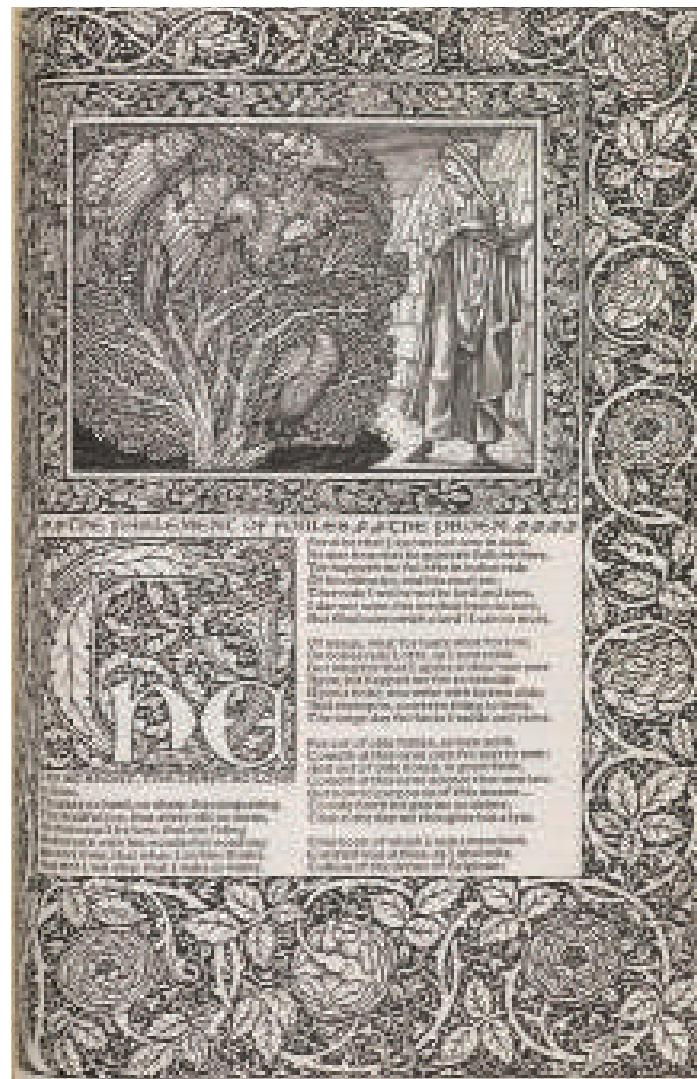
These inscriptions were written, the one in gold, the other in black, and I beheld them for a long while, for at the one my heart grew hardy, and the other ever increased my fear; the first warmed me, the other chilled me. For fear of error my wit could not make its choice, to enter or to flee, to lose myself or save myself. Just as a piece of iron set between two load-stones of equal force has no power to move one way or the other—for as much as one draws the other hinders.

So it fared with me, who knew not which would be better, to enter or not, until Africanus my guide caught and pushed me in at the wide gates, saying, "Your doubt stands written on your face, though you tell it not to me. But fear not to come in, for this writing is not meant for you or for any, unless he would be Love's servant. For in love, I believe, you have lost your sense of taste, even as a sick man loses his taste of sweet and bitter. Nevertheless, dull though you may be, you can still look upon that which you cannot do; for many a man who cannot complete a bout is nevertheless pleased to be at a wrestling match, and judges whether one or another does better. And if you have skill to set it down, I will show you something to write about."

With that he took my hand in his, from which I took comfort and quickly went in. But Lord, how glad and at ease I was! For everywhere I cast my eyes were trees clad, each according to its kind, with everlasting leaves in fresh color and green as emerald, a joy to behold: the builder oak, eke the hardy ash, the elm the pillar and the coffin for corpses, the boxwood for horns, the holly for whip-handles, the fir to bear sails, the cypress to mourn death, the yew the Bowman, the aspen for smooth shafts, the olive of peace, the drunken vine, the victor palm, and the laurel for divination.

By a river in a green meadow, where there is at all points so much sweetness, I saw a garden, full of blossomy boughs, with white, blue, yellow and red flowers; and cold fountain-streams, not at all dead, full of small shining fish with red fins and silver-bright scales. On every bough I heard the birds sing with the voice of angels in their melody. Some busied themselves to lead forth their young. The little bunnies hastened to play. Further on I noticed all about the timid roe, the buck, harts and hinds and squirrels and small beasts of gentle nature. I heard stringed instruments playing harmonies of such ravishing sweetness that God, Maker and Lord of all, never heard better, I believe. At the same time a wind, scarce could it have been gentler, made in the green leaves a soft noise which accorded with the song of the birds above. The air of that place was so mild that never was there discomfort for heat or cold. Every wholesome spice and herb grew there, and no person could age or sicken. There was a thousand times more joy than man can tell. And it would never be night there, but ever bright day in every man's eye.

I saw Cupid our lord forging and filing his arrows under a tree beside a spring, and his bow lay ready at his feet. And meanwhile his daughter well tempered the arrow-heads in the spring, and by her cunning she piled them after as they should serve, some to slay, some to wound and pierce. Just then I was aware of Pleasure and of Fair Array and Courtesy and Joy



**IMAGE 5.2: PARLIAMENT OF FOWLS** | A black and white illustration of a man in robes looking at the parliament of fowls as they nest in a tree.

**Author:** Edward Burne-Jones

**Source:** Archive.org

**License:** Public Domain

and of Deception who has wit and power to cause a being to do folly—she was disguised, I deny it not. And under an oak, I believe, I saw Delight, standing apart with Gentle Breeding. I saw Beauty without any raiment; and Youth, full of sportiveness and jollity, Foolhardiness, Flattery, Desire, Message-sending and Bribery; and three others—their names shall not be told by me.

And upon great high pillars of jasper I saw a temple of brass strongly stand. About the temple many women were dancing ceaselessly, of whom some were beautiful themselves and some gay in dress; only in their kirtles they went, with hair unbound—that was forever their business, year by year. And on the temple I saw many hundred pairs of doves sitting, white and beautiful. Before the temple-door sat Lady Peace full gravely, holding back the curtain, and beside her Lady Patience, with pale face and wondrous discretion, sitting upon a mound of sand. Next to her were Promise and Cunning and a crowd of their followers within the temple and without.

Inside I heard a gust of sighs blowing about, hot as fire, engendered of longing, which caused every altar to blaze ever anew. And well I saw then that all the cause of sorrows that lovers endure is through the bitter goddess Jealousy. As I walked about within the temple I saw the god Priapus standing in sovereign station, his scepter in hand, and in such attire as when the ass confounded him to confusion with its outcry by night. People were busily setting upon his head garlands full of fresh, new flowers of various colors.

In a private corner I found Venus, who was noble and stately in her bearing, sporting with her porter Riches. The place was dark, but in time I saw a little light—it could scarcely have been less. Venus reposed upon a golden bed until the hot sun should seek the west. Her golden hair was bound with a golden thread, but all untressed as she lay. And one could see her naked from the breast to the head; the remnant, in truth, was well covered to my pleasure with a filmy kerchief of Valence; there was no thicker cloth that could also be transparent. The place gave forth a thousand sweet odors. Bacchus, god of wine, sat beside her, and next was Ceres, who saves all from hunger, and, as I said, the Cyprian woman lay in the midst; on their knees two young people were crying to her to be their helper.

But thus I left her lying, and further in the temple I saw how, in scorn of Diana the chaste, there hung on the wall many a broken bow of such maidens as had first wasted their time in her service. And everywhere was painted many stories, of which I shall touch on a few, such as Callisto and Atalanta and many maidens whose name I do not know. There was also Semiramis, Candace, Hercules, Byblis, Dido, Thisbe and Pyramus, Tristram and Isolt, Paris, Achilles, Helen, Cleopatra, Troilus, and Scylla, and the mother of Romulus as well—all were portrayed on the other wall, and their love and by what plight they died.

When I had returned to the sweet and green garden that I spoke of, I walked forth to comfort myself. Then I noticed how there sat a queen who was exceeding in fairness over every other creature, as the brilliant summer sun passes the stars in brightness. This noble goddess Nature was set upon a flowery hill in a verdant glade. All her halls and bowers were wrought of branches according to the art and measure of Nature.

And there was not any bird that is created through procreation that was not ready in her presence to hear her and receive her judgment. For this was Saint Valentine's day, when every bird of every kind that men can imagine comes to this place to choose his mate. And they made an exceedingly great noise; and earth and sea and the trees and all the lakes were so full that there was scarcely room for me to stand, so full was the entire place. And just as Alan, in *The Complaint of Nature*, describes Nature in her features and attire, so might men find her in reality.

This noble empress, full of grace, bade every bird take his station, as they were accustomed to stand always on Saint Valentine's day from year to year. That is to say, the birds of prey were set highest, and then the little birds who eat, as nature inclines them, worms or other things of which I speak not; but water-fowls sat the lowest in the dale; and birds that live on seed sat upon the grass, so many that it was a marvel to see.

There one could find the royal eagle, that pierces the sun with his sharp glance; and other eagles of lower race, of which clerks can tell. There was that tyrant with dun gray feathers, I mean the goshawk, that harasses other birds with his fierce ravening. There was the noble falcon, that with his feet grasps the king's hand; also the bold sparrow-hawk, foe of quails; the merlin, that often greedily pursues the lark. The dove was there, with her meek eyes; the jealous swan, that sings at his death; and the owl also, that forebodes death; the giant crane, with his trumpet voice; thieving chough; the prating magpie; the scornful jay; the heron, foe to eels; the false lapwing, full of trickery; the starling, that can betray secrets; the tame redbreast; the coward kite; the cock, timekeeper of little thorps; the sparrow, son of Venus; the nightingale, which calls forth the fresh new leaves; the swallow, murderer of the little bees which make honey from the fresh-hued flowers; the wedded turtle-dove, with her faithful heart; the peacock, with his shining angel-feathers; the pheasant, that scorns the cock by night; the vigilant goose; the cuckoo, ever unnatural; the popinjay, full of wantonness; the drake, destroyer of his own kind; the stork, that avenges adultery; the greedy, glutinous cormorant; the wise raven and the crow, with voice of ill-boding; the ancient thrush and the wintry fieldfare.

What more shall I say? One might find assembled in that place before the noble goddess Nature birds of every sort in this world that have feathers and stature. And each by her consent worked diligently to choose or take graciously his lady or his mate.

But to the point: Nature held on her hand a formel eagle, the noblest in shape that she ever found among her works, the gentlest and goodliest; in her every noble trait so had its seat that Nature herself rejoiced to look upon her and to kiss her beak many times. Nature, vicar of the Almighty Lord, who has knit in harmony hot, cold, heavy, light, moist, and dry in exact proportions, began to speak in a gentle voice: "Birds, take heed of what I say; and for your welfare and to further your needs I will hasten as fast as I can speak. You well know how on Saint Valentine's day, by my statute and through my ordinance, you come to choose your mates, as I prick you with sweet pain, and then fly on your way. But I may not, to win this entire world, depart from my just order, that he who is most worthy shall begin.

"The tercel eagle, the royal bird above you in degree, as you well know, the wise and worthy one, trusty, true as steel, which you may see I have formed in every part as pleased me best—there is no need to describe his shape to you—he shall choose first and speak as he will. And after him you shall choose in order, according to your nature, each as pleases you; and, as your chance is, you shall lose or win. But whichever of you love ensnares most, to him may God send her who sighs for him most sorely."

And at this she called the tercel and said, "My son, the choice is fallen to you. Nevertheless under this condition must be the choice of each one here, that his chosen mate will agree to his choice, whatsoever he be who would have her. From year to year this is always our custom. And whoever at this time can win grace has come here in blissful time!"

The royal tercel, with bowed head and humble appearance, delayed not and spoke: "As my sovereign lady, not as my spouse, I choose—and choose with will and heart and mind—the formel of so noble shape upon your hand. I am hers wholly and will serve her always. Let her do as she wishes, to let me live or die; I beseech her for mercy and grace, as my sovereign lady, or else let me die here presently. For surely I cannot live long in torment, for in my heart every vein is cut. Having regard only to my faithfulness, dear heart, have some pity upon my woe. And if I am found untrue to her, disobedient or willfully negligent, a boaster, or in time love elsewhere, I pray you this will be my doom: that I will be torn to pieces by these birds, upon that day when she should ever know me untrue to her or in my guilt unkind. And since no other loves her as well as I, though she never promised me love, she ought to be mine by her mercy; for I can fasten no other bond on her. Never for any woe shall I cease to serve her, however far she may roam. Say what you will, my words are done."

Even as the fresh red rose newly blown blushes in the summer sun, so grew the color of this woman when she heard all this; she answered no word good or bad, so sorely was she abashed; until Nature said, "Daughter, fear not, be of good courage."

Then spoke another tercel of a lower order: "That shall not be. I love her better than you, by Saint John, or at least I love her as well, and have served her longer, according to my station. If she should love for long being to me alone should be the reward; and I also dare to say, if she should find me false, unkind, a prater, or a rebel in any way, or jealous, let me be hanged by the neck. And unless I bear myself in her service as well as my wit allows me, to protect her honor in every point, let her take my life and all the wealth I have."

Then a third tercel eagle said, "Now, sirs, you see how little time we have here, for every bird clamors to be off with his mate or lady dear, and Nature herself as well, because of the delay, will not hear half of what I would speak. Yet unless I speak I must die of sorrow. I boast not at all of long service; but it is as likely that I shall die of woe today as he who has been languishing these twenty winters. And it may well happen that a man may serve better in half a year, even if it were no longer, than another man who has served many years. I do not say this about myself, for I can do no service to my lady's pleasure; but I dare say that I am her truest man, I believe, and would be most glad to please her. In short, until death may seize me I will be hers, whether I wake or sleep, and true in all that heart can think."

In all my life since the day I was born never have I heard any man so noble make a plea in love or any other thing—even if a man had time and wit to rehearse their expression and their words. And this discourse lasted from the morning until the sun drew downward so rapidly. The clamor released by the birds rung so loud—"Make an end of this and let us go!"—that I well thought the forest would be splintered. They cried, "Make haste! Alas, you will ruin us! When shall your cursed pleading come to an end? How should a judge believe either side for yea or nay, without any proof?"

The goose, cuckoo and duck so loudly cried, "Kek, kek!", "Cuckoo!", "Quack, quack!" that the noise reverberated in my ears. The goose said, "All this is not worth a fly! But from this I can devise a remedy, and I will speak my verdict fair and soon, on behalf of the waterfowl. Let who will smile or frown."

"And I for the worm-eating fowl," said the foolish cuckoo; "of my own authority, for the common welfare, I will take the responsibility now, for it would be great charity to release us." "By God, you may wait a while yet," said the turtle-dove. "If you are he to choose who shall speak, it would be as well for him to be silent. I am among the birds that eat seed, one of the most unworthy, and of little wit—that I know well. But a creature's tongue would be better quiet than meddling with such doings about which he knows neither rhyme nor reason. And whosoever does so, overburdens himself in foul fashion, for often one not entrusted to a duty commits offence."

Nature, who had always an ear to the murmuring of folly at the back, said with ready tongue, "Hold your peace there! And straightway, I hope, I shall find a counsel to let you go and release you from this noise. My judgment is that you shall choose one from each bird-folk to give the verdict for you all."

The birds all assented to this conclusion. And first the birds of prey by full election chose the tercel-falcon to define all their judgment, and decide as he wished. And they presented him to Nature and she accepted him gladly. The falcon then spoke in this fashion: "It would be hard to determine by reason which best loves this gentle woman; for each has such ready answers that none may be defeated by reasons. I cannot see of what avail are arguments; so it seems there must be battle."

"All ready!" then cried these tercel-eagles.

"Nay, sirs," said he, "if I dare say it, you do me wrong, my tale is not done. For, sirs, take it not amiss, I pray, it cannot go thus as you desire. Ours is the voice that has the charge over this, and you must stand by the judges' decision. Peace, therefore! I say that it would seem in my mind that the worthiest in knighthood, who has longest followed it, the highest in degree and of gentlest blood, would be most fitting for her, if she wish it. And of these three she knows which he is, I believe, for that is easily seen."

The waterfowl put their heads together, and after short considering, when each had spoken his tedious gabble, they said truly, by one assent, how "the goose, with her gentle eloquence, who so desires to speak for us, shall say our say," and prayed God would help her. Then the goose began to speak for these waterfowl, and said in her cackling, "Peace! Now every man take heed and hearken what argument I shall put forth. My wits are sharp, I love no delay; I counsel him, I say, even if he were my brother, leave him if she will not love him."

"Lo here," said the sparrow-hawk, "a perfect argument for a goose—bad luck to her! Lo, thus it is to have a wagging tongue! Now, fool, it would be better for you to have held your peace than have shown your folly, by God! But to do thus rests not in her wit or will; for it is truly said, 'a fool cannot be silent.'"

Laughter arose from all the birds of noble kind; and straightway the seed-eating fowl chose the faithful turtle-dove, and called her to them, and prayed her to speak the sober truth about this matter, and asked her counsel. And she answered that she would fully show her mind. "Nay, God forbid a lover should change!" said the turtle-dove, and grew all red with shame. "Though his lady may be cold for evermore, let him serve her ever until he die. In truth I praise not the goose's counsel, for even if my lady died I would have no other mate, I would be hers until death take me."

"By my hat, well jested!" said the duck. "That men should love forever, without cause! Who can find reason or wit there? Does one who is mirthless dance merrily? Who should care for him who is carefree? Yea, quack!" said the duck loud and long, "God knows there are more stars than a pair."

"Now fie, churl!" said the noble falcon. "That thought came straight from the dunghill. You can not see when a thing is proper. You fare with love as owls with light; the day blinds them, but they see very well in darkness. Your nature is so low and wretched that you can not see or guess what love is."

Then the cuckoo thrust himself forward in behalf of the worm-eating birds, and said quickly, "So that I may have my mate in peace, I care not how long you contend. Let each be single all his life; that is my counsel, since they cannot agree. This is my instruction, and there an end!"

"Yea," said the merlin, "as this glutton has well filled his paunch, this should suffice for us all! You murderer of the hedge-sparrow on the branch, the one who brought you up, you ruthless glutton! May you live unmated, you mangler of worms! It matters nothing to you, though your tribe may perish. Go, be a stupid fool, as long as the world lasts!"

"Peace now, I command here," said Nature, "For I have heard the opinions of all, and yet we are no nearer to our goal. But this is my final decision, that she herself shall have the choice of whom she wishes. Whosoever may be pleased or not, he whom she chooses shall have her straightway. For since it cannot here be debated who loves her best, as the falcon said, then will I grant her this favor, that she shall have him alone on whom her heart is set, and he her that has fixed his heart on her. This judgment I, Nature, make; and I cannot speak falsely, nor look with partial eye on any rank. But if it is reasonable to counsel you in choosing a mate, then surely I would counsel you to take the royal tercel, as the falcon said right wisely; for he is noblest and most worthy whom I created so well for my own pleasure; that ought to suffice you."

The formel answered with timid voice, "Goddess of nature, my righteous lady, true it is that I am ever under your rod, just as every other creature is, and I must be yours as long as my life may last. Therefore, grant me my first request, and straightway I will speak to you my mind."

"I grant it to you," said Nature; and this female eagle spoke immediately in this way: "Almighty queen, until this year comes to an end I ask respite, to take counsel with myself; and after that to have my choice free. This is all that I would say. I can say no more, even if you were to slay me. In truth, as yet I will in no manner serve Venus or Cupid"

"Now since it can happen no other way," Nature said then, "there is no more to be said here. Then I wish these birds to go their way each with his mate, so that they tarry here no longer." And she spoke to them thus as you shall

hear. "To you I speak, you tercels," said Nature. "Be of good heart, and continue in service, all three; a year is not so long to wait. And let each of you strive according to his degree to do well. For, God knows, she is departed from you this year; and whatsoever may happen afterwards, this interval is appointed to you all."

And when this work was all brought to an end, Nature gave every bird his mate by just accord, and they went their way. Ah, Lord! The bliss and joy that they made! For each of them took the other in his wings, and wound their necks about each other, ever thanking the noble goddess of nature. But first were chosen birds to sing, as was always their custom year by year to sing a roundel at their departure, to honor Nature and give her pleasure. The tune, I believe, was made in France. The words were such as you may here find in these verses, as I remember them.

*Qui bien aime a tard oublie.*

"Welcome, summer, with sunshine soft,  
The winter's tempest you will break,  
And drive away the long nights black!"

Saint Valentine, throned aloft,  
Thus little birds sing for your sake:  
Welcome, summer, with sunshine soft,  
The winter's tempest you will shake!"

Good cause have they to glad them oft,  
His own true-love each bird will take;  
Blithe may they sing when they awake,  
Welcome, summer, with sunshine soft,  
The winter's tempest you will break,  
And drive away the long nights black!"

And with the shouting that the birds raised, as they flew away when their song was done, I awoke; and I took up other books to read, and still I read always. In truth I hope so to read that some day I shall meet with something of which I shall fare the better. And so I will not cease to read: *Explicit tractatus de Congregatione Volucrum die sancti Valentini tentum, secundum Galfridum Chaucers. Deo gracias.*

## THE CANTERBURY TALES

License: Copyright Gerard NeCastro

Geoffrey Chaucer, Translated by Gerald NeCastro

*Here begins the Book of the Tales of Canterbury.*

### The General Prologue

When the sweet showers of April have pierced to the root the dryness of March and bathed every vein in moisture by which strength are the flowers brought forth; when Zephyr also with his sweet breath has given spirit to the tender new shoots in the grove and field, and the young sun has run half his course through Aries the Ram, and little birds make melody and sleep all night with an open eye, so nature pricks them in their hearts; then people long to go on pilgrimages to renowned shrines in various distant lands, and palmers to seek foreign shores. And especially from every shire's end in England they make their way to Canterbury, to seek the holy blessed martyr who helped them when they were sick.

One day in that season, as I was waiting at the Tabard Inn at Southwark, about to make my pilgrimage with devout heart to Canterbury, it happened that there came at night to that inn a company of twenty-nine various people, who by chance had joined together in fellowship. All were pilgrims, riding to Canterbury. The chambers and the stables were spacious, and we were lodged well. But in brief, when the sun had gone to rest, I had spoken with every one of them and was soon a part of their company, and agreed to rise early to take our way to where I have told you.

Nevertheless, while I have time and space, before this tale goes further, I think it is reasonable to tell you all the qualities of each of them, as they appeared to me, what sort of people they were, of what station and how they were fashioned. I will begin with a knight.

There was a Knight and a worthy man, who, from the time when he first rode abroad, loved chivalry, faithfulness and honor, liberality and courtesy. He was valiant in his lord's war and had campaigned, no man farther, in

both Christian and heathen lands, and ever was honored for his worth. He was at Alexandria when it was won; many times in Prussia he sat in the place of honor above knights from all nations; he had fought in Lithuania and in Russia, and no Christian man of his did so more often; he had been in Granada at the siege of Algeciras and in Belmaria; he was at Lyeys and in Attalia when they were won, and had landed with many noble armies in the Levant. He had been in fifteen mortal battles, and had thrice fought for our faith in the lists at Tremessen and always slain his foe; he had been also, long before, with the lord of Palathia against another heathen host in Turkey; and ever he had great renown. And though he was valorous, he was prudent, and he was as meek as a maiden in his bearing. In all his life he never yet spoke any courtesy to any living creature, but was truly a perfect gentle knight. To tell you of his equipment, his horses were good but he was not gaily clad. He wore a jerkin of coarse cloth all stained with rust by his coat of mail, for he had just returned from his travels and went to do his pilgrimage.

His son was with him, a young Squire, a lover and a lusty young soldier. His locks were curled as if laid in a press. He may have been twenty years of age, of average height, amazingly nimble and great of strength. He had been, at one time, in a campaign in Flanders, Artois, and Picardy, and had borne himself well, in so little time, in hope to stand in his lady's grace. His clothes were embroidered, red and white, like a meadow full of fresh flowers. All the day long he was singing or playing upon the flute; he was as fresh as the month of May. His coat was short, with long, wide sleeves. Well could he sit a horse and ride, make songs, joust and dance, draw and write. He loved so ardently that at night-time he slept no more than a nightingale. He was courteous, modest and helpful, and carved before his father at table.

They had a Yeoman with them; on that journey they would have no other servants. He was clad in a coat and hood of green, and in his hand he bore a mighty bow and under his belt a neat sheaf of arrows, bright and sharp, with peacock feathers. He knew how to handle his gear like a good yeoman; his arrows did not fall short on account of any poorly adjusted feathers. His head was cropped and his face brown. He understood well all the practice of woodcraft. He wore a gay arm-guard of leather and at one side a sword and buckler; at the other a fine dagger, well fashioned and as sharp as a spear-point; on his breast an image of St. Christopher in bright silver, and over his shoulder a horn on a green baldric. He was a woodsman indeed, I believe.

There was also a nun, a Prioress, quiet and simple in her smiling; her greatest oath was "by Saint Loy." She was named Madame Eglantine. Well she sang the divine service, intoned in a seemly manner in her nose, and spoke French elegantly, after the manner of Stratford-atte-Bow, for of Parisian French she knew nothing. She had been well taught the art of eating, and let no morsel fall from her lips, and wet but her finger-tips in the sauce. She knew how to lift and how to hold a bit so that not a drop fell upon her breast. Her pleasure was all in courtesy. She wiped her upper lip so well that no spot of grease was to be seen in her cup after she had drunk; and very dainty she was in reaching for her food. And surely she was of fine behavior, pleasant and amiable of bearing. She took pains to imitate court manners, to be stately in her demeanor and to be held worthy of reverence. But to tell you of her character, she was so charitable and so tender-hearted she would weep if she saw a mouse caught in a trap if it were dead or bleeding. She had certain small dogs, which she fed upon roasted meat or milk and finest wheaten bread. She would weep sorely if one of them died or was struck at sharply with a stick. She was all warm feeling and tender heart. Her wimple was pleated neatly. Her nose was slender, her eyes gray as glass, her mouth small and soft and red. Certainly she had a fine forehead, almost a span high; truly she was not undersized. Her cloak was neatly made, I could tell.



**IMAGE 5.3: THE CANTERBURY TALES TITLE PAGE** | The title page for *The Canterbury Tales* featuring an artist rendering of Geoffrey Chaucer gazing into a well, a paper clutch in his hand.

**Author:** Edward Burne-Jones

**Source:** Archive.org

**License:** Public Domain

About her arm was a coral rosary, the larger beads of green, upon which hung a brooch of shining gold; on it was engraved first an A with a crown, and after that Amor vincit omnia.

Another Nun, her chaplain, was with her, and three Priests.

There was a Monk, a very fine and handsome one, a great rider about the country-side and a lover of hunting, a manly man in all things, fit to be an abbot. He had many fine horses in his stable, and when he rode, men could hear his bridle jingling in a whistling wind as clear and loud as the chapel-bell where this lord was prior. Because the rule of St. Maurus or of St. Benedict was old and something austere, this same monk let such old things pass and followed the ways of the newer world. He gave not a plucked hen for the text that hunters are not holy, or that a careless monk (that is to say, one out of his cloister) is like a fish out of water; for that text he would not give a herring. And I said his opinion was right; why should he study and lose his wits ever poring over a book in the cloister, or toil with his hands and labor as St. Augustine bids? How shall the world be served? Let St. Augustine have his work to himself. Therefore he rode hard, followed greyhounds as swift as birds on the wing. All his pleasure was in riding and hunting the hare, and he spared no cost on those. I saw his sleeves edged at the wrist with fine dark fur, the finest in the country, and to fasten his hood under his chin he had a finely-wrought brooch of gold; in the larger end was a love-knot. His bald head shone like glass; so did his face, as if it had been anointed. He was a sleek, fat lord. His bright eyes rolled in his head, glowing like the fire under a cauldron. His boots were of rich soft leather, his horse in excellent condition. Now certainly he was a fine prelate. He was not pale, like a wasted spirit; best of any roast he loved a fat swan. His palfrey was as brown as a berry.

There was a begging Friar, lively and jolly, a very dignified fellow. In all the four orders there is not one so skilled in gay and flattering talk. He had, at his own expense, married off many young women; he was a noble pillar of his order! He was well beloved and familiar among franklins everywhere in his countryside, and also with worthy town women, for he had, as he said himself, more virtue as confessor than a parson, for he held a papal license. Very sweetly he heard confession, and his absolution was pleasant; he was an easy man to give penance, when he looked to have a good dinner. Gifts to a poor order are a sign that a man has been well confessed, he maintained; if a man gave, he knew he was contrite. For many people are so stern of heart that they cannot weep, though they suffer sorely; therefore, instead of weeping and praying, men may give silver to the poor friars. The tip of his hood was stuffed full of knives and pins as presents to fine women. And certainly he had a pleasant voice in singing, and well could play the fiddle; in singing ballads he bore off the prize. His neck was as white as the fleur-de-lis, and he was as strong as a champion. He knew all the town taverns, and every inn-keeper and bar-maid, better than the lepers and beggar-women. For it accorded not with a man of his importance to have acquaintance with sick lepers; it was not seemly, it profited not, to deal with any such poor trash, but all with rich folk and sellers of victual. But everywhere that advantage might follow he was courteous, lowly and serviceable. Nowhere was any so capable; he was the best beggar in his house, and gave a certain yearly payment so that none of his brethren might trespass on his routes. Though a widow might not have an old shoe to give, so pleasant was his "In principio," he would have his farthing before he went. He gained more from his begging than he ever needed, I believe! He would romp about like a puppy-dog. On days of reconciliation, or love-days, he was very helpful, for he was not like a cloister-monk or a poor scholar with a threadbare cope, but like a Master of Arts or a cardinal. His half-cope was of double worsted and came from the clothes-press rounding out like a bell. He pleased his whim by lisping a little, to make his English sound sweet upon his tongue, and in his harping and singing his eyes twinkled in his head like the stars on a frosty night. This worthy friar was named Hubert.

There was a Merchant with a forked beard, in parti-colored garb. High he sat upon his horse, a Flanders beaver-hat on his head, and boots fastened neatly with rich clasps. He uttered his opinions pompously, ever tending to the increase of his own profit; at any cost he wished the sea were safeguarded between Middleburg and Orwell. In selling crown-pieces he knew how to profit by the exchange. This worthy man employed his wit cunningly; no creature knew that he was in debt, so stately he was of demeanor in bargaining and borrowing. He was a worthy man indeed, but, to tell the truth, I know not his name.

There was also a Clerk from Oxford who had long gone to lectures on logic. His horse was as lean as a rake, and he was not at all fat, I think, but looked hollow-cheeked, and grave likewise. His little outer cloak was threadbare, for he had no worldly skill to beg for his needs, and as yet had gained himself no benefice. He would rather have had at his bed's head twenty volumes of Aristotle and his philosophy, bound in red or black, than rich robes or a fiddle or gay psaltery. Even though he was a philosopher, he had little gold in his money-box! But all that he could get from his friends he spent on books and learning, and would pray diligently for the souls of who gave it to him to stay at the schools. Of study he took most heed and care. Not a word did he speak more than was needed, and the little he spoke was formal and modest, short and quick, and full of high matter. All that he said tended toward moral virtue. Gladly would he learn and gladly teach.

There was also a Sergeant of the Law, an excellent man, wary and wise, a frequenter of the porch of Paul's Church. He was discreet and of great distinction; or seemed such, his words were so sage. He had been judge at court, by patent and full commission; with his learning and great reputation he had earned many fees and robes.

Such a man as he for acquiring goods there never was; anything that he desired could be shown to be held in unrestricted possession, and none could find a flaw in his deeds. Nowhere was there so busy a man, and yet he seemed busier than he was. He knew in precise terms every case and judgment since King William the Conqueror, and every statute fully, word for word, and none could chide at his writing. He rode in simple style in a parti-colored coat and a belt of silk with small cross-bars. Of his appearance I will not make a longer story.

Traveling with him was a Franklin, with a beard as white as a daisy, a ruddy face and a sanguine temper. Well he loved a sop of wine of a morning. He was accustomed to live in pleasure, for he was a very son of Epicurus, who held the opinion that perfect felicity stands in pleasure alone. He ever kept an open house, like a true St. Julian in his own country-side. His bread and his wine both were always of the best; never were a man's wine-vaults better stored. His house was never without a huge supply of fish or meat; in his house it snowed meat and drink, and every fine pleasure that a man could dream of. According to the season of the year he varied his meats and his suppers. Many fat partridges were in his cage and many bream and pike in his fishpond. Woe to his cook unless his sauces were pungent and sharp, and his gear ever in order! All the long day stood a great table in his hall fully prepared. When the justices met at sessions of court, there he lorded it full grandly, and many times he sat as knight of the shire in parliament. A dagger hung at his girdle, and a pouch of taffeta, white as morning's milk. He had been sheriff and auditor; nowhere was so worthy a vassal.

A Haberdasher, a Carpenter, a Weaver, a Dyer, and an Upholsterer were with us also, all in the same dress of a great and splendid guild. All fresh and new was their gear. Their knives were not tipped with brass but all with fine-wrought silver, like their girdles and their pouches. Each of them seemed a fair burgess to sit in a guildhall on a dais. Each for his discretion was fit to be alderman of his guild, and had goods and income sufficient for that. Their wives would have consented, I should think; otherwise, they would be at fault. It is a fair thing to be called madame, and to walk ahead of other folks to vigils, and to have a mantle carried royally before them.

They had a Cook with them for that journey, to boil chickens with the marrow-bones and tart powder-merchant and cypress-root. Well he knew a draught of London ale! He could roast and fry and broil and stew, make dainty pottage and bake pies well. It was a great pity, it seemed to me, that he had a great ulcer on his shin, for he made capon-in-cream with the best of them.

There was a Shipman, from far in the West; for anything I know, he was from Dartmouth. He rode a nag, as well as he knew how, in a gown of coarse wool to the knee. He had a dagger hanging on a lace around his neck and under his arm. The hot summer had made his hue brown. In truth he was a good fellow: many draughts of wine had he drawn at Bordeaux while the merchant slept. He paid no heed to nice conscience; on the high seas, if he fought and had the upper hand, he made his victims walk the plank. But in skill to reckon his moon, his tides, his currents and dangers at hand, his harbors and navigation, there was none like him from Hull to Carthage. In his undertakings he was bold and shrewd. His beard had been shaken by many tempests. He knew the harbors well from Gothland to Cape Finisterre, and every creek in Spain and in Brittany. His ship was called the Maudelayne.

With us was a Doctor, a Physician; for skill in medicine and in surgery there was no peer in this entire world. He watched sharply for favorable hours and an auspicious ascendant for his patients' treatment, for he was well grounded in astrology. He knew the cause of each malady, if it was hot, cold, dry or moist, from where it had sprung and of what humor. He was a thorough and a perfect practitioner. Having found the cause and source of his trouble, quickly he had ready the sick man's cure. He had his apothecaries all prepared to send him electuaries and drugs, for each helped the other's gain; their friendship was not formed of late! He knew well the old Aesculapius, Dioscorides and Rufus, Hippocrates, Haly and Galen, Serapion, Rhasis and Avicenna, Averroes, Damascene and Constantine, Bernard, Gatisden and Gilbertine. His own diet was moderate, with no excess, but nourishing and simple to digest. His study was only a little on Scripture. He was clad in red and blue-gray cloth, lined with taffeta and sendal silk. Yet he was but moderate in spending, and kept what he gained during the pestilence. Gold is a medicine from the heart in physicians' terms; doubtless that was why he loved gold above all else.

There was a Good Wife from near Bath, but she was somewhat deaf, and that was pity. She was so skilled in making cloth that she surpassed those of Ypres and Ghent. In all the parish there was no wife who should march up to make an offering before her, and if any did, so angered she was that truly she was out of all charity. Her kerchiefs were very fine in texture; and I dare swear those that were on her head for Sunday weighed ten pounds. Her hose were of a fine scarlet and tightly fastened, and her shoes were soft and new. Her face was bold and fair and red. All her life she was a worthy woman; she had had five husbands at the church-door, besides other company in her youth, but of that there is no need to speak now. She had thrice been at Jerusalem; many distant streams had she crossed; she had been on pilgrimages to Boulogne and to Rome, to Santiago in Galicia and to Cologne. This wandering by the way had taught her various things. To tell the truth, she was gap-toothed; she sat easily on an ambling horse, wearing a fair wimple and on her head a hat as broad as a buckler or target. About her broad hips was a short riding skirt and on her feet a pair of sharp spurs. Well could she laugh and prattle in company. Love and its remedies she knew all about, I dare give my word, for she had been through the old dance.

There was a good man of religion, a poor Parson, but rich in holy thought and deed. He was also a learned man, a clerk, and would faithfully preach Christ's gospel and devoutly instruct his parishioners. He was benign, wonderfully diligent, and patient in adversity, as he was often tested. He was loath to excommunicate for unpaid tithes, but rather would give to his poor parishioners out of the church alms and also of his own substance; in little he found sufficiency. His parish was wide and the houses far apart, but not even for thunder or rain did he neglect to visit the farthest, great or small, in sickness or misfortune, going on foot, a staff in his hand. To his sheep did he give this noble example, which he first set into action and afterward taught; these words he took out of the gospel, and this similitude he added also, that if gold will rust, what shall iron do? For if a priest upon whom we trust were to be foul, it is no wonder that an ignorant layman would be corrupt; and it is a shame (if a priest will but pay attention to it) that a shepherd should be defiled and the sheep clean. A priest should give good example by his cleanliness how his sheep should live. He would not farm out his benefice, nor leave his sheep stuck fast in the mire, while he ran to London to St. Paul's, to get an easy appointment as a chantry-priest, or to be retained by some guild, but dwelled at home and guarded his fold well, so that the wolf would not make it miscarry. He was no hireling, but a shepherd. And though he was holy and virtuous, he was not pitiless to sinful men, nor cold or haughty of speech, but both discreet and benign in his teaching; to draw folk up to heaven by his fair life and good example, this was his care. But when a man was stubborn, whether of high or low estate, he would scold him sharply. There was nowhere a better priest than he. He looked for no pomp and reverence, nor yet was his conscience too particular; but the teaching of Christ and his apostles he taught, and first he followed it himself.

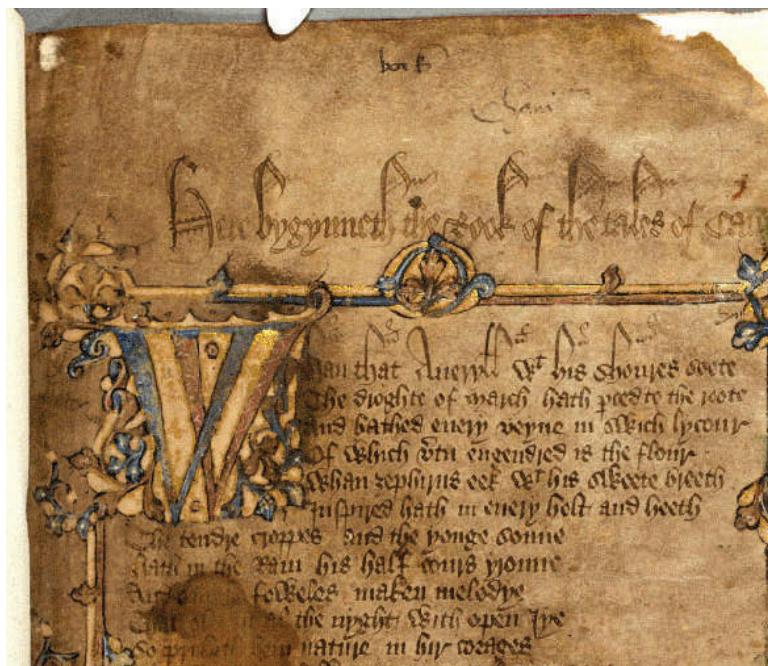
With him was his brother, a Ploughman, who had drawn many cartloads of dung. He was a faithful and good toiler, living in peace and perfect charity. He loved God best at all times with all his whole heart, in good and ill fortune, and then his neighbor even as himself. He would thresh and ditch and delve for every poor person without pay, but for Christ's sake, if he were able. He paid his tithes fairly and well on both his produce and his goods. He wore a ploughman's frock and rode upon a mare.

There was a Reeve also and a Miller, a Summoner and a Pardoner, a Manciple and myself. There were no more.

The Miller was a stout fellow, big of bones and brawn; and well he showed them, for everywhere he went to a wrestling match he would always carry off the prize ram. He was short-shouldered and broad, a thick, knotty fellow. There was no door that he could not heave off its hinges, or break with his head at a running. His beard was as red as any sow or fox, and broad like a spade as well. Upon the very tip of his nose he had a wart, and on it stood a tuft of red hair like the bristles on a sow's ears, and his nostrils were black and wide. At his thigh hung a sword and buckler. His mouth was as great as a great furnace. He was a teller of dirty stories and a buffoon, and it was mostly of sin and obscenity. He knew well how to steal corn and take his toll of meal three times over; and yet he had a golden thumb, by God! He wore a white coat and a blue hood. He could blow and play the bagpipe well, and with its noise he led us out of town.

There was a gentle Manciple of an Inn of Court, of whom other stewards might take example for craftiness in buying victuals. Whether he paid in cash or took on credit, he was so watchful in his buying that he was always ahead and in good standing. Now is it not a full fair gift of God that the wit of such an unlettered man shall surpass the wisdom of a great body of learned men? He had more than a score of masters, expert and diligent in law, of whom in that house there were a dozen worthy to be stewards of lands and revenues of any lord in England, to let him live upon his income, honorably, free from debt, unless he were mad, or live as plainly as he would; or able to help a whole shire in any case that might occur. And yet this Manciple hoodwinked all of them.

The Reeve was a slender, bilious man. His beard was shaven as close as could be, and his hair was cut short around his ears and docked



**IMAGE 5.4: HENGWRT MANUSCRIPT** | The top of the page containing the General Prologue for the Canterbury Tales from the Hengwrt manuscript.

**Author:** Unknown

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

in front like a priest's. His legs were full and lean like a stick; I could see no calf. He could well keep a bin and a garner and no inspector could get the best of him. In the drought or in the wet he could foretell the yield of his grain and seed. His lord's sheep, poultry and cattle, his dairy and swine and horses and all his stock, this Reeve had wholly under his governance, and submitted his accounts thereon ever since his lord was twenty years of age; and none could ever find him out in arrears. There was no bailiff nor herdsman nor other churl whose tricks and craftiness he didn't know. They were as afraid of him as of the plague. His dwelling-place was a pleasant one on a heath, all shaded with green trees. Better than his lord he knew how to pick up wealth, and had a rich private hoard; he knew how to please his master cunningly by giving and lending him out of what was his master's by right, and to win thanks for that, and a coat and hood as a reward too. In his youth he had learned a good trade and was a fine carpenter and workman. This Reeve sat upon a fine dapple gray cob named Scot. He wore a long surcoat of blue and at his side a rusty blade. He was from Norfolk, near a town they call Baldeswell. His coat was tucked up around him like a friar's, and he always rode last of us all.

A Summoner was with us there, a fire-red cherubim-faced fellow, salt-phlegmed and pimply, with slits for eyes, scabby black eyebrows and thin ragged beard, and as hot and lecherous as a sparrow. Children were terrified at his visage. No quicksilver, white-lead, brimstone, borax nor ceruse, no cream of tartar nor any ointment that would clean and burn, could help his white blotches or the knobs on his chaps. He loved garlic, onions and leeks too well, and to drink strong wine as red as blood, and then he would talk and cry out like mad. And after drinking deep of wine he would speak no word but Latin, in which he had a few terms, two or three, learned out of some canon. No wonder was that, for he heard it all day long, and you know well how a jay can call "Walter" after hearing it a long time, as well as the pope could. But if he were tested in any other point, his learning was found to be all spent. Questio quid juris, he was always crying. He was a kind and gentle rogue; a better fellow I never knew; for a quart of wine he would allow a good fellow to have his concubine for a year and completely excuse him. Secretly he knew how to swindle anyone. And if anywhere he found a good fellow, he would teach him in such case to have no fear of the archdeacon's excommunication, unless a man's soul is in his purse, for it was in his purse he should be punished. "The Archdeacon's hell is your purse," he said. (But well I know he lied in his teeth; every guilty man should fear the church's curse, for it will slay, just as absolution saves, and also let him beware of a significavit.) Within his jurisdiction on his own terms he held all the young people of the diocese, knew their guilty secrets, and was their chief adviser. He had a garland on his head large enough for an ale-house sign, and carried a round loaf of bread as big as a buckler.

With him rode a gentle Pardoner, of Roncesvalles, his friend and companion, who had come straight from the court of Rome. He sang loudly, "Come here, love, to me," while the Summoner joined him with a stiff bass; never was there a trumpet of half such a sound. This Pardoner had waxy-yellow hair, hanging smooth, like a hank of flax, spread over his shoulders in thin strands. For sport he wore no hood, which was trussed up in his wallet; riding with his hair disheveled, bareheaded except for his cap, he thought he was all in the latest fashion. His eyes were glaring like a hare's. He had a veronica sewed on his cap, and his wallet, brimful of pardons hot from Rome, lay before him on his saddle. His voice was as small as a goat's. He had no beard nor ever would have, his face was as smooth as if lately shaven; I believe he was a mare or a gelding. But as for his trade, from Berwick to Dover there was not such another pardoner. In his bag he had a pillow-case which he said was our Lady's kerchief, and a small piece of the sail which he said St. Peter had when he walked upon the sea and Jesus Christ caught him. He had a cross of latoun, set full of false gems, and pigs' bones in a glass. But with these relics, when he found a poor parson dwelling in the country, in one day he gained himself more money than the parson gained in two months. And thus, with flattering deceit and tricks, he made the parson and the people his dupes. But to give him his due, after all he was a noble ecclesiastic in church; he could read well a lesson or legend and best of all sing an offertory. For he knew well that when that was done he must preach and file his tongue smooth, to win silver as he well knew how. Therefore he sang merrily and loud.

Now I have told you in few words the station, the array, the number of this company and why they were assembled in Southwark as well, at this noble inn, the Tabard, close to the Bell tavern. But now it is time to say how we behaved that same evening, when we had arrived at that inn; and afterward I will tell you of our journey and the rest of our pilgrimage.

But first I pray that by your courtesy you ascribe it not to my ill manners if I speak plainly in this matter, telling you their words and cheer, and if I speak their very words as they were. For this you know as well as I, that whoever tells a tale that another has told, he must repeat every word, as nearly as he can, although he may speak ever so rudely and freely. Otherwise, he must tell his tale falsely, or pretend, or find new words. He may not spare any, even if it were his own brother; he is bound to say one word as well as the next. Christ himself spoke plainly in Holy Scriptures and you know well there is no baseness in that. And Plato, whoever can read him, says that the word must be cousin to the deed.

I also pray you to forgive me though I have not set folk here in this tale according to their station, as they should be. My wit is short, you can well understand.

Our host put us all in good spirits, and soon brought us to supper and served us with the best of provisions. The wine was strong and very glad we were to drink. Our Host was a seemly man, fit to be marshal in a banquet-hall, a large man with bright eyes, bold in speech, wise and discreet, lacking nothing of manhood: there is not a fairer burgher in Cheapside. He was in all things a very merry fellow, and after supper, when we had paid our bills, he began to jest and speak of mirth among other things.

"Now gentle people," he said, "truly you are heartily welcome to me, for, by my word, if I shall tell the truth, I have not seen this year so merry a company at this inn at once. I would gladly make mirth if I only knew how. And I have just now thought of a mirthful thing to give you pleasure, which shall cost nothing. You go to Canterbury, God speed you, and may the blessed martyr duly reward you! I know full well, along the way you mean to tell tales and amuse yourselves, for in truth it is no comfort or mirth to ride along dumb as a stone."

"And therefore, as I said, I will make you a game. If it please you all by common consent to stand by my words and to do as I shall tell you, now, by my father's soul (and he is in heaven), tomorrow as you ride along, if you are not merry, I will give you my head. Hold up your hands, without more words!"

Our mind was not long to decide. We thought it not worth debating, and agreed with him without more thought, and told him to say his verdict as he wished.

"Gentle people," said he, "please listen now, but take it not, I pray you, disdainfully. To speak briefly and plainly, this is the point, that each of you for pastime shall tell two tales in this journey to Canterbury, and two others on the way home, of things that have happened in the past. And whichever of you bears himself best, that is to say, that tells now tales most instructive and delighting, shall have a supper at the expense of us all, sitting here in this place, beside this post, when we come back from Canterbury. And to add to your sport I will gladly go with you at my own cost, and be your guide. And whoever opposes my judgment shall pay all that we spend on the way. If you agree that this will be so, tell me now, without more words, and without delay I will plan for that."

We agreed to this thing and pledged our word with glad hearts, and prayed him to do so, and to be our ruler and to remember and judge our tales, and to appoint a supper at a certain price. We would be ruled at his will in great and small, and thus with one voice we agreed to his judgment. At this the wine was fetched, and we drank and then each went to rest without a longer stay.

In the morning, when the day began to spring, our host arose and played rooster to us all, and gathered us in a flock. Forth we rode, a little faster than a walk, to St. Thomas-a-Watering. There our Host drew up his horse and said, "Listen, gentle people, if you will. You know your agreement; I remind you of it. If what you said at the hour of evensong last night is still what you agree to this morning at the time of matins, let us see who shall tell the first tale. So may I ever drink beer or wine, whoever rebels against my judgment shall pay all that is spent on the journey. Now draw lots, before we depart further; he who has the shortest shall begin the tales. Sir Knight, my master and my lord," said he, "now draw your lot, for this is my will. Come nearer, my lady Prioress, and you, sir Clerk, be not shy, study not; set your hands to them, every one of you."

Without delay every one began to draw, and in short, whether it were by chance or not, the truth is, the lot fell to the Knight, at which every one was merry and glad. He was to tell his tale, as was reasonable, according to the agreement that you have heard. What need is there for more words?

When this good man saw it was so, as one discreet and obedient to his free promise he said, "Since I begin the game, what, in God's name, welcome be the cut! Now let us ride on, and listen to what I say." And at that word we rode forth on our journey. And he soon began his tale with a cheerful spirit, and spoke in this way.

Here ends the Prologue of this book.

### The Miller's Tale

*Here follow the words between the Host and the Miller.*

#### *The Prologue of the Miller's Tale*

When the Knight had ended his tale, in the entire crowd was there nobody, young or old, who did not say it was a noble history and worthy to be called to mind; and especially each of the gentle people. Our Host laughed and swore, "So may I thrive, this goes well! The bag is unbuckled, let see now who shall tell another tale, for truly the sport has begun well. Now you, Sir Monk, if you can, tell something to repay the Knight's story with."

The Miller, who had drunk himself so completely pale that he could scarcely sit on his horse, would not take off his hood or hat, or wait and mind his manners for no one, but began to cry aloud in Pilate's voice, and swore by arms and blood and head, "I know a noble tale for the occasion, to repay the Knight's story with."

Our Host saw that he was all drunk with ale and said, "Wait, Robin, dear brother, some better man shall speak first; wait, and let us work thrifitly."

"By God's soul!" he said, "I will not do that! I will speak, or else go my way!"

"Tell on, in the Devil's name!" answered our Host. "You are a fool; your wits have been overcome."

"Now listen, one and all! But first," said the Miller, "I make a protestation that I am drunk; I know it by my voice.

And therefore if I speak as I should not, blame it on the ale of Southwark, I pray you; for I will tell a legend and a life of a carpenter and his wife, and how a clerk made a fool of the carpenter."

"Shut your trap!" the Reeve answered and said, "Set aside your rude drunken ribaldry. It is a great folly and sin to injure or defame any man, and to bring woman into such bad reputation. You can say plenty about other matters.

This drunken Miller answered back immediately and said, "Oswald, dear brother, he is no cuckold who has no wife. But I do not say, therefore, that you are one. There are many good wives, and always a thousand good to one bad. That you know well yourself, if you have not gone mad. Why are you angry now with my tale? I have a wife as well as you, by God, yet for all the oxen in my plough I would not presume to be able to judge myself if I may be a cuckold; I will believe well I am not one. A husband should not be too inquisitive about God's private matters, nor of his wife's. He can find God's plenty there; he need not inquire about the remainder."

What more can I say, but this Miller would withhold his word for nobody, and told his churl's tale in his own fashion. I think that I shall retell it here. And therefore I beg every gentle creature, for the love of God, not to judge that I tell it thus out of evil intent, but only because I must truly repeat all their tales, whether they are better or worse, or else tell some of my matter falsely. And therefore whoever wishes not to hear it, let them turn the leaf over and choose another tale; for they shall find plenty of historical matters, great and small, concerning noble deeds, and morality and holiness as well. Do not blame me if you choose incorrectly. The Miller is a churl, you know well, and so was the Reeve (and many others), and the two of them spoke of ribaldry. Think well, and do not blame me, and people should not take a game seriously as well.

Here ends the Prologue.

*Here begins the Miller's Tale.*

A while ago there dwelt at Oxford a rich churl fellow, who took guests as boarders. He was a carpenter by trade. With him dwelt a poor scholar who had studied the liberal arts, but all his delight was turned to learning astrology. He knew how to work out certain problems; for instance, if men asked him at certain celestial hours when there should be drought or rain, or what should happen in any matter; I cannot count every one.

This clerk was named gentle Nicholas. He was well skilled in secret love and consolation; and he was also sly and secretive about it; and as meek as a maiden to look upon. He had a chamber to himself in that lodging-house, without any company, and handsomely decked with sweet herbs; and he himself was as sweet as the root of licorice or any setwall. His Almagest, and other books great and small, his astrolabe, which he used in his art, and his counting-stones for calculating, all lay neatly by themselves on shelves at the head of his bed.

His clothes-press was covered with a red woolen cloth, and above it was set a pleasant psaltery, on which he made melody at night so sweetly that the entire chamber was full of it. He would sing the hymn Angelus ad Virginem, and after that the King's Note. Often was his merry throat blessed. And so this sweet clerk passed his time by help of what income he had and his friends provided.

This carpenter had newly wedded a wife, eighteen years of age, whom he loved more than his own soul. He was jealous, and held her closely caged, for she was young, and he was much older and judged himself likely to be made a cuckold.

His wit was rude, and he didn't know Cato's teaching that instructed that men should wed their equal. Men should wed according to their own station in life, for youth and age are often at odds. But since he had fallen into the snare, he must endure his pain, like other people.

This young wife was fair, and her body moreover was as graceful and slim as any weasel. She wore a striped silken belt, and over her loins an apron white as morning's milk, all flounced out. Her smock was white and embroidered on the collar, inside and outside, in front and in back, with coal-black silk; and of the same black silk were the strings of her white hood, and she wore a broad band of silk, wrapped high about her hair.

And surely she had a lecherous eye; her eyebrows were arched and black as a sloe berry, and partly plucked out to make them narrow. She was more delicious to look on than the young pear-tree in bloom, and softer than a lamb's wool. From her belt hung a leather purse, tasseled with silk and with beads of brass.

In all this world there is no man so wise who could imagine such a wench, or so lively a little doll. Her hue shone more brightly than the noble newly forged in the Tower. And as for her singing, it was as loud and lively as a swallow's sitting on a barn. And she could skip and make merry as any kid or calf following its mother. Her mouth was sweet as honeyed ale or mead, or a hoard of apples laid in the hay or heather. She was skittish as a jolly colt, tall as a mast, and upright as a bolt. She wore a brooch on her low collar as broad as the embossed center of a shield, and her shoes were laced high on her legs. She was a primrose, a pig's-eye, for a lord to lie in his bed or even a yeoman to wed.

Now sir, and again sir, it so chanced that this gentle Nicholas fell to play and romp with this young wife, as clerks are very artful and sly, on a day when her husband was at Osney. And secretly he caught hold of her genitalia and said: "Surely, unless you will love me, sweetheart, I shall die for my secret love of you. And he held her hard by the thighs and said, "Sweetheart, love me now, or I will die, may God save me!"

She sprang back like a colt in the halter, and wriggled away with her head. "I will not kiss you, in faith," she said. Why, let me be, let me be, Nicholas, or I will cry out, 'Alas! Help! Take away your hands, by your courtesy!'

But this Nicholas began to beg for her grace, and spoke so fairly and made such offers that at last she granted him her love and swore by Saint Thomas of Kent that she would do his will when she should see her chance.

"My husband is so jealous that unless you are secretive and watch your time, I know very well I am no better than dead. You must be very sly in this thing."

"No, have no fear about that," said Nicholas. "A clerk has spent his time poorly if he can not beguile a carpenter!"

And thus they were agreed and pledged to watch for a time, as I have told. When Nicholas had done so, petted her well on her limbs, and kissed her sweetly, he took his psaltery and made melody and played fervently.

Then it happened on a holy day that this wife went to the parish church to work Christ's own works. Her forehead shone as bright as day, since she had scrubbed it when she had finished her tasks.

Now at that church there was a parish clerk named Absalom. His hair was curly and shone like gold, and spread out like a large broad fan; its neat part ran straight and even. His complexion was rosy, and his eyes as gray as goose-quills. His leather shoes were carved in such a way that they resembled a window in Paul's Church. He went clad precisely and neatly all in red hose and a kirtle of a light watchet-blue; the laces were set in it fair and thick, and over it he had a lively surplice, as white as a blossom on a twig. God bless me, but he was a sweet lad!

He knew well how to clip and shave and let blood, and make a quittance or a charter for land. He could trip and dance in twenty ways in the manner of Oxford in that day, and cast with his legs back and forth, and play songs on a small fiddle. He could play on his cittern as well, and sometimes sang in a loud treble. In the whole town there was no brew-house or tavern where any tapster might be that he did not visit in his merrymaking. But to tell the truth he was some-what squeamish about farting and rough speech.

This Absalom, so pretty and fine, went on this holy day with a censer, diligently incensing the wives of the parish, and he cast many longing looks on them, and especially on this carpenter's wife. To look at her seemed to him a sweet employment, as she was so sweet and proper and lusty; I dare say, if she had been a mouse and he a cat, he would have pounced on her immediately. And this sweet parish-clerk had such a love-longing in his heart that at the offertory he would take nothing from any wife; for courtesy, he said, he would take none.

When at night the moon shone very beautifully and Absalom intended to remain awake all night for love's sake, he took his cittern and went forth, amorous and jolly, until he came to the carpenter's house a little after the cocks had crowed, and pulled himself up by a casement-window.

Dear lady, if your will so be,  
I pray you that you pity me

He sang in his sweet small voice, in nice harmony with his cittern.

This carpenter woke, heard his song and said without hesitation to his wife, "What, Alison! Don't you hear Absalom chanting this way under our own bedroom-wall?"

"Yes, God knows, John," she answered him, "I hear every bit of it."

Thus it went on; what would you have better than well-enough? From day to day this jolly Absalom wooed her until he was all woe-begone. He remained awake all night and all day, he combed his spreading locks and preened himself, he wooed her by go-betweens and agents, and swore he would be her own page; he sang quavering like a nightingale; he sent her mead, and wines sweetened and spiced, and wafers piping hot from the coals, and because she was from the town he proffered her money. For some people will be won by rich gifts and some by blows and some by courtesy. Sometimes, to show his cheerfulness and skill, he would play Herod on a high scaffold.

But in such a case what could help him? She so loved gentle Nicholas that Absalom may as well go blow the buck's-horn. For all his labor he had nothing but scorn, and thus she made Absalom her ape and turned all his earnest to a joke. This proverb is true—it is no lie. Men say it is just so: "The sly nearby one makes the far dear one loathed." For though Absalom may go mad for it, because he was far from her eye, this nearby Nicholas stood in his light. Now bear yourself well, gentle Nicholas, for Absalom may wail and sing "Alack!"

And so it happened one Saturday that the carpenter had gone to Osney, and gentle Nicholas and Alison had agreed upon this, that Nicholas would create a ruse to beguile this poor jealous husband; and if the game went as planned, she should be his, for this was his desire and hers also. And immediately, without more words, Nicholas would delay no longer, but had food and drink for a day or two carried softly into his chamber, and instructed her say to her husband, if he asked about him, that she did not know where he was; that she had not set eyes upon him

all that day and she believed he was in some malady, for not by any crying out could her maid rouse him; he would not answer at all, for nothing.

Thus passed forth all that Saturday; Nicholas lay still in his chamber, and ate and slept or did what he wished, until Sunday toward sundown. This simple carpenter had great wonder about Nicholas, what could ail him. "By Saint Thomas," he said, "I am afraid all is not well with Nicholas. God forbid that he has died suddenly! This world nowadays is so ticklish, surely; to-day I saw carried to church a corpse that I saw at work last Monday. Go up, call at his door," he said to his boy, "or knock with a stone; see how it is, and tell me straight."

This boy went up sturdily, stood at the chamber-door, and cried and knocked like mad: "What! How! What are you doing, master Nicholas? How can you sleep all day long?"

But all was for nothing; he heard not a word. Then he found a hole, low down in the wall, where the cat would usually creep in; and through that he looked far into it and at last caught sight of him.

Nicholas sat ever gaping upward as if he were peering at the new moon. Down went the boy, and told his master in what plight he saw this man.

The carpenter began to cross himself and said, "Help us, Saint Frideswide! People know little what shall happen to them. This man with his astronomy is fallen into some madness or some fit; I always thought how it would end this way. Men were not intended to know God's secrets. Yes, happy is an unlearned man that never had schooling and knows nothing but his beliefs!"

"So fared another clerk with his astronomy; he walked in the fields to look upon the stars, to see what was to happen, until he fell into a clay-pit that he did not see! But yet, by Saint Thomas, I am very sorry about gentle Nicholas. By Jesus, King of Heaven, he shall be scolded for his studying if I may. Get me a staff, Robin, so that I can pry under the door while you heave it up. I believe we shall rouse him from his studying!"

And so he went to the chamber door. His boy was a strong lad, and quickly heaved the door up by the hinges, and it immediately fell flat upon the floor. Nicholas sat ever as still as a stone, ever gaping into the air. This carpenter believed he had fallen into despair, and seized him mightily by the shoulders and shook him hard and cried wildly, "What, Nicholas! What, ho! What, look down! Awake, think on Christ's passion; I cross thee from elves and un-earthly creatures!" And at that point he said the night-spell, toward the four corners of the house and on the outside of the threshold of the door:

Jesus Christ and sweet Saint Benedict  
Bless this house from every wicked sprit.  
For the night-hag, the white pater noster;  
Where did you go, Saint Peter's sister?

At last this gentle Nicholas began to sigh sorely, and said, "Alack! Shall the entire world be destroyed again now?"

"What are you saying?" said the carpenter. "What now! Think on God, as we do, we men that work."

"Fetch me a drink," said Nicholas, "and after I will speak privately of a certain thing that concerns you and me both. I will tell it to no other man, you can be sure."

The carpenter went down and came again bringing a large quart of mighty ale; and when each of them had drunk his share, Nicholas shut his door fast and set the carpenter down beside him.

"John, my dear host," he said, "you shall swear to me here on your honor that you will reveal this secret to no creature; for it is Christ's own secret that I show you, and if you tell it to any you are a lost man. For this vengeance you will receive, therefore: if you betray me, you shall run mad!"

"No, may Christ and His holy blood forbid!" said this simple man. "I am no blabber, and though I say it myself, I am not wont to prate. Say what you will, I shall never utter it to man, woman or child, by Him That harrowed hell!"

"Now, John, I will not deceive you," said Nicholas; "I have found by my astrology, as I have been looking in the shining moon, that now a Monday next, about a quarter through the night, there shall fall a rain so wild and mad that never was Noah's flood half so great. This world shall all be drowned in less than an hour, so hideous shall be the downpour. Thus shall all mankind perish in the flood."

"Alas, my wife! And shall she drown?" this carpenter answered, and nearly fell over for sorrow. "Alas, my Ali-son! Is there no remedy?"

"Why yes, before God, if you will work according to wise advising," said gentle Nicholas; "but you may not work out of your own head. For thus says Solomon, and he was right trustworthy, "Work all by counsel, and you shall never repent." And if you will work after good advice, I undertake without mast or sail to save both her and you and me. Have you not heard how Noah was saved, when our Lord had warned him that the entire world should be destroyed with water?"

"Yes," said the carpenter, "I heard it long, long ago."

"Have you not heard also," said Nicholas, "the woe that Noah and his sons had before he could get his wife

aboard? He had rather than all his black rams then, I dare be bound, that she had had a ship all to herself! Do you know then what is best to do? This thing calls for haste, and on an urgent matter one may not preach or delay. Go immediately and get us directly into this house a kneading-trough or else a brewing-tub for each of us (but make sure that they are large), in which we may swim as if in a barge and have in enough provisions for a day - we will need no more. The water shall slacken and run off about nine o'clock on the next day. But Robin your boy must not know of this, and I cannot save your maid Jill either. Do not ask why, for even if you ask me I will not tell God's secret. It ought to suffice you, if your wits are not turning, to have as great a grace as Noah had. I shall save your wife, I promise you. Go your way now, and make haste.

"But when you have obtained these three kneading-tubs for us three, then you shall hang them from the rafters high in the roof, so that no man notice our device. And when you have done this, and laid our provisions in them nicely, and an axe as well to strike the cord in two when the water comes, and when you have broken a hole on high in the gable toward the garden over the barn, so that we may freely go on our way when the great shower is past - then you will float as merrily, I will be bound, as the white duck after her drake. Then will I call out, 'How, Alison! How, John! Be merry; the flood will soon pass.' And you will answer, 'Hail, Master Nicholas! Good morning, I see you well, it is daylight now!' And then we shall be lords over the entire world until we die, just as Noah and his wife!"

"But one thing I warn you of strictly. Be well advised on that night when we have entered aboard ship that none of us speaks a word, neither calls nor cries, but we must be in our prayers. For that is God's own precious command. And your wife and you must hang far apart, so that there will be no folly between you, any more in looking than in action. Now that all this plan is explained to you; go, and may God help you! Tomorrow at night, when people are all in bed, we will creep into our kneading-tubs and sit there, awaiting God's grace. Go your way now; I have no time to make a longer sermon of this. Men say thus: "Send the wise and say nothing." You are so wise that there is no need to teach you. Go, save our lives, I entreat you."

This simple carpenter went his way often crying "alack!" and "alas!", and told the secret to his wife. And she was wary, and knew better than he what this quaint plan was about. But nevertheless she acted as if she would die, and said, "Alas! Go your way at once and help us to escape, or else we are all lost; I am your true, faithful wedded wife. Go, dear spouse, and help to save us!"

Lo, how great a thing is feeling! Men may die of imagination, so deep may the impression be. This simple fellow began to quake; he thought he could truly hear Noah's flood come wallowing like the sea to drown his honey sweet Alison; he wept, wailed and made sorrowful expression, and he sighed with many a sorry gust. He went and got himself a kneading-trough, and after that a tub and a cask, sent them secretly to his house and hung them in the roof. With his own hand he made three ladders, to climb by the rungs and uprights into the tubs hanging among the beams; and supplied tub and trough and cask with bread and cheese as well as good ale in a large jug, sufficient for a day. But before he had made all this gear, he sent his serving boy and girl to London about his business. And as it drew toward night on the Monday, he lit no candle, but shut the door and ordered all things as they should be; and, in brief, up they all three climbed, and sat still while a man could walk a furlong.

"Now mum, and say a pater noster!" said Nicholas; and "Mum!" said John, and "Mum!" Alison. This carpenter sat still and said his prayers, ever listening for the rain, if he could hear it.

The dead sleep, for very weariness and apprehension, fell on this carpenter even about curfew-time or a little later, as I suppose; he groaned sorely in the travail of his spirit, and eke snored, for his head lay uneasily. Down the ladder stalked Nicholas, and Alison sped down very softly; and they were in mirth and glee, until the bells began to sound for lauds, and friars in the chancel began to sing.

This parish-clerk, amorous Absalom, always so woe-begone for love, was at Oseney on that Monday to amuse himself and make merry, with a party; and by chance he secretly asked a cloister-monk after John the carpenter. The monk drew him aside out of the church. "I know not," he said; "I have not seen him work here since Saturday. I believe he has gone where our abbot has sent him for timber, for he is accustomed to go for timber and remain at the grange a day or two. Or else he is at home, certainly. In truth I cannot say where he is."

This Absalom grew very merry of heart, and thought, "Now is the time to wake all night, for certainly since daybreak I have not seen him stirring about his door. On my soul, at cockcrow I shall knock secretly at his window which stands low upon his chamber-wall. To Alison now will I tell the whole of my love-longing, and now I shall not fail at the least to have a kiss from her. I shall have some sort of comfort, in faith. My mouth has itched all day long; that is a sign of kissing at least."

All night eke I dreamed I was at a festival. Therefore I will go sleep an hour or two, and then I will wake all night in mirth."

When the first cock had crowed, up rose this frisky lover, and arrayed him in his gayest with all nicety. But first he chewed cardamoms and licorice to smell sweetly, before he had combed his hair, and put a true-love charm under his tongue, for by this he hoped to find favor. He rambled to the carpenter's house, and stood still under the casement, which was so low it reached to his breast. He gave a soft half-cough,-"What do you, sweet Alison, honey-

comb? My fair bird, my darling! Awake, sweet cinnamon, and speak to me. You think right little upon my sorrow, who sweat for your love wherever I go!

No wonder though I languish and sweat! I mourn like a lamb after the dug. In faith, darling, I have such love-longing that I mourn like the true turtle-dove. I cannot eat, no more than a maiden."

"Go from the window, Jack-fool," she said. "On my soul, there will be no singing "Come kiss me now." I love another better than you, by heaven, Absalom, and else I were at fault. Go your ways, or I will cast a stone at you, and let me sleep, in the Devil's name!"

"Alas!" he said. "Alackaday that true love was ever so ill bestowed! Then kiss me, since it may be no better, for Jesus' love, and for the love of me."

"Will you then go your way with that?" she said.

"Yes, surely, sweetheart," said this Absalom.

"Then make yourself ready," she said, "I am coming now."

And to Nicholas she said silently, "Now hush, and you shall laugh your fill."

This Absalom set himself down on his knees and said, "I am a lord of the highest degree; for after this I hope there will come more. Sweetheart, your grace, and sweet bird, your favor!"

She unlatches the window, and does so in haste. "Take this," she said, "come now, and move quickly, lest our neighbors see you."

This Absalom wiped his mouth dry. Dark as pitch, or as coal, was the night, and at the window she put out her hole, and Absalom, who knew no better or worse but with his mouth he kissed her naked ass so sweetly, before he was aware of this.

He started aback, and thought something was amiss, for well he knew a woman has no beard. He felt something all rough and long-haired, and said, "Fy! alas! What have I done?"

"Tee hee!" she said, and shut the window, and Absalom went forth with troubled steps.

"A beard! A beard!" said handy Nicholas, "By God's body, this goes fair and well."

This foolish Absalom heard every bit, and on his lips he began to bite angrily, and said to himself, "I shall pay you back."

Who rubs now, and who chafes now, his lips with dust, with sand, with straw, with cloth, with chips, but Absalom, who says over and over, "Alas! I commend my soul unto Satan"? But I would rather be revenged for this insult" he said, "than own this entire town. Alas," he said, "alas, that I did not turn aside!"

His hot love was now cold and entirely quenched; for from that moment that he had kissed her ass, he cared not a straw for things of love, for he was healed of his sickness. Often the things of love he defied, and wept as does a child that is beaten.

This Absalom walked slowly across the street to a smith called Master Gervase, who forged plough-instruments at his forge. He was busily sharpening coulter and share when Absalom knocked very gently and said, "Unlock the door, Gervase, and do it quickly."

"What! Who are you?"

"It is me, Absalom."

"What, Absalom! By the cross, why are you up so early? Eh, God bless! What ails you? Some pretty girl, God knows, has brought you to stir so early. By Saint Neot, you know well what I mean!"

This Absalom cared not a peascod for all his mocking, and returned not a word in kind. He had more wool on his distaff than Gervase knew, and said, "Dear friend, that hot coulter in the chimney—lend it to me. I have something to do with it; and I will bring it you again right away."

"Surely," answered Gervase, "even if it were gold or nobles in a bag all uncounted, you should have it, as I am a faithful smith! Eh, the Devil, what do you want to do with it?"

"That is as it may be," said Absalom. I shall tell you tomorrow;" and he took up the coulter by the cool handle. Softly he went out the door and went to the wall of the carpenter's house. He coughed first, and knocked withal upon the window, as he did before.

"Who is there that knocks so?" Alison answered. "I warrant it a thief!"

"Why nay," he said, "God knows, my sweet, I am your Absalom, my sweetheart. I have brought you a ring of gold; my mother gave it me, on my life! It is very fine and nicely engraved. I will give you this, if you kiss me!"

This Nicholas had risen to take a piss, and he thought he would contribute to the joke; he should kiss him before he ran off! And he threw up the window in haste and quietly put his ass out—past the buttocks, all the way to the thigh-bone. Thereupon spoke this clerk Absalom, Speak, sweet bird, I know not where thou art. This Nicholas then let fly a fart as great as a thunder-clap, so much so that with the stroke Absalom was almost blinded; and he was ready with his hot iron and smote Nicholas on the ass.

Off went the skin, about a hands-breadth around, the hot coulter burned his rump so, and for the pain he thought he would die. "Help! Water, water! Help, help, for God's sake!" he cried like a madman.

The carpenter started out of his slumber; he heard one cry wildly "Water!", and thought, "Alas! Noah's flood is coming now!" He sat up without a word, and with his axe struck the cord in two, and down went tub and all; they stopped for nothing until they came to the floor, and there he lay in a swoon.

Up started Alison and Nicholas, and cried "Help!" and "Alack!" in the street. The neighbors young and old ran to stare upon him as he lay yet in a swoon, for with the fall he had broken his arm.

But he must even digest his own trouble, for when he spoke he was talked down by Alison and gentle Nicholas. They told every man he was mad, he was aghast so of "Noah's flood" in his fantasy, that of his folly he had bought him three kneading-tubs and had hung them above in the roof; and had prayed them for God's sake to sit with him in the roof, to keep him company.

People laughed at his odd quirk; into the roof they peered and gawked, and turned all his trouble into mirth. For whatever the carpenter answered, it was all for naught; no man heard his speeches, he was so sworn down by the great oaths of the others that in the entire city he was held as mad. Every clerk then agreed with every other clerk: "the man is mad, my dear brother!" And every creature laughed over this contention.

Thus the carpenter lost his wife, for all his watching and jealousy; and Nicholas was sore burned. This tale is done, and God save the entire company.

Here ends the Miller's Tale.

### The Wife of Bath's Tale

#### *The Prologue of the Wife of Bath's Tale*

"Experience, though it would be no authority in this world, would be quite sufficient for me, to speak of the woe that is in marriage; for, gentle people, since I was twelve years old—thank God, Who lives forever—I have had five husbands at the church-door (for I have been wedded so often); and all were worthy men in their ranks. But in truth I was told not long ago that since Christ went only once to a wedding, in Cana of Galilee, by that same example he taught me that I should be wedded only once. Lo! Hear what a sharp word Jesus, man and God, spoke on a certain occasion beside a well, in reproof of the Samaritan woman. He said, 'You have had five husbands; and that man who has you now is not your husband.' Thus he said, certainly. What he meant by it I cannot say; but I ask, why the fifth man was no husband to the Samaritan woman.

"How many could she have in marriage? At this point I have never in my life heard a designation of the number. Men may divine and interpret up and down, but well I know, surely, God expressly instructed us to increase and multiply. I can well understand that noble text. Likewise, I know well he said also that my husband should leave father and mother and take me. But he did not mention any number, not bigamy or of octogamy. Why should men speak villainously of them?

"Lo, Sir Solomon the wise king! I believe he had more than one wife, and I wish to God it were lawful for me to be refreshed half so often! What a gift of God he had in all his wives! No man who lives in this world now has so many. God knows this noble king, to my thinking, had a merry life with each of them, so joyous was his lot! Blessed be God that I wedded five! And they were the best that I could pick out, both in their bodies and of their coffers. A variety of schools make perfect scholars, and much practice in a variety of employments truly makes the perfect workman. I have the schooling of five husbands. I would welcome the sixth, whenever he shall come! In truth, I will not keep myself wholly chaste; when my husband has departed from the world, then some other Christian man shall wed me. For then, the apostle says, I am free, in God's name, to wed where I wish.

"He says that it is no sin to be wedded; it is better to be wedded than to burn. What do I care if people speak badly of cursed Lamech and his bigamy? Well I know Abraham was a holy man, and Jacob as well, as far as I know, and each of them had more than two wives. And many other holy men did as well.

"When have you seen that in any time great God forbade marriage explicitly? Tell me, I pray you. Or where did he command virginity? You know as well as I, without a doubt, that the apostle, when he speaks of maidenhood, says that he had no instructions on it. Men may counsel a woman to be single, but counseling is not commanding; he left it to our own judgment. For if God had commanded maidenhood, then with that same word had he condemned marrying. And certainly, if no seed were sown, from where then should virgins spring? Paul dared not command a thing for which his master gave no order. The prize is set for virginity—win it who can. Let us see who runs best.

"But this command is not to be taken by every creature, but only where Almighty God wishes to give it through his might. The apostle was a virgin, I know well, but nevertheless, though he wrote that he wished every creature to be like him, all that is only advice to be a virgin; and he gave me leave and indulgence to be a wife. So likewise, if my spouse should die, there is no shame or charge of bigamy to marry me. It would be good, he said, to touch no woman, for it is a peril to bring together fire and hay. You know what this example may mean.

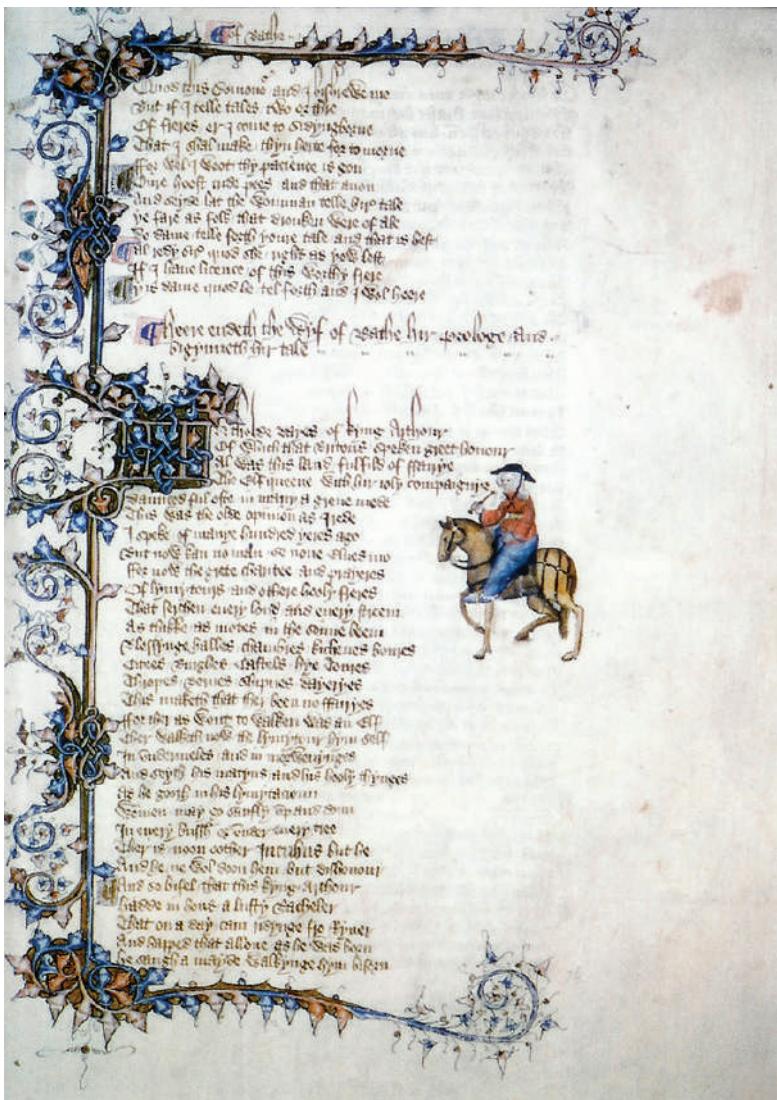
"This is the sum of it all: the apostle held virginity to be more perfect than marriage because of weakness. I call

them weak unless man and wife would lead all their life in chastity. I grant it well, I have no malice even if maidenhood were set above remarriage. It pleases them to be clean, body and soul; of my own estate I will make no boast. For you well know that not every vessel in a lord's house is made of gold; some are of wood, and do their lord service. God calls people to him in various manners, and each one has his own gift from—one this, one that, as it pleases God to provide. Virginity is a great perfection, and devoted chastity as well.

But Christ, the fountain of perfection, did not instruct every person to go sell all that he had and give to the poor, and in such a fashion follow him and his footsteps. "He spoke this to those people who wished to be perfect; and by your leave, gentle people, I am not one of those. I will use the flower of my life in the acts and fruits of marriage.

Tell me also, for what purpose were members of procreation made, and made in such a perfect manner? Trust well, they were not made for nothing. Whosoever wishes to interpret may do so, and interpret things up and down that and say that they were made for purging urine and that both our small things were also to know a female from a male and for no other cause—did someone say no? Those with experience know well it is not so. So that scholars will not be angry with me, I say this: that they are made for both; that is to say, for duty and for ease of procreation, providing we do not displease God. Why should men otherwise set down in their books that man shall yield to his wife her debt? Now with what should he make his payment, if he did not use his blessed instrument? They were made then upon a creature to purge urine, and for procreation as well.

But I do not say that every person who has such equipment is bound to go and use it for procreation. For that reason people should men take no heed of chastity. Christ was a virgin and created as a man, as were many saints since the beginning of the world; yet they always lived in perfect chastity. I will not envy any virginity. Let virgins be called bread of purified wheat-seed, and let us wives be called barley-bread; and yet, as Mark can tell, our Lord Jesus refreshed many people with barley-bread. I will persevere in such a state as God has called us to; I am not particular. In wifehood I will use my instrument as freely as



**IMAGE 5.6: THE WIFE OF BATH PROLOGUE** | "The Wife of Bath" prologue, a tale from *The Canterbury Tales*, from the Ellesmere manuscript.

**Author:** User "SkedO"

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

my Maker has sent it. If I am unaccommodating to my husband, may God give me sorrow. My husband shall have it both evening and morning, whenever it pleases him to come forth and pay his debt. I will not stop. I will have a husband who will be both my debtor and servant, and have his tribulation upon his flesh, while I am his wife. As long as I live I, and not he, have the power over his body. The apostle told it to me in this very way, and instructed our husbands to love us well. This entire subject pleases me well, every bit.

Up started the Pardoner, and without delay. "Now lady," he said, "by God and St. John, you are a noble preacher in this matter! I was about to wed a wife; alas! Why should I pay for it so dearly upon my flesh? I would rather not wed any wife this year."

"Wait! My tale is not yet begun," she said. "No, before I go you shall drink out of another barrel that will taste worse than ale. And when I have told my story to you about the tribulation in marriage, in which I have been expert

all my life (that is to say, I myself have been the scourge), then you may choose whether you will sip of that same barrel that I shall broach. Be mindful, before you come too close; for I shall tell half a score of examples. ‘Whosoever will not be warned by other men, by him shall other men be corrected’: these same words writes Ptolemy; read his Almagest.”

“Lady,” said this Pardoner, “I would pray you, if it were your pleasure, tell your tale as you began, hold back for no man, and teach us young men from your experience.”

“Gladly,” she said, “if it may please you. But I beg all of you in this company, if I speak according to my fancy, do not take it amiss. For my intent is but to make sport. Now, sirs, I will continue.

“May I never see another drop of ale or wine, if I did not tell the truth about my husbands, as three of them were good, and two of them were bad. The three men were good, rich and old, and they hardly could keep their obligation to me, by which they were bound to me. By God, you know well what I mean by this. May God help me, I laugh when I think how pitifully I made them work at night! And, by my faith, I found it useless. I did not need to make an effort or pay them any respect to win their love. They loved me so well, by God above, that I set no value on their love. A wise woman will always attempt to win love where she has none; but since I had them wholly in my hand and had all their land, why should I bother to please them, unless it were for my profit and pleasure? I ruled them so, by my faith, that many nights they sang ‘alas!’

“Not for them, I believe, was fetched the bacon that some men win at Dunmow in Essex. I governed them so well by my rules that each of them was blissful and glad to bring me beautiful things from the fair. They were glad when I spoke friendly to them, for God knows, I chided them without mercy. Now listen, you wise wives who can understand, hear how craftily I behaved myself.

“Thus shall you speak, and thus you shall put them in the wrong, for there is no man who can swear and lie half so boldly as a woman. I say this for the benefit of wise wives when they have made a little misstep. A wise wife, if she knows what is good for her, shall make a man believe that the jackdaw is mad, and shall use her own maid as a witness to confirm it.

“But now hear how I spoke: ‘Old sir fogey, is this how you would have things? Why is my neighbor’s wife so fine? She is honored everywhere she goes, while I have no decent clothes and must sit at home. Are you in love? What are you doing at my neighbor’s house? Is she so fair? What do you whisper with our maid? God bless! Leave behind your tricks, old sir lecher! And if I have a friend or a gossip, completely innocent, and I walk to his house or amuse myself there, you chide me like a fiend. You come home as drunk as a mouse and sit on your bench preaching, with no good reason. You say to me, it is a great evil to wed a poor woman, for the cost; and if she were rich, of noble birth, then you say that it is a torment to suffer her pride and her melancholy. And if she were fair, you say that every lecher will have her, you very knave! She who is assailed on every side cannot remain in chastity for long.’

“You say that some folk desire us for our wealth, some for our figure, some for our beauty, some because we can sing or dance, some for our manners and mirth, and some for our hands and slim arms. Thus all goes to the Devil, by your account.

“You say that a castle wall can not be defended when it is assailed so long from every side. And if a woman be foul, then you say that she covets every man she sees, and will leap on him like a spaniel, until she find some man to do business with her. You say no goose in the lake that is too grey to look for a mate. And you say that it is a hard matter to control a thing that no man would be willing to keep.

“Thus you say, old fool, when you are going to bed; that no wise man need marry, nor any man who hopes for heaven. With a wild thunder-clap and fiery lightning-bolt may your withered neck be snapped in two! You say that leaky houses, smoke, and chiding wives, make men flee from their own homes.

“Ah, God bless! What ails such an old man to scold like this? You say that we wives will cover our vices until we are safely married, and then we show them. That is a villain’s proverb! You say that oxen, asses, horses, and hounds are tested for some time before men buy them, and so are basins, wash-bowl, spoons, stools, pots, clothes, attire, and all such household stuff; but people make no test of wives until they are wedded. And then, you old rascally dotard, you say, we will show our vices.

“You say also it displeases me unless you praise my beauty and gaze ever upon my face and call me ‘fair lady’ everywhere; and unless you make a feast on my birthday, and dress me gay and freshly; and unless you do honor to my nurse, and to my maid in my bower, and to my father’s family—all this you say, old barrel-full of lies.

“And yet you have gathered a false suspicion of our apprentice Jankin, for his crisp hair shining like fine gold, and because he escorts me back and forth. I would not have him, even if you should die tomorrow! But tell me this—and bad luck to you!—why do you hide the keys of your chest from me? By God, they are my goods as well as yours! Why do you intend to make a fool of the mistress of your house? Now by the lord who is called St. James, however you may rage, you shall not be master both of my body and of my goods; you must give up one of them, in spite of your eyes.

“What good does it do if you inquire after me or spy upon me? You want to lock me in your chest, I believe! You should say, ‘Wife, go where you wish, take your pleasure, I will believe no tales; I know you for a true wife,

Lady Alice." We love no man who takes note or care where we go; we wish to have our freedom. May he be blessed of all men, that wise astrologer, Sir Ptolemy, who says this proverb in his book Almagest, "Of all men, he who never cares who has the world in hand has the greatest wisdom." You are to understand by this proverb that you have enough: why do you need to care how well-off other people are? For in truth, old fogey, you shall have plenty of pleasing thing in the evening. He who will forbid a man to light a candle at his lantern is too great a miser; by God, he should have light, nevertheless. So you have enough; you need not complain.

"You say also that if we make ourselves amorous with clothing and with costly dress, it would be a peril to our chastity; and yet—may the plague take you!—you must confirm it with these words of the apostle: "Ye women shall apparel yourselves in garments made with chastity and shame," he said, "and not with tressed hair and splendid gems and pearls, nor with gold, nor rich clothes." I would not give a fly for your text or your rubric.

"You said also I was like a cat; for a cat, if someone were to singe the cat's skin, will always dwell at home; but if she were sleek and elegant in her fur, she will not remain in the house an hour, but before any day would dawn, will go forth to show her skin and go a-caterwauling. This is to say, sir rogue, if I am finely dressed, I will run out to show my clothes.

"Sir old fool, what ails you to spy after me? Even if you were to ask Argus to be my sentry with his hundred eyes as best he can, in faith, he shall not keep watch over me unless it suits me. Still I could deceive him, as I hope to prosper!

"You say also that there are three things that trouble this entire world, and that no creature can endure the fourth. Oh, dear sir rascal, may Jesus shorten your life! Still you preach and say a hateful woman is considered one of these adversities. Are there no other things you can use for comparison without an innocent wife being one of them?

"You compare woman's love to hell, or to barren land where no water can lie. You compare it also to wildfire; the more it burns, the more it desires to consume everything that can be burned. You say that just as worms destroy a tree, so too a wife destroys her husband; those who are tied to women know this.

"Gentle people, in this very way, as you can see, I would firmly swear to my old husbands, that they said this in their drunkenness; and all was false, except I got Jankin and my niece to be my witnesses. O Lord! The pain and woe I did them, though they were innocent, by God's sweet suffering! For I could bite and whinny like a horse. I knew how to complain, even if I was guilty; or else I would have often been undone. He who first comes to the mill, grinds first; I complained first, and thus our war was ended. They were very glad to excuse themselves hurriedly of things that they never had done in all their lives. I would accuse my old husband of visiting prostitutes, even when they were so sick that they could scarcely stand.

"Yet I tickled his heart because he thought that I had such great fondness for him. I swore that all my walking about at night was to spot wenches whom he slept with. Under that pretext I had many privy jests at him; for all such wit is given to us when we are born. God has given deceit, weeping, and spinning to women by nature, so long as they live.

"And thus I boast of one thing for myself: in the end I had the better in every way, by cunning, or by force, or by some type of device, such as continual murmuring or grumbling. And most chiefly at night they had ill fortune; then I would scold and grant him no pleasure. I would not stay in bed any longer if I felt his arm over my side, until he had paid his ransom to me. And therefore I tell this to every man: let he who can, prosper, for everything has its price. Men may lure no hawks with an empty hand. For the sake of gain I would give them their way, and pretend to have an appetite; and yet I never had pleasure in bacon, from Dunmow or elsewhere. And so I would be chiding them all the time; even if the pope had sat beside them, by my word, I would not spare them at their own table. I repaid them word for word; so may the Almighty Lord help me, if I ere to make my testament right now, I would not owe them a word that has not been repaid. By my wits I made it so that they were glad to surrender, as their best option, or we would have never been at peace. For though my husband looked like a mad lion, he was nonetheless bound to fail in his purpose.

"Then would I say, 'Good dear, take note how meekly Wilkin our sheep looks; come near, my spouse, let me kiss your cheek. You should be all patient and mild, and have a sweet tender conscience, since you thus preach of the patience of Job. Always endure, since you can preach so well; and unless you do, we must teach you for sure that it is pleasant to have a wife in peace. Truly, one of us two must bend to the other and since a man is more reasonable than a woman, you must be patient. What ails you to grumble and groan in this way? Is it because you want to have my body all to yourself? Why, take it all! Have every bit! By Peter, I curse you, but you love it well! If I would sell my beautiful thing, I could walk as fresh as a rose, but I will keep it for your own taste. You are to blame, by God! I tell you the truth.' We had this sort of words between us; but now I will speak about my fourth husband.

"My fourth husband was a reveller, that is to say, he had a paramour—and I was young and full of frolic, stubborn and strong, and jolly as a magpie. I could dance well to a little harp, and sing like any nightingale, when I had taken a draught of sweet wine. Metellius, the filthy churl, the swine, who with a staff bereft his spouse of her life,

because she drank wine, would not have frightened me from drink, if I had been his wife! And when I think of wine I must think of Venus; for just as surely as cold engenders hail, a lecherous mouth leads to a lecherous body. There is no defense in a woman who is full of wine, as lechers know by experience.

"Lord Christ! But when I think about my youth and mirth, it tickles me at the root of my heart! To this very day it does my heart good that I have had my fling in my time. But alas! Age, which envenoms all things, has bereft me of my beauty and energy. Let them go. Farewell! May the Devil go with them! The flour is gone, and there is no more to say; now I sell the bran as best as I can. But even now I will strive to be very merry.

"Now I will tell of my fourth husband. I say I had great resentment in my heart that he had pleasure in any other. But by the Lord and Saint Joce, he was paid back! I made a cross from the same wood for his back; not with my body, in any foul manner, but truly I offered people such generous hospitality that for anger and absolute jealousy I made him fry in his own grease. By God, I was his purgatory on earth, wherefore I hope that his soul is in glory now.

"For God knows, he sat often and sang, when his shoe pinched him bitterly: No creature knew, except God and he, how sorely I twisted him in so many ways. He died when I returned home from Jerusalem, and lies buried under the cross-beam, albeit his tomb is not quite as elaborately crafted as the sepulcher of Darius that Apelles so skilfully made. It would have been a waste to bury him at such an expense! Farewell to him; he is now in his grave and in his coffin—God rest his soul!

"Now will I speak of my fifth husband—may God never allow his soul to enter hell! And yet he was the most villainous to me, as I can still feel on my ribs all in a row, and ever shall to my ending day. But he was so fresh and merry, and could sweet-talk so well that, even if he had beaten me on every bone, he could soon win my beautiful thing again. I believe I loved him best, because he was sparing in his love.

"We women have, to tell the truth, an odd fantasy on this matter; whatever thing we can not easily win we will cry after continually and crave. "Forbid us something, and we desire that thing. Press on us hard, and then we will flee. With much reserve we offer our merchandise; a large crowd at the market makes our wares expensive; wares offered at too low a price will be thought to have little value. Every wise woman knows this.

"My fifth husband—may God bless his soul—which I took for love and not for riches, was sometime an Oxford scholar; and he had left school, and went to board with my good friend, who dwelt in our town. May God keep her soul! Her name was Alisoun. She knew my heart and my private thoughts better than our parish priest, by my soul! To her I revealed all my secrets.

"For had my husband peed on a wall, or done something that would have cost him his life, I would have told his every bit of his secret to her, and to another worthy wife, and to my niece, whom I loved well. And I did so often, God knows, which often made his face red and hot for true shame, and he would blame himself for telling me so great a secret.

"And so it happened that once, in Lent, (as I so often did, I visited my friend, for I still always loved to be merry, and to walk from house to house in March, April, and May, to hear various tales) that Jankin the clerk, my friend dame Alice, and I walked into the fields. All that spring my husband was in London; I had a better opportunity to play, and to see and to be seen by lusty folk. What did I know about how my fortune was to be shaped or in what place? Therefore, I made my visits to holy day vigils, to processions, to sermons, to these pilgrimages, to miracle-plays, and to weddings, and wore my gay scarlet gowns. These worms and moths and mites never ate a bit of them, upon my peril! And do you know why? Because they were well used.

"Now I will tell what happed to me. I say that we walked in the fields, until in truth we had such flirtation together, this clerk and I, that in my foresight I spoke to him, and told him how he should wed me, if I were widowed. For, I am not speaking in boast; I was certainly never to this point without provision for marriage—nor for other things as well. I think that a mouse's heart is not worth a leek if the mouse has but one hole to run to; and if that one fails, then all is over.

"I persuaded him to think that he had enchanted me; my mother taught me that trick. And I said also I dreamed of him all night; he would have slain me as I lay on my back, and my whole bed was full of real blood; but yet I hoped that he should bring good fortune to me, for blood signifies gold, as I was taught. And all of it was false; I dreamed not a bit of it, but I followed my mother's teaching all along, as well as in other things besides.

"But now, sir, let me see; what shall I say now? Aha! By God, I have it again. When my fourth husband lay on his bier, I wept ever and made a sorrowful expression, as wives must, for it is the custom; and I covered my face with my kerchief. But since I had been provided with a new mate, I wept rather little, I vow.

"In the morning my husband was borne to church by the neighbors, who mourned for him, and our scholar Jankin was one of them. So may God help me, when I saw him go after the bier, I thought he had so clean and fair a pair of legs and feet that I gave him all my heart to keep. He was twenty winters old, I believe, and if I am to tell the truth, I was forty. But I always had a colt's tooth. I was gap-toothed; I bore the print of Saint Venus' birthmark, and that became me well. I was a lusty one, and fair, and rich, and youthful, and merry of heart, may God help me.

"For certainly, I am dominated by the planet Venus in my senses, and my heart is dominated by the planet Mars. Venus gave me my love for pleasure and my wantonness, and Mars my sturdy hardihood. My ascendant was Mars in Taurus. Alas, alas! That ever love was thought a sin! I followed ever my inclination by virtue of my constellation. That made it that I could not withhold my chamber from any good fellow. Yet I have the mark of Mars upon my face and in another private place as well. May God be my salvation indeed, I never loved discreetly, but always followed my appetite, whether he was short or tall, black or white it did not matter to me, as long as he pleased me, how poor he was, nor of what station.

"What should I say but at the end of a month this jolly clerk Jankin, who was so debonair, wedded me with great splendor? And I gave him all the land and wealth that I had ever been given; but afterwards I repented myself sorely, for he would allow nothing that I desired. By God, he struck me once on the ear! That was because I tore a leaf out of his book and my ear grew entirely deaf because of the blow. I was as stubborn as a lioness, and a very chatterbox with my tongue, and I would walk as I had done before from house to house, though he had sworn I should not. For this reason he would often make homilies and teach me old Roman histories how Symplicius Gal-lus left his wife and forsook her for all his days, just because he saw her one day looking out of his door with her head uncovered.

"He told me the name of another Roman who forsook his wife also because without his knowledge she was to a summer game. And then he would seek in his Bible that proverb of the Ecclesiast where he commands and firmly forbids that a man should allow his wife to go wander about. Then indeed he would say just this,

"He who builds his house out of sallows,  
And spurs his blind horse over fallows,  
And allows his wife to seek hallows,  
Then should be hanged upon the gallows."

But all for nothing; I did not care one acorn for his proverbs or his old saying, and I would not be scolded by him. I hate anyone who tells me my faults; and, God knows, so too do more of us than I. This made him insanely furious with me, but I would not tolerate him in any case.

"Now, by Saint Thomas, I will tell you the truly, why I tore a leaf out of his book, for which he struck me so that I became deaf. He had a book which he would be still reading, night and day, for his amusement. He called it Valerius and Theophrastus; he always laughed uproariously at this book. And there was also once a scholar at Rome, a cardinal, named Saint Jerome, who composed a book against Jovinian; and besides this in my husband's book there were Tertullian, Chrysippus, Trotula, and Heloise, who was abbess not far from Paris, and also the Proverbs of Solomon, Ovid's Art of Love and many other books; and all these were bound in one volume.

"And every night and day, when he had leisure and freedom from other outside occupation, it was his habit to read in this book about wicked women; of them he knew more lives and legends than there are of good women in the Bible. For, trust well, it is an impossibility that any scholar will speak well of women, unless it would be of the lives of holy saints; but never of any other woman. Who painted the Lion, tell me? By God, if women had written histories, as scholars have in their chapels, they would have written about men more evil than all the sons of Adam could redress.

"The children of Mercury and the children of Venus are contrary in their actions; Mercury loves wisdom and knowledge, and Venus revelry and extravagance. And, because of their contrary natures, each of these planets descends in sign of the zodiac in which the other is most powerful; thus Mercury is depressed in Pisces, where Venus is exalted, and Venus is depressed where Mercury is exalted. Therefore no woman is praised by any scholar. When the scholar is old and entirely unable to give Venus service that is even worth his old shoe, then he sits down and in his dotage writes that women cannot keep their marriage vow!

"But now to my tale—why I was beaten for a book, by God, as I told you. One night Jankin, our husband, sat by the fire and read in his book, first about Eve, for whose wickedness all mankind was brought to misery, for which Jesus Christ Himself was slain, Who redeemed us with His heart's blood. Lo! Here you may read explicitly about woman, that she was the ruin of all mankind.

"Then he read to me how Samson lost his hair in his sleep; his sweetheart cut it with her shears, through which treason he lost both his eyes. Then I tell you he read me about Hercules and his Dejanira, who caused him to set fire to himself. Nor did he in any way forget the penance and woe which Socrates had with his two wives, how his wife Xantippe cast piss on his head; this blameless man sat still as a stone, wiped his head, and dared say no more than, "before thunder ceases, the rain comes."

"Of his cursedness my husband found a relish in the tale of Pasiphae, queen of Crete. Fie! Speak no more of her horrible lust and desire—it is a grisly thing. He read with good devotion about Clytemnestra, who for her wantonness treacherously caused her husband's death. He told me also for what cause Amphiaraus perished at Thebes; my

husband had a legend about his wife Eriphyle, who for a brooch of gold secretly informed the Greeks where her husband had hidden himself; for this reason he met a sorry fate at Thebes. He told me of Livia and Lucilia, who both caused their husbands to die, the one for hate, the other for love. Livia, late one evening, poisoned her husband, because she had become his foe; the wanton Lucilia so loved her husband that she gave him a love-drink, that she might always be in his mind, but of such power that he was dead before morning.

"And thus in one way or the other husbands came to sorrow. And then he told me how one Latumius lamented to Arrius, his fellow, how there grew in his garden such a tree on which, he said, his three wives had hanged themselves with desperate heart. 'Oh dear brother, give me a slip from this same blessed tree,' said this Arrius, 'and it shall be planted in my garden!'

"He read about wives of later times, some of whom have murdered their husbands in their sleep, and had sex with their lovers while the corpse lay all night flat on the floor. And some have driven nails into their husband's brains while they slept. And some have given them poison in their drink. He spoke more evil than a heart can devise.

"And in all this he knew more proverbs than blades of grass grow in this world. He said, 'It is better to have your dwelling with a lion or a foul dragon, than with a woman accustomed to scorning.' 'It is better,' he said, 'to dwell high in the roof, than down in the house with an angry woman; they are so wicked and contrary that they forever hate what their husbands love.'

"He said, 'A woman casts her shame away when she casts off her undergarments.' And furthermore, 'A beautiful woman, unless she is also chaste, is like a gold ring in a sow's nose.' Who would think or imagine the woe and pain in my heart.

"And when I saw that he would never leave reading all night in this cursed book, all of the sudden I plucked three leaves out of his book, even as he was reading, and I also struck him on the cheek with my fist so that he fell down backward into our fire. And he started up like a mad lion, and struck me on the head with his fist so that I lay as dead on the floor.

"And he was aghast when he saw how still I was, and would have fled on his way, until at last I came out of my swoon. 'Oh, have you slain me, false thief,' I said, 'and have you murdered me thus for my land? Before I die, I will still kiss you.' And he came nearer and kneeled down gently and said, 'Dear sister Alisoun, so God help me, I shall never strike you again! You yourself are to blame for what I have done. Forgive me for it; and I beg you for that.' - And yet again I hit him on the cheek, and said, 'Thief, I am revenged this much. Now I will die; I can speak no more.'

"But at last with great pain and grief, we fell into agreement between ourselves. He put the full bridle into my hand, to have the governance of house and estate, and over his tongue and hands as well. And I made him burn his book then and there.

"And when I had got for myself all the sovereignty, through a master-stroke, and when he said, 'My own faithful wife, do as you will the rest of your days; be the guard of your honor, and of my dignity also,' we had never a dispute after that day. God help me so, I was as loving to him as any wife between Denmark and India, and as true also; and so was he to me. And I pray to God, Who sits in glory, so bless his soul for His sweet compassion! Now I will relate my story, if you will listen."

The Friar, when he had heard all this, laughed and said, "Now, Madame, so may I have joy, this is a long preamble of a tale!"

When the Summoner heard the Friar make an outcry, he said, "Lo! By God's two arms! A friar will evermore be meddling. Lo, good men! A fly and a friar will fall into every dish and every affair. Why do you speak of preambling? What! Amble or trot, or hold your peace and go sit down! You hinder our sport in this way."

"Yes, is that what you want, sir Summoner? Now by my faith," said the Friar, "I shall tell, before I go, such a tale or two of a summoner that all the people here shall laugh."

"Now, Friar, I curse your face," said this Summoner, "and I curse myself, unless I tell stories, two or three, of friars, before I get to Sittingborne, that shall make your heart grieve, for I know well your patience has already left you."

"Peace, and now!" cried our Host; and said, "Let the woman tell her tale. You act like people who are drunk with ale. Please, Madame, tell your tale; and that is best."

"All ready, sir, just as you wish," she said, "if I have the permission of this worthy Friar."

"Yes, Madame," he said, "tell your tale now, and I will listen."

Here ends the Prologue of the Wife of Bath.

### *Here begins the Tale of the Wife of Bath.*

In the old days of King Arthur, of whom Britons speak great glory, this land was entirely filled with fairy power. The elf-queen danced often with her merry company in many green meadows. This long ago was the belief, as I find in books. I speak of many hundred years ago; but in our times no man can see elves any more.

For now the great charity and the prayers of begging friars and other holy friars, who, as thick as motes in a sunbeam, reach every land and every stream, blessing halls, chambers, kitchens, bowers, cities, towns, castles,

villages, barns, stables, dairies—all this causes there to be no elves. For where a fairy was accustomed to walk, there the begging friar himself walks now, in the mornings or the afternoons, and says his matins and his holy things as he goes along in his begging. Women may go up and down safely; in every bush or under every tree, there is no incubus, except him, and he will do nothing but dishonor them.

And so it happened that this King Arthur had in his court a lusty young knight, who one day came riding from the river; and it happened that he saw walking ahead of him a maiden, whom he ravished, in spite of all her resistance. For this violation there was such clamor and such appeal to King Arthur, that the knight was condemned by course of law to die; and perhaps the statute in place then was so severe that he would have lost his head, if the queen and other ladies had not so long begged the king for mercy, until he granted him his life at that point, and placed him entirely at the queen's will, to choose whether she would save him or let him die.

The queen thanked the king very heartily; and after this, upon a day when she saw the opportunity, she spoke in this way to the knight: "You stand now," she said, "in such a plight that you have even now no assurance of your life. I grant you life, if you can tell me what thing it is that women desire most. Beware, and guard your neck-bone from iron! And if you cannot tell it right now, I will still give you leave to go for twelve months and a day, to search out and learn an answer sufficient for this point. And before you depart, I will have security that you will yield up your body in this place."

This knight was woeful, and he sighed sorrowfully. But what! He could not do just as he pleased. And, with such a reply that God would provide for him, at last he chose to depart and come at the very end of the year; and he took his leave and went forth along his way.

He sought every house and place where he hoped to find such luck as to learn what women love most. But he could arrive at no coast where he could find two creatures agreeing together on this matter. Some said that women best love riches; some said honor; some said mirth; some, fancy clothes; some, pleasure in bed, and to be widowed often and re-wed. Some said that our hearts are most eased when we be flattered and gratified.

They came very near the truth; a man shall best win us by flattery, I will not deny it, and we are caught by attentiveness and diligence, both great and small. And some said how we love best to be free and to do just as we wish, and that no man should reprove us for our faults, but say that we are wise and never foolish at all. For in truth there is nobody among us who will not kick if someone would claw us on a sore place, just because he tells us the truth. Try this, and he shall find it out that it is true. For though we may be full of vice within, we wish to be considered wise and clean of sin.

And some said that we have great delight to be accounted stable and trustworthy and steadfast in one purpose, and never reveal what men tell us. But that sort of talk is not worth a rake-handle, by God! We women can conceal nothing. Take witness of Midas. Would you like to hear the tale?

Ovid, among other little things, says that Midas had two ass's ears growing upon his head under his long hair, which deformity he hid artfully from every man's sight, as best he could, so that nobody knew of it, except his wife. He loved her most and trusted her; and he asked her to tell of his disfigurement to no creature. She swore to him, "No," not even to gain all the world would she do that villainy and sin, to bring her husband so foul a name; for her own honor she would not do it.

But nevertheless she felt she should die, to hide a secret so long; it swelled so sorely about her heart, it seemed to her, that some word needed to burst from her. And since she dared tell it to no human creature, she ran down to a nearby marsh; her heart was ablaze until she arrived there.

And as a bittern bumbles in the mire, she laid her mouth down unto the water: "Betray me not, you water, with your sound," she said; 'I tell it to you, and to nobody else. My husband has two long ass's ears. Now my heart is whole and well again; now it is out. In very truth I could keep it in no longer.'

By this you may see that though we wait a time, we can conceal no secret forever; it must come out. If you wish to hear the remainder of the tale, read Ovid; you can find it out there.

This knight, about whom my tale chiefly is, when he saw he could not come by it, that is to say, what women love most—the spirit in his breast was so sorrowful. But home he went, as he could not remain. The day had come when he had to turn homeward. And as he went, deep in care, it happened that he rode under the edge of a forest, where he saw twenty-four ladies and more in a dance. Eagerly he drew toward this dance, in hope of learning some piece of wisdom. But in truth, before he arrived there entirely, the dance vanished—he did not know where it went. He saw no living creature there, except a woman sitting on the grass—no one could imagine a fouler creature.

At the approach of the knight this old woman arose and said, "Sir knight, there is no path that lies this way. Tell me, by your faith, what do you seek? Peradventure it may be better for you; these old people know many things."

"My dear mother," said this knight, "in truth I am just a dead man, unless I can say what thing it is that women desire most. If you could instruct me, I would repay you well for your work."

"Pledge me your word here on my hand," she said, "that you will do the first thing that I require of you, if it should lie in your power; and before it is night I will tell it you."

"Take my pledge here," said the knight, "I agree."

"Then," she said, "I dare to boast that your life is safe; for upon my soul I will guarantee that the queen will say as I do. Show me the proudest of the whole court, who wears a kerchief or other head-dress and who dares say no to what I shall teach you. Let us go on, without further words." Then she whispered a word in his ear, and told him to be glad and have no fear.

When they had arrived at the court, this knight said he had kept his day, as he had promised, and his answer was ready. At that time many noble wives were assembled to hear his answer, and many maidens, and many widows (because they be wise); and the queen herself sat as judge. And then this knight was summoned.

Silence was commanded to every creature, and the knight was ordered to tell in public what thing mortal women most love. This knight stood not like a dumb beast, but without delay answered the question with manly voice, so that all the court heard it.

"My liege lady, over all this world" he said, "women wish to have sovereignty as well over her husband as her love, and to have mastery over him. This is your greatest desire, though you may slay me for this. Do as you wish; I am here at your will."

In all the court there was neither wife nor maiden nor widow to contradict what he replied, but all declared he was worthy to have his freedom. And at that word, the old woman, whom the knight had seen sitting on the grass, started up.

"Mercy, my sovereign lady!" she said. "Do me justice, before your court departs. I taught the knight this answer, for which he pledged me his word that he would do the first thing I should require of him, if it lay in his power. Before the court, then, I pray you, sir knight," she said, "that you take me as your wife; for you well know that I have saved your life. If I speak falsely, say no to me, upon your faith!"

This knight answered, "Alas and alack! I know full well that this was my promise. But for the love of God, please choose another request! Take all my goods, and let my body go."

"No, then," she answered, "I curse us both. For though I may be ugly, poor, and old, I would like none of all the metal or ore that is buried under the earth or lies upon it, only that I would be your wife, and your love also."

"My love!" he said, "No, my damnation! Alas that any of my kindred should be so foully disgraced by such a match!"

But all this was for nothing. This is the conclusion, that he was constrained, and had to wed her. And he took his old wife and went to bed.

Now perhaps some men would say that through my negligence I take no care to tell you all the joy and all the preparations that there were at the celebration that day. To this point I shall briefly answer, and say there was no joy nor celebration at all; but only heaviness and much sorrow. For he wedded her secretly the next morning. And he was so miserable that he hid himself the rest of the day like an owl, as his wife looked so ugly.

Great was his misery when he was alone with his wife; he tossed about and turned back and forth. His old wife lay always smiling, and said, "Ah, God bless, dear husband! Does every knight act this way with his wife? Is this the way of King Arthur's household? Is every knight of his so hard to please? I am your own love and your wife also, and I have saved your life, and surely, I have never yet done you any wrong. Why do act this way on this first night? You act like a man who has lost his wit. What is my guilt? Tell me, for the love of God, and if I have the power, it shall be amended."

"Amended!" said this knight. "Alas! No, no! It can not be amended forevermore! You are so loathly and so old, and come of so low a lineage as well, that it is small wonder that I toss and turn. I wish to God my heart would burst!"

"Is this," she said, "the cause of your unrest?"

"Yes, certainly, and no wonder," he said.

"Now, sir," she replied, "I could amend all this before three days had passed, if I wish, so that you might bear yourself toward me well."

"But when you speak of such gentility as is descended from ancient wealth—so that you knights should therefore would be gentlemen of breeding—such arrogance is not worth a hen. Look who is always most virtuous, openly and secretly, and most inclines to do what gentle deeds he can; take him for the gentlest man. Christ wishes that we claim our gentility from Him, not from our ancestors' ancient wealth. For though all their heritage of our ancestors, by reason of which we claim high rank, may descend to us, yet they cannot at all bequeath to any of us their virtuous living, which made them to be called gentle men and to bid us follow to them and do in like manner."

The wise poet of Florence, who is named Dante, speaks well on this matter. Lo, this is what Dante's says in his poetry: "Seldom does a man climb to excellence on his own slim branches, for God, from his goodness, wills that we claim our gentility from Him." For we may claim nothing from our ancestors, except for temporal things that can be injured and impaired.

"Every creature also knows this as well as I, that if gentility were planted by nature in a certain family all down the line, openly and privately, then they would never cease to do the fair duties of gentility; they could never do any

base or vicious deed. Take fire and bear it into the darkest house between here and the mount of Caucasus, and let the doors be shut and leave that place. Nevertheless the fire will burn and blaze as fairly as though twenty thousand men witnessed it; on peril of my life, it will keep to its natural duty until it dies.

"Here you may well see how nobility hangs not from ancient possessions, since people do not always perform its works, as does the fire, according to its nature. For, God knows, one may often see a lord's son do vicious and shameful deeds; and he who wishes to be esteemed for his gentility because he was born of a noble house and had virtuous and noble ancestors, and yet himself will not perform the deeds of gentility nor follow after his gentle ancestor who is dead, he is not gentle, even if he is a duke or an earl; for base and sinful deeds make a commoner. For gentility then would be nothing but renown of your ancestors for their high worthiness, which is something that has nothing to do with you. Your gentility comes only from God. Then our true gentility comes from divine grace, and was in no fashion bequeathed to us with our earthly station."

"Think how noble was that Tullius Hostilius, as Valerius tells, who rose out of poverty to high nobility. Read Seneca, and Boethius as well; there you shall see expressly that he who does noble deeds is noble. And therefore, dear husband, I conclude in this way: albeit my ancestors were untutored, yet may the high God—and so I hope—grant me grace to live virtuously. Then I am noble, when I begin to live virtuously and to abandon evil."

"And you reproach me for poverty; but the high God on whom we believe chose freely to live in poverty. And surely every man, maiden, or wife, may well know that Jesus, King of Heaven, would not choose a wicked manner of living. Truly cheerful poverty is an honorable thing, so will Seneca say, and other clerks. Whoever keeps himself content with his poverty, I count as rich, even if he does not have not a shirt! He who covets is a poor creature, for he wishes to have that which is not within his power. But he who has nothing, nor covets things, is rich, albeit you count him as only a serving-lad."

"True poverty sings a song of its own. Concerning poverty, Juvenal says merrily:

"The poor man, when he goes along the way,  
Before the thieves, he can still sing and play"

Poverty is a hateful good, I suppose, a great remover from the busyness of the world, and a great teacher of wisdom to one who takes it in patience. All this is poverty, though it may seem wretched; and a possession that no creature will challenge. When a man is humbled, often poverty allows him to know his God and himself as well. It seems to me that poverty is a magnifying glass through which he may see who his true friends are. And therefore, sir, I pray, so that I will not grieve you, scorn me no more for my poverty.

"Now, sir, you reproach me for my old age. And surely, sir, though there may be no authority in any book to tell you so, yet you honorable gentlefolk say that men should do courtesy to an old creature, and for your gentle manners call him Father. And I could find authorities to show this, I believe."

"Now you say I am old and foul: then have no fear that you will be a cuckold. For ugliness and age, upon my life, are great wardens over chastity. But nevertheless, since I know your delight, I shall fulfill your appetite."

"Choose," she said, "one of these two things: to have me foul and old until I die, and to you a true, humble wife, never in all my days displeasing you; or else to have me young and beautiful, and take your chance on how many visits there will be to your house—or perhaps to some other place—which will be for my sake. Now choose yourself which one you will have."

This knight thought hard about it and sighed deeply; but at last he spoke in this manner: "My lady and love, and my dear wife, I put myself into your wise governance. Please choose which may be the greatest pleasure and greatest honor to you and me also; I care not which of the two, for it is sufficient to me to please you."

"Then I have the mastery over you," she said, "since I may choose and govern as I wish"

"Yes, surely, wife," he said; "I believe that is for the best."

"Kiss me," she said, "we will be angered no longer. For by my faith I will be both unto you—that is to say, both beautiful, yes, and good. I pray to God that I may die mad, but I would be as good and faithful as ever a wife was since the world was new. And if I am not as beautiful to see in the morning as any lady, queen or empress, between the east and the west, do with my life and death as you will. Lift up the curtain, and look how it is."

And when the knight saw truly that she was so fair and so young, he clasped her in his two arms for joy, his heart bathed in a bath of bliss. A thousand times in a row he kissed her. And she obeyed him in all that might cause him delight or pleasure.

And thus they lived in perfect joy to the end of their lives. And may Jesus Christ send us husbands meek, young, and lusty, and grace to outlive them that we wed.

And I pray Jesus also to shorten their days that will not be ruled by their wives. And old, angry misers—may God send them a true pestilence soon!

Here ends the Wife of Bath's Tale.

### The Franklin's Tale

*Here follow the Words of the Franklin to the Squire, and the Words of the Host to the Franklin.*

"In faith, Squire, you have conducted yourself well and nobly. I praise your wit highly," said the Franklin, with such delicate understanding. In my judgment there is nobody in this company who shall be your peer in eloquence as long as you live. May God give you good fortune, and send you perseverance in virtue, for I have great delight in your speaking. I have a son, and by the Trinity I had rather he would be a man of such discretion as you, than have twenty pounds worth of land, even if it were put in my hand right now.

"Fie on possessions, unless a man is virtuous as well! I have scolded my son, and shall still scold him, because he will not wish to pursue virtue; but his habit is to play at dice and to spend and to lose all that he has. And he had rather talk with a page than converse with any noble person from whom he might properly learn nobility.

"A straw for your gentle manners!" said our Host. "What, Franklin, well you know, by God, that each of you must tell at least a tale or two, or break your word."

"That I well know, sir," said the Franklin. "I pray you not to hold me in scorn if I speak a word or two to this man.

"Tell your tale now, without more words.

"Gladly, sir Host," he said, "I will obey your will; now listen to what I say. I will not contradict you in any way as far, to the extent that my wits will suffice. I pray to God that it may please yow; then I will know well that it is good enough."

### *The Prologue of the Franklin's Tale*

"These old gentle Bretons in their time made lays about various adventures, rhymed in their early British tongue; which lays they sang to their instruments of music, or else read them, for their pleasure. And one of them I have in mind, which I will relate with good will as best I can. But, sirs, because I am an unlearned man, at my beginning I pray you to excuse me for my homely speech. In truth, I never learned rhetoric; anything I speak must be bare and plain. I never slept on the Mount of Parnassus, nor learned Marcus Tullius Cicero. I know no colors of speech, surely; only such colors as grow in the meadow, or else such as people dye or paint. Colors of rhetoric are too strange for me; my spirit has no feeling in such matters. But if you wish, you shall hear my tale."

### *Here begins the Franklin's Tale.*

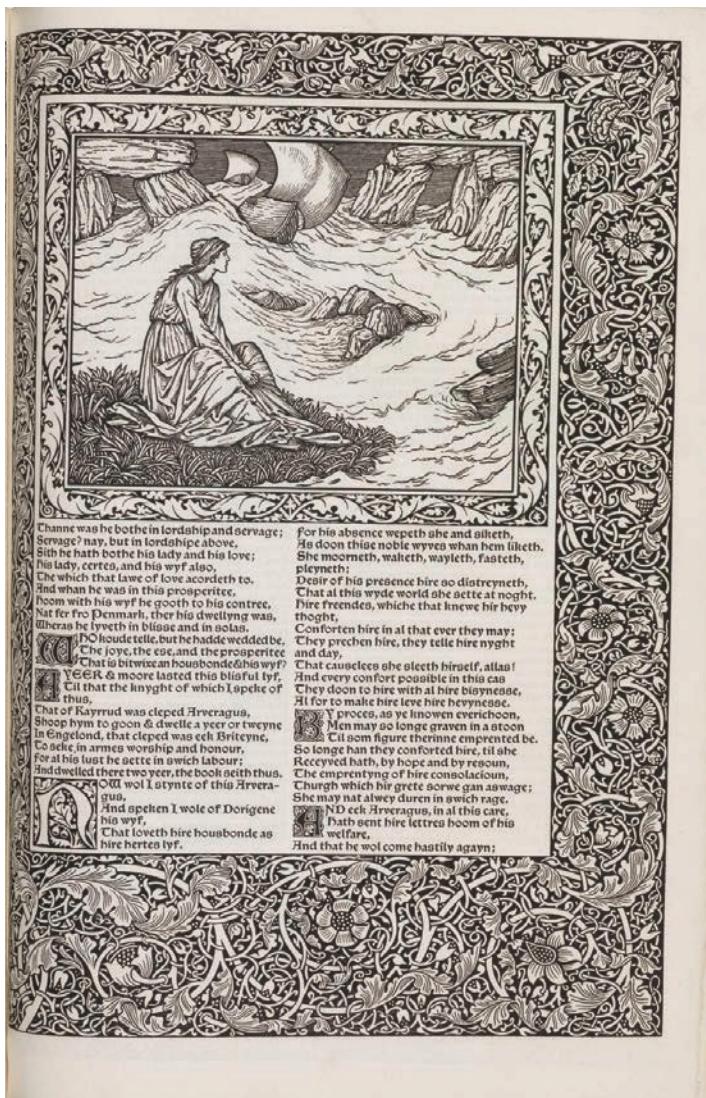
In Armorica, which is called Brittany, there was a knight who loved and served a lady in the best manner he could. And he underwent many labors and many great enterprises, before he gained her. For she was one of the fairest women under the sun, and had come from such a noble family that this knight scarcely dared for fear to tell her his woe and his pain and distress. But at last she took such pity upon his pains, because of his worthiness and primarily for his humble attentiveness, so that secretly she agreed to take him as husband and lord, in such lordship as men may have over their wives. And in order that they might live more in bliss, he swore to her as a knight, by his own free will, that never at any time in all his life would he take any authority upon himself against her will, nor show jealousy toward her, but obey her and follow her will in all things, as any lover shall do toward his lady; except that he wanted only the sovereignty in name, lest he should shame his rank as husband.

She thanked him, and said with great humility, "Sir, since through your noble mind you offer me so free a rein, God forbid that through my guilt there would ever be war or contention between us two. Sir, I will be your true humble wife until my heart break; take here my pledge." Thus they were both in quiet and peace.

For one thing, sirs, I dare safely say, friends must comply with one another, if they wish to keep company long. Love will not be constrained by mastery; when mastery comes, the god of love soon beats his wings, and, farewell, he is gone! Love is as free as any spirit. Women by their nature desire liberty and not to be under constraint like a servant; and so do men, if I shall tell the truth. Look who is most patient in love, he has the advantage over all. Patience is a high virtue, certainly; for, as these scholars say, it conquers things that force could never reach.

Men should not scold or complain at every word. Learn to endure, or else, on my life, you shall learn this, whether you wish to or not. For certainly there is nobody in this world who sometimes does not act or speak amiss. Wrath, sickness, the constellation, wine, woe, changing humors, very often cause a man to act or speak amiss.

A man may not be avenged of every wrong; in every creature who knows how to rule his life, there must be moderation, according to the occasion. And therefore, so that he might live at ease, this wise worthy knight promised patience toward her, and she seriously swore to him that there never should be a fault in her. Here one may see a humble and wise agreement; thus she took her servant and her lord: servant in love, and lord in marriage. Then he was in both lordship and servitude. Servitude? No, but superior in lordship, since he has both his lady and love; surely, his lady, and his wife as well, who accepted that law of love. And in this happy state he went home with his wife to his country, not far from Penmark, where his dwelling was, and where he lived in happiness and comfort.



**IMAGE 5.5: THE FRANKLIN'S TALE** | A two page featuring a black and white illustration of Dorigen looking out at the rocks on the coast of Brittany, which play an important role in The Franklin's Tale.

**Author:** Edward Burne-Jones

**Source:** Archive.org

**License:** Public Domain

often she said to herself, "Alas! Is there no ship of so many that I see that will bring home my lord? Then my heart would be fully cured of its bitter, bitter pains."

Another time she would sit there and ponder, and from the shore cast her eyes down. But when she saw the grisly black rocks, her heart would so quake for true fear that she could not hold herself on her feet. Then she would sit down on the grass and piteously look into the sea, and with sorrowful, cold sighs say just so: "Eternal God, who through Your providence guides the world by sure government, You make nothing in vain, as they say. But, Lord, these grisly, fiendish, black rocks, which seem more like a foul chaos of work than any fair creation by such a perfect, wise, and unchanging God: why have You created this irrational work? For by this work neither man nor bird nor brute is benefited, south or north, east or west."

"It does no good, in my mind, but harm. Do You not see, Lord, how it destroys mankind? Although they may not be remembered, rocks have slain a hundred thousand bodies of mankind, which is such a fair a part of Your work that You made it in Your own image. Then it should seem You had a great fondness toward men; but how then may it be that You created to destroy them in such a way that do no good, but always harm? I know well that scholars will say as they please by arguments that all is for the best, though I cannot understand their reasons. But may the same God that made the wind blow protect my lord! This is my conclusion; I leave all disputation to schol-

Who, unless he had been wedded, could tell the joy, the comfort, and wellbeing between husband and wife?

This blessed condition lasted a year and more, until the knight of whom I speak, who was called Arveragus of Kayrrud, laid his plans to go and dwell a year or two in England, which also was called Britain, to seek worship and honor in arms, for he set all his pleasure on such toils. And he dwelt there two years, as the book says.

Now I will leave Arveragus, and will speak of Dorigen his wife, who loved her husband as her heart's blood. For in his absence she wept and sighed, as these noble wives do (when they will). She mourned, watched, waisted, fasted, lamented; desire for his presence so distracted her that she cared nothing for the whole wide world. Her friends, who knew her heavy thoughts, comforted her in all they could. They preached to her; day and night they told her that she was slaying herself for no good reason, alas! And they comforted her all they could, to make her leave her heaviness.

Through the process of time, as you all know, one may engrave in a stone so long that some figure will be imprinted on it. They comforted her so long that, with the aid of hope and reason, she received the imprint of their consolation. Through this her great sorrow began to assuage; she could not continue forever in such frenzy.

And while she was in all this sorrow, Arveragus had sent home to her letters telling of his welfare, and that he would soon return; otherwise, this sorrow would have slain her heart. Her friends saw her sorrow began to slacken, and on their knees begged her for God's love to come and roam about with them, to drive away her dark imaginings. And finally she agreed, for well she saw that it was best.

Now her castle stood near to the sea, and for a diversion she often walked with her friends high upon the bank, from which she saw many ships and barges sailing on their course, wherever they would go. But then that became a part of her grief. For

ars. But I wish to God that all these black rocks were sunk into hell, for his sake! These rocks slay my heart for fear." Thus she would speak to herself, with many piteous tears.

Her friends saw that it was no diversion for her, but only a discomfort, to walk by the sea, and devised for her amusements in other places. They led her by rivers and springs and in other delightful places; they danced and they played at chess and backgammon.

So one day in the morning, they went to amuse themselves for the entire day in a nearby garden, in which they had made their provision of food and other things. This was on the sixth morning of May, and May with his soft rains had painted this garden full of leaves and flowers. And truly the craft of man's hand had so curiously arrayed this garden that never was a garden of such beauty, unless it would be paradise itself.

The scent and the fresh sight of flowers would have gladdened any heart that was ever born, unless too great a sickness or too great a sorrow distressed it; so full was it of delight and beauty.

After dinner they began to dance and sing, except Dorigen, who always made complaint or moan, because she saw not her husband and also her love enter into the dance. But nevertheless she must wait for a time and with good hope let her sorrow pass.

Upon this dance, among other men, there danced before Dorigen a squire who was fresher and more joyful in apparel than is the month of May, I believe. He sang and danced to surpass any man who is or was since the world was made. He was, if one would describe him, one of the most handsome men alive: young, strong, virtuous, rich, and wise; and well beloved and held in great honor. And in short, if I am to tell the truth, this servant to Venus, this lively squire, who was called Aurelius, had loved Dorigen, entirely without her knowledge, more than any creature for two years and more, as it happened, but never dared he tell her his woe. He drank all his penance without a cup.

He was in despair, he dared say nothing except that in his songs he would reveal his woe to some degree, as in a general complaining; he said he loved, and was in no way beloved. Of such matter he made many lays, songs, complaints, roundels, and virelays, about how he would dare not utter his sorrow, but languishes like a fury in hell; and die he must, he said, as did Echo for Narcissus, who dared not tell her woe. In other manner than this that I speak of he dared not reveal his passion to her; except that, by chance, sometimes at dances, where young people perform their customs of courtship, it may well be that he looked upon her face in such a way as a man who asks for grace; but she knew nothing of his intent.

Nevertheless it happened, before they went from that garden, that because he was her neighbor and a man of good reputation, and she had known him for a long time, they began to speak. And Aurelius drew more and more toward his matter and when he saw his time, he said thus: "Madame, by God That made this world, If I had known it would gladden your heart, I wish that the day when your Arveragus went over the sea, I, Aurelius, had gone to a place from which I never should have returned. For I well know that my service is in vain; my reward is but the breaking of my heart. Have pity upon my bitter pains, Madame, for with a word you may slay me or save me. I wish to God that I were buried here at your feet! I have now no time to say more; have mercy, sweet, or you will cause me to die!"

She looked at Aurelius: "Is this your desire?" she said. "Is this what you wish to say? Never before did I know what was in your mind. But now, Aurelius, I know it. By that God that gave me breath and soul, never in word or deed shall I be an untrue wife. As long as I have any senses, I will be his to whom I am bound. Take this for my final answer."

But in sport after that she said, "Aurelius, by the high God in heaven, yet would I consent to be your love, since I see you so piteously lamenting. Whenever that day comes that all along the coast of Brittany you remove all the rocks, stone by stone, so that they no longer obstruct the passage of ship or boat—I say, when you have made the coast so clear of rocks that there is no stone to be seen, then I will love you best of all men. Take here my pledge, in all that I can ever do."

"Is there no other mercy in you?" he said.

"No," she said, "by that Lord that made me! For I well know that shall never happen. Let such follies pass out of your heart. What delight should a man ever have to go about loving the wife of another man, who has her body whenever he wishes?"

Aurelius gave many sore sighs. He was woeful when he heard this; and with a sorrowful heart he answered, "Madame, this would be impossible! Then I must die of a sudden and horrible death." And with that word he turned back.

Then many of her other friends came roaming up and down in the paths, and knew nothing of this affair, but speedily began new revel; until the bright sun lost his hue, and the horizon had taken away from him his light (this is as much as to say, it was evening). And they went home in joy and contentment, except, alas, wretched Aurelius alone! He went to his house with sorrowful heart; he saw that he could never escape death, and felt his heart grow cold. Up to the heaven he held his hands and set himself down on his bare knees, and raving said his prayer; for true woe he was out of his wits and knew not what he spoke.

With piteous heart he began his complaint to the gods, and first to the sun: "Apollo," he said, "lord and ruler of every plant, herb, tree, and flower, who gives to each of them his times and seasons, according to your height in the sky, as your lodging changes toward north or south; lord Phoebus, cast your merciful eye upon wretched Aurelius, who is so lost. Behold, lord, my lady has decreed my guiltless death, unless your kindness should have some pity upon my dying heart. For well I know, lord Phoebus, that you may help me best of all except my lady, if you wish. Now promise to hear me tell you in what way I may be helped."

"Your blessed sister, Lucina the bright, chief goddess and queen of the sea (though Neptune has his godhead in the sea, yet is she empress over him), you well know, lord, that just as it is her desire to be kindled and lightened by your orb, for which reason she follows you eagerly, so too the sea desires by its nature to follow her, being goddess both in the sea and in rivers great and small."

"Therefore, Lord Phoebus, this is my prayer: perform this miracle or break my heart; that now at this next opposition, which shall be in the sign of the Lion, pray Lucina to bring a flood so great that it shall rise above the highest rock in Armorican Britanny by at least five fathoms, and let this flood last two years."

"Then, certainly, I may say to my lady, 'Keep your promise, the rocks are gone.' Lord Phoebus, do this miracle; ask her to go the same speed as you; I say, ask your sister that these two years she will go no faster in her course than you. Then shall she always be exactly at full, and the spring flood-tide will last day and night. And if she will not promise to grant me my dear sovereign lady in such a manner, pray her to sink every rock into her own dark region under the ground where Pluto dwells, or nevermore shall I gain my lady. Barefoot I will go a pilgrimage to your temple at Delphi. Lord Phoebus; see the tears on my cheeks, and have some pity on my pains."

And with that he fell down in a swoon and for a long time lay in a trance. His brother, who knew his trouble, caught him up and brought him to his bed. In this woe and torment I let this woeful creature lie in despair. He may choose, as far as I am concerned, whether he will live or die.

Arveragus was come home, with other valiant knights, in health and great honor as the flower of chivalry. Oh, now you are happy, Dorigen, who has in your arms your lively husband, the vigorous knight, the valiant warrior, who loves you as his own heart's life. He never thought to be suspicious whether any creature had spoken to her of love while he was gone; he had no fear of that. He gave no heed to any such matter, but danced, jested, and showed her great enjoyment. Thus I leave them in happiness and bliss, and will tell of the sick Aurelius.

Two years and more the wretched Aurelius lay in languor and mad torment, before he could walk a step on earth; and he had no comfort in this time, except from his brother, a scholar, who knew of all this woeful matter. For in truth he dared say no word about it to any other creature. He carried it under his breast more secretly than Pamphilus carried his love for Galatea. His breast was whole, to outward view, but ever in his heart was the keen arrow. And you well know that in surgery the cure of a wound healed only on the surface is perilous, unless men could touch the arrow or get at it.

His brother wept and wailed privately, until at last it came to his mind that while he was at Orleans, in France, as young scholars who are desirous of studying curious arts seek in every nook and corner to learn this special knowledge, it came to his mind that, one day while he studied at Orleans, he saw a book of natural magic, which his friend, who was then a bachelor of law, had secretly left upon his desk, though he was there for a different field of study. This book spoke much of the celestial influences concerning the twenty-eight mansions which belong to the moon, and such folly as is not worth a fly in our day. For the faith of the Holy Church that is in our doctrine will not allow any illusion to harm us.

And as soon as he remembered this book his heart began to dance for joy, and he said quietly to himself, "My brother shall be cured speedily; for I am sure there are arts by which men create various apparitions, such as these deceiving magicians conjure up. For often at feasts, I have heard tell, within a large hall these magicians have made water and a barge come in and row up and down in the hall. Sometimes a grim lion has seemed to come, and sometimes flowers spring as in a meadow, sometimes a vine, with grapes white and red, sometimes a castle of mortar and stone. And when they wished, they caused it all to disappear immediately; so it seemed to every man's sight."

"Now then, I conclude thus, that if I could find some old comrade at Orleans who is acquainted with these mansions of the moon, or other natural magic besides, he should well cause my brother to possess his love. For by means of an illusion a clerk may make it appear to a man's sight that every one of the black rocks of Brittany be removed, and that ships come and go along the shore, and that this continue a day or two in such form. Then my brother would be entirely cured. Then she must keep her promise, or else at least he shall shame her."

Why should I make this a longer story? He came to his brother's bed and gave him such encouragement to go to Orleans that he started up at once and went ahead on his way in hopes to be relieved of his care. When they had almost arrived at that city, about two or three furlongs away, they met a young clerk roaming by himself who greeted them politely in Latin, and then said a marvelous thing. "I know the cause of your coming," he said. And before they went a foot further, he told them all that was in their minds. This scholar of Brittany asked him about the companions whom he had known in old days, and he answered him that they were dead; for which he wept many tears.

Aurelius alighted quickly from his horse and went forth home to his house with this magician, who made them well at ease; no provision that might give pleasure. Aurelius had never seen in his life a house so well appointed.

Before he went to supper, the magician showed him forests and parks full of wild beasts; there he saw harts with their lofty horns, the largest that eye ever saw. He beheld a hundred of them slain by dogs, and some bleeding from bitter arrow-wounds. When these wild deer vanished, he saw falconers upon a fair river, slaying the heron with their hawks. Then he saw knights jousting on a plain. And after this, the magician did him the pleasure to show him his lady in a dance, in which he himself was dancing, as it seemed to him. And when this master who created the magic saw that it was time, he clapped his hands, and, farewell, all our revel was gone.

And yet while they saw all this marvelous sight, they never stirred out of the house, but sat still in his study, where his books were, and no other creature but the three of them.

This master called his squire to him, and said thus: "Is our supper ready? It is almost an hour, I will swear, since I told you make our supper, when these honorable men went with me into my study, where my books are."

"Sir," said this squire, "when it pleases you it will be entirely ready, even if you wish to have it right now."

"Let us go to supper, then," he said, "that is best. These people in love must take repose sometime."

After supper they fell into talk over the sum which should be this master's reward for removing all the rocks of Brittany, and from the Gironde to the mouth of Seine. He raised difficulties and swore that he would not have less than a thousand pounds, and he would not be glad to do it for that sum, so God save him!

Aurelius answered directly, with a joyous heart, "Fie on a thousand pound! I would give this wide world, which men say is a ball, if I were lord of it. This bargain is done, for we are agreed. You shall be paid faithfully, by my word. But take care now that you delay us here no longer than tomorrow, for any negligence or sloth."

"No," this clerk said, "take here my faith in pledge to you."

Aurelius went to bed when he wished, and rested nearly all that night. Despite all his labor and his hope of bliss, his woeful heart had relief from suffering. In the morning, when it was day, they took the shortest road to Brittany, Aurelius and this magician, and dismounted at the place where they wished to be. And, as books remind me, this was the cold, frosty season of December. Phoebus grew old and of hue like latten, who in his hot declination shone with his bright beams like burnished gold; but now he had descended into Capricorn, where he shone fully pale, I dare well say. The bitter frosts, with sleet and rain, have destroyed the green in every garden. Janus with his double beard sits by the fire and drinks the wine out of his ox-horn; before him stands brawn of the tusked boar, and every lusty man cries, "Noel!"

Aurelius offered his master all the hospitality and reverence he could, and asked him to do his duty to bring him out of his bitter pains, or with a sword he would slit his own heart. This cunning scholar so pitied this man that he made as much haste as he could, day and night, to look for the most beneficial time for his experiment; that is to say, to create an appearance, by such an illusion or crafty trick—I do not have vocabulary of astrology—that she and every person should think and say that the rocks of Brittany were gone, or else sunk under the earth.

So at last he found his time to work his tricks and stage his miserable performance of wicked superstition. He brought forth his Toledo tables, well corrected; there lacked nothing, neither his tables of collected or expanded years, nor his roots, nor his other gear, such as his centres and his arguments, and his tables of proportional parts for his equations. And for his calculations he knew full well how far Alnath in the eighth sphere was pushed from the head of that fixed Aries above, which is calculated to be in the ninth sphere; cunningly he calculated by means of all this. When he had found his first mansion, by proportion he knew the rest, and he well knew the rising of his moon, in which was the planet's face and term, and all the rest. And he knew well the moon to be in a mansion favorable to his enterprise, and knew also the other matters to be observed for working such illusions and such misdoings as heathen people used in those days.

For this reason he no longer delayed, but through his magic it seemed for a week or two that all the rocks were gone. Aurelius, who was still despairing whether he should have his love or fare badly, waited night and day for this miracle. And when he knew that there was no hindrance, but that every rock was gone, he fell down at his master's feet immediately and said, "I, Aurelius, woeful wretch, thank you, lord, and Venus my lady, who have helped me from my cold misery." And he made his way forth to the temple where he knew he should see his lady. And when he saw his time, he then saluted his dear sovereign lady with a timid heart and humble face.

This woeful man said, "My own lady, whom I most fear and love as best I know how, and whom of all this world I would be most loathe to displease, if I did not suffer so much distress for the love of you that soon I must die here at your feet, I should never tell you how woebegone I am. But surely I must either die or make my complaint, as you slay me, an innocent man, with true pain. But though you have no pity for my death, consider this carefully before you break your pledge."

"For the sake of God in heaven, please repent before you murder me because I love you. For well you know what you promised, Madame; not that I claim anything of you as a right, my sovereign lady, but only ask it as a favor. Nevertheless, in a garden yonder, at such a spot, you know very well what you promised me, and you pledged

your word in my hand, to love me best; God knows, you said so, though I may be unworthy of it. Madame, I say it for your honor, more than to save my heart's life; I have done as you said, and if you wish, you may go and see. Do as you wish; remember your promise, for, alive or dead, you shall find me right in that garden. It all depends on you, to make me live or die. But well I know the rocks are gone.

He takes his leave, and she stood astonished; not a drop of blood was in all her face. She thought never to have come into such a trap. She said, "Alas that ever this should happen! For I never deemed that such a monstrosity or marvel could happen, by any possibility. It is against the course of nature. And home she went, a sorrowful creature; scarcely could she walk for utter fear, and for a whole day or two she wept and wailed and swooned, so that it was pitiful to behold. But why she was so she told no creature, for Arveragus was gone out of town.

But with a pale face and sorrowful expression she spoke to herself, and said thus in her complaint as I shall tell you. She said, "Alas! I complain about you, Fortune, who has bound me unawares in your chain, from which to escape I know no help, except only death or dishonor; one of these two it is necessary for me to choose. But nevertheless I had rather forfeit my life than have shame on my body, or lose my fair reputation, or know myself false. And by my death, surely, I may escape."

"Alas, have not many noble wives and many maidens slain themselves before this, rather than do wrong with her body? Yes, surely; lo! These histories testify it. When the thirty tyrants, full of cursedness, had slain Phidon at a feast in Athens, by their malice they commanded men to arrest his daughters and bring them before them entirely naked, to fulfill their foul pleasure, and they made them dance in their father's blood upon the pavement. May God give them damnation! For this reason these woeful maidens, in fear of this, secretly leaped into a well and drowned themselves, rather than lose their maidenhood; so the books relate.

"The people of Messene had fifty Lacedaemon maidens sought out, with whom they wished to satisfy their lust; but of that entire band there was none who was not slain, and with good will chose to die rather than consent to be robbed of her maidenhood. Why should I, then, fear to die?

"Lo also, the tyrant Aristocles. He loved a maiden named Stymphalides, who, when her father was slain one night, went directly to Diana's temple, and laid hold of the image of Diana with her two hands, and would never let go. No creature could tear her hands from it, until she was slain in that very place. Now since maidens have had such scorn to be defiled with man's base pleasure, it seems to me that a wife ought indeed rather to slay herself than be defiled.

"What shall I say of Hasdrubal's wife, who slew herself at Carthage? For when she saw that the Romans had won the city, she took all her children and skipped down into the fire, and chose rather to die than that any Roman dishonored her.

"Did not Lucrece slay herself at Rome, alas, when she was violated by Tarquin, because she deemed it a shame to live when she had lost her honor?

The seven maidens of Miletus also for true fear and woe slew themselves rather than the people of Gaul should violate them.

I could tell now more than a thousand stories, I believe, concerning this matter. When Abradates was slain, his dear wife slew herself and let her blood flow into Abradates' deep, wide wounds, saying, "My body, at least, no creature shall defile, if I can hinder it."

"Why should I cite more examples of this, since so many have slain themselves rather than be defiled? I will end thus, for it is better for me to slay myself than so to be defiled. I will be true to Arveragus, or slay myself in some way, as did the dear daughter of Democion, because she would not be defiled. O Scedasus, it is a great pity to read how your daughters died, who slew themselves for the same cause, alas! It was as great pity, or indeed greater, for the Theban maiden that slew herself even for the same grief, to escape Nicanor. Another Theban maiden did likewise; because one of Macedonia had violated her, she redressed her maidenhood by her death. What shall I say of the wife of Niceratus, who for a like cause took her life? How true also was his love to Alcibiades, and chose rather to die than to suffer his body to be unburied! Lo, what a wife was Alcestis! What says Homer of Penelope the good? All Greece knows of her chastity. It is written thus of Laodamia, in truth, that when Protesilaus was slain at Troy, she would live no longer after his days. I may tell the same of noble Portia; she could not live without Brutus, to whom she had fully given her whole heart. The perfect wifehood of Artemisia is honored through all barbarian lands. O queen Teuta, your wifely chastity may be a mirror to all wives. The same thing I say of Bilia, of Rhodogune and of Valeria."

Thus Dorigen made her complaint a day or two, at all times intending to die. But nevertheless Arveragus, this worthy knight, came home the third evening, and asked her why she wept so sorely. And she began to weep ever more bitterly.

"Alas that ever I was born! Thus I said," she said, "this was my oath," and she told him what you have already heard; there is no need to tell more.

This husband, with cheerful countenance and in friendly fashion, answered and said as I shall tell you; "Is there

anything else but this, Dorigen?"

"Nay, nay," she said, "so may God help me; God forbid there would be more; this is too much."

"Yes, wife," he replied; "leave sleeping that which is quiet. It may yet be well today, by chance. You shall keep your pledge, by my faith! For may God so surely have mercy on me, for the true love I have for you I had far rather be stabbed to the heart, than you should not hold your pledge. A promise is the highest thing that a man may keep." But with that word he burst out weeping immediately, and said, "I forbid you, on pain of death, as long as your life lasts, to tell this matter to any creature. I will endure all my woe as best I can, and make no such sign of grief that people might judge or guess harm of you."

And he called forth a squire and maid, and said, "Go forth directly with Dorigen and bring her to such a place." They took their leave and went their way, but they knew not why she went there. He would tell his intention to no creature. Perhaps in truth many of you will think him a foolish man in this, that he would put his wife in jeopardy; listen to the tale, before you exclaim against her. She may have better fortune than you might suppose; and when you have heard the tale, you may judge.

This squire Aurelius, who was so amorous of Dorigen, happened by chance to meet her amidst the town, right in the busiest street, as she was bound straight for the garden where she had promised to go. And he also was bound for the garden; for he always noted well when she would go out of her house to any place. But thus they met, by chance or good fortune; and he saluted her with joyous mood, and asked where she was going.

And she answered, as if she were mad, "To the garden, as my husband ordered, to keep my promise, Alas! Alas!" Aurelius wondered about what had happened, and in his heart he had great compassion about her and her lament, and about Arveragus, the worthy knight who had told her to maintain everything she had promised, so loath was he that his wife should break her pledge. And Aurelius' heart was moved to great pity, and this made him consider carefully what would be best, so that he felt he would rather refrain from his desire rather than to be guilty of such a wretched and dishonorable act against nobility and all gentility.

For this reason he said thus in few words: "Madame, say to Arveragus, your lord, that since I see his great nobility to you (and I well see your distress), that it seemed better to him to suffer shame (and that would be a pity) than you should break your pledge to me, I would rather suffer perpetual woe than part the love between you. Into your hand, Madame, I release, cancelled, every assurance and every bond that you have made to me to this day from the time when you were born. I pledge my word that I shall never reproach you on the score of any promise. And here I take my leave of the best and truest wife that in all my days I have ever known. But let every woman beware what she promises; let her at least think of Dorigen." Thus surely a squire can do a gentle deed, as well as can a knight.

She thanked him upon her bare knees, and went home to her husband and told him everything, even as you have heard me tell it. And be assured, he was so well pleased that I could not tell how much; why should I explain this matter any further? Arveragus and his wife Dorigen led forth their days in sovereign bliss.

Never again was there trouble between them. Evermore he cherished her as though she were a queen, and she was true to him. Concerning these two people you will get no more from me.

Aurelius, who had forfeited all the expense, cursed the time when he was born. "Alas! alas!" he said, "that I promised a thousand pounds' weight of refined gold to this philosopher! What shall I do? I see nothing more but that I am undone. I must sell my heritage and be a beggar. I cannot remain here and shame all my family here, unless I can gain his mercy. But nevertheless I will seek of him to let me pay on certain days each year, and will thank him for his great courtesy. I will keep my word, I will not be false."

With sore heart he went to his coffer and brought to this clerk gold of the value of five hundred pounds, I believe, and asked him through his noble courtesy to grant him certain days to pay the remnant, and said, "Master, I dare well boast that I never failed of my word as yet. For truly my debt shall be paid to you, whatever may happen to me, even if I must go begging in my undergarments alone. But would you promise, upon security, to give me a respite for two or three years; then it will be well with me. For otherwise I must sell my heritage. There is no more to say."

This philosopher answered gravely and said thus, when he heard these words, "Have I not kept my covenant with you?"

"Yes, surely, well and truly," he said. "Have you not had your lady just as you desired?"

"No, no," he said and sighed sorrowfully.

"What was the cause? Tell me, if you can."

Aurelius began his tale immediately, and told him everything, as you have heard. There is no need to rehearse it again. He said, "Arveragus on account of his nobility would rather have died in sorrow and woe than that his wife would be false to her pledge." He told him also the sorrow of Dorigen, how loath she was to be a wicked wife, and that she had rather have died that day, and that it was through innocence she had sworn her oath. "She never heard tell before of magic illusion; that made me have pity upon her. And just as he sent her freely to me, so freely I sent her back to him. This is everything; there is no more to say."

This philosopher answered: "Dear friend, each of you did a gentle deed toward the other. You are a squire, he is a knight. But may God in his blessed power forbid, but a clerk may truly do a gentle deed as well as any of you."

Sir, I release you from your debt of a thousand pounds, as freely as if you had only now crept out of the earth and had never known me before now. For, sir, I will not take a penny from you for all my skill and all my labor. You have paid well for my subsistence. It is enough. And farewell, and have a good day." And he took his horse and went forth on his journey.

Gentle people, I would ask you this question now: Which do you think was the most noble? Now tell me, before you go farther. I know no more; my tale is finished.

Here is ended the Franklin's Tale.

## THE DECAMERON

Giovanni Boccaccio ( 1313- 1375 C.E.)

Begun ca. 1349 and finished by 1353 C.E.

Italy

Boccaccio began writing his Decameron shortly after an outbreak of the plague in Florence, Italy, in 1348 that killed about three quarters of the population. The introduction to this frame tale depicts the horrors of the plague, with vivid descriptions of the dying and laments about the lack of a cure. In his story, seven women and three men leave Florence to take refuge in the countryside. They justify their decision in several ways: the right to self-preservation; the bad morals and lewd behavior of many of their neighbors (who are convinced that they are going to die anyway); and their own feelings of abandonment by their families. They decide to tell stories to pass the time: one story each for ten days (the Greek for "ten" is "deka" and for "day" is "hemera," from which Boccaccio derives his title). Each day, one of them chooses a theme for the stories. As entertaining as the stories are, the discussions between the stories are what make the collection special; the speakers carry on a battle of the sexes as they debate the meaning and relative value of each story. The same dynamic can be found in two other frame tales in this anthology, one of which was influenced by the Decameron: the Thousand and One Nights (written before the Decameron) with its gripping frame story of Shahrazad; and Chaucer's Canterbury Tales, with the conversations (and arguments) among the pilgrims who are telling the tales.

*Written by Laura J. Getty*

## THE DECAMERON

License: Public Domain

Giovanni Boccaccio, Translated by John Payne

### Introduction

### *To the Ladies*

License: Public Domain

Giovanni Boccaccio, Translated by Léopold Flameng

When I reflect how disposed you are by nature to compassion, I cannot help being apprehensive lest what I now offer to your acceptance should seem to have but a harsh and offensive beginning; for it presents at the very outset the mournful remembrance of that most fatal plague, so terrible yet in the memories of us all. But let not this dismay you from reading further, as though every page were to cost you sighs and tears. Rather let this beginning, disagreeable as it is, seem to you but as a rugged and steep mountain placed before a delightful valley, which appears more beautiful and pleasant, as the way to it was more difficult: for as joy usually ends in sorrow, so again the end of sorrow is joy. To this short fatigue (I call it short, because contained in few words,) immediately succeeds the mirth and pleasure I had before promised you; and which, but for that promise, you would scarcely expect to find. And in truth could I have brought you by any other way than this, I would gladly have done it: but as the occasion of the occurrences, of which I am going to treat, could not well be made out without such a relation, I am forced to use this Introduction.

In the year then of our Lord 1348, there happened at Florence, the finest city in all Italy, a most terrible plague; which, whether owing to the influence of the planets, or that it was sent from God as a just punishment for our sins, had broken out some years before in the Levant, and after passing from place to place, and making incredible havoc

all the way, had now reached the west. There, spite of all the means that art and human foresight could suggest, such as keeping the city clear from filth, the exclusion of all suspected persons, and the publication of copious instructions for the preservation of health; and notwithstanding manifold humble supplications offered to God in processions and otherwise; it began to show itself in the spring of the aforesaid year, in a sad and wonderful manner. Unlike what had been seen in the east, where bleeding from the nose is the fatal prognostic, here there appeared certain tumours in the groin or under the arm-pits, some as big as a small apple, others as an egg; and afterwards purple spots in most parts of the body; in some cases large and but few in number, in others smaller and more numerous—both sorts the usual messengers of death. To the cure of this malady, neither medical knowledge nor the power of drugs was of any effect; whether because the disease was in its own nature mortal, or that the physicians (the number of whom, taking quacks and women pretenders into the account, was grown very great,) could form no just idea of the cause, nor consequently devise a true method of cure; whichever was the reason, few escaped; but nearly all died the third day from the first appearance of the symptoms, some sooner, some later, without any fever or other accessory symptoms. What gave the more virulence to this plague, was that, by being communicated from the sick to the hale, it spread daily, like fire when it comes in contact with large masses of combustibles. Nor was it caught only by conversing with, or coming near the sick, but even by touching their clothes, or anything that they had before touched. It is wonderful, what I am going to mention; and had I not seen it with my own eyes, and were there not many witnesses to attest it besides myself, I should never venture to relate it, however worthy it were of belief. Such, I say, was the quality of the pestilential matter, as to pass not only from man to man, but, what is more strange, it has been often known, that anything belonging to the infected, if touched by any other creature, would certainly infect, and even kill that creature in a short space of time. One instance of this kind I took particular notice of: the rags of a poor man just dead had been thrown into the street; two hogs came up, and after rooting amongst the rags, and shaking them about in their mouths, in less than an hour they both turned round, and died on the spot.

These facts, and others of the like sort, occasioned various fears and devices amongst those who survived, all tending to the same uncharitable and cruel end; which was, to avoid the sick, and everything that had been near them, expecting by that means to save themselves. And some holding it best to live temperately, and to avoid excesses of all kinds, made parties, and shut themselves up from the rest of the world; eating and drinking moderately of the best, and diverting themselves with music, and such other entertainments as they might have within door; never listening to anything from without, to make them uneasy. Others maintained free living to be a better preservative, and would baulk no passion or appetite they wished to gratify, drinking and reveling incessantly from tavern to tavern, or in private houses (which were frequently found deserted by the owners, and therefore common to every one), yet strenuously avoiding, with all this brutal indulgence, to come near the infected. And such, at that time, was the public distress, that the laws, human and divine, were no more regarded; for the officers, to put them in force, being either dead, sick, or in want of persons to assist them, every one did just as he pleased. A third sort of people chose a method between these two: not confining themselves to rules of diet like the former, and yet avoiding the intemperance of the latter; but eating and drinking what their appetites required, they walked everywhere with odours and nose gags to smell to; as holding it best to corroborate the brain: for the whole atmosphere seemed to them tainted with the stench of dead bodies, arising partly from the distemper itself, and partly from the fermenting of the medicines within them. Others with less humanity, but perchance, as they supposed, with more security from danger, decided that the only remedy for the pestilence was to avoid it: persuaded, therefore, of this, and taking care for themselves only, men and women in great numbers left the city, their houses, relations, and effects, and fled into the country: as if the wrath of God had been restrained to visit those only within the walls of the city; or else concluding, that none ought to stay in a place thus doomed to destruction.

Thus divided as they were in their views, neither did all die, nor all escape; but falling sick indifferently, as well those of one as of another opinion; they who first set the example by forsaking others, now languished themselves without pity. I pass over the little regard that citizens and relations showed to each other; for their terror was such, that a brother even fled from his brother, a wife from her husband, and, what is more uncommon, a parent from his own child. Hence numbers that fell sick could have no help but what the charity of friends, who were very few, or the avarice of servants supplied; and even these were scarce and at extravagant wages, and so little used to the business that they were fit only to reach what was called for, and observe when their employer died; and this desire of getting money often cost them their lives. From this desertion of friends, and scarcity of servants, an unheard-of custom prevailed; no lady, however young or handsome, would scruple to be attended by a man-servant, whether young or old it mattered not, and to expose herself naked to him, the necessity of the distemper requiring it, as though it was to a woman; which might make those who recovered, less modest for the time to come. And many lost their lives, who might have escaped, had they been looked after at all. So that, between the scarcity of servants, and the violence of the distemper, such numbers were continually dying, as made it terrible to hear as well as to behold. Whence, from mere necessity, many customs were introduced different from what had been before known in the city.

It had been usual, as it now is, for the women who were friends and neighbours to the deceased, to meet together at his house, and to lament with his relations; at the same time the men would get together at the door, with a number of clergy, according to the person's circumstances; and the corpse was carried by people of his own rank, with the solemnity of tapers and singing, to that church where the deceased had desired to be buried. This custom was now laid aside, and, so far from having a crowd of women to lament over them, great numbers passed out of the world without a witness. Few were they who had the tears of their friends at their departure; those friends were laughing and making themselves merry the while; for even the women had learned to postpone every other concern to that of their own lives. Nor was a corpse attended by more than ten or a dozen, nor those citizens of credit, but fellows hired for the purpose; who would put themselves under the bier, and carry it with all possible haste to the nearest church; and the corpse was interred, without any great ceremony, where they could find room. With regard to the lower sort, and many of a middling rank, the scene was still more affecting; for they staying at home either through poverty or hopes of succour in distress, fell sick daily by thousands, and, having nobody to attend them, generally died: some breathed their last in the streets, and others shut up in their own houses, where the stench that came from them made the first discovery of their deaths to the neighbourhood. And, indeed, every place was filled with the dead. Hence it became a general practice, as well out of regard for the living as pity for the dead, for the neighbours, assisted by what porters they could meet with, to clear all the houses, and lay the bodies at the doors; and every morning great numbers might be seen brought out in this manner, to be carried away on biers, or tables, two or three at a time; and sometimes it has happened that a wife and her husband, two or three brothers, and a father and son, have been laid on together. It has been observed also, whilst two or three priests have walked before a corpse with their crucifix, that two or three sets of porters have fallen in with them; and where they knew but of one dead body, they have buried six, eight, or more: nor was there any to follow, and shed a few tears over them; for things were come to that pass, that men's lives were no more regarded than the lives of so many beasts. Thus it plainly appeared, that what the wisest in the ordinary course of things, and by a common train of calamities, could never be taught, namely, to bear them patiently, this, by the excess of calamity, was now grown a familiar lesson to the most simple and unthinking. The consecrated ground no longer containing the numbers which were continually brought thither, especially as they were desirous of laying every one in the parts allotted to their families, they were forced to dig trenches, and to put them in by hundreds, piling them up in rows, as goods are stowed in a ship, and throwing in a little earth till they were filled to the top.

Not to dwell upon every particular of our misery, I shall observe, that it fared no better with the adjacent country; for, to omit the different boroughs about us, which presented the same view in miniature with the city, you might see the poor distressed labourers, with their families, without either the aid of physicians, or help of servants, languishing on the highways, in the fields, and in their own houses, and dying rather like cattle than human creatures. The consequence was that, growing dissolute in their manners like the citizens, and careless of everything, as supposing every day to be their last, their thoughts were not so much employed how to improve, as how to use their substance for their present support. The oxen, asses, sheep, goats, swine, and the dogs themselves, ever faithful to their masters, being driven from their own homes, were left to roam at will about the fields, and among the standing corn, which no one cared to gather, or even to reap; and many times, after they had filled themselves in the day, the animals would return of their own accord like rational creatures at night.

What can I say more, if I return to the city? Unless that such was the cruelty of Heaven, and perhaps of men, that between March and July following, according to authentic reckonings, upwards of a hundred thousand souls perished in the city only; whereas, before that calamity, it was not supposed to have contained so many inhabitants. What magnificent dwellings, what noble palaces were then depopulated to the last inhabitant! What families became extinct! What riches and vast possessions were left, and no known heir to inherit them! What numbers of both sexes, in the prime and vigour of youth, whom in the morning neither Galen, Hippocrates, nor *Æsculapius* himself, would have denied to be in perfect health, breakfasted in the morning with their living friends, and supped at night with their departed friends in the other world or else to show by our habits the greatness of our distress. And if we go hence, it is either to see multitudes of the dead and sick carried along the streets; or persons who had been outlawed for their villanies, now facing it out publicly, in safe defiance of the laws; or the scum of the city, enriched with the public calamity, and insulting us with ribald ballads. Nor is anything now talked of, but that such a one is dead, or dying; and, were any left to mourn, we should hear nothing but lamentations. Or if we go home—I know not whether it fares with you as with myself—when I find out of a numerous family not one left besides a maid-servant, I am frightened out of my senses; and go where I will, the ghosts of the departed seem always before me; not like the persons whilst they were living, but assuming a ghastly and dreadful aspect. Therefore the case is the same, whether we stay here, depart hence, or go home; especially as there are few left but ourselves who are able to go, and have a place to go to. Those few too, I am told, fall into all sorts of debauchery; and even cloistered ladies, supposing themselves entitled to equal liberties with others, are as bad as the worst. Now if this be so (as you see plainly it is), what do we here? What are we dreaming of? Why are we less regardful of our lives than other people

of theirs? Are we of less value to ourselves, or are our souls and bodies more firmly united, and so in less danger of dissolution? It is monstrous to think in such a manner; so many of both sexes dying of this distemper in the very prime of their youth afford us an undeniable argument to the contrary. Wherefore, lest through our own willfulness or neglect, this calamity, which might have been prevented, should befall us, I should think it best (and I hope you will join with me,) for us to quit the town, and avoiding, as we would death itself, the bad example of others, to choose some place of retirement, of which every one of us has more than one, where we may make ourselves innocently merry, without offering the least violence to the dictates of reason and our own consciences. There will our ears be entertained with the warbling of the birds, and our eyes with the verdure of the hills and valleys; with the waving of cornfields like the sea itself; with trees of a thousand different kinds, and a more open and serene sky; which, however overcast, yet affords a far more agreeable prospect than these desolate walls. The air also is pleasanter, and there is greater plenty of everything, attended with few inconveniences: for, though people die there as well as here, yet we shall have fewer such objects before us, as the inhabitants are less in number; and on the other part, if I judge right, we desert nobody, but are rather ourselves forsaken. For all our friends, either by death, or endeavouring to avoid it, have left us, as if we in no way belonged to them. As no blame then can ensue from following this advice, and perhaps sickness and death from not doing so, I would have us take our maids, and everything we may be supposed to want, and enjoy all the diversions which the season will permit, to-day in one place, to-morrow in another; and so continue to do, unless death should interpose, until we see what end Providence designs for these things. And of this too let me remind you, that our characters will stand as fair by our going away reputably, as those of others will do who stay at home with discredit."

The ladies having heard what Pampinea had to offer, not only approved of it, but had actually began to concert measures for their instant departure, when Filomena, who was a most discreet person, remarked: "Though Pampinea has spoken well, yet there is no occasion to run headlong into the affair, as you are about to do. We are but women, nor is any of us so ignorant as not to know how little able we shall be to conduct such an affair, without some man to help us. We are naturally fickle, obstinate, suspicious, and fearful; and I doubt much, unless we take somebody into our scheme to manage it for us, lest it soon be at an end; and perhaps, little to our reputation. Let us provide against this, therefore, before we begin."

Eliza then replied: "It is true, man is our sex's chief or head, and without his management, it seldom happens that any undertaking of ours succeeds well. But how are these men to be come at? We all know that the greater part of our male acquaintance are dead, and the rest all dispersed abroad, avoiding what we seek to avoid, and without our knowing where to find them. To take strangers with us, would not be altogether so proper: for, whilst we have regard to our health, we should so contrive matters, that, wherever we go to repose and divert ourselves, no scandal may ensue from it."

Whilst this matter was in debate, behold, three gentlemen came into the church, the youngest not less than twenty-five years of age, and in whom neither the adversity of the times, the loss of relations and friends, nor even fear for themselves, could stifle, or indeed cool, the passion of love. One was called Pamfilo, the second Filostrato, and the third Dioneo, all of them well bred, and pleasant companions; and who, to divert themselves in this time of affliction, were then in pursuit of their mistresses, who as it chanced were three of these seven ladies, the other four being all related to one or other of them. These gentlemen were no sooner within view, than the ladies had immediately their eyes upon them, and

Pampinea said, with a smile, "See, fortune is with us, and has thrown in our way three prudent and worthy gentlemen, who will conduct and wait upon us, if we think fit to accept of their service." Neifle, with a blush, because she was one that had an admirer, answered: "Take care what you say, I know them all indeed to be persons of character, and fit to be trusted, even in affairs of more consequence, and in better company; but, as some of them are enamoured of certain ladies here, I am only concerned lest we be drawn into some scrape or scandal, without either our fault or theirs." Filomena replied: "Never tell me what other people may think, so long as I know myself to be virtuous; God and the truth will be my defence; and if they be willing to go, we will say with Pampinea, that fortune is with us."

The rest hearing her speak in this manner, gave consent that the gentlemen should be invited to partake in this expedition. Without more words, Pampinea, who was related to one of the three rose up, and made towards them, as they stood watching at a distance. Then, after a cheerful salutation, she acquainted them with the design in hand, and entreated that they would, out of pure friendship, oblige them with their company. The gentlemen at first took it all for a jest, but, being assured to the contrary, immediately answered that they were ready; and, to lose no time, gave the necessary orders for what they wished to have done. Every thing being thus prepared, and a messenger dispatched before, whither they intended to go, the next morning, which was Wednesday, by break of day, the ladies, with some of their women, and the gentlemen, with every one his servant, set out from the city, and, after they had travelled two short miles, came to the place appointed.

It was a little eminence, remote from any great road, covered with trees and shrubs of an agreeable verdure; and on the top was a stately palace, with a grand and beautiful court in the middle: within were galleries, and fine

apartments elegantly fitted up, and adorned with most curious paintings; around it were fine meadows, and most delightful gardens, with fountains of the purest and best water. The vaults also were stored with the richest wines, suited rather to the taste of copious topers, than of modest and virtuous ladies. This palace they found cleared out, and everything set in order for their reception, with the rooms all graced with the flowers of the season, to their great satisfaction. The party being seated, Dioneo, who was the pleasantest of them all, and full of words, began “Your wisdom it is, ladies, rather than any foresight of ours, which has brought us hither. I know not how you have disposed of your cares; as for mine, I left them all behind me when I came from home. Either prepare, then, to be as merry as myself (I mean with decency), or give me leave to go back again, and resume my cares where I left them.” Pampinea made answer, as if she had disposed of hers in like manner: “You say right, sir, we will be merry; we fled from our troubles for no other reason. But, as extremes are never likely to last, I, who first proposed the means by which such an agreeable company is now met together, being desirous to make our mirth of some continuance, do find there is a necessity for our appointing a principal, whom we shall honour and obey in all things as our head; and whose province it shall be to regulate our diversions. And that every one may make trial of the burthen which attends care, as well as the pleasure which there is in superiority, nor therefore envy what he has not yet tried, I hold it best that every one should experience both the trouble and the honour for one day. The first, I propose, shall be elected by us all, and, on the approach of evening, shall name a person to succeed for the following day: and each one, during the time of his or her government, shall give orders concerning the place where, and the manner how, we are to live.”

These words were received with the highest satisfaction, and the speaker was, with one consent, appointed president for the first day: whilst Filomena, running to a laurel-tree, (for she had often heard how much that tree has always been esteemed, and what honour was conferred on those who were deservedly crowned with it,) made a garland, and put it upon Pampinea’s head. That garland, whilst the company continued together, was ever after to be the ensign of sovereignty.

Pampinea, being thus elected queen, enjoined silence, and having summoned to her presence the gentlemen’s servants, and their own women, who were four in number: “To give you the first example,” said she, “how, by proceeding from good to better, we may live orderly and pleasantly, and continue together, without the least reproach, as long as we please, in the first place I declare Parmeno, Dioneo’s servant, master of my household, and to him I commit the care of my family, and everything relating to my hall. Sirisco, Pamfilo’s servant, I appoint my treasurer, and to be under the direction of Parmeno; and Tindaro I command to wait on Filostrato and the other two gentlemen, whilst their servants are thus employed. Mysia, my woman, and Licisca, Filomena’s, I order into the kitchen, there to get ready what shall be provided by Parmeno. To Lauretta’s Chimera, and Fiammetta’s Stratilia, I give the care of the ladies’ chambers, and to keep the room clean where we sit. And I will and command you all, on pain of my displeasure, that wherever you go, or whatever you hear and see, you bring no news here but what is good.” These orders were approved by all; and the queen, rising from her seat, with a good deal of gaiety, added: “Here are gardens and meadows, where you may divert yourselves till nine o’clock, when I shall expect you back, that we may dine in the cool of the day.”

The company were now at liberty, and the gentlemen and ladies took a pleasant walk in the garden, talking over a thousand merry things by the way, and diverting themselves by singing love songs, and weaving garlands of flowers. Returning at the time appointed, they found Parmeno busy in the execution of his office: for in a saloon below was the table set forth, covered with the neatest linen, with glasses reflecting a lustre like silver: and water having been presented to them to wash their hands, by the queen’s order, Parmeno desired them to sit down. The dishes were now served up in the most elegant manner, and the best wines brought in, the servants waiting all the time with the most profound silence; and being well pleased with their entertainment, they dined with all the facetiousness and mirth imaginable. When dinner was over, as they could all dance, and some both play and sing well, the queen ordered in the musical instruments. Dioneo took a lute, and Fiammetta a viol, in obedience to the royal command; a dance was struck up, and the queen, with the rest of the company, took an agreeable turn or two, whilst the servants were sent to dinner; and when the dance was ended, they began to sing, and continued till the queen thought it time to break up. Her permission being given, the gentlemen retired to their chambers, remote from the ladies’ lodging rooms, and the ladies did the same, and undressed themselves for bed.

It was little more than three, when the queen rose, and ordered all to be called, alleging that much sleep in the daytime was unwholesome. Then they went into a meadow of deep grass, where the sun had little power; and having the benefit of a pleasant breeze, they sat down in a circle, as the queen had commanded, and she addressed them in this manner:—“As the sun is high, and the heat excessive, and nothing is to be heard but the chirping of the cicadas among the olives, it would be madness for us to think of moving yet: this is an airy place, and here are chess-boards and backgammon tables to divert yourselves with; but if you will be ruled by me, you will not play at all, since it often makes the one party uneasy, without any great pleasure to the other, or to the lookers-on; but let us begin and tell stories, and in this manner one person will entertain the whole company; and by the time it has gone round, the worst part of the day will be over, and then we can divert ourselves as we like best. If this be agreeable to

you, then (for I wait to know your pleasure) let us begin; if not, you are at your own disposal till the evening." This motion being approved by all, the queen continued, "Let every one for this first day take what subject he fancies most;" and turning to Pamfilo, who sat on her right hand, she bade him begin. He readily obeyed, and spoke to this effect, so as to be distinctly heard by the whole company.

### Day the Third

#### *The Ninth Story*

*Gillette de narbonne recovereth the king of france of a fistula and demandeth for her husband bertrand de roussillon, who marrieth her against his will and betaketh him for despite to florence, where, he paying court to a young lady, gillette, in the person of the latter, lieth with him and hath by him two sons; wherefore after, holding her dear, he entertaineth her for his wife.*

Lauretta's story being now ended, it rested but with the queen to tell, an she would not infringe upon Dioneo's privilege; wherefore, without waiting to be solicited by her companions, she began all blithesomely to speak thus: "Who shall tell a story that may appear goodly, now we have heard that of Lauretta? Certes, it was well for us that hers was not the first, for that few of the others would have pleased after it, as I misdoubt me will betide of those which are yet to tell this day. Natheless, be that as it may, I will e'en recount to you that which occurreth to me upon the proposed theme.

There was in the kingdom of France a gentleman called Isnard, Count of Roussillon, who, for that he was scant of health, still entertained about his person a physician, by name Master Gerard de Narbonne. The said count had one little son, and no more, hight Bertrand, who was exceeding handsome and agreeable, and with him other children of his own age were brought up. Among these latter was a daughter of the aforesaid physician, by name Gillette, who vowed to the said Bertrand an infinite love and fervent more than pertained unto her tender years. The count dying and leaving his son in the hands of the king, it behoved him betake himself to Paris, whereof the damsel abode sore disconsolate, and her own father dying no great while after, she would fain, an she might have had a seemly occasion, have gone to Paris to see Bertrand: but, being straitly guarded, for that she was left rich and alone, she saw no honourable way thereto; and being now of age for a husband and having never been able to forget Bertrand, she had, without reason assigned, refused many to whom her kinsfolk would have married her.

Now it befell that, what while she burned more than ever for love of Bertrand, for that she heard he was grown a very goodly gentleman, news came to her how the King of France, by an imposthume which he had had in his breast and which had been ill tended, had gotten a fistula, which occasioned him the utmost anguish and annoy, nor had he yet been able to find a physician who might avail to recover him thereof, albeit many had essayed it, but all had aggravated the ill; wherefore the king, despairing of cure, would have no more counsel nor aid of any. Hereof the young lady was beyond measure content and bethought herself that not only would this furnish her with a legitimate occasion of going to Paris, but that, should the king's ailment be such as she believed, she might lightly avail to have Bertrand to husband. Accordingly, having aforetime learned many things of her father, she made a powder of certain simples useful for such an infirmity as she conceived the king's to be and taking horse, repaired to Paris.

Before aught else she studied to see Bertrand and next, presenting herself before the king, she prayed him of his favour to show her his ailment. The king, seeing her a fair and engaging damsel, knew not how to deny her and showed her that which ailed him. Whenas she saw it, she was certified incontinent that she could heal it and accordingly said, 'My lord, an it please you, I hope in God to make you whole of this your infirmity in eight days' time, without annoy or fatigue on your part.' The king scoffed in himself at her words, saying, 'That which the best physicians in the world have availed not neither known to do, how shall a young woman know?' Accordingly, he thanked her for her good will and answered that he was resolved no more to follow the counsel of physicians. Whereupon quoth the damsel, 'My lord, you make light of my skill, for that I am young and a woman; but I would have you bear in mind that I medicine not of mine own science, but with the aid of God and the science of Master Gerard de Narbonne, who was my father and a famous physician whilst he lived.'

The king, hearing this, said in himself, 'It may be this woman is sent me of God; why should I not make proof of her knowledge, since she saith she will, without annoy of mine, cure me in little time?' Accordingly, being resolved to essay her, he said, 'Damsel, and if you cure us not, after causing us break our resolution, what will you have ensue to you therefor?' 'My lord,' answered she, 'set a guard upon me and if I cure you not within eight days, let burn me alive; but, if I cure you, what reward shall I have?' Quoth the king, 'You seem as yet unhusbanded; if you do this, we will marry you well and worshipfully.' 'My lord,' replied the young lady, 'I am well pleased that you should marry me, but I will have a husband such as I shall ask of you, excepting always any one of your sons or of the royal house.' He readily promised her that which she sought, whereupon she began her cure and in brief, before the term limited, she brought him back to health.



**IMAGE 5.7: GIOVANNI BOCCACCIO AND FLORENTINES WHO HAVE FLED FROM THE PLAGUE** | In this introduction to *The Decameron*, the author is shown alongside his ten characters (three men and seven women) who left Florence to escape the plague.

**Author:** Master of 1482 and follower (illuminators)

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

and loveth you dear; wherefore we doubt not but you will have a far happier life with her than with a lady of higher lineage.' Bertrand held his peace and the king let make great preparations for the celebration of the marriage.

The appointed day being come, Bertrand, sore against his will, in the presence of the king, espoused the damsel, who loved him more than herself. This done, having already determined in himself what he should do, he sought leave of the king to depart, saying he would fain return to his county and there consummate the marriage; then, taking horse, he repaired not thither, but betook himself into Tuscany, where, hearing that the Florentines were at war with those of Sienna, he determined to join himself to the former, by whom he was joyfully received and made captain over a certain number of men-at-arms; and there, being well provided of them, he abode a pretty while in their service.

The newly-made wife, ill content with such a lot, but hoping by her fair dealing to recall him to his county, betook herself to Roussillon, where she was received of all as their liege lady. There, finding everything waste and disordered for the long time that the land had been without a lord, with great diligence and solicitude, like a discreet lady as she was, she set all in order again, whereof the count's vassals were mightily content and held her exceeding dear, vowing her a great love and blaming the count sore for that he accepted not of her. The lady, having thoroughly ordered the county, notified the count thereof by two knights, whom she despatched to him, praying him that, an it were on her account he forbore to come to his county, he should signify it to her and she, to pleasure him, would depart thence; but he answered them very harshly, saying, 'For that, let her do her pleasure; I, for my part, will return thither to abide with her, whenas she shall have this my ring on her finger and in her arms a son by me begotten.' Now the ring in question he held very dear and never parted with it, by reason of a certain virtue which it had been given him to understand that it had.

The knights understood the hardship of the condition implied in these two well nigh impossible requirements, but, seeing that they might not by their words avail to move him from his purpose, they returned to the lady and

The king, feeling himself healed, said, 'Damsel, you have well earned your husband'; whereto she answered, 'Then, my lord, I have earned Bertrand de Roussillon, whom I began to love even in the days of my childhood and have ever since loved over all.' The king deemed it a grave matter to give him to her; nevertheless, having promised her and unwilling to fail of his faith, he let call the count to himself and bespoke him thus: 'Bertrand, you are now of age and accomplished [in all that behoveth unto man's estate]; wherefore it is our pleasure that you return to govern your county and carry with you a damsel, whom we have given you to wife.' 'And who is the damsel, my lord?' asked Bertrand; to which the king answered, 'It is she who hath with her medicines restored to us our health.'

Bertrand, who had seen and recognized Gillette, knowing her (albeit she seemed to him very fair) to be of no such lineage as sorted with his quality, said all disdainfully, 'My lord, will you then marry me to a she-leach? Now God forbid I should ever take such an one to wife!' 'Then,' said the king, 'will you have us fail of our faith, the which, to have our health again, we pledged to the damsel, who in guerdon thereof demanded you to husband?' 'My lord,' answered Bertrand, 'you may, an you will, take from me whatsoever I possess or, as your liegeman, bestow me upon whoso pleaseth you; but of this I certify you, that I will never be a consenting party unto such a marriage.' 'Nay,' rejoined the king, 'but you shall, for that the damsel is fair and wise

and loveth you dear; wherefore we doubt not but you will have a far happier life with her than with a lady of higher lineage.'

Bertrand held his peace and the king let make great preparations for the celebration of the marriage.

reported to her his reply; whereat she was sore afflicted and determined, after long consideration, to seek to learn if and where the two things aforesaid might be compassed, to the intent that she might, in consequence, have her husband again. Accordingly, having bethought herself what she should do, she assembled certain of the best and chiefest men of the county and with plaintive speech very orderly recounted to them that which she had already done for love of the count and showed them what had ensued thereof, adding that it was not her intent that, through her sojourn there, the count should abide in perpetual exile; nay, rather she purposed to spend the rest of her life in pilgrimages and works of mercy and charity for her soul's health; wherefore she prayed them take the ward and governance of the county and notify the count that she had left him free and vacant possession and had departed the country, intending nevermore to return to Roussillon. Many were the tears shed by the good folk, whilst she spoke, and many the prayers addressed to her that it would please her change counsel and abide there; but they availed nought. Then, commanding them to God, she set out upon her way, without telling any whither she was bound, well furnished with monies and jewels of price and accompanied by a cousin of hers and a chamberwoman, all in pilgrims' habits, and stayed not till she came to Florence, where, chancing upon a little inn, kept by a decent widow woman, she there took up her abode and lived quietly, after the fashion of a poor pilgrim, impatient to hear news of her lord.

It befell, then, that on the morrow of her arrival she saw Bertrand pass before her lodging, a-horseback with his company, and albeit she knew him full well, natheless she asked the good woman of the inn who he was. The hostess answered, 'That is a stranger gentleman, who calleth himself Count Bertrand, a pleasant man and a courteous and much loved in this city; and he is the most enamoured man in the world of a she-neighbour of ours, who is a gentlewoman, but poor. Sooth to say, she is a very virtuous damsels and abideth, being yet unmarried for poverty, with her mother, a very good and discreet lady, but for whom, maybe, she had already done the count's pleasure.' The countess took good note of what she heard and having more closely enquired into every particular and apprehended all aright, determined in herself how she should do.

Accordingly, having learned the house and name of the lady whose daughter the count loved, she one day repaired privily thither in her pilgrim's habit and finding the mother and daughter in very poor case, saluted them and told the former that, an it pleased her, she would fain speak with her alone. The gentlewoman, rising, replied that she was ready to hearken to her and accordingly carried her into a chamber of hers, where they seated themselves and the countess began thus, 'Madam, meseemeth you are of the enemies of Fortune, even as I am; but, an you will, belike you may be able to relieve both yourself and me.' The lady answered that she desired nothing better than to relieve herself by any honest means; and the countess went on, 'Needs must you pledge me your faith, whereto an I commit myself and you deceive me, you will mar your own affairs and mine.' 'Tell me anything you will in all assurance,' replied the gentlewoman; 'for never shall you find yourself deceived of me.'

Thereupon the countess, beginning with her first enamourment, recounted to her who she was and all that had betided her to that day after such a fashion that the gentlewoman, putting faith in her words and having, indeed, already in part heard her story from others, began to have compassion of her. The countess, having related her adventures, went on to say, 'You have now, amongst my other troubles, heard what are the two things which it behoveth me have, an I would have my husband, and to which I know none who can help me, save only yourself, if that be true which I hear, to wit, that the count my husband is passionately enamoured of your daughter.' 'Madam,' answered the gentlewoman, 'if the count love my daughter I know not; indeed he maketh a great show thereof. But, an it be so, what can I do in this that you desire?' 'Madam,' rejoined the countess, 'I will tell you; but first I will e'en show you what I purpose shall ensue thereof to you, an you serve me. I see your daughter fair and of age for a husband and according to what I have heard, meseemeth I understand the lack of good to marry her withal it is that causeth you keep her at home. Now I purpose, in requital of the service you shall do me, to give her forthright of mine own monies such a dowry as you yourself shall deem necessary to marry her honorably.'

The mother, being needy, was pleased with the offer; algates, having the spirit of a gentlewoman, she said, 'Madam, tell me what I can do for you; if it consist with my honour, I will willingly do it, and you shall after do that which shall please you.' Then said the countess, 'It behoveth me that you let tell the count my husband by some one in whom you trust, that your daughter is ready to do his every pleasure, so she may but be certified that he loveth her as he pretendeth, the which she will never believe, except he send her the ring which he carrieth on his finger and by which she hath heard he setteth such store. An he send you the ring, you must give it to me and after send to him to say that your daughter is ready do his pleasure; then bring him hither in secret and privily put me to bed to him in the stead of your daughter. It may be God will vouchsafe me to conceive and on this wise, having his ring on my finger and a child in mine arms of him begotten, I shall presently regain him and abide with him, as a wife should abide with her husband, and you will have been the cause thereof.'

This seemed a grave matter to the gentlewoman, who feared lest blame should haply ensue thereof to her daughter; nevertheless, bethinking her it were honourably done to help the poor lady recover her husband and that she went about to do this to a worthy end and trusting in the good and honest intention of the countess, she not only promised her to do it, but, before many days, dealing with prudence and secrecy, in accordance with the latter's

instructions, she both got the ring (albeit this seemed somewhat grievous to the count) and adroitly put her to bed with her husband, in the place of her own daughter. In these first embracements, most ardently sought of the count, the lady, by God's pleasure, became with child of two sons, as her delivery in due time made manifest. Nor once only, but many times, did the gentlewoman gratify the countess with her husband's embraces, contriving so secretly that never was a word known of the matter, whilst the count still believed himself to have been, not with his wife, but with her whom he loved; and whenas he came to take leave of a morning, he gave her, at one time and another, divers goodly and precious jewels, which the countess laid up with all diligence.

Then, feeling herself with child and unwilling to burden the gentlewoman farther with such an office, she said to her, 'Madam, thanks to God and you, I have gotten that which I desired, wherefore it is time that I do that which shall content you and after get me gone hence.' The gentlewoman answered that, if she had gotten that which contented her, she was well pleased, but that she had not done this of any hope of reward, nay, for that herseemed it behoved her to do it, an she would do well. 'Madam,' rejoined the countess, 'that which you say liketh me well and so on my part I purpose not to give you that which you shall ask of me by way of reward, but to do well, for that meseemeth behoveful so to do.' The gentlewoman, then, constrained by necessity, with the utmost shamefastness, asked her an hundred pounds to marry her daughter withal; but the countess, seeing her confusion and hearing her modest demand, gave her five hundred and so many rare and precious jewels as were worth maybe as much more. With this the gentlewoman was far more than satisfied and rendered the countess the best thanks in her power; whereupon the latter, taking leave of her, returned to the inn, whilst the other, to deprive Bertrand of all farther occasion of coming or sending to her house, removed with her daughter into the country to the house of one of her kinsfolk, and he, being a little after recalled by his vassals and hearing that the countess had departed the country, returned to his own house.

The countess, hearing that he had departed Florence and returned to his county, was mightily rejoiced and abode at Florence till her time came to be delivered, when she gave birth to two male children, most like their father, and let rear them with all diligence. Whenas it seemed to her time, she set out and came, without being known of any, to Montpellier, where having rested some days and made enquiry of the count and where he was, she learned that he was to hold a great entertainment of knights and ladies at Roussillon on All Saints' Day and betook herself thither, still in her pilgrim's habit that she was wont to wear. Finding the knights and ladies assembled in the count's palace and about to sit down to table, she went up, with her children in her arms and without changing her dress, into the banqueting hall and making her way between man and man whereas she saw the count, cast herself at his feet and said, weeping, 'I am thine unhappy wife, who, to let thee return and abide in thy house, have long gone wandering miserably about the world. I conjure thee, in the name of God, to accomplish unto me thy promise upon the condition appointed me by the two knights I sent thee; for, behold, here in mine arms is not only one son of thine, but two, and here is thy ring. It is time, then, that I be received of thee as a wife, according to thy promise.'

The count, hearing this, was all confounded and recognized the ring and the children also, so like were they to him; but yet he said, 'How can this have come to pass?' The countess, then, to his exceeding wonderment and that of all others who were present, orderly recounted that which had passed and how it had happened; whereupon the count, feeling that she spoke sooth and seeing her constancy and wit and moreover two such goodly children, as well for the observance of his promise as to pleasure all his liegemen and the ladies, who all besought him thenceforth to receive and honour her as his lawful wife, put off his obstinate despite and raising the countess to her feet, embraced her and kissing her, acknowledged her for his lawful wife and those for his children. Then, letting clothe her in apparel such as beseemed her quality, to the exceeding joyance of as many as were there and of all other his vassals who heard the news, he held high festival, not only all that day, but sundry others, and from that day forth still honoured her as his bride and his wife and loved and tendered her over all."

## Day the Fourth

### *The Second Story*

*Fra alberto giveth a lady to believe that the angel gabriel is enamoured of her and in his shape lieth with her sundry times; after which, for fear of her kinsmen, he casteth himself forth of her window into the canal and taketh refuge*



**IMAGE 5.8: BOCCACCIO BY MORGHEN** | Engraved portrait of Boccaccio, by the artist Raffaello Sanzio Morghen.

**Author:** Raffaello Sanzio Morghen

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

*in the house of a poor man, who on the morrow carrieth him, in the guise of a wild man of the woods, to the piazza, where, being recognized, he is taken by his brethren and put in prison.*

The story told by Fiammetta had more than once brought the tears to the eyes of the ladies her companions; but, it being now finished, the king with a stern countenance said, "My life would seem to me a little price to give for half the delight that Guiscardo had with Ghismonda, nor should any of you ladies marvel thereat, seeing that every hour of my life I suffer a thousand deaths, nor for all that is a single particle of delight vouchsafed me. But, leaving be my affairs for the present, it is my pleasure that Pampinea follow on the order of the discourse with some story of woe-ful chances and fortunes in part like to mine own; which if she ensue like as Fiammetta hath begun, I shall doubt-less begin to feel some dew fallen upon my fire." Pampinea, hearing the order laid upon her, more by her affection apprehended the mind of the ladies her companions than that of Filostrato by his words, wherefore, being more disposed to give them some diversion than to content the king, farther than in the mere letter of his command-ment, she bethought herself to tell a story, that should, without departing from the proposed theme, give occasion for laughter, and accordingly began as follows:

"The vulgar have a proverb to the effect that he who is naught and is held good may do ill and it is not believed of him; the which affordeth me ample matter for discourse upon that which hath been proposed to me and at the same time to show what and how great is the hypocrisy of the clergy, who, with garments long and wide and faces paled by art and voices humble and meek to solicit the folk, but exceeding loud and fierce to rebuke in others their own vices, pretend that themselves by taking and others by giving to them come to salvation, and to boot, not as men who have, like ourselves, to purchase paradise, but as in a manner they were possessors and lords thereof, assign unto each who dieth, according to the sum of the monies left them by him, a more or less excellent place there, studying thus to deceive first themselves, an they believe as they say, and after those who put faith for that matter in their words. Anent whom, were it permitted me to discover as much as it behoved, I would quickly make clear to many simple folk that which they keep hidden under those huge wide gowns of theirs. But would God it might betide them all of their cozening tricks, as it betided a certain minor friar, and he no youngling, but held one of the first casuists in Venice; of whom it especially pleaseth me to tell you, so as peradventure somewhat to cheer your hearts, that are full of compassion for the death of Ghismonda, with laughter and pleasance.

There was, then, noble ladies, in Imola, a man of wicked and corrupt life, who was called Berto della Massa and whose lewd fashions, being well known of the Imolese, had brought him into such ill savour with them that there was none in the town who would credit him, even when he said sooth; wherefore, seeing that his shifts might no longer stand him in stead there, he removed in desperation to Venice, the receptacle of every kind of trash, thinking to find there new means of carrying on his wicked practices. There, as if conscience-stricken for the evil deeds done by him in the past, feigning himself overcome with the utmost humility and waxing devouter than any man alive, he went and turned Minor Friar and styled himself Fra Alberta da Imola; in which habit he proceeded to lead, to all appearance, a very austere life, greatly commanding abstinence and mortification and never eating flesh nor drinking wine, whenas he had not thereof that which was to his liking. In short, scarce was any ware of him when from a thief, a pimp, a forger, a manslayer, he suddenly became a great preacher, without having for all that forsworn the vices aforesaid, whenas he might secretly put them in practice. Moreover, becoming a priest, he would still, whenas he celebrated mass at the altar, an he were seen of many, beweep our Saviour's passion, as one whom tears cost little, whenas he willed it. Brief, what with his preachings and his tears, he contrived on such wise to inveigle the Venetians that he was trustee and depositary of well nigh every will made in the town and guardian of folk's monies, besides being confessor and counsellor of the most part of the men and women of the place; and doing thus, from wolf he was become shepherd and the fame of his sanctity was far greater in those parts than ever was that of St. Francis at Assisi.

It chanced one day that a vain simple young lady, by name Madam Lisetta da Ca Quirino, wife of a great merchant who was gone with the galleys into Flanders, came with other ladies to confess to this same holy friar, at whose feet kneeling and having, like a true daughter of Venice as she was (where the women are all feather-brained), told him part of her affairs, she was asked of him if she had a lover. Whereto she answered, with an offended air, 'Good lack, sir friar, have you no eyes in your head? Seem my charms to you such as those of yonder others? I might have lovers and to spare, an I would; but my beauties are not for this one nor that. How many women do you see whose charms are such as mine, who would be fair in Paradise?' Brief, she said so many things of this beauty of hers that it was a weariness to hear. Fra Alberto incontinent perceived that she savoured of folly and himseeming she was a fit soil for his tools, he fell suddenly and beyond measure in love with her; but, reserving blandishments for a more convenient season, he proceeded, for the nonce, so he might show himself a holy man, to rebuke her and tell her that this was vainglory and so forth. The lady told him he was an ass and knew not what one beauty was more than another, whereupon he, unwilling to vex her overmuch, took her confession and let her go away with the others.



**IMAGE 5.9: A TALE FROM THE DECAMERON** | An oil painting by John William Waterhouse, showing the characters of The Decameron sitting together as they tell their stories.

**Author:** Unknown

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

He let some days pass, then, taking with him a trusty companion of his, he repaired to Madam Lisetta's house and withdrawing with her into a room apart, where none might see him, he fell on his knees before her and said, 'Madam, I pray you for God's sake pardon me that which I said to you last Sunday, whenas you bespoke me of your beauty, for that the following night I was so cruelly chastised there that I have not since been able to rise from my bed till to-day.' Quoth Mistress Featherbrain, 'And who chastised you thus?' 'I will tell you,' replied the monk. 'Being that night at my orisons, as I still use to be, I saw of a sudden a great light in my cell and ere I could turn me to see what it might be, I beheld over against me a very fair youth with a stout cudgel in his hand, who took me by the gown and dragging me to my feet, gave me such a drubbing that he broke every bone in my body. I asked him why he used me thus and he answered, "For that thou presumedst to-day, to disparage the celestial charms of Madam Lisetta, whom I love over all things, save only God." "Who, then, are you?" asked I; and he replied that he was the angel Gabriel. "O my lord," said I, "I pray you pardon me"; and he, "So be it; I pardon thee on condition that thou go to her, as first thou mayst, and get her pardon; but if she pardons thee not, I will return to thee and give thee such a bout of it that I will make thee a woeful man for all the time thou shalt live here below." That which he said to me after I dare not tell you, except you first pardon me.'

My Lady Addleape, who was somewhat scant of wit, was overjoyed to hear this, taking it all for gospel, and said, after a little, 'I told you, Fra Alberto, that my charms were celestial, but, so God be mine aid, it irketh me for you and I will pardon you forthright, so you may come to no more harm, provided you tell me truly that which the angel said to you after.' 'Madam,' replied Fra Alberto, 'since you pardon me, I will gladly tell it you; but I must warn you of one thing, to wit, that whatever I tell you, you must have a care not to repeat it to any one alive, an you would not mar your affairs, for that you are the luckiest lady in the world. The angel Gabriel bade me tell you that you pleased him so much that he had many a time come to pass the night with you, but that he feared to affright you. Now he sendeth to tell you by me that he hath a mind to come to you one night and abide awhile with you and (for that he is an angel and that, if he came in angel-form, you might not avail to touch him,) he purposeth, for your delectation, to come in guise of a man, wherefore he biddeth you send to tell him when you would have him come

and in whose form, and he will come hither; whereof you may hold yourself blest over any other lady alive.'

My Lady Conceit answered that it liked her well that the angel Gabriel loved her, seeing she loved him well nor ever failed to light a candle of a groat before him, whereas she saw him depicted, and that what time soever he chose to come to her, he should be dearly welcome and would find her all alone in her chamber, but on this condition, that he should not leave her for the Virgin Mary, whose great well-wisher it was said he was, as indeed appeareth, inasmuch as in every place where she saw him [limned], he was on his knees before her. Moreover, she said it must rest with him to come in whatsoever form he pleased, so but she was not affrighted.

Then said Fra Alberto, 'Madam, you speak sagely and I will without fail take order with him of that which you tell me. But you may do me a great favour, which will cost you nothing; it is this, that you will him come with this my body. And I will tell you in what you will do me a favour; you must know that he will take my soul forth of my body and put it in Paradise, whilst he himself will enter into me; and what while he abideth with you, so long will my soul abide in Paradise.' 'With all my heart,' answered Dame Littlewit. 'I will well that you have this consolation, in requital of the buffets he gave you on my account.' Then said Fra Alberto, 'Look that he find the door of your house open to-night, so he may come in thereat, for that, coming in human form, as he will, he might not enter save by the door.' The lady replied that it should be done, whereupon the monk took his leave and she abode in such a transport of exultation that her breech touched not her shift and her seemed a thousand years till the angel Gabriel should come to her.

Meanwhile, Fra Alberto, bethinking him that it behoved him play the cavalier, not the angel, that night proceeded to fortify himself with confections and other good things, so he might not lightly be unhorsed; then, getting leave, as soon as it was night, he repaired with one of his comrades to the house of a woman, a friend of his, whence he was used whiles to take his start what time he went to course the fillies; and thence, whenas it seemed to him time, having disguised himself, he betook him to the lady's house. There he tricked himself out as an angel with the trappings he had brought with him and going up, entered the chamber of the lady, who, seeing this creature all in white, fell on her knees before him. The angel blessed her and raising her to her feet, signed to her to go to bed, which she, studious to obey, promptly did, and the angel after lay down with his devotee. Now Fra Alberto was a personable man of his body and a lusty and excellent well set up on his legs; wherefore, finding himself in bed with Madam Lisetta, who was young and dainty, he showed himself another guess bedfellow than her husband and many a time that night took flight without wings, whereof she avowed herself exceeding content; and eke he told her many things of the glories of heaven. Then, the day drawing near, after taking order for his return, he made off with his trappings and returned to his comrade, whom the good woman of the house had meanwhile borne amicable company, lest he should get a fright, lying alone.

As for the lady, no sooner had she dined than, taking her waiting-woman with her, she betook herself to Fra Alberto and gave him news of the angel Gabriel, telling him that which she had heard from him of the glories of life eternal and how he was made and adding to boot, marvellous stories of her own invention. 'Madam,' said he, 'I know not how you fared with him; I only know that yesternight, whenas he came to me and I did your message to him, he suddenly transported my soul amongst such a multitude of roses and other flowers that never was the like thereof seen here below, and I abode in one of the most delightsome places that was aye until the morning; but what became of my body meanwhile I know not.' 'Do I not tell you?' answered the lady. 'Your body lay all night in mine arms with the angel Gabriel. If you believe me not, look under your left pap, whereas I gave the angel such a kiss that the marks of it will stay by you for some days to come.' Quoth the friar, 'Say you so? Then will I do to-day a thing I have not done this great while; I will strip myself, to see if you tell truth.' Then, after much prating, the lady returned home and Fra Alberto paid her many visits in angel-form, without suffering any hindrance.

However, it chanced one day that Madam Lisetta, being in dispute with a gossip of hers upon the question of female charms, to set her own above all others, said, like a woman who had little wit in her noddle, 'An you but knew whom my beauty pleaseth, in truth you would hold your peace of other women.' The other, longing to hear, said, as one who knew her well, 'Madam, maybe you say sooth; but knowing not who this may be, one cannot turn about so lightly.' Thereupon quoth Lisetta, who was eath enough to draw, 'Gossip, it must go no farther; but he I mean is the angel Gabriel, who loveth me more than himself, as the fairest lady (for that which he telleth me) who is in the world or the Maremma.' The other had a mind to laugh, but contained herself, so she might make Lisetta speak farther, and said, 'Faith, madam, an the angel Gabriel be your lover and tell you this, needs must it be so; but methought not the angels did these things.' 'Gossip,' answered the lady, 'you are mistaken; zounds, he doth what you wot of better than my husband and telleth me they do it also up yonder; but, for that I seem to him fairer than any she in heaven, he hath fallen in love with me and cometh full oft to lie with me; seestow now?'

The gossip, to whom it seemed a thousand years till she should be whereas she might repeat these things, took her leave of Madam Lisetta and foregathering at an entertainment with a great company of ladies, orderly recounted to them the whole story. They told it again to their husbands and other ladies, and these to yet others, and so in less than two days Venice was all full of it. Among others to whose ears the thing came were Lisetta's brothers-in-law, who, without saying aught to her, bethought themselves to find the angel in question and see if he knew how to fly,

and to this end they lay several nights in wait for him. As chance would have it, some inkling of the matter came to the ears of Fra Alberto, who accordingly repaired one night to the lady's house, to reprove her, but hardly had he put off his clothes ere her brothers-in-law, who had seen him come, were at the door of her chamber to open it.

Fra Alberto, hearing this and guessing what was to do, started up and having no other resource, opened a window, which gave upon the Grand Canal, and cast himself thence into the water. The canal was deep there and he could swim well, so that he did himself no hurt, but made his way to the opposite bank and hastily entering a house that stood open there, besought a poor man, whom he found within, to save his life for the love of God, telling him a tale of his own fashion, to explain how he came there at that hour and naked. The good man was moved to pity and it behoving him to go do his occasions, he put him in his own bed and bade him abide there against his return; then, locking him in, he went about his affairs. Meanwhile, the lady's brothers-in-law entered her chamber and found that the angel Gabriel had flown, leaving his wings there; whereupon, seeing themselves baffled, they gave her all manner hard words and ultimately made off to their own house with the angel's trappings, leaving her disconsolate.

Broad day come, the good man with whom Fra Alberto had taken refuge, being on the Rialto, heard how the angel Gabriel had gone that night to lie with Madam Lisetta and being surprised by her kinsmen, had cast himself for fear into the canal, nor was it known what was come of him, and concluded forthright that this was he whom he had at home. Accordingly, he returned thither and recognizing the monk, found means after much parley, to make him fetch him fifty ducats, an he would not have him give him up to the lady's kinsmen. Having gotten the money and Fra Alberto offering to depart thence, the good man said to him, 'There is no way of escape for you, an it be not one that I will tell you. We hold to-day a festival, wherein one bringeth a man clad bear-fashion and another one accoutré as a wild man of the woods and what not else, some one thing and some another, and there is a hunt held in St. Mark's Place, which finished, the festival is at an end and after each goeth whither it pleaseth him with him whom he hath brought. An you will have me lead you thither, after one or other of these fashions, I can after carry you whither you please, ere it be spied out that you are here; else I know not how you are to get away, without being recognized, for the lady's kinsmen, concluding that you must be somewhere hereabout, have set a watch for you on all sides.'

Hard as it seemed to Fra Alberto to go on such wise, nevertheless, of the fear he had of the lady's kinsmen, he resigned himself thereto and told his host whither he would be carried, leaving the manner to him. Accordingly, the other, having smeared him all over with honey and covered him with down, clapped a chain about his neck and a mask on his face; then giving him a great staff in on hand and in the other two great dogs which he had fetched from the shambles he despatched one to the Rialto to make public proclamation that whoso would see the angel Gabriel should repair to St. Mark's Place; and this was Venetian loyalty! This done, after a while, he brought him forth and setting him before himself, went holding him by the chain behind, to the no small clamour of the folk, who said all, 'What be this? What be this?' till he came to the place, where, what with those who had followed after them and those who, hearing the proclamation, were come thither from the Rialto, were folk without end. There he tied his wild man to a column in a raised and high place, making a show of awaiting the hunt, whilst the flies and gads gave the monk exceeding annoy, for that he was besmeared with honey. But, when he saw the place well filled, making as he would unchain his wild man, he pulled off Fra Alberto's mask and said, 'Gentlemen, since the bear cometh not and there is no hunt toward, I purpose, so you may not be come in vain, that you shall see the angel Gabriel, who cometh down from heaven to earth anights, to comfort the Venetian ladies.'

No sooner was the mask off than Fra Alberto was incontinent recognized of all, who raised a general outcry against him, giving him the scurviest words and the soundest rating was ever given a canting knave; moreover, they cast in his face, one this kind of filth and another that, and so they baited him a great while, till the news came by chance to his brethren, whereupon half a dozen of them sallied forth and coming thither, unchained him and threw a gown over him; then, with a general hue and cry behind them, they carried him off to the convent, where it is believed he died in prison, after a wretched life. Thus then did this fellow, held good and doing ill, without it being believed, dare to feign himself the angel Gabriel, and after being turned into a wild man of the woods and put to shame, as he deserved, bewailed, when too late, the sins he had committed. God grant it happen thus to all other knaves of his fashion!"

### Day the Fifth

#### *The Ninth Story*

*Federigo degli alberighi loveth and is not loved. He wasteth his substance in prodigal hospitality till there is left him but one sole falcon, which, having nought else, he giveth his mistress to eat, on her coming to his house; and she, learning this, changeth her mind and taking him to husband, maketh him rich again.*

Filomena having ceased speaking, the queen, seeing that none remained to tell save only herself and Dioneo, whose privilege entitled him to speak last, said, with blithe aspect, "It pertaineth now to me to tell and I, dearest ladies, will willingly do it, relating a story like in part to the foregoing, to the intent that not only may you know how much the

love of you can avail in gentle hearts, but that you may learn to be yourselves, wheras it behoveth, bestowers of your guerdons, without always suffering fortune to be your guide, which most times, as it chanceth, giveth not discreetly, but out of all measure.

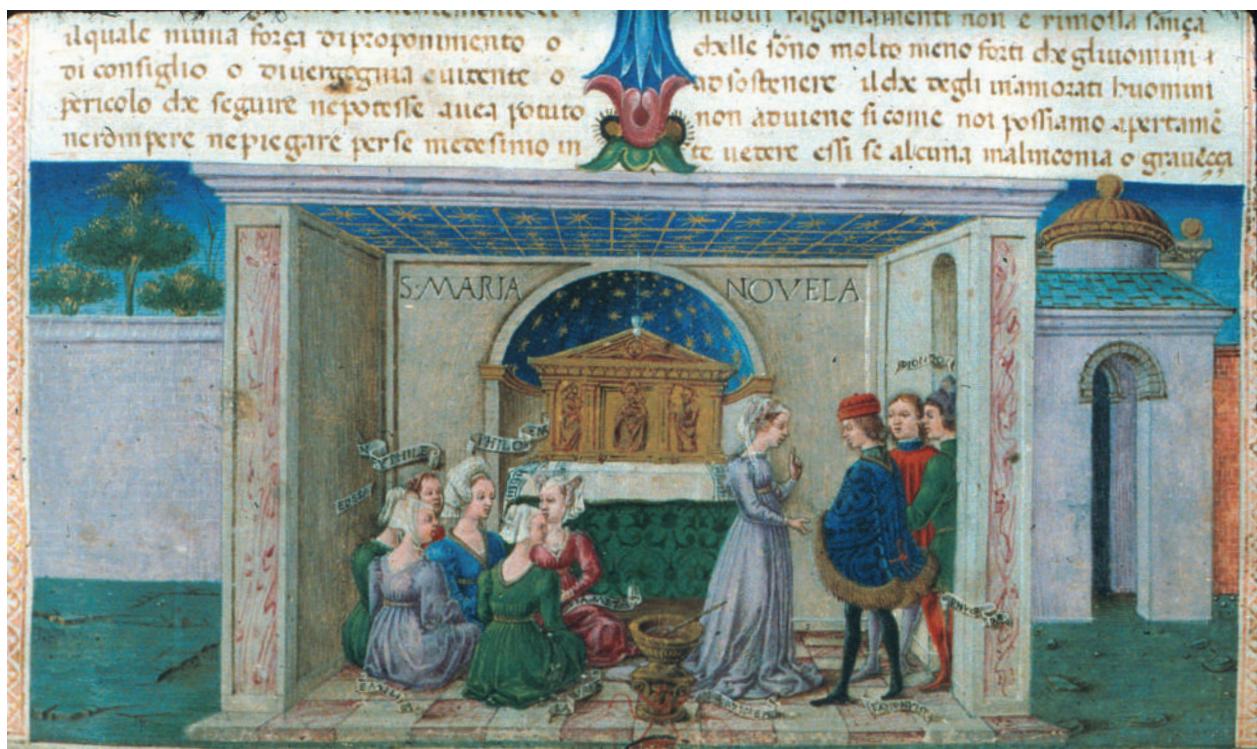
You must know, then, that Coppo di Borghese Domenichi, who was of our days and maybe is yet a man of great worship and authority in our city and illustrious and worthy of eternal renown, much more for his fashions and his merit than for the nobility of his blood, being grown full of years, delighted oftentimes to discourse with his neighbours and others of things past, the which he knew how to do better and more orderly and with more memory and elegance of speech than any other man. Amongst other fine things of his, he was used to tell that there was once in Florence a young man called Federigo, son of Messer Filippo Alberighi and renowned for deeds of arms and courtesy over every other bachelor in Tuscany, who, as betideth most gentlemen, became enamoured of a gentlewoman named Madam Giovanna, in her day held one of the fairest and sprightliest ladies that were in Florence; and to win her love, he held jousts and tourneyings and made entertainments and gave gifts and spent his substance without any stint; but she, being no less virtuous than fair, recked nought of these things done for her nor of him who did them. Federigo spending thus far beyond his means and gaining nought, his wealth, as lightly happeneth, in course of time came to an end and he abode poor, nor was aught left him but a poor little farm, on whose returns he lived very meagrely, and to boot a falcon he had, one of the best in the world. Wherefore, being more in love than ever and him-seeming he might no longer make such a figure in the city as he would fain do, he took up his abode at Campi, where his farm was, and there bore his poverty with patience, hawking wheras he might and asking of no one.

Federigo being thus come to extremity, it befell one day that Madam Giovanna's husband fell sick and seeing himself nigh upon death, made his will, wherein, being very rich, he left a son of his, now well grown, his heir, after which, having much loved Madam Giovanna, he substituted her to his heir, in case his son should die without lawful issue, and died. Madam Giovanna, being thus left a widow, betook herself that summer, as is the usance of our ladies, into the country with her son to an estate of hers very near that of Federigo; wherefore it befell that the lad made acquaintance with the latter and began to take delight in hawks and hounds, and having many a time seen his falcon flown and being strangely taken therewith, longed sore to have it, but dared not ask it of him, seeing it so dear to him. The thing standing thus, it came to pass that the lad fell sick, whereat his mother was sore concerned, as one who had none but him and loved him with all her might, and abode about him all day, comforting him without cease; and many a time she asked him if there were aught he desired, beseeching him tell it her, for an it might be gotten, she would contrive that he should have it. The lad, having heard these offers many times repeated, said, 'Mother mine, an you could procure me to have Federigo's falcon, methinketh I should soon be whole.'

The lady hearing this, bethought herself awhile and began to consider how she should do. She knew that Federigo had long loved her and had never gotten of her so much as a glance of the eye; wherefore quoth she in herself, 'How shall I send or go to him to seek of him this falcon, which is, by all I hear, the best that ever flew and which, to boot, maintaineth him in the world? And how can I be so graceless as to offer to take this from a gentleman who hath none other pleasure left?' Perplexed with this thought and knowing not what to say, for all she was very certain of getting the bird, if she asked for it, she made no reply to her son, but abode silent. However, at last, the love of her son so got the better of her that she resolved in herself to satisfy him, come what might, and not to send, but to go herself for the falcon and fetch it to him. Accordingly she said to him, 'My son, take comfort and bethink thyself to grow well again, for I promise thee that the first thing I do to-morrow morning I will go for it and fetch it to thee.' The boy was rejoiced at this and showed some amendment that same day.

Next morning, the lady, taking another lady to bear her company, repaired, by way of diversion, to Federigo's little house and enquired for the latter, who, for that it was no weather for hawking nor had been for some days past, was then in a garden he had, overlooking the doing of certain little matters of his, and hearing that Madam Giovanna asked for him at the door, ran thither, rejoicing and marvelling exceedingly. She, seeing him come, rose and going with womanly graciousness to meet him, answered his respectful salutation with 'Give you good day, Federigo!' then went on to say, 'I am come to make thee amends for that which thou hast suffered through me, in loving me more than should have behooved thee; and the amends in question is this that I purpose to dine with thee this morning familiarly, I and this lady my companion.' 'Madam,' answered Federigo humbly, 'I remember me not to have ever received any ill at your hands, but on the contrary so much good that, if ever I was worth aught, it came about through your worth and the love I bore you; and assuredly, albeit you have come to a poor host, this your gracious visit is far more precious to me than it would be an it were given me to spend over again as much as that which I have spent aforetime.' So saying, he shamefastly received her into his house and thence brought her into his garden, where, having none else to bear her company, he said to her, 'Madam, since there is none else here, this good woman, wife of yonder husbandman, will bear you company, whilst I go see the table laid.'

Never till that moment, extreme as was his poverty, had he been so dolorously sensible of the straits to which he had brought himself for the lack of those riches he had spent on such disorderly wise. But that morning, finding he had nothing wherewithal he might honourably entertain the lady, for love of whom he had aforetime entertained folk



**IMAGE 5.10: DECAMERON** | An image from *The Decameron*, illustrated by Taddeo Crivelli, depicting the seven women and three men from Boccaccio's manuscript.

**Author:** User "Cassmus"

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

without number, he was made perforce aware of his default and ran hither and thither, perplexed beyond measure, like a man beside himself, inwardly cursing his ill fortune, but found neither money nor aught he might pawn. It was now growing late and he having a great desire to entertain the gentle lady with somewhat, yet choosing not to have recourse to his own labourer, much less any one else, his eye fell on his good falcon, which he saw on his perch in his little saloon; whereupon, having no other resource, he took the bird and finding him fat, deemed him a dish worthy of such a lady. Accordingly, without more ado, he wrung the hawk's neck and hastily caused a little maid of his pluck it and truss it and after put it on the spit and roast it diligently. Then, the table laid and covered with very white cloths, whereof he had yet some store, he returned with a blithe countenance to the lady in the garden and told her that dinner was ready, such as it was in his power to provide. Accordingly, the lady and her friend, arising, betook themselves to table and in company with Federigo, who served them with the utmost diligence, ate the good falcon, unknowing what they did.

Presently, after they had risen from table and had abidden with him awhile in cheerful discourse, the lady, thinking it time to tell that wherefor she was come, turned to Federigo and courteously bespake him, saying, 'Federigo, I doubt not a jot but that, when thou hearest that which is the especial occasion of my coming hither, thou wilt marvel at my presumption, remembering thee of thy past life and of my virtue, which latter belike thou reputest cruelty and hardness of heart; but, if thou hadst or hadst had children, by whom thou mightest know how potent is the love one beareth them, meseemeth certain that thou wouldest in part hold me excused. But, although thou hast none, I, who have one child, cannot therefore escape the common laws to which other mothers are subject and whose enforcements it behoveth me ensue, need must I, against my will and contrary to all right and seemliness, ask of thee a boon, which I know is supremely dear to thee (and that with good reason, for that thy sorry fortune hath left thee none other delight, none other diversion, none other solace), to wit, thy falcon, whereof my boy is so sore enamoured that, an I carry it not to him, I fear me his present disorder will be so aggravated that there may presently ensue thereof somewhat whereby I shall lose him. Wherefore I conjure thee,—not by the love thou bearest me and whereto thou art nowise beholden, but by thine own nobility, which in doing courtesy hath approved itself greater than in any other,—that it please thee give it to me, so by the gift I may say I have kept my son alive and thus made him for ever thy debtor.'

Federigo, hearing what the lady asked and knowing that he could not oblige her, for that he had given her the falcon to eat, fell a-weeping in her presence, ere he could answer a word. The lady at first believed that his tears

arose from grief at having to part from his good falcon and was like to say that she would not have it. However, she contained herself and awaited what Federigo should reply, who, after weeping awhile, made answer thus: 'Madam, since it pleased God that I should set my love on you, I have in many things reputed fortune contrary to me and have complained of her; but all the ill turns she hath done me have been a light matter in comparison with that which she doth me at this present and for which I can never more be reconciled to her, considering that you are come hither to my poor house, whereas you deigned not to come what while I was rich, and seek of me a little boon, the which she hath so wrought that I cannot grant you; and why this cannot be I will tell you briefly. When I heard that you, of your favour, were minded to dine with me, I deemed it a light thing and a seemly, having regard to your worth and the nobility of your station, to honour you, as far as in me lay, with some choicer victual than that which is commonly set before other folk; wherefore, remembering me of the falcon which you ask of me and of his excellence, I judged him a dish worthy of you. This very morning, then, you have had him roasted upon the trencher, and indeed I had accounted him excellently well bestowed; but now, seeing that you would fain have had him on other wise, it is so great a grief to me that I cannot oblige you therein that methinketh I shall never forgive myself therefor.' So saying, in witness of this, he let cast before her the falcon's feathers and feet and beak.

The lady, seeing and hearing this, first blamed him for having, to give a woman to eat, slain such a falcon, and after inwardly much commended the greatness of his soul, which poverty had not availed nor might anywise avail to abate. Then, being put out of all hope of having the falcon and fallen therefore in doubt of her son's recovery, she took her leave and returned, all disconsolate, to the latter, who, before many days had passed, whether for chagrin that he could not have the bird or for that his disorder was een fated to bring him to that pass, departed this life, to the inexpressible grief of his mother. After she had abidden awhile full of tears and affliction, being left very rich and yet young, she was more than once urged by her brothers to marry again, and albeit she would fain not have done so, yet, finding herself importuned and calling to mind Federigo's worth and his last magnificence, to wit, the having slain such a falcon for her entertainment, she said to them, 'I would gladly, an it liked you, abide as I am; but, since it is your pleasure that I take a [second] husband, certes I will never take any other, an I have not Federigo degli Alberighi.' Whereupon her brothers, making mock of her, said 'Silly woman that thou art, what is this thou sayest? How canst thou choose him, seeing he hath nothing in the world?' 'Brothers mine,' answered she, 'I know very well that it is as you say; but I would liefer have a man that lacketh of riches than riches that lack of a man.' Her brethren, hearing her mind and knowing Federigo for a man of great merit, poor though he was, gave her, with all her wealth, to him, even as she would; and he, seeing himself married to a lady of such worth and one whom he had loved so dear and exceeding rich, to boot, became a better husband of his substance and ended his days with her in joy and solace."

## THE DIVINE COMEDY

Dante Alighieri (1265-1321 C.E.)

Composed between 1308- 1321 C.E.

Italy

Durante degli Alighieri, known to us as Dante, called his masterpiece simply *La Commedia* (The Comedy), not because it is funny, but because it begins sadly and ends happily. It is a deceptively simple title for such a complex and detailed work; as an example, Dante intended the first three lines to be read with four levels of meaning (literal, allegorical, moral, and anagogical/mystical). Boccaccio, author of *The Decameron*, added the word "Divine" to the title, both for the subject matter and the quality of the work. In the story, Dante appears as the main character, although this "pilgrim" should not be confused with the author himself: The character has no clue about what is happening, while the author controls all. The Divine Comedy exists because Dante made the switch from writing love lyrics (with the focus on earthly love) to writing about spiritual love after his muse, Beatrice, died during one of the plagues in Florence. Just as Beatrice inspired Dante from afar during life (the two never had a romantic relationship), she becomes after death the angelic inspiration to turn his attention to God. Dante plays with several traditions in his work: It is a Christian epic, where the epic hero does not need to be brave (in fact, he faints several times) as long as he has divine intervention; it is a pro-Trojan work, following Virgil's lead in the *Aeneid*; and it uses classical imagery and mythology to represent ideas (literally, Cerberus is a three-headed dog from Greek mythology, but he appears on the level of the Gluttonous to represent the concept of gulping down food). Virgil's influence manifests itself in several other ways: not only as the epic poet who was, according to Dante, his great master, but also as the poet who wrote of the foun-



**IMAGE 5.11: PORTRAIT OF DANTE ALIGHIERI** | In this depiction, Dante wears a laurel wreath and a rather angry scowl.

**Author:** Gustave Doré

**Source:** WikiArt

**License:** Public Domain

dation of the Roman Empire. Dante believed that a strong Holy Roman Empire (based in what is now Germany) would lead to the Second Coming of Christ, whose birth came during the original pax Romana (peace of Rome). It makes perfect sense, therefore, that Beatrice would task Virgil with being Dante's guide until she assumes that duty before the ascent through Heaven. It also would explain the urgency of Dante's prose; Dante believes that little time is left before the end of the world, so his work attempts to persuade its audience to change their ways now. In the first book, Inferno (Hell), Dante finds ways to represent how the punishment is the crime, often with astonishing creativity; in Purgatorio (Purgatory), Dante describes the way that sins are purged; and in Paradiso (Heaven), Dante displays his knowledge of the arts and sciences of his day. Geographically, Hell is described as a downward funnel, while the island of Purgatory is a funnel leading upward. Earth exists (for Dante) as a globe around which all other heavenly bodies move; Heaven exists in those circles that form around the Earth, with God in the space beyond. Heaven is therefore described both as a rose (with the petals forming the circles) and as a type of stadium, where everyone sits facing out, rather than in. Dante's goal at the end of the epic is to be granted a vision of God as he looks out into the empyrean.

*Written by Laura J. Getty*

## SELECTIONS FROM THE DIVINE COMEDY OF DANTE ALIGHIERI

Dante Alighieri, Translated by Courtney Langdon

License: Public Domain

### Inferno I

#### *Introduction to the Divine Comedy*

#### *The Wood and the Mountain*

When half way through the journey of our life  
I found that I was in a gloomy wood,  
because the path which led aright was lost.  
And ah, how hard it is to say just what  
this wild and rough and stubborn woodland was,  
the very thought of which renews my fear!  
So bitter 't is, that death is little worse;  
but of the good to treat which there I found,  
I'll speak of what I else discovered there.

5

I cannot well say how I entered it,  
so full of slumber was I at the moment  
when I forsook the pathway of the truth;  
but after I had reached a mountain's foot,  
where that vale ended which had pierced my heart  
with fear, I looked on high,  
and saw its shoulders  
mantled already with that planet's rays  
which leadeth one aright o'er every path.

10

15

Then quieted a little was the fear,  
which in the lake-depths of my heart had lasted  
throughout the night I passed so piteously.

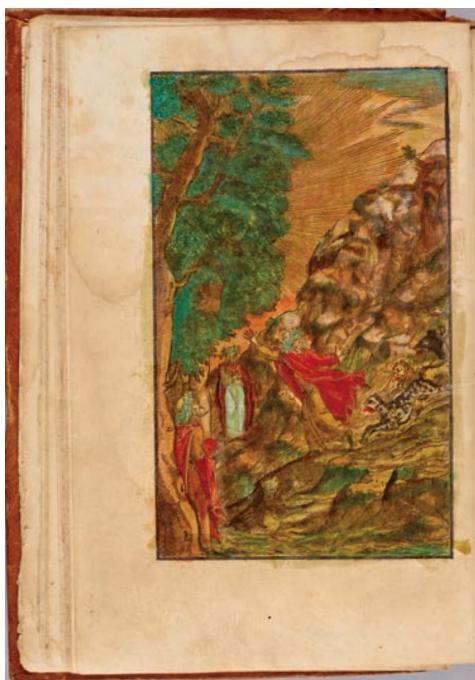
20

And even as he who, from the deep emerged  
with sorely troubled breath upon the shore,

25

turns round, and gazes at the dangerous water;  
even so my mind, which still was fleeing on,  
turned back to look again upon the pass  
which ne'er permitted any one to live.

When I had somewhat eased my weary body,



**IMAGE 5.12: INFERNO: CANTO ONE** | Dante flees through a dark forest, pursued by three dangerous animals, a lion, a leopard, and a wolf.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini  
**Source:** Digital Dante  
**License:** Public Domain

- o'er the lone slope I so resumed my way,  
that e'er the lower was my steady foot. 30
- Then lo, not far from where the ascent began,  
a Leopard which, exceeding light and swift,  
was covered over with a spotted hide,  
and from my presence did not move away;  
nay, rather, she so hindered my advance,  
that more than once I turned me to go back. 35
- Some time had now from early morn elapsed,  
and with those very stars the sun was rising  
that in his escort were, when Love Divine  
in the beginning moved those beauteous things; 40
- I therefore had as cause for hoping well  
of that wild beast with gaily mottled skin,  
the hour of daytime and the year's sweet season;  
but not so, that I should not fear the sight,  
which next appeared before me, of a Lion,  
—against me this one seemed to be advancing 45
- with head erect and with such raging hunger,  
that even the air seemed terrified thereby—  
and of a she-Wolf, which with every lust  
seemed in her leanness laden, and had caused  
many ere now to lead unhappy lives. 50
- The latter so oppressed me with the fear  
that issued from her aspect, that I lost  
the hope I had of winning to the top.
- And such as he is, who is glad to gain,  
and who, when times arrive that make him lose,  
weeps and is saddened in his every thought;  
such did that peaceless animal make me,  
which, 'gainst me coming, pushed me, step by step,  
back to the place where silent is the sun. 55 60
- While toward the lowland I was falling fast,  
the sight of one was offered to mine eyes,  
who seemed, through long continued silence, weak.  
When him in that vast wilderness I saw,  
“Have pity on me,” I cried out to him,  
“whate'er thou be, or shade, or very man!” 65
- “Not man,” he answered, “I was once a man;  
and both my parents were of Lombardy,  
and Mantuans with respect to fatherland.  
’Neath Julius was I born, though somewhat late,  
and under good Augustus’ rule I lived 70
- in Rome, in days of false and lying gods.  
I was a poet, and of that just man,  
Anchises’ son, I sang, who came from Troy  
after proud Ilion had been consumed.  
But thou, to such sore trouble why return? 75
- Why climbst thou not the Mountain of Delight,  
which is of every joy the source and cause?”
- “Art thou that Virgil, then, that fountain-head  
which poureth forth so broad a stream of speech?” 80
- I answered him with shame upon my brow.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| "O light and glory of the other poets,<br>let the long study, and the ardent love<br>which made me con thy book, avail me now.<br>Thou art my teacher and authority;<br>thou only art the one from whom I took<br>the lovely manner which hath done me honor.<br>Behold the beast on whose account I turned;<br>from her protect me, O thou famous Sage,<br>for she makes both my veins and pulses tremble!"                     | 85  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 90  |
| "A different course from this must thou pursue,"<br>he answered, when he saw me shedding tears,<br>"if from this wilderness thou wouldest escape;<br>for this wild beast, on whose account thou criest,<br>alloweth none to pass along her way,<br>but hinders him so greatly, that she kills;<br>and is by nature so malign and guilty,<br>that never doth she sate her greedy lust,<br>but after food is hungrier than before. | 95  |
| Many are the animals with which she mates,<br>and still more will there be, until the Hound<br>shall come, and bring her to a painful death.<br>He shall not feed on either land or wealth,<br>but wisdom, love and power shall be his food,<br>and 'tween two Feltros shall his birth take place.                                                                                                                               | 100 |
| Of that low Italy he'll be the savior,<br>for which the maid Camilla died of wounds,<br>with Turnus, Nisus and Euryalus.<br>And he shall drive her out of every town,<br>till he have put her back again in Hell,                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 105 |
| from which the earliest envy sent her forth.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 110 |
| I therefore think and judge it best for thee<br>to follow me; and I shall be thy guide,<br>and lead thee hence through an eternal place,<br>where thou shalt hear the shrieks of hopelessness<br>of those tormented spirits of old times,<br>each one of whom bewails the second death;                                                                                                                                          | 115 |
| then those shalt thou behold who, though in fire,<br>contented are, because they hope to come,<br>whene'er it be, unto the blessed folk;<br>to whom, thereafter, if thou wouldest ascend,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 120 |
| there'll be for that a worthier soul than I.<br>With her at my departure I shall leave thee,<br>because the Emperor who rules up there,<br>since I was not obedient to His law,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 125 |
| wills none shall come into His town through me.<br>He rules as emperor everywhere, and there<br>as king; there is His town and lofty throne.<br>O happy he whom He thereto elects!"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |     |
| And I to him: "O Poet, I beseech thee,<br>even by the God it was not thine to know,<br>so may I from this ill and worse escape,<br>conduct me thither where thou saidst just now,<br>that I may see Saint Peter's Gate, and those                                                                                                                                                                                                | 130 |
| whom thou describest as so whelmed with woe."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 135 |

He then moved on, and I behind him kept.

### Inferno II

#### Introduction to the Inferno

##### *The Mission of Virgil*

Daylight was going, and the dusky air  
was now releasing from their weary toil  
all living things on earth; and I alone  
was making ready to sustain the war  
both of the road and of the sympathy,  
which my unerring memory will relate.

5

O Muses, O high Genius, help me now!  
O Memory, that wrotest what I saw,  
herewith shall thy nobility appear!

I then began: "Consider, Poet, thou  
that guidest me, if strong my virtue be,  
or e'er thou trust me to the arduous course.  
Thou sayest that the sire of Silvio entered,  
when still corruptible, the immortal world,  
and that while in his body he was there.  
Hence, that to him the Opponent of all ill  
was courteous, considering the great result  
that was to come from him, both who, and what,  
seems not unfitting to a thoughtful man;  
for he of fostering Rome and of her sway  
in the Empyrean Heaven was chosen as sire;  
and both of these, if one would tell the truth,  
were foreordained unto the holy place,  
where greatest Peter's follower hath his seat.

10

While on this quest, for which thou giv'st him praise,  
he heard the things which of his victory  
the causes were, and of the Papal Robe.  
The Chosen Vessel went there afterward,  
to bring thence confirmation in the faith,  
through which one enters on salvation's path.  
But why should I go there, or who concedes it?  
I'm not Aeneas, nor yet Paul am I;  
me worthy of this, nor I nor others deem.  
If, therefore, I consent to come, I fear  
lest foolish be my coming; thou art wise,  
and canst much better judge than I can talk."

15

And such as he who unwills what he willed,  
and changes so his purpose through new thoughts,  
that what he had begun he wholly leaves;  
such on that gloomy slope did I become;  
for, as I thought it over, I gave up  
the enterprise so hastily commenced.

20

"If I have rightly understood thy words,"  
replied the shade of that Great-hearted man,  
"thy soul is hurt by shameful cowardice,

30

35

40

45



**IMAGE 5.13: INFERNO: CANTO TWO** | The Roman poet Virgil explains that he has been sent to guide Dante through the underworld.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini

**Source:** Digital Dante

**License:** Public Domain

often shall I commend thee unto Him.'

Thereat she ceased to speak, and I began:

'O Lady of virtue, thou through whom alone  
the human race excels all things contained  
within the heaven that hath the smallest circles,  
thy bidding pleases me so much, that late  
I'd be, hadst thou already been obeyed;  
thou needst but to disclose to me thy will.  
But tell me why thou dost not mind descending  
into this center from that ample place,  
whither thou art so eager to return.'

'Since thou wouldst know thereof so inwardly,  
I'll tell thee briefly,' she replied to me,  
'why I am not afraid to enter here.'

Of those things only should one be afraid,  
that have the power of doing injury;  
not of the rest, for they should not be feared.  
I, of His mercy, am so made by God,  
that me your wretchedness doth not affect,  
nor any flame of yonder fire molest.

There is a Gentle Lady up in Heaven,  
who grieves so at this check, whereto I send thee,  
that broken is stern judgment there above.  
She called Lucia in her prayer, and said:  
'Now hath thy faithful servant need of thee,  
and I, too, recommend him to thy care.'

which many times so sorely hinders one,  
that from an honored enterprise it turns him,  
as seeing falsely doth a shying beast.

In order that thou rid thee of this fear,  
I'll tell thee why I came, and what I heard  
the first time I was grieved on thy account.  
Among the intermediate souls I was,  
when me a Lady called, so beautiful  
and happy, that I begged her to command.  
Her eyes were shining brighter than a star,  
when sweetly and softly she began to say,  
as with an angel's voice she spoke to me:

'O courteous Mantuan spirit, thou whose fame  
is still enduring in the world above,  
and will endure as long as lasts the world,  
a friend of mine, but not a friend of Fortune,  
is on his journey o'er the lonely slope  
obstructed so, that he hath turned through fear;  
and, from what I have heard of him in Heaven,  
I fear lest he may now have strayed so far,  
that I have risen too late to give him help.  
Bestir thee, then, and with thy finished speech,  
and with whatever his escape may need,  
assist him so that I may be consoled.

I, who now have thee go, am Beatrice;  
thence come I, whither I would fain return;  
't was love that moved me, love that makes me speak.  
When in the presence of my Lord again,

50

55

60

65

70

75

80

85

90

95

- 100
- Lucia, hostile to all cruelty,  
set forth thereat, and came unto the place,  
where I with ancient Rachel had my seat.  
'Why, Beatrice,' she said, 'true Praise of God,  
dost thou not succour him who loved thee so,  
that for thy sake he left the common herd?  
Dost thou not hear the anguish of his cry?  
see'st not the death that fights him on the flood,  
o'er which the sea availeth not to boast?  
Ne'er were there any in the world so swift  
to seek their profit and avoid their loss,  
as I, after such words as these were uttered,  
descended hither from my blessed seat,  
confiding in that noble speech of thine,  
which honors thee and whosoever has heard it.'
- 105
- Then, after she had spoken to me thus,  
weeping she turned her shining eyes away;  
which made me hasten all the more to come;  
and, even as she wished, I came to thee,  
and led thee from the presence of the beast,  
which robbed thee of the fair Mount's short approach.  
What is it, then? Why, why dost thou hold back?  
Why dost thou lodge such baseness in thy heart,  
and wherefore free and daring art thou not,  
since three so blessed Ladies care for thee  
within the court of Heaven, and my words, too,  
give thee the promise of so much that's good?"
- 110
- 115
- As little flowers by the chill of night  
bowed down and closed, when brightened by the sun,  
stand all erect and open on their stems;  
so likewise with my wearied strength did I;  
and such good daring coursed into my heart,  
that I began as one who had been freed:
- 120
- "O piteous she who hastened to my help,  
and courteous thou, that didst at once obey  
the words of truth that she addressed to thee!  
Thou hast with such desire disposed my heart  
toward going on, by reason of thy words,  
that to my first intention I've returned.  
Go on now, since we two have but one will;  
thou Leader, and thou Lord, and Teacher thou!"
- 125
- 130
- I thus addressed him; then, when he had moved,  
I entered on the wild and arduous course.
- 135
- 140

### Inferno III

*The Gate and Vestibule of Hell  
Cowards and Neutrals. Acheron*

Through me one goes into the town of woe,  
through me one goes into eternal pain,  
through me among the people that are lost.

Justice inspired my high exalted Maker;

I was created by the Might divine,  
the highest Wisdom and the primal Love.

5

Before me there was naught created, save  
eternal things, and I eternal last;  
all hope abandon, ye that enter here!

These words of gloomy color I beheld  
inscribed upon the summit of a gate;  
whence I: "Their meaning, Teacher, troubles me."

10

And he to me, like one aware, replied:  
"All fearfulness must here be left behind;  
all forms of cowardice must here be dead.  
We've reached the place where, as I said to thee,  
thou'l see the sad folk who have lost the Good  
which is the object of the intellect."  
Then, after he had placed his hand in mine  
with cheerful face, whence I was comforted,  
he led me in among the hidden things.

15

There sighs and wails and piercing cries of woe  
reverberated through the starless air;  
hence I, at first, shed tears of sympathy.  
Strange languages, and frightful forms of speech,  
words caused by pain, accents of anger, voices  
both loud and faint, and smiting hands withal,  
a mighty tumult made, which sweeps around  
forever in that timelessly dark air,  
as sand is wont, whene'er a whirlwind blows.

25

And I, whose head was girt about with horror,  
said: "Teacher, what is this I hear? What folk  
is this, that seems so overwhelmed with woe?"

30

And he to me: "This wretched kind of life  
the miserable spirits lead of those  
who lived with neither infamy nor praise.  
Commingled are they with that worthless choir  
of Angels who did not rebel, nor yet  
were true to God, but sided with themselves.  
The heavens, in order not to be less fair,  
expelled them; nor doth nether Hell receive them,  
because the bad would get some glory thence."

35

And I: "What is it, Teacher, grieves them so,  
it causes them so loudly to lament?"

40

"I'll tell thee very briefly," he replied.  
"These have no hope of death, and so low down  
is this unseeing life of theirs, that envious  
they are of every other destiny.  
The world allows no fame of them to live;  
Mercy and Justice hold them in contempt.  
Let us not talk of them; but look, and pass!"

45

50

And I, who gazed intently, saw a flag,

- which, whirling, moved so swiftly that to me  
contemptuous it appeared of all repose;  
and after it there came so long a line  
of people, that I never would have thought  
that death so great a number had undone. 55
- When some I'd recognized, I saw and knew  
the shade of him who through his cowardice  
the great Refusal made. I understood  
immediately, and was assured that this  
the band of cowards was, who both to God  
displeasing are, and to His enemies. 60
- These wretched souls, who never were alive,  
were naked, and were sorely spurred to action  
by means of wasps and hornets that were there.  
The latter streaked their faces with their blood,  
which, after it had mingled with their tears,  
was at their feet sucked up by loathsome worms. 65
- When I had given myself to peering further,  
people I saw upon a great stream's bank;  
I therefore said: "Now, Teacher, grant to me  
that I may know who these are, and what law  
makes them appear so eager to cross over,  
as in this dim light I perceive they are." 70
- And he to me: "These things will be made clear  
to thee, as soon as on the dismal strand  
of Acheron we shall have stayed our steps."  
Thereat, with shame-suffused and downcast eyes,  
and fearing lest my talking might annoy him,  
up to the river I abstained from speech. 75
- Behold then, coming toward us in a boat,  
an aged man, all white with ancient hair,  
who shouted: "Woe to you, ye souls depraved!  
Give up all hope of ever seeing Heaven!  
I come to take you to the other shore,  
into eternal darkness, heat and cold. 80
- And thou that yonder art, a living soul,  
withdraw thee from those fellows that are dead."  
But when he saw that I did not withdraw,  
he said: "By other roads and other ferries  
shalt thou attain a shore to pass across,  
not here; a lighter boat must carry thee." 85
- To him my Leader: "Charon, be not vexed;  
thus is it yonder willed, where there is power  
to do whate'er is willed; so ask no more!" 90
- Thereat were quieted the woolly cheeks  
of that old boatman of the murky swamp,  
who round about his eyes had wheels of flame.  
Those spirits, though, who nude and weary were,  
their color changed, and gnashed their teeth together,  
as soon as they had heard the cruel words. 95
- They kept blaspheming God, and their own parents, 100

- the human species, and the place, and time,  
and seed of their conception and their birth. 105  
Then each and all of them drew on together,  
weeping aloud, to that accursèd shore  
which waits for every man that fears not God.
- Charon, the demon, with his ember eyes  
makes beckoning signs to them, collects them all,  
and with his oar beats whoso takes his ease. 110
- Even as in autumn leaves detach themselves,  
now one and now another, till their branch  
sees all its stripped off clothing on the ground;  
so, one by one, the evil seed of Adam 115  
cast themselves down that river-bank at signals,  
as doth a bird to its recalling lure.  
Thus o'er the dusky waves they wend their way;  
and ere they land upon the other side,  
another crowd collects again on this. 120
- “My son,” the courteous Teacher said to me,  
“all those that perish in the wrath of God  
from every country come together here;  
and eager are to pass across the stream, 125  
because Justice Divine so spurs them on,  
that what was fear is turned into desire.  
A good soul never goes across from hence;  
if Charon, therefore, findeth fault with thee,  
well canst thou now know what his words imply.”
- The darkling plain, when this was ended, quaked  
so greatly, that the memory of my terror 130  
bathes me even now with sweat.  
The tear-stained ground  
gave forth a wind, whence flashed vermillion light  
which in me overcame all consciousness; 135  
and down I fell like one whom sleep o'er takes.
- Inferno IV  
*The First Circle. The Borderland*  
*Unbaptized Worthies. Illustrious Pagans*
- A heavy thunder-clap broke the deep sleep  
within my head, so that I roused myself,  
as would a person who is waked by force;  
and standing up erect, my rested eyes  
I moved around, and with a steady gaze 5  
I looked about to know where I might be.
- Truth is I found myself upon the verge  
of pain's abysmal valley, which collects  
the thunder-roll of everlasting woes.  
So dark it was, so deep and full of mist, 10  
that, howsoe'er I gazed into its depths,  
nothing at all did I discern therein.
- “Into this blind world let us now descend!”

the Poet, who was death-like pale, began,  
"I will be first, and thou shalt second be."

15

And I, who of his color was aware,  
said: "How am I to come, if thou take fright,  
who 'rt wont to be my comfort when afraid?"

"The anguish of the people here below,"  
he said to me, "brings out upon my face  
the sympathy which thou dost take for fear.  
Since our long journey drives us, let us go!"  
Thus he set forth, and thus he had me enter  
the first of circles girding the abyss.

20

Therein, as far as one could judge by list'ning,  
there was no lamentation, saving sighs  
which caused a trembling in the eternal air;  
and this came from the grief devoid of torture  
felt by the throngs, which many were and great,  
of infants and of women and of men.

25

30

To me then my good Teacher: "Dost not ask  
what spirits these are whom thou seest here?  
Now I would have thee know, ere thou go further,  
that these sinned not; and though they merits have,  
't is not enough, for they did not have baptism,  
the gateway of the creed believed by thee;  
and if before Christianity they lived,  
they did not with due worship honor God;  
and one of such as these am I myself.  
For such defects, and for no other guilt,  
we're lost, and only hurt to this extent,  
that, in desire, we live deprived of hope."

35

40

Great sorrow filled my heart on hearing this,  
because I knew of people of great worth,  
who in that Borderland suspended were.

45

"Tell me, my Teacher, tell me, thou my Lord,"  
I then began, through wishing to be sure  
about the faith which conquers every error;  
"came any ever, by his own deserts,  
or by another's, hence, who then was blest?"

50

And he, who understood my covert speech,  
replied: "To this condition I was come  
but newly, when I saw a Mighty One  
come here, crowned with the sign of victory.  
From hence He drew the earliest parent's shade,  
and that of his son, Abel, that of Noah,  
and Moses the law-giver and obedient;  
Abram the patriarch, and David king,  
Israel, with both his father and his sons,  
and Rachel, too, for whom he did so much,  
and many others; and He made them blest;  
and I would have thee know that, earlier  
than these, there were no human spirits saved."

55

60

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| but all the while were passing through the wood,<br>the wood, I mean, of thickly crowded shades.                                                                                                                                                                     | 65  |
| Nor far this side of where I fell asleep<br>had we yet gone, when I beheld a fire,<br>which overcame a hemisphere of gloom.                                                                                                                                          |     |
| Somewhat away from it we were as yet,<br>but not so far, but I could dimly see<br>that honorable people held that place.                                                                                                                                             | 70  |
| "O thou that honorest both art and science,<br>who are these people that such honor have,<br>that it divides them from the others' life?"                                                                                                                            | 75  |
| And he to me: "The honorable fame,<br>which speaks of them in thy live world above,<br>in Heaven wins grace, which thus advances them."                                                                                                                              |     |
| And hereupon a voice was heard by me:<br>"Do honor to the loftiest of poets!<br>his shade, which had departed, now returns."                                                                                                                                         | 80  |
| And when the voice had ceased and was at rest,<br>four mighty shades I saw approaching us;<br>their looks were neither sorrowful nor glad.                                                                                                                           |     |
| My kindly Teacher then began to say:<br>"Look at the one who comes with sword in hand<br>before the three, as if their lord he were.<br>Homer he is, the sovereign poet; Horace,<br>the satirist, the one that cometh next;<br>the third is Ovid, Lucan is the last. | 85  |
| Since each of them in common shares with me<br>the title which the voice of one proclaimed,<br>they do me honor, and therein do well."                                                                                                                               | 90  |
| Thus gathered I beheld the fair assembly<br>of those the masters of the loftiest song,<br>which soareth like an eagle o'er the rest.                                                                                                                                 | 95  |
| Then, having talked among themselves awhile,<br>they turned around to me with signs of greeting;<br>and, when he noticed this, my Teacher smiled.                                                                                                                    |     |
| And even greater honor still they did me,<br>for one of their own company they made me,<br>so that amid such wisdom I was sixth.                                                                                                                                     | 100 |
| Thus on we went as far as to the light,<br>talking of things whereof is silence here<br>becoming, even as speech was, where we spoke.                                                                                                                                | 105 |
| We reached a noble Castle's foot, seven times<br>encircled by high walls, and all around<br>defended by a lovely little stream.                                                                                                                                      |     |
| This last we crossed as if dry land it were;<br>through seven gates with these sages I went in,<br>and to a meadow of fresh grass we came.                                                                                                                           | 110 |
| There people were with slow and serious eyes,<br>and, in their looks, of great authority;<br>they spoke but seldom and with gentle voice.                                                                                                                            |     |
| We therefore to one side of it drew back                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 115 |

into an open place so luminous  
and high, that each and all could be perceived.  
There on the green enamel opposite  
were shown to me the spirits of the great,  
for seeing whom I glory in myself.

120

I saw Electra with companions many,  
of whom I knew both Hector and Aeneas,  
and Caesar armed, with shining falcon eyes.  
I saw Camilla with Penthesilea  
upon the other side, and King Latinus,  
who with Lavinia, his own daughter, sat.  
I saw that Brutus who drove Tarquin out,  
Lucretia, Julia, Martia and Cornelia,  
and, all alone, I saw the Saladin.

125

Then, having raised my brows a little higher,  
the Teacher I beheld of those that know,  
seated amid a philosophic group.  
They all look up to him, all honor him;  
there Socrates and Plato I beheld,  
who nearer than the rest are at his side;  
Democritus, who thinks the world chance-born,  
Diogenes, Anaxagoras and Thales,  
Empedocles, Heraclitus, and Zeno;  
of qualities I saw the good collector,  
Dioscorides I mean; Orpheus I saw,  
Tully and Livy, and moral Seneca;  
Euclid, the geometer, and Ptolemy,  
Hippocrates, Avicenna, Galen,  
Averrhoës, who made the famous comment.

130

135

140

I cannot speak of all of them in full,  
because my long theme drives me on so fast,  
that oft my words fall short of what I did.

145

The sixfold band now dwindleth down to two;  
my wise Guide leads me by a different path  
out of the calm into the trembling air;  
and to a place I come, where naught gives light.

150

### Inferno V

#### *The Second Circle. Sexual Intemperance*

#### *The Lascivious and Adulterers*

Thus from the first of circles I went down  
into the second, which surrounds less space,  
and all the greater pain, which goads to wailing.

There Minos stands in horrid guise, and snarls;  
inside the entrance he examines sins,  
judges, and, as he girds himself, commits.  
I mean that when an ill-born soul appears  
before him, it confesses itself wholly;  
and thereupon that Connoisseur of sins  
perceives what place in Hell belongs to it,

5

10

and girds him with his tail as many times,  
as are the grades he wishes it sent down.  
Before him there are always many standing;  
they go to judgment, each one in his turn;  
they speak and hear, and then are downward hurled.

15

“O thou that comest to the inn of woe,”  
said Minos, giving up, on seeing me,  
the execution of so great a charge,  
“see how thou enter, and in whom thou put  
thy trust; let not the gate-way’s width deceive thee!”

20

To him my Leader: “Why dost thou, too, cry?  
Hinder thou not his fate-ordained advance;  
thus is it yonder willed, where there is power  
to do whate’er is willed; so ask no more!”

And now the woeful sounds of actual pain  
begin to break upon mine ears; I now  
am come to where much wailing smiteth me.  
I reached a region silent of all light,  
which bellows as the sea doth in a storm,  
if lashed and beaten by opposing winds.  
The infernal hurricane, which never stops,  
carries the spirits onward with its sweep,  
and, as it whirls and smites them, gives them pain.  
Wheneer they come before the shattered rock,  
there lamentations, moans and shrieks are heard;  
there, cursing, they blaspheme the Power Divine.  
I understood that to this kind of pain  
are doomed those carnal sinners, who subject  
their reason to their sensual appetite.

25

30

35

And as their wings bear starlings on their way,  
when days are cold, in full and wide-spread flocks;  
so doth that blast the evil spirits bear;  
this way and that, and up and down it leads them;  
nor only doth no hope of rest, but none  
of lesser suffering, ever comfort them.

40

45

And even as cranes move on and sing their lays,  
forming the while a long line in the air;  
thus saw I coming, uttering cries of pain,  
shades borne along upon the aforesaid storm;  
I therefore said: “Who, Teacher, are the people  
the gloomy air so cruelly chastises?”

50

“The first of those of whom thou wouldst have news,”  
the latter thereupon said unto me,  
“was empress over lands of many tongues.  
To sexual vice so wholly was she given,  
that lust she rendered lawful in her laws,  
thus to remove the blame she had incurred.  
Semiramis she is, of whom one reads  
that she gave suck to Ninus, and became  
his wife; she held the land the Soldan rules.

55

60

The next is she who killed herself through love,

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| and to Sichaeus' ashes broke her faith;<br>the lustful Cleopatra follows her.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |          |
| See Helen, for whose sake so long a time<br>of guilt rolled by, and great Achilles see,<br>who fought with love when at the end of life.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 65       |
| Paris and Tristan see;" and then he showed me,<br>and pointed out by name, a thousand shades<br>and more, whom love had from our life cut off.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |          |
| When I had heard my Leader speak the names<br>of ladies and their knights of olden times,<br>pity o'ercame me, and I almost swooned.<br>"Poet," I then began, "I'd gladly talk<br>with those two yonder who together go,<br>and seem to be so light upon the wind."                                                                                                                                                            | 70<br>75 |
| "Thou'l see thy chance when nearer us they are;"<br>said he, "beseech them then by that same love<br>which leadeth them along, and they will come."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |
| Soon as the wind toward us had bent their course.<br>I cried: "O toil-worn souls, come speak with us,<br>so be it that One Else forbid it not!"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 80       |
| As doves, when called by their desire, come flying<br>with raised and steady pinions through the air<br>to their sweet nest, borne on by their own will;<br>so from the band where Dido is they issued,<br>advancing through the noisome air toward us,<br>so strong with love the tone of my appeal.                                                                                                                          | 85       |
| "O thou benign and gracious living creature,<br>that goest through the gloomy purple air<br>to visit us, who stained the world blood-red;<br>if friendly were the universal King,<br>for thy peace would we pray to Him, since pity<br>thou shovest for this wretched woe of ours.<br>Of whatsoever it may please you hear<br>and speak, we will both hear and speak with you,<br>while yet, as now it is, the wind is hushed. | 90<br>95 |
| The town where I was born sits on the shore,<br>whither the Po descends to be at peace<br>together with the streams that follow him.<br>Love, which soon seizes on a well-born heart,<br>seized him for that fair body's sake, whereof<br>I was deprived; and still the way offends me.                                                                                                                                        | 100      |
| Love, which absolves from loving none that's loved,<br>seized me so strongly for his love of me,<br>that, as thou see'st, it doth not leave me yet.<br>Love to a death in common led us on;<br>Cain's ice awaiteth him who quenched our life."                                                                                                                                                                                 | 105      |
| These words were wafted down to us from them.<br><br>When I had heard those sorely troubled souls,<br>I bowed my head, and long I held it low,<br>until the Poet said: "What thinkest thou?"<br>When I made answer I began: "Alas!                                                                                                                                                                                             | 110      |

how many tender thoughts and what desire  
induced these souls to take the woeful step!"

I then turned back to them again and spoke,  
and I began: "Thine agonies, Francesca,  
cause me to weep with grief and sympathy.  
But tell me: at the time of tender sighs,  
whereby and how did Love concede to you  
that ye should know each other's veiled desires?"

115

And she to me: "There is no greater pain  
than to remember happy days in days  
of misery; and this thy Leader knows.  
But if to know the first root of our love  
so yearning a desire possesses thee,  
I'll do as one who weepeth while he speaks.  
One day, for pastime merely, we were reading  
of Launcelot, and how love o'erpowered him;  
alone we were, and free from all misgiving.  
Oft did that reading cause our eyes to meet,  
and often take the color from our faces;  
and yet one passage only overcame us.  
When we had read of how the longed-for smile  
was kissed by such a lover, this one here,  
who nevermore shall be divided from me,  
trembling all over, kissed me on my mouth.  
A Gallehault the book, and he who wrote it!  
No further in it did we read that day."

125

130

135

While one was saying this, the other spirit  
so sorely wept, that out of sympathy  
I swooned away as though about to die,  
and fell as falls a body that is dead.

140

### Inferno VI

#### *The Third Circle. Intemperance in Food*

##### *Gluttons*

On my return to consciousness, which closed  
before the kindred couple's piteous case,  
which utterly confounded me with grief,  
new torments all around me I behold,  
and new tormented ones, where'er I move,  
where'er I turn, and wheresoe'er I gaze.

5

In the third circle am I, that of rain  
eternal, cursèd, cold and burdensome;  
its measure and quality are never new.  
Coarse hail, and snow, and dirty-colored water  
through the dark air are ever pouring down;  
and foully smells the ground receiving them.

10

A wild beast, Cerberus, uncouth and cruel,  
is barking with three throats, as would a dog,  
over the people that are there submerged.  
Red eyes he hath, a dark and greasy beard,

15

- a belly big, and talons on his hands;  
he claws the spirits, flays and quarters them.  
The rainfall causes them to howl like dogs;  
with one side they make shelter for the other; 20  
oft do the poor profaners turn about.
- When Cerberus, the mighty worm, perceived us,  
his mouths he opened, showing us his fangs;  
nor had he any limb that he kept still.  
My Leader then stretched out his opened palms, 25  
and took some earth, and with his fists well filled,  
he threw it down into the greedy throats.  
And like a dog that, barking, yearns for food,  
and, when he comes to bite it, is appeased, 30  
since only to devour it doth he strain  
and fight; even such became those filthy faces  
of demon Cerberus, who, thundering, stuns  
the spirits so, that they would fain be deaf.
- Over the shades the heavy rain beats down  
we then were passing, as our feet we set  
upon their unreal bodies which seem real.  
They each and all were lying on the ground, 35  
excepting one, which rose and sat upright,  
when it perceived us pass in front of it.
- "O thou that through this Hell art being led,"  
it said to me, "recall me, if thou canst;  
for thou, before I unmade was, wast made." 40
- And I to it: "The anguish thou art in  
perchance withdraws thee from my memory so,  
it doth not seem that thee I ever saw.  
But tell me who thou art, that in so painful 45  
a place art set, and to such punishment,  
that none, though greater, so repulsive is."
- And he to me: "Thy town, which is so full  
of envy that the bag o'erflows already,  
owned me when I was in the peaceful life.  
Ciacco, you townsmen used to call me then; 50  
for my injurious fault of gluttony  
I'm broken, as thou seest, by the rain;  
nor yet am I, sad soul, the only one,  
for all these here are subject, for like fault,  
unto like pain." Thereat he spoke no more. 55
- "Thy trouble, Ciacco," I replied to him,  
"so burdens me that it invites my tears;  
but tell me, if thou canst, to what will come  
the citizens of our divided town;  
if any one therein is just; and tell me 60  
the reason why such discord hath assailed her."
- And he to me then: "After struggling long  
they'll come to bloodshed, and the boorish party  
will drive the other out with much offence. 65

- Then, afterward, the latter needs must fall  
within three suns, and the other party rise,  
by help of one who now is 'on the fence.'70  
A long time will it hold its forehead up,  
keeping the other under grievous weights,  
howe'er it weep therefor, and be ashamed.  
Two men are just, but are not heeded there;  
the three sparks that have set men's hearts on fire,  
are overweening pride, envy and greed."75
- Herewith he closed his tear-inspiring speech.  
And I to him: "I'd have thee teach me still,  
and grant the favor of some further talk.  
Farinàta and Tegghiàio, who so worthy were,  
Jàcopo Rusticùcci, Arrigo and Mosca,80  
and the others who were set on doing good,  
tell me where these are, and let me know of them;  
for great desire constraineth me to learn  
if Heaven now sweeten, or Hell poison them."
- And he: "Among the blackest souls are these;  
a different fault weighs toward the bottom each;  
if thou descend so far, thou mayst behold them.  
But when in the sweet world thou art again,  
recall me, prithee, unto others' minds;  
I tell no more, nor further answer thee."8590
- His fixed eyes thereupon he turned askance;  
a while he looked at me, then bowed his head,  
and fell therewith among the other blind.
- Then said my Leader: "He'll not wake again  
on this side of the angel-trumpet's sound.95  
What time the hostile Podestà shall come,  
each soul will find again its dismal tomb,  
each will take on again its flesh and shape,  
and hear what through eternity resounds."
- We thus passed through with slowly moving steps  
the filthy mixture of the shades and rain,  
talking a little of the future life;  
because of which I said: "These torments, Teacher,  
after the Final Sentence will they grow,  
or less become, or burn the same as now."100105
- And he to me: "Return thou to thy science,  
which holdeth that the more a thing is perfect,  
so much the more it feels of weal or woe.  
Although this cursèd folk shall nevermore  
arrive at true perfection, it expects110  
to be more perfect after, than before."
- As in a circle, round that road we went,  
speaking at greater length than I repeat,  
and came unto a place where one descends;  
there found we Plutus, the great enemy.115

Inferno VII*The Fourth Circle. Intemperance in Wealth**Misers and Prodigals. The Fifth Circle*

“Papè Satàn, papè Satàn, alèppè!”  
 thus Plutus with his clucking voice began;  
 that noble Sage, then, who knew everything,  
 said, to encourage me: “Let not thy fear  
 distress thee, for, whatever power he have,  
 he'll not prevent our going down this rock.”

5

Then to those swollen lips he turned around,  
 and said: “Be silent, thou accursed wolf;  
 with thine own rage consume thyself within!  
 Not causeless is our going to the bottom;  
 there is it willed on high, where Michael wrought  
 vengeance upon the arrogant rebellion.”

10

As sails, when swollen by the wind, fall down  
 entangled, when the mast breaks; even so,  
 down to the ground the cruel monster fell.

15

Into the fourth ditch we descended thus,  
 advancing further o'er the woeful edge,  
 which bags all evil in the universe.

Justice of God, alas! who heapeth up  
 the many unheard of toils and pains I saw,  
 and wherefore doth our sin torment us so?

20

As yonder o'er Charybdis doth the sea,  
 which breaks against the one it runs to meet,  
 so must the people dance a ring-dance here.  
 I here saw folk, more numerous than elsewhere,  
 on one side and the other, with great howls  
 rolling big weights around by strength of chest;  
 they struck against each other; then, right there  
 each turned, and rolling back his weight, cried out:  
 “Why keepest thou?” and “Wherefore throw away?”

25

They circled thus around the gloomy ring  
 on either hand unto the point opposed,  
 still shouting each to each their vile refrain;  
 then each turned back, when through his own half-ring  
 he had attained the other butting place.

30

35

And I, whose heart was well nigh broken, said:  
 “Now, Teacher, show me who these people are,  
 and tell me whether all these tonsured ones  
 upon our left ecclesiastics were.”

And he replied to me: “They each and all  
 were in their first life so squint-eyed in mind,  
 that they with measure used no money there.  
 Clearly enough their voices bark it forth,  
 whene'er they reach the two points of the ring,  
 where difference in fault unmataeth them.”

40

45

These churchmen were, who have no hairy covering  
upon their heads, and Popes and Cardinals,  
among whom avarice works its mastery."

And I to him: "Among such men as these  
I surely, Teacher, ought to recognize  
a few, who by these sins polluted were."

50

And he to me: "Thou shapest a vain thought;  
the undiscerning life which made them foul,  
now to all recognition makes them dark.

55

To these two shocks they'll come eternally;  
these from the sepulchre will rise again  
close-fisted; these, shorn of their very hair.  
Ill-giving and ill-keeping took from them  
the lovely world, and set them at this fray;  
to qualify it I'll not use fair words.

60

Now canst thou, son, behold the short-lived cheat  
of riches that are put in Fortune's care,  
and for whose sake the human race contends;  
for, all the gold there is beneath the moon,  
and all that was there once, could not avail  
to make one of these weary spirits rest."

65

"Teacher," said I to him, "now tell me further:  
what is this Fortune thou dost touch upon,  
which hath the world's good things thus in her claws?"

"O foolish creatures," said he then to me.  
"how great the ignorance which hurteth you!  
I'd have thee swallow now my thought of her.  
The One whose knowledge everything transcends,  
so made the heavens, and so gave guides to them,  
that every part on every other shines,  
thus equally distributing the light;  
likewise for worldly splendours He ordained  
a general minister and guide, to change,  
from time to time, the vain goods of the world  
from race to race, from one blood to another,  
past all resistance by the minds of men;  
wherefore, one people governs, and the other  
declines in power, according to her judgment,  
which hidden is, as in the grass a snake.

75

Your knowledge is not able to resist her;  
foreseeing, she decides, and carries on  
her government, as theirs the other gods.  
Her permutations have no truce at all;  
necessity compels her to be swift;  
hence oft it happens that a change occurs.  
This is the one who is so often cursed  
even by those who ought to give her praise,  
yet give her blame amiss, and ill repute.  
But she is blest, and gives no heed to that;  
among the other primal creatures glad,  
she turns her sphere, and blest enjoys herself.  
But now to woe more piteous let's descend;  
now falls each star that rose when I set out,

80

85

90

95

and one is here forbidden too long a stay.”  
 We crossed the circle to the other bank  
 over a bubbling stream, that poureth down  
 along a ditch which from it takes its shape.  
 Than purple-black much darker was its water;  
 and we, accompanying its dusky waves,  
 went down and entered on an uncouth path.  
 A swamp it forms which hath the name of Styx,  
 this dismal little brook, when it hath reached  
 the bottom of the grey, malignant slopes.

100

And I, who was intensely gazing there,  
 saw muddy people in that slimy marsh,  
 all naked, and with anger in their looks.  
 They struck each other, not with hands alone,  
 but with their heads and chests, and with their feet,  
 and rent each other piecemeal with their teeth.

110

Said the good Teacher: “Son, thou seest now  
 the souls of those whom anger overcame;  
 nay, more, I’d have thee certainly believe  
 that ’neath the water there are folk who sigh,  
 and make this water bubble at its surface,  
 as, whereso’er it turn, thine eye reveals.  
 Stuck in the slime, they say: “Sullen we were  
 in the sweet air that’s gladdened by the sun,  
 bearing within us fumes of surliness;  
 we now are sullen in the swamp’s black mire.”  
 This hymn they gurgle down inside their throats,  
 because they cannot utter it with perfect speech.

115

120

125

And so we circled round the filthy fen  
 a great arc ’twen the dry bank and the marsh,  
 our eyes intent on those that swallow mud;  
 and to a tower’s foot we came at last.

130

### Inferno VIII

*The Fifth Circle. Intemperance in Indignation*

*The Wrathful and Sullen. Styx. The City of Dis*

I say, continuing, that long before  
 we ever reached the lofty tower’s foot,  
 our eyes had upward toward its summit turned,  
 because of two small flames we there saw placed,  
 and of another answering from so far,  
 that hardly could mine eyesight make it out.  
 Then to all wisdom’s Sea I turned around,  
 and said: “What sayeth this? and what replies  
 that other fire? and who are they that made it?”

5

And he to me: “Upon the filthy waves  
 thou canst already see what is expected,  
 unless the marsh’s fog conceal it from thee.”

10

Bowstring neer shot an arrow from itself,  
 that sped away so swiftly through the air,  
 as I beheld a slender little boat

15

come toward us through the water thereupon,  
under the guidance of a single boatman,  
who shouted: "Thou art caught now, wicked soul!"

"O Phlegyas, Phlegyas," said my Master then,  
"this time thou criest out in vain! No longer  
shalt thou have us, than while we cross the swamp."

20

Like one who listens to a great deceit  
practiced upon him, and who then resents it,  
so Phlegyas in his stifled wrath became.  
My Leader then went down into the boat,  
and had me enter after him; and only  
when I was in it did it laden seem.  
Soon as my Leader and I were in the boat,  
the ancient prow goes on its way, and cuts  
more water than with others is its wont.

25

30

While we were speeding through the stagnant  
trench, one stood before me filled with mud, and said:  
"Now who art thou, that comest ere thy time?"

And I to him: "Even though I come, I stay not;  
but who art thou, that art become so foul?"  
He answered: "As thou see'st, I'm one who weeps."

35

Then I to him: "In sorrow and in grief  
mayst thou, accursèd spirit, here remain,  
for thee I know, all filthy though thou be!"

Then toward the boat he stretched out both his  
hands; my wary Teacher, therefore, thrust him off,  
saying: "Away there with the other dogs!"  
And with his arms he then embraced my neck,  
and kissed my face, and said: "Blessèd be she  
who pregnant was with thee, indignant soul!  
He was a haughty person in the world;  
nor is there any goodness which adorns  
his memory; hence his shade is furious here.  
How many now up yonder think themselves  
great kings, who here shall be like pigs in mire,  
leaving behind them horrible contempt!"

40

45

50

And I said: "Teacher, I'd be greatly pleased  
to see him get a ducking in this broth,  
before we issue from the marshy lake."

And he to me: "Thou shalt be satisfied  
before the shore reveal itself to thee;  
't is meet that thou enjoy a wish like that."

55

Soon after this I saw the muddy people  
making such havoc of him, that therefor  
I still give praise and render thanks to God.  
They all were shouting: "At Filippo Argenti!"  
the spirit of the wrathful Florentine  
turning, meanwhile, his teeth against himself.

60

- We left him there; of him I therefore tell  
no more; but on mine ears there smote a wail,  
hence I, intent ahead, unbar mine eyes. 65  
The kindly Teacher said: "Now, son, at last  
the town, whose name is Dis, is drawing near  
with all its host of burdened citizens."
- And I said: "Teacher, clearly I behold  
its mosques already in that valley there,  
vermilion, as if issuing out of fire." 70
- And he to me: "The eternal fire within  
which keeps them burning, maketh them look red,  
as thou perceivest in this nether Hell." 75
- Thereat we came inside the trenches deep,  
which fortify that region comfortless;  
to me its walls appeared to be of iron.  
Not without going first a long way round,  
we came to where the boatman cried aloud 80  
to us: "Get out, for here the entrance is!"
- More than a thousand o'er the gates I saw  
of those that from the heavens had rained, who, vexed,  
were saying: "Who is he, that, without death,  
is going through the kingdom of the dead?" 85  
And my wise Teacher thereupon made signs  
of wishing to have private talk with them.
- Their great disdain they somewhat checked, and said:  
"Come thou alone, and let him go his way,  
who with such daring entered this domain.  
Let him retrace alone his foolish road,  
and try it, if he can; for thou shalt here 90  
remain, that him so dark a land didst show."
- Think, Reader, whether I lost heart on hearing  
those cursèd words; for I did not believe  
that I should e'er return on earth again. 95
- "O my dear Leader, who hast made me safe  
more than seven times, and extricated me  
from serious dangers which I had to face,  
forsake me not," said I, "when so undone!  
If further progress be denied to us, 100  
let us at once retrace our steps together."
- That Lord then, who had brought me thither, said:  
"Be not afraid; for none can take from us  
our passage, since by such an One 't is given!  
But thou, await me here, and with good hope  
nourish and comfort thou thy weary soul,  
for I'll not leave thee in the nether world." 105
- Thus goes his way, and there abandons me,  
my tender Father, and I in doubt remain;  
for Yes and No contend within my head. 110

I could not hear what he proposed to them;  
but with them there he did not long remain,  
for each in rivalry ran back within.

They closed the gates, those enemies of ours,  
right in my Master's face, who stayed outside,  
and walking with slow steps returned to me.  
His eyes were downcast, and his eyebrows shorn  
of all self-trust, and as he sighed he said:  
“Who has forbidden me the homes of pain?”

115

“Though I get angry, be not thou dismayed,”  
he said to me, “for I shall win the fight,  
whate'er defensive stir be made within.

This insolence of theirs is nothing new,  
for at a gateway less concealed than this  
they used it once, which still is lockless found.  
Death's scroll thou sawest over it; and now  
this side of it One such descends the slope,  
crossing the rings unguided, that through him  
the city will be opened unto us.”

125

130

Inferno IX*The Gate of the City of Dis**The Sixth Circle. Heresy*

The color cowardice brought out on me,  
who saw my Leader coming back, the sooner  
repressed in him his unaccustomed hue.  
He stopped attentive like a man who listens;  
because his eyesight could not lead him far  
through the dark air, and through the heavy fog.  
“Yet we must win the battle,” he began,  
“unless . . . One such did offer us herself!  
Oh, how I long for some one to arrive!”

5

I well perceived how, when he overlaid  
what he began to say by what came after,  
that these were words that differed from the first.  
But none the less his language gave me fear,  
because I lent to his unfinished phrase  
a meaning worse, perhaps, than he intended.

10

15

“Into this bottom of the dismal shell  
doth any of that first grade e'er descend,  
whose only penalty is hope cut off?”

I asked this question. He replied to me:  
“It seldom comes to pass that one of us  
performs the journey whereupon I go.  
'T is true that I was conjured once before  
down here by magic of that wild Erichtho,  
who used to call shades back into their bodies.  
My flesh had hardly been made bare of me,  
when me she forced to enter yonder wall,  
and thence withdraw a soul from Judas' ring.  
That is the lowest and the darkest place,

20

25

- and from the heaven that turns all things most distant;  
well do I know the road; so be at rest! 30  
This marsh, from which the mighty stench exhales,  
girdles the woeful city round about,  
which without wrath we cannot enter now."
- And more he said, but I recall it not,  
because mine eye had made me wholly heed  
the glowing summit of the lofty tower, 35  
where three infernal Furies stained with blood  
had suddenly uprisen all at once,  
having the members and the mien of women,  
and girt with water-snakes of brightest green;  
for hair they had small serpents and horned snakes, 40  
wherewith their frightful temples were entwined.
- And he, who well the handmaids of the Queen  
of everlasting lamentation knew,  
said unto me: "Behold the fierce Erinyes!  
This is Megaera here upon the left; 45  
Alecto, she who weepeth on the right;  
Tisiphonë's between." Thereat he ceased.
- Each with her nails was tearing at her breast;  
they smote them with their hands, and cried so loud,  
that to the Poet I drew close in dread. 50  
"Now let Medusa come! We'll turn him thus  
to stone!" they all cried out, as down they looked;  
"wrong were we not to punish Theseus' raid."
- "Turn back, and close thine eyes, for should the Gorgon  
reveal itself, and thou behold the face,  
ther'd be no more returning up above."  
The Teacher thus: and turning me himself,  
on my hands he did not so far rely, 55  
as not to close mine eyes with his as well. 60
- O ye in whom intelligence is sound,  
heed carefully the teaching which lies hidden  
beneath the veil of my mysterious lines!
- There now was coming o'er the turbid waves  
the uproar of a dread-inspiring sound,  
because of which both shores were all aquake, 65  
a noise like nothing other than a wind,  
impetuous through opposing heats, which smites  
a forest, and without the least restraint  
shatters, lays low, and carries off its boughs;  
dust-laden it goes proudly on its way, 70  
and makes wild animals and shepherds flee.
- He freed mine eyes, and said: "Direct thou now  
thy keenest vision o'er that ancient scum,  
to where that reeking smoke is most intense." 75
- As frogs before the hostile water-snake  
scatter in all directions through the water,

- till each is squatting huddled on the shore;  
more than a thousand ruined souls I saw,  
who thus from one were fleeing, who on foot,  
but with dry feet, was passing over Styx. 80  
That dense air he kept moving from his face  
by often passing his left hand before him,  
and only with that trouble weary seemed.  
I well perceived he was a Messenger 85  
from Heaven, and to my Teacher turned; with signs  
he warned me to keep still, and bow before him.  
Ah, how disdainful did he seem to me!  
He reached the gate, and with a little wand  
he opened it, for hindrance had he none. 90
- “O people thrust from Heaven and held in scorn,”  
upon the horrid threshold he began,  
“whence dwells in you this overweening pride?  
Why is it that ye kick against the Will,  
from which its end can never be cut off, 95  
and which hath more than once increased your pain?  
Of what avail to butt against the Fates?  
Your Cerberus, if ye remember well,  
still sports for this a hairless chin and neck.”
- He then returned along the filthy road, 100  
nor did he say a word to us; but looked  
like one whom other cares constrain and gnaw,  
than that of him who in his presence is;  
then we with full assurance toward the town,  
after those holy words, addressed our steps. 105  
We entered it without the least contention;  
and I, who longed to look about and see  
the state of those whom such a fortress holds,  
when I was in it, cast mine eyes around,  
and see on every side an ample plain, 110  
with anguish and with awful torture filled.
- Even as at Arles, where marshy turns the Rhone,  
or as at Pola near Quarnaro’s gulf,  
which bounds Italia, and her border bathes,  
the sepulchres make all the ground uneven; 115  
so likewise did they here on every side,  
save that their nature was more bitter here;  
for flames were spread about within the tombs,  
whereby they glowed with such intensity,  
that no art needeth greater heat for iron. 120  
The lids of all of them were raised, and wails  
so woeful issued thence, that of a truth  
they seemed the wails of wretched, tortured men.
- “Teacher, what sort of people are those there,”  
said I, “who, buried in those arc-like tombs, 125  
make themselves heard by means of woeful sighs?”
- “Arch-heretics are with their followers here”  
said he, “of every sect, and far more laden  
than thou believest are the sepulchers.”

Here like with like is buried, and more hot  
and less so are the monuments." Thereat,  
when he had turned him to the right, we passed  
between the woes and lofty bastioned walls.

130

Inferno X*The Sixth Circle. Heresy**Heretics*

Now wends his way along a narrow path,  
between the torments and the city's wall,  
my Teacher and, behind his shoulders, I.

"O lofty Virtue," I began, "that leadst me  
around the impious circles at thy pleasure,  
converse with me and satisfy my wishes.  
The people that are lying in the tombs,  
could they be seen? For all the lids are raised,  
it seems, and there is no one keeping guard."

5

And he to me: "They all will be locked in,  
when from Jehoshaphat they here return  
together with the bodies they have left  
above. On this side have their burial-place  
with Epicurus all his followers,  
who claim that with the body dies the soul.  
To the request, however, which thou makest  
thou'l soon receive a due reply in here,  
as also to the wish thou keepest from me."  
And I: "Good Leader, I but keep my heart  
concealed from thee, in order to speak little;  
nor hast thou only now thereto disposed me."

10

15

20

"O Tuscan, thou that through the town of fire  
dost go alive with such respectful speech,  
in this place be thou pleased to stay thy steps.  
Thy very language makes thee manifest  
a native of that noble fatherland,  
to which I was, perhaps, too great a bane."

25

All of a sudden issued forth these words  
from one of those ark-tombs; hence I, in fear,  
a little closer to my Leader drew.  
And he said: "Turn around; what doest thou?  
See Farinata who has risen there;  
thou'l see him wholly from his girdle up."

30

Already had I fixed mine eyes on his;  
and he was standing up with chest and head  
erect, as if he had great scorn for Hell.  
My Leader then with bold and ready hands  
pushed me between the sepulchers toward him,  
saying: "Now let thy words be frank and clear."

35

When I was 'neath his tomb, he looked at me  
awhile, and then, as though disdainfully,  
he asked of me: "Who were thine ancestors?"

40

And I, who was desirous to obey,  
hid it not from him, but revealed it all;  
whereat he slightly raised his brows, and said:  
“So bitterly were they opposed to me,  
and to mine ancestors, and to my party,  
that I on two occasions scattered them.”

45

“If they were driven out,” I answered him,  
“from all directions they returned both times;  
your people, though, have not well learned that art.”

50

A shade then at the tomb’s uncovered mouth  
rose at his side as far up as his chin;  
I think that he had risen upon his knees.  
Round me he looked, as if he wished to see  
whether some other one were with me there;  
but when his doubt had wholly spent itself,  
weeping he said: “If thou through this blind prison  
dost go by reason of highmindedness,  
where is my son? and why is he not with thee?”

55

And I to him: “I come not by myself;  
he who is waiting yonder leads me here,  
one whom, perhaps, your Guido held in scorn.”  
The nature of his torment and his words  
had read this person’s name to me already;  
on this account was my reply so full.

65

Then of a sudden standing up, he cried:  
“What saidst thou? Held? Is he not still alive?  
Doth not the sweet light strike upon his eyes?”  
When he perceived the short delay I made  
before replying, down upon his back  
he fell, nor outside showed himself again.

70

The other one, meanwhile, the great-souled man,  
at whose request I stopped, changed not his looks,  
nor did he move his neck or turn his side.  
And “If” continuing his previous words,  
he said: “if they have badly learned that art,  
far more doth that torment me than this bed.  
And yet that Lady’s face who ruleth here  
shall not be lighted fifty times again,  
ere thou shalt know how heavy that art is.  
And so mayst thou return to the sweet world,  
pray tell me why so pitiless toward mine  
that people is in every law of theirs?”

75

Whence I to him: “The havoc and great slaughter  
which caused the Arbia to be colored red,  
occasion such petitions in our church.”

85

When, sighing, he had tossed his head, he said:  
“In this thing I was not alone, nor surely  
had I, without due cause, moved with the rest;  
but I was yonder, where assent was given  
by every one to do away with Florence,  
the only one to openly defend her.”

90

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| "So may your seed eventually repose,"<br>I begged of him, "untie for me, I pray,<br>the knot which has perplexed my thinking here.<br>It seems, if well I hear, that ye behold<br>beforehand that which time brings with itself,<br>while in the present ye do otherwise."                                                                                                                                                           | 95         |
| "We see," he said, "like one whose sight is poor,<br>things that are far from us; to that extent<br>the Highest Leader shines upon us still.<br>When they approach, or are, our intellect<br>is wholly vain, and we, if others bring<br>no news, know nothing of your human state.<br>Hence thou canst understand that wholly dead<br>will be our knowledge from that moment on,<br>when closed shall be the gateway of the future." | 100<br>105 |
| Thereat, for I was grieved at my mistake,<br>I said: "You'll therefore tell that fallen man<br>his son is dwelling with the living still;<br>and if in answering I was mute just now,<br>cause him to know it was because my thoughts<br>were struggling with the problem you have solved."                                                                                                                                          | 110        |
| And now my Teacher was recalling me;<br>with greater haste I therefore begged the spirit<br>that he would tell me who was with him there.<br>He said: "With o'er a thousand here I lie;<br>the second Frederick and the Cardinal<br>are here within; I speak not of the rest."                                                                                                                                                       | 115<br>120 |
| He thereupon concealed himself; and I,<br>those words recalling which seemed hostile to me,<br>back toward the ancient Poet turned my steps.<br>The latter moved; and then, as on we went,<br>he said to me: "Why art thou so perplexed?"<br>And him in what he asked I satisfied.                                                                                                                                                   | 125        |
| "Then let thy mind preserve," that Sage enjoined,<br>"what thou hast heard against thyself; pay now<br>attention here!" His finger then he raised.<br>"When in the sweet ray's presence thou shalt be<br>of Her whose lovely eyes see everything,<br>from her thou'l know the journey of thy life."                                                                                                                                  | 130        |
| Thereafter to the left he turned his feet;<br>we left the wall, and toward the middle went<br>along a path which to a valley leads,<br>which even up there unpleasant made its stench.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 135        |

Inferno XI*The Sixth Circle. Heresy**The Distribution of the Damned in the Inferno*

Upon the utmost verge of a high bank,  
formed in a circle by great broken rocks,

we came upon a still more cruel pack;  
and there, by reason of the horrible  
excess of stench the deep abyss exhales,  
for shelter we withdrew behind the lid  
of a large tomb, whereon I saw a scroll  
which said: "Pope Anastasius I contain,  
whom out of the right way Photinus drew."

5

"Our going down from here must be delayed,  
so that our sense may first get used a little  
to this foul blast; we shall not mind it then."

10

The Teacher thus; and I: "Find thou therefor  
some compensation, lest our time be lost."  
And he to me: "See how I think of this."

15

"My son, within these rocks," he then began,  
"are three small circles which, from grade to grade,  
are similar to those thou leavest now.  
Full of accursèd spirits are they all;  
but that hereafter sight alone suffice thee,  
hear how, and wherefore they are packed together.

20

Of all wrong-doing which in Heaven wins hate  
injustice is the end, and each such end  
aggrieves by either violence or fraud.  
But whereas fraud is man's peculiar evil,  
God hates it most; therefore the fraudulent  
are down below, and greater pain assails them.

25

All the first circle holds the violent;  
but since against three persons force is used,  
its shape divides it into three great rings.  
Both against God, one's neighbor, and one's self  
may force be used; against themselves, I mean,  
and what is theirs, as clearly shown thou'l hear.  
By force both death and painful wounds are given  
one's neighbor, and thereby his property  
is ruined, burned, and by extortions robbed;  
the first ring, hence, torments in separate troops  
all homicides and those that smite with malice,  
spoilers of property and highway robbers.  
Upon oneself may one lay violent hands,  
and on one's goods; hence in the second ring  
must needs repentant be without avail  
whoever of your world deprives himself,  
gambles away and dissipates his means,  
and weepeth there where he should joyful be.  
'Gainst God may force be used, by wittingly  
denying that He is, by blasphemy,  
and by disprizing Nature and His Goodness;  
and therefore with its mark the lesser ring  
sealeth both Sodom and Cahors, and him  
who, speaking from his heart, despises God.

30

35

40

45

50

And fraud, whereby all consciences are bitten,  
one may employ against a man who trusts him,

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| and 'gainst a man who storeth up no trust.<br>This latter kind of fraud would seem to kill<br>only the bond of love which Nature makes;<br>hence in the second circle make their nest<br>hypocrisy, and flatteries, and workers<br>of magic, coining, theft and simony,<br>panders and grafters, and such filth as these.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 55  |
| In the other way forgotten is the love<br>which Nature makes, and that which afterward<br>is joined thereto, whence special trust is born;<br>hence in the smallest ring, where the universe<br>its center hath, and on which Dis is seated,<br>whoe'er betrays is spent eternally."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 60  |
| "Teacher," said I, "thine argument proceeds<br>most lucidly, and full well classifies<br>this deep abyss and those that people it.<br>But tell me now: those of the muddy marsh,<br>those whom the wind drives, those the rain beats down,<br>and those that with such keen tongues meet each other,<br>why are n't they punished in the red-hot town,<br>if God be angry with them? and, if not,<br>why are they tortured in those several ways?"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 65  |
| And he to me: "Why doth thine intellect<br>wander so far from that which is its wont,<br>or doth thy mind intently gaze elsewhere?<br>Hast thou no recollection of the words<br>with which thine Ethics treats extensively<br>the dispositions three which Heaven rejects,<br>Incontinence, and Malice, and insane<br>Bestiality, and how Incontinence<br>offends God least, and hence receives least blame?<br>If thou consider this opinion well,<br>and then remember who those are above,<br>that outside undergo their punishment,<br>well shalt thou see why from these wretches here<br>they're set apart, and why less wrathfully<br>Vengeance Divine is hammering on them there." | 70  |
| "O Sun that healest every troubled sight,<br>thou so contentest me when answering questions,<br>that doubt, no less than knowledge, pleases me.<br>Return a little further back," said I,<br>"to where thou sayest usury offends<br>Goodness Divine, and loose the tangled knot."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 75  |
| "Philosophy" said he to me, "points out<br>to him that understandeth it, and not<br>in one part only, that Nature takes her course<br>from the Intellect Divine, and from its Art;<br>and if thou note thy Physics carefully,<br>after not many pages shalt thou find<br>that your art follows that, as best it can,<br>as the disciple him who teaches; hence,<br>your art is grandchild, as it were, to God.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 80  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 85  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 90  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 95  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 100 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 105 |

From these two things, if thou recall to mind  
 the first of Genesis, must people needs  
 obtain their livelihood, and progress make.  
 And as the usurer takes another course,  
 Nature both in herself and in her follower  
 he scorneth, since in something else he trusts.

110

But follow me now, for I please to go;  
 because the Fishes o'er the horizon quiver,  
 and wholly over Caurus lies the Wain,  
 and one descends the bank much further on."

115

Inferno XII*The Seventh Circle. The First Ring.**Violence against one's Fellow Man. Murderers and Spoilers. Phlegethon*

The place, where to descend the bank we came,  
 was Alp-like, and, through what was also there,  
 such that all eyes would be repelled by it.

As is that downfall on the hither side  
 of Trent, which sidewise smote the Adige,  
 through earthquake or through failure of support;  
 since from the mountain's summit, whence it moved  
 down to the plain, the rock is shattered so,  
 that it would yield a path for one above;  
 even such was the descent of that ravine;  
 and on the border of the broken bank  
 was stretched at length the Infamy of Crete,  
 who in the seeming heifer was conceived;  
 and when he saw us there he bit himself,  
 like one whom inward anger overcomes.

5

10

15

In his direction then my Sage cried out:  
 "Dost thou, perhaps, think Athens' duke is here,  
 who gave thee death when in the world above?  
 Begone, thou beast! for this man cometh not  
 taught by thy sister, but is going by,  
 in order to behold your punishments."

20

As doth a bull, who from his leash breaks free  
 the moment he receives the mortal blow,  
 and cannot walk, but plunges here and there;  
 so doing I beheld the Minotaur;  
 and he, aware, cried out: "Run to the pass!  
 't is well that, while he rages, thou descend."

25

Thereat we made our way adown that heap  
 of fallen rocks, which often 'neath my feet  
 were moved, because of their unwonted load.

30

I went along in thought; and he: "Perchance  
 thou thinkest of this landslide, which is guarded  
 by that beast's anger which I quenched just now.  
 Now I would have thee know that, when down here  
 to nether Hell I came, that other time,

35

- this mass of rock had not yet fallen down.  
 But certainly, if I remember well,  
 not long ere He arrived, who carried off  
 from Dis the highest circle's mighty prey,  
 on every side the deep and foul abyss  
 so trembled that I thought the universe  
 had felt the love, whereby, as some believe,  
 the world to Chaos hath been oft reduced;  
 and at that moment this old mass of rock  
 was thus, both here and elsewhere, overthrown. 40  
 But turn thine eyes down yonder now; for lo,  
 the stream of blood is drawing near to us,  
 wherein boils who by violence harms others." 45
- O blind cupidity, O foolish wrath,  
 that so dost in our short life goad us on,  
 and after, in the eternal, steep us thus! 50
- I saw a wide moat curving in an arc,  
 and such that it embraces all the plain,  
 according as my Escort had informed me;  
 and in a file, between it and the bank,  
 Centaurs were running by, with arrows armed,  
 as in the world it was their wont to hunt. 55  
 On seeing us descend, they all stopped short,  
 and three of them detached them from the troop,  
 with bows and arrows they had chosen first.  
 And one cried from afar: "Ye that descend  
 the slope, to what pain are ye coming?  
 Tell it from there, or else I draw my bow." 60
- My Teacher said: "Our answer will we give  
 to Chiron yonder, when we reach his side;  
 thus ever to thy harm was thy will rash." 65
- He touched me then, and said: "That one is Nessus,  
 who died for lovely Dejanira's sake,  
 and who himself wrought vengeance for himself;  
 the middle one, who gazes at his breast,  
 is that great Chiron who brought up Achilles; 70  
 the other, Pholus, who so wrathful was.  
 They go by thousands round about the moat,  
 shooting each soul that from the blood emerges  
 further than its own sin allotted it." 75
- To those swift-footed beasts we then drew near;  
 Chiron an arrow took, and with its notch  
 backward upon his jaws he pushed his beard.  
 When he had thus uncovered his great mouth,  
 he said unto his mates: "Are ye aware  
 that he who comes behind moves what he touches?  
 Yet dead men's feet are not thus wont to do." 80
- And my good Leader, who now reached his breast,  
 where the two natures are together joined,  
 replied: "He lives indeed, and thus alone  
 must I needs show to him the dark abyss;  
 necessity is leading him, not pleasure. 85

One who withdrew from singing praise to God,  
gave me this new commission; he is not  
a highwayman, nor I a robber's soul.  
But by the Power, through whom I move my steps  
along so wild a road, bestow on us  
one of thy troop, at whose side we may be,  
and who may show us where one fords, and carry  
this man upon his back, for he is not  
a spirit who can travel through the air."

90

Upon his right breast Chiron turned, and said  
to Nessus: "Turn around, and guide them thus,  
and if another troop should meet you, cause it  
to stand aside." Then we with this safe escort  
skirted the edge of that red, boiling stream,  
wherein the boiled were crying out aloud.

100

I saw some people in it to their brows.  
"These tyrants are," the mighty Centaur said,  
"who took to bloodshed and to plundering.  
Here tears are shed because of heartless wrongs;  
here Alexander is, and who for years  
grieved Sicily, fierce Dionysius.  
The brow which hath so black a head of hair,  
is Azzolino; the other which is blond,  
Obizzo of Este, who in truth was quenched  
up in the world by his un-natural son."  
I turned then toward the Poet, but he said:  
"Be he now first to thee, and second I."

105

A little further on the Centaur stopped  
over some people who, it seemed, emerged  
out of that boiling river from their necks.  
On one side there a lonely shade he showed us,  
and said: "He yonder in God's bosom pierced  
the heart, which still is honored on the Thames."

110

120

Then people I beheld who from the stream  
held out their heads, and even all their chest;  
and many did I recognize of these.  
Thus shallower and shallower became  
that blood, until it only cooked their feet;  
here was the place for us to ford the ditch.

125

"Even as thou seest that the boiling stream  
grows shallow more and more on this side here,"  
the Centaur said, "I wish thee to believe  
that on this other side its bottom sinks  
increasingly, until it joins the place  
where it behooveth tyranny to groan.  
Justice Divine is over here tormenting  
that Attila who was a scourge on earth,  
Pyrrhus, and Sextus; and forever milks  
the tears, which with the boiling it unlocks,  
from Rinier da Corneto and Rinier Pazzo,  
who on the highroads waged so great a war."

130

135

He then turned back, and crossed the ford again.

Inferno XIII*The Seventh Circle. The Second Ring. Violence against  
Oneself. Suicides and Squanderers*

Not yet had Nessus reached the other side,  
when we had set our steps within a wood,  
which was not marked by any path whatever.  
No green leaves there, but leaves of gloomy hue;  
no smooth and straight, but gnarled and twisted, twigs;  
nor was there any fruit, but poison-thorns.  
No thickets rough and dense as these are owned  
by those wild beasts, that hate the tilled estates  
that lie between the Cécina and Corneto.

5

Herein those ugly Harpies make their nest,  
who drove the Trojans from the Strophades,  
with gloomy prophecies of future loss.  
Wide wings they have, and human necks and faces;  
their feet are clawed, and feathered their great bellies;  
they utter wailings on the uncouth trees.

10

15

My kindly Teacher then began to say:  
“Before thou enter any further, know  
that in the second ring thou art, and wilt be,  
until thou reach the horrid plain of sand;  
hence look around thee well, and things thou’lt see,  
that from my words would take away belief.”

20

Moans I heard uttered upon every side,  
but saw no person who might make them there;  
hence, utterly confused, I checked my steps.  
I think he thought I thought that all those voices  
were uttered from among those thorny trunks  
by people hiding there on our account.  
The Teacher therefore said: “If thou break off  
a little twig from any of these trees,  
the thoughts thou hast will all be proven false.”

25

30

I then stretched out my hand a little way,  
and from a sturdy thorn-tree plucked a twig,  
whereat its trunk cried out: “Why dost thou rend me?”  
Then, after growing dark with blood, its cry  
began again: “Why dost thou break me off?  
Hast thou no spirit of compassion in thee?  
Men were we once, and now are stocks become;  
thy hand ought surely to have had more pity,  
even if the souls of serpents we had been.”

35

As from a fresh, green log, that at one end  
is being burned, and at the other drips  
and makes a hissing with the escaping air;  
so from the broken twig together issued  
both words and blood; I therefore dropped the end,  
and stood dumbfounded, like a man who fears.

40

45

“Had he before been able to believe,  
O wounded soul,” replied my Sage to him,

|                                                                                                                                                                                    |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| “what in my verses only he has seen,<br>he had not set his hand on thee; whereas<br>the thing’s incredibility has made me<br>lead him to do what I myself regret.                  | 50 |
| But tell him who thou wast, that he, by way<br>of compensation, may refresh thy fame<br>up in the world, where he can still return.”                                               |    |
| The trunk: “With sweet words thou dost so entice me,<br>that I can not keep still; be not annoyed,<br>if I am tempted to a little talk.                                            | 55 |
| I am the man who once held both the keys<br>of Frederick’s heart, and he who turned them round<br>so gently, locking and unlocking it,                                             | 60 |
| that most men from his secrets I withheld;<br>so faithful was I to my glorious charge,<br>that for its sake I lost both sleep and strength.                                        |    |
| The courtesan who never turned away<br>her harlot eyes from Caesar’s dwelling-place,<br>a common form of death and vice of courts,<br>'gainst me inflamed the minds of every one;  | 65 |
| and those on fire inflamed Augustus so,<br>that my glad honors turned to wretched grief.                                                                                           |    |
| My mind, to vent its feelings of disdain,<br>and thinking to avoid disdain by death,<br>made me unjust against myself, the just.                                                   | 70 |
| By this tree’s uncouth roots, I swear to you,<br>I never broke the faith I owed my lord,<br>who so deserving was of reverence!                                                     | 75 |
| And to the world should one of you return,<br>let him assist my memory, which still<br>lies crushed beneath the blow which envy gave it!”                                          |    |
| A while he waited, then the Poet said:<br>“Since he is still, lose not thy chance; but speak,                                                                                      | 80 |
| and ask him other questions, if thou like.”                                                                                                                                        |    |
| Whence I to him: “Ask thou again whate'er<br>thou thinkest satisfactory to me;<br>for I could not, such pity stirs my heart!”                                                      |    |
| Hence he began again: “So may this man<br>do freely for thee what thy words request,<br>imprisoned spirit, may it please thee still<br>to tell us how within these knotted trunks  | 85 |
| a soul is bound; and tell us, if thou canst,<br>if any from such limbs is ever freed.”                                                                                             | 90 |
| Thereat the trunk blew hard, and afterward<br>that wind was changed into the following words:<br>“Briefly shall a reply be made to you.<br>Whenever a wild spirit leaves the body, | 95 |
| from which itself hath torn itself away,<br>Minos commits it to the seventh ravine.<br>Into the wood it falls, nor is a place<br>allotted to it; but where Fortune hurls it,       |    |
| there, like a grain of spelt, it germinates.                                                                                                                                       |    |

- It grows into a sapling and wild tree;100  
 the Harpies, feeding then upon its leaves,  
 cause pain to it, and for the pain a vent.  
 Like other spirits, for our spoils we'll come,  
 though not that any be reclothed therewith;  
 for 't is not right to have what one casts off.105  
 We'll drag them with us here, and then our bodies  
 will all around the dismal wood be hung,  
 each on the thorn-tree of its hostile shade."
- We still were giving heed unto the trunk,110  
 believing that it wished to tell us more,  
 when we were startled by a sudden noise,  
 as likewise he is, who perceives a boar  
 and pack of hounds approach his hunting-post,  
 and hears the crashing of the beasts and boughs.
- And lo, two on the left, who naked were115  
 and scratched, and fled away so rapidly,  
 they shattered all the branches of the wood.  
 The one ahead: "Now hurry, hurry, death!"  
 and the other one, who thought himself too slow,  
 cried: "Lano, not so knowing were thy legs,120  
 when running from Del Toppo's battle-jousts!"  
 And then, perhaps because of failing breath,  
 he there made of himself and of a bush  
 a group. The wood behind these two was full  
 of swarthy bitches, ravenous and fleet125  
 as greyhounds are, when from their chains unleashed.  
 Into the one who crouched they set their teeth,  
 and tore him into pieces bit by bit;  
 they then made off with those his suffering limbs.
- Thereat my Escort took me by the hand,130  
 and led me to the bush, which all in vain  
 out of its bleeding rents was shedding tears.  
 "O Giàcomo" it said, "da Sant'Andrea,  
 what boots it thee to make a screen of me?135  
 and how am I to blame for thy bad life?"
- When over him my Teacher stopped, he said:  
 "Who then wast thou, that through so many gashes  
 art blowing forth with blood such painful speech?"
- And he to us: "O spirits that have come140  
 in time to see the unbecoming havoc,  
 which from me thus hath torn away my leaves,  
 collect them at the foot of my sad bush!  
 I to that town belonged, which for the Baptist  
 changed its first patron; wherefore he, for this,  
 will always make her mournful with his art;145  
 and were it not that on the Arno's bridge  
 there lingers still some little glimpse of him,  
 those townsmen who rebuilt her afterward  
 over the ashes left by Attila,  
 had caused that work to be performed in vain.150  
 I made myself a gibbet of my house."

Inferno XIV*The Seventh Circle. The Third Ring  
Violence against God. Blasphemers*

Since love for my own native place constrained me,  
I gathered up the scattered twigs and leaves,  
and gave them back to him who now was weak.  
Thence to the bound we came, where from the third  
the second ring is severed, and wherein  
a frightful form of Justice may be seen.

5

To manifest aright what here was new,  
I say that we had reached a barren plain,  
which from its bed removeth every plant.  
The woeful wood is as a garland round it,  
as round the former is the dismal moat;  
there on its very edge we stayed our steps.  
Its soil was of a dense and arid sand,  
whose nature differed in no way from that,  
which once was trodden by the feet of Cato.

10

Vengeance of God, how much by every one  
thou oughtest to be feared, who readeth here  
what to these eyes of mine was manifest!

15

Of naked souls I many flocks beheld,  
who all wept very sorely, while on each  
a different law appeared to be imposed.  
A few lay on the ground upon their backs;  
and some were seated cuddled up together,  
while others moved about continually.  
Most numerous were those that moved around,  
and least so those that under torment lay,  
but all the freer had their tongues to wail.

20

25

Down on the whole great waste of sand there rained  
with gentle fall dilated flakes of fire,  
like flakes of snow that fall on windless Alps.  
As were the flames which Alexander saw  
in India's torrid regions, as they fell  
upon his hosts, unbroken to the ground;  
—and this he met, by ordering his troops  
to trample on the soil, because the flames,  
when single, were more easily put out—  
even such descended here the eternal heat,  
whereby the sand was set on fire, as tinder  
is kindled under steel, to double pain.  
And ever without resting was the dance  
of wretched hands, that kept, now here, now there,  
slapping away each latest burning flake.

30

35

40

“Thou, Teacher,” I began, “that conquerest all,  
except the stubborn devils who came out  
against us at the entrance of the gate,  
who is that great one who seems not to mind  
the fire, but lies there scornful and awry,  
so that the rain seems not to ripen him?”

45

- And that same one, who had observed that I  
concerning him was questioning my Leader,  
cried: "As I was alive, such am I dead!" 50  
If Jove should tire that smith of his, from whom,  
in wrath, he took the pointed thunderbolt,  
wherewith I smitten was that final day;  
or should he tire the others, each in turn,  
in Mongibello's smithy black with smoke,  
by calling out: 'Help, help, good Vulcan, help!' 55  
even as he did on Phlegra's battle-field;  
and should he shoot at me with all his might,  
no glad revenge would he obtain thereby!" 60
- Thereat my Leader spoke with so much force,  
that I had never heard him use the like:  
"In that thine arrogance, O Capaneus,  
is not extinguished, art thou all the more  
chastised; no torment, saving thine own rage,  
were for thy furious pride a fitting pain." 65
- Then with a gentler mien he turned to me,  
and said: "One of the seven kings was he,  
who Thebes besieged; he held, and seems to hold  
God in disdain, and little seems to prize Him;  
but, as I told him, his own spitefulness  
is fit enough adornment for his breast.  
Now follow me, and see that thou meanwhile  
set not thy feet upon the burning sand,  
but to the thicket keep them ever close." 70  
75
- In silence we went on, and came to where,  
out of the wood a little stream spirits forth,  
whose ruddy color makes me shudder still.  
As from the Bulicàmë springs a brook,  
which afterward the sinful women share,  
even so went that one down across the sand. 80  
Its bottom and both sides had turned to stone,  
as also had the embankments on each side;  
I hence perceived the crossing-place was there.
- "Of all the other things which I have shown thee  
since first we entered through the outer gate,  
whose threshold unto no one is denied,  
nothing has ever by thine eyes been seen  
as notable as is this present brook,  
which deadens o'er itself all little flames." 85  
90
- These were my Leader's words; I therefore begged  
that he would freely grant to me the food,  
desire of which he had so freely given.
- "Amid the sea there lies a wasted land,"  
he told me thereupon, "whose name is Crete,  
under whose king the world of old was pure.  
There is a mountain there, which, happy once  
with waters and green leaves, was Ida called;  
't is now abandoned like a thing outworn. 95

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Whilom as trusty cradle for her son<br>Rhea selected it, and when he wept,<br>to hide him better, caused a shouting there.<br>Within that mountain stands a great Old Man,<br>who holds his shoulders toward Damiata turned,<br>and who, as at his mirror, looks at Rome.                             | 100 |
| His head is formed of finest gold, his arms<br>and breast are of the purest silver, then,<br>as far as to his loins, he's made of brass;<br>all chosen iron is he down from there,<br>save that baked clay his right foot is, and straighter<br>he stands on that, than on the other foot.            | 105 |
| Each of these parts, except the golden one,<br>is broken by a cleft, whence trickle tears,<br>which, when collected, perforate that cave.<br>From rock to rock they course into this vale;                                                                                                            | 110 |
| then Acheron with Styx and Phlegethon<br>they form, and through this narrow duct descend<br>as far as where one goes no further down;<br>they form Cocytus there; and what that pool                                                                                                                  | 115 |
| is like, thou'l see; hence here it is not told.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 120 |
| And I to him: "If thus this present stream<br>hs from our world descended, why alone<br>on this ring's edge hath it appeared to us?"                                                                                                                                                                  |     |
| And he: "Thou knowest that the place is round,<br>and though a long way thou hast gone already,<br>e'er to the left descending toward the bottom,<br>through the whole circle thou hast not yet gone;<br>wherefore, if aught that's new appear to us,<br>it should not bring amazement to thy face."  | 125 |
| And I again: "But where are Phlegethon<br>and Lethe, Teacher? For, of this one silent,<br>thou say'st the other of this rain is made."                                                                                                                                                                | 130 |
| And he replied: "Thou certainly dost please me<br>in all thy questions, but the red stream's boiling<br>ought surely to have answered one of them.<br>Lethe thou'l see, but there, outside this cave,<br>whither souls go to wash themselves, when once<br>their sin, repented of, has been removed." | 135 |
| And then he said: "It now is time for us<br>to leave the wood; see that thou follow me;<br>the banks, which are not burned, afford a path;<br>and up above them every flame is quenched."                                                                                                             | 140 |

Inferno XV

*The Seventh Circle. The Third Ring  
Violence against Nature. Sodomites*

One of the hard embankments bears us now,  
and overhead the brook's mist shades them so,  
that from the fire it saves the stream and banks.

- Such bulwarks as, to keep the sea away,  
the Flemings make between Witsand and Bruges, 5  
through fearing lest the high-tide break upon them;  
and as the Paduans make along the Brenta,  
their villages and strongholds to defend,  
ere Chiarentana feel the summer heat;  
in such a way were those embankments made, 10  
although the master did not make them there  
so high or thick, whoe'er he may have been.
- So far we were already from the wood,  
that I could not have seen just where it was,  
even had I turned around to look behind, 15  
when we a band of spirits met, who came  
along the bank, each one of whom looked hard  
at us, as in the evening one is wont  
to look at people, when the moon is new;  
and toward us they were knitting close their brows, 20  
as an old tailor at his needle's eye.  
When by that gathering I had thus been eyed,  
one of them, who had recognized me, seizing  
my garment's hem, exclaimed: "How wonderful!"
- And I, when toward me he had stretched his arm, 25  
fastened upon his roasted face mine eyes,  
so that, though blistered, it did not prevent  
mine intellect from recognizing him;  
and downward having bent my face toward his,  
I answered him: "Are you here, Ser Brunetto?" 30
- And that one: "O my son, be not displeased  
should Brunetto Latini a little way  
turn back with thee, and let the troop go on."
- "I beg you to with all my power;" said I, 35  
"and if you'd have me sit with you, I will,  
if it please that one; for with him I go."
- "O son," he said, "whoever of this herd  
stands still at all, lies prone a hundred years,  
nor shields himself when smitten by the fire.  
Therefore go on; I'll follow at thy skirts, 40  
and then I'll join again my company,  
which goes bewailing its eternal loss."
- I dared not from the path descend, to go  
upon his level there; but held my head  
bowed down, like one who walks in reverence. 45
- And he began: "What fortune or what fate  
before thy last day leadeth thee down here,  
and who is he that sheweth thee the way?"
- I answered him: "When in the life serene  
up yonder, in a vale I lost my way, 50  
before my age had rounded out its noon.  
Thereon I turned my back but yestermorn;

this one, as I returned to it, appeared  
to me, and o'er this path now leads me home."

And he to me: "If thine own star thou follow,  
thou canst not fail to reach a glorious port,  
if in the lovely life I judged aright;  
and had I not so prematurely died,  
I, seeing Heaven so well disposed toward thee,  
had given thee comfort in thy work. But that  
ungrateful, wicked people, which of old  
came down from Fièsolë, and which e'en now  
smacks of the mountain and of hard grey stone,  
for thy well-doing shall become thy foe;  
and rightly, for among the acid sorbs  
it is not fitting that sweet figs bear fruit.  
An old fame in the world proclaims them blind,  
a greedy, envious, overweening folk;  
see to it that thou cleanse thee from their ways!  
Thy fortune hath in store for thee such honor,  
that either party shall be hungry for thee;  
but distant from the goat shall be the grass.  
Let, then, the beasts of Fièsolë make litter  
with their own selves, nor let them touch the plant,  
if on their dungheap any burgeon still,  
in which the sacred seed may live again  
of those old Romans who remained therein,  
when of such wickedness the nest was made!"

"If perfectly fulfilled had been my prayer,"  
I then replied to him, "you had not yet  
been banished from the natural life of man;  
for in my mind is fixed, and stirs e'en now  
my heart, that dear and kind paternal face  
you showed, when in the world from time to time  
you taught me how man makes himself eternal;  
and how much gratitude I feel for this,  
must, while I live, be in my words perceived.  
What of my course you tell, I write, and keep,  
with other texts, for a Lady to explain,  
who can, if ever I attain to her.  
I only wish that this be clear to you,  
that I, if but my conscience chide me not,  
am ready for whatever Fortune wills.  
Not new unto mine ears is such reward;  
hence, as she lists, let Fortune turn her wheel,  
and let the country clown his mattock ply!"

Thereat my Teacher over his right cheek  
turned back, and looked at me; and then he said:  
"He listens well, who giveth heed to this."

Nor speaking less do I, on this account,  
go on with Ser Brunetto, asking who  
his fellows were, of greatest note and rank.

And he to me: 'T is well to know of some;  
our silence on the rest will merit praise,

55

60

65

70

75

80

85

90

95

100

for short the time were for so long a talk.  
 Know then, in brief, that clerics were they all,  
 and mighty men of letters of great fame,  
 soiled by the self same sin when in the world.  
 And with that sad crowd yonder Priscian goes,  
 and Francis of Accorso, too; and him,  
 if thou hadst had a longing for such scurf,  
 thou couldst have seen there, whom the servants' Servant  
 changed from the Arno to the Bacchiglione,  
 where he behind him left his ill-strained nerves.  
 I'd speak of more; but I can come and talk  
 no further, for a new dust-cloud I see  
 rising o'er yonder from the sandy plain.  
 People, with whom I must not be, are coming;  
 let my Tesoro, in which I'm still alive,  
 be recommended thee; I ask no more." 120

Then round he turned, and seemed to be of those  
 who at Verona run across the meadow  
 to win the green cloth; and of these he seemed  
 not he who loses, but the one who wins.

Inferno XVI  
*The Seventh Circle. The Third Ring*  
*Violence against Nature. Sodomites*

I now was where the booming of the water,  
 which fell into the following round, was heard  
 like the dull, buzzing sound which bee-hives make;  
 when three shades separated from a group,  
 which 'neath the rain's tormenting punishment  
 was passing by, and ran along together. 5  
 Toward us they came, and each of them cried out:  
 "Stop, thou, that by thy garb dost seem to us  
 a citizen of our corrupted town!"

Alas, what wounds I saw upon their limbs,  
 both old and recent, by the flames burnt in!  
 It pains me still but to remember them. 10

My Leader, giving heed to these their cries,  
 turned his face round toward me, and said: "Now wait!  
 To those men yonder courtesy is due;  
 and, were not for the fire, which, arrow-like,  
 the nature of the place shoots forth, I'd say  
 that haste were more becoming thee than them." 15

And they, when we had stopped, began again  
 their old refrain; and after they had reached us,  
 all three of them made of themselves a wheel. 20

As champions oiled and nude are wont to do,  
 when looking for an advantageous grip,  
 before they come to giving blows and wounds;  
 thus, as he wheeled, each turned his face toward me,  
 so that his feet continuous journey made  
 in opposite direction to his neck. 25

- And one began: "Even if the wretched nature  
of this soft place, and our burned, shrivelled faces  
bring us and our requests into contempt,  
still let our reputation bend thy mind  
to tell us who thou art, that dost so safely  
rub on the soil of Hell thy living feet.  
He, in whose footprints thou dost see me tread,  
was, though he go both nude and hairless now,  
of higher rank than thou believest him.  
He was the grandson of the good Gualdrada;  
his name was Guido Guerra, and when alive,  
his wisdom and his sword accomplished much.  
The other, who behind me treads the sand,  
Tegghiàio Aldobrandi is, whose voice  
should have been welcomed in the world above.  
And I, who with them am tormented here,  
Jacopo Rusticucci was; and surely  
my shrewish wife than aught else hurts me more." 45
- If I had been protected from the fire,  
I would have lept into their midst below,  
and I believe my Leader had allowed it.  
But since I should have burned and baked myself,  
fear was victorious over my good will,  
which made me eager to embrace them there. 50
- I then began: "Your state impressed within me  
not scorn, but so much pain, that only late  
will all of it entirely disappear,  
as soon as this my Lord said words to me,  
because of which I thought within myself  
that there were people coming such as you.  
Of your own town am I, and evermore  
have I your doings and your honored names  
related, and heard mentioned, with regard.  
I leave the gall, and for the sweet fruit go,  
which my veracious Leader promised me;  
but to the center must I first descend." 60
- "So may thy spirit lead thy members long,"  
the former thereupon replied to me,  
"and, after thou art gone, thy fame be bright,  
tell me if courtesy and worth abide  
within our town, as they were wont to do,  
or whether they have wholly gone from it;  
for Guglielmo Borsierë, who but newly  
has been in pain with us, and with our mates  
goes yonder, grieves us greatly with his words." 65
- "The people newly come, and sudden gains,  
have bred in thee such pride and such excess,  
that, Florence, thou art even now in pain!"  
Thus with uplifted face I cried; whereat  
the three, who this as answer understood,  
looked at each other, as one looks at truth. 75
- "If satisfying others other times  
cost thee so little, happy thou, that thus 80

at thy sweet will dost speak!" they all replied.  
 "Hence,—so mayst thou, from these dark places  
 saved, return to see the lovely stars again,—  
 when saying 'I was there' shall do thee good,  
 see that thou tell the people about us."  
 They then broke up their wheel, and in their flight  
 it seemed as if their nimble legs were wings.

85

Amen could not have been as quickly said,  
 as they then disappeared; my Teacher, therefore,  
 thought it advisable for us to leave.

90

I followed him, and not far had we gone,  
 before the water's noise was so near by,  
 that, had we spoken, we had not been heard.

And as the stream, which is the first that eastward  
 from Monte Veso takes a separate course  
 upon the left slope of the Apennines,  
 and which above is Acquacheta called,  
 before it flows into its lowly bed,  
 and at Forlì is of that name deprived,  
 booms loud, because of falling o'er a cliff  
 above San Benedetto of the Alp,  
 where for a thousand there should refuge be;  
 even thus, as o'er a precipice it fell,  
 we found that colored water roaring so,  
 that very soon it would have hurt our ears.

95

100

105

I had a cord around about me girt,  
 wherewith I once had thought that I could capture  
 the Leopard with the brightly colored hide.  
 When from me I had wholly loosened it,  
 even as my Leader had commanded me,  
 I coiled it up and held it out to him.  
 Thereat upon his right he turned around,  
 and hurled it to some distance from the edge  
 down into that profound and dark abyss.

110

"Surely some strange new thing must needs reply"  
 said I within myself, "to this strange signal,  
 which with his eye my Teacher follows thus."

115

Ah, with what caution men should deal with those,  
 who see not only what is done by others,  
 but with their wisdom see into their thoughts!

120

He said to me: "What I am waiting for,  
 and what thy thought now dreams, will soon come up;  
 soon to thy vision will it be revealed."

E'er to a truth that hath a falsehood's face  
 ought one to close his lips as best he can,  
 for, though one faultless be, it brings him shame;  
 but I can not suppress it here; hence, Reader,  
 even by the verses of this Comedy,  
 so may they not be void of lasting favor,

125

I swear to thee, that through that coarse, dark air  
 I saw a shape, which would have chilled with wonder  
 however brave a heart, come swimming up,  
 as he returns, who, going down at times  
 to clear an anchor clinging to a reef,  
 or aught else lying hidden in the sea,  
 above extends, and draweth in below.

130

135

Inferno XVII*The Seventh Circle. The Third Ring**Violence against Art. Usurers*

“Behold the wild beast with the pointed tail,  
 which, crossing mountains, breaks through walls and armor;  
 behold who sickens all the world with stench!”

My Leader thus began to speak to me,  
 and signalled to it to approach the edge,  
 near where the marble we had traversed ended.  
 And that foul image of deceit came on,  
 and landed on the bank its head and chest;  
 but o'er the edge it drew not up its tail.

5

Its face was as the face of a just man,  
 so pleasing outwardly was its complexion;  
 the body of a serpent all the rest.  
 Two paws it had, all hairy to the arm-pits;  
 its back and breast, as well as both its sides,  
 were painted o'er with snares and wheel-like shields.  
 Ne'er with more colors in its woof and warp  
 did Turks or Tartars manufacture cloth,  
 nor by Arachne were such webs designed.

10

15

As flat-boats sometimes lie upon the shore,  
 in water partly, partly on the land;  
 and as among the greedy Germans yonder,  
 the beaver seats himself to wage his war;  
 so lay that worst of beasts upon the edge  
 which closes in the sandy plain with stone.  
 All of its tail was quivering in the void,  
 and twisting upward its envenomed fork,  
 which like a scorpion's weapon armed its tip.

20

25

“Our path must turn aside a little now,”  
 my Leader said to me, “until we reach  
 that wicked beast reclining over there.”

30

Around our right breast, therefore, we went down,  
 and took ten paces on the very edge,  
 thus surely to avoid both sand and fire;  
 and after we had come to it, I saw,  
 upon the sand a little further on,  
 some people sitting near the precipice.

35

My Teacher then: “That thou mayst take with thee  
 a full experience of this ring, go on,

and see the nature of the life they lead.  
There be thy conversation brief; meanwhile,  
till thou return, I'll talk with this wild beast,  
that its strong shoulders may be yielded us."

40

Thus further on, along the outer edge  
of that seventh circle, all alone I went,  
to where the melancholy people sat.  
Out of their eyes their woe was bursting forth;  
first here, then there, they helped them with their  
hands, now from the flames, now from the heated soil.  
Not otherwise do dogs in summer-time,  
now with their paws, and with their muzzles now,  
whene'er by flees, or flies, or gadflies bitten.

45

When on the face of some I set mine eyes,  
on whom the woeful fire is falling there,  
I knew not one of them; but I perceived  
that from the neck of each there hung a pouch,  
which had a certain color and design,  
wherewith their eyes appeared to feed themselves.  
And as I, looking, came into their midst,  
azure upon a yellow pouch I saw,  
which had the form and semblance of a lion.  
Then, as my gaze continued on its course,  
another I beheld, as red as blood,  
exhibiting a goose more white than butter.

55

And one of them, who had his small white pouch  
emblazoned with an azure pregnant sow,  
said to me: "What dost thou in this our ditch?  
Now go thy way; and since thou livest still,  
know that my fellow townsman, Vitaliano,  
will sit beside me here upon my left.  
I, with these Florentines, a Paduan am,  
and very frequently they stun my ears  
by shouting: "Let the sovereign knight arrive,  
who'll bring with him the pocket with three beaks!"  
Herewith his mouth he twisted, sticking out  
his tongue, as doth an ox that licks its nose.  
And I, afraid lest any longer stay  
might anger him who warned me to be brief,  
turned from those weary spirits back again.

60

70

75

I found my Leader, who had climbed already  
upon the back of that fierce animal,  
and said to me: "Now be thou strong and bold!  
By stairs like these shall we descend hereafter;  
climb thou in front, for midst I wish to be,  
so that the tail may do no injury."

80

Like one with quartan-fever's chill so near,  
that pale already are his finger nails,  
and that, but looking at the shade, he shudders;  
such at the words he uttered I became;  
but that shame made its threats to me, which renders  
a servant strong when in a good lord's presence.  
As on those horrid shoulders I sat down,

85

90

I wished to tell him: "See that thou embrace me!"  
my voice, however, came not as I thought.

But he, who succoured me at other times  
and other straits, as soon as I was up,  
encircled and sustained me with his arms;  
and then he said: "Now, Geryon, move thou on!  
Wide be thy wheels, and gradual thy descent;  
bethink thee of the unwonted load thou hast."

95

As from its mooring place a little boat  
backs slowly out, even so did he withdraw;  
and when he wholly felt himself in play,  
to where his breast had been, he turned his tail,  
and moved the latter, stretched out like an eel,  
while with his paws he gathered in the air.

100

105

I do not think that there was greater fear  
when Phaëthon let go his horses' reins,  
whereby, as still appears, the sky was burned;  
nor yet when wretched Icarus perceived  
his back unfeathering through the melting wax,  
while, calling him, his father cried: "Thou hold'st  
an evil course!" than mine was, when I saw  
that I was in the air on every side,  
and gone the sight of all things save the beast.

110

The latter, swimming, slowly wends his way,  
wheels and descends, but I perceive it not,  
save by the wind below and in my face.  
The waterfall I now heard on the right,  
making a horrid roar beneath us; hence,  
I outward thrust my head with eyes turned down.  
More fearful of the abyss I then became,  
for fires I now beheld, and wailings heard;  
hence, trembling, I clung closer with my thighs.  
And then, for I perceived it not before,  
by the great torments which on divers sides  
drew near, I saw our wheeling and descent.

115

120

125

Even as a falcon long upon the wing,  
which, without seeing lure or game-bird, makes  
the falconer say: "Alas, thou comest down!"  
descendeth weary, through a hundred rings,  
whence he had swiftly started, and alights  
far from his lord in angry sullenness;  
so likewise Geryon set us down below,  
close to the bottom of the rough-hewn rock;  
and, of our persons rid, as fast as flies  
an arrow from a bowstring, sped away.

130

135

Inferno XVIII*The Eighth Circle. Fraud.**The First Trench. Pandars and Seducers.**The Second Trench. Flatterers and Prostitutes*

A place there is in Hell, called Malebolgë,  
wholly of stone, and of an iron hue,  
as is the round wall which encircles it.  
Right in the midst of its malicious field  
yawneth a well exceeding wide and deep,  
of whose construction, in its place, I'll speak.  
Round, therefore, is the girdle which remains  
between the well and that hard, high wall's base,  
and ten great trenches subdivide its bed.

5

As is the appearance which, where many moats  
encircle castles for the walls' protection,  
the section where they are presents;  
such was the one those trenches furnished here;  
and just as in such fortresses small bridges  
stretch from their thresholds to the outmost bank;  
so crags ran from the bottom of the cliff  
across the banks and trenches to the well,  
which, gathering them together, cuts them off.

10

In this place, then, we found ourselves, when dropped  
from Geryon's back; the Poet thereupon  
held to the left, and I behind him moved.

20

Upon the right side I beheld new cause  
for sympathy, new pains, and scourgers new,  
wherewith the first trench was completely filled.  
Down at its bottom naked were the sinners;  
this side the middle facing us they came,  
beyond it with us, but with quicker steps;  
means such as those which at the Jubilee  
the Romans took, because of its great throng,  
to have the people pass across the bridge,  
who toward the Castle all on one side face,  
and toward Saint Peter's go their way; while all  
move toward the mountain on the other edge.

25

30

This side and that, upon the dark, stone floor,  
horned demons with great scourges I beheld,  
who from behind were fiercely whipping them.  
Ah, how they caused them to lift them up their heels,  
when by the first blows smitten! Certainly  
none waited for the second, or the third.

35

While I was going on, mine eyes were met  
by one of them; and instantly I said:  
“I fast not from a previous sight of him.”  
To make him out I therefore stayed my feet;  
and, having stopped with me, my gentle Leader  
assented to my going back a little.

40

45

- That scourged one thought that he could hide himself  
by looking down, but little it availed him;  
for "Thou, that castest down thine eyes," said I,  
unless the features which thou hast are false,  
Venèdico Caccianimico art; 50  
but what brings thee into such pungent sauces?"
- And he to me: "Unwillingly I tell it;  
but forced I am by thy transparent speech,  
which makes me recollect the olden world.  
I was the one who led Ghisolabella 55  
to do according to the Marquis' will,  
however the disgusting tale be told.  
Nor am I here the only Bolognese  
that weeps; nay, this place is so full of us,  
that not so many tongues are taught today 60  
between Savena and Reno to say *sipa*;  
and if thereof thou wouldest have pledge or proof,  
recall to mind our avaricious breasts."
- As thus he spoke, a demon with his lash  
smote him, and said to him: "Pandar, begone!  
There are no women here to sell for coin." 65
- I then rejoined my Escort; whereupon,  
when we had taken some few steps, we came  
to where a crag projected from the bank.  
This we ascended with the greatest ease, 70  
and turning to the right along its ridge,  
we left those everlasting circling walls.
- When we were where it hollows out below,  
to let the scourged pass through, my Leader said:  
"Now stay thy steps, and on thee let the sight  
of all these other ill-born spirits strike, 75  
whose faces thou hast not perceived as yet,  
because they've gone with us in our direction."
- As from the ancient bridge we watched the troop,  
which on the other side was toward us coming,  
and which the scourge was likewise driving on,  
without my asking, my good Teacher said: 80  
"Look at that great man there, who, as he comes,  
for all his pain, seems not to shed a tear.  
How royal an appearance he still keeps!  
Jason is he, who, by his doughtiness 85  
and wit, deprived the Colchians of their ram.  
He passed the isle of Lemmos on his way,  
after its pitiless and daring women  
had given up to death their every male.  
With tokens of his love and flattering words 90  
he there deceived the maid, Hypsipylë,  
who previously had all the rest deceived.  
He left her there with child, and all alone;  
him to this punishment that fault condemns;  
and for Medea, too, is vengeance wrought. 95  
With him go those that in this way deceive;

be this enough to know of this first ditch,  
and of those, too, that in its fangs it holds."

- Already were we where the narrow path  
forms with the second bank a cross, and makes  
therewith abutments for another arch. 100
- We thence heard people in the following trench  
who whined and groaned, and with their muzzles  
puffed, while smiting their own bodies with their palms. 105
- The banks were crusted over with a mould  
by vapor from below, which, sticking there,  
offensive to both eyes and nose became.
- So deep the bottom, that there is no means  
of looking into it, unless one climb  
the arch's summit, where the crag is highest. 110
- Thither we came, and from it in the ditch  
people I saw immersed in excrement,  
which seemed from human privies to have come.
- While peering with mine eyes down there, I saw  
a head so foul with filth, that whether clerk's  
or layman's head it were, was not apparent.  
Scolding, he said: "Why greedier art thou  
to look at me, than at the other foul ones?" 115
- And I: "Because, if I remember well,  
I've seen thee with dry hair ere now, for thou  
Alèssio Interminèi of Lucca art;  
that's why I eye thee more than all the rest."  
And he then, as he beat upon his pate: 120
- "Those flatteries immersed me here below,  
wherewith my tongue was never surfeited." 125
- Then, after this, my Leader said to me:  
"See that thou urge thy glance a little further,  
that with thine eyes thou quite attain the face  
of that disgusting and dishevelled wench,  
who yonder claws herself with filthy nails,  
and crouches now, and now is on her feet. 130
- That Thaïs is, the prostitute, who answered  
her paramour, when he had said 'Have I  
great thanks from thee?': 'Nay, marvelously great!'  
Herewith, then, let our sight be satisfied." 135

### Inferno XIX

*The Eighth Circle. Fraud*

*The Third Trench. Simoniacs*

O Simon Magus, O his wretched followers,  
since ye the things of God, which ought to be  
the brides of righteousness, rapaciously  
adulterate for silver and for gold;  
it now behooves the trumpet sound for you,  
for in the third great trench your station is! 5

We now had climbed the next tomb-spanning bridge,  
and were on that part of the crag, which hangs  
directly o'er the middle of the trench.

Wisdom Supreme, how great the art thou shovest  
in Heaven, on earth, and in the evil world!  
How justly, too, thy virtue makes awards!

I saw that on its sloping sides and bottom  
the livid-colored stone was full of holes,  
all of one width, while each of them was round.  
Nor less nor more wide did they seem to me,  
than those which in my beautiful Saint John's  
are made as places for baptizing priests;  
and one of which, not many years ago,  
I broke, to save one who was choking in it;  
be this a witness undeceiving all!

Out of the mouth of each a sinner's feet  
protruded, and, as far as to the calf,  
his legs; the rest of him remained within.  
The soles of all were, both of them, on fire;  
because of which their joints so strongly twitched,  
they would have snapped green twigs and cords of  
grass. And as a flame on oily things is wont  
to move along the outer surface only;  
so likewise was it there from heels to toes.

"Who, Teacher, is he yonder, who is tortured  
by twitching more than all the rest, his mates,"  
said I, "and whom a redder flame is sucking?"

And he to me: "If thou wouldest have me bear thee  
down yonder bank which lowest lies, from him  
thou'l know both of himself and of his sins."

And I: "What pleases thee I like; my lord  
thou art, and that I part not from thy will  
thou knowst, as also what is left unsaid."

We then upon the fourth embankment came,  
and, turning round, descended on our left  
into that narrow bottom pierced with holes;  
nor yet did my good Teacher set me down  
from off his back, but brought me to the hole  
of him who grieved so sorely with his shank.

"Whoe'er thou art, sad soul, that holdest down  
thine upper portion, planted like a stake,"  
I then began, "say something, if thou canst."

I there was like a friar that confesses  
a base assassin, who, on being planted,  
calls him again, that death may be delayed.

And he cried out: "Dost thou stand there already,  
dost thou stand there already, Boniface?

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

|                                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| By several years the writing lied to me.<br>Art thou so quickly sated with the wealth,<br>for which thou didst not fear to seize by fraud,<br>and outrage next, the Lady beautiful?" | 55  |
| Even such did I become, as those are, who,<br>not understanding what is answered them,<br>deem themselves mocked, and think of no reply.                                             | 60  |
| Then Virgil said: "Tell him immediately:<br>'I'm not the one, I'm not the one thou thinkest!'"                                                                                       |     |
| And I replied to him as I was bidden.                                                                                                                                                |     |
| Whereat the spirit writhed with both his feet;<br>then, sighing, and with weeping voice, he said:                                                                                    | 65  |
| "What is it, then, that thou dost ask of me?<br>If to know who I am concern thee so,                                                                                                 |     |
| that for it thou hast crossed the bank; know, then,<br>that I was with the mighty Mantle clothed;                                                                                    |     |
| and verily the she-Bear's son was I,<br>so eager to advance the cubs, that wealth                                                                                                    | 70  |
| I pocketed up there, and here myself.<br>The others, who in working simony                                                                                                           |     |
| preceded me, are gathered 'neath my head,<br>flattened between the fissures of the rock.                                                                                             | 75  |
| I, in like manner, shall down yonder fall,<br>when he arrives, whom I believed thou wast,                                                                                            |     |
| when I of thee the sudden question asked.                                                                                                                                            |     |
| But now already longer is the time,<br>that I, thus up-side down, have cooked my feet,                                                                                               | 80  |
| than he will planted stay with ruddy soles;<br>for after him shall come from westward lands                                                                                          |     |
| a lawless shepherd of still uglier deed,<br>and fit to cover him and me. Renewed                                                                                                     |     |
| shall Jason be, of whom in Maccabees<br>one reads; and as to that one his king yielded,                                                                                              | 85  |
| even so who governs France shall yield to this."                                                                                                                                     |     |
| I know not whether I was here too bold,<br>in that I answered him in this strain only:                                                                                               |     |
| "Now tell me, pray, how great the treasure was,<br>our Lord demanded of Saint Peter first,                                                                                           | 90  |
| before He placed the Keys in his control?<br>Surely he asked for naught but 'Follow me.'                                                                                             |     |
| Nor yet did Peter or the rest take gold<br>or silver from Matthias, when by lot                                                                                                      |     |
| he took the place the guilty soul had lost.                                                                                                                                          | 95  |
| Therefore keep still, for thou art rightly punished;<br>and take good care of that ill-gotten wealth,                                                                                |     |
| which caused thee to be valiant against Charles.                                                                                                                                     |     |
| And were it not for this, that I am still<br>forbidden by reverence for the Keys supreme                                                                                             | 100 |
| thou hadst in keeping in the joyful life,<br>words of still greater weight would I employ;                                                                                           |     |
| because your greed, by trampling on the good<br>and raising the depraved, afflicts the world.                                                                                        |     |
| The Evangelist was thinking of your shepherds,<br>when she, who on the waters hath her seat,                                                                                         | 105 |

was seen by him to fornicate with kings;  
 the one who with the seven heads was born,  
 and from the ten horns her support received,  
 while virtue still was pleasing to her spouse.  
 Ye've made yourselves a god of gold and silver;  
 and from idolaters how differ ye,  
 save that they worship one, and ye a hundred?

110

Ah, Constantine, of how much ill was mother,  
 not thy conversion, but the dower-gift  
 the earliest wealthy Father took from thee!"

115

While I was singing him such notes as these,  
 he, whether it were wrath or conscience bit him,  
 was fiercely kicking out with both his feet.  
 I verily believe it pleased my Leader,  
 he heeded with so glad a look throughout  
 the utterance of those true, clear words of mine.  
 He therefore took me up with both his arms,  
 and when he had me wholly on his breast,  
 he climbed again the path down which he came;  
 nor tired of holding me in his embrace,  
 but bore me to the summit of the arch,  
 which crosses from the fourth bank to the fifth.  
 When there, he gently set his burden down,  
 gently, because that crag was rough and steep,  
 and would be difficult for goats to cross;  
 from thence another trench was shown to me.

120

125

130

Inferno XX*The Eighth Circle. Fraud**The Fourth Trench. Diviners and Soothsayers*

About strange punishments must I make verses,  
 and furnish matter for the twentieth song  
 of this first lay, which treats of those submerged.

Already had I wholly given myself  
 to looking down at its uncovered bottom,  
 which with the tears of agony was bathed;  
 when people in the great round trench I saw  
 come weeping silently, and at the pace,  
 at which in this world litanies advance.

5

Then, as my sight fell on them lower down,  
 wondrously twisted each of them appeared  
 between the chin and where the chest begins;  
 for toward his loins his face was turned around,  
 and backward it behooved him to advance,  
 because of foresight they had been deprived.

10

15

By palsy some, perhaps, may thus have been  
 entirely turned around, but I've not seen it,  
 nor do I think there ever was one such.

So may God let thee, Reader, gather fruit  
 from this thy reading, think now for thyself

20

- how I could ever keep my own face dry,  
when at close range I saw our human image  
so twisted, that the weeping of the eyes  
along the fissure bathed the back. Indeed,  
as on a rock of that hard crag I leaned,  
I wept so, that my Escort said to me:  
“Art thou still foolish as the others are?  
Here liveth piety when wholly dead  
is pity. Who, then, guiltier is than he  
who lets his feelings judge Divine Decrees?” 25  
30
- Lift, lift thy head, and see the man for whom,  
before the Trojans' eyes, the earth was opened!  
whence all cried: ‘Whither art thou rushing now,  
Amphiaràus? Why quittest thou the war?’  
and he ceased not from plunging headlong down  
to Minos, who lays hold on every one.  
See how he makes a bosom of his shoulders;  
because he wished to see too far ahead,  
he looks behind, and backward goes his way. 35
- Behold Tiresias there, who changed his looks,  
when female he became, from being male,  
his members being each and all transformed;  
and afterward he needs must strike again  
the two entwining serpents with his rod,  
ere he the plumage of a male regained. 40  
45
- He who to that one's belly turns his back,  
is Aruns, who in Luni's mountain quarries,  
where toils the Carrarese who dwells below,  
among white marbles had as dwelling-place  
a cave, from which his view was not cut off,  
when at the stars he gazed, or at the sea. 50
- And she who, yonder, with dishevelled locks  
covers the breasts which thou dost not behold,  
and has on that side all her hairy skin,  
was Manto, who first searched through many lands,  
then settled in the place where I was born;  
thereof I'd have thee hear me speak a little. 55
- After her father had from life departed,  
and Bacchus' city had become enslaved,  
she wandered long about the world. Up there  
in lovely Italy, beneath the Alps  
which o'er the Tyrol lock out Germany,  
there lies a lake which is Benàco called. 60
- From o'er a thousand springs, I trow, 'tween Garda  
and Val Camònica, the Pennine Alp  
is bathed by waters which therein find rest. 65
- A midway place there is, where Trento's shepherd,  
and he of Brescia, and the Veronese,  
might each his blessing give, if there he went.  
Peschiera next, a fair and mighty fortress,  
and fit to face both Bergamasks and Brescians,  
sits where the shore lies lowest round about. 70

- There all that in Benàco's spacious lap  
cannot be held, flows out of it perforce,  
and down through verdant pastures forms a stream. 75  
When once its water gathers head to run,  
no more Benàco, Mincio is its name,  
till at Govèrnolo it joins the Po.  
Not long its course, before it finds low ground,  
o'er which it spreads, and, making it a marsh, 80  
is wont at times to be unsound in summer.
- Passing that way, the cruel virgin saw  
a region in the middle of the fen,  
untilled and naked of inhabitants.  
There, to escape all human fellowship, 85  
and work her arts, she settled with her slaves,  
and lived, and there she left her empty body.  
Thereafter men, who all around were scattered,  
collected in that place, which was a strong one,  
because it had a fen on every side. 90  
O'er those dead bones of hers they built a town;  
then, after her, who first picked out the site,  
they called it Mantua, with no other lot.  
The people in it were more numerous once,  
before the foolishness of Casalodi 95  
had been deceived by Pinamonte's guile.  
I charge thee, then, if e'er thou hear it said  
my town had its beginning otherwise,  
permit no falsehood to defraud the truth."
- "Thy statements, Teacher, are so sure to me,"  
said I, "and take such hold upon my faith,  
that those of others would be burnt-out coals.  
But tell me if among these passing people 100  
thou seest any one deserving note;  
for my mind now is wholly bent on that." 105
- He told me then: "The one who from his cheeks  
extends his beard across his swarthy shoulders,  
an augur was, when Greece lacked males so much,  
that for her cradles only few were left;  
't was he who set, with Chalcas' aid, at Aulis 110  
the time to cut the fleet's first rope. His name  
Euryþylus, and in a certain place  
he thus is called by my high Tragedy;  
this thou know'st well, who knowest all of it.  
That other one, so thin about his flanks, 115  
was Michael Scot, who surely understood  
the artful game of magical deceits.  
Guido Bonatti see; and see Asdente,  
who wishes now that he had given heed  
to cord and leather, but too late repents. 120  
See the sad women who abandoned needles,  
spindles and shuttles, to become diviners;  
these wrought their spells with herbs and images.
- But now come on, for Cain is with his thorns  
holding the bounds of both the hemispheres, 125

and plays upon the waves below Seville,  
and round already was the moon last night;  
thou surely must recall it, since at times,  
it harmed thee not, when in the dark wood's depths."

Thus he to me, as, meanwhile, on we went.

130

### Inferno XXI

#### *The Eighth Circle. Fraud*

#### *The Fifth Trench. Corrupt Politicians*

Speaking of other things my Comedy  
cares not to sing, we thus from bridge to bridge  
moved on, and, when upon the summit, stopped,  
in order to behold the next ravine  
of Malebòlgè, and the next vain cries;  
and I beheld it wonderfully dark.

5

And just such sticky pitch as that which boils  
in the Venetians' Arsenal in winter,  
for calking up again the unsound ships,  
which cannot then be sailed;—instead of which,  
as one a new one builds, one plugs the ribs  
of that which many voyages has made;  
one hammers at the stern, and at the prow another;  
one fashions oars, another cordage twists,  
while still another mends a jib or mainsail;—  
such was the coarse, dense pitch, which, not by fire,  
but by an art divine, boiled there below,  
and limed the bank on every side. I saw  
the pitch, but nothing in it, save the bubbles  
the boiling raised, and that the whole of it  
kept swelling up, and settling back compressed.

10

15

20

While I was gazing fixedly down yonder,  
my Leader cried to me: "Beware, beware!"  
and drew me to himself from where I was.  
I then turned round, as one who longs to see  
the thing which it behooves him to escape,  
and who, when by a sudden fear unmanned,  
although he sees, delays not his departure;  
and I perceived behind us a black devil  
come running up along the rocky crag.

25

30

Ah, how ferocious in his looks he was,  
and in his actions how severe he seemed,  
with wings outspread, and light upon his feet!  
His shoulder, which was sharp and high, was loaded  
with both a sinner's haunches, whom he held  
clutched tightly by the sinews of his feet.

35

"O Malebranche," from our bridge he cried,  
"here's one of Santa Zita's Ancients! Put him  
beneath, for I'm for more of them returning  
to that town which I have well stocked therewith;  
there, save Bonturo, every one's a grafter;  
a 'No' for money there becomes a 'Yes.'"

40

He hurled him down, and o'er the rugged crag  
returned; and never was a mastif loosed  
with so much hurry to pursue a thief.

45

The other sank, and then rose doubled up;  
those fiends, though, who were sheltered by the bridge,  
cried: "Here the Holy Face availeth not!  
One here swims otherwise than in the Serchio!  
If, therefore, thou dost not desire our hooks,  
protrude not from the surface of the pitch."

50

They pricked him then with o'er a hundred prongs,  
and said: "Here under cover must thou dance,  
that, if thou canst, thou mayst thieve secretly."  
Not otherwise do cooks have scullions plunge  
the meat with hooks into the cauldron's midst,  
to hinder it from floating on its surface.

55

Thereat my kindly Teacher said to me:  
"That here thy presence be not known, crouch down  
behind a rock, which may avail to screen thee;  
and be not thou afraid, for any harm  
that may be done to me, who know these things,  
for I in frays like this have been before."

60

He then passed on beyond the bridge's head,  
and when the sixth embankment had been reached,  
he had to show assurance in his face.  
With just the storm and fury wherewith dogs  
break out and rush upon a poor old man,  
who stops and begs at once from where he is;  
from 'neath the little bridge those devils issued,  
and turned against him all their grappling hooks;  
but he cried out: "Be none of you malicious!  
Before your grappling hooks take hold of me,  
let one of you advance, and hear me speak;  
then take ye counsel as to grappling me."

65

70

75

Then all cried out: "Let Malacoda go!"  
Thereat one started, while the rest kept still,  
and, as he came, said: "What does this avail him?"

"Dost thou think, Malacoda," said my Teacher,  
"that, as thou seest, I have hither come,  
safe until now from all your hindrances,  
unhelped by Will Divine and favoring fate?  
Let us go on, for it is willed in Heaven  
that I should show another this wild road."

80

Thereat his pride received so great a fall,  
that at his feet he dropped his grappling hook,  
and to the rest said: "Let him not be wounded."

85

My Leader thereupon cried out to me:  
"Thou that among the bridge's broken rocks  
art crouching, safely now regain my side."

90

- I therefore moved, and quickly came to him;  
 then all the fiends advanced so far, I feared  
 they would not keep their word. Even thus I once  
 saw infantry, who, under pledge of safety,  
 were from Caprona coming forth, afraid,  
 when 'mong so many foes they saw themselves. 95  
 Then wholly to my Leader's side I drew,  
 nor from their faces, which did not look good,  
 did I remove my eyes. For as their prongs  
 they lowered, one fiend to another said:  
 "Wouldst thou that I should touch him on his rump?"  
 and they replied: "Yes, see thou nick it for him!" 100
- But that fiend, who was with my Leader talking,  
 turned round at once, and said to him: "Keep still,  
 keep still there, Scarmiglionë!" Then to us:  
 "Further advance along this present crag  
 can not be made, because the sixth arch yonder  
 lies wholly shattered on the ground below;  
 but if it please you still to go ahead,  
 go on along this ridge; there is near by  
 another crag which furnishes a path. 105  
 Than this hour five hours later yesterday,  
 twelve hundred, six and sixty years had passed,  
 since here the path was broken. I am sending  
 some of my company in that direction,  
 to see if any yonder air themselves;  
 go on with them, for they will not be bad." 110
- "Step forward, Alichino, and Calcabrina,"  
 he then began to say, "thou, too, Cagnazzo;  
 and let old Barbariccia guide the ten.  
 Have Libicocco go, and Draghignazzo;  
 tusked Ciriatto, too, and Graffiacane,  
 with Farfarello and crazy Rubicante.  
 Search round about the boiling birdlime pitch;  
 let these be safe as far as that next crag,  
 which all unbroken goes across the dens." 115 120  
 125
- "Oh, Teacher, what is this I see?" said I.  
 "If thou know how, pray let us go alone,  
 for I request no escort for myself.  
 If thou as wary art as thou art wont,  
 dost thou not notice how they gnash their teeth,  
 and with their eyebrows threaten us with woe?" 130
- And he to me: "I would not have thee frightened;  
 let them grin on, then, as they like, for that  
 they're doing at the wretches who are boiled." 135
- They wheeled, and moved along the left bank then;  
 but not till each, as signal toward their leader,  
 had first thrust out his tongue between his teeth,  
 and he had of his rump a trumpet made.

Inferno XXII*The Eighth Circle. Fraud**The Fifth Trench. Corrupt Politicians*

Ere now have I seen cavalry break camp,  
start to attack, or be reviewed, and even,  
at times, retreat, in order to escape;  
scouts have I also seen upon your lands,  
O Aretines; raids, too, have I beheld,  
and tournaments and tilting-matches fought;  
with trumpets now, and now with bells, with drums  
and beacon-signals made from fortresses,  
with native and with foreign things; but never  
have I seen horse, or infantry, or ship,  
by sign of either land or sky, set out  
with instrument of wind as odd as that.

5

With the ten demons we were going on;  
ah, the fierce company! But in a church  
with saints consort, with gluttons at an inn!  
Upon the pitch alone was I intent,  
that I might see all details of the trench  
and of the people who were burned therein.

10

As dolphins do, when, arching up their backs,  
they give the warning which bids mariners  
take measures for the safety of their ship;  
even so at times, his suffering to relieve,  
one of the sinners there displayed his back,  
and hid it in less time than lightning takes.

20

And as in ditches at the water's edge  
frogs stay with nothing but their muzzles out,  
and thus conceal their feet and all the rest;  
even so on all sides did those sinners stay;  
and now that Barbariccia was approaching,  
they likewise 'neath the boiling pitch withdrew.  
I saw, and still it stirs my heart with horror,  
one waiting thus, as oft, while one frog stays,  
it happens that another scurries off.  
And Graffiacane, who was nearest to him,  
hooking his pitch-smeared tresses, pulled him up,  
so that an otter he appeared to me.

25

30

35

I knew by now the names of each and all,  
I noted them so well when they were chosen,  
and, when they called each other, noticed how.  
“O Rubicante, see thou set thy claws  
upon him so, that thou peel off his skin!”  
the accursèd all cried out together then.

40

And I: “My Teacher, if thou canst, contrive  
to learn who that wretch is, who thus  
has fallen into his adversaries’ hands.”

45

My Leader thereupon drew near to him,  
and asked him whence he was, and he replied:

- "Of Navarre's kingdom I a native was.  
 My mother placed me out to serve a lord,  
 for she had borne me to a rascal knave,  
 who both himself and what he owned destroyed. 50  
 I next in good King Thibaut's household served,  
 and there I set myself to practice graft,  
 for which I pay the reckoning in this heat."
- Here Ciriatto, from whose mouth protruded,  
 as from a boar's, a tusk on either side,  
 caused him to feel how one of them could rip. 55  
 Among bad cats the mouse had fallen now;  
 for Barbariccia clasped him in his arms,  
 and said: "Stand off, while I am clutching him!"  
 Then, toward my Teacher having turned his face, 60  
 he said: "Ask him again, if more thou wish  
 to know of him, before the others rend him."
- My Leader then: "Now tell me: know'st thou any,  
 among the other sinners 'neath the pitch,  
 who Latin is?" And he: "Not long ago  
 I left a man from that vicinity;  
 would that like him I still were covered up,  
 for I should then fear neither claw nor hook!" 65
- Here Libicocco said: "We've borne too much!"  
 and with his hook so seized him by the arm,  
 and tore it, that he carried off a piece.  
 And Draghignazzo also wished to clutch him  
 down at his legs; but their decurion then  
 turned right around at them with threatening looks. 70  
 75
- When they were somewhat pacified again,  
 of him, who still was looking at his wound,  
 my Leader asked without delay: "Who, then,  
 was he, from whom thou tookst unlucky leave,  
 as thou hast said, to land upon the shore?" 80
- And he made answer: "That was Fra Gomita,  
 Gallura's man, a vessel of all fraud,  
 who, when he held in hand his master's foes,  
 so dealt with them that each is glad. Their money  
 he took, and, as he puts it, let them all  
 off easy, and even in other offices  
 was not a petty, but a first rate grafted. 85  
 With him Don Michel Zanche of Logodoro  
 associates; and never do their tongues  
 feel tired out by talking of Sardinia.  
 But oh! Look at the other grinning there!  
 More would I say, but am afraid lest that one  
 be making ready now to claw my skin." 90
- Then the great provost turned toward Farfarello,  
 who rolled his eyes as if he meant to strike,  
 and said: "Off yonder, thou malicious bird!" 95
- "If you desire" thereat began again  
 the terror-stricken man, "to see or hear

- Tuscans or Lombards, I will have some come.  
 But let the Evil Claws here stand aside  
 a little, that their vengeance be not feared,  
 and I, while sitting in this very place,  
 for one that I am, shall make seven come out,  
 when I shall whistle, as our wont it is,  
 when any one of us protrudes himself." 100
- Cagnazzo at this speech his muzzle raised,  
 and shook his head, and said: "Hear the sly trick  
 devised by him to cast himself below!"
- Then he, who frauds in great abundance had,  
 replied to him: "Tricky indeed am I,  
 when for my mates a greater pain I win!" 110
- Here Alichin could not control himself,  
 but said, in opposition to the rest:  
 "I shall not gallop after thee, in case  
 thou dive, but o'er the pitch shall beat my wings;  
 the ridge abandoned, be the bank a screen,  
 to see if thou alone art more than we!" 115
- Now, Reader, of a new sport shalt thou hear!  
 Each turned his eyes the other way; and he  
 the first, who had thereto been most opposed.  
 The Navarrese chose well his time, stood firmly  
 upon the ground, and, jumping suddenly,  
 from what they purposed freed himself thereby.  
 For this each felt himself to blame, but most  
 the one who of the loss had been the cause;  
 hence he moved first, and shouted: "Thou art caught!" 120
- But little did it profit him; for wings  
 could not outmeasure fear; as one went under,  
 the other, flying upward, raised his breast;  
 nor different is the speed with which a duck  
 dives under water, when a hawk draws near,  
 who, vexed and baffled thus, flies up again. 125
- Then Calcabrina, angered by the flout,  
 flew out behind him, glad that one escaped,  
 because it let him scuffle with the other;  
 and then, the grafter having disappeared,  
 he turned his claws upon his own companion,  
 and grappled with him o'er the ditch; but he,  
 being, indeed, a fighting sparrow-hawk  
 fitted to claw him well, they both fell down  
 into the middle of the boiling fen. 135
- A sudden separator was the heat;  
 but rising thence was quite impossible,  
 they had their wings so limed with sticky pitch. 140
- Then Barbariccia, vexed as were the rest,  
 his mates, had four of them with all their hooks  
 fly to the other bank; on both sides then  
 they speedily descended to their posts,  
 and stretched their hooks out toward the pitch- 145

belimed, who now were cooked inside their crusted hides;  
and, thus embarrassed, we abandoned them.

150

Inferno XXIII*The Eighth Circle. Fraud**The Sixth Trench. Hypocrites*

Silent, alone, and unaccompanied,  
we went along, one first and one behind,  
as Minor Friars go when on the road.

My thoughts, by reason of the present brawl,  
were turned to Aesop's fable, that wherein  
he talks about the frog and mouse; for 'now'  
and 'at this moment' are no more alike,  
than one is like the other, if beginning  
and end be linked by an attentive mind.

5

And ev'n as one thought from another springs,  
so, next, from that one was another born,  
which doubled my first fear. Hence thus I thought:  
"These devils have been scorned on our account,  
and with such injury and scoff, indeed,  
that I believe that they are greatly vexed.  
If anger to ill-will be joined, they'll come  
more fiercely after us, than doth a dog  
the rabbit which he seizes with his teeth."

10

15

Already was I feeling all my hair  
bristling with fear, when, gazing back intent,  
I said: "If, Teacher, thou hide not thyself  
and me with speed, I dread the Evilclaws;  
we have them now behind us, and I so  
imagine them, that I already feel them."

20

And he: "If I were made of leaded glass,  
thine outward image I would not reflect  
more quickly than thine inward I receive.  
Even now thy thoughts were coming among mine  
with outlook and intent so similar,  
that I with both a single purpose formed.  
If it be true the right bank slopeth so,  
that to the following trench we can descend,  
we shall escape from this imagined chase."

25

30

He had not finished telling me his plan,  
when not far off I saw them coming on  
with wings outspread, intent on seizing us.

35

My Leader then took hold of me at once,  
even as a mother, by the noise aroused,  
and seeing close to her the burning flames,  
seizes her child and flees, and doth not stop,  
since caring more for him than for herself,  
even long enough to clothe her with a shift;  
and downward from the ridge of that hard bank,  
his back he yielded to the hanging rock,  
which closes one side of the following trench.

40

45

Water ne'er moved as swiftly through a sluice,  
to turn the overshot wheel of a mill,  
when closest to the paddles it approaches,  
as did my Teacher o'er that selvage-bank,  
bearing me down with him upon his back,  
as though his son I were, and not his mate.

50

His feet had hardly reached the trench's bed  
below, when they were on the ridge above,  
just over us; but naught was now to fear;  
because the Providence on high, which willed  
to place them in the fifth trench as its servants,  
takes from them all the power of leaving it.

55

A painted people found we there below,  
who, moving with exceedingly slow steps,  
shed tears, and in their looks appeared subdued  
and weary. Cloaks they had equipped with cowls  
lowered before their eyes, and cut like those  
which in Cologne are fashioned for her monks.  
So gilded outside are they that they dazzle;  
but inside all are lead, and of such weight,  
that those which Frederick clothed men with were  
straw. O cloak that wearies through eternity!

60

We turned again, as ever, to the left,  
along with them, intent on their sad plaint;  
but, owing to the weight, that weary folk  
came on so slowly, that new company  
we had at every motion of our legs.  
Hence to my Leader I: "Contrive to find  
some one whom we may know by deed or name,  
and, while thus going, move thine eyes around."

70

75

And one, who heard my Tuscan speech, cried out  
behind us: "Stay your feet, O ye that run  
so quickly through the gloomy air! From me,  
perhaps, shalt thou receive what thou dost ask."  
Thereat my Leader turned and said: "Now wait;  
and then proceed according to his pace."

80

I stopped, and two I saw, whose faces showed  
great mental haste to be with me, and yet  
their burden and the narrow path delayed them.  
On coming up to us, they watched me long  
with eyes askance, and uttered not a word;  
then, toward each other turning, thus they spoke:  
"This one seems by the action of his throat  
alive; but if they're dead, by what right, then,  
go they uncovered by the heavy stole?"

85

90

And then, addressing me, they said: "O Tuscan,  
who to the gathering of sad hypocrites  
art come, scorn not to tell us who thou art."

And I to them: "On Arno's lovely stream,  
and in its famous town, both born and bred,

95

I'm in the body I have always had.  
 But who are ye, adown whose cheeks there drips,  
 as I perceive, so great a woe, and what  
 the penalty which sparkles on you thus?"

"These orange cloaks," one answered, "are of lead,  
 and of such thickness are they, that the weights  
 thus cause the scales that balance them to creak.  
 We Jovial Friars were, and Bolognese;  
 I, Català, and Loderingo he,  
 by name, and chosen by thy town together,  
 as one alone is usually called,  
 to keep its peace; and such we were, as still  
 in the Gardingo's neighborhood appears."

"O friars," I began, "your evil deeds . . ."  
 but said no more; because there struck mine eyes  
 one crucified by three stakes on the ground.  
 On seeing me, sighs through his beard he blew,  
 and writhed all over; then Fra Català,  
 informed thereby of what had happened, said:

"The pinioned man thou gazest at, advised  
 the Pharisees that it expedient was  
 to torture one man for the people's sake.  
 Stretched crosswise, as thou seest, on the road,  
 and naked, he is forced to be the first  
 to feel how much whoever passes weighs.  
 And in like fashion suffer in this ditch  
 his father-in-law, and others of the council  
 which proved a seed of evil for the Jews."

I then saw Virgil marvelling at him,  
 who in the figure of a cross was stretched  
 so basely in eternal banishment.

Then to the friar he addressed these words:  
 "Be not displeased to tell us, an ye may,  
 if on the right there lie a crossing-place,  
 by means of which we two may issue hence,  
 without black Angels being forced to come  
 and extricate us from this trench's bed."

"Nearer than thou dost hope" he then replied,  
 "a crag there is, which at the great round wall  
 begins, and all the cruel trenches spans,  
 save that at this one it is broken down,  
 and spans it not; but ye can climb the ruins,  
 which from its base lie piled along the slope."

My Leader kept his head bowed down awhile;  
 then said: "Wrongly did he report the thing,  
 who yonder grapples sinners with his hook!"

The friar then: "Among the many vices given  
 the Devil at Bologna, I once heard  
 that he a liar is, and sire of lies."

100

105

110

115

120

125

130

135

140

Thereat my Leader with great strides departed,  
somewhat disturbed by anger in his looks;  
then I the burdened left, and followed on  
behind the footprints of beloved feet.

145

Inferno XXIV*The Eighth Circle. Fraud**The Seventh Trench. Thieves*

When in the youthful season of the year  
the sun beneath Aquarius warms his locks,  
while southward now the nights pursue their way;  
and when the hoar-frost draws upon the ground  
the counterfeit of her white sister's face,  
though shortly lasts the temper of her pen;  
the peasant, lacking provender, gets up,  
looks out, and, seeing all the country white,  
slaps himself on the thigh, returns in doors,  
and walking to and fro, laments, poor wretch,  
not knowing what to do; then later on  
returning out again, recovers hope,  
on seeing that the world has shortly changed  
its face; and, taking down his shepherd-staff,  
out to their feeding drives his tender sheep.

5

10

15

Even thus my Teacher filled me with dismay,  
when I beheld such trouble in his face;  
thus, too, the plaster quickly reached the wound;  
for when we had attained the ruined bridge,  
my Leader turned to me with that sweet look,  
which at the Mountain's foot I first perceived.  
First having well surveyed the ruined arch,  
after some counsel taken with himself,  
his arms he opened, and took hold of me.  
And like a man who ponders while he acts,  
and always seems to look ahead; ev'n so,  
while upward to the top of one great rock  
he pushed me, he sought out another crag,  
and said: "Take hold of that one next, but first  
see whether it be fit to bear thy weight."

20

25

30

No path was this for one who wore a cloak,  
since scarcely could we two, though he was light,  
and I was pushed, ascend from rock to rock.  
And had the slope on that bank not been shorter,  
than on the other, I know not of him,  
but I would surely have been overcome;  
but since the whole of Malebolgë slopes  
down to the opening of the lowest well,  
such is the nature of each trench's banks,  
that one is high, and low the following one;  
and yet we reached at length the ridge above,  
from which the crag's last rock projects.  
My breath was so exhausted from my lungs,  
when up at last, that I could go no further;  
nay, on arriving I sat down at once.

35

40

45

- "Thus, henceforth, must thou rid thyself of sloth,"  
 my Teacher said; "for one attains not fame,  
 sitting on cushions, or 'neath canopies;  
 and he that lives without attaining it,  
 leaveth on earth such traces of himself,  
 as smoke doth in the air, or foam in water.  
 Therefore get up! O'ercome thy troubled breath  
 with that soul-energy, which wins all fights,  
 unless it sink beneath its body's weight!  
 A longer stairway must be climbed; 't is not  
 enough that these stairs have been left; if, then,  
 thou understand me, let it profit thee." 50
- I thereupon arose, and showed myself  
 better equipped with breath than I had felt,  
 and said: "Go on, for I am strong and bold!" 60
- We took the pathway up along the crag,  
 which rocky was, narrow and hard to climb,  
 and steeper far than was the one before.  
 Not to seem weak, I talked as on I went;  
 this from the next trench caused a voice to come,  
 which was incapable of forming words. 65
- Though I was on the summit of the arch  
 which crosses here, I know not what it said;  
 but moved to anger seemed the one who spoke.  
 Downward I looked, and yet my living eyes  
 could not attain the bottom for the dark;  
 hence, "Teacher, try to reach the following ridge," 70
- said I, "and let us from the wall descend,  
 for as I hear, but do not understand,  
 so, looking down from hence, I make out nothing." 75
- "No other answer give I thee," he said,  
 "save that of action; for a fair request  
 ought to be met by deeds without a word."
- We climbed down from the bridge's further head,  
 where to the eighth embankment it is joined,  
 and then the trench was clearly shown to me;  
 and in it I beheld a frightful throng  
 of snakes, and of so weird a kind, that still  
 the memory of them freezes up my blood. 80
- Let Libya and her sand no longer boast;  
 for though she breed chelydri, jàculi,  
 with cenchri, phàreeae and àmphisbaenae,  
 ne'er with all Ethiopia did she show,  
 nor e'en with what above the Red Sea lies,  
 either so many or such evil plagues. 85
- Among this cruel and most dismal swarm  
 people were running, nude and terrified,  
 and with no hope of hole or heliotrope.  
 Their hands were bound behind their back with snakes,  
 whose tail and head were thrust between their loins,  
 and tied together in a knot in front. 90

- Then lo, a serpent hurled himself at one,  
who near our bank was standing, and transfix'd him  
there where the neck is to the shoulders joined.100
- Never were o or i so quickly written,  
as he took fire, and, burning up, must needs  
turn wholly into ashes as he fell;  
whereat, though thus destroyed upon the ground,  
the dust, assembling of its own accord,  
turned instantly into the self-same man.105
- So likewise, as great sages have declared,  
the Phoenix dies, and then is born again,  
as she approaches her five-hundredth year;  
she feeds through life on neither herbs or grain,  
but on amòmum only and incense-tears;  
her final swaddling bands are nard and myrrh.110
- And as is he who falls, nor knoweth how,  
by demon force, which pulls him to the ground,  
or other inhibition binding man,  
and who, on getting up again, looks round  
wholly bewildered by the great distress  
which he has felt, and, as he looks, heaves sighs;  
such was that sinner, after he had risen.  
O Power of God, how truly just thou art,  
that in revenge dost deal such blows as these!115120
- Thereat my Leader asked him who he was,  
and he replied: "Into this wild ravine  
I rained from Tuscany not long ago.  
Mule that I was, a beast's life, not a man's,  
I liked; I'm Vanni Fucci, called the Beast;  
for me Pistoia was a worthy den."125
- Then "Tell him not to slip away," I said,  
"and ask what fault thrust him down here; for I  
once saw in him a man of blood and strife."
- The sinner then, who understood, feign'd not,  
but turned toward me both mind and face, and said,  
as with a sudden shame he colored up:  
"That thou hast caught me in the misery  
in which thou seest me, gives me greater pain  
than that which took me from the other life.130135  
I can't refuse what thou dost ask of me.  
I'm placed thus low, because 't was I who robbed  
the vestry known for its fair ornaments;  
a deed once falsely put upon another.  
But now, lest thou enjoy this sight of me,  
if thou art ever out of these dark lands,  
thine ears to my announcement ope, and hear:  
Pistoia first despoils herself of Neri;  
then Florence changes folk and government.  
From Val di Magra Mars draws forth a bolt  
by turbid clouds enveloped; next, with wild  
and cruel storm, a battle will be fought  
upon the Picene Plain; then suddenly140145

the bolt will cleave the mist in such a way,  
that every Bianco will thereby be wounded.  
And this I've said, that it may give thee pain!"

150

Inferno XXV*The Eighth Circle. Fraud**The Seventh Trench. Thieves*

The thief, at the conclusion of his words,  
lifted his hands with both their figs, and cried:  
"Take that, O God, for 't is to Thee I show them!"

From that time onward snakes have been my friends,  
for thereupon one coiled around his neck, 5  
as if to say: "I'd have thee speak no more;"  
another, coiling, tied his arms together,  
and clinched itself so well in front of him,  
that he could make no use of them at all.

Pistoia, ah, Pistoia, why not will  
to burn to ashes, and no longer last,  
since in ill-doing thou excell'st thy seed?  
In all of Hell's dark rings I've seen no spirit  
so arrogant toward God; not even he,  
who fell down headlong from the walls at Thebes. 15

Without another word he fled away;  
whereat I saw a Centaur full of rage  
come crying: "Where, where is the stubborn soul?"  
Not ev'n Maremma has so many snakes,  
I think, as on his crupper that one had, 20  
as far as where our human form begins.  
Upon his shoulders right behind his nape  
there crouched a dragon with wide opened wings;  
and he sets fire to whomsoever he meets.

My Teacher said: "He, yonder, Cacus is,  
who 'neath the rocks that form Mount Aventine  
oft made a lake of blood. He travels not  
along the road o'er which his brethren go,  
because of having fraudulently robbed 30  
the famous herd which he as neighbor had;  
this ended his sly deeds beneath the club  
of Hercules, who may perhaps have dealt him  
a hundred blows, whereof he felt but ten."

While thus he spoke, that sinner, too, made off;  
whereat three spirits came and stood below us,  
whom neither I nor even my Leader noticed,  
until they all cried out: "Who then are ye?"  
because of which our conversation ceased, 35  
for afterward we heeded them alone.  
I knew them not; but so it happened then,  
as it is wont to do in certain cases,  
that one perforce employed another's name,  
saying: "But where can Cianfa have remained?" 40

Hence, that my Leader might give heed, I placed  
my finger in a line from chin to nose.

45

If thou art slow now, Reader, to believe  
what I shall tell, no marvel will it be,  
for I, who saw it, hardly grant I did.

As toward them I was holding up my brows,  
lo, a six-footed serpent hurls itself  
in front of one, and clings to him all over;  
with both its middle feet it clasped his paunch,  
and with its fore feet seized upon his arms;  
then with its teeth it wounded both his cheeks;  
it spread its hind feet out along his thighs,  
and thrusting next its tail between the two,  
it stretched it upward all along his back.

50

Ivy was never rooted to a tree  
so fast, as round about the other's limbs  
that horrible wild creature twined its own.  
And thereupon, as if hot wax they were,  
they stuck together, and their colors mixed,  
till neither seemed to be what it had been;  
just as a browish hue precedes the flame  
on burning paper which is not yet black,  
while, equally, the white part dies away.

55

The other two looked on, and each exclaimed:  
“O me, Agnello, what a change is thine!  
for see, thou now art neither two nor one.”

Already into one had both heads turned,  
when we two countenances still beheld  
mixed in a single face, where both were lost.  
From the four previous strips two arms were made;  
the thighs and legs, the belly and the chest  
became such members as were never seen.  
Cancelled therein was every former aspect;  
the transformed figure seemed both two and none;  
and thus appearing slowly moved away.

70

75

As like a lightning-flash a lizard looks,  
if, changing hedges 'neath the dog-day's scourge,  
across a road it passes; even such  
a little fiery serpent seemed to me,  
as toward the bellies of the other two  
it came, livid and black as peppercorn.  
And in that part through which our nourishment  
is first received, it transfixed one of them,  
and then fell down, stretched out in front of him.  
The pierced man gazed at it, but nothing said;  
nay, firmly on his feet he stood, and yawned,  
as if attacked by fever or by sleep.  
He at the serpent looked, and it at him;  
one through his wound, the other through its mouth  
smoked hard, and each smoke with the other mingled.

80

85

90

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Let Lucan, then, be silent, where he tells<br>of poor Sabellus' and Nassidius' fate,<br>and, giving heed, hear what is now proclaimed.<br>Of Cadmus, and of Arethusa, too,<br>let Ovid cease to speak; for though his verse<br>turn him into a snake, and make of her<br>a fount, I grudge him not; for face to face<br>he ne'er so changed two natures, that the forms<br>of each were ready to exchange their matter.                | 95  |
| They blended each with each in such a way<br>that, while the serpent fork-wise clove its tail,<br>the wounded man together drew his feet.<br>The legs and with them ev'n the very thighs<br>so stuck together, that in little time<br>their juncture left no mark that could be seen.<br>The cloven tail was taking on the shape<br>which there was being lost; the skin of one,<br>meanwhile, was growing soft, and hard the other's. | 100 |
| I saw his arms withdraw into his armpits,<br>and both the serpent's feet, which were not long,<br>lengthen as much, as those were growing short.<br>And then its hinder feet, together twisted,<br>became the member which a man conceals,<br>while from his own the wretch had two thrust forth.                                                                                                                                      | 105 |
| And while the smoke was veiling both of them<br>with novel hues, and generated hair<br>on one side, and deprived of it the other,<br>the one stood up, and down the other fell,<br>nor turned aside for that the impious eyes,<br>beneath which each of them was changing face.                                                                                                                                                        | 110 |
| The one who stood, drew his in toward his temples;<br>and from the excessive matter coming there<br>ears issued on his undeveloped cheeks;<br>and that, which ran not back, but was retained,<br>of this superfluous matter, gave the face<br>a nose, and thickened suitably its lips.                                                                                                                                                 | 115 |
| He who was lying down thrusts forth his muzzle,<br>and backward through his head withdraws his ears,<br>even as a snail doth with its horns; his tongue,<br>which single used to be, and prompt to speech,<br>divides itself, while in the other case,<br>the split one closes, and the smoking stops.                                                                                                                                 | 120 |
| The soul which had become a savage beast<br>flees hissing through the trench; the other spits<br>behind him as he talks. Then, having turned<br>away from him his just created shoulders,<br>he to the third said: "I'd have Buoso run,<br>as I have, on his belly o'er this path."                                                                                                                                                    | 125 |
| I thus beheld the seventh balast change<br>and interchange; here let its novelty<br>excuse me, if it slightly blur my pen.<br>And though somewhat bewildered were my eyes,<br>and though confused my mind, those men could not<br>escape so secretly, that I should fail                                                                                                                                                               | 130 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 135 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 140 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 145 |

Puccio Sciancato perfectly to see;  
and of the three companions who came first,  
he only was not changed; the other one  
was he, for whom, Gavillë, thou dost weep.

150

Inferno XXVI*The Eighth Circle. Fraud**The Eighth Trench. Fraudulent Counselors*

Rejoice, O Florence, since thou art so great,  
that thou dost beat thy wings o'er sea and land,  
while ev'n through Hell thy name is spread abroad!  
Among the thieves five such as these I found,  
thy citizens, whence shame accrues to me,  
nor to great honor risest thou thereby.  
But if the truth be dreamed at dawn's approach,  
thou'l feel a little while from now what Prato,  
of others not to speak, is craving for thee;  
and were it now, it would not be too soon;  
so were it, then, since thus it needs must be!  
for it will grieve me more, the more I age.

5

10

We went away, and up the flight of stairs,  
the bournes had formed for our descent before,  
my Teacher climbed again, and drew me with him;  
and as we followed up the lonely path  
among the rocks and boulders of the crag,  
our feet proceeded not without our hands.

15

I sorrowed then, and now again I sorrow,  
when I direct my mind to what I saw,  
and curb my genius more than I am wont,  
lest it should run when virtue guides it not;  
that, if a kindly star, or aught that's better,  
have blest me, I myself may not regret it.

20

As many glow-worms as the countryman,—  
who on the hillside takes his rest, when he,  
who lights the world, least hides his face from us,  
while to the gnat the fly is giving way,—  
sees down along the valley where, perchance,  
he gathers in his grapes, or ploughs his field;  
with just as many flames the whole eighth trench  
was gleaming bright, as I perceived at once,  
when I was where its bottom came in view.

25

30

As he who by the bears avenged himself,  
beheld Elijah's chariot when it left,  
and when to heaven its horses rose erect,  
since he could not so trace it with his eyes,  
as to see more than just the flame alone,  
when like a little cloud it rose on high;  
of such a nature were the flames that moved  
along the gulley of the ditch, for none  
displays its theft, though each a sinner hides.

35

40

Risen up to look, I so stood on the bridge,  
that without being pushed I would have fallen,  
had I not grasped a great projecting rock.



**IMAGE 5.14: INFERO: CANTO TWENTY-SIX |**  
Dante and Virgil travel through the eighth circle  
of Hell, where sinners are punished for fraud by  
being turned into tongues of fire.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini

**Source:** Digital Dante

**License:** Public Domain

but see thou that thy tongue restrain itself.

Leave speech to me, who have a clear idea  
of what thou wouldest; for they, since Greeks they were,  
might be, perchance, disdainful of thy words.”

After the flame had come so near to us,  
that time and place seemed fitting to my Leader,  
't was in this fashion that I heard him speak:

“O ye that in a single flame are two,  
if I deserved of you, when still alive,  
if I deserved of you or much or little,  
when in the world I wrote the lofty verses,  
depart not; but let one of you inform us  
whither, when lost, he went away to die.”

The greater horn then of the ancient flame  
began to quiver with a murmuring sound,  
as would a flame made weary by the wind;  
and then, while swaying here and there its tip,  
as if the latter were the tongue that spoke,  
gave forth a voice, and said: “When I departed  
from Circe, who concealed me near Gaeta  
more than a year before Aeneas so

45

My Leader, who perceived me thus intent,  
then said: “The spirits are within the fires,  
and each is swathed by that wherewith he burns.”

“My Teacher,” I replied, “I’m more assured  
through hearing thee, but deemed it so already,  
and wished to ask thee: ‘Who is in the flame  
which comes along so cloven at the top,  
that from the pyre it seems to rise, whereon  
Etèocles was with his brother placed?’”

He answered me: “Therein are both Ulysses  
and Diomed tormented, who in pain  
thus go together, as they did in wrath;  
and in that flame of theirs they now bewail  
the ambush of the horse, which made the gate,  
from which the Roman’s noble seed went forth;  
there they lament the trick, because of which  
Deidamia, dead, still mourns Achilles;  
there the Palladium’s penalty is paid.”

“If they can speak within those sparks,” said I,  
“I pray thee, Teacher, much, and pray again  
that mine be worth to thee a thousand prayers,  
refuse not my request to linger here  
until the horned flame come this way; thou see’st  
that toward it I’m inclined by great desire.”

And he replied to me: “Thy prayer deserves  
much praise and therefore I accede to it,

70

but see thou that thy tongue restrain itself.  
Leave speech to me, who have a clear idea  
of what thou wouldest; for they, since Greeks they were,  
might be, perchance, disdainful of thy words.”

60

65

75

80

85

90

- had named the place, nor fondness for my son,  
nor pious reverence for my agèd father,  
nor ev'n the bounden love which should have cheered  
Penelope, could overcome within me  
the eagerness I had to gain experience  
both of the world, and of the vice and worth  
of men; but forth I put upon the deep  
and open sea with but a single ship,  
and with that little company, by whom  
I had not been deserted. Both its shores  
I then beheld, as far away as Spain,  
Morocco and the island of the Sards,  
and all the rest that sea bathes round about. 95  
Both old and slow were I and my companions,  
when we attained that narrow passage-way,  
where Hercules set up those signs of his,  
which warned men not to sail beyond their bounds;  
Seville I left behind me on the right hand,  
Ceuta I'd left already on the other. 100  
105
- And then I said: 'O brothers, ye who now  
have through a hundred thousand perils reached  
the West, to this so short a waking-time  
still left your senses, will not to refuse  
experience of that world behind the sun  
which knows not man! Bethink you of the seed  
whence ye have sprung; for ye were not created  
to lead the life of stupid animals,  
but manliness and knowledge to pursue.' 110  
115
- So eager for the voyage did I make  
my fellows by this little speech of mine,  
that, after it, I hardly could have checked them.  
Hence, to the morning having turned our stern,  
we with our oars made wings for our mad flight,  
e'er veering toward the left as on we sped. 125  
125
- Night was already seeing all the stars  
of the other pole, and our pole so low down,  
that from the ocean's floor it never rose.  
Five times rekindled, and as often quenched,  
had been the light beneath the moon, since first  
we entered on the passage of the deep,  
when lo, a mountain loomed before us, dim  
by reason of the distance, and so high  
it seemed to me, that I had seen none such. 130  
135
- And we rejoiced; but soon our happiness  
was turned to grief; for from the new-found land  
a whirlwind rose, and smote our vessel's prow;  
three times it made her whirl with all the waters;  
then at the fourth it made her stern go up,  
and prow go down, even as Another pleased,  
till over us the ocean's waves had closed." 140

Inferno XXVII*The Eighth Circle. Fraud**The Eighth Trench. Fraudulent Counselors*

The flame, because of having ceased to speak,  
was quiet and erect, and now away from us  
was going with the gentle Poet's leave;  
when lo, another, which behind it came,  
caused us to turn our eyes up toward its tip,  
by reason of a vague sound issuing thence.

5

As the Sicilian bull (which bellowed first  
with the lament of him, and that was right,  
who with his file had given form to it,) 10  
was wont to bellow with the voice of him  
who suffered in it, so that, though of brass,  
it seemed the one who by the pain was pierced;  
even so, since from the body of the flame  
they had nor path nor mouth, the painful words  
were changed at first into the latter's tongue.  
But when these words had travelled to the tip,  
and given it that vibration which the tongue,  
when uttered, gave to them, we heard it say:

15

"O thou, to whom I now address my voice,  
and who just now didst talk in Lombard, saying: 20  
'Now go thy way, for thee I urge no more;'  
though I, perhaps, have somewhat late arrived,  
be not displeased to stop and speak with me;  
thou see'st that I am not, although I burn!  
If into this blind world thou only now  
art fallen down from that sweet Latin land,  
whence all my guilt I bring, pray tell me whether  
the Romagnoles are having peace or war;  
for I came from the mountains 'twen Urbino  
and that high peak from which the Tiber springs." 25  
30

While downward I was leaning still intent,  
my Leader touched me on my side, and said:  
"Speak thou, for this one an Italian is."

And I, who had my answer all prepared,  
began to speak without delay: "O soul, 35  
that art concealed down yonder, thy Romagna  
is not at present, and she never was,  
devoid of war within her tyrants' hearts;  
but I left none apparent there just now.  
Ravenna is, as she for many years  
has been; Polenta's eagle so broods there,  
that Cervia it o'ercovers with its wings.  
The town which made the long resistance once,  
and of the French a sanguinary heap,  
beneath the green paws finds itself again. 40  
Verrucchio's former Mastif and the new,  
who foully with Montagna dealt, there make,  
where they are wont, a gimlet of their teeth.

35

40

45

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| The cities of Lamone and Santero<br>the little lion of the white lair rules,<br>who changes sides from summer-time to winter;<br>and that whose flank is by the Savio bathed,<br>lives, as it sits twixt plain and mount,<br>a free state half, and half a tyranny.<br>And now, I pray thee, tell me who thou art,<br>nor harder be than others here have been,<br>so may thy name maintain itself on earth."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 50  |
| After the flame had roared a little while,<br>as is its fashion, to and fro it moved<br>its pointed tip, and then gave forth this breath:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 55  |
| "If I believed that my reply were made<br>to one who to the world would e'er return,<br>this flame would stay without another quiver;<br>but inasmuch as, if I hear the truth,<br>none e'er returned alive from this abyss,<br>fearless of infamy I answer thee.<br>A man of arms I was, then Cordelier,<br>trusting, since girded thus, to make amends;<br>and certainly my trust had been confirmed,<br>were't not for that High Priest, (whom ill befall!)<br>who set me at my former sins again;<br>both how and why I'd have thee hear from me.<br>While I was still the shape of bones and flesh<br>my mother gave me, my performances<br>were not a lion's, but a fox's deeds. | 65  |
| All covert practices and hidden ways<br>I knew; and I so carried on their arts,<br>that to the ends of earth their fame was noised.<br>When I perceived at last that I had reached<br>that period of my life, when each should strike<br>his sails and coil his ropes, what hitherto<br>had given me pleasure I thereat disliked;<br>I yielded then, repenting and confessing,<br>and that, alas, poor me! would have availed.<br>The Prince of modern Pharisees, who then<br>hard by the Lateran had a war on hand,<br>though not with either Saracens or Jews,<br>for Christian were all enemies of his,<br>and none of them had gone to conquer Acre,                              | 70  |
| or been a merchant in the Soldan's land;<br>not heeding in himself his lofty office<br>and holy orders, or in me the cord,<br>which leaner used to make those girt therewith;<br>but as upon Soracte Constantine<br>once bade Sylvester heal his leprosy;<br>so this one called on me, as master-leech,<br>to cure him of the fever of his pride;<br>he asked me for advice, but I kept still,<br>because his words were like a drunkard's words.<br>And then he said: 'Let not thy heart mistrust;                                                                                                                                                                                   | 75  |
| I from now on absolve thee; teach me, then,<br>how I can Palestrina overthrow.<br>To lock and unlock Heaven is in my power,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 80  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 85  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 90  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 95  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 100 |

- as thou dost know; two, therefore, are the Keys,  
my predecessor held in small esteem.' 105  
 His weighty words then drove me to the point,  
at which the silent course appeared the worse;  
 'Father,' I therefore said, 'since from the sin  
 thou washest me, which I must now commit,  
 a promise long drawn out but shortly kept  
 will cause thy triumph on the lofty seat.' 110  
 Then Francis came for me, when I was dead;  
 but one of our black Cherubs said to him:  
 'Remove him not, and do no wrong to me!  
 Among my menials he must needs descend,  
 because he gave the fraudulent advice,  
 since which till now I've had him by the hair;  
 for who repents not cannot be absolved,  
 nor yet can one at once repent and will,  
 the contradiction not permitting it!' 115  
 O woeful me! O how I shook with fear,  
 when, after laying hold on me, he said:  
 'Perhaps thou didst not think me a logician?'  
 He carried me to Minos, and the latter  
 round his hard back eight times entwined his tail,  
 and when in great rage he had bitten it,  
 'A sinner of the thievish fire is this,' 120  
 he said; hence, where thou see'st me, I am lost,  
 and, thus robed, sorrowing go my way.'
- When he had thus completed his discourse,  
 the flame departed from us with its grief,  
 twisting and lashing its sharp-pointed horn. 130
- I and my Leader then passed further on  
 up o'er the crag, as far as the next arch  
 which spans the ditch, wherein their due is paid  
 to those who burdens win by severing bonds. 135

### Inferno XXVIII

#### *The Eighth Circle. Fraud*

#### *The Ninth Trench. Sowers of Discord*

- Who ever could, ev'n with unfettered words,  
 tell fully of the blood and of the wounds  
 which now I saw, though oft he told the tale?  
 All tongues would certainly fall short of it,  
 by reason of our speech and of our mind,  
 whose means are small for taking in so much. 5

- If all the people should again assemble,  
 who on Apulia's fortune-ravaged soil  
 suffered of old from all the loss of blood  
 shed by the Trojans, and in that long war,  
 which with its spoil of rings made such high heaps,  
 as Livy writes, who maketh no mistakes;  
 with those who felt the painful force of blows  
 received in waging war with Robert Guiscard, 10

- and those whose bones are still heaped up together  
 at Ceperano, where a faithless liar  
 was each Apulian, and near Tagliacozzo,  
 where old Alardo won, though all unarmed;  
 and if, of these, one showed a limb pierced through,  
 and one a limb lopped off, 't would all be nothing,  
 compared with this ninth trench's foul display. 15
- No cask, indeed, by loss of middle-board  
 or stave, is opened as was one I saw,  
 split from the chin to where one breaketh wind;  
 while down between his legs his entrails hung,  
 his pluck appeared, and that disgusting sack,  
 which maketh excrement of what is swallowed. 20
- While I on seeing him was all intent,  
 he looked at me, and opening with his hands  
 his breast, he said: "See now how I am cloven!  
 Behold how torn apart Mahomet is!  
 Ali in tears moves on ahead of me,  
 cloven in his face from forelock down to chin;  
 and all the others whom thou seest here  
 disseminators were, when still alive,  
 of strife and schism, and hence are cloven thus. 30
- There is a devil here behind, who thus  
 fiercely adorns, and to the sword's edge puts  
 each member of this company anew,  
 when we have gone around the woeful road;  
 because, ere one return in front of him,  
 the wounds thus made have all been closed again. 35
- But who art thou, that musest on the crag,  
 perhaps to put off going to the torture  
 adjudged thine accusation of thyself?" 40
- "Death hath not reached him yet," replied my Teacher,  
 "nor to a torment is he led by guilt,  
 but that complete experience may be giv'n him,  
 I, who am dead, must needs conduct him here  
 from circle unto circle down through Hell; 50
- and this is true, as that I speak to thee."
- On hearing him, more were there than a hundred  
 who stopped there in the ditch to look at me,  
 and who through their surprise forgot their pain.
- "To Fra Dolcino do thou therefore say,  
 thou that, perhaps, wilt shortly see the sun,  
 if soon he would not hither follow me,  
 to arm him so with food, lest stress of snow  
 should give the Novarese a victory,  
 which else would not be easily obtained." 55
- When one foot he had raised to go away,  
 Mahomet said these words to me; which done,  
 upon the ground he stretched it to depart.
- Another then, who had his neck pierced through,

his nose cut off as far as 'neath his brows,  
and who had one ear only, having stopped  
to gaze in wonder with the others there,  
opened, before the rest, his throat, whose neck  
vermilion was on every side, and said:

65

"O thou that by thy guilt art not condemned,  
and whom up in the Latin land I've seen,  
unless too great resemblance play me false,  
call Pier da Medicina to thy mind,  
if e'er thou see again the lovely plain,  
which from Vercelli slopes to Marcabò.  
And make it known to Fano's two best men,  
to Messer Guido and Angioletto, too,  
that they, unless foreseeing be in vain  
down here, will from their vessel be cast forth,  
and drowned in sacks near La Cattòlica,  
through a disloyal tyrant's treachery.  
Between the isles Majolica and Cyprus  
Neptune ne'er saw so great a crime committed  
by pirates, nay, nor by the Argolic folk.  
That traitor who sees only with one eye,  
and holds the town, from seeing which, one now  
is with me here, who fain would fasting be,  
will to a conference have them come with him;  
he'll then so act, that 'gainst Focara's wind  
they'll stand in need of neither vow nor prayer."

70

75

80

85

90

And I to him: "Point out and show to me,  
if news of thee thou'dst have me bear above,  
which is the one who had the bitter sight"

Thereat he laid his hand upon the jaw  
of one of his companions, oped his mouth,  
and cried: "This is the one, for he speaks not;  
when exiled, he removed all doubt in Caesar,  
by saying that a man, when once prepared,  
ne'er brooked delay but to his detriment."

95

Oh, how dismayed that Curio seemed to me,  
who from his throat now had his tongue cut out,  
yet once had been so daring in his speech!

100

Then one, from whom both hands had been lopped off,  
raising his maimed arms through the gloomy air,  
so that his blood befouled his face, cried out:  
"Mosca will thou remember, too, who said,  
alas! 'What's done is done!' a speech which proved  
the seed of evil for the Tuscan race."  
"And death" I thereto added, "to thy tribe!"  
Then he, as woe on woe he heaped, went off,  
as one would whom his grief had made insane.

105

110

But I remained to look upon the throng,  
and such a thing I saw as I should be  
afraid to tell of without further proof;  
if it were not that conscience reassures me,  
the good companion which, beneath the breastplate

115

of conscious purity, emboldens man.  
 I really saw, and still I seem to see it,  
 a trunk without a head, which moved along,  
 as moved the others of the mournful herd;  
 and by the hair it held the severed head,  
 which, hanging like a lantern from its hand,  
 was saying as it gazed at us: "O me!"  
 With his own self he made himself a lamp,  
 and two in one they were, and one in two;  
 how this can be, He knows who so ordains.

120

When at the bridge's very foot he was,  
 he raised his arm above him, head and all,  
 that he might thus bring near to us his words,  
 which were: "Now see my baneful punishment,  
 thou that, though breathing, go'st to see the dead!  
 See whether any be as great as this!  
 And that thou with thee mayst bear news of me,  
 know that Bertran de Born I am, the man  
 who gave the youthful king the ill support.  
 Of sire and son I mutual rebels made;  
 Ahithophel by Absalom and David,  
 with his malicious goadings, did no more.  
 Because I severed those who thus were joined,  
 I bear my brain around with me, alas!  
 severed from its foundation in this trunk;  
 retaliation thus is seen in me."

130

135

140

Inferno XXIX*The Eighth Circle. Fraud**The Tenth Trench. Falsifiers of Metals*

The many people and unheard-of wounds  
 had caused my eyes to be so drunk with tears,  
 that fain they were to linger there and weep;  
 but Virgil said: "At what art gazing still?  
 Why is it that thine eyes still rest down there  
 among the wretched mutilated shades?  
 Thou didst not thus when in the other trenches;  
 consider, then, if thou propose to count them,  
 that this trench circles two-and-twenty miles,  
 and that the moon is now beneath our feet;  
 short is the time allowed us still, and more  
 there is to see, than what thou seest here."

5

10

"If thou hadst heeded" I thereat replied,  
 "the reason for my gazing there, thou wouldst,  
 perhaps, have granted me a longer stay."

15

Meantime my Leader on his way was going,  
 and I behind him moving, as I made  
 my answer, adding: "In that hollow place,  
 whereon I kept mine eyes so steadily,  
 I think a spirit sprung from mine own blood  
 bewails the fault so dearly paid for there."

20

- Thereat my Teacher said: "Let not thy thoughts  
hereafter break on him; heed other things,  
and there let him remain; for at the foot  
of that small bridge I saw him point thee out,  
and with his finger fiercely threaten thee;  
Geri del Bello I then heard him called.  
So wholly wast thou then intent on him  
who formerly possessed Hautefort, that thou,  
till he departed, didst not look beyond." 25  
30
- "Leader," said I, "his death by violence,  
which is not yet avenged for him by any  
who shared the shame, made him indignant; that,  
as I believe, was why he went away  
without addressing me; he thus has caused me  
to pity him the more." We thus conversed  
till we had reached the first place on the crag,  
whence, had there been more light, the next ravine  
had to its very bottom been revealed. 35
- When we o'er Malebolge's final cloister  
were situated so, that its lay-brethren  
could be perceived by us, uncouth laments,  
which had their arrow-heads with pity barbed,  
so pierced me through and through, that with my  
hands I closed mine ears. Such pain as there would be,  
if from the hospitals of Val di Chiana,  
Maremma and Sardinia, from July  
until September, all diseases came  
together in one ditch; such was it here;  
and out of it there came a stench, like that  
which out of rotting limbs is wont to come. 40  
45  
50
- Adown the last bank of the lengthy crag  
we went, as ever to the left; and then  
much clearer was my vision toward the bottom,  
wherein the servant of the Most High Lord,  
Justice infallible, is punishing  
the falsifiers she recordeth here. 55
- I do not think it were a sadder sight  
to see the whole race in Aegina sick,  
when so suffused with poison was the air,  
that all the animals, down to the little worm,  
fell dead, and when the ancient race of people,  
according to what poets hold for truth,  
out of the seed of ants restored themselves;  
than now it was, to see the spirits languish  
down in that gloomy ditch in different heaps.  
One on his belly lay, and others leaned  
against each other's shoulders, while another  
crawled on all fours along the dismal path. 60  
65
- Without conversing, step by step we moved,  
both looking at and listening to the sick,  
who could not raise their bodies. Two of these  
I then saw sitting and against each other 70

- leaning, just as a pan against a pan  
is leaned to warm, and spotted o'er with scabs  
from head to foot; and never have I seen  
a curry-comb plied by a boy, for whom  
his master waited, or by one who kept  
awake against his will, as each oft plied  
upon himself the edge of finger-nails  
for the great rage of itching, which hath else  
no help; their nails kept scraping down their scabs,  
as doth a knife the scales of bream, or fish  
of other kinds equipped with larger scales. 75
- “O thou that with thy fingers flay’st thyself,”  
to one of them my Leader then began,  
“and who at times dost pincers make of them,  
pray tell us whether Latin any be  
of those in here, so may thy nails  
suffice thee for thy work eternally.” 80
- “We, both of us, whom thou beholdest here  
so spoiled, are Latin,” answered one who wept,  
“but who art thou that didst inquire of us?” 85
- My Leader thereupon said: “I am one  
who with this living man from ledge to ledge  
descend, and who propose to show him Hell.” 90
- Thereat the common back was broken up,  
and trembling each of them turned round toward me,  
with others who had heard him by rebound.  
Then my good Teacher drew close up to me,  
and said: “Say whatsoe’er thou wilt to them.” 100
- Hence, since he so had wished it, I began:
- “So may your memory never fly away  
from human minds in that first world of ours,  
but rather under many suns survive,  
pray tell me who ye are, and of what people;  
nor let your foul and loathsome punishment  
make you afraid to show yourselves to me.” 105
- “I of Arezzo was; and Albero  
da Siena had me burned;” one then replied,  
“but what I died for doth not bring me here.  
’T is true I said to him, although in jest,  
that I knew how to raise me in the air;  
and he, who, curious, had but little sense,  
wished me to show that art to him; and only  
because I did not make him Daedalus,  
he had me burned by one, who treated him  
as son. But to the last trench of the ten  
Minos, who may not make mistakes, condemned me  
for the alchemy I practised in the world.” 115
- Then to the Poet I: “Now was there ever  
a people as vainglorious as the men  
of Siena? Surely not the French by far!” 120

Whereat the other leprous one, who heard me,  
replied to what I said: "Excepting Stricca,  
who moderation knew in what he spent;  
and Niccolò, who was the first to find  
the costly use of cloves in gardens where  
such seed takes root; excepting, too,  
the company, on whom Càccia d' Asciàn  
wasted his vineyard and great forest land,  
while d' Abbagliato squandered all his sense.  
But so that thou mayst know who backs thee thus  
against the men of Siena, point thine eyes  
toward me, that well my face may answer thee;  
so shalt thou see that I'm Capocchio's shade,  
who metals falsified by alchemy;  
and thou, if well I see thee, shouldst recall  
how good an ape of nature I was once." 130  
135

Inferno XXX*The Eighth Circle. Fraud. The Tenth Trench**Falsifiers of Persons, Money, and Words*

When Juno, on account of Semele,  
was angry with the royal blood of Thebes,  
as several times she showed herself to be,  
so fiercely mad did Athamas become,  
that, when he saw his wife approaching him,  
burdened by her two sons on either side,  
"Spread we the nets," he cried, "that I may take,  
upon their passing, lioness and cubs!" 5  
and thereupon stretched out his cruel claws,  
and taking hold of one, Learchus named,  
whirled him around, and dashed him 'gainst a rock;  
his wife then with the other drowned herself. 10

Again, when Fortune so low down had brought  
the Trojans' arrogant, all-daring power,  
that with their kingdom shattered was their king; 15  
Hecuba, sad, forlorn, and captive now,  
when she had seen her dead Polyxena,  
and in her painful anguish had perceived  
her Polydorus lying on the beach,  
out of her senses, barked as would a dog; 20  
so greatly had her suffering turned her mind.

But ne'er did furies or of Thebes or Troy  
reveal in any one such cruelty,  
in goading beasts or, much less, human limbs,  
as that which I beheld in two death-pale  
and naked shades, who ran around, and bit,  
as doth a boar, when from the sty let out. 25  
One reached Capocchio, and so thrust his tusks  
into his neck behind, that, dragging him,  
he made his belly scrape the solid ground. 30

The Aretine, still trembling, said to me:  
"That imp is Gianni Schicchi who, enraged,  
goes all around ill-treating others thus."

Then "Oh," said I to him, "so may the other  
not fix his teeth in thee, be not too tired  
to tell me who he is, before he 'skips'!"

35

And he to me: "That is the ancient soul  
of wicked Myrrha, who, outside the bounds  
of lawful love, became her father's mistress.  
She came to sin with him by counterfeiting  
another's person in herself, as dared  
the other one who yonder goes away,—  
that he might gain the lady of the stud,—  
to counterfeit Buoso Donati's self,  
and make his will and give it legal form."

40

45

When the two furious souls, on whom my eyes  
were fixed, had passed away, I turned them round  
to look upon the other evil born.

And one I saw, who like a lute were shaped,  
if he had only had his groin cut off  
down in the region where a man is forked.  
The heavy dropsy which unmates the limbs  
in such a way with ill-digested humor,  
that face and paunch no longer correspond,  
was causing him to keep his lips apart,  
as doth the hectic, who, because of thirst,  
turns one lip chinward, and the other up.

50

55

"O ye that are, and wherefore I know not,  
free from all torment in this world of woe,"  
said he to us, "behold, and pay attention  
to Master Adam's wretched misery!  
When living, I had all that I desired,  
and now, alas, I crave a drop of water.  
The little brooks which toward the Arno run  
down from the Casentino's green-clad hills,  
and render all their channels cool and fresh,  
are evermore before me, nor in vain;  
because their image makes me drier far  
than this disease, which strips my face of flesh.  
The rigid Justice, which is scourging me,  
takes from the very place in which I sinned  
the means to give my sighs a greater flight.  
There lies Romena, where I falsified  
the coin on which the Baptist's form is stamped;  
for that I left my body burned above.  
But could I see the woeful soul of Guido,  
or Alexander, or their brother, here,  
for Fonte Branda I'd not give the sight.  
One is in here already, if the shades,  
who go around here raging, tell the truth,  
but what is that to me whose limbs are bound?  
If only I were still so light of foot,  
that I could in a hundred years advance  
one inch, I'd be already on the road,  
in search of him among the loathsome people,  
although this trench goes round eleven miles,  
and is no less than half a mile across.

60

65

70

75

80

85

Through them am I in such a family,  
for they persuaded me to coin the florins,  
which had at least three carats of alloy."

90

Then I to him said: "Who are those two wretches  
who, smoking like wet hands in winter-time,  
are lying there beside thee on thy right?"

"I found them here," he answered, "when I rained  
into this ditch, since when they have not turned,  
nor will, I think, for all eternity.

95

One is the woman who charged Joseph falsely;  
the other, Sinon, Troy's deceitful Greek;  
their burning fever makes them reek like this."

And one of them, who felt aggrieved, perhaps,  
at being named so darkly, smote the speaker  
upon his hard stiff belly with his fist.

100

It made a sound, as it had been a drum;  
then Master Adam smote him with his arm,  
which did not seem less hard, upon his face,  
and said: "Though I of motion be deprived,  
by reason of my limbs which heavy are,  
I have an arm that's loose for needs like this."

105

Then he replied: "When going to the fire  
thou hadst it not so ready; but just so,  
and more, thou hadst it, when thou madest coin."

110

He of the dropsy: "Here thou sayest true,  
but thou wast not so true a witness there,  
where thou wast questioned of the truth at Troy."

"If I spoke falsely, thou didst falsify  
the coin!" said Sinon, "I'm for one sin here,  
and thou for more than any other demon!"

115

"Remember, perjurer, the horse," replied  
he of the swollen paunch, "and bitter be  
for thee, that known it is by all the world!"

120

"Ill be for thee the thirst wherewith thy tongue  
is cracking," said the Greek, "and that foul water,  
which 'fore thine eyes thus makes thy paunch a hedge!"

Thereat the coiner said: "As is its wont,  
thy mouth in speaking evil gapeth wide;  
for though I'm thirsty, and humor stuffs me out,  
thine is the fever and the aching head;  
and thou'dst not stand in need of many words  
bidding thee lick the mirror of Narcissus."

125

On listening to them I was all intent,  
when "Now be careful there!" my Teacher said,  
"for I'm not far from quarrelling with thee."

130

When I thus heard him speak to me in anger,  
such was the shame wherewith I turned to him,

that through my memory it is circling still;  
and such as he who dreameth of his harm,  
and, dreaming, wishes that he dreamt, and thus,  
as if it were not, longs for that which is;  
such I became, who, impotent to speak,  
would fain excuse myself, and all the while  
was doing so, but did not think I was.

135

“Less shame would wash away a greater fault  
than thine hath been;” my Teacher said to me,  
“therefore unburden thee of all thy sadness,  
and count on me as ever at thy side,  
if it again should chance that Fortune find thee  
where folk in such a wrangle are engaged;  
for vulgar is the wish to hear such things.”

140

145

Inferno XXXI*The Edge of the Central Well**The Giants*

One and the selfsame tongue first wounded me,  
so that it colored both my cheeks, and then  
supplied me with the medicine required;  
Achilles’ and his father’s lance, I hear,  
was likewise wont to be the source of, first,  
a sad, and, after, of a grateful gift.

5

We turned our backs upon the woeful vale  
over the bank which girds it round about,  
and passed across without a single word.

Here less than night it was, and less than day,  
so that my sight advanced not far; but here  
I heard a horn give forth so loud a sound,  
that it had rendered any thunder faint;  
this led mine eyes, as counter to its path  
they followed, wholly to a single place.

10

15

After the woeful rout, when Charlemagne  
the holy army of his knights had lost,  
Roland blew not so terrible a blast.

I had not kept my head turned toward it long,  
when many lofty towers I seemed to see;  
I, therefore: “Teacher, say what town is this?”

20

“Since through the darkness from too far away  
thou peerest,” he replied, “it comes about  
that afterward thou errest in conceiving.  
If yonder thou attain, thou’lt clearly see  
how from afar one’s senses are deceived;  
hence onward urge thyself a little more.”

25

Thereat he took my hand with kindly care,  
and said to me: “Ere further on we go,  
so that the fact may seem less strange to thee,  
know, then, that towers they are not, but Giants;

30

and all of them are standing in the well  
around the bank, each from his navel down."

As, when a fog is thinning off, one's gaze  
little by little giveth shape to that,  
which, since it packs the air, the mist conceals;  
even so, as through the dense, dark air I pierced,  
and nearer drew and nearer to the brink,  
error in me took flight, and fear increased;  
for, as upon its round enclosing walls  
Montereggiōne crowns itself with towers;  
thus o'er the margin which surrounds the well  
with one half of their bodies towered up  
those frightful Giants, whom, when from the sky  
he thunders, Jupiter is threatening still.

Already now was I distinguishing  
the face of one, his shoulders and his breast,  
most of his paunch, and, down his sides, both arms.

When Nature ceased from making animals  
like these, and took such executioners  
from Mars, she certainly did very well;  
and ev'n if she of elephants and whales  
repent her not, whoever subtly looks  
holds her therein the more discreet and just;  
for where the reasoning faculty is joined  
to evil will equipped with power to act,  
people can make against it no defence.

His face appeared to me as long and big  
as is at Rome the pine-cone of Saint Peter's,  
and in proportion to it were his other bones;  
so that the bank, which from his middle down  
an apron was, showed quite so much of him  
above it, that of reaching to his hair  
three Frisians would have made a useless boast;  
for I full thirty spans of him perceived,  
down from the place at which one buckles cloaks.

"Rafel mai amech zabi et almi"  
the frightful mouth, to which no sweeter psalms  
were fitting, thereupon began to cry.

Then toward him cried my Leader: "Foolish soul,  
keep to thy horn, and vent thyself therewith,  
when wrath or other passion seizes thee!  
Search at thy neck, and thou wilt find the cord  
which holds it tied, O spirit of confusion,  
and see it lying on thy mighty breast."

To me then: "Self-accused he stands, for this  
is Nimrod, to whose evil thought is due  
that more than one tongue in the world is spoken.  
Let us leave him alone, nor talk in vain;  
for such is every tongue to him, as his  
to others is, for that is known to none."

- Then, turning to the left, we travelled on  
much further; and within a crossbow's shot  
we found the next one far more large and fierce.  
What was the master's power who girded him,  
I cannot say; but this one had in front  
his left arm, and behind his back his right,  
tied by a chain, which downward from his neck  
held him so bound, that on the uncovered part  
it wound around as far as the fifth coil. 85
- My Leader said to me: "Gainst Jove Most High  
this proud soul wished to test his strength, and hence  
hath this reward. Ephialtes is his name;  
his haughty undertaking he attempted  
what time the Giants caused the Gods to fear;  
the arms he plied he moveth now no more." 90
- And I to him: "If possible it be,  
I'd gladly have these eyes of mine enjoy  
experience of the measureless Briareus." 95
- Then he replied: "Antaeus thou'l behold  
not far from here, who speaks, and, since unbound,  
can set us at the bottom of all sin.  
He is much further on, whom thou wouldest see,  
and bound he is, and shaped like this one, save  
that more ferocious in his looks he seems." 100
- Then more than ever yet did I fear death,  
nor for it was there need of more than fear,  
had it not been that I perceived his bonds. 105
- There never was an earthquake strong enough  
to shake a tower with so much violence,  
as Ephialtes quickly shook at this.  
Then more than ever yet did I fear death,  
nor for it was there need of more than fear,  
had it not been that I perceived his bonds. 110
- We thereupon proceeded further still,  
and to Antaeus came, who full five ells,  
beside his head, protruded from the pit.
- "O thou that in the valley fortune-blest,  
which once caused Scipio to inherit glory  
when with his followers Hannibal took flight,  
once tookst a thousand lions as thy prey,  
and who, hadst thou been at thy brethren's war  
on high, it seems that it is still believed  
the Sons of Earth had been the victors there;  
pray set us down below, nor let disdain  
affect thee, where the cold locks up Cocytus.  
Make us not go to Tityus or to Tipheus;  
this man can give what most is longed for here;  
stoop, then, nor twist thy muzzle. He can still  
give fame to thee on earth, since he is living,  
and still looks forward to long life, if Grace  
recall him not untimely to itself." 115
- The Teacher thus; then he in haste stretched out  
the hands, whose mighty pressure Hercules 120
- 125
- 130

once felt, and took my Leader. Virgil then,  
on feeling himself taken, said to me:  
“Come here, that I may take thee up;” and then  
so did, that he and I one bundle were.

135

Such as the Carisenda seems, when viewed  
beneath its leaning side, whene'er a cloud  
sails o'er it so, that opposite it hangs;  
such did Antaeus seem to me, who watched  
to see him stoop, and such a moment' was,  
that I had gladly gone another road.

140

But lightly at the bottom, which devours  
Judas and Lucifer, he set us down;  
nor, thus bent over, did he linger there,  
but raised himself, as on a ship a mast.

145

### Inferno XXXII

#### *The Ninth Circle. Treachery. Cocytus*

##### *Traitors to their Relatives, and to their Country*

If I had rhymes that were as harsh and hoarse  
as would be fitting for the dismal hole,  
on which lean all the other circling rocks,  
I'd squeeze the juice of my conception out  
more fully; but because I have them not,  
not without fear do I resolve to speak;  
for to describe the bottom of the universe  
is not an enterprise wherewith to jest,  
nor for a tongue that says ‘mamma’ and ‘dad’;  
let, then, those Ladies give my verse their aid,  
who helped Amphion build the walls of Thebes,  
that from the facts the telling differ not.

5

10

O rabble, that, ill-born beyond all people,  
are in a place, to speak of which is hard,  
far better had ye here been sheep or goats!

15

When we were down within the gloomy well,  
beneath the Giant's feet, though lower far,  
and I still gazing at its lofty wall,  
I heard one say to me: “Look where thou walkest!  
and see that with thy feet thou trample not  
the heads of us two wretched, weary brothers!”  
Thereat I turned around, and saw before me,  
and 'neath my feet, a lake which, being frozen,  
seemed to be made of glass and not of water.

20

The Danube up in Austria never made  
so thick a veil in winter for its course,  
nor yonder 'neath the cold sky did the Don,  
as what was here; for even if Tambernich  
had fallen on it, or had Pietrapana,  
it had not cracked even at its very edge.

25

30

And as a frog remains, to do its croaking,  
 with muzzle out of water, in the season  
 when oft the peasant dreams that she is gleaning;  
 even so, as far as where one's shame is shown,  
 the woeful shades were livid in the ice,  
 as to the notes of storks they set their teeth.  
 Each kept his face turned downward; from his mouth,  
 the cold, and from his eyes, his saddened heart  
 provides itself a witness in their midst.

35

When I had gazed around a while, I looked  
 down at my feet, and two I saw with heads  
 so close together, that their hair was mixed.

40

"Ye that are pressing thus your breasts together,  
 say who ye are," said I. They bent their necks,  
 and when their faces had been raised toward me,  
 their eyes, moist only inwardly before,  
 gushed upward through the lids; wherat the cold,  
 binding the tears between them, closed them up.

45

A clamp ne'er bound so tightly board to board;  
 wherat, so great the anger mastering them,  
 like two he-goats, they butted one another.

50

And one who had, by reason of the cold,  
 lost both his ears, with face still lowered, said:  
 "Why dost thou mirror thee so much on us?  
 If thou wouldst know who those two near thee are,  
 the valley from which thy Bisenzio flows  
 belonged to their sire Albert and to them.  
 They issued from one body; and thou canst search  
 through all Caina, but thou'l never find  
 a shade more worthy to be fixed in ice;  
 not he, whose breast and shadow broken were  
 by one same blow at Arthur's hand; nor yet  
 Focaccia; nor this fellow here, whose head  
 so blocks me, that I cannot see beyond,  
 and who was Sàssol Mascheroni called;  
 who he was, thou, if Tuscan, now knowst well.  
 And that thou put me to no further speech,  
 know, then, that I was Camicòn de' Pazzi,  
 and that, to excuse me, I await Carlin."

55

60

65

Thereafter I beheld a thousand faces  
 made doglike by the cold; hence frozen ponds  
 cause me to shudder now, and always will.

70

And now, while toward that center we were moving,  
 whereto all heavy objects gravitate,  
 and I was trembling in the eternal cold;  
 I know not whether it were will, or fate,  
 or chance; but as I walked among the heads,  
 hard in the face of one I struck my foot.  
 Weeping he scolded: "Wherefore dost thou smite me?  
 Unless thou comest to increase the vengeance  
 for Mont' Aperti, why dost thou molest me?"

75

80

And I said: "Teacher, wait now for me here,  
that I through him may issue from a doubt;  
then at thy pleasure shalt thou hurry me."

My Leader stopped; and I to him, who still  
was savagely blaspheming, said: "What sort  
of man art thou, that scoldest people so?"

85

"Now who art thou, that goest" he replied,  
"through Antenora, smiting cheeks so roughly,  
that it would be too much, wert thou alive?"

90

"I am alive, and it may profit thee"  
was my reply, "for me to place thy name,  
if fame thou ask, among my other notes."

And he: "I crave the contrary; away  
with thee, and bother me no more; for ill  
dost thou know how to flatter in this bog!"

95

Thereat I seized him by the nape, and said:  
"It needs must be that thou reveal thy name,  
or that no hair remain upon thee here!"

Then he to me: "Though thou pull out my hair,  
I'll neither say, nor show thee, who I am,  
fall thou upon my head a thousand times."

100

I had his hair wrapped round my hand already,  
and more than one shock had I plucked from him,  
while he was barking, with his eyes turned down;  
when here another cried: "What ails thee, Bocca?  
Is making noise with jawbones not enough,  
unless thou bark? What devil touches thee?"

105

"Henceforth" said I, "I would not have thee speak,  
perfidious traitor; for true news of thee  
I'll carry with me to thy lasting shame."

110

"Begone, and tell whate'er thou wilt;" he answered,  
but be not silent, if thou issue hence,  
of him who had just now his tongue so ready.  
He here bewails the money of the French;  
'Him of Duera' thou canst say, 'I saw  
where cold the days are for the sinful folk.'  
And if thou shouldst be asked who else was there,  
thou hast beside thee him of Beccheria,  
who had his gorget cut in two by Florence.  
Gianni de' Soldanier is further on,  
I think, with Ganellon, and Tebaldello,  
who, while its people slept, unlocked Faenza."

115

120

From him we had departed now, when two  
I saw, so frozen in a single hole,  
that one man's head served as the other's cap.  
And as because of hunger bread is eaten,  
even so the upper on the other set

125

his teeth, where to the nape the brain is joined.  
Not otherwise did Tydeus gnaw the temples  
of Menalippus out of spite, than this one  
was gnawing at the skull and other parts.

130

“O thou that shovest by a sign so beastly  
hatred toward him thou eatest, tell me why,”  
said I to him, “on this express condition,  
that shouldst thou rightfully of him complain,  
I, knowing who ye are, and that one’s sin,  
may quit thee for it in the world above,  
if that, wherewith I speak, be not dried up.”

135

Inferno XXXIII*The Ninth Circle. Treachery. Cocytus**Traitors to their Country, and to their Guests*

From his grim meal that sinner raised his mouth,  
and wiped it on the hair of that same head,  
which he had spoiled behind. He then began:

“Thou wouldst that I renew a hopeless grief,  
the thought of which already breaks my heart,  
before I speak of it. But if my words  
are likely to be seeds, and bear the fruit  
of infamy upon the traitor whom I gnaw,  
speaking and weeping shalt thou see together.

5

I know not who thou art, nor by what means  
thou’rt come down here, but when I hear thee speak,  
thou truly seemst to me a Florentine.  
Know, then, that I Count Ugolino was,  
and this man here Ruggieri, the Archbishop;  
and now I’ll tell thee why I’m thus his neighbor.

10

15

That, as the outcome of his evil thoughts,  
I, trusting him, was seized, and afterward  
was put to death, there is no need to say;  
but that which thou canst not have heard, that is,  
how cruel was my death, thou now shalt hear,  
and whether he have wronged me thou shalt know.

20

A narrow slit within the moulting-tower,  
which bears, because of me, the name of Hunger,  
and in whose walls still others must be locked,  
had through its opening shown me many a moon  
already, when I had the evil dream,  
which rent apart the curtain of the future.  
This one therein a lord and huntsman seemed,  
chasing the wolf and wolfings toward the mount  
which hinders Pisans from beholding Lucca,  
with bitches lean and eager and well trained;  
for he had set before him in his van  
Gualandi with Sismondi and Lanfranchi.  
After a little run both father and sons  
seemed weary to me; then methought I saw  
their flanks torn open by sharp-pointed fangs.

25

30

35

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| When, just before the morning, I awoke,<br>I heard my children, who were with me there,<br>sob in their sleep, and ask me for their bread.                                                                                                      | 40 |
| Cruel indeed thou art, if, thinking what<br>my heart forebode, thou grieveſt not already;<br>and if thou weepes not, at what art wont<br>to weep? Awake they were, and now the hour<br>was drawing nigh when food was brought to us,            | 45 |
| hence each, by reason of his dream, was worried;<br>and then I heard the dread tower's lower door<br>nailed up; whereat, without a word, I looked<br>my children in the face. I did not weep,<br>so like a stone had I become within;           |    |
| they wept; and my poor little Anselm said:<br>'Father, thou lookeſt ſo! What aileth thee?'                                                                                                                                                      | 50 |
| But still I did not weep, nor did I answer<br>through all that day, or through the following night,<br>till on the world another sun had dawned.                                                                                                |    |
| Then, when a little beam had made its way<br>into our woeful prison, and I perceived<br>by their four faces, how I looked myself,<br>I bit in anguish both my hands. And they,<br>thinking it done because I craved to eat,                     | 55 |
| immediately stood up, and said to me:<br>'Father, much less shall we be pained, if us<br>thou eat; thou with this wretched flesh didſt clothe us,<br>do thou, then, strip it from us now.' Thereat,<br>to sadden them no more, I calmed myself; |    |
| through that day and the next we all kept mute.<br>Ah, why, hard earth, didſt thou not open up?                                                                                                                                                 | 65 |
| Then Gaddo, when the fourth day we had reached,<br>stretched himself out at length before my feet,<br>and said: "My father, why dost thou not help me?"                                                                                         |    |
| And there he died; and, ev'n as thou ſeest me,<br>between the fifth day and the sixth I ſaw<br>the three fall one by one; and, blind already,<br>I gave myself to groping over each,                                                            | 70 |
| and two days called them, after they were dead;<br>then fasting proved more powerful than pain."                                                                                                                                                | 75 |
| When he had ſpoken thus, with eyes awry,<br>he seized again the wretched ſkull with teeth,<br>which for the bone were strong as are a dog's.                                                                                                    |    |
| Ah, Pisa, foul reproach of those that dwell<br>in that fair country where the ſi is heard;                                                                                                                                                      | 80 |
| since slow thy neighbors are to punish thee,<br>then let Caprara and Gorgona move,<br>and make a hedge across the Arno's mouth,                                                                                                                 |    |
| that every person in thee may be drowned!<br>for though Count Ugolino had the name                                                                                                                                                              | 85 |
| of traitor to thee in thy castle-towns,<br>thou ſhouldſt not thus have crucified his ſons.                                                                                                                                                      |    |
| Their youthful age had made, thou modern Thebes,<br>Brigata and Uguccione innocent,                                                                                                                                                             |    |
| and the other two my canto names above.                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 90 |

- Further along we went, to where the ice  
 roughly enswathes another class of people,  
 not downward turned, but wholly on their backs.  
 Weeping itself allows not weeping there,  
 and tears, which find a barrier in their eyes,  
 turn back, to cause their suffering to increase;  
 because the first ones form a solid block,  
 and thus like crystal visors wholly fill  
 the hollow cup beneath the brow. And though,  
 as in a callous spot,  
 because of cold  
 all feeling had departed from my face,  
 it seemed to me that now I felt some wind;  
 whence I to him: "My Teacher, who moves this?  
 Is not all moving air quenched here below?" 100 105
- And he: "Ere long shalt thou be where thine eyes,  
 seeing the cause which raineth down the blast,  
 will make an answer to thee as to this."
- One of the wretches of the icy crust  
 called out to us thereat: "O souls, so cruel,  
 that unto you the last place is assigned,  
 remove for me the hard veils on my face,  
 that I may somewhat vent the pain that fills  
 my heart, before the tears freeze up again." 110
- Whence I to him: "If thou wouldst have me help thee,  
 say who thou art; and should I not relieve thee,  
 may I needs reach the bottom of the ice!" 115
- Then he: "I Frate Alberigo am,  
 he of the evil garden's fruit, who here  
 for every fig I gave get back a date." 120
- Then "Oh!" said I, "art thou already dead?"  
 And he to me replied: "I have no knowledge  
 how in the world above my body fares.  
 Such is the privilege of this Ptolomèa,  
 that frequently a soul falls into it,  
 ere Atropos have caused it to move on.  
 But that thou scrape more gladly from my face  
 these glassy tears, know, then, that just as soon  
 as any soul betrays, as I betrayed,  
 its body is taken from it by a demon,  
 who then takes charge of it, until its time  
 be all revolved. Into a well like this  
 it rushes headlong down; and so, perhaps,  
 the body of the shade that winters here  
 behind me, is still visible above. 125 130 135
- This thou shouldst know, if just come down, for he  
 Ser Branca d' Oria is, and many years  
 have now gone by, since he was thus shut up."
- "I think" said I, "that thou deceivest me,  
 for Branca d' Oria is not dead as yet,  
 but eats, and drinks, and sleeps, and dons his clothes." 140

"Above us, in the Malebranche's ditch,"  
 he said, "there, where the sticky pitch is boiling,  
 not yet had Michel Zanche's soul arrived,  
 when in his stead this fellow left behind  
 a devil in his body, as did also  
 one of his kinsmen, who with him performed  
 the treachery. But stretch thy hand here now,  
 and ope mine eyes!" And yet I oped them not,  
 for rudeness shown to him was courtesy.

145

150

Ah, Genoese! ye men estranged from all  
 morality, and full of every vice,  
 why from the earth are ye not wholly driven?  
 for with the meanest spirit of Romagna,  
 I found one such of you, that, for his deeds,  
 in soul he bathes already in Cocytus,  
 and seems in body still alive above.

155

Inferno XXXIV

*The Ninth Circle. Treachery. Cocytus*  
*Traitors to their Benefactors. Lucifer*

"The banners of the King of Hell advance  
 toward us; now, therefore, look ahead of thee,"  
 my Teacher said, "and see if thou perceive him."

As, when a heavy fog is breathed abroad,  
 or when at night our hemisphere grows dark,  
 a windmill looks when seen from far away;  
 even such a structure seemed I now to see;  
 then, for the wind, I shrank behind my Leader,  
 for other shelter was there none. I now—  
 and 't is with fear I put it into verse,—  
 was where the shades were wholly covered up,  
 and visible as is a straw in glass;  
 some lying are; and some are standing up,  
 one on his head, the other on his soles;  
 one, like a bow, bends toward his feet his face.

5

10

15

When we had gone so far ahead, that now  
 it pleased my Teacher to reveal to me  
 the Creature who once seemed so beautiful,  
 he stepped from where he was in front of me,  
 stopped me, and said: "Lo Dis, and lo the place,  
 where thou must arm thyself with fortitude!"

20

How frozen and how weak I then became,  
 ask thou not, Reader, for I write it not,  
 because all speech would be of small avail.  
 I did not die, nor yet remained alive;  
 think for thyself now, hast thou any wit,  
 what I became, of both of these deprived.

25

The Emperor of the Realm of Woe stood forth  
 out of the ice from midway up his breast;  
 and I compare more closely with a Giant,  
 than merely with his arms the Giants do;

30

consider now how great that whole must be,  
that with such parts as these may be compared.  
If, once as beautiful as ugly now,  
he still raised up his brows against his Maker,  
justly doth every woe proceed from him.

35

Oh, what a marvel it appeared to me,  
when I beheld three faces to his head!  
One was in front of us, and that was red;  
the other two were to the latter joined  
right o'er the middle of each shoulder-blade,  
and met each other where he had his crest;  
that on the right twixt white and yellow seemed;  
the left one such to look at, as are those  
who come from there, where valeward flows the Nile.

40

Under each face two mighty wings stretched out,  
of size proportioned to so huge a bird;  
sails of the sea I never saw so large.  
They had no feathers, but were like a bat's  
in fashion; these he flapped in such a way,  
that three winds issued forth from him; thereby  
Cocytus was completely frozen up.  
With six eyes he was weeping, and his tears  
and bloody slaver trickled o'er three chins.  
In each mouth, as a heckle would have done,  
a sinner he was crushing with his teeth,  
and thus was causing pain to three of them.  
To him who was in front of us the biting  
was nothing to the clawing, for at times  
his back remained completely stripped of skin.

50

“That soul up there which hath the greatest pain  
Judas Iscariot is,” my Teacher said,  
“who hath his head within, and plies his legs  
without. Of the other two, whose heads are down,  
Brutus is he who from the black snout hangs;  
see how he writhes, and utters not a word!  
Cassius the other is, who so big-limbed  
appears. But night is coming up again,  
and now 't is time to leave, for we've seen all.”

65

Then, as it pleased him, I embraced his neck,  
and he availed himself of time and place,  
and when the wings were opened wide enough,  
he firmly grasped the shaggy flanks, and then  
from tuft to tuft he afterward descended  
between the matted hair and frozen crusts.

70

75

When we were come to where the thigh turns round,  
just at the thick part of the hips, my Leader  
with tiring effort and with stress of breath  
turned his head round to where his legs had been,  
and seized the hair as one would who ascends;  
hence I thought we were going back to Hell.

80

“Hold fast to me, for by such stairs as these”  
panting like one worn out, my Teacher said,  
“must such great wickedness be left behind.”

- Then, through an opening in the rock he issued,85  
 and, after seating me upon its edge,  
 over toward me advanced his cautious step.
- Raising mine eyes, I thought that I should still  
 see Lucifer the same as when I left him;90  
 but I beheld him with his legs held up.  
 And thereupon, if I became perplexed,  
 let those dull people think, who do not see  
 what kind of point that was which I had passed.
- “Stand up” my Teacher said, “upon thy feet!95  
 the way is long and difficult the road,  
 and now to middle-tierce the sun returns.”
- It was no palace hallway where we were,  
 but just a natural passage under ground,  
 which had a wretched floor and lack of light.
- “Before I tear myself from this abyss,100  
 Teacher,” said I on rising, “talk to me  
 a little, and correct my wrong ideas.  
 Where is the ice? And how is this one fixed  
 thus upside down? And in so short a time  
 how hath the sun from evening crossed to morn?”105
- Then he to me: “Thou thinkest thou art still  
 beyond the center where I seized the hair  
 of that bad Worm who perforates the world.  
 While I was going down, thou wast beyond it;110  
 but when I turned, thou then didst pass the point  
 to which all weights are drawn on every side;  
 thou now art come beneath the hemisphere  
 opposed to that the great dry land o’ercovers,  
 and ’neath whose zenith was destroyed the Man,  
 who without sinfulness was born and died;115  
 thy feet thou hast upon the little sphere,  
 which forms the other surface of Judecca.  
 ’T is morning here, whenever evening there;  
 and he who made our ladder with his hair,  
 is still fixed fast, ev’n as he was before.120
- He fell on this side out of Heaven; whereat,  
 the land, which hitherto was spread out here,  
 through fear of him made of the sea a veil,  
 and came into our hemisphere; perhaps  
 to flee from him, what is on this side seen125  
 left the place empty here, and upward rushed.”
- There is a place down there, as far removed  
 from Beelzebub, as e'er his tomb extends,  
 not known by sight, but by a brooklet’s sound,  
 which flows down through a hole there in the rock,130  
 gnawed in it by the water’s spiral course,  
 which slightly slopes. My Leader then, and I,  
 in order to regain the world of light,  
 entered upon that dark and hidden path;

and, without caring for repose, went up,  
he going on ahead, and I behind,  
till through a rounded opening I beheld  
some of the lovely things the sky contains;  
thence we came out, and saw again the stars.

135

Purgatorio I*Introduction to the Purgatorio**The Shore of the Island of Purgatory. Cato*

**IMAGE 5.15: PURGATORIO: CANTO ONE |**  
After leaving Hell, Dante and Virgil encounter Cato the Younger, who says that Dante must clean himself before he can enter Purgatory.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini  
**Source:** Digital Dante  
**License:** Public Domain

To run o'er better water hoists her sails  
the little vessel of my genius now,  
which leaves behind her such a cruel sea;  
and of that second Realm I'll sing, wherein  
the human spirit purifies itself,  
and growtheth worthy to ascend to Heaven.

5

But here let Poetry arise from death,  
since, holy Muses, yours I am; and let  
Callipē, here somewhat higher soaring,  
with those sweet tones accompany my song,  
whose power the miserable Magpies felt  
so keenly, that of pardon they despaired.

10

The oriental sapphire's tender hue,  
now gathering in the sky's unclouded face,  
as far as to the first of circles pure,  
began again to give mine eyes delight,  
when forth I issued from the deadly air,  
which with its gloom had filled mine eyes and heart.  
The beauteous planet which incites to love,  
veiling with light the Fishes in her train,  
was causing all the eastern sky to laugh.

15

Round to the right I turned, and set my mind  
upon the other pole, and saw four stars,  
never perceived, save by the first of men.  
The sky appeared to enjoy their little flames.  
O region of the North, that widowed art,  
because deprived of gazing thereupon!

20

When I had from the sight of them withdrawn,  
turning a little toward the other pole,  
whence now the Wain had wholly disappeared,  
a lone Old Man beside me I perceived,  
deserving of such reverence in his looks,  
that no son owes his father any more.  
Long was the beard he wore, and partly white,  
as likewise was the hair upon his head,  
two locks of which hung down upon his breast.  
And so the rays of those four holy stars  
adorned his face with splendor, that to me course  
he looked as if the sun were facing him.

30

35

"Who, then, are ye, that 'gainst the blind stream's  
have from the eternal Prison escaped?" he said,

40

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| moving the while those venerable locks.<br>“Who led you, or what served you as a lamp,<br>when forth ye issued from the night profound,<br>which makes the infernal Vale forever black?<br>Are broken thus the laws of Hell’s abyss,<br>or through new counsel is there change in Heaven,<br>that ye, though damned, are come to these my cliffs?”                                                                            | 45 |
| My Leader thereupon took hold of me,<br>and with his words and with his hands and signs<br>imposed respect upon my legs and brow.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 50 |
| He then replied: “I came not of myself;<br>from Heaven came down a Lady, at whose prayer<br>I helped this man with my companionship.<br>But since thy will it is that our true state<br>should be explained to thee more clearly, mine<br>it cannot be that this should be denied thee.<br>Not yet hath this man his last evening seen;<br>but through his folly was so near to it,<br>that he was left but very little time. | 55 |
| As I have told thee, I was sent to save<br>his life; nor was there any other way<br>than this, to which I have addressed myself.<br>I’ve shown him all the people who are guilty;<br>and now I mean those spirits to reveal,<br>who ’neath thy jurisdiction cleanse themselves.                                                                                                                                               | 60 |
| Long would it take to tell thee how I led him;<br>virtue descendeth from on high, which helps me<br>lead him to see thee and to hear thee speak.<br>His coming, therefore, please to welcome; Freedom                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 65 |
| he seeks, which is so dear, as knoweth he<br>who gives up life therefor. This thou dost know,<br>since death for its sake was not bitter to thee<br>in Utica, where thou didst leave the robe,<br>which on the Great Day will so brightly shine.                                                                                                                                                                              | 70 |
| The eternal edicts are not void through us;<br>for this man lives, and I’m not bound by Minos;<br>but of that circle am, wherein the eyes<br>of thy chaste Marcia are, O holy breast,<br>whose looks implore thee still to hold her thine;                                                                                                                                                                                    | 75 |
| for love of her, then, yield thee unto us!<br>Permit us through thy seven domains to go.<br>My grateful praise of thee I’ll bear to her,<br>if to be mentioned there below thou deign.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 80 |
| “Marcia so pleased mine eyes,” he then replied,<br>“that, while upon the other side I was,<br>I granted all the favors she desired.<br>Now that she dwells beyond the evil stream,<br>no longer can she move me, by the law                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 85 |
| made at the moment when I issued thence.<br>But if a Lady of Heaven impel and guide thee,<br>as thou hast said, no need of flattering prayers;<br>suffice it thee that for her sake thou ask.<br>Go, then, and see that with a leafless rush                                                                                                                                                                                  | 90 |
| thou gird this man, and that thou wash his face,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 95 |

- so that therefrom all foulness thou remove;  
for 't were not fit he went, with eyes o'ercast  
by any mist, before the first of those  
who serve as Ministers of Paradise.100  
This little isle around its lowest base,  
down yonder where the waves are beating it,  
produces rushes on its yielding ooze.  
No other plant, like one that brought forth leaves,  
or hardened, can maintain its life down there,  
because it yields not when receiving blows.105  
Thereafter be not hither your return;  
the sun, which rises now, will show you how  
to climb the Mountain by the easiest slope."
- Thereat he disappeared; and I arose  
without a word, and to my Leader's side110  
I closely drew, and toward him turned mine eyes.  
And he began: "Son, follow thou my steps;  
let us turn backward, for the shore slopes down  
on this side toward its lowly boundaries."
- The dawn was vanquishing the morning breeze,115  
which fled before it, so that, from afar,  
I recognized the shimmering of the sea.
- We now were going o'er the lonely plain,  
as one who to a road he lost returns,  
and, till he find it, seems to go in vain.120  
When we were there, where with the sun the dew  
still struggles on, through being in a place  
where, for the breeze, it slowly melts away,  
my Teacher, having spread out both his hands,  
rested them gently on the tender grass;125  
whence I, who of his purpose was aware,  
yielded to him the cheeks my tears had stained;  
he then brought all that natural color back,  
which Hell had on my countenance concealed.
- We came thereafter to that lonely shore,130  
which never saw its waters sailed by one  
who afterward experienced a return.  
Here, as the other pleased, he girded me.  
O wondrous sight! For, like the humble plant  
which he had chosen, another instantly135  
sprang forth again from where he tore the first.

### Purgatorio II

*The Shore of the Island of Purgatory*  
*The Angel Pilot and Arriving Souls*

- And now already had the sun arrived  
at that horizon, whose meridian circle  
rests with its zenith o'er Jerusalem;  
and Night, which circles opposite thereto,  
was issuing from the Ganges with the Scales,  
which, when she gains, are falling from her hands;5

so that the white and pure vermillion cheeks  
of beautiful Aurora, where I was,  
were turning orange through excessive age.

Along the seaside we were lingering still,  
like folk who, taking thought about their road,  
go on in heart, but with their body stay;  
when lo, as, at the approach of morning, Mars,  
because of heavy vapors, growtheth red  
down in the West above the ocean's floor;  
even so I saw—may I again behold it!—  
a light which o'er the sea so swiftly moved,  
that no flight is as rapid as its motion;  
from which when I a moment had withdrawn  
mine eyes, to ask a question of my Leader,  
again I saw it grown more bright and large.  
And on each side of it there then appeared  
I knew not what white thing, and underneath  
little by little came another forth.

Meanwhile my Teacher uttered not a word  
until the first white objects looked like wings;  
then, having recognized the Pilot well,  
he cried: "See, see now that thou bend thy knees!  
This is God's Angel; fold thy hands! Henceforth  
shalt thou behold such officers as this.  
See how he so scorns human instruments,  
as to wish neither oar, nor other sail  
than his own wings, between such distant shores!  
See how he holds them straight up toward the sky,  
stroking the air with those eternal plumes,  
which do not moult as mortal feathers do!"

And then, as more and more the Bird divine  
drew near to us, the brighter he appeared;  
therefore mine eyes endured him not near by,  
but down I cast them; with a little boat  
he came ashore, so agile and so light,  
the water swallowed up no part of it.  
Such on its stern the heavenly Pilot stood,  
that he would bless one, were he but described;  
more than a hundred spirits sat within.

"When Israel out of Egypt came," they all  
in unison were singing there together,  
with what is written after in that psalm.  
Then, having signed them with the holy Cross,  
whereat all cast themselves upon the shore,  
he went away as swiftly as he came.

The crowd which stayed seemed strangers to the place,  
and gazed around them there, as doth a man,  
who with unwonted things acquaints himself.

The sun, which from the middle of the sky  
had hunted Capricorn with arrows bright,

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

was shooting forth the day on every side,  
when those new people raised their brows toward us,  
and said: "If ye know how, point out to us  
the road that one should take to reach the Mount."

60

And Virgil answered: "Ye, perchance, believe  
that we have had experience of this place;  
but we are pilgrim-strangers like yourselves.  
We came just now, a little while before you,  
but by another way, so rough and hard,  
that going up will now seem play to us."

65

The souls who, by my breathing, had become  
aware that I was still a living being,  
in their astonishment turned death-like pale;  
and as around a messenger who bears  
the olive, people surge to hear the news,  
and, as to crowding, none of them seem shy;  
so one and all those fortune-favored souls  
fixed on my face their gaze, as if forgetting  
to go and make their spirits beautiful.

70

Then one among them I beheld advance,  
in such a loving manner, to embrace me,  
that it persuaded me to do the like.  
O, save in your appearance, empty shades!  
Three times behind it did I clasp my hands,  
and to my breast therewith as oft returned.

80

With wonder, I believe, I painted me;  
smiling because of this, the shade drew back,  
while, following after, I pressed further on.  
With gentle words he told me to desist;  
then who it was I knew, and begged of him  
to stop a little while and speak with me.

85

"As thee I loved, when in my mortal body,"  
he answered me, "even so, when freed, I love thee;  
therefore I stop; but wherefore goest thou?"

90

"Casella mine," said I, "I take this journey,  
that where I am I may return again;  
but why from thee hath so much time been taken?"

And he to me: "No outrage hath been done me,  
if he, who takes both when and whom he likes,  
hath more than once refused me passage here;  
for to a Righteous Will is his conformed;  
yet peacefully, these three months, hath he taken  
whoever wished to enter into his boat.

95

Hence I, who now was toward the sea-shore bent,  
where Tiber's water mingles with the salt,  
was with benignity received by him  
at yonder river's mouth, toward which his wings  
ev'n now are turned; for those who go not down  
toward Acheron, always assemble there."

100

105

And I: "If some new law take not from thee  
the memory or the practice of the song  
of love, which used to quiet all my longings,  
be pleased a little to console therewith  
my spirit, which, because of coming here  
when in its body, is so sore distressed!"

110

"The love that talketh with me in my mind,"  
he thereupon began to sing so sweetly,  
that still within me is its sweetness heard.

My Teacher, I, and those that with him were,  
seemed as contented, as if none of us  
had any other thing upon his mind.

115

Absorbed in listening to his notes, we all  
were motionless; when lo, the grave Old Man,  
who cried: "Ye laggard spirits, what is this?  
What means this negligence and standing still?  
Run to the Mount, and strip ye off the slough,  
which lets not God be visible to you."

120

Ev'n as, when picking grains of wheat or tares,  
doves, met together at their feeding, calm,  
and not displaying their accustomed pride,  
if anything appear that frightens them,  
all of a sudden leave their food alone,  
because assailed by greater cause for care;  
even so I saw that new-come family  
give up the song, and toward the hillside move,  
like one who goes, but whither knoweth not;  
nor was in less haste our departure made.

125

130

### Purgatorio X

#### *Purgatory. The First Ring. Pride*

#### *Instances of Humility. The Expiation of Pride*

When past the threshold of the Gate we were,  
whose use the evil love of souls impairs,  
because it makes the crooked path seem straight,  
't was by its sound I knew that it had closed;  
and, had I turned mine eyes in its direction,  
what would have fittingly excused my fault?

5

We mounted through a fissure in the rock,  
which moved about to this side and to that,  
as moves a wave that flees and draweth near.  
"A little skill must here be used by us,"  
my Leader then began, "in keeping close,  
now here, now there, to the receding side."

10

This caused our steps to be so slow and short,  
that to her bed the waning moon had gone  
to rest herself again, ere we had issued  
forth from that needle's eye; but when set free  
we were, and in the open up above,  
where back the Mountain's side recedes, I, weary,

15

and both of us uncertain of our way,  
stopped short upon a level place up there,  
more lonely than are roads through desert lands.

20

From where its margin borders on the void,  
up to the foot of that high rising bank,  
would measure thrice a human body's length;  
and far as e'er mine eye could wing its flight,  
now on the right, and now upon the left,  
such did this girding ledge appear to me.

25

Our feet had not been moving on it yet,  
when I perceived the bank surrounding it—  
which, being perpendicular, could not  
be climbed—white marble was, and so adorned  
with carvings, that not only Polyclètus,  
but Nature, too, would there be put to shame.

30

The Angel who to earth came with the word  
of peace, which, wept-for during many years,  
had after its long closure opened Heaven,  
appeared before us there in gentle mien,  
sculptured so truthfully, it did not seem  
that he could be an image that is dumb.  
One would have sworn that he was saying: "Hail!"  
for She was there portrayed in effigy,  
who turned the key that opened Love on high;  
and in her mien and acts she had the words  
"Behold the handmaid of the Lord" impressed  
as clearly as a figure stamped in wax.

35

40

45

"Keep not thy mind on one place only fixed!"  
my gentle Teacher said, who had me there  
on that side of him, where one has his heart;  
I therefore moved my eyes, and further on  
than Mary, on the side where him I had,  
who urged me to go on, I then beheld  
another story graven in the rock;  
passing by Virgil, therefore, I drew near  
so that it might be set before mine eyes.

50

Cut in the marble there the cart and oxen  
were drawing up the holy Ark, which made  
men dread a charge not given them in trust.  
People in front appeared; and all of them,  
forming seven choirs, made one of my two senses  
say "No," and the other one say "Yes, they sing."  
So, too, by reason of the incense-smoke,  
which there was pictured forth, my eyes and nose  
became discordant as to Yes and No.  
The humble Psalmist there, with loins girt up,  
came dancing on, before the blessed Vessel,  
and, doing so, was more and less than king.  
And Michal, opposite to this portrayed,  
was from a palace window looking down,  
as would an angry woman filled with scorn.

55

60

65

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| From where I was, I onward moved my feet,<br>that I might closely note another tale,<br>which after Michal gleamed upon me white.<br>The glorious action of that Roman prince<br>was storied here, whose worth moved Gregory<br>to win his mighty triumph; I refer<br>to Emperor Trajan; at his bridle stood<br>a widow who, in tears, showed signs of grief.<br>The space around him there seemed trampled down<br>and thronged with horsemen, while above his head<br>eagles, it seemed, upon a field of gold<br>were fluttering in the wind. Among all these<br>the sorrowing woman seemed to say: "My lord,<br>avenge me for the slaying of my son,<br>which breaks my heart." And he to answer her:<br>"Wait now till I return." And she, like one<br>whom sorrow makes impatient, said: "But what,<br>my lord, if thou shouldst not return?" And he:<br>"That one will do it, who shall hold my place."<br>"How shall another's goodness help thy case,"<br>she answered him, "if thou forget thine own?"<br>Then he: "Now be thou comforted; for needs<br>must I perform my duty ere I leave;<br>justice so wills, and pity keeps me here." | 70<br>75<br>80<br>85<br>90<br>95<br>100<br>105<br>110<br>115<br>120 |
| He to whose vision naught was ever new,<br>created this seen language, new to us,<br>since not found here on earth. While with delight<br>I looked upon the pictures of such great<br>humilities, which for their Maker's sake<br>are also dear to see, "On this side, lo,<br>much people come, but slow the steps they take;"<br>the Poet murmured, "toward the grades above<br>these souls will send us forward on our way."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 95<br>100                                                           |
| Mine eyes, intent on gazing, to behold<br>new things, for which with eagerness they long,<br>in turning toward him were not slow to move.<br>Yet I'd not have thee, Reader, shrink dismayed<br>from thy good purposes, through hearing how<br>God wills that what is due be paid. Heed not<br>the nature of the torment! Think of what<br>comes after! Think that, at the very worst,<br>beyond the Judgment-day it cannot go.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 105<br>110                                                          |
| Then I began: "That, Teacher, which toward us<br>I see advancing does not look like people,<br>nor know I what, my sight is so deceived."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                     |
| And he to me: "Their torment's heavy nature<br>so bows them toward the ground, that my eyes, too,<br>struggled therewith at first. But steadily<br>gaze there, and disentangle with thine eyes<br>what underneath those stones is coming on;<br>thou now canst see how each one smites himself."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 115<br>120                                                          |

O ye proud Christians, sad and weary creatures,  
 who, sick in mental vision, put your trust  
 in backward moving steps; perceive ye not  
 that worms we are, created but to form  
 the angelic butterfly, which flies unscreened  
 to judgment? Why, then, is it that your mind  
 soars up in pride, since ye are, as it were,  
 defective insects, even as is a worm,  
 in which formation is not yet complete?

125

As, to hold up a ceiling or a roof,  
 in lieu of corbel, one perceives at times  
 a human figure joining knees to breast,  
 which out of unreality gives birth  
 to real distress in him who sees it; such  
 seemed these to me, when I had given good heed.

130

135

They were, in truth, both more and less bowed down,  
 as each had more or less upon his back;  
 but he that in his acts most patient was,  
 seemed to say, weeping: "I can bear no more!"

Purgatorio XI*Purgatory. The First Ring. Pride**The Lord's Prayer. The Proud*

"Our Father, Thou that in the Heavens dost dwell,  
 not circumscribed, but for the greater love  
 Thou hast for what Thou madest first on high;  
 let both Thy Name and Worth be given praise  
 by every creature, ev'n as it is meet  
 that to Thy loving Spirit thanks be given!

5

And may Thy Kingdom's Peace come down to us,  
 since we can not attain it of ourselves,  
 for all our striving, save it also come!

10

As gladly of their wills Thine Angels make  
 a sacrifice to Thee, singing 'All Hail!',  
 so likewise gladly may men do with theirs!  
 Give us this day our daily spirit-food,  
 without which, through this bitter wilderness,

15

he backward goes, who onward toileth most!

And as we pardon every one the wrong  
 we've suffered, of Thy Mercy do Thou us  
 forgive, regarding not what we deserve!

Our virtue which is easily o'ercome,  
 test Thou not through our ancient Enemy,  
 but set us free from him, who tempts it so!  
 This last request, dear Lord, is not, indeed,  
 made for ourselves, who need not make it here,  
 but is for their sake who behind us stayed."

20

Thus praying good speed for themselves and us,  
 those shades beneath a burden went their way,  
 not unlike that whereof one dreams at times,  
 unequally tormented, all of them,

25

and weary, o'er the first ring, round and round,  
purging away the world's defiling mists.

30

If good things there be always said for us,  
what can be said and done on their behalf  
down here, by those whose will is rooted well?  
Surely one ought to help them wash away  
the stains they brought with them, that they may issue,  
cleansed and unburdened, to the starry spheres.

35

"Pray, so may pity and Justice speedily  
unburden you, that ye may move your wings,  
and raise yourselves according to your wish,  
show us on which hand lies the shortest way  
to reach the stairs; and, be there more than one,  
teach us the pass that hath the gentlest slope;  
for, owing to the load of Adam's flesh,  
which clothes his spirit, he who with me comes  
is slow in climbing, though against his will."

40

As to the words, which in reply they said  
to those which he, whom I was following, spoke,  
it was not evident from whom they came;  
but this was said: "Come with us on the right  
along the bank, and ye shall find the pass,  
which may be climbed by one that's still alive.  
And were I not prevented by the stone,  
which tames my haughty neck, and forces me  
to keep my face bowed down, at this man here,  
who liveth still and telleth not his name,  
I'd look, to see if he is one I know,  
and stir his pity for this heavy load.

50

Latin I was, and born to a great Tuscan;  
Guglielmo Aldobrandesco was my father;  
I know not if you ever knew his name.  
My forebears' ancient blood and noble deeds  
caused me to be so arrogant, that I,  
unmindful of our common mother, earth,  
held every man in scorn to such extent,  
I died for it, as well knows Siena's folk,  
and every child in Campagnatico.

55

I am Omberto; nor to me alone  
doth this work ill, for pride hath with itself  
drawn all my kin into calamity.  
And here, for this, must I needs bear this load  
among the dead, till God be satisfied,  
since I among the living bore it not."

60

Listening, I bowed my face; and one of them,  
not he who had been speaking, writhed around  
under the burden which was hampering him;  
and, having seen and recognized me, called,  
and kept his eyes with effort fixed on me,  
who, as I went along with them, was stooping.

70

Then "Oh!" said I, "Art thou not Oderisi,  
the glory of Agobbio and the art,  
which is in Paris called 'illuminating'?"

75

- "Brother," said he, "more smiling are the parchments  
which Franco Bolognese paints; the glory  
is now all his and only partly mine.  
Because of that great longing to excel, 80  
whereon my heart was set, I certainly  
would not have been so courteous while I lived.  
Here is the forfeit paid for pride like this;  
nor should I be here yet, had it not been  
that, while I still could sin, I turned to God. 85  
O empty glory of our human powers,  
how short a time green lasts upon its top,  
unless uncultured ages overtake it!  
Once Cimabùe thought that he would hold  
the field in painting, yet the cry is all 90  
for Giotto now, hence that one's fame is dark.  
Thus hath one Guido taken from the other  
the glory of our tongue; and he is born,  
perhaps, who from the nest will banish both.  
Worldly reputè is but a breath of wind, 95  
which cometh now from here, and now from there,  
and shifts its name, because its quarter shifts.  
What greater fame shalt thou have—if when old  
thou quit thy flesh, than hadst thou died ere 'pap'  
and 'chink' were dropped,—a thousand years from now? 100  
For that, if to eternity compared,  
is shorter than the twinkling of an eye  
is to the sky's most slowly moving sphere.  
All Tuscany proclaimed the fame of him,  
who walks so slowly on the road before me; 105  
yet hardly is a whisper of him left  
in Siena now, whose governor he was,  
what time the rage of Florence was destroyed,  
which then as haughty was, as abject now.  
Your worldly fame is like the hue of grass, 110  
which comes and goes, and he discolors it,  
through whom it springs up tender from the ground."
- And I: "Thy true speech heart'ning me with good  
humility, thou prickst my swollen pride;  
but who is he of whom thou spok'st just now? 115
- "That" he replied, "is Provenzàn Salvani;  
and here he is, because presumptuously  
he brought all Siena under his control.  
Thus hath he gone, and without rest he goes,  
e'er since he died; who yonder dares too much, 120  
in satisfaction pays such coin as this."
- And I then: "If the spirit who delays,  
before repenting, till the verge of life,  
abides below, and cometh not up here,  
unless good prayers assist him, till as long  
a time be passed as he had been alive, 125  
wherefore hath this man's coming been vouchsafed?"
- "When in his greatest glory" he replied,  
"all shame removed, he freely took his stand  
in Siena's Campo; 130

and there, to free a friend  
 suffering in Charles' prison, he brought himself  
 to quake in every vein. I'll say no more,  
 and know that what I say is darkly spoken;  
 but so, ere long, will thine own neighbors act,  
 that thou'l be able to interpret it.  
 This deed of his relieved him from those bounds."

135

Purgatorio XII*Purgatory. The First Ring. Pride**Instances of Punished Pride. The Angel of Humility*

With equal steps, like oxen going yoked,  
 I went along beside that burdened soul,  
 as long as my dear Pedagogue allowed;  
 but when he said: "Leave him, and go thou on;  
 for here 't is well that each should urge his bark  
 with sail and oars, as much as e'er he can,"  
 I straightened me  
 as much as walking called for,  
 although my thoughts kept humble and depressed.

5

On had I moved, and in my Teacher's steps  
 was following willingly, and both of us  
 were showing now how light of step we were,  
 when "Downward turn thine eyes!" he said to me,  
 "Well will it be, to calm thee on thy way,  
 that thou shouldst see the bed thy soles are treading."

10

15

As over those that 'neath them buried lie  
 —that they may be recalled to people's minds—  
 tombs level with the ground the record bear  
 of what they were before; whence there they oft  
 are wept for, through the prick of memory,  
 which spurs to grief the pitiful alone;  
 ev'n so I saw engraved in sculpture here,  
 though finer in respect to workmanship,  
 as much as from the Mount juts out as path.

20

I saw, on one side, Him who once was made  
 nobler by far than any other creature,  
 fall like a flash of lightning down from Heaven.

25

I saw Briareus, on the other side,  
 pierced by an arrow from the sky, lie prone,  
 and heavy on the ground with mortal cold.

30

I saw Apollo, Mars I saw and Pallas,  
 as, still in armor, round their Sire they stood,  
 gazing upon the Giants' scattered limbs.

I saw great Nimrod 'neath his mighty work  
 dumb with confusion, as he watched the folk,  
 who once were proud with him on Shinar's plain.

35

O Niobe, with what sad eyes I thee

saw pictured forth in stone, between thy children,  
the seven and seven thy dead, upon the road!

O Saul, how plainly there on thine own sword  
didst thou seem dead upon Gilbòa's mount,  
which felt thereafter neither rain nor dew!

40

O mad Arachne, thee I saw, as when,  
already half a spider, thou wast sad  
amid the tatters of thy fatal work.

45

O Rehoboam, not a threat seems now  
thy face, but terror-stricken, as away  
a chariot bears thee, lest thou be pursued.

It showed, moreover, that hard pavement did,  
how costly once Alcmaeon caused his mother's  
unlucky ornament to seem to her.

50

It showed how, in the temple's walls, his sons  
cast themselves on Sennacherib, and how,  
when he was dead, they there abandoned him.

It showed the slaughter and the cruel woe  
wrought by Tomyris, when she said to Cyrus:  
“With blood I fill thee, that didst thirst for blood!”

55

It showed, too, how the Assyrians took to flight,  
routed, when Holophernes had been killed,  
and also what was of that slaughter left.

60

I saw proud Troy in ashes and in caves.  
O Ilion, how degraded and how vile  
it showed thou wast, the image there perceived!

What master, or of brush or graving-tool,  
could reproduce the shadows and the features,  
which there would cause all cultured minds to wonder?  
The dead seemed dead, the living seemed alive;  
whoever saw the real, no better saw  
than I then did what I was treading on,  
as long as bowed I walked. Be ye, then, proud,  
and go with haughty looks, ye sons of Eve,  
nor bow your heads, to see your evil path!

65

70

More of the Mountain had we circled now,  
and of the sun's course far more had we spent,  
than my not disengaged mind had supposed;  
when he who always walked attentively  
ahead of me, began: “Lift up thy head!  
The time for going thus absorbed is passed.  
See there an Angel who is making ready  
to come toward us; see how the sixth handmaiden  
returns now from the service of the day.  
With reverence adorn thine acts and face,  
that he may now be pleased to send us up;  
think that this day will never dawn again!”

75

80

So well accustomed was I to his warning,  
that I should never let my time be lost,  
that on this theme he could not darkly speak.

85

Toward us the lovely Creature was advancing,  
arrayed in white, and in his countenance,  
such as, when trembling, seems the morning star.  
His arms he opened, then he oped his wings,  
and said to us: "Come; near by are the steps,  
and going up is easy after this."

90

Only a few to this announcement come.  
O human race, why, born for upward flight,  
fallest thou so before a little wind?

95

He led us on to where the rock was cut;  
and there my forehead with his wings he stroked,  
and promised that my passage would be safe.

100

As, on the right hand, to ascend the mount,  
where seated is the church, which dominates  
the well ruled town o'er Rubaconte's bridge,  
the slope's bold flight is broken by the stairs  
constructed in an age, when quire and stave  
were safe; so, likewise, doth the bank relax,  
which from the next ledge here quite steeply falls;  
but closely on each side the high rock rubs.

105

While, turning thither, we were on our way,  
"Blest are the poor in spirit!" voices sang  
in such a way as words could not describe.

110

Alas! how different are the passes here  
from those in Hell! For one up here goes in  
with songs, but there below with frightful wails!

We now were climbing up the holy stairs,  
and lighter far I felt than formerly  
I seemed to be, when on the level ground;  
I hence said: "Teacher, say, what heavy thing  
has been removed from me, that, as I walk,  
I almost feel no weariness at all?"

115

He answered: "When the P's, which still remain  
almost extinct upon thy brow, are quite  
erased, as one is now, thy feet will so  
be conquered by good will, that they will feel  
not only no fatigue, but it will be  
a pleasure to them to be upward urged."

120

I then did as do those, who go about  
with something on their head they know not of,  
till others' gestures cause them to suspect;  
whereat their hand assists in ascertaining,  
searches, and finds, and so performs the work,  
which cannot be accomplished by their sight;  
and with my right hand's fingers spread I found

130

that only six the letters were, which he  
who held the Keys, had o'er my temples cut;  
on seeing which my Leader smiled with joy.

135

Purgatorio XXI*Purgatory. The Fifth Ring. Avarice and Prodigality**Statius. The Cause of the Earthquake*

The natural thirst, which never can be quenched,  
save by the water asked for by the lowly  
young woman of Samaria as a boon,  
was troubling me, while hurry spurred me on  
behind my Leader o'er the cumbered path,  
and I was grieving for the just revenge.

5

Then lo, as Luke records for us that Christ,  
when risen from the burial cave, appeared  
before the two upon the road, a shade  
appeared, and came behind us as we watched  
the crowd, which lay around us at our feet;  
but we perceived him not; hence he spoke first,  
and said: "May God, my brethren, give you peace!"

10

We turned at once, and to this greeting Virgil  
replied with that which corresponds to it.  
Then he began: "Within the blest assembly  
mayst thou be set at peace by that just court  
which in eternal exile bindeth me."

15

"What?" he replied, as quickly on we went,  
"If ye are shades whom God deigns not on high,  
who guided you so far along His stairs?"

20

My Teacher then: "If thou regard the marks  
which this one bears, and which the Angel draws,  
thou'l see that with the good he needs must reign.  
But whereas she, who spinneth night and day,  
had not as yet drawn off for him the flax,  
which Clotho lays and packs for every one,  
his soul, which sister is to thee and me,  
could not, in climbing here, come up alone,  
because it seeth not as we. Hence I  
out of the ample throat of Hell was drawn,  
to show the way to him, and I shall show it,  
as far as e'er my school can lead him on.  
But tell us, if thou knowest, why the Mountain  
shook so just now, and why all seemed to shout  
with one accord down to its oozy base?"

25

30

35

Thus by his asking he had threaded so  
the needle's eye of my desire, that, merely  
with hope, my thirst had come to be less craving.

The former then began: "Nothing exists  
which this Mount's sacred government can feel,  
that void of order is, or 'gainst its wont.

40

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| From every change this place up here is free;<br>whate'er Heaven's self from its own self receives,<br>can be the cause of it, and nothing else;<br>for neither rain, nor hail, nor snow, nor dew,<br>nor frost falls any higher up than lies<br>the little stairway of the three short steps;<br>clouds neither dense or rarefied appear,<br>nor lightning flashes, nor yet Thaumas' daughter,<br>who often changes quarter in the world.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 45 |
| Dry vapor goes no higher than the top<br>of those three steps whereof I spoke to thee,<br>and on which Peter's vicar hath his feet.<br>Below, perhaps, it trembles more or less,<br>but never quakes up here because of wind<br>concealed, I know not how, inside the earth.<br>It trembles here whenever any soul<br>feels pure enough to rise, or starts to climb;<br>and such a cry as this endorses it.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 50 |
| Of purity the will alone gives proof,<br>which, seizing on the soul, now wholly free<br>to change its company, by willing helps it.<br>It wills this from the first; but that desire<br>which, 'gainst the will, God's Justice turns toward pain,<br>as it was once toward sin, allows it not.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 55 |
| And I, who have five hundred years and more<br>lain in this woe, felt only now within me<br>a free volition for a better sphere.<br>That's why thou didst the earthquake feel, and hear<br>the pious spirits on this Mountain praise<br>that Lord, who soon, I pray, will send them up."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 60 |
| He thus addressed us; and, since one in drink<br>delights, according as his thirst is great,<br>I could not say how much he did me good.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 65 |
| And my wise Leader: "Now I see the net<br>which holds you here, and how it opens, why<br>it trembles here, and why ye all rejoice.<br>Now who thou wast be pleased to let me know,<br>and also let thy words include for me<br>why thou hast lain so many centuries here."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 70 |
| "At that time when, helped by the Most High King,<br>good Titus took due vengeance for the wounds,<br>from which came forth the blood by Judas sold,<br>I was in great renown" that spirit said,<br>"up yonder with the name which longest lasts,<br>and honors most, but not as yet with faith.<br>So sweet my song, that, though a Toulousan,<br>Rome drew me to herself, where I deserved<br>to have my temples crowned with myrtle wreath.<br>Statius they call me still up there; of Thebes<br>I sang, of great Achilles next; but 'neath<br>this second load I sank upon the way.<br>The seeds of my enthusiasm were the sparks,<br>which warmed me, of that fire divine, wherewith<br>more than a thousand poets are enflamed; | 75 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 80 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 85 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 90 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 95 |

I mean the Aeneid, which my mother was  
and nurse in poetry; and, lacking which,  
not by a drachm's weight had I stirred the scales.  
And to have lived on earth when Virgil lived,  
to one sun's period more would I consent  
than what I owe, to issue from my ban."

100

These words turned Virgil toward me with a look,  
which, silently, "Be silent!" said; and yet  
the power that wills can not do everything;  
for tears and laughter follow so the passion,  
from which they each take rise, that least of all  
do they obey the will in those most truthful.  
I only smiled, like one who winks; whereat  
the shade kept still, and looked into my eyes,  
wherein expression is most fixed, and said:  
"So mayst thou bring unto a happy end  
so great a toil, why was it that thy face  
showed me just now the flashing of a smile?"

105

I now am caught on one side and the other;  
one asks for silence, the other conjures me  
to speak; I therefore sigh, and by my Teacher  
am understood. "Be not afraid to talk,"  
the latter said to me, "but speak, and tell him  
what he so eagerly desires to know."

115

I therefore said: "Perhaps thou marvelllest,  
O ancient spirit, at the smile I gave;  
but I would have still greater wonder seize thee.  
This spirit here, who upward leads mine eyes,  
that Virgil is, from whom thou didst of old  
derive the strength to sing of men and gods.  
If thou hast given my smile some other cause,  
leave it as not the true one, and believe  
it was the words thyself didst say of him."

125

Already was he stooping to embrace  
my Teacher's feet; but he said: "Brother, no;  
for thou, a shade now, dost a shade behold."

130

Rising, he said: "Thou now canst understand  
the sum of love which warmeth me toward thee,  
since I forget our disembodied state,  
and act with shades as if they solid were."

135

### Purgatorio XXII

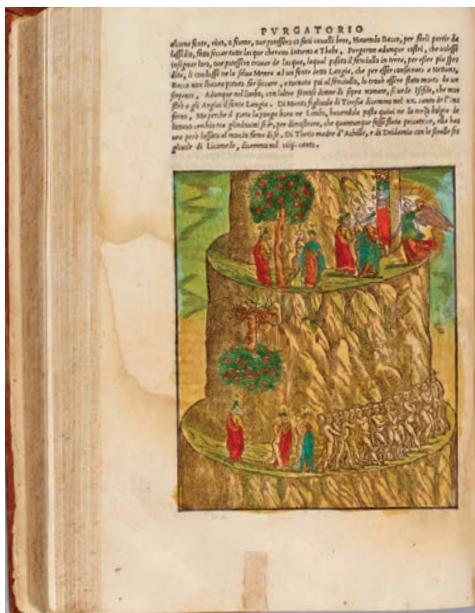
*Purgatory. Statius. The Angel of Justice*

*The Sixth Ring. Gluttony. Instances of Temperance*

Already was the Angel left behind,  
the Angel who had toward the sixth ring turned us,  
after erasing from my face a wound;  
and he had said to us that those are blest,  
whose longing is for justice, and his words,  
with nothing further, ended this with "thirst."

5

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Hence, lighter now than at the other passes,<br>I so advanced, that I, without fatigue,<br>was following up the spirits who were swift,<br>when Virgil thus began: "A love that flames,<br>by virtue kindled, always lights another,<br>if but its flame be outwardly revealed.<br>And therefore from the hour when Juvenal,<br>who let me know thy love for me, came down<br>among us in the Borderland of Hell,<br>my good will hath been such toward thee, that none<br>e'er bound me more to one I had not seen;<br>these stairs will, therefore, now seem short to me.<br>But tell me, and forgive me as a friend,<br>if too great confidence relax my rein,<br>and as a friend converse with me henceforth:<br>how was it avarice could find a place<br>within thy breast together with such wisdom,<br>as that wherewith thou by thy zeal wast filled?" | 10 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 15 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 20 |
| At first these words made Statius smile a little;<br>and then he answered: "Every word of thine<br>is of thy love for me a precious proof.<br>Things, of a truth, quite frequently appear,<br>which offer one false arguments for doubt,<br>because their real occasions are concealed.<br>Thy question makes me sure of thy belief,<br>due, maybe, to the ring where I was found,<br>that I was in the last life avaricious.<br>Know, then, that avarice was too far from me,<br>and that this lack of temperance on my part<br>thousands of courses of the moon have punished.<br>And were it not that I corrected me,<br>when I had understood thee in thy cry,<br>indignant, as it were, with human nature:<br>'Why dost thou not, O virtuous love of gold,<br>govern the appetite of mortal men?'                                                         | 25 |
| I'd now, by rolling, feel the wretched jousts.<br>I then perceived that hands could ope their wings<br>too much in spending, and repented me<br>of that, as well as of my other sins.<br>How many from the grave shall hairless rise<br>through ignorance which, in life and at the last,<br>deprives them of repentance for this fault!<br>Know, too, that any fault which of a sin<br>is just the opposite, together with it<br>drieth its green leaves here. If, therefore, I,<br>to purge myself, have been among the folk<br>who avarice bewail, to me it happened<br>because of what was contrary thereto."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 30 |
| "When thou didst sing, then, of the cruel strife<br>between the two afflictions of Jocasta,"<br>said he who sang bucolic songs, "by that<br>which Clio singeth with thee there, the faith,<br>without which doing good is not enough,<br>had not, it seems, yet made thee a believer.<br>If this be so, what sun, or else what candles                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 35 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 40 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 45 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 50 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 55 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 60 |



**IMAGE 5.16: PURGATORIO: CANTO TWENTY-TWO** | Dante passes through the sixth layer of Purgatory, where gluttony transforms to temperance.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini  
**Source:** Digital Dante  
**License:** Public Domain

And ere in poetry I led the Greeks  
to see the streams of Thebes, baptized I was;  
and yet, through fear, a secret Christian only,  
I long pretended faith in paganism;  
this lukewarmness around the fourth ring moved me  
till far beyond the fourth centennial year.  
Thou, therefore, that didst lift the covering veil  
which hid from me the good whereof I speak,  
tell me, while we have still a little more  
to climb, where our old Terence is, and where  
Cecilius, Plautus, Varro, if thou know;  
tell me if they are damned, and in what ward."

“Both they and Persius, I and many others”  
my Leader answered him, “are with the Greek,  
whom more than any else the Muses nursed,  
in the first circle of the sightless Prison;  
and frequently we talk about the mount,  
which always hath our nurses on its slopes.  
Euripides and Antiphon are there  
with us, Simonides and Agathon,  
and many other Greeks, who once adorned  
their brows with laurel. There, of thine own folk,  
Antigone is seen, Deiphile,  
Argia, and, as sad as once, Ismène.  
There, too, may she be seen, who showed Langia;  
there is Tiresias’ daughter, Thetis also,  
and with her sisters there, Deidamia.”

lightened thy darkness so, that thou thereafter didst set thy sails behind the Fisherman?"

"Thou first didst send me to Parnassus' slopes  
to drink," he said to him, "and then the first  
thou wast, who, next to God, illumined me.  
Thou didst like him, who, when he walks by night,  
a light behind him bears nor helps himself,  
but maketh those that follow after see,  
when thou didst say: 'The age renews itself;  
Justice returns, and man's primeval times,  
as down from Heaven a new-born race descends.'  
Through thee a poet I became, through thee  
a Christian! But, that thou mayst better see  
my sketch, I'll set my hand to color it.

Pregnant already with the true belief,  
sowed by the eternal Kingdom's messengers,  
was every portion of the whole wide world;  
and now thy words, to which I've just referred,  
with these new preachers harmonized so well,  
that I became accustomed to frequent them.  
Thereat so holy did they come to seem,  
that when Domitian persecuted them,  
their lamentations did not lack my tears;  
and while I still remained in yonder world,  
I helped them; and their upright mode of life  
caused me to treat with scorn all other sects.

65

70

75

80

85

100

105

- And now the Poets, both of them, were silent,  
intent again on looking round, since free  
from climbing up and free from walls; and while  
four handmaids of the day had dropped behind,  
the fifth was at the sun-car's pole, still upward  
pointing its burning horn; whereat my Leader:  
“I think that it behooves us now to turn  
our right sides toward the outer edge, and circle  
the Mountain as our wont it is to do.”
- Thus was our custom our instructor there;  
and with less doubt we started on again,  
because of that deserving soul's assent.  
In front they went, and I behind, alone,  
listening the while to what they had to say,  
which gave me understanding for my verse.
- But soon their pleasant talk a Tree broke off,  
which in the middle of the road we found,  
with fruit agreeable and sweet to smell;  
and as a fir-tree tapers up from branch  
to branch, so likewise this one tapered down,  
in order, I believe, that none may climb it.  
And on the side on which our path was closed,  
down from the lofty cliff a limpid stream  
was falling, and spraying upward o'er its leaves.
- Then toward the Tree the two Bards turned their steps;  
and from among its leaves a voice cried out:  
“Of this food there will be for you a dearth!”  
Then: “More did Mary think of honoring,  
the marriage feast, and making it complete,  
than of her mouth, which pleadeth now for you;  
the ancient Roman women were content  
with water for their only drink; and Daniel  
thought little of his food, but wisdom gained.  
The primal age was beautiful as gold;  
with hunger it made acorns sweet to taste,  
and nectar every little brook, with thirst.  
Honey and flying locusts were the food  
which fed the Baptist in the wilderness;  
hence he is now as glorious and as great,  
as by the Gospel is revealed to you.”

Purgatorio XXVI*Purgatory. The Seventh Ring. Lust**Instances of Natural and of Unnatural Lust*

- While thus, one 'fore the other, 'long the edge  
we went, and my good Teacher often said:  
“Attention pay; and let my warning help thee!”  
the sun, which with its rays was changing now  
from azure all the western skies to white,  
was on my right side striking me; and I  
was with my shadow giving to the flame  
a brighter red; I noticed many shades

- give heed to this small sign, as on they moved.  
 This was what started them to speak of me;  
 and they began to say among themselves:  
 "That one seems not to have an unreal body."  
 Then some of them, as far as possible  
 drew near to me, though always with due care  
 not to come out where they would not be burned. 10  
 15
- "O thou that goest on behind the rest,  
 though not from sloth, but from respect, perhaps  
 reply to me, who burn with thirst and fire!  
 Nor is by me alone thine answer needed;  
 for all these here have greater thirst therefor  
 than Indians or Ethiopians for cold water.  
 Inform us how it is that with thyself  
 thou makest thus a wall against the sun,  
 as if thou hadst not entered death's snare yet." 20  
 25
- Thus one of them addressed me; and at once  
 had I declared myself, had I not heeded  
 another novelty which then appeared;  
 for through the middle of the flaming road  
 folk with their faces turned the other way  
 came on, and made me stop to gaze at them.  
 There all the shades on every side I see  
 make haste, and, without stopping, kiss each other,  
 with this short form of greeting satisfied. 30  
 35
- Thus one ant from among its dark host touches  
 its muzzle to another's, to obtain,  
 perhaps, directions as to path or fortune.
- As soon as they leave off their friendly greeting,  
 and ere the first step has been taken there,  
 each struggles to outcry the other shade;  
 the new-come band shouts: "Sodom and Gomorrah!"  
 the other: "In the cow Pasiphaë  
 reclines, that to her lust the bull may run." 40  
 45
- Thereat, like cranes,—if some of them should fly  
 toward the Riphæan heights, and toward the sands  
 the rest, these shunning ice, and those the sun,—  
 one band departs, the other comes along;  
 and weeping to their previous song they turn,  
 and to the cry which best befitteth them.  
 Then those same shades who had entreated me,  
 drew near to me, as they had done before,  
 with eagerness to listen in their looks. 50  
 55
- And I, who twice had seen what they desired,  
 began: "O souls, who now are sure of having,  
 whenever it may be, a state of peace,  
 my body's members have not stayed beyond,  
 either unripe or ripe, but with their blood,  
 and with their joints are really with me here.  
 I hence go up, to be no longer blind.  
 On high a Lady wins us Grace, whereby

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| I carry through your world my mortal part.<br>But, so may your best wish be soon fulfilled,<br>in order that that heaven may shelter you,<br>which, full of love, is amplest in its spread,<br>tell me, that I may rule more paper for it,<br>both who ye are, and what is yonder crowd,<br>which onward goes its way behind your backs."                                                                                          | 60  |
| A mountaineer becomes not otherwise<br>confused, nor, looking round, grows dumb,<br>when, rough and wild, he enters first a town,<br>than each shade did in its appearance there;<br>but, when set free from that astonishment,<br>which soon diminishes in high-born hearts,<br>the one who questioned me before resumed:<br>"Happy art thou, that shippest thus experience<br>of these our bounds, that better thou mayst live!" | 70  |
| The people who come not along with us,<br>in that offended, for which Caesar once<br>when triumphing heard 'Queen' cried out against him;<br>from us they therefore separate with cries<br>of 'Sodom,' and by self-reproach assist,<br>as thou hast heard, the burning by their shame.                                                                                                                                             | 75  |
| Our sin was intersexual; but, since we,<br>by following our appetites like beasts,<br>failed to conform ourselves to human law,<br>to our confusion, when we leave the others,<br>her name we cry, who bestialized herself<br>by lying in the beast-resembling frame.                                                                                                                                                              | 80  |
| Thou knowest now our deeds, and what our guilt;<br>if who we are thou'dst know, perhaps, by name,<br>there is no time to tell, nor could I do it.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 85  |
| As to myself, I'll rid thee of thy wish;<br>I'm Guido Guinizelli, and purge me now,<br>because of grieving well before the end."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 90  |
| As in Lycurgus' anguish those two sons<br>became, when they again beheld their mother,<br>ev'n such did I, though I went not so far,<br>when him I heard self-named, who father was<br>to me and others, better men than I,<br>who e'er made sweet and graceful rhymes of love;                                                                                                                                                    | 95  |
| hence, lost in thought, nor hearing aught or speaking,<br>I moved, and long I gazed at him in wonder,<br>but, for the fire, no nearer drew to him.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 100 |
| When I with looking had been fully fed,<br>I put myself entirely at his service<br>with those assurances which win belief.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 105 |
| And he: "Thou leav'st in me a memory,<br>from what I hear, so great and plain, that Lethe<br>can neither wipe it out nor make it dim.<br>But, if thy words swore what was true just now,<br>tell me: why hast thou by thy speech and looks<br>revealed to me that thou dost hold me dear?"                                                                                                                                         | 110 |

And I to him: "T was those sweet rhymes of yours  
which, while the modern form of speech endures,  
will e'er endear to me their very ink."

"Brother," he said, "he whom I indicate,"  
(he pointed at a spirit on ahead)  
was of his mother tongue a better smith.  
In love-songs and in stories of romance  
he vanquished all; hence let those fools talk on,  
who think the Limousin excelleth him.  
To rumor, rather than to truth, they turn  
their faces, forming their opinions thus,  
ere art or reason have by them been heeded.  
Thus with Guittone many ancients did,  
giving, from cry to cry, to him alone  
the prize, until with most the truth prevailed.  
If now so amply privileged thou art,  
that lawful is thy going to the cloister,  
where Christ is Abbot of the brotherhood,  
a Pater-noster say to Him for me,  
or all of it that we in this world need,  
wherein no longer it is ours to sin."

And then, perhaps to yield his place to one  
near by him there, he vanished through the fire,  
as to the bottom would a fish through water.

Toward him who had been pointed out I moved  
a little way, and said that my desire  
was for his name a gracious place preparing.

"Your courteous question" he, unurged, began,  
"delighteth me so much, that I can not,  
nor do I wish to, hide myself from you.  
Arnaut am I, who, going, weep and sing;  
with sorrow my past folly I behold,  
and see with joy the hoped-for coming day.  
Now by the Power which guides you to the top  
of this short flight of stairs, I beg of you  
be mindful in due time of this my pain!"

Then in the fire refining them he hid.

### Purgatorio XXX

#### *Terrestrial Paradise. Lethe*

#### *Appearance of Beatrice. Disappearance of Virgil*

When the Septentrion of the highest heaven,—  
which never either setting knew, or rising,  
or veil of other mist than that of guilt,  
and which was causing every creature there  
to know his duty, as the lower one  
makes him who turns the helm to reach a port,—  
stopped suddenly; the people of the truth,  
who first had come between it and the Griffon,  
turned around toward the Car, as toward their peace;  
and one of them, as though from Heaven sent down,

115

120

125

130

135

140

145

5

10

sang thrice aloud: "Come thou from Lebanon,  
my spouse!" and all the rest sang after him.

As at the last trump-call each of the blest  
will quickly rise from out his tomb, and sing  
the Halleluiah with a voice regained;  
even so there rose upon the Car divine,  
at such an elder's voice, a hundred servants  
and message-bearers of eternal life.  
They all were saying: "Blest be thou that comest!"  
and, strewing flowers on high and all around,  
"Oh, scatter forth your lilies with full hands!"

15

I've seen ere now when day began to dawn,  
the eastern skies all rosy, and the rest  
adorned with beauty and serenity;  
and then the sun rise with its face o'ershadowed  
in such a way that, through the tempering  
of mists, the human eye could long endure it;  
so likewise standing in a cloud of flowers,  
which rose from angel hands, and fell again  
within and out the Car, a Lady, crowned  
with a wreath of olives o'er a pure white veil,  
appeared before me, 'neath a cloak of green,  
clothed with the color of a living flame.

25

My spirit hereupon, which for so long  
a time had not been trembling in her presence,  
or felt itself all broken down with awe,  
with no more knowledge of her by mine eyes,  
but through a hidden virtue issuing from her,  
felt the great power of the olden love.

30

As soon as that high virtue smote my sight,  
which formerly had pierced me through and through,  
ere I had passed beyond my boyhood's years,  
round to the left I turned me with the trust  
wherewith an infant to its mother runs,  
whenever terrified or in distress,  
to say to Virgil: "Less now than a drachm  
of blood remains in me that is not trembling;  
I feel the tokens of the olden flame."

40

45

But Virgil now had left us of himself  
deprived, Virgil, my dearest father, Virgil,  
to whom for my salvation I had giv'n me;  
nor yet did all our ancient mother lost  
avail to keep my cheeks, though cleansed with dew,  
from turning dark again because of tears.

50

"Dante, though Virgil leave, weep thou not yet,  
weep thou not yet; for thou wilt need to weep  
by reason of another sword than this."

55

Even as an admiral, who, both on stern  
and prow, comes to behold the men that serve  
on the other ships, and urge them to do well;

60

so likewise on the left side of the Car,  
when I had turned around me at the sound  
of mine own name, which here must needs be mentioned,  
I saw the Lady who had first appeared  
concealed beneath the Angels' festival,  
direct her eyes toward me across the stream.

65



**IMAGE 5.17: PURGATORIO: CANTO THIRTY |**  
In this illustration, Dante is criticized by Beatrice for loving other women after her death, and they both observe the griffin.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini  
**Source:** Digital Dante  
**License:** Public Domain

But when I heard in their sweet harmonies  
the sympathy they had for me, far more  
than had they said: "Why, Lady, shame him so?"  
the ice bound tightly round my heart was turned  
to breath and water, and through mouth and eyes  
issued with anguish from my inmost breast.

95

Then she, still standing motionless  
upon the same side of the Car, addressed  
those sympathetic creatures with these words:

100

"Ye keep your watches through the eternal day,  
so that nor night nor slumber robs from you  
one step the world may take upon its course;  
my answer, hence, is made with greater care,  
that he, who yonder weeps, may understand,  
and guilt and sorrow of one measure be.

105

Not only through the work of those great spheres,

Although the veil, which from her head hung down,  
encircled by Minerva's olive leaves,  
did not allow her to appear distinctly;  
she went on royally, still stern in mien,  
as one doth who, when speaking, holdeth back  
his warmest words: "Look at us well, for we,  
indeed, are, we, indeed, are Beatrice!  
How wast thou able to approach the Mountain?  
Didst thou not know that man is happy here?"

70

75

My lowered eyes fell on the limpid stream;  
but when I saw myself reflected there,  
I drew them to the grass, so great the shame  
that weighed my forehead down! As to her child  
a mother seems severe, so she to me,  
for bitter tastes the savor of harsh pity.

80

Silent she kept, then suddenly the Angels  
chanted: "In Thee, Lord, have I set my trust,"  
but further than "my feet" they did not go.

Even as the snow among the living beams  
grown on the back of Italy is frozen,  
when blown and hardened by Slavonian winds;  
and then, when melting, trickles through itself,  
if but the land that loses shadows breathe,  
and thus seems like a fire that melts a candle;  
ev'n so was I with neither tears nor sighs,  
before the song of those who ever tune  
their notes to music of eternal spheres.

85

90

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| which to some end directly guide each seed,<br>according as the stars are its companions;<br>but through the bounty of the Grace divine,<br>which for its rain hath clouds so very high,<br>our eyes cannot approach them; this one here<br>was such potentially in early life, | 110 |
| that all right dispositions would have had<br>wondrous results in him. But all the more<br>malign and savage doth a soil become,<br>when sown with evil seed and left untilled,<br>the better and more vigorous it is.                                                          | 115 |
| I for a while sustained him with my face;<br>and showing him my youthful eyes, I led him<br>along with me turned in the right direction.<br>But when the threshold of my second age                                                                                             | 120 |
| I reached, and changed my life, he took himself<br>away from me, and gave him to another.                                                                                                                                                                                       | 125 |
| And when from flesh to spirit I had risen,<br>and beauty and virtue had increased in me,<br>less dear and pleasing was I then to him;<br>and o'er an untrue path he turned his steps,                                                                                           | 130 |
| following deceitful images of good,<br>which naught that they have promised pay in full.<br>Nor yet did it avail me to obtain                                                                                                                                                   |     |
| the inspirations, wherewith both in dreams<br>and otherwise I called him back; he cared<br>so little for them! So low down he fell,                                                                                                                                             | 135 |
| that short were now all means for his salvation,<br>save showing him the people that are lost.                                                                                                                                                                                  |     |
| I visited the Gateway of the dead<br>for this, and unto him who guided him                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 140 |
| up hither, fraught with tears, my prayers were borne.<br>God's high, fate-ordered Will would broken be,                                                                                                                                                                         |     |
| if Lethe should be passed, and should such food<br>be tasted without paying first the scot                                                                                                                                                                                      | 145 |
| of penitence made manifest by tears."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |     |

### Paradiso I

*Introduction to the Paradiso. Invocation of Apollo. Ascent*

*through the Sphere of Fire. The Order of the Universe*

The Glory of Him who moveth everything,  
penetrates all the Universe, and shines  
more brightly in one part, and elsewhere less.

Within the Heaven which most receives His Light  
I was; and saw what he who thence descends  
neither knows how, nor hath the power, to tell;  
for as it draweth near to its Desire,  
our intellect so deeply sinks therein,  
that recollection cannot follow it.

5

As much, however, of the holy Realm  
as in my memory I could treasure up,  
shall now become the subject of my song.

10

O Good Apollo, for my final task

- make me as worthy a vessel of Thy Power,  
as Thou dost ask for Thy dear laurel's gift.  
One of Parnassus' peaks hath hitherto  
sufficed me; but with both of them I now  
must start upon the course which still remains.  
Enter my breast, and breathe Thou as of old  
Thou didst, when from the scabbard of his limbs  
Thou drewest Marsyas forth. 15
- O Power Divine,  
if Thou but lend Thyself to me so much,  
that I may show the blessed Kingdom's shadow  
which in my mind is stamped; to Thy dear tree  
Thou'l see me come, and crown me with the leaves  
my theme and Thou shall cause me to deserve.  
So seldom, Father, are there any picked,  
to grace a Caesar's or a Poet's triumph,  
(the fault of human wills, and to their shame),  
that His Peneian leaf should bring forth joy  
within the Joyous Delphic Deity,  
when for itself it causes one to thirst. 25
- A great flame follows from a little spark;  
perhaps with better voices after me  
shall men so pray, that Cyrrha will reply. 30
- For mortal men the lantern of the world  
rises through divers passes; but from that  
which with three crosses brings four rings together,  
it issues on a more propitious course,  
and in conjunction with a kinder star,  
and more in its own image moulds and seals  
the mundane wax. A pass almost like this  
had made it morning there and evening here;  
and all that hemisphere was white, and black  
the other side; when Beatrice I saw  
turned toward her left, and looking at the sun;  
no eagle ever gazed at it so keenly. 40
- And even as from the first a second ray  
is wont to come, and upward start again,  
as would a pilgrim longing to return;  
even so to her act, by mine eyes infused  
through my imagination, mine conformed;  
and on the sun I gazed beyond our wont. 45
- Much is permitted there, which is not here  
allowed our faculties, thanks to the site  
created as the human race's home. 50
- Not long did I endure it, nor so briefly,  
as not to see it sparkle all around,  
as molten iron doth, when out of fire  
it issues boiling; day then all at once  
seemed joined to day, as if the One who can  
had with another sun adorned the sky. 55
- 60

- With eyes fixed wholly on the eternal wheels  
 stood Beatrice; and I on her fixed mine,  
 from there above removed. Looking at her,  
 I such became within, as Glaucus did  
 on tasting of the herb, which in the sea  
 made him a fellow of the other Gods. 65
- Transhumanizing could not be expressed  
 by words; let this case, therefore, him suffice,  
 for whom Grace holds experience in reserve. 70
- If I, O Love that rulest Heaven, was only  
 that part of me, which Thou didst last create,  
 Thou know'st, that with Thy Light didst raise me up. 75
- When the rotation Thou, by being longed for,  
 dost make eternal, drew me to itself  
 by harmonies distributed and tuned  
 by Thee, it seemed that so much of the sky  
 was by the sun's flame set on fire, that rain  
 nor river ever made so broad a lake. 80
- The newness of the sound, and brilliant light  
 kindled in me a wish to know their cause,  
 never with so great keenness felt; whence she,  
 who saw me ev'n as I behold myself,  
 opened her mouth to calm my troubled mind,  
 ere I did mine to question, and began: 85
- "With false imagining dost thou so dull  
 thyself, that thou perceivest not what else  
 thou wouldest perceive, if thou hadst thrown it off.  
 Thou'rt not on earth, as thou dost think thyself;  
 but lightning fleeing from its proper place  
 ne'er ran as thou, that art thereto returning." 90
- If I was by her little smiled-out words  
 of my first doubt relieved, within a new one  
 was I the more ensnared; I therefore said:  
 "Already sated, I had found repose  
 from great amazement; but I wonder now  
 how I can these light elements transcend." 95
- Heaving, thereat, a pitying sigh, she turned  
 her eyes upon me with the look a mother  
 gives her delirious child; and then began: 100
- "All things, whate'er they be, an order have  
 among themselves; and form this order is,  
 which makes the Universe resemble God.  
 Therein exalted creatures see the trace  
 of that Eternal Worth, which is the end  
 for which the mentioned order is created.  
 Within the ordered state whereof I speak,  
 all natures have their place with different lots,  
 as nearer to their source they are, or less;  
 wherefore toward different ports they wend their way 105
- 110

through the vast sea of being, each endowed  
with instinct, granted it to bear it on.  
This instinct toward the moon impelleth fire;  
this is the motive force in mortal hearts;  
this binds together and unites the earth;  
nor doth this bow impel those creatures only  
which lack intelligence, but those that have  
intelligence and love. The Providence  
which ordereth all this, with Its own Light  
e'er calms the heaven, inside of which revolves  
the one that moveth with the greatest speed.  
And thither now, as to a place ordained,  
that bowstring's power is bearing us along,  
which to a glad mark speeds whate'er it shoots.

115

'T is true that, as a form is frequently  
discordant with the intention of an art,  
because its matter in response is deaf;  
so likewise from this natural course at times  
a creature turns away; for power it hath,  
though thus impelled, to bend aside elsewhere,  
(as one may see fire falling from a cloud),  
if, by false pleasure drawn, that primal impulse  
turn it aside to earth. If well I judge,  
no further shouldst thou wonder at thy rising,  
than at a stream thou dost, which to its foot  
down from a lofty mountain's top descends.  
As great a marvel would it be in thee,  
if, rid of hindrance, thou hadst sat thee down,  
as rest, on earth, would in a living flame."

120

125

130

135

140

Then toward the sky she turned her face again.

### Paradiso II

*The First Heaven. The Moon. Reflected Happiness*

*Inconstant Spirits who failed to keep their Vows*

O ye who, in a little boat embarked,  
have, fain to listen, followed in the wake  
of this my ship, which, singing, ploughs ahead,  
go back to see your shores again! Start not  
upon the ocean; for, if me ye lost,  
ye might, perhaps, be left behind astray.

5

The seas I sail were never crossed before;  
Minerva breathes, Apollo is my guide,  
and all nine Muses point me out the Bears.

Ye other few, who early raised your necks  
for Angels' bread, on which one here on earth  
subsists, but with which none are ever sated,  
ye well may start your vessel on the deep  
salt sea, if in the furrow of my ship  
ye stay, ere smooth again the waves become.

10

Those glorious ones, who crossed the seas to Colchis,  
were not so much amazed, as ye shall be,  
when Jason turned a ploughman they beheld.

15

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| The innatè and ceaseless thirsting for the Realm<br>in God's own image made, was bearing us<br>as swiftly as ye see the heavens revolve.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 20 |
| On high looked Beatrice, and I on her;<br>and in the time, perhaps, an arrow takes<br>to light, and fly, and from the notch be freed,<br>I saw that I had come to where a marvel<br>turned to itself my sight; hence she, from whom<br>the working of my mind could not be hid,<br>as glad as she was lovely, turned toward me,<br>and said: "Direct thy grateful mind to God,<br>who with the first star hath united us." | 25 |
| Meseemed as if a cloud were covering us,<br>as luminous and dense, as hard and polished,<br>as is a diamond smitten by the sun.<br>Within itself the eternal pearl received us,<br>as water, though unbroken it remain,<br>receives within itself a ray of light.                                                                                                                                                          | 30 |
| If body I was (nor can one here conceive<br>how one dimension could endure another,<br>which needs must be, if body enter body),<br>the more should we be kindled by the wish<br>that Essence to behold, wherein is seen<br>how once with God our nature was conjoined.<br>Th're will be seen, what here we hold by faith,<br>not demonstrated, but will self-known be,<br>as is the primal truth which men believe.       | 40 |
| "My Lady," I replied, "as best I can<br>do I devoutly render thanks to Him,<br>who from the mortal world hath severed me.<br>But tell me what this body's dark spots are,<br>which cause the folk down yonder on the earth<br>to tell each other fables about Cain."                                                                                                                                                       | 45 |
| She smiled a little, then she said: "If mortals'<br>opinion therein errs, where key of sense<br>unlocketh not, surely the shafts of wonder<br>ought not to pierce thee now;<br>for thou perceivest<br>that short are Reason's wings, when following sense.<br>But tell me what thou think'st thereof thyself."                                                                                                             | 55 |
| And I: "What seems to us diverse up here,<br>is caused, I think, by bodies thin and dense."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 60 |
| And she: "Thou'l surely see that thy belief<br>is sunk in error, if but well thou heed<br>the arguments I'll now oppose to it.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |    |
| The eighth sphere shows you many shining stars,<br>which both in quality and magnitude,<br>may be observed to differ in their looks.<br>If only rarity and density                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 65 |

caused this, among them all one single virtue  
would more, and less, and equally be shared.  
Virtues that differ needs must be the fruit  
of formal principles, and these, save one,  
would, by thy way of reasoning, be destroyed. 70

Again, if thinness caused the dusky spots  
which thou dost ask about, this planet would,  
in portions, through its bulk its matter lack,  
or, as a body what is fat and lean  
distributes, so would this one alternate  
its volume's leaves. If true the former were,  
't would in the sun's eclipses be revealed,  
because the latter's light would then shine through, 80  
as when in other thin things introduced.  
This does not happen; hence the other one  
must be considered now; and should I chance  
to quash it, false will thy opinion prove.

If, therefore, it be so that this thin part  
extends not through, a limit there must be,  
beyond which what is contrary thereto  
allows it not to pass; the other's ray  
is, hence, reflected, as color from a glass  
returns, which back of it concealeth lead. 85

Thou'l now say that the ray seems dimmer there  
than in the other parts it is, because  
from further back reflected. From this retort  
experimenting, which is wont to be  
the fountain of the rivers of your arts, 90  
can, if thou ever try it, set thee free.

Thou'l take three mirrors; two of them removed  
at equal distance from thee, let the third,  
placed 'twen them, more remotely meet thine eyes.  
Then, turning toward them, let a lamp stand so  
between them, as to shine upon all three, 95  
and be reflected on thee from them all.  
Though the most distant light will not extend  
so much in quantity, thou'l see thereby  
how it must needs with equal brightness shine. 100

And now, as at the stroke of burning rays,  
what lies beneath the snow is wholly bared  
of what were previously its cold and color;  
thee, thus remaining in thine intellect,  
will I inform with such a living light, 105  
that it will quiver when thou seest it.

Within the heaven of Peace Divine revolves  
a body, subject to whose influence lies  
the being of whatever it contains.  
The next, which hath so many eyes, distributes  
that being 'mong the different essences, 115  
distinguished from it, and contained by it.  
The other spheres, by various differences,  
dispose to their effects and causes those  
distinctions which within themselves they have.  
These organs of the world so go their way, 120  
as thou perceivest now, from grade to grade,

that from above they take, and downward act.  
 Give me good heed, as through this argument  
 I seek the truth thou wishest, that henceforth  
 thou mayst know how to cross the ford alone.  
 The holy circles' influence and motion,  
 as from the blacksmith doth the hammer's art,  
 must from the blessed Motors be inspired;  
 and that heaven which so many lights adorn,  
 receives its impress from the Mind profound,  
 which turneth it, and makes thereof a seal.  
 And as the soul which lives within your dust  
 unfolds itself through members, which are different,  
 and unto different potencies conformed;  
 so likewise, multiplied among the stars,  
 doth that Intelligence unfold its goodness,  
 while on its unity itself revolves.  
 Each different power a different alloy makes,  
 mixed with the precious body which it quickens,  
 and with which it unites, as life in you.  
 Because of that glad nature whence it flows,  
 the mingled virtue through the body shines,  
 as, through a living pupil, joy. From this  
 comes what 'tween light and light a difference seems,  
 and not from rarity and density;  
 this is the formal principle which makes,  
 according to its strength, things dark and bright.

Paradiso III*The First Heaven. The Moon. Reflected Happiness**Inconstant Spirits who failed to keep their Vows*

That sun which erst had warmed my heart with love,  
 by proving and refuting, had revealed  
 to me the pleasing face of lovely truth;  
 and I, in order to confess myself  
 corrected and assured, lifted my head  
 as high as utterance of assent required.

But, that I might behold it, there appeared  
 a sight, which to itself so closely held me,  
 that my confession I remembered not.

Even as from polished or transparent glasses,  
 or waters clear and still, but not so deep,  
 that wholly lost to vision is their bed,  
 the features of our faces are returned  
 so faintly, that upon a pallid brow  
 a pearl comes no less faintly to our eyes;  
 thus saw I many a face that longed to speak;  
 I therefore ran into the fault opposed  
 to that which kindled love 'tween man and fount.

As soon as I became aware of them,  
 supposing they were mirrored images,  
 to find out whose they were, I turned mine eyes;  
 and seeing nothing, back again I turned them

straight on into the light of my sweet Guide,  
whose holy eyes were glowing as she smiled.

“Be not surprised” she said, “that I should smile  
at what is childish in thy present thought,  
since on the truth it trusts not yet its foot,  
but, as its wont is, turneth thee in vain.  
Real substances are these whom thou perceivest,  
assigned here for a vow not wholly kept.  
Speak to them, then, and hear them, and believe;  
for from Itself the True Light which contents them,  
permits them not to turn their feet away.”

And I addressed me to the shade which seemed  
most eager to converse, and I began,  
like one confounded by too great desire:

“O well-created spirit, that in rays  
of life eternal dost that sweetness taste,  
which never is, untasted, understood,  
't will grateful be to me, if thou content me  
with thine own name, and thy companions' lot.”

Hence promptly and with laughing eyes she said:  
“Not otherwise doth our love lock its doors  
against a just desire, than that Love doth,  
who wills that all His court be like Himself.  
A virgin sister was I in the world;  
and if within itself thy mind look well,  
my being fairer will not hide me from thee,  
but thou wilt recognize that I'm Piccarda,  
who, placed here with these other blessed ones,  
am happy in the slowest moving sphere.  
Our wishes, which are only set on fire  
by that which is the Holy Spirit's pleasure,  
rejoice in that our joy was willed by Him.  
And this allotment, which appears so low,  
is therefore giv'n to us, because our vows  
neglected were, and not completely kept.”

Hence I to her: “In these your wondrous faces  
there shines I know not what that is divine,  
which from your old appearance changes you;  
hence in remembering you I was not quick;  
but what thou now dost tell me helps me so,  
that I more easily recall thy face.  
But, tell me, ye who here so happy are,  
are ye desirous of a higher place,  
that ye may see more friends, or make you more?”

First with those other shades she smiled a little,  
and then replied to me so joyously,  
that she appeared to burn with love's first fire:

“Brother, love's virtue sets our will at rest,  
and makes us wish for only what we have,  
and doth not make us thirsty for aught else.”

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

60

65

70

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| If higher we desired to be, our wishes<br>would be discordant with the will of Him,<br>who here discerneth us, which, thou wilt see,<br>can in these circles not occur, if love<br>be necessary to existence here,<br>and if love's nature thou consider well.<br>Nay more, essential to this blessed life<br>it is, that we should be within the Will<br>Divine, whereby our wills become one will;<br>and so, even as we are, from grade to grade<br>throughout this Realm, to all the Realm is pleasing,<br>as to its King, who in His Will in-wills us;<br>and His Will is our Peace; and that<br>the Ocean is, whereunto moveth all<br>that It creates, and all that Nature makes."           | 75  |
| Clear was it then to me that every where<br>in Heaven is Paradise, and yet the Grace<br>of Good Supreme rains there in many ways.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 80  |
| But as it happens that, if one food sate,<br>and longing for another still remain,<br>for one we ask, and one decline with thanks;<br>even thus with word and act did I, to learn<br>from her what was the nature of the web,<br>whose shuttle she drew not unto its end.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 85  |
| "High worth and perfect life in-heaven" she said,<br>"a lady higher up here, in whose rule<br>the robe and veil are worn, that, till death come,<br>both watch and sleep they may beside that Spouse,<br>who every vow accepts, which love conforms<br>to that which pleases Him. To follow her,<br>when I was but a girl I fled the world,<br>and in her habit clothing me, I promised<br>that I would keep within her order's path.<br>Thereafter men more used to ill than good,<br>out of that pleasant cloister dragged me forth,<br>and God knows what my life was after that.                                                                                                               | 90  |
| This other splendor also, which reveals<br>itself to thee upon my right, and glows<br>with all the radiance of this sphere of ours,<br>takes to herself what of myself I say;<br>a nun she was, and likewise from her head<br>the shadow of the sacred veils was torn.<br>But when she, too, was brought back to the world<br>against her wishes and against good usage,<br>she never from the heart's veil freed herself.<br>This is the splendor of the great Costanza,<br>who by the second Wind of Swabia gave<br>the third and final Power birth." She thus<br>addressed me, and thereat 'Ave, Maria'<br>began to sing, and, singing, disappeared,<br>as through deep water heavy objects do. | 95  |
| Mine eyes which followed after her as far                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 100 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 105 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 110 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 115 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 120 |

as it was possible, on losing her,  
back to the mark of greater longing turned,  
and unto Beatrice reverted wholly;  
but she so flashed upon me, as I gazed,  
that first my sight endured it not; and this  
the slower made me in my questioning.

125

130

Paradiso IV*The First Heaven. The Moon. Reflected Happiness**Inconstant Spirits who failed to keep their Vows*

A free man, 'tween two viands equally  
attractive and removed, would die of hunger,  
before he carried either to his teeth;  
thus would a lamb, between the ravenous  
of two fierce wolves, keep fearing each alike;  
thus would a dog remain between two does.

5

Hence, by my doubts impelled in equal measure,  
if I was silent, I reproach me not,  
nor do I praise, since thus it had to be.  
I held my peace; but my desire was painted  
upon my face, and far more warmly thus  
I asked, than had it been by uttered speech.

10

Hence Beatrice did ev'n as Daniel once,  
when in Nebuchadnezzar he appeased  
the wrath, which had unjustly made him cruel;  
and "Clearly do I see" she said, "how both  
thy wishes so attract thee, that thy thought  
is so self-bound, that it is not expressed.  
Thou arguest thus: 'If my good will endure,  
why doth the violence of others cause  
the measure of my merit to be less?'  
Again it gives thee cause for doubt, that souls  
seem to return unto the stars again,  
according to the opinion Plato held.  
These are the questions which upon thy will  
are thrusting equally; I'll hence deal first  
with that one which hath most of venom for thee.

15

20

25

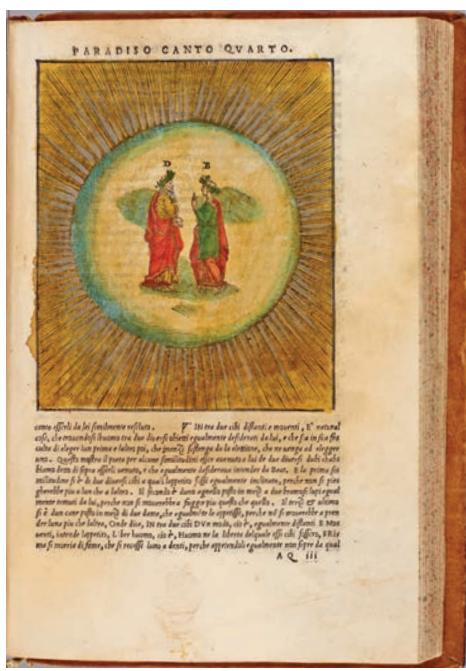
Of all the Seraphs he who most in-Gods  
himself, or Moses, Samuel, or, I say,  
whichever John thou choose, or even Mary,  
have in no other heaven their seats, than have  
those spirits which appeared to thee just now,  
nor for their being more or fewer years;  
but all make beautiful the highest sphere,  
and each in different ways enjoys sweet life,  
through feeling more and less the Eternal Breath.  
They did not here reveal themselves, because  
this special sphere had been allotted them,  
but to express the lowest heavenly state.

30

35

Thus must one speak to your intelligence,  
since only from sense-objects can it learn

40



**IMAGE 5.18: PARADISO: CANTO FOUR |** Beatrice and Dante face one another and discuss free will.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini

**Source:** Digital Dante

**License:** Public Domain

and not heretical depravity.

But here, because your human understanding  
can penetrate this truth with ease, I'll now,  
as thou desirest, render thee content.

If violence it be, when he who suffers  
contributes naught to him who uses force,  
these souls were not excused because of that;  
for will, unless it willetteth, is not quenched,  
but acts as Nature acts in fire, though turned  
a thousand times aside by violence;  
for, whether it be bent or much or little,  
it yieldeth to the force; and so did these,  
when able to regain the holy place.

For if their will had been as absolute  
as that which held Lorenzo on his grate,  
or that which to his hand made Mutius cruel,  
it would, as soon as freed, have urged them back  
along the road o'er which they once were dragged;  
but wills as firm as that are very rare!  
And by these words, if thou hast gathered them,  
as it behooved thee to, that doubt is quashed,  
which often would have troubled thee again.

But now athwart thine eyes another pass  
appears, one such, that from it by thyself  
thou wouldest not issue, but wouldest weary first.  
I surely have instilled this in thy mind,

what it thereafter fits for understanding.  
Because of this the Scriptures condescend  
to your capacity, and feet and hands  
ascribe to God, and yet mean something else;  
and Holy Church in human form presents  
Gabriel and Michael to you, and the other,  
who to Tobias once restored his health.

That which Timaeus teaches of the soul  
is not like that which one up here beholds,  
for, as he says it, so he seems to mean.  
He says that each soul to its star returns,  
because he thinks that it was severed thence,  
when Nature granted it as form; and yet  
his doctrine is, perhaps, of other guise,  
than what his words imply, and may possess  
a meaning which is not to be despised.  
In case he mean that to these wheel-like spheres  
returns their influence's praise or blame,  
his bow may hit, perhaps, upon a truth.  
This principle, ill understood, once turned  
nigh all the world awry, so that, in naming  
Jove, Mercury and Mars, it went astray.

The other doubt whereby thy mind is stirred,  
less venom hath, because its harmfulness  
could not conduct thee elsewhere from my side.  
That this our Justice should appear to be  
unjust in the eyes of mortals, argues faith,

45

50

55

60

65

70

75

80

85

90

- that spirits who are happy could not lie,  
since such are always near the Primal Truth;  
yet from Piccarda thou mayst next have heard  
that Constance for the veil retained her love;  
she, therefore, seems to contradict me here.95  
Oft hath it happened, brother, heretofore,  
that, to escape from danger, one has done,  
against one's will, what was not right to do;  
as, at his father's hest, Alcmaeon did,  
who impious made himself, his mother killing,100  
in order not to fail in piety.105  
In such a case I'd have thee think that force  
mingles with will, and that they so behave,  
that sinful actions cannot be excused.  
Absolute will consenteth not to wrong,  
but in so far consenteth, as it fears,110  
unless it yield, to be more greatly harmed.  
Hence, when Piccarda puts the matter thus,  
she means it of the will that's absolute,  
and of the other I; hence both speak true.
- Such was the rippling of the holy stream,115  
which issued from the Fount whence every truth  
derives; and such, it set both doubts at rest.
- "O thou belovèd of the Primal Lover,  
O goddess," said I then, "whose speech both warms  
and inundates me so, that more and more120  
it quickens me with life, not deep enough  
is my love to return thee grace for grace;  
but let Who sees and can, provide for this.  
I well see that our mind is never sated,  
unless it be illumined by the Truth,125  
outside of which no truth extends. Therein  
it rests, as doth a wild beast in its lair,  
as soon as it attains it; and it can  
attain it; else would all desires be vain.
- Hence like a shoot doubt rises at the foot  
of truth; and this is Nature, which from height  
to height impels us toward the mountain's top.130
- This biddeth me, and this assurance gives me,  
Lady, with reverence to inquire of you  
about another truth that's dark to me.135  
I wish to know if one can so content you  
for broken vows by means of other things,  
that these shall not prove light upon your scales."
- Then Beatrice looked at me with her eyes  
filled so divinely with the sparks of love,  
that, overcome, my vision turned in flight,  
and I with bowed eyes almost lost myself.140

Paradiso XX*The Sixth Heaven. Jupiter. The Happiness of Justice**Just Princes. Faith and Salvation. Predestination*

**IMAGE 5.19: PARADISO: CANTO TWENTY |**  
Heavenly souls form shapes with their bodies, eventually transforming into an eagle, one of the symbols of ancient Rome.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini

**Source:** Digital Dante

**License:** Public Domain

along its neck, as if it hollow were.

A voice it there became, and through its beak it issued forth in words, such as the heart whereon I wrote them down, was longing for.

"That part of me which sees, and braves the sun, in mortal eagles," it began again, "must now be looked upon attentively, for of the fires wherewith I shape me, those wherewith the eye is sparkling in my head, the highest are of all their ordered grades.

He that as pupil in the middle shines, was once the singer of the Holy Spirit, who bore the Ark about from town to town; he now knows how deserving was his song, so far as it resulted from his will, by the reward proportioned to its merit.

Of five that make a circle for my brow, the spirit nearest to my beak was he, who comforted the widow for her son; he now knows by his personal experience

When he who sheddeth light on all the world so far below our hemisphere descends, that daylight fades away on every side, the sky, once lighted up by him alone, is quickly rendered visible again by many lights, whereof one only shines; and I this happening in the sky recalled, when silent in the blessed beak became the Standard of the world and of its leaders; for, brighter far, those living lights commenced songs which have fled and fallen from my mind.

O thou sweet Love, that with a smile dost cloak thee, how ardent in those flutes didst thou appear, whose only breath was that of holy thoughts!

After those precious and pellucid jewels wherewith I saw the sixth great light engemmed, had brought to silence their angelic chimes, I seemed to hear the murmur of a brook, which, flowing limpid down from rock to rock, reveals the abundance of its mountain-springs.

And as a sound takes from a cittern's neck its form, even as the air that enters it doth from the vent-hole of a shepherd's pipe, so, all delay of waiting laid aside, that murmur of the Eagle mounted up

of this sweet life and of its opposite,  
how dear it costs one not to follow Christ.

In the circumference of which I speak,  
he that comes next upon the rising arc,  
delayed his death by genuine repentance;  
he now knows that Eternal Justice brooks  
no change, whenever worthy prayers below  
to-morrow's make of that which was today's.

50

The one who follows, with the laws and me,  
with good intentions which produced bad fruits,  
made himself Greek by ceding to the Shepherd;  
he now knows that the ill, from his good deed  
derived, is not a cause of harm to him,  
although thereby the world may be destroyed.

55

He whom thou seest in the downward arc,  
the William was, for whom that country mourns,  
which weeps because its Charles and Frederick live;  
he now knows how Heaven loves a righteous king,  
and by his splendor's glow reveals it still.

60

Who in the erring world below would think  
that Ripheus the Trojan was the fifth  
among the holy lights which form this curve?  
He now knows many of the things the world  
is impotent to see in Grace Divine,  
although his sight discerneth not its depths.

65

Like a young lark which, as it soars through space,  
first sings, and then is silent, satisfied  
with the last sweetness which contented her;  
such seemed to me the image of the seal  
of that Eternal Pleasure, by whose will  
each thing becometh what it is. And though,  
with reference to my doubt, up there I was,  
as glass is to the color which it clothes,  
it could not bear to bide its time in silence;  
but by the very force of its own weight  
urged from my mouth the words, "What things are  
these?" whereat I saw a glorious feast of sparkling.

75

Thereafter, with its eye the more enkindled,  
the blessed Sign, in order not to keep me  
in wondering suspense, replied to me:  
"I see that thou believest all these things,  
because I say them, but dost not see how;  
and therefore, though believed in, they are hidden.  
Thou dost as one who fully knows a thing  
by name, but cannot see just what it is,  
unless another make it manifest.

80

Regnum Coelorum suffers violence  
from burning love, and from a living hope,  
which vanquishes the Will Divine; though not  
as man o'ercometh man, but conquers it

90

95

because it willeth to be overcome;  
and so, though vanquished, by its goodness wins.

- The first life in the eyebrow, and the fifth  
cause thee to be amazed, because therewith  
thou see'st the region of the Angels painted. 100  
They did not issue Gentiles from their bodies,  
as thou dost think, but Christians, with firm faith,  
one in the Feet that were to suffer, one,  
in those that had. For one, to claim his bones,  
came back from Hell, where no one ever wills  
the good again; and this was the reward  
of living hope; of living hope which put  
its trust in prayers addressed to God to raise him,  
that thus his will might have a chance to act. 105  
110
- The glorious soul I speak of, when the flesh  
had been regained, wherein he stayed not long,  
believed in Him, who had the power to help him;  
and through belief so warmed to genuine love,  
that he was worthy at his second death  
to come to this festivity. The other, 115  
through grace from so profound a spring distilled,  
that never hath the eye of any creature  
reached its first wave, set all his love below  
on righteousness; hence God, from grace to grace,  
to our redemption which is still to be, 120  
opened his eyes; he hence believed in it,  
and afterward endured no more the stench  
of Paganism; and for it he rebuked  
those who perverted were. And those three Ladies  
thou sawest at the right wheel of the Car, 125  
in lieu of baptism, were as sponsors for him  
more than a thousand years ere baptism was.
- O thou Predestination, how remote  
are thy foundations from the sight of those  
who do not see the First Cause as a whole! 130
- And ye, O mortals, keep yourselves in check,  
when judging men; for we, who God behold,  
know not as yet all those that are elect;  
and pleasant is such ignorance to us, 135  
because our good is in this good refined,  
that what is willed by God, we also will.”
- Thus, then, by that divinely pictured image,  
to make the shortness of my vision clear,  
a pleasant medicine was granted me. 140
- And as a skillful cithern player makes  
the string's vibrations follow a good singer,  
whereby the song acquires more power to please;  
even so, while it was speaking, I recall  
that both those blessed lights I then beheld, 145  
as when, in winking, eyes concordant are,  
moving their flamelets to the Eagle's words.

Paradiso XXXI*The Empyrean. GOD. The Angels and the Blest. St. Bernard**Dante's Last Words with Beatrice. The Glory of Mary*

In semblance, therefore, of a pure white Rose  
 the sacred soldiery which with His blood  
 Christ made His Bride, revealed itself to me;  
 meanwhile the other host, which, flying, sees  
 the glory of Him who wins its love, and sings  
 the goodness which had made them all so great,  
 was, like a swarm of bees, which now inflowers  
 itself, and now returns to where its toil  
 is sweetened, ever coming down to enter  
 the spacious Flower, which with so many leaves  
 adorns itself, and reascending thence  
 to where its Love forever makes His home.

5

10

The faces of them all were living flames,  
 their wings were golden, and the rest so white,  
 that never is such whiteness reached by snow.  
 When down into the Flower they came, they spread  
 from bench to bench the peace and ardent love,  
 which by the fanning of their sides they won.  
 Nor did so vast a host of flying forms  
 between the flower and that which o'er it lies,  
 hinder the sight, or dim the splendor seen;  
 because the Light Divine so penetrates  
 the Universe, according to its worth,  
 that naught can be an obstacle thereto.  
 And this secure and joyous Kingdom, thronged  
 by people of the ages old and new,  
 wholly on one Mark set its looks and love.

15

20

25

30

O Trinal Light, that in a Single Star,  
 sparkling before their eyes, dost so appease them,  
 look down upon our tempest here below!

If the Barbarians—coming from a region,  
 above which Helicē looms every day,  
 while circling with the son who is her joy,  
 on seeing Rome and all her lofty buildings,  
 what time the Lateran rose eminent  
 o'er every mortal thing—were wonderstruck;  
 how overwhelmed with awe must I have been,  
 I, who from human things, to things divine,  
 from time, into eternity had come,  
 from Florence—to a people just and sane!  
 Because of this, indeed, and of my joy,  
 it pleased me to be mute and hear no sound.

35

40

And ev'n as in the temple of his vow,  
 when hoping to describe it all some day,  
 a pilgrim looks around him, and is cheered;  
 ev'n so, while wandering through the living Light,  
 I turned mine eyes on all the graded ranks,  
 circling now up, now down, and now around.

45

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| There love-persuasive faces I beheld,<br>decked by Another's light and their own smiles,<br>and gestures fraught with grace and dignity.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 50 |
| My look now as a whole had comprehended<br>the general form of Paradise, but had not yet<br>settled especially on any part;<br>and I was longing with rekindled wish<br>to ask my Lady as to many things,<br>concerning which my mind was in suspense.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 55 |
| Though one thing I had meant, another answered;<br>thinking to look at Beatrice, an elder<br>I saw arrayed as are the glorious folk.<br>His eyes and cheeks were all suffused with joy<br>and kindness, and such his pious mien,<br>as fitting is a father's tenderness.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 60 |
| Hence "Where is she?" I said impulsively;<br>and he: "To bring thy longing to an end,<br>was I by Beatrice from mine own place<br>withdrawn; and if upon the highest rank's<br>third round thou look, thou shalt again behold her<br>enthroned where her deserts allotted her."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 65 |
| Without reply I lifted up mine eyes,<br>and saw her, as, reflecting from herself<br>the eternal rays, she made herself a crown.<br>Not from the tract whence highest thunders peal<br>is any mortal eye so far removed<br>from whatsoever sea it fathoms most<br>as Beatrice was distant from mine eyes;<br>but naught was that to me, because her face<br>came down to me unblurred by aught between.                                                                                                                                          | 70 |
| "O Lady, thou in whom my hope is strong,<br>and who for my salvation didst endure<br>to leave the traces of thy feet in Hell,<br>I recognize the virtue and the grace<br>of all the many things which I have seen,<br>as coming from thy power and kindness.<br>From slavery to freedom thou hast drawn me<br>in every way, and over every path,<br>within thy power to achieve that end.<br>Guard thou in me the fruitage of thy bounty,<br>that thus my soul, restored to health by thee,<br>may, when it leaves my body, please thee still!" | 85 |
| I thus implored; and she, though so far off<br>she seemed, looked down at me and smiled;<br>then to the Eternal Fount she turned again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 90 |
| Thereat the holy elder said: "That thou<br>mayst bring thy journey to its perfect end,<br>for which both prayers and holy love have sent me,<br>hover about this Garden with thine eyes,<br>for to have seen it will prepare thy look<br>to rise still higher through the Ray Divine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 95 |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| The Queen of Heaven, for whom I wholly burn<br>with love, will grant us this and very grace,<br>for I her faithful servant Bernard am.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 100 |
| As he who from Croatia comes, perchance,<br>to look at our Veronica, and who,<br>because of its old fame, is never sated,<br>but says in thought, as long as it is shown:<br>“My Lord, Christ Jesus, God in very truth,<br>was, then, your countenance like unto this?”<br>even such was I, as on the living love<br>I gazed on him, who in this world received<br>a taste, in contemplation, of that Peace.                                                                                                                                                             | 105 |
| “This glad existence, son of Grace,” he then<br>began, “will not be known to thee, if fixed<br>at this low level only are thine eyes.<br>Look at the circles, to the most remote,<br>till yonder thou behold that Queen enthroned,<br>to whom devoutly subject is this Realm.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 110 |
| I raised mine eyes; and as at early morn<br>the horizon’s eastern parts excel in light<br>the regions where the sun is setting; so,<br>as with mine eyes from vale to mount I moved,<br>I saw a region at the utmost verge<br>vanquish in light all other parts before me.<br>And as the skies where one awaits the car<br>which Phaethon badly drove, more brightly gleam,<br>while pale the light on either side becomes;<br>so likewise, brilliant in the middle loomed<br>that peaceful Oriflamme, and on each side<br>the fire in equal measure burned less bright. | 120 |
| And clustered there with wings outspread I saw<br>more than a thousand Angels jubilant,<br>and each distinct in splendor and in speed;<br>while smiling down upon their sports and songs<br>a Beauty I beheld, who was the joy<br>within the eyes of all the other Saints.<br>And even if I in utterance were as rich<br>as in imagination, I’d not dare<br>attempt to tell the least of its delight.                                                                                                                                                                    | 125 |
| When Bernard saw mine eyes intently fixed<br>upon the object of his ardent love,<br>he turned to it his own with such affection,<br>that mine more eager grew to look again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 130 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 135 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 140 |

Paradiso XXXII*The Empyrean. GOD. The Angels and the Blest.**The Order of the Rose. The Blessed Children. The Great Patricians*

Intent on his delight, that contemplator  
the office of a teacher took unasked,  
and thereupon began these holy words:

- "The one so beautiful at Mary's feet  
 is she who opened and who made the wound,  
 which Mary closed again, and then anointed.5  
 In the order which up there the third seats make,  
 Rachel beneath her sits with Beatrice,  
 as thou perceivest.
- Sarah, Rebecca, Judith,10  
 and she who was that singer's ancestress,  
 who said when he was grieving for his sin:  
 "Have mercy on me," thou canst thus behold  
 downward from rank to rank, as each I name,  
 and through the Rose decline from leaf to leaf.15
- Descending from the seventh row of seats,  
 even as above it, Hebrew women follow,  
 dividing all the tresses of the Flower;  
 for in accordance with the attitude  
 their faith assumed toward Christ, these women form20  
 the wall which separates the sacred steps.
- On this side, where full-bloomed the Flower is,  
 complete with all its leaves, are seated those  
 who in the Christ that was to come believed;  
 and on the other, where the semicircles  
 are interrupted by still vacant seats,25  
 are those who faced toward Christ already come.
- And as on this side here the glorious throne  
 of Heaven's own Lady, and the other seats  
 beneath it, such a great partition make;  
 so, opposite, the seat of that great John,  
 who, ever holy, underwent the desert30  
 and martyrdom, and then two years in Hades;  
 while Francis, Benedict and Augustine  
 beneath him were decreed to form the line  
 with others down to here, from round to round.35
- And now behold how great God's foresight is;  
 for each of these two aspects of the Faith  
 will fill this Garden to the same extent.
- And know that downward from the row of seats,  
 which midway separates the two divisions,40  
 no one is seated for his own deserts,  
 but for another's, under fixed conditions;  
 for all of these are spirits who were freed  
 before they had the power to really choose.45  
 This by their faces thou canst well perceive,  
 and by their childish voices furthermore,  
 if, looking at them well, thou listen, too.
- Thou doubttest now, and, doubting, thou art silent;  
 but I will set thee free from that strong bond50  
 wherein thy subtle thoughts are holding thee.
- Within the ample nature of this Realm  
 nothing can any more occur by chance,

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| than either sadness, thirst or hunger can;<br>for in accordance with eternal law<br>is settled all thou seest, so that here<br>close-fitting to the finger is the ring.<br>These people, therefore, who before their time<br>have reached true life, are not without good cause<br>more excellent, or less, among themselves. | 55  |
| These people, therefore, who before their time<br>have reached true life, are not without good cause<br>more excellent, or less, among themselves.                                                                                                                                                                            | 60  |
| The King, through whom this Kingdom finds repose<br>in such delight and love, that no one's will<br>is bold enough to long for any greater;<br>creating all minds in His own glad sight,<br>as Him it pleases, dowers each with Grace<br>in divers ways; here let the fact suffice.                                           | 65  |
| And this is clearly and expressly marked<br>for you in Holy Scripture by those twins<br>who in their mother had their wrath aroused.                                                                                                                                                                                          |     |
| According to the color of the hair<br>of that Grace, therefore, must the Light supreme<br>be worthily accorded as a crown.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 70  |
| Without deserving aught, then, for their deeds,<br>are these to different grades assigned, which differ<br>in their innate keen-sightedness alone.                                                                                                                                                                            | 75  |
| The faith of parents only was, indeed,<br>with innocence, enough for their salvation,<br>throughout the centuries of early times.                                                                                                                                                                                             |     |
| Then, when the primal ages had elapsed,<br>males were by circumcision forced to win<br>the virtue needed by their guileless wings;<br>but later, when the age of Grace had come,<br>without the perfect baptism in the Christ,<br>such innocence was there below retained.                                                    | 80  |
| But now look at the face which to the Christ<br>is most resemblant; for its light alone<br>can make thee ready to behold the Christ."                                                                                                                                                                                         | 85  |
| I saw such gladness raining down on her,<br>borne by those holy minds, created such<br>that they might fly across those altitudes,<br>that whatsoever I had seen before<br>ne'er held me with such admiration poised,<br>nor showed me such resemblance unto God.                                                             | 90  |
| And that same love which first descended there,<br>"Ave Maria, Gratia plena," singing,<br>spread out his open wings in front of her.<br>And on all sides the beatific Court<br>made such an answer to the song divine,<br>that every face became the more serene.                                                             | 95  |
| "O holy father, who for me dost bear<br>to be down here, and leave the pleasant place,<br>where by eternal lot thou hast thy seat,<br>who is that Angel who with such delight<br>is at our Queen's eyes gazing, and is so<br>enamored, that he seems to be on fire?"                                                          | 100 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 105 |

For teaching I had thus recourse again  
to him who was from Mary drawing beauty,  
as from the sun the early morning star.

And he to me: "As much self-trust and grace  
as can be in an Angel or a soul,  
are all in him; and we would have it so;  
for he it was who carried down the palm  
to Mary, when God's Son upon Himself  
was pleased to take the burden of our flesh.

110

But with thine eyes now follow after me,  
as I keep speaking; and note the great Patricians  
of this most just and kind Imperial State.  
The two that have the happiest seats up there,  
because the nearest to Augusta's throne,  
are, as it were, the two roots of this Rose.  
He that upon the left is at her side,  
that Father is, because of whose bold taste  
the human species tastes such bitterness;  
and on her right thou see'st that ancient Father  
of Holy Church, to whom Christ gave in trust  
the Keys of this fair Flower. And he who saw,  
ere dying, all that fair Bride's troubled days,  
who with the spear and with the nails was won,  
beside him sits; and at the other's side  
that Leader rests, 'neath whom the ingrate folk,  
stiff-necked and fickle-minded, lived on manna.

115

120

125

130

Anna thou seest sitting opposite  
to Peter, so content to see her daughter,  
that never from her doth she move her eyes,  
although 'Hosanna' singing; o'er against  
the oldest Father of a family  
Lucia sits, who had thy Lady go,  
when thou thy brows in downward flight didst turn.

135

But since apace thy slumber-time is fleeing,  
here will we pause, as that good tailor does,  
who cuts his gown according to his cloth;  
and toward the Primal Love direct our eyes,  
that, looking toward Him, thou mayst penetrate  
as far into His Splendor as thou canst.  
But lest, perchance, by moving thine own wings,  
thou shouldst recede, believing to advance,  
Grace needs must be obtained for thee by prayer;  
Grace from the one who hath the power to help thee;  
hence follow after me with thine affection,  
that from my words thy heart turn not aside."

140

145

150

He then began the following holy prayer:

Paradiso XXXIII

## *The Empyrean. GOD. St. Bernard's Prayer to Mary*

## *The Vision of God. Ultimate Salvation*



**IMAGE 5.20: PARADISO: CANTO THIRTY-THREE** | Dante witnesses the Virgil Mary, and Saint Bernard offers her a prayer on Dante's behalf.

**Author:** Teodolinda Barolini  
**Source:** Digital Dante  
**License:** Public Domain

my prayers, and pray that they be not too poor,  
that thou with thy prayers so dissolve each cloud  
of his mortality, that unto him  
the Highest Pleasure may unfold Itself.  
And furthermore, I pray to thee, O Queen,  
who canst whate'er thou wilt, that, after such  
a sight, thou keep all his affections sound.  
His human promptings let thy care defeat;  
see with how many blest ones Beatrice  
is clasping for my prayers her hands to thee!"

The eyes beloved and revered by God,  
intent on him who prayed, revealed to us  
how grateful unto her are earnest prayers.  
Thence they addressed them to the Eternal Light,  
wherein it may not be believed the eye  
of any creature finds so clear a way.

And I, who to the End of all desires  
was drawing near, within me, as I ought,  
brought to its goal the ardor of desire.

"O Virgin Mother, Daughter of thy Son,  
humbler and loftier than any creature,  
eternal counsel's predetermined goal,  
thou art the one that such nobility  
didst lend to human nature, that its Maker  
scorned not to make Himself what He had made.  
Within thy womb rekindled was the Love,  
through whose warm influence in the eternal Peace  
this Flower hath blossomed thus. Here unto us  
thou art a noonday torch of Charity;  
and down below 'mong mortal men, thou art  
a living fount of Hope. Lady, so great  
thou art, and hast such worth, that one who longs  
for Grace, and unto thee hath not recourse,  
wingless would wish to have his longing fly.  
Not only doth thy Kindliness give help  
to him that asketh it, but many times  
it freely runs ahead of his request.  
In thee is Mercy, Pity is in thee,  
in thee Magnificence, and all there is  
of Goodness in a creature meets in thee.

Now doth this man, who from the lowest drain  
of the Universe hath one by one beheld,  
as far as here, the forms of spirit-life,  
beseech thee, of thy grace, for so much strength  
that with his eyes he may uplift himself  
toward Ultimate Salvation higher still.  
And I, who never for mine own sight burned  
more than I do for his, offer thee all

my prayers, and pray that they be not too poor,  
that thou with thy prayers so dissolve each cloud  
of his mortality, that unto him  
the Highest Pleasure may unfold Itself.  
And furthermore, I pray to thee, O Queen,  
who canst whate'er thou wilt, that, after such  
a sight, thou keep all his affections sound.  
His human promptings let thy care defeat;  
see with how many blest ones Beatrice  
is clasping for my prayers her hands to thee!"

The eyes beloved and revered by God,  
intent on him who prayed, revealed to us  
how grateful unto her are earnest prayers.  
Thence they addressed them to the Eternal Light,  
wherein it may not be believed the eye  
of any creature finds so clear a way.

And I, who to the End of all desires  
was drawing near, within me, as I ought,  
brought to its goal the ardor of desire.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Bernard was smiling, and was making signs<br>for me to look on high; but, as he wished,<br>I was already of mine own accord;<br>because my sight, as purer it became,<br>was penetrating more and more the radiance<br>of that High Light, which of Itself is true.                                                                                                                             | 50 |
| From this time onward greater was my sight<br>than is our speech, which yields to such a vision,<br>and memory also yields to such excess.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 55 |
| And such as he, who seeth in a dream,<br>and after it, the imprinted feeling stays,<br>while all the rest returns not to his mind;<br>even such am I; for almost wholly fades<br>my vision, yet the sweetness which was born<br>of it is dripping still into my heart.                                                                                                                          | 60 |
| Even thus the snow is in the sun dissolved;<br>even thus the Sibyl's oracles, inscribed<br>on flying leaves, were lost adown the wind.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 65 |
| O Light Supreme, that dost uplift Thyself<br>so far from mortal thought, relend my mind<br>a little of what Thou didst seem to be,<br>and cause my tongue to be so powerful,<br>that of Thy Glory it may leave at least<br>a spark unto the people still to come;<br>for to my mem'ry if it but a while<br>return, and speak a little in these lines,<br>more of Thy Victory will be conceived. | 70 |
| I think the keenness of the living Ray<br>which I endured would have confounded me,<br>if from it I had turned away mine eyes.<br>And I recall that I, because of this,<br>the bolder was to bear it, till I made<br>my vision one with Value Infinite.                                                                                                                                         | 75 |
| O the abundant Grace, whereby I dared<br>to pierce the Light Eternal with my gaze,<br>until I had therein exhausted sight!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 80 |
| I saw that far within its depths there lies,<br>by Love together in one volume bound,<br>that which in leaves lies scattered through the world;<br>substance and accident, and modes thereof,<br>fused, as it were, in such a way, that that,<br>whereof I speak, is but One Simple Light.                                                                                                      | 85 |
| This union's general form I think I saw,<br>since, saying so, I feel that I the more<br>rejoice. Of more forgetfulness for me<br>one moment is, than centuries twenty-five<br>are for the enterprise which once caused Neptune<br>to wonder at the shadow Argo cast.                                                                                                                            | 90 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 95 |

My mind, thus wholly in suspense, was gazing  
steadfast and motionless, and all intent,  
and, gazing, grew enkindled more and more.

Such in that Light doth one at last become,  
that one can never possibly consent  
to turn therefrom for any other sight;  
because the Good, which is the will's real object,  
is therein wholly gathered, and, outside,  
that is defective which is perfect there.

100

Ev'n as to what I do remember, mine  
will now be shorter than an infant's speech,  
who at the breast still bathes his tongue. 'T was not  
that there was other than a simple semblance  
within the Living Light wherein I gazed,  
which always is what It hath been before;  
but through my sight, which in me, as I looked,  
was gathering strength, because I changed, one sole  
appearance underwent a change for me.

110

Within the Lofty Light's profound and clear  
subsistence there appeared to me three Rings,  
of threefold color and of one content;  
and one, as Rainbow is by Rainbow, seemed  
reflected by the other, while the third  
seemed like a Fire breathed equally from both.

115

Oh, how, to my conception, short and weak  
is speech! And this, to what I saw, is such,  
that it is not enough to call it small.

O Light Eternal, that alone dost dwell  
within Thyself, alone dost understand  
Thyself, and love and smile upon Thyself,  
Self-understanding and Self-understood!

125

That Circle which appeared to be conceived  
within Thyself as a Reflected Light,  
when somewhat contemplated by mine eyes,  
within Itsself, of Its own very color,  
to me seemed painted with our Human Form;  
whence wholly set upon It was my gaze.

130

Like the geometer, who gives himself  
wholly to measuring the circle, nor,  
by thinking, finds the principle he needs;  
ev'n such was I at that new sight. I wished  
to see how to the Ring the Image there  
conformed Itsself, and found therein a place;  
but mine own wings were not enough for this;  
had not my mind been smitten by a flash  
of light, wherein what it was willing came.

135

Here power failed my high imagining;  
but, like a smoothly moving wheel, that Love  
was now revolving my desire and will,  
which moves the sun and all the other stars.

140

145

## THE LAIS OF MARIE DE FRANCE

Marie de France

Written in the late 1100s C.E.

France (Anglo-Norman)

In her works, the author states that her name is Marie, and she is from France. No other detail about the author's life is known, although there are quite a few educated guesses about her possible ties to various royal courts. Marie writes in Anglo-Norman (a version of medieval French), and she says that her *lais* are versions of oral tales told by Breton minstrels (from Brittany, on the coast of France).

Her *lais* are some of the earliest forms of courtly love literature that survive, influencing later knightly romances (such as *Sir Launfal*), stories of King Arthur's knights (such as Wolfram von Eschenbach's *Parzival*), and certain stories in Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* (in particular, the *Franklin's Tale*, which is itself based on a Breton *lai*).

*Written by Laura J. Getty*

### THE LAIS OF MARIE DE FRANCE

License: Public Domain

Marie de France, Translated by Eugene Mason

#### The Lai of Sir Launfal

I will tell you the story of another Lai. It relates the adventures of a rich and mighty baron, and the Breton calls it, the Lai of Sir Launfal.

King Arthur—that fearless knight and courteous lord—removed to Wales, and lodged at Caerleon-on-Usk, since the Picts and Scots did much mischief in the land. For it was the wont of the wild people of the north to enter in the realm of Logres, and burn and damage at their will. At the time of Pentecost, the King cried a great feast. Thereat he gave many rich gifts to his counts and barons, and to the Knights of the Round Table. Never were such worship and bounty shown before at any feast, for Arthur bestowed honours and lands on all his servants—save only on one. This lord, who was forgotten and disliked of the King, was named Launfal. He was beloved by many of the Court, because of his beauty and prowess, for he was a worthy knight, open of heart and heavy of hand. These lords, to whom their comrade was dear, felt little joy to see so stout a knight misprized. Sir Launfal was son to a King of high descent, though his heritage was in a distant land. He was of the King's household, but since Arthur gave him naught, and he was of too proud a mind to pray for his due, he had spent all that he had. Right heavy was Sir Launfal, when he considered these things, for he knew himself taken in the toils. Gentles, marvel not overmuch hereat. Ever must the pilgrim go heavily in a strange land, where there is none to counsel and direct him in the path.

Now, on a day, Sir Launfal got him on his horse, that he might take his pleasure for a little. He came forth from the city, alone, attended by neither servant nor squire. He went his way through a green mead, till he stood by a river of clear running water. Sir Launfal would have crossed this stream, without thought of pass or ford, but he might not do so, for reason that his horse was all fearful and trembling. Seeing that he was hindered in this fashion, Launfal unbitted his steed, and let him pasture in that fair meadow, where they had come. Then he folded his cloak to serve him as a pillow, and lay upon the ground. Launfal lay in great misuse, because of his heavy thoughts, and the discomfort of his bed. He turned from side to side, and might not sleep. Now as the knight looked towards the river he saw two damsels coming towards him; fairer maidens Launfal had never seen. These two maidens were richly dressed in kirtles closely laced and shapen to their persons and wore mantles of a goodly purple hue. Sweet and dainty were the damsels, alike in raiment and in face. The elder of these ladies carried in her hands a basin of pure gold, cunningly wrought by some crafty smith—very fair and precious was the cup; and the younger bore a towel of soft white linen. These maidens turned neither to the right hand nor to the left, but went directly to the place where Launfal lay. When Launfal saw that their business was with him, he stood upon his feet, like a discreet and courteous gentleman. After they had greeted the knight, one of the maidens delivered the message with which she was charged.

"Sir Launfal, my demoiselle, as gracious as she is fair, prays that you will follow us, her messengers, as she has a certain word to speak with you. We will lead you swiftly to her pavilion, for our lady is very near at hand. If you but lift your eyes you may see where her tent is spread."

Right glad was the knight to do the bidding of the maidens. He gave no heed to his horse, but left him at his provand in the meadow. All his desire was to go with the damsels, to that pavilion of silk and divers colours,



**IMAGE 5.21: MARIE DE FRANCE** | Marie de France sits and writes her manuscript on a pedestal.

**Author:** Master of Jean de Papeleu

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

pitched in so fair a place. Certainly neither Semiramis, in the days of her most wanton power, nor Octavian, the Emperor of all the West, had so gracious a covering from sun and rain. Above the tent was set an eagle of gold, so rich and precious, that none might count the cost. The cords and fringes thereof were of silken thread, and the lances which bore aloft the pavilion were of refined gold. No King on earth might have so sweet a shelter, not though he gave in fee the value of his realm. Within this pavilion Launfal came upon the Maiden. Whiter she was than any altar lily, and more sweetly flushed than the new born rose in time of summer heat. She lay upon a bed with napery and coverlet of richer worth than could be furnished by a castle's spoil. Very fresh and slender showed the lady in her vesture

of spotless linen. About her person she had drawn a mantle of ermine, edged with purple dye from the vats of Alexandria. By reason of the heat her raiment was unfastened for a little, and her throat and the rondure of her bosom showed whiter and more untouched than hawthorn in May. The knight came before the bed, and stood gazing on so sweet a sight. The Maiden beckoned him to draw near, and when he had seated himself at the foot of her couch, spoke her mind.

"Launfal," she said, "fair friend, it is for you that I have come from my own far land. I bring you my love. If you are prudent and discreet, as you are goodly to the view, there is no emperor nor count, nor king, whose day shall be so filled with riches and with mirth as yours."

When Launfal heard these words he rejoiced greatly, for his heart was litten by another's torch.

"Fair lady," he answered, "since it pleases you to be so gracious, and to dower so graceless a knight with your

love, there is naught that you may bid me do—right or wrong, evil or good—that I will not do to the utmost of my power. I will observe your commandment, and serve in your quarrels. For you I renounce my father and my father's house. This only I pray, that I may dwell with you in your lodging, and that you will never send me from your side."

When the maiden heard the words of him whom so fondly she desired to love, she was altogether moved, and granted him forthwith her heart and her tenderness. To her bounty she added another gift besides. Never might Launfal be desirous of aught, but he would have according to his wish. He might waste and spend at will and pleasure, but in his purse ever there was to spare. No more was Launfal sad. Right merry was the pilgrim, since one had set him on the way, with such a gift, that the more pennies he bestowed, the more silver and gold were in his pouch.



**IMAGE 5.23: GERMAN WOODCUT** | This woodcut depicts a werewolf transforming.

**Author:** User "Vearthy"

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

But the Maiden had yet a word to say.

"Friend," she said, "hearken to my counsel. I lay this charge upon you, and pray you urgently, that you tell not to any man the secret of our love. If you show this matter, you will lose your friend, for ever and a day. Never again may you see my face. Never again will you have seisin of that body, which is now so tender in your eyes."

Launfal plighted faith, that right strictly he would observe this commandment. So the Maiden granted him her kiss and her embrace, and very sweetly in that fair lodging passed the day till evensong was come.

Right loath was Launfal to depart from the pavilion at the vesper hour, and gladly would he have stayed, had he been able, and his lady wished.

"Fair friend," said she, "rise up, for no longer may you tarry. The hour is come that we must part. But one thing I have to say before you go. When you would speak with me I shall hasten to come before your wish. Well I deem that you will only call your friend where she may be found without reproach or shame of men. You may see me at your pleasure; my voice shall speak softly in your ear at will; but I must never be known of your comrades, nor must they ever learn my speech."

Right joyous was Launfal to hear this thing. He sealed the covenant with a kiss, and stood upon his feet. Then there entered the two maidens who had led him to the pavilion, bringing with them rich raiment, fitting for a knight's apparel. When Launfal had clothed himself therewith, there seemed no goodlier varlet under heaven, for certainly he was fair and true. After these maidens had refreshed him with clear water, and dried his hands upon the napkin, Launfal went to meat. His friend sat at table with him, and small will had he to refuse her courtesy. Very serviceably the damsels bore the meats, and Launfal and the Maiden ate and drank with mirth and content. But one dish was more to the knight's relish than any other. Sweeter than the dainties within his mouth, was the lady's kiss upon his lips.

When supper was ended, Launfal rose from table, for his horse stood waiting without the pavilion. The destrier was newly saddled and bridled, and showed proudly in his rich gay trappings. So Launfal kissed, and bade farewell, and went his way. He rode back towards the city at a slow pace. Often he checked his steed, and looked behind him,

for he was filled with amazement, and all bemused concerning this adventure. In his heart he doubted that it was but a dream. He was altogether astonished, and knew not what to do. He feared that pavilion and Maiden alike were from the realm of faery.

Launfal returned to his lodging, and was greeted by servitors, clad no longer in ragged raiment. He fared richly, lay softly, and spent largely, but never knew how his purse was filled. There was no lord who had need of a lodging in the town, but Launfal brought him to his hall, for refreshment and delight. Launfal bestowed rich gifts. Launfal redeemed the poor captive. Launfal clothed in scarlet the minstrel. Launfal gave honour where honour was due. Stranger and friend alike he comforted at need. So, whether by night or by day, Launfal lived greatly at his ease. His lady, she came at will and pleasure, and, for the rest, all was added unto him.

Now it chanced, the same year, about the feast of St. John, a company of knights came, for their solace, to an orchard, beneath that tower where dwelt the Queen. Together with these lords went Gawain and his cousin, Yvain the fair. Then said Gawain, that goodly knight, beloved and dear to all,

"Lords, we do wrong to disport ourselves in this pleasaunce without our comrade Launfal. It is not well to slight a prince as brave as he is courteous, and of a lineage prouder than our own."

Then certain of the lords returned to the city, and finding Launfal within his hostel, entreated him to take his pastime with them in that fair meadow. The Queen looked out from a window in her tower, she and three ladies of her fellowship. They saw the lords at their pleasure, and Launfal also, whom well they knew. So the Queen chose of her Court thirty damsels—the sweetest of face and most dainty of fashion—and commanded that they should descend with her to take their delight in the garden. When the knights beheld this gay company of ladies come down the steps of the perron, they rejoiced beyond measure. They hastened before to lead them by the hand, and said such words in their ear as were seemly and pleasant to be spoken. Amongst these merry and courteous lords hasted not Sir Launfal. He drew apart from the throng, for with him time went heavily, till he might have clasp and greeting of his friend. The ladies of the Queen's fellowship seemed but kitchen wenches to his sight, in comparison with the loveliness of the maiden. When the Queen marked Launfal go aside, she went his way, and seating herself upon the herb, called the knight before her. Then she opened out her heart.

"Launfal, I have honoured you for long as a worthy knight, and have praised and cherished you very dearly. You may receive a queen's whole love, if such be your care. Be content: he to whom my heart is given, has small reason to complain him of the alms."

"Lady," answered the knight, "grant me leave to go, for this grace is not for me. I am the King's man, and dare not break my troth. Not for the highest lady in the world, not even for her love, will I set this reproach upon my lord."

When the Queen heard this, she was full of wrath, and spoke many hot and bitter words.

"Launfal," she cried, "well I know that you think little of woman and her love. There are sins more black that a man may have upon his soul. Traitor you are, and false. Right evil counsel gave they to my lord, who prayed him to suffer you about his person. You remain only for his harm and loss."

Launful was very dolent to hear this thing. He was not slow to take up the Queen's glove, and in his haste spake words that he repented long, and with tears.

"Lady," said he, "I am not of that guild of which you speak. Neither am I a despiser of woman, since I love, and am loved, of one who would bear the prize from all the ladies in the land. Dame, know now and be persuaded, that she, whom I serve, is so rich in state, that the very meanest of her maidens, excels you, Lady Queen, as much in clerkly skill and goodness, as in sweetness of body and face, and in every virtue."

The Queen rose straightway to her feet, and fled to her chamber, weeping. Right wrathful and heavy was she, because of the words that had besmirched her. She lay sick upon her bed, from which, she said, she would never rise, till the King had done her justice, and righted this bitter wrong. Now the King that day had taken his pleasure within the woods. He returned from the chase towards evening, and sought the chamber of the Queen. When the lady saw him, she sprang from her bed, and kneeling at his feet, pleaded for grace and pity. Launfal—she said—had shamed her, since he required her love. When she had put him by, very foully had he reviled her, boasting that his love was already set on a lady, so proud and noble, that her meanest wench went more richly, and smiled more sweetly, than the Queen. Thereat the King waxed marvellously wrathful, and swore a great oath that he would set Launfal within a fire, or hang him from a tree, if he could not deny this thing, before his peers.

Arthur came forth from the Queen's chamber, and called to him three of his lords. These he sent to seek the knight who so evilly had entreated the Queen. Launfal, for his part, had returned to his lodging, in a sad and sorrowful case. He saw very clearly that he had lost his friend, since he had declared their love to men. Launfal sat within his chamber, sick and heavy of thought. Often he called upon his friend, but the lady would not hear his voice. He bewailed his evil lot, with tears; for grief he came nigh to swoon; a hundred times he implored the Maiden that she would deign to speak with her knight. Then, since the lady yet refrained from speech, Launfal cursed his hot and unruly tongue. Very near he came to ending all this trouble with his knife. Naught he found to do but to

wring his hands, and call upon the Maiden, begging her to forgive his trespass, and to talk with him again, as friend to friend.

But little peace is there for him who is harassed by a King. There came presently to Launfal's hostel those three barons from the Court. These bade the knight forthwith to go with them to Arthur's presence, to acquit him of this wrong against the Queen. Launfal went forth, to his own deep sorrow. Had any man slain him on the road, he would have counted him his friend. He stood before the King, downcast and speechless, being dumb by reason of that great grief, of which he showed the picture and image.

Arthur looked upon his captive very evilly.

"Vassal," said he, harshly, "you have done me a bitter wrong. It was a foul deed to seek to shame me in this ugly fashion, and to smirch the honour of the Queen. Is it folly or lightness which leads you to boast of that lady, the least of whose maidens is fairer, and goes more richly, than the Queen?"

Launfal protested that never had he set such shame upon his lord. Word by word he told the tale of how he denied the Queen, within the orchard. But concerning that which he had spoken of the lady, he owned the truth, and his folly. The love of which he bragged was now lost to him, by his own exceeding fault. He cared little for his life, and was content to obey the judgment of the Court.

Right wrathful was the King at Launfal's words. He conjured his barons to give him such wise counsel herein, that wrong might be done to none. The lords did the King's bidding, whether good came of the matter, or evil. They gathered themselves together, and appointed a certain day that Launfal should abide the judgment of his peers. For his part Launfal must give pledge and surety to his lord, that he would come before this judgment in his own body. If he might not give such surety then he should be held captive till the appointed day. When the lords of the King's household returned to tell him of their counsel, Arthur demanded that Launfal should put such pledge in his hand, as they had said. Launfal was altogether mazed and bewildered at this judgment, for he had neither friend nor kindred in the land. He would have been set in prison, but Gawain came first to offer himself as his surety, and with him, all the knights of his fellowship. These gave into the King's hand as pledge, the fiefs and lands that they held of his Crown. The King having taken pledge from the sureties, Launfal returned to his lodging, and with him certain knights of his company. They blamed him greatly because of his foolish love, and chastened him grievously by reason of the sorrow he made before men. Every day they came to his chamber, to know of his meat and drink, for much they feared that presently he would become mad.

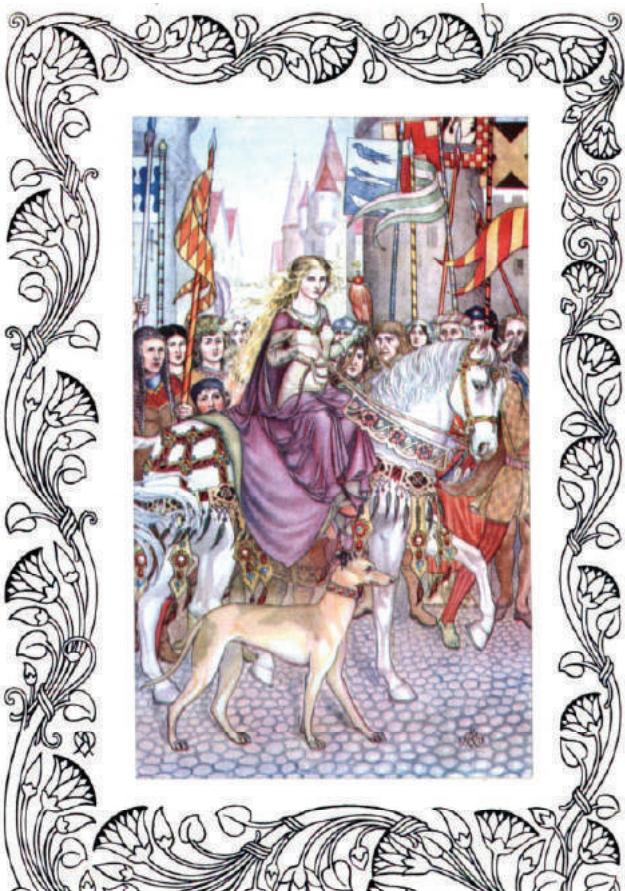
The lords of the household came together on the day appointed for this judgment. The King was on his chair, with the Queen sitting at his side. The sureties brought Launfal within the hall, and rendered him into the hands of his peers. Right sorrowful were they because of his plight. A great company of his fellowship did all that they were able to acquit him of this charge. When all was set out, the King demanded the judgment of the Court, according to the accusation and the answer. The barons went forth in much trouble and thought to consider this matter. Many amongst them grieved for the peril of a good knight in a strange land; others held that it were well for Launfal to suffer, because of the wish and malice of their lord. Whilst they were thus perplexed, the Duke of Cornwall rose in the council, and said,

"Lords, the King pursues Launfal as a traitor, and would slay him with the sword, by reason that he bragged of the beauty of his maiden, and roused the jealousy of the Queen. By the faith that I owe this company, none complains of Launfal, save only the King. For our part we would know the truth of this business, and do justice between the King and his man. We would also show proper reverence to our own liege lord. Now, if it be according to Arthur's will, let us take oath of Launfal, that he seek this lady, who has put such strife between him and the Queen. If her beauty be such as he has told us, the Queen will have no cause for wrath. She must pardon Launfal for his rudeness, since it will be plain that he did not speak out of a malicious heart. Should Launfal fail his word, and not return with the lady, or should her fairness fall beneath his boast, then let him be cast off from our fellowship, and be sent forth from the service of the King."

This counsel seemed good to the lords of the household. They sent certain of his friends to Launfal, to acquaint him with their judgment, bidding him to pray his damsel to the Court, that he might be acquitted of this blame. The knight made answer that in no wise could he do this thing. So the sureties returned before the judges, saying that Launfal hoped neither for refuge nor for succour from the lady, and Arthur urged them to a speedy ending, because of the prompting of the Queen.

The judges were about to give sentence upon Launfal, when they saw two maidens come riding towards the palace, upon two white ambling palfreys. Very sweet and dainty were these maidens, and richly clothed in garments of crimson sendal, closely girt and fashioned to their bodies. All men, old and young, looked willingly upon them, for fair they were to see. Gawain, and three knights of his company, went straight to Launfal, and showed him these maidens, praying him to say which of them was his friend. But he answered never a word. The maidens dismounted from their palfreys, and coming before the dais where the King was seated, spake him fairly, as they were fair.

"Sire, prepare now a chamber, hung with silken cloths, where it is seemly for my lady to dwell: for she would lodge with you awhile."



**IMAGE 5.22: THE LAI OF SIR LAUNFAL** | A beautiful, well-dressed maiden rides a white horse through a crowd.

**Author:** Reginald L. Knowles  
**Source:** Hathi Trust Digital Library  
**License:** Public Domain

"Sire, make ready for us chambers, where we may abide with our lady, for even now she comes to speak with thee." charged.  
The King commanded that the ladies should be led to their companions, and bestowed in the same honourable fashion as they. Then he bade the lords of his household to consider their judgment, since he would endure no further respite. The Court already had given too much time to the business, and the Queen was growing wrathful, because of the blame that was hers. Now the judges were about to proclaim their sentence, when, amidst the tumult of the town, there came riding to the palace the flower of all the ladies of the world. She came mounted upon a palfrey, white as snow, which carried her softly, as though she loved her burthen. Beneath the sky was no goodlier steed, nor one more gentle to the hand. The harness of the palfrey was so rich, that no king on earth might hope to buy trappings so precious, unless he sold or set his realm in pledge. The Maiden herself showed such as I will tell you. Passing slim was the lady, sweet of bodice and slender of girdle. Her throat was whiter than snow on branch, and her eyes were like flowers in the pallor of her face. She had a witching mouth, a dainty nose, and an open brow. Her eyebrows were brown, and her golden hair parted in two soft waves upon her head. She was clad in a shift of spotless linen, and above her snowy kirtle was set a mantle of royal purple, clasped upon her breast. She carried a hooded falcon upon her glove, and a greyhound

followed closely after. As the Maiden rode at a slow pace through the streets of the city, there was none, neither great nor small, youth nor sergeant, but ran forth from his house, that he might content his heart with so great beauty. Every man that saw her with his eyes, marvelled at a fairness beyond that of any earthly woman. Little he cared for any mortal maiden, after he had seen this sight. The friends of Sir Launfal hastened to the knight, to tell him of his lady's succour, if so it were according to God's will.

"Sir comrade, truly is not this your friend? This lady is neither black nor golden, mean nor tall. She is only the most lovely thing in all the world."

This gift the King granted gladly. He called to him two knights of his household, and bade them bestow the maidens in such chambers as were fitting to their degree. The maidens being gone, the King required of his barons to proceed with their judgment, saying that he had sore displeasure at the slowness of the cause.

"Sire," replied the barons, "we rose from Council, because of the damsels who entered in the hall. We will at once resume the sitting, and give our judgment without more delay."

The barons again were gathered together, in much thought and trouble, to consider this matter. There was great strife and dissension amongst them, for they knew not what to do. In the midst of all this noise and tumult, there came two other damsels riding to the hall on two Spanish mules. Very richly arrayed were these damsels in raiment of fine needlework, and their kirtles were covered by fresh fair mantles, embroidered with gold. Great joy had Launfal's comrades when they marked these ladies. They said between themselves that doubtless they came for the succour of the good knight. Gawain, and certain of his company, made haste to Launfal, and said,

"Sir, be not cast down. Two ladies are near at hand, right dainty of dress, and gracious of person. Tell us truly, for the love of God, is one of these your friends?"

But Launfal answered very simply that never before had he seen these damsels with his eyes, nor known and loved them in his heart.

The maidens dismounted from their mules, and stood before Arthur, in the sight of all. Greatly were they praised of many, because of their beauty, and of the colour of their face and hair. Some there were who deemed already that the Queen was overborne.

The elder of the damsels carried herself modestly and well, and sweetly told over the message wherewith she was charged.

When Launfal heard this, he sighed, for by their words, he knew again his friend. He raised his head, and as the blood rushed to his face, speech flowed from his lips.

"By my faith," cried he, "yes, she is indeed my friend. It is a small matter now whether men slay me, or set me free; for I am made whole of my hurt just by looking on her face."

The Maiden entered in the palace—where none so fair had come before—and stood before the King, in the presence of his household. She loosed the clasp of her mantle, so that men might the more easily perceive the grace of her person. The courteous King advanced to meet her, and all the Court got them on their feet, and pained themselves in her service. When the lords had gazed upon her for a space, and praised the sum of her beauty, the lady spake to Arthur in this fashion, for she was anxious to begone.

"Sire, I have loved one of thy vassals,—the knight who stands in bonds. Sir Launfal. He was always misprized in thy Court, and his every action turned to blame. What he said, that thou knowest; for over hasty was his tongue before the Queen. But he never craved her in love, however loud his boasting. I cannot choose that he should come to hurt or harm by me. In the hope of freeing Launfal from his bonds, I have obeyed thy summons. Let now thy barons look boldly upon my face, and deal justly in this quarrel between the Queen and me."

The King commanded that this should be done, and looking upon her eyes, not one of the judges but was persuaded that her favour exceeded that of the Queen.

Since then Launfal had not spoken in malice against his lady, the lords of the household gave him again his sword. When the trial had come thus to an end the Maiden took her leave of the King, and made her ready to depart. Gladly would Arthur have had her lodge with him for a little, and many a lord would have rejoiced in her service, but she might not tarry. Now without the hall stood a great stone of dull marble, where it was the wont of lords, departing from the Court, to climb into the saddle, and Launfal by the stone. The Maiden came forth from the doors of the palace, and mounting on the stone, seated herself on the palfrey, behind her friend. Then they rode across the plain together, and were no more seen.

The Bretons tell that the knight was ravished by his lady to an island, very dim and very fair, known as Avalon. But none has had speech with Launfal and his faery love since then, and for my part I can tell you no more of the matter.

### The Lai of the Were-Wolf

Amongst the tales I tell you once again, I would not forget the Lai of the Were-Wolf. Such beasts as he are known in every land. Bisclavaret he is named in Brittany; whilst the Norman calls him Garwal.

It is a certain thing, and within the knowledge of all, that many a christened man has suffered this change, and ran wild in woods, as a Were-Wolf. The Were-Wolf is a fearsome beast. He lurks within the thick forest, mad and horrible to see. All the evil that he may, he does. He goeth to and fro, about the solitary place, seeking man, in order to devour him. Hearken, now, to the adventure of the Were-Wolf, that I have to tell.

In Brittany there dwelt a baron who was marvellously esteemed of all his fellows. He was a stout knight, and a comely, and a man of office and repute. Right private was he to the mind of his lord, and dear to the counsel of his neighbours. This baron was wedded to a very worthy dame, right fair to see, and sweet of semblance. All his love was set on her, and all her love was given again to him. One only grief had this lady. For three whole days in every week her lord was absent from her side. She knew not where he went, nor on what errand. Neither did any of his house know the business which called him forth.

On a day when this lord was come again to his house, altogether joyous and content, the lady took him to task, right sweetly, in this fashion,

"Husband," said she, "and fair, sweet friend, I have a certain thing to pray of you. Right willingly would I receive this gift, but I fear to anger you in the asking. It is better for me to have an empty hand, than to gain hard words."

When the lord heard this matter, he took the lady in his arms, very tenderly, and kissed her.

"Wife," he answered, "ask what you will. What would you have, for it is yours already?"

"By my faith," said the lady, "soon shall I be whole. Husband, right long and wearisome are the days that you spend away from your home. I rise from my bed in the morning, sick at heart, I know not why. So fearful am I, lest you do aught to your loss, that I may not find any comfort. Very quickly shall I die for reason of my dread. Tell me now, where you go, and on what business! How may the knowledge of one who loves so closely, bring you to harm?"

"Wife," made answer the lord, "nothing but evil can come if I tell you this secret. For the mercy of God do not require it of me. If you but knew, you would withdraw yourself from my love, and I should be lost indeed."

When the lady heard this, she was persuaded that her baron sought to put her by with jesting words. Therefore she prayed and required him the more urgently, with tender looks and speech, till he was overborne, and told her all the story, hiding naught.

"Wife, I become Bisclavaret. I enter in the forest, and live on prey and roots, within the thickest of the wood."

After she had learned his secret, she prayed and entreated the more as to whether he ran in his raiment, or went spoiled of vesture.

"Wife," said he, "I go naked as a beast."

"Tell me, for hope of grace, what you do with your clothing?"

"Fair wife, that will I never. If I should lose my raiment, or even be marked as I quit my vesture, then a Were-Wolf I must go for all the days of my life. Never again should I become man, save in that hour my clothing were given back to me. For this reason never will I show my lair."

"Husband," replied the lady to him, "I love you better than all the world. The less cause have you for doubting my faith, or hiding any tittle from me. What savour is here of friendship? How have I made forfeit of your love; for what sin do you mistrust my honour? Open now your heart, and tell what is good to be known."

So at the end, outworned and overborne by her importunity, he could no longer refrain, but told her all.

"Wife," said he, "within this wood, a little from the path, there is a hidden way, and at the end thereof an ancient chapel, where oftentimes I have bewailed my lot. Near by is a great hollow stone, concealed by a bush, and there is the secret place where I hide my raiment, till I would return to my own home."

On hearing this marvel the lady became sanguine of visage, because of her exceeding fear. She dared no longer to lie at his side, and turned over in her mind, this way and that, how best she could get her from him. Now there was a certain knight of those parts, who, for a great while, had sought and required this lady for her love. This knight had spent long years in her service, but little enough had he got thereby, not even fair words, or a promise. To him the dame wrote a letter, and meeting, made her purpose plain.

"Fair friend," said she, "be happy. That which you have coveted so long a time, I will grant without delay. Never again will I deny your suit. My heart, and all I have to give, are yours, so take me now as love and dame."

Right sweetly the knight thanked her for her grace, and pledged her faith and fealty. When she had confirmed him by an oath, then she told him all this business of her lord—why he went, and what he became, and of his ravening within the wood. So she showed him of the chapel, and of the hollow stone, and of how to spoil the Were-Wolf of his vesture. Thus, by the kiss of his wife, was Bisclavaret betrayed. Often enough had he ravished his prey in desolate places, but from this journey he never returned. His kinsfolk and acquaintance came together to ask of his tidings, when this absence was noised abroad. Many a man, on many a day, searched the woodland, but none might find him, nor learn where Bisclavaret was gone.

The lady was wedded to the knight who had cherished her for so long a space. More than a year had passed since Bisclavaret disappeared. Then it chanced that the King would hunt in that self-same wood where the Were-Wolf lurked. When the hounds were unleashed they ran this way and that, and swiftly came upon his scent. At the view the huntsman winded on his horn, and the whole pack were at his heels. They followed him from morn to eve, till he was torn and bleeding, and was all adread lest they should pull him down. Now the King was very close to the quarry, and when Bisclavaret looked upon his master, he ran to him for pity and for grace. He took the stirrup within his paws, and fawned upon the prince's foot. The king was very fearful at this sight, but presently he called his courtiers to his aid.

"Lords," cried he, "hasten hither, and see this marvellous thing. Here is a beast who has the sense of man. He abases himself before his foe, and cries for mercy, although he cannot speak. Beat off the hounds, and let no man do him harm. We will hunt no more to-day, but return to our own place, with the wonderful quarry we have taken."

The King turned him about, and rode to his hall, Bisclavaret following at his side. Very near to his master the Were-Wolf went, like any dog, and had no care to seek again the wood. When the King had brought him safely to his own castle, he rejoiced greatly, for the beast was fair and strong, no mightier had any man seen. Much pride had the King in his marvellous beast. He held him so dear, that he bade all those who wished for his love, to cross the Wolf in naught, neither to strike him with a rod, but ever to see that he was richly fed and kennelled warm. This commandment the Court observed willingly. So all the day the Wolf sported with the lords, and at night he lay within the chamber of the King. There was not a man who did not make much of the beast, so frank was he and debonair. None had reason to do him wrong, for ever was he about his master, and for his part did evil to none. Every day were these two companions together, and all perceived that the King loved him as his friend.

Hearken now to that which chanced.

The King held a high Court, and bade his great vassals and barons, and all the lords of his venery to the feast. Never was there a goodlier feast, nor one set forth with sweeter show and pomp. Amongst those who were bidden, came that same knight who had the wife of Bisclavaret for dame. He came to the castle, richly gowned, with a fair company, but little he deemed whom he would find so near. Bisclavaret marked his foe the moment he stood within the hall. He ran towards him, and seized him with his fangs, in the King's very presence, and to the view of all. Doubtless he would have done him much mischief, had not the King called and chidden him, and threatened him with a rod. Once, and twice, again, the Wolf set upon the knight in the very light of day. All men marvelled at his malice, for sweet and serviceable was the beast, and to that hour had shown hatred of none. With one consent

the household deemed that this deed was done with full reason, and that the Wolf had suffered at the knight's hand some bitter wrong. Right wary of his foe was the knight until the feast had ended, and all the barons had taken farewell of their lord, and departed, each to his own house. With these, amongst the very first, went that lord whom Bisclavaret so fiercely had assailed. Small was the wonder that he was glad to go.

No long while after this adventure it came to pass that the courteous King would hunt in that forest where Bisclavaret was found. With the prince came his wolf, and a fair company. Now at nightfall the King abode within a certain lodge of that country, and this was known of that dame who before was the wife of Bisclavaret. In the morning the lady clothed her in her most dainty apparel, and hastened to the lodge, since she desired to speak with the King, and to offer him a rich present. When the lady entered in the chamber, neither man nor leash might restrain the fury of the Wolf. He became as a mad dog in his hatred and malice. Breaking from his bonds he sprang at the lady's face, and bit the nose from her visage. From every side men ran to the succour of the dame. They beat off the wolf from his prey, and for a little would have cut him in pieces with their swords. But a certain wise counsellor said to the King, "Sire, hearken now to me. This beast is always with you, and there is not one of us all who has not known him for long. He goes in and out amongst us, nor has molested any man, neither done wrong or felony to any, save only to this dame, one only time as we have seen. He has done evil to this lady, and to that knight, who is now the husband of the dame. Sire, she was once the wife of that lord who was so close and private to your heart, but who went, and none might find where he had gone. Now, therefore, put the dame in a sure place, and question her straitly, so that she may tell—if perchance she knows thereof—for what reason this Beast holds her in such mortal hate. For many a strange deed has chanced, as well we know, in this marvellous land of Brittany."

The King listened to these words, and deemed the counsel good. He laid hands upon the knight, and put the dame in surety in another place. He caused them to be questioned right straitly, so that their torment was very grievous. At the end, partly because of her distress, and partly by reason of her exceeding fear, the lady's lips were loosed, and she told her tale. She showed them of the betrayal of her lord, and how his raiment was stolen from the hollow stone. Since then she knew not where he went, nor what had befallen him, for he had never come again to his own land. Only, in her heart, well she deemed and was persuaded, that Bisclavaret was he.

Straightway the King demanded the vesture of his baron, whether this were to the wish of the lady, or whether it were against her wish. When the raiment was brought him, he caused it to be spread before Bisclavaret, but the Wolf made as though he had not seen. Then that cunning and crafty counsellor took the King apart, that he might give him a fresh rede.

"Sire," said he, "you do not wisely, nor well, to set this raiment before Bisclavaret, in the sight of all, In shame and much tribulation must he lay aside the beast, and again become man. Carry your wolf within your most secret chamber, and put his vestment therein. Then close the door upon him, and leave him alone for a space. So we shall see presently whether the ravening beast may indeed return to human shape."

The King carried the Wolf to his chamber, and shut the doors upon him fast. He delayed for a brief while, and taking two lords of his fellowship with him, came again to the room. Entering therein, all three, softly together, they found the knight sleeping in the King's bed, like a little child. The King ran swiftly to the bed and taking his friend in his arms, embraced and kissed him fondly, above a hundred times. When man's speech returned once more, he told him of his adventure. Then the King restored to his friend the fief that was stolen from him, and gave such rich gifts, moreover, as I cannot tell. As for the wife who had betrayed Bisclavaret, he bade her avoid his country, and chased her from the realm. So she went forth, she and her second lord together, to seek a more abiding city, and were no more seen.

The adventure that you have heard is no vain fable. Verily and indeed it chanced as I have said. The Lai of the Were-Wolf, truly, was written that it should ever be borne in mind.

### The Lai of the Honeysuckle

With a glad heart and right good mind will I tell the Lai that men call Honeysuckle; and that the truth may be known of all it shall be told as many a minstrel has sung it to my ear, and as the scribe hath written it for our delight. It is of Tristan and Isoude, the Queen. It is of a love which passed all other love, of love from whence came wondrous sorrow, and whereof they died together in the self-same day,

King Mark was sorely wrath with Tristan, his sister's son, and bade him avoid his realm, by reason of the love he bore the Queen. So Tristan repaired to his own land, and dwelt for a full year in South Wales, where he was born. Then since he might not come where he would be, Tristan took no heed to his ways, but let his life run waste to Death. Marvel not overmuch thereat, for he who loves beyond measure must ever be sick in heart and hope, when he may not win according to his wish. So sick in heart and mind was Tristan that he left his kingdom, and returned straight to the realm of his banishment, because that in Cornwall dwelt the Queen. There he hid privily in the deep forest, withdrawn from the eyes of men; only when the evening was come, and all things sought their rest, he prayed the peasant and other mean folk of that country, of their charity to grant him shelter for the night. From

the serf he gathered tidings of the King. These gave again to him what they, in turn, had taken from some out-lawed knight. Thus Tristan learned that when Pentecost was come King Mark purposed to hold high Court at Tintagel, and keep the feast with pomp and revelry; moreover that thither would ride Isoude, the Queen.

When Tristan heard this thing he rejoiced greatly, since the Queen might not adventure through the forest, except he saw her with his eyes. After the King had gone his way, Tristan entered within the wood, and sought the path by which the Queen must come. There he cut a wand from out a certain hazel-tree, and having trimmed and peeled it of its bark, with his dagger he carved his name upon the wood. This he placed upon her road, for well he knew that should the Queen but mark his name she would bethink her of her friend. Thus had it chanced before. For this was the sum of the writing set upon the wand, for Queen Isoude's heart alone: how that in this wild place Tristan had lurked and waited long, so that he might look upon her face, since without her he was already dead. Was it not with them as with the Honeysuckle and the Hazel tree she was passing by! So sweetly laced and taken were they in one close embrace, that thus they might remain whilst life endured. But should rough hands part so fond a clasping, the hazel would wither at the root, and the honeysuckle must fail. Fair friend, thus is the case with us, nor you without me, nor I without you.

Now the Queen fared at adventure down the forest path. She spied the hazel wand set upon her road, and well she remembered the letters and the name. She bade the knights of her company to draw rein, and dismount from their palfreys, so that they might refresh themselves a little. When her commandment was done she withdrew from them a space, and called to her Brangwaine, her maiden, and own familiar friend. Then she hastened within the wood, to come on him whom more she loved than any living soul. How great the joy between these twain, that once more they might speak together softly, face to face. Isoude showed him her delight. She showed in what fashion she strove to bring peace and concord betwixt Tristan and the King, and how grievously his banishment had weighed upon her heart. Thus sped the hour, till it was time for them to part; but when these lovers freed them from the other's arms, the tears were wet upon their cheeks. So Tristan returned to Wales, his own realm, even as his uncle bade. But for the joy that he had had of her, his friend, for her sweet face, and for the tender words that she had spoken, yea, and for that writing upon the wand, to remember all these things, Tristan, that cunning harper, wrought a new Lai, as shortly I have told you. Goatleaf, men call this song in English. Chevrefeuille it is named in French; but Goatleaf or Honey-suckle, here you have the very truth in the Lai that I have spoken.



**IMAGE 5.24: THE LAI OF THE HONEYSUCKLE |**  
Tristan and Iseult walk together through a forest with bright flowers.

**Author:** Reginald L. Knowles  
**Source:** Hathi Trust Digital Library  
**License:** Public Domain

## LANCELOT, THE KNIGHT OF THE CART

Chrétien de Troyes

Ca. 1175-1181 C.E.  
France

The French writer Wace translated Geoffrey of Monmouth's *History of the Kings of Britain*, one of the most popular sources for Arthurian stories, into French in 1155 C.E. (and added the idea of the Round Table, not found in previous works on King Arthur). Not long after that, Chrétien de Troyes began writing his five Arthurian stories: *Erec and Enide*, *Cligès*, *Lancelot*, *Yvain*, and *Perceval*. His importance in the history of Arthurian literature is considerable, since he introduces a French knight who is the best knight of King Arthur's court: Lancelot. Previously, British knights had been the greatest knight of the court, and other authors would follow Chrétien's lead: the German *Parzival* in Wolfram von Eschenbach's work, for example, becomes the best knight, while the anonymous author of *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* restores a British knight to the honored spot, and Thomas Malory in his *Le Morte d'Arthur* creates a British/French hybrid by making Galahad (the son of Lancelot and the British Elaine) the best

knight. It was also Chrétien who made Lancelot the lover of Queen Guinevere. Prior to Chrétien, other knights had been Guinevere's lover, but after Chrétien, the story was altered permanently. Many other writers before Chrétien had written about the Arthurian legends, but his version was considered the best (just as Homer's versions of Greek legends surpassed previous versions). All of his stories examine the difficulty of following multiple codes at once: the knight with his liege lord; the knightly lover with his lady; and the knight with his religion. To be loyal to one's lady can mean prioritizing her over one's liege lord, or even over one's religious and moral code. It is precisely this problem that Lancelot faces in Chrétien's story.

*Written by Laura J. Getty*

## CHRÉTIEN DETROYES: ARTHURIAN ROMANCES

### [LANCELOT, THE KNIGHT OF THE CART]

License: Public Domain

Chrétien de Troyes, Translated by W. W. Comfort

#### Part I: Vv. 1 Vv. 1840

Since my lady of Champagne wishes me to undertake to write a romance I shall very gladly do so, being so devoted to her service as to do anything in the world for her, without any intention of flattery. But if one were to introduce any flattery upon such an occasion, he might say, and I would subscribe to it, that this lady surpasses all others who are alive, just as the south wind which blows in May or April is more lovely than any other wind. But upon my word, I am not one to wish to flatter my lady. I will simply say: "The Countess is worth as many queens as a gem is worth of pearls and sards." Nay I shall make no comparison, and yet it is true in spite of me; I will say, however, that her command has more to do with this work than any thought or pains that I may expend upon it. Here Chretien begins his book about the Knight of the Cart. The material and the treatment of it are given and furnished to him by the Countess, and he is simply trying to carry out her concern and intention. Here he begins the story.

Upon a certain Ascension Day King Arthur had come from Caerleon, and had held a very magnificent court at Camelot as was fitting on such a day. After the feast the King did not quit his noble companions, of whom there were many in the hall. The Queen was present, too, and with her many a courteous lady able to converse in French. And Kay, who had furnished the meal, was eating with the others who had served the food. While Kay was sitting there at meat, behold there came to court a knight, well equipped and fully armed, and thus the knight appeared before the King as he sat among his lords. He gave him no greeting, but spoke out thus: "King Arthur, I hold in captivity knights, ladies, and damsels who belong to thy dominion and household; but it is not because of any intention to restore them to thee that I make reference to them here; rather do I wish to proclaim and serve thee notice that thou hast not the strength or the resources to enable thee to secure them again. And be assured that thou shalt die before thou canst ever succour them." The King replies that he must needs endure what he has not the power to change; nevertheless, he is filled with grief. Then the knight makes as if to go away, and turns about, without tarrying longer before the King; but after reaching the door of the hall, he does not go down the stairs, but stops and speaks from there these words: "King, if in thy court there is a single knight in whom thou hast such confidence that thou wouldest dare to entrust to him the Queen that he might escort her after me out into the woods whither I am going, I will promise to await him there, and will surrender to thee all the prisoners whom I hold in exile in my country if he is able to defend the Queen and if he succeeds in bringing her back again." Many who were in the palace heard this challenge, and the whole court was in an uproar. Kay, too, heard the news as he sat at meat with those who served. Leaving the table, he came straight to the King, and as if greatly enraged, he began to say: "O King, I have served thee long, faithfully, and loyally; now I take my leave, and shall go away, having no desire to serve thee more." The King was grieved at what he heard, and as soon as he could, he thus replied to him: "Is this serious, or a joke?" And Kay replied: "O King, fair sire, I have no desire to jest, and I take my leave quite seriously. No other reward or wages do I wish in return for the service I have given you. My mind is quite made up to go away immediately." "Is it in anger or in spite that you wish to go?" the King inquired; "seneschal, remain at court, as you have done hitherto, and be assured that I have nothing in the world which I would not give you at once in return for your consent to stay." "Sire," says Kay, "no need of that. I would not accept for each day's pay a measure of fine pure gold." Thereupon, the King in great dismay went off to seek the Queen. "My lady," he says, "you do not know the demand that the seneschal makes of me. He asks me for leave to go away, and says he will no longer stay at court; the reason of this I do not know. But he will do at your request what he will not do for me. Go to him now, my lady dear. Since he will not consent to stay for my sake, pray him to remain on your account, and if need be, fall at his feet, for I should never again be happy if I should lose his company." The King sends the Queen to the seneschal,



**IMAGE 5.25: IDYLLS OF THE KING** | Sir Lancelot rides away down a forest path toward a distant castle.

**Author:** Holger Thölkling

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

and she goes to him. Finding him with the rest, she went up to him, and said: "Kay, you may be very sure that I am greatly troubled by the news I have heard of you. I am grieved to say that I have been told it is your intention to leave the King. How does this come about? What motive have you in your mind? I cannot think that you are so sensible or courteous as usual. I want to ask you to remain: stay with us here, and grant my prayer." "Lady," he says, "I give you thanks; nevertheless, I shall not remain." The Queen again makes her request, and is joined by all the other knights. And Kay informs her that he is growing tired of a service which is unprofitable. Then the Queen prostrates herself at full length before his feet. Kay beseeches her to rise, but she says that she will never do so until he grants her request. Then Kay promises her to remain, provided the King and she will grant in advance a favour he is about to ask. "Kay," she says, "he will grant it, whatever it may be. Come now, and we shall tell him that upon this condition you will remain." So Kay goes away with the Queen to the King's presence. The Queen says: "I have had hard work to detain Kay; but I have brought him here to you with the understanding that you will do what he is going to ask." The King sighed with satisfaction, and said that he would perform whatever request he might make.

"Sire," says Kay, "hear now what I desire, and what is the gift you have promised me. I esteem myself very fortunate to gain such a boon with your consent. Sire, you have pledged your word that you would entrust to me my lady here, and that we should go after the knight who awaits us in the forest." Though the King is grieved, he trusts him with the charge, for he never went back upon his word. But it made him so ill-humoured and displeased that it plainly showed in his countenance. The Queen, for her part, was sorry too, and all those of the household say that Kay had made a proud, outrageous, and mad request. Then the King took the Queen by the hand, and said: "My lady, you must accompany Kay without making objection." And Kay said: "Hand her over to me now, and have no fear, for I shall bring her back perfectly happy and safe." The King gives her into his charge, and he takes her off. After them all the rest go out, and there is not one who is not sad. You must know that the seneschal was fully armed, and his horse was led into the middle of the courtyard, together with a palfrey, as is fitting, for the Queen. The Queen walked up to the palfrey, which was neither restive nor hard-mouthed. Grieving and sad, with a sigh the Queen mounts, saying to herself in a low voice, so that no one could hear: "Alas, alas, if you only knew it, I am sure you would never allow me without interference to be led away a step." She thought she had spoken in a very low tone; but Count Guinable heard her, who was standing by when she mounted. When they started away, as great a lament was made by all the men and women present as if she already lay dead upon a bier. They do not believe that she will ever in her life come back. The seneschal in his impudence takes her where that other knight is awaiting her. But no one was so much concerned as to undertake to follow him; until at last my lord Gawain thus addressed the King his uncle: "Sire," he says, "you have done a very foolish thing, which causes me great surprise; but if you will take my advice, while they are still near by, I and you will ride after them, and all those who wish to accompany us. For my part, I cannot restrain myself from going in pursuit of them at once. It would not be proper for us not to go after them, at least far enough to learn what is to become of the Queen, and how Kay is going to comport himself." "Ah, fair nephew," the King replied, "you have spoken courteously. And since you have undertaken the affair, order our horses to be led out bridled and saddled that there may be no delay in setting out."

The horses are at once brought out, all ready and with the saddles on. First the King mounts, then my lord Gawain, and all the others rapidly. Each one, wishing to be of the party, follows his own will and starts away. Some were armed, but there were not a few without their arms. My lord Gawain was armed, and he bade two squires lead by the bridle two extra steeds. And as they thus approached the forest, they saw Kay's horse running out; and they recognised him, and saw that both reins of the bridle were broken. The horse was running wild, the stirrup-straps all stained with blood, and the saddle-bow was broken and damaged. Every one was chagrined at this, and they nudged each other and shook their heads. My lord Gawain was riding far in advance of the rest of the party, and it was not long before he saw coming slowly a knight on a horse that was sore, painfully tired, and covered with sweat. The knight first saluted my lord Gawain, and his greeting my lord Gawain returned. Then the knight, recognising my lord Gawain, stopped and thus spoke to him: "You see, sir, my horse is in a sweat and in such case as to be no longer serviceable. I suppose that those two horses belong to you now, with the understanding that I shall return the service and the favour, I beg you to let me have one or the other of them, either as a loan or outright as a gift." And he answers him: "Choose whichever you prefer." Then he who was in dire distress did not try to select the better or the fairer or the larger of the horses, but leaped quickly upon the one which was nearer to him, and rode him off. Then the one he had just left fell dead, for he had ridden him hard that day, so that he was used up and overworked. The knight without delay goes pricking through the forest, and my lord Gawain follows in pursuit of him with all speed, until he reaches the bottom of a hill. And when he had gone some distance, he found the horse dead which he had given to the knight, and noticed that the ground had been trampled by horses, and that broken shields and lances lay strewn about, so that it seemed that there had been a great combat between several knights, and he was very sorry and grieved not to have been there. However, he did not stay there long, but rapidly passed on until he saw again by chance the knight all alone on foot, completely armed, with helmet laced, shield hanging from his neck, and with his sword girt on. He had overtaken a cart. In those days such a cart served the same pur-

pose as does a pillory now; and in each good town where there are more than three thousand such carts nowadays, in those times there was only one, and this, like our pillories, had to do service for all those who commit murder or treason, and those who are guilty of any delinquency, and for thieves who have stolen others' property or have forcibly seized it on the roads. Whoever was convicted of any crime was placed upon a cart and dragged through all the streets, and he lost henceforth all his legal rights, and was never afterward heard, honoured, or welcomed in any court. The carts were so dreadful in those days that the saying was then first used: "When thou dost see and meet a cart, cross thyself and call upon God, that no evil may befall thee." The knight on foot, and without a lance, walked behind the cart, and saw a dwarf sitting on the shafts, who held, as a driver does, a long goad in his hand. Then he cries out: "Dwarf, for God's sake, tell me now if thou hast seen my lady, the Queen, pass by here." The miserable, low-born dwarf would not give him any news of her, but replied: "If thou wilt get up into the cart I am driving thou shalt hear to-morrow what has happened to the Queen." Then he kept on his way without giving further heed. The knight hesitated only for a couple of steps before getting in. Yet, it was unlucky for him that he shrank from the disgrace, and did not jump in at once; for he will later rue his delay. But common sense, which is inconsistent with love's dictates, bids him refrain from getting in, warning him and counselling him to do and undertake nothing for which he may reap shame and disgrace. Reason, which dares thus speak to him, reaches only his lips, but not his heart; but love is enclosed within his heart, bidding him and urging him to mount at once upon the cart. So he jumps in, since love will have it so, feeling no concern about the shame, since he is prompted by love's commands. And my lord Gawain presses on in haste after the cart, and when he finds the knight sitting in it, his surprise is great. "Tell me," he shouted to the dwarf, "if thou knowest anything of the Queen." And he replied: "If thou art so much thy own enemy as is this knight who is sitting here, get in with him, if it be thy pleasure, and I will drive thee along with him." When my lord Gawain heard that, he considered it great foolishness, and said that he would not get in, for it would be dishonourable to exchange a horse for a cart: "Go on, and wherever thy journey lies, I will follow after thee."

Thereupon they start ahead, one mounted on his horse, the other two riding in the cart, and thus they proceed in company. Late in the afternoon they arrive at a town, which, you must know, was very rich and beautiful. All three entered through the gate; the people are greatly amazed to see the knight borne upon the cart, and they take no pains to conceal their feelings, but small and great and old and young shout taunts at him in the streets, so that the knight hears many vile and scornful words at his expense. They all inquire: "To what punishment is this knight to be consigned? Is he to be rayed, or hanged, or drowned, or burned upon a fire of thorns? Tell us, thou dwarf, who art driving him, in what crime was he caught? Is he convicted of robbery? Is he a murderer, or a criminal?" And to all this the dwarf made no response, vouchsafing to them no reply. He conducts the knight to a lodging-place; and Gawain follows the dwarf closely to a tower, which stood on the same level over against the town. Beyond there stretched a meadow, and the tower was built close by, up on a lofty eminence of rock, whose face formed a sharp precipice. Following the horse and cart, Gawain entered the tower. In the hall they met a damsels elegantly attired, than whom there was none fairer in the land, and with her they saw coming two fair and charming maidens. As soon as they saw my lord Gawain, they received him joyously and saluted him, and then asked news about the other knight: "Dwarf, of what crime is this knight guilty, whom thou dost drive like a lame man?" He would not answer her question, but he made the knight get out of the cart, and then he withdrew, without their knowing whither he went. Then my lord Gawain dismounts, and valets come forward to relieve the two knights of their armour. The damsels ordered two green mantles to be brought, which they put on. When the hour for supper came, a sumptuous repast was set. The damsels sat at table beside my lord Gawain. They would not have changed their lodging-place to seek any other, for all that evening the damsels showed them gear honour, and provided them with fair and pleasant company.

When they had sat up long enough, two long, high beds were prepared in the middle of the hall; and there was another bed alongside, fairer and more splendid than the rest; for, as the story testifies, it possessed all the excellence that one could think of in a bed. When the time came to retire, the damsels took both the guests to whom she had offered her hospitality; she shows them the two fine, long, wide beds, and says: "These two beds are set up here for the accommodation of your bodies; but in that one yonder no one ever lay who did not merit it: it was not set up to be used by you." The knight who came riding on the cart replies at once: "Tell me, he says, "for what cause this bed is inaccessible." Being thoroughly informed of this, she answers unhesitatingly: "It is not your place to ask or make such an inquiry. Any knight is disgraced in the land after being in a cart, and it is not fitting that he should concern himself with the matter upon which you have questioned me; and most of all it is not right that he should lie upon the bed, for he would soon pay dearly for his act. So rich a couch has not been prepared for you, and you would pay dearly for ever harbouring such a thought." He replies: "You will see about that presently." .... "Am I to see it?" .... "Yes." .... "It will soon appear." .... "By my head," the knight replies, "I know not who is to pay the penalty. But whoever may object or disapprove, I intend to lie upon this bed and repose there at my ease." Then he at once disrobed in the bed, which was long and raised half an ell above the other two, and was covered with a yellow cloth of silk and a coverlet with gilded stars. The furs were not of skinned vair but of sable; the covering he had on him

would have been fitting for a king. The mattress was not made of straw or rushes or of old mats. At midnight there descended from the rafters suddenly a lance, as with the intention of pinning the knight through the flanks to the coverlet and the white sheets where he lay. To the lance there was attached a pennon all ablaze. The coverlet, the bedclothes, and the bed itself all caught fire at once. And the tip of the lance passed so close to the knight's side that it cut the skin a little, without seriously wounding him. Then the knight got up, put out the fire and, taking the lance, swung it in the middle of the hall, all this without leaving his bed; rather did he lie down again and slept as securely as at first.

In the morning, at daybreak, the damsel of the tower had Mass celebrated on their account, and had them rise and dress. When Mass had been celebrated for them, the knight who had ridden in the cart sat down pensively at a window, which looked out upon the meadow, and he gazed upon the fields below. The damsel came to another window close by, and there my lord Gawain conversed with her privately for a while about something, I know not what. I do not know what words were uttered, but while they were leaning on the window-sill they saw carried along the river through the fields a bier, upon which there lay a knight, and alongside three damsels walked, mourning bitterly. Behind the bier they saw a crowd approaching, with a tall knight in front, leading a fair lady by the horse's rein. The knight at the window knew that it was the Queen. He continued to gaze at her attentively and with delight as long as she was visible. And when he could no longer see her, he was minded to throw himself out and break his body down below. And he would have let himself fall out had not my lord Gawain seen him, and drawn him back, saying: "I beg you, sire, be quiet now. For God's sake, never think again of committing such a mad deed. It is wrong for you to despise your life." "He is perfectly right," the damsel says; "for will not the news of his disgrace be known everywhere? Since he has been upon the cart, he has good reason to wish to die, for he would be better dead than alive. His life henceforth is sure to be one of shame, vexation, and unhappiness." Then the knights asked for their armour, and armed themselves, the damsel treating them courteously, with distinction and generosity; for when she had joked with the knight and ridiculed him enough, she presented him with a horse and lance as a token of her goodwill. The knights then courteously and politely took leave of the damsel, first saluting her, and then going off in the direction taken by the crowd they had seen. Thus they rode out from the town without addressing them. They proceeded quickly in the direction they had seen taken by the Queen, but they did not overtake the procession, which had advanced rapidly. After leaving the fields, the knights enter an enclosed place, and find a beaten road. They advanced through the woods until it might be six o'clock, and then at a crossroads they met a damsel, whom they both saluted, each asking and requesting her to tell them, if she knows, whither the Queen has been taken. Replying intelligently, she said to them: "If you would pledge me your word, I could set you on the right road and path, and I would tell you the name of the country and of the knight who is conducting her; but whoever would essay to enter that country must endure sore trials, for before he could reach there he must suffer much." Then my lord Gawain replies: "Damsel, so help me God, I promise to place all my strength at your disposal and service, whenever you please, if you will tell me now the truth." And he who had been on the cart did not say that he would pledge her all his strength; but he proclaims, like one whom love makes rich, powerful and bold for any enterprise, that at once and without hesitation he will promise her anything she desires, and he puts himself altogether at her disposal. "Then I will tell you the truth," says she. Then the damsel relates to them the following story: "In truth, my lords, Meleagant, a tall and powerful knight, son of the King of Gorre, has taken her off into the kingdom whence no foreigner returns, but where he must performe remain in servitude and banishment." Then they ask her: "Damsel, where is this country? Where can we find the way thither?" She replies: "That you shall quickly learn; but you may be sure that you will meet with many obstacles and difficult passages, for it is not easy to enter there except with the permission of the king, whose name is Bademagu; however, it is possible to enter by two very perilous paths and by two very difficult passage-ways. One is called the water-bridge, because the bridge is under water, and there is the same amount of water beneath it as above it, so that the bridge is exactly in the middle; and it is only a foot and a half in width and in thickness. This choice is certainly to be avoided. and yet it is the less dangerous of the two. In addition there are a number of other obstacles of which I will say nothing. The other bridge is still more impracticable and much more perilous, never having been crossed by man. It is just like a sharp sword, and therefore all the people call it 'the sword-bridge'. Now I have told you all the truth I know." But they ask of her once again: "Damsel, deign to show us these two passages." To which the damsel makes reply: "This road here is the most direct to the water-bridge, and that one yonder leads straight to the sword-bridge." Then the knight, who had been on the cart, says: "Sire, I am ready to share with you without prejudice: take one of these two routes, and leave the other one to me; take whichever you prefer." "In truth," my lord Gawain replies, "both of them are hard and dangerous: I am not skilled in making such a choice, and hardly know which of them to take; but it is not right for me to hesitate when you have left the choice to me: I will choose the water-bridge." The other answers: "Then I must go uncomplainingly to the sword-bridge, which I agree to do." Thereupon, they all three part, each one commanding the others very courteously to God. And when she sees them departing, she says: "Each one of you owes me a favour of my choosing, whenever I may choose to ask it. Take care not to forget that." "We shall surely not forget it,

sweet friend," both the knights call out. Then each one goes his own way, and he of the cart is occupied with deep reflections, like one who has no strength or defence against love which holds him in its sway. His thoughts are such that he totally forgets himself, and he knows not whether he is alive or dead, forgetting even his own name, not knowing whether he is armed or not, or whither he is going or whence he came. Only one creature he has in mind, and for her his thought is so occupied that he neither sees nor hears aught else. And his horse bears him along rapidly, following no crooked road, but the best and the most direct; and thus proceeding unguided, he brings him into an open plain. In this plain there was a ford, on the other side of which a knight stood armed, who guarded it, and in his company there was a damsel who had come on a palfrey. By this time the afternoon was well advanced, and yet the knight, unchanged and unwearied, pursued his thoughts. The horse, being very thirsty, sees clearly the ford, and as soon as he sees it, hastens toward it. Then he on the other side cries out: "Knight, I am guarding the ford, and forbid you to cross." He neither gives him heed, nor hears his words, being still deep in thought. In the meantime, his horse advanced rapidly toward the water. The knight calls out to him that he will do wisely to keep at a distance from the ford, for there is no passage that way; and he swears by the heart within his breast that he will smite him if he enters the water. But his threats are not heard, and he calls out to him a third time: "Knight, do not enter the ford against my will and prohibition; for, by my head, I shall strike you as soon as I see you in the ford." But he is so deep in thought that he does not hear him. And the horse, quickly leaving the bank, leaps into the ford and greedily begins to drink. And the knight says he shall pay for this, that his shield and the hauberk he wears upon his back shall afford him no protection. First, he puts his horse at a gallop, and from a gallop he urges him to a run, and he strikes the knight so hard that he knocks him down flat in the ford which he had forbidden him to cross. His lance flew from his hand and the shield from his neck. When he feels the water, he shivers, and though stunned, he jumps to his feet, like one aroused from sleep, listening and looking about him with astonishment, to see who it can be who has struck him. Then face to face with the other knight, he said: "Vassal, tell me why you have struck me, when I was not aware of your presence, and when I had done you no harm." "Upon my word, you had wronged me," the other says: "did you not treat me disdainfully when I forbade you three times to cross the ford, shouting at you as loudly as I could? You surely heard me challenge you at least two or three times, and you entered in spite of me, though I told you I should strike you as soon as I saw you in the ford." Then the knight replies to him: "Whoever heard you or saw you, let him be damned, so far as I am concerned. I was probably deep in thought when you forbade me to cross the ford. But be assured that I would make you reset it, if I could just lay one of my hands on your bridle." And the other replies: "Why, what of that? If you dare, you may seize my bridle here and now. I do not esteem your proud threats so much as a handful of ashes." And he replies: "That suits me perfectly. However the affair may turn out, I should like to lay my hands on you." Then the other knight advances to the middle of the ford, where the other lays his left hand upon his bridle, and his right hand upon his leg, pulling, dragging, and pressing him so roughly that he remonstrates, thinking that he would pull his leg out of his body. Then he begs him to let go, saying: "Knight, if it please thee to fight me on even terms, take thy shield and horse and lance, and joust with me." He answers: "That will I not do, upon my word; for I suppose thou wouldest run away as soon as thou hadst escaped my grip." Hearing this, he was much ashamed, and said: "Knight, mount thy horse, in confidence for I will pledge thee loyally my word that I shall not flinch or run away." Then once again he answers him: "First, thou wilt have to swear to that, and I insist upon receiving thy oath that thou wilt neither run away nor flinch, nor touch me, nor come near me until thou shalt see me on my horse; I shall be treating thee very generously, if, when thou art in my hands, I let thee go." He can do nothing but give his oath; and when the other hears him swear, he gathers up his shield and lance which were floating in the ford and by this time had drifted well downstream; then he returns and takes his horse. After catching and mounting him, he seizes the shield by the shoulder-straps and lays his lance in rest. Then each spurs toward the other as fast as their horses can carry them. And he who had to defend the ford first attacks the other, striking him so hard that his lance is completely splintered. The other strikes him in return so that he throws him prostrate into the ford, and the water closes over him. Having accomplished that, he draws back and dismounts, thinking he could drive and chase away a hundred such. While he draws from the scabbard his sword of steel, the other jumps up and draws his excellent flashing blade. Then they clash again, advancing and covering themselves with the shields which gleam with gold. Ceaselessly and without repose they wield their swords; they have the courage to deal so many blows that the battle finally is so protracted that the Knight of the Cart is greatly ashamed in his heart, thinking that he is making a sorry start in the way he has undertaken, when he has spent so much time in defeating a single knight. If he had met yesterday a hundred such, he does not think or believe that they could have withstood him; so now he is much grieved and wroth to be in such an exhausted state that he is missing his strokes and losing time. Then he runs at him and presses him so hard that the other knight gives way and flees. However reluctant he may be, he leaves the ford and crossing free. But the other follows him in pursuit until he falls forward upon his hands; then he of the cart runs up to him, swearing by all he sees that he shall rue the day when he upset him in the ford and disturbed his reverie. The damsel, whom the knight had with him, upon hearing the threats, is in great fear, and begs him for her sake to forbear from killing

him; but he tells her that he must do so, and can show him no mercy for her sake, in view of the shameful wrong that he has done him. Then, with sword drawn, he approaches the knight who cries in sore dismay: "For God's sake and for my own, show me the mercy I ask of you." And he replies: "As God may save me, no one ever sinned so against me that I would not show him mercy once, for God's sake as is right, if he asked it of me in God's name. And so on thee I will have mercy; for I ought not to refuse thee when thou hast besought me. But first, thou shalt give me thy word to constitute thyself my prisoner whenever I may wish to summon thee." Though it was hard to do so, he promised him. At once the damsel said: "O knight, since thou hast granted the mercy he asked of thee, if ever thou hast broken any bonds, for my sake now be merciful and release this prisoner from his parole. Set him free at my request, upon condition that when the time comes, I shall do my utmost to repay thee in any way that thou shalt choose." Then he declares himself satisfied with the promise she has made, and sets the knight at liberty. Then she is ashamed and anxious, thinking that he will recognise her, which she did not wish. But he goes away at once, the knight and the damsel commanding him to God, and taking leave of him. He grants them leave to go, while he himself pursues his way, until late in the afternoon he met a damsel coming, who was very fair and charming, well attired and richly dressed. The damsel greets him prudently and courteously, and he replies: "Damsel, God grant you health and happiness." Then the damsel said to him: "Sire, my house is prepared for you, if you will accept my hospitality, but you shall find shelter there only on condition that you will lie with me; upon these terms I propose and make the offer." Not a few there are who would have thanked her five hundred times for such a gift; but he is much displeased, and made a very different answer: "Damsel, I thank you for the offer of your house, and esteem it highly, but, if you please, I should be very sorry to lie with you." "By my eyes," the damsel says, "then I retract my offer." And he, since it is unavoidable, lets her have her way, though his heart grieves to give consent. He feels only reluctance now; but greater distress will be his when it is time to go to bed. The damsel, too, who leads him away, will pass through sorrow and heaviness. For it is possible that she will love him so that she will not wish to part with him. As soon as he had granted her wish and desire, she escorts him to a fortified place, than which there was none fairer in Thessaly; for it was entirely enclosed by a high wall and a deep moat, and there was no man within except him whom she brought with her.

Here she had constructed for her residence a quantity of handsome rooms, and a large and roomy hall. Riding along a river bank, they approached their lodging-place, and a drawbridge was lowered to allow them to pass. Crossing the bridge, they entered in, and found the hall open with its roof of tiles. Through the open door they pass, and see a table laid with a broad white cloth, upon which the dishes were set, and the candles burning in their stands, and the gilded silver drinking-cups, and two pots of wine, one red and one white. Standing beside the table, at the end of a bench, they found two basins of warm water in which to wash their hands, with a richly embroidered towel, all white and clean, with which to dry their hands. No valets, servants, or squires were to be found or seen. The knight, removing his shield from about his neck, hangs it upon a hook, and, taking his lance, lays it above upon a rack. Then he dismounts from his horse, as does the damsel from hers. The knight, for his part, was pleased that she did not care to wait for him to help her to dismount. Having dismounted, she runs directly to a room and brings him a short mantle of scarlet cloth which she puts on him. The hall was by no means dark; for beside the light from the stars, there were many large twisted candles lighted there, so that the illumination was very bright. When she had thrown the mantle about his shoulders, she said to him: "Friend, here is the water and the towel; there is no one to present or offer it to you except me whom you see. Wash your hands, and then sit down, when you feel like doing so. The hour and the meal, as you can see, demand that you should do so." He washes, and then gladly and readily takes his seat, and she sits down beside him, and they eat and drink together, until the time comes to leave the table.

When they had risen from the table, the damsel said to the knight: "Sire, if you do not object, go outside and amuse yourself; but, if you please, do not stay after you think I must be in bed. Feel no concern or embarrassment; for then you may come to me at once, if you will keep the promise you have made." And he replies: "I will keep my word, and will return when I think the time has come." Then he went out, and stayed in the courtyard until he thought it was time to return and keep the promise he had made. Going back into the hall, he sees nothing of her who would be his mistress; for she was not there. Not finding or seeing her, he said: "Wherever she may be, I shall look for her until I find her." He makes no delay in his search, being bound by the promise he had made her. Entering one of the rooms, he hears a damsel cry aloud, and it was the very one with whom he was about to lie. At the same time, he sees the door of another room standing open, and stepping toward it, he sees right before his eyes a knight who had thrown her down, and was holding her naked and prostrate upon the bed. She, thinking that he had come of course to help her, cried aloud: "Help, help, thou knight, who art my guest. If thou dost not take this man away from me, I shall find no one to do so; if thou dost not succour me speedily, he will wrong me before thy eyes. Thou art the one to lie with me, in accordance with thy promise; and shall this man by force accomplish his wish before thy eyes? Gentle knight, exert thyself, and make haste to bear me aid." He sees that the other man held the damsel brutally uncovered to the waist, and he is ashamed and angered to see him assault her so; yet it is not jealousy he feels, nor will he be made a cuckold by him. At the door there stood as guards two knights completely

armed and with swords drawn. Behind them there stood four men-at-arms, each armed with an axe the sort with which you could split a cow down the back as easily as a root of juniper or broom. The knight hesitated at the door, and thought: "God, what can I do? I am engaged in no less an affair than the quest of Queen Guinevere. I ought not to have the heart of a hare, when for her sake I have engaged in such a quest. If cowardice puts its heart in me, and if I follow its dictates, I shall never attain what I seek. I am disgraced, if I stand here; indeed, I am ashamed even to have thought of holding back. My heart is very sad and oppressed: now I am so ashamed and distressed that I would gladly die for having hesitated here so long. I say it not in pride: but may God have mercy on me if I do not prefer to die honourably rather than live a life of shame! If my path were unobstructed, and if these men gave me leave to pass through without restraint, what honour would I gain? Truly, in that case the greatest coward alive would pass through; and all the while I hear this poor creature calling for help constantly, and reminding me of my promise, and reproaching me with bitter taunts." Then he steps to the door, thrusting in his head and shoulders; glancing up, he sees two swords descending. He draws back, and the knights could not check their strokes: they had wielded them with such force that the swords struck the floor, and both were broken in pieces. When he sees that the swords are broken, he pays less attention to the axes, fearing and dreading them much less. Rushing in among them, he strikes first one guard in the side and then another. The two who are nearest him he jostles and thrusts aside, throwing them both down flat; the third missed his stroke at him, but the fourth, who attacked him, strikes him so that he cuts his mantle and shirt, and slices the white flesh on his shoulder so that the blood trickles down from the wound. But he, without delay, and without complaining of his wound, presses on more rapidly, until he strikes between the temples him who was assaulting his hostess. Before he departs, he will try to keep his pledge to her. He makes him stand up reluctantly. Meanwhile, he who had missed striking him comes at him as fast as he can and, raising his arm again, expects to split his head to the teeth with the axe. But the other, alert to defend himself, thrusts the knight toward him in such a way that he receives the axe just where the shoulder joins the neck, so that they are cleaved apart. Then the knight seizes the axe, wresting it quickly from him who holds it; then he lets go the knight whom he still held, and looks to his own defence; for the knights from the door, and the three men with axes are all attacking him fiercely. So he leaped quickly between the bed and the wall, and called to them: "Come on now, all of you. If there were thirty-seven of you, you would have all the fight you wish, with me so favourably placed; I shall never be overcome by you." And the damsel watching him, exclaimed: "By my eyes, you need have no thought of that henceforth where I am." Then at once she dismisses the knights and the men-at-arms, who retire from there at once, without delay or objection. And the damsel continues: "Sire you have well defended me against the men of my household. Come now, and I'll lead you on." Hand in hand they enter the hall, but he was not at all pleased, and would have willingly dispensed with her.

In the midst of the hall a bed had been set up, the sheets of which were by no means soiled, but were white and wide and well spread out. The bed was not of shredded straw or of coarse spreads. But a covering of two silk cloths had been laid upon the couch. The damsel lay down first, but without removing her chemise. He had great trouble in removing his hose and in untying the knots. He sweated with the trouble of it all; yet, in the midst of all the trouble, his promise impels and drives him on. Is this then an actual force? Yes, virtually so; for he feels that he is in duty bound to take his place by the damsel's side. It is his promise that urges him and dictates his act. So he lies down at once, but like her, he does not remove his shirt. He takes good care not to touch her; and when he is in bed, he turns away from her as far as possible, and speaks not a word to her, like a monk to whom speech is forbidden. Not once does he look at her, nor show her any courtesy. Why not? Because his heart does not go out to her. She was certainly very fair and winsome, but not every one is pleased and touched by what is fair and winsome. The knight has only one heart, and this one is really no longer his, but has been entrusted to some one else, so that he cannot bestow it elsewhere. Love, which holds all hearts beneath its sway, requires it to be lodged in a single place. All hearts? No, only those which it esteems. And he whom love deigns to control ought to prize himself the more. Love prized his heart so highly that it constrained it in a special manner, and made him so proud of this distinction that I am not inclined to find fault with him, if he lets alone what love forbids, and remains fixed where it desires. The maiden clearly sees and knows that he dislikes her company and would gladly dispense with it, and that, having no desire to win her love, he would not attempt to woo her. So she said: "My lord, if you will not feel hurt, I will leave and return to bed in my own room, and you will be more comfortable. I do not believe that you are pleased with my company and society. Do not esteem me less if I tell you what I think. Now take your rest all night, for you have so well kept your promise that I have no right to make further request of you. So I commend you to God; and shall go away." Thereupon she arises: the knight does not object, but rather gladly lets her go, like one who is the devoted lover of some one else; the damsel clearly perceived this, and went to her room, where she undressed completely and retired, saying to herself: "Of all the knights I have ever known, I never knew a single knight whom I would value the third part of an angevin in comparison with this one. As I understand the case, he has on hand a more perilous and grave affair than any ever undertaken by a knight; and may God grant that he succeed in it." Then she fell asleep, and remained in bed until the next day's dawn appeared.

At daybreak she awakes and gets up. The knight awakes too, dressing, and putting on his arms, without waiting for any help. Then the damsel comes and sees that he is already dressed. Upon seeing him, she says: "May this day be a happy one for you." "And may it be the same to you, damsel," the knight replies, adding that he is waiting anxiously for some one to bring out his horse. The maiden has some one fetch the horse, and says: "Sire, I should like to accompany you for some distance along the road, if you would agree to escort and conduct me according to the customs and practices which were observed before we were made captive in the kingdom of Logres." In those days the customs and privileges were such that, if a knight found a damsel or lorn maid alone, and if he cared for his fair name, he would no more treat her with dishonour than he would cut his own throat. And if he assaulted her, he would be disgraced for ever in every court. But if, while she was under his escort, she should be won at arms by another who engaged him in battle, then this other knight might do with her what he pleased without receiving shame or blame. This is why the damsel said she would go with him, if he had the courage and willingness to safe guard her in his company, so that no one should do her any harm. And he says to her: "No one shall harm you, I promise you, unless he harm me first." "Then," she says, "I will go with you." She orders her palfrey to be saddled, and her command is obeyed at once. Her palfrey was brought together with the knight's horse. Without the aid of any squire, they both mount, and rapidly ride away. She talks to him, but not caring for her words, he pays no attention to what she says. He likes to think, but dislikes to talk. Love very often inflicts afresh the wound it has given him. Yet, he applied no poultice to the wound to cure it and make it comfortable, having no intention or desire to secure a poultice or to seek a physician, unless the wound becomes more painful. Yet, there is one whose remedy he would gladly seek .... They follow the roads and paths in the right direction until they come to a spring, situated in the middle of a field, and bordered by a stone basin. Some one had forgotten upon the stone a comb of gilded ivory. Never since ancient times has wise man or fool seen such a comb. In its teeth there was almost a handful of hair belonging to her who had used the comb.

When the damsel notices the spring, and sees the stone, she does not wish her companion to see it; so she turns off in another direction. And he, agreeably occupied with his own thoughts, does not at once remark that she is leading him aside; but when at last he notices it, he is afraid of being beguiled, thinking that she is yielding and is going out of the way in order to avoid some danger. "See here, damsel," he cries, "you are not going right; come this way! No one, I think, ever went straight who left this road." "Sire, this is a better way for us," the damsel says, "I am sure of it." Then he replies to her: "I don't know, damsel, what you think; but you can plainly see that the beaten path lies this way; and since I have started to follow it, I shall not turn aside. So come now, if you will, for I shall continue along this way." Then they go forward until they come near the stone basin and see the comb. The knight says: "I surely never remember to have seen so beautiful a comb as this." "Let me have it," the damsel says. "Willingly, damsel," he replies. Then he stoops over and picks it up. While holding it, he looks at it steadfastly, gazing at the hair until the damsel begins to laugh. When he sees her doing so, he begs her to tell him why she laughs. And she says: "Never mind, for I will never tell you." "Why not?" he asks. "Because I don't wish to do so." And when he hears that, he implores her like one who holds that lovers ought to keep faith mutually: "Damsel, if you love anything passionately, by that I implore and conjure and beg you not to conceal from me the reason why you laugh." "Your appeal is so strong," she says, "that I will tell you and keep nothing back. I am sure, as I am of anything, that this comb belonged to the Queen. And you may take my word that those are strands of the Queen's hair which you see to be so fair and light and radiant, and which are clinging in the teeth of the comb; they surely never grew anywhere else." Then the knight replied: "Upon my word, there are plenty of queens and kings; what queen do you mean?" And she answered: "In truth, fair sire, it is of King Arthur's wife I speak." When he hears that, he has not strength to keep from bowing his head over his saddle-bow. And when the damsel sees him thus, she is amazed and terrified, thinking he is about to fall. Do not blame her for her fear, for she thought him in a faint. He might as well have swooned, so near was he to doing so; for in his heart he felt such grief that for a long time he lost his colour and power of speech. And the damsel dismounts, and runs as quickly as possible to support and succour him; for she would not have wished for anything to see him fall. When he saw her, he felt ashamed, and said: "Why do you need to bear me aid?" You must not suppose that the damsel told him why; for he would have been ashamed and distressed, and it would have annoyed and troubled him, if she had confessed to him the truth. So she took good care not to tell the truth, but tactfully answered him: "Sire, I dismounted to get the comb; for I was so anxious to hold it in my hand that I could not longer wait." Willing that she should have the comb, he gives it to her, first pulling out the hair so carefully that he tears none of it. Never will the eye of man see anything receive such honour as when he begins to adore these tresses. A hundred thousand times he raises them to his eyes and mouth, to his forehead and face: he manifests his joy in every way, considering himself rich and happy now. He lays them in his bosom near his heart, between the shirt and the flesh. He would not exchange them for a cartload of emeralds and carbuncles, nor does he think that any sore or illness can afflict him now; he holds in contempt essence of pearl, treacle, and the cure for pleurisy; even for St. Martin and St. James he has no need; for he has such confidence in this hair that he requires no other aid. But what was this hair like? If I tell the truth about it, you will think I am a mad teller of lies. When the

mart is full at the yearly fair of St. Denis, and when the goods are most abundantly displayed, even then the knight would not take all this wealth, unless he had found these tresses too. And if you wish to know the truth, gold a hundred thousand times refined, and melted down as many times, would be darker than is night compared with the brightest summer day we have had this year, if one were to see the gold and set it beside this hair. But why should I make a long story of it? The damsels mounts again with the comb in her possession; while he revels and delights in the tresses in his bosom. Leaving the plain, they come to a forest and take a short cut through it until they come to a narrow place, where they have to go in single file; for it would have been impossible to ride two horses abreast. Just where the way was narrowest, they see a knight approach. As soon as she saw him, the damsels recognised him, and said: "Sir knight, do you see him who yonder comes against us all armed and ready for a battle? I know what his intention is: he thinks now that he cannot fail to take me off defenceless with him. He loves me, but he is very foolish to do so. In person, and by messenger, he has been long wooing me. But my love is not within his reach, for I would not love him under any consideration, so help me God! I would kill myself rather than bestow my love on him. I do not doubt that he is delighted now, and is as satisfied as if he had me already in his power. But now I shall see what you can do, and I shall see how brave you are, and it will become apparent whether your escort can protect me. If you can protect me now, I shall not fail to proclaim that you are brave and very worthy." And he answered her: "Go on, go on!" which was as much as to say: "I am not concerned; there is no need of your being worried about what you have said."

While they were proceeding, talking thus, the knight, who was alone, rode rapidly toward them on the run. He was the more eager to make haste, because he felt more sure of success; he felt that he was lucky now to see her whom he most dearly loves. As soon as he approaches her, he greets her with words that come from his heart: "Welcome to her, whence-soever she comes, whom I most desire, but who has hitherto caused me least joy and most distress!" It is not fitting that she should be so stingy of her speech as not to return his greeting, at least by word of mouth. The knight is greatly elated when the damsels greets him; though she does not take the words seriously, and the effort costs her nothing. Yet, if he had at this moment been victor in a tournament, he would not have so highly esteemed himself, nor thought he had won such honour and renown. Being now more confident of his worth, he grasped the bridle rein, and said: "Now I shall lead you away: I have to-day sailed well on my course to have arrived at last at so good a port. Now my troubles are at an end: after dangers, I have reached a haven; after sorrow, I have attained happiness; after pain, I have perfect health; now I have accomplished my desire, when I find you in such case that I can without resistance lead you away with me at once." Then she says: "You have no advantage; for I am under this knight's escort." "Surely, the escort is not worth much," he says, "and I am going to lead you off at once. This knight would have time to eat a bushel of salt before he could defend you from me; I think I could never meet a knight from whom I should not win you. And since I find you here so opportunely, though he too may do his best to prevent it, yet I will take you before his very eyes, however disgruntled he may be." The other is not angered by all the pride he hears expressed, but without any impudence or boasting, he begins thus to challenge him for her: "Sire, don't be in a hurry, and don't waste your words, but speak a little reasonably. You shall not be deprived of as much of her as rightly belongs to you. You must know, however, that the damsels has come hither under my protection. Let her alone now, for you have detained her long enough!" The other gives them leave to burn him, if he does not take her away in spite of him. Then the other says: "It would not be right for me to let you take her away; I would sooner fight with you. But if we should wish to fight, we could not possibly do it in this narrow road. Let us go to some level place—a meadow or an open field." And he replies that that will suit him perfectly: "Certainly, I agree to that: you are quite right, this road is too narrow. My horse is so much hampered here that I am afraid he will crush his flank before I can turn him around." Then with great difficulty he turns, and his horse escapes without any wound or harm. Then he says: "To be sure, I am much chagrined that we have not met in a favourable spot and in the presence of other men, for I should have been glad to have them see which is the better of us two. Come on now, let us begin our search: we shall find in the vicinity some large, broad, and open space." Then they proceed to a meadow, where there were maids, knights, and damsels playing at divers games in this pleasant place. They were not all engaged in idle sport, but were playing backgammon and chess or dice, and were evidently agreeably employed. Most were engaged in such games as these; but the others there were engaged in sports, dancing, singing, tumbling, leaping, and wrestling with each other.

A knight somewhat advanced in years was on the other side of the meadow, seared upon a sorrel Spanish steed. His bridle and saddle were of gold, and his hair was turning grey. One hand hung at his side with easy grace. The weather being fine, he was in his shirt sleeves, with a short mantle of scarlet cloth and fur slung over his shoulders, and thus he watched the games and dances. On the other side of the field, close by a path, there were twenty-three knights mounted on good Irish steeds. As soon as the three new arrivals come into view, they all cease their play and shout across the fields: "See, yonder comes the knight who was driven in the cart! Let no one continue his sport while he is in our midst. A curse upon him who cares or deigns to play so long as he is here!" Meanwhile he who loved the damsels and claimed her as his own, approached the old knight, and said: "Sire, I have attained great hap-

piness; let all who will now hear me say that God has granted me the thing that I have always most desired; His gift would not have been so great had He crowned me as king, nor would I have been so indebted to Him, nor would I have so profited; for what I have gained is fair and good." "I know not yet if it be thine," the knight replies to his son. But the latter answers him: "Don't you know? Can't you see it, then? For God's sake, sire, have no further doubt, when you see that I have her in my possession. In this forest, whence I come, I met her as she was on her way. I think God had fetched her there for me, and I have taken her for my own." "I do not know whether this will be allowed by him whom I see coming after thee; he looks as if he is coming to demand her of thee." During this conversation the dancing had ceased because of the knight whom they saw, nor were they gaily playing any more because of the disgust and scorn they felt for him. But the knight without delay came up quickly after the damsels, and said: "Let the damsels alone, knight, for you have no right to her! If you dare, I am willing at once to fight with you in her defence." Then the old knight remarked: "Did I not know it? Fair son, detain the damsels no longer, but let her go." He does not relish this advice, and swears that he will not give her up: "May God never grant me joy if I give her up to him! I have her, and I shall hold on to her as something that is mine own. The shoulder-strap and all the armlets of my shield shall first be broken, and I shall have lost all confidence in my strength and arms, my sword and lance, before I will surrender my mistress to him." And his father says: "I shall not let thee fight for any reason thou mayest urge. Thou art too confident of thy bravery. So obey my command." But he in his pride replies: "What? Am I a child to be terrified? Rather will I make my boast that there is not within the sea-girt land any knight, wheresoever he may dwell, so excellent that I would let him have her, and whom I should not expect speedily to defeat." The father answers: "Fair son, I do not doubt that thou dost really think so, for thou art so confident of thy strength. But I do not wish to see thee enter a contest with this knight." Then he replies: "I shall be disgraced if I follow your advice. Curse me if I heed your counsel and turn recreant because of you, and do not do my utmost in the fight. It is true that a man fares ill among his relatives: I could drive a better bargain somewhere else, for you are trying to take me in. I am sure that where I am not known, I could act with better grace. No one, who did not know me, would try to thwart my will; whereas you are annoying and tormenting me. I am vexed by your finding fault with me. You know well enough that when any one is blamed, he breaks out still more passionately. But may God never give me joy if I renounce my purpose because of you; rather will I fight in spite of you!" "By the faith I bear the Apostle St. Peter," his father says, "now I see that my request is of no avail. I waste my time in rebuking thee; but I shall soon devise such means as shall compel thee against thy will to obey my commands and submit to them." Straightway summoning all the knights to approach, he bids them lay hands upon his son whom he cannot correct, saying: "I will have him bound rather than let him fight. You here are all my men, and you owe me your devotion and service: by all the fiefs you hold from me, I hold you responsible, and I add my prayer. It seems to me that he must be mad, and that he shows excessive pride, when he refuses to respect my will." Then they promise to take care of him, and say that never, while he is in their charge, shall he wish to fight, but that he must renounce the damsels in spite of himself. Then they all join and seize him by the arms and neck. "Dost thou not think thyself foolish now?" his father asks; "confess the truth: thou hast not the strength or power to fight or joust, however distasteful and hard it may be for thee to admit it. Thou wilt be wise to consent to my will and pleasure. Dost thou know what my intention is? In order somewhat to mitigate thy disappointment, I am willing to join thee, if thou wilt, in following the knight to-day and to-morrow, through wood and plain, each one mounted on his horse. Perhaps we shall soon find him to be of such a character and bearing that I might let thee have thy way and fight with him." To this proposal the other must perforce consent. Like the man who has no alternative, he says that he will give in, provided they both shall follow him. And when the people in the field see how this adventure has turned out, they all exclaim: "Did you see? He who was mounted on the cart has gained such honour here that he is leading away the mistress of the son of my lord, and he himself is allowing it. We may well suppose that he finds in him some merit, when he lets him take her off. Now cursed a hundred times be he who ceases longer his sport on his account! Come, let us go back to our games again." Then they resume their games and dances.

#### Part II: Vv. 1841 Vv. 3684

Thereupon the knight turns away, without longer remaining in the field, and the damsels accompanies him. They leave in haste, while the father and his son ride after them through the mown fields until toward three o'clock, when in a very pleasant spot they come upon a church; beside the chancel there was a cemetery enclosed by a wall. The knight was both courteous and wise to enter the church on foot and make his prayer to God, while the damsels held his horse for him until he returned. When he had made his prayer, and while he was coming back, a very old monk suddenly presented himself; whereupon the knight politely requests him to tell him what this place is; for he does not know. And he tells him it is a cemetery. And the other says: "Take me in, so help you God!" "Gladly, sire," and he takes him in. Following the monk's lead, the knight beholds the most beautiful tombs that one could find as far as Dombes or Pampelune; and on each tomb there were letters cut, telling the names of those who were destined

to be buried there. And he began in order to read the names, and came upon some which said: "Here Gawain is to lie, here Louis, and here Yvain." After these three, he read the names of many others among the most famed and cherished knights of this or any other land. Among the others, he finds one of marble, which appears to be new, and is more rich and handsome than all the rest. Calling the monk, the knight inquired: "Of what use are these tombs here?" And the monk replied: "You have already read the inscriptions; if you have understood, you must know what they say, and what is the meaning of the tombs." "Now tell me, what is this large one for?" And the hermit answered: "I will tell you. That is a very large sarcophagus, larger than any that ever was made; one so rich and well-carved was never seen. It is magnificent without, and still more so within. But you need not be concerned with that, for it can never do you any good; you will never see inside of it; for it would require seven strong men to raise the lid of stone, if any one wished to open it. And you may be sure that to raise it would require seven men stronger than you and I. There is an inscription on it which says that any one who can lift this stone of his own unaided strength will set free all the men and women who are captives in the land, whence no slave or noble can issue forth, unless he is a native of that land. No one has ever come back from there, but they are detained in foreign prisons; whereas they of the country go and come in and out as they please." At once the knight goes to grasp the stone, and raises it without the slightest trouble, more easily than ten men would do who exerted all their strength. And the monk was amazed, and nearly fell down at the sight of this marvellous thing; for he thought he would never see the like again, and said: "Sire, I am very anxious to know your name. Will you tell me what it is?" "Not I," says the knight, "upon my word." "I am certainly sorry, for that," he says; "but if you would tell me, you would do me a great favour, and might benefit yourself. Who are you, and where do you come from?" "I am a knight, as you may see, and I was born in the kingdom of Logre. After so much information, I should prefer to be excused. Now please tell me, for your part, who is to lie within this tomb." "Sire, he who shall deliver all those who are held captive in the kingdom whence none escapes." And when he had told him all this, the knight commended him to God and all His saints. And then, for the first time, he felt free to return to the damsel. The old white-haired monk escorts him out of the church, and they resume their way. While the damsel is mounting, however, the hermit relates to her all that the knight had done inside, and then he begged her to tell him, if she knew, what his name was; but she assured him that she did not know, but that there was one sure thing she could say, namely, that there was not such a knight alive where the four winds of heaven blow.

Then the damsel takes leave of him, and rides swiftly after the knight. Then those who were following them come up and see the hermit standing alone before the church. The old knight in his shirt sleeves said: "Sire, tell us, have you seen a knight with a damsel in his company?" And he replies: "I shall not be loath to tell you all I know, for they have just passed on from here. The knight was inside yonder, and did a very marvellous thing in raising the stone from the huge marble tomb, quite unaided and without the least effort. He is bent upon the rescue of the Queen, and doubtless he will rescue her, as well as all the other people. You know well that this must be so, for you have often read the inscription upon the stone. No knight was ever born of man and woman, and no knight ever sat in a saddle, who was the equal of this man." Then the father turns to his son, and says: "Son, what dost thou think about him now? Is he not a man to be respected who has performed such a feat? Now thou knowest who was wrong, and whether it was thou or I. I would not have thee fight with him for all the town of Amiens; and yet thou didst struggle hard, before any one could dissuade thee from thy purpose. Now we may as well go back, for we should be very foolish to follow him any farther." And he replies: "I agree to that. It would be useless to follow him. Since it is your pleasure, let us return." They were very wise to retrace their steps. And all the time the damsel rides close beside the knight, wishing to compel him to give heed to her. She is anxious to learn his name, and she begs and beseeches him again and again to tell her, until in his annoyance he answers her: "Have I not already told you that I belong in King Arthur's realm? I swear by God and His goodness that you shall not learn my name." Then she bids him give her leave to go, and she will turn back, which request he gladly grants.

Thereupon the damsel departs, and he rides on alone until it grew very late. After vespers, about compline, as he pursued his way, he saw a knight returning from the wood where he had been hunting. With helmet unlaced, he rode along upon his big grey hunter, to which he had tied the game which God had permitted him to take. This gentleman came quickly to meet the knight, offering him hospitality. "Sire," he says, "night will soon be here. It is time for you to be reasonable and seek a place to spend the night. I have a house of mine near at hand, whither I shall take you. No one ever lodged you better than I shall do, to the extent of my resources: I shall be very glad, if you consent." "For my part, I gladly accept," he says. The gentleman at once sends his son ahead, to prepare the house and start the preparations for supper. The lad willingly executes his command forthwith, and goes off at a rapid pace, while the others, who are in no haste, follow the road leisurely until they arrive at the house. The gentleman's wife was a very accomplished lady; and he had five sons, whom he dearly loved, three of them mere lads, and two already knights; and he had two fair and charming daughters, who were still unmarried. They were not natives of the land, but were there in durance, having been long kept there as prisoners away from their native land of Logres. When the gentleman led the knight into his yard, the lady with her sons and daughters jumped up and

ran to meet them, vying in their efforts to do him honour, as they greeted him and helped him to dismount. Neither the sisters nor the five brothers paid much attention to their father, for they knew well enough that he would have it so. They honoured the knight and welcomed him; and when they had relieved him of his armour, one of his host's two daughters threw her own mantle about him, taking it from her own shoulders and throwing it about his neck. I do not need to tell how well he was served at supper; but when the meal was finished, they felt no further hesitation in speaking of various matters. First, the host began to ask him who he was, and from what land, but he did not inquire about his name. The knight promptly answered him: "I am from the kingdom of Logres, and have never been in this land before." And when the gentleman heard that, he was greatly amazed, as were his wife and children too, and each one of them was sore distressed. Then they began to say to him: "Woe that you have come here, fair sire, for only trouble will come of it! For, like us, you will be reduced to servitude and exile." "Where do you come from, then?" he asked. "Sire, we belong in your country. Many men from your country are held in servitude in this land. Cursed be the custom, together with those who keep it up! No stranger comes here who is not compelled to stay here in the land where he is detained. For whoever wishes may come in, but once in, he has to stay. About your own fate, you may be at rest, you will doubtless never escape from here." He replies: "Indeed, I shall do so, if possible." To this the gentleman replies: "How? Do you think you can escape?" "Yes, indeed, if it be God's will; and I shall do all within my power." "In that case, doubtless all the rest would be set free; for, as soon as one succeeds in fairly escaping from this durance, then all the rest may go forth unchallenged." Then the gentleman recalled that he had been told and informed that a knight of great excellence was making his way into the country to seek for the Queen, who was held by the king's son, Meleagant; and he said to himself: "Upon my word, I believe it is he, and I'll tell him so." So he said to him: "Sire, do not conceal from me your business, if I promise to give you the best advice I know. I too shall profit by any success you may attain. Reveal to me the truth about your errand, that it may be to your advantage as well as mine. I am persuaded that you have come in search of the Queen into this land and among these heathen people, who are worse than the Saracens." And the knight replies: "For no other purpose have I come. I know not where my lady is confined, but I am striving hard to rescue her, and am in dire need of advice. Give me any counsel you can." And he says: "Sire, you have undertaken a very grievous task. The road you are travelling will lead you straight to the sword-bridge. You surely need advice. If you would heed my counsel, you would proceed to the sword-bridge by a surer way, and I would have you escorted thither." Then he, whose mind is fixed upon the most direct way, asks him: "Is the road of which you speak as direct as the other way?" "No, it is not," he says; "it is longer, but more sure." Then he says: "I have no use for it; tell me about this road I am following!" "I am ready to do so," he replies; "but I am sure you will not fare well if you take any other than the road I recommend. To-morrow you will reach a place where you will have trouble: it is called 'the stony passage'. Shall I tell you how bad a place it is to pass? Only one horse can go through at a time; even two men could not pass abreast, and the passage is well guarded and defended. You will meet with resistance as soon as you arrive. You will sustain many a blow of sword and lance, and will have to return full measure before you succeed in passing through." And when he had completed the account, one of the gentleman's sons, who was a knight, stepped forward, saying: "Sire, if you do not object, I will go with this gentleman." Then one of the lads jumps up, and says: "I too will go." And the father gladly gives them both consent. Now the knight will not have to go alone, and he expresses his gratitude, being much pleased with the company.

Then the conversation ceases, and they take the knight to bed, where he was glad to fall asleep. As soon as daylight was visible he got up, and those who were to accompany him got up too. The two knights donned their armour and took their leave, while the young fellow started on ahead. Together they pursued their way until they came at the hour of prime to "the stony passage." In the middle of it they found a wooden tower, where there was always a man on guard. Before they drew near, he who was on the tower saw them and cried twice aloud: "Woe to this man who comes!" And then behold! A knight issued from the tower, mounted and armed with fresh armour, and escorted on either side by servants carrying sharp axes. Then, when the other draws near the passage, he who defends it begins to heap him with abuse about the cart, saying: "Vassal, thou art bold and foolish, indeed, to have entered this country. No man ought ever to come here who had ridden upon a cart, and may God withhold from him His blessing!" Then they spur toward each other at the top of their horses' speed. And he who was to guard the passage-way at once breaks his lance and lets the two pieces fall; the other strikes him in the neck, reaching him beneath the shield, and throws him over prostrate upon the stones. Then the servants come forward with the axes, but they intentionally fail to strike him, having no desire to harm or damage him; so he does not deign to draw his sword, and quickly passes on with his companions. One of them remarks to the other: "No one has ever seen so good a knight, nor has he any equal. Is not this a marvellous thing, that he has forced a passage here?" And the knight says to his brother: "Fair brother, for God's sake, make haste to go and tell our father of this adventure." But the lad asserts and swears that he will not go with the message, and will never leave the knight until he has dubbed and knighted him; let his brother go with the message, if he is so much concerned.

Then they go on together until about three o'clock, when they come upon a man, who asks them who they are. And they answer: "We are knights, busy about our own affairs." Then the man says to the knight: "Sire, I should

be glad to offer hospitality to you and your companions here." This invitation he delivers to him whom he takes to be the lord and master of the others. And this one replies to him: "I could not seek shelter for the night at such an hour as this; for it is not well to tarry and seek one's ease when one has undertaken some great task. And I have such business on hand that I shall not stop for the night for some time yet." Then the man continues: "My house is not near here, but is some distance ahead. It will be late when you reach there, so you may proceed, assured that you will find a place to lodge just when it suits you." "In that case," he says, "I will go thither." Thereupon the man starts ahead as guide, and the knight follows along the path. And when they had proceeded some distance, they met a squire who was coming along at a gallop, mounted upon a nag that was as fat and round as an apple. And the squire calls out to the man: "Sire, sire, make haste! For the people of Logres have attacked in force the inhabitants of this land, and war and strife have already broken out; and they say that this country has been invaded by a knight who has been in many battles, and that wherever he wishes to go, no one, however reluctantly, is able to deny him passage. And they further say that he will deliver those who are in this country, and will subdue our people. Now take my advice and make haste!" Then the man starts at a gallop, and the others are greatly delighted at the words they have heard, for they are eager to help their side. And the vavasor's son says: "Hear what this squire says! Come and let us aid our people who are fighting their enemies!" Meanwhile the man rides off, without waiting for them, and makes his way rapidly toward a fortress which stood upon a fortified hill; thither he hastens, till he comes to the gate, while the others spur after him. The castle was surrounded by a high wall and moat. As soon as they had got inside, a gate was lowered upon their heels, so that they could not get out again. Then they say: "Come on, come on! Let us not stop here!" and they rapidly pursue the man until they reach another gate which was not closed against them. But as soon as the man had passed through, a portcullis dropped behind him. Then the others were much dismayed to see themselves shut in, and they think they must be bewitched. But he, of whom I have more to tell, wore upon his finger a ring, whose stone was of such virtue that any one who gazed at it was freed from the power of enchantment. Holding the ring before his eyes, he gazed at it, and said: "Lady, lady, so help me God, now I have great need of your succour!" This lady was a fairy, who had given it to him, and who had cared for him in his infancy. And he had great confidence that, wherever he might be, she would aid and succour him. But after appealing to her and gazing upon the ring, he realises that there is no enchantment here, but that they are actually shut in and confined. Then they come to the barred door of a low and narrow postern gate. Drawing their swords, they all strike it with such violence that they cut the bar. As soon as they were outside the tower, they see that a fierce strife was already begun down in the meadows, and that there are at least a thousand knights engaged, beside the low-bred infantry. While they were descending to the plain, the wise and moderate son of the vavasor remarked: "Sire, before we arrive upon the field, it would be wise for us, it seems to me, to find out and learn on which side our people are. I do not know where they are placed, but I will go and find out, if you wish it so." "I wish you would do so," he replies, "go quickly, and do not fail to come back again at once." He goes and returns at once, saying: "It has turned out well for us, for I have plainly seen that these are our troops on this side of the field." Then the knight at once rode into the fight and jousted with a knight who was approaching him, striking him in the eye with such violence that he knocked him lifeless to the ground. Then the lad dismounts, and taking the dead knight's horse and arms, he arms himself with skill and cleverness. When he was armed, he straightway mounts, taking the shield and the lance, which was heavy, stiff, and decorated, and about his waist he girt a sharp, bright, and flashing sword. Then he followed his brother and lord into the fight. The latter demeaned himself bravely in the melee for some time, breaking, splitting, and crushing shields, helmets and hauberks. No wood or steel protected the man whom he struck; he either wounded him or knocked him lifeless from the horse. Unassisted, he did so well that he discomfited all whom he met, while his companions did their part as well. The people of Logres, not knowing him, are amazed at what they see, and ask the vavasor's sons about the stranger knight. This reply is made to them: "Gentlemen, this is he who is to deliver us all from durance and misery, in which we have so long been confined, and we ought to do him great honour when, to set us free, he has passed through so many perils and is ready to face many more. He has done much, and will do yet more." Every one is overjoyed at hearing this welcome news. The news travelled fast, and was noised about, until it was known by all. Their strength and courage rise, so that they slay many of those still alive, and apparently because of the example of a single knight they work greater havoc than because of all the rest combined. And if it had not been so near evening, all would have gone away defeated; but night came on so dark that they had to separate.

When the battle was over, all the captives pressed about the knight, grasping his rein on either side, and thus addressing him: "Welcome, fair sire," and each one adds: "Sire, for the name of God, do not fail to lodge with me!" What one says they all repeat, for young and old alike insist that he must lodge with them, saying: "You will be more comfortably lodged with me than with any one else." Thus each one addresses him to his face, and in the desire to capture him, each one drags him from the rest, until they almost come to blows. Then he tells them that they are very foolish and silly to struggle so. "Cease this wrangling among yourselves, for it does no good to me or you. Instead of quarrelling among ourselves, we ought rather to lend one another aid. You must not dispute about the priv-

ilege of lodging me, but rather consider how to lodge me in such a place that it may be to your general advantage, and that I may be advanced upon my way." Then each one exclaims at once: "That is my house, or, No, it is mine," until the knight replies: "Follow my advice and say nothing more; the wisest of you is foolish to contend this way. You ought to be concerned to further my affairs, and instead you are seeking to turn me aside. If you had each individually done me all the honour and service it is possible to do, and I had accepted your kindness, by all the saints of Rome I swear that I could not be more obliged to you than I am now for your good-will. So may God give me joy and health, your good intentions please me as much as if each one of you had already shown me great honour and kindness: so let the will stand for the deed!" Thus he persuades and appeases them all. Then they take him quickly along the road to a knight's residence, where they seek to serve him: all rejoice to honour and serve him throughout the evening until bedtime, for they hold him very dear. Next morning, when the time came to separate, each one offers and presents himself, with the desire to accompany him; but it is not his will or pleasure that any one shall go with him except the two whom he had brought with him. Accompanied by them alone, he resumed his journey. That day they rode from morn till evening without encountering any adventure. When it was now very late, and while they were riding rapidly out of a forest, they saw a house belonging to a knight, and seated at the door they saw his wife, who had the bearing of a gentle lady. As soon as she espied them coming, she rose to her feet to meet them, and greeted them joyfully with a smile: "Welcome! I wish you to accept my house; this is your lodging; pray dismount" "Lady, since it is your will, we thank you, and will dismount; we accept your hospitality for the night." When they had dismounted, the lady had the horses taken by members of her well-ordered household. She calls her sons and daughters who come at once: the youths were courteous, handsome, and well-behaved, and the daughters were fair. She bids the lads remove the saddles and curry the horses well; no one refused to do this, but each carried out her instructions willingly. When she ordered the knights to be disarmed, her daughters step forward to perform this service. They remove their armour, and hand them three short mantles to put on. Then at once they take them into the house which was very handsome. The master was not at home, being out in the woods with two of his sons. But he presently returned, and his household, which was well-ordered, ran to meet him outside the door. Quickly they untie and unpack the game he brings, and tell him the news: "Sire, sire, you do not know that you have three knights for guests." "God be praised for that," he says. Then the knight and his two sons extend a glad welcome to their guests. The rest of the household were not backward, for even the least among them prepared to perform his special task. While some run to prepare the meal, others light the candles in profusion; still others get a towel and basins, and offer water for the hands: they are not niggardly in all this. When all had washed, they take their seats. Nothing that was done there seemed to be any trouble or burdensome. But at the first course there came a surprise in the form of a knight outside the door. As he sat on his charger, all armed from head to feet, he looked prouder than a bull, and a bull is a yew proud beast. One leg was fixed in the stirrup, but the other he had thrown over the mane of his horse's neck, to give himself a careless and jaunty air. Behold him advancing thus, though no one noticed him until he came forward with the words: "I wish to know which is the man who is so foolish and proud a numskull that he has come to this country and intends to cross the sword-bridge. All his pains will come to naught, and his expedition is in vain." Then he, who felt no fear at all, thus replies with confidence: "I am he who intends to cross the bridge." "Thou? Thou? How didst thou dare to think of such a thing? Before undertaking such a course, thou oughtest to have thought of the end that is in store for thee, and thou oughtest to have in mind the memory of the cart on which thou didst ride. I know not whether thou feelest shame for the ride thou hadst on it, but no sensible man would have embarked on such an enterprise as this if he had felt the reproach of his action."

Not a word does he deign to reply to what he hears the other say; but the master of the house and all the others express their surprise openly: "Ah, God, what a misfortune this is," each one of them says to himself; "cursed be the hour when first a cart was conceived or made! For it is a very vile and hateful thing. Ah, God, of what was he accused? Why was he carried in a cart? For what sin, or for what crime? He will always suffer the reproach. If he were only clear of this disgrace, no knight could be found in all the world, however his valour might be proved, who would equal the merit of this knight. If all good knights could be compared, and if the truth were to be known, you could find none so handsome or so expert." Thus they expressed their sentiments. Then he began his speech of impudence: "Listen, thou knight, who art bound for the sword-bridge! If thou wishest, thou shalt cross the water very easily and comfortably. I will quickly have thee ferried over in a skiff. But once on the other side, I will make thee pay me toll, and I will take thy head, if I please to do so, or if not, thou shalt be held at my discretion." And he replies that he is not seeking trouble, and that he will never risk his head in such an adventure for any consideration. To which the other answers at once: "Since thou wilt not do this, whosesoever the shame and loss may be, thou must come outside with me and there engage me hand to hand." Then, to beguile him, the other says: "If I could refuse, I would very gladly excuse myself; but in truth I would rather fight than be compelled to do what is wrong." Before he arose from the table where they were sitting, he told the youths who were serving him, to saddle his horse at once, and fetch his arms and give them to him. This order they promptly execute: some devote themselves to arming him, while others go to fetch his horse. As he slowly rode along completely armed, holding his shield tight

by the straps, you must know that he was evidently to be included in the list of the brave and fair. His horse became him so well that it is evident he must be his own, and as for the shield he held by the straps and the helmet laced upon his head, which fitted him so well, you would never for a moment have thought that he had borrowed it or received it as a loan; rather, you would be so pleased with him that you would maintain that he had been thus born and raised: for all this I should like you to take my word.

Outside the gate, where the battle was to be fought, there was a stretch of level ground well adapted for the encounter. When they catch sight of each other, they spur hotly to the attack and come together with such a shock, dealing such blows with their lances, that they first bend, then buckle up, and finally fly into splinters. With their swords they then hew away at their shields, helmets, and hauberks. The wood is cut and the steel gives way, so that they wound each other in several places. They pay each other such angry blows that it seems as if they had made a bargain. The swords often descend upon the horses' croups, where they drink and feast upon their blood; their riders strike them upon the flanks until at last they kill them both. And when both have fallen to earth, they attack each other afoot; and if they had cherished a mortal hatred, they could not have assailed each other more fiercely with their swords. They deal their blows with greater frequency than the man who stakes his money at dice and never fails to double the stakes every time he loses; yet, this game of theirs was very different; for there were no losses here, but only fierce blows and cruel strife. All the people came out from the house: the master, his lady, his sons and daughters; no man or woman, friend or stranger, stayed behind, but all stood in line to see the fight in progress in the broad, level field. The Knight of the Cart blames and reproaches himself for faintheartedness when he sees his host watching him and notices all the others looking on. His heart is stirred with anger, for it seems to him that he ought long since to have beaten his adversary. Then he strikes him, rushing in like a storm and bringing his sword down close by his head; he pushes and presses him so hard that he drives him from his ground and reduces him to such a state of exhaustion that he has little strength to defend himself. Then the knight recalls how the other had basely reproached him about the cart; so he assails him and drubs him so soundly that not a string or strap remains unbroken about the neck-band of his hauberk, and he knocks the helmet and ventail from his head. His wounds and distress are so great that he has to cry for mercy. Just as the lark cannot withstand or protect itself against the hawk which outflies it and attacks it from above, so he in his helplessness and shame, must invoke him and sue for mercy. And when he hears him beg for mercy, he ceases his attack and says: "Dost thou wish for mercy?" He replies: "You have asked a very clever question; any fool could ask that. I never wished for anything so much as I now wish for mercy." Then he says to him: "Thou must mount, then, upon a cart. Nothing thou couldst say would have any influence with me, unless thou mountest the cart, to atone for the vile reproaches thou didst address to me with thy silly mouth." And the knight thus answers him: "May it never please God that I mount a cart!" "No?" he asks; "then you shall die." "Sire, you can easily put me to death; but I beg and beseech you for God's sake to show me mercy and not compel me to mount a cart. I will agree to anything, however grievous, excepting that. I would rather die a hundred times than undergo such a disgrace. In your goodness and mercy you can tell me nothing so distasteful that I will not do it."

While he is thus beseeching him, behold across the field a maiden riding on a tawny mule, her head uncovered and her dress disarranged. In her hand she held a whip with which she belaboured the mule; and in truth no horse could have galloped so fast as was the pace of the mule. The damsel called out to the Knight of the Cart: "May God bless thy heart, Sir Knight, with whatever delights thee most!" And he, who heard her gladly, says: "May God bless you, damsel, and give you joy and health!" Then she tells him of her desire. "Knight," she says, "in urgent need I have come from afar to thee to ask a favour, for which thou wilt deserve the best guerdon I can make to thee; and I believe that thou wilt yet have need of my assistance." And he replies: "Tell me what it is you wish; and if I have it, you shall have it at once, provided it be not something extravagant." Then she says: "It is the head of the knight whom thou hast just defeated; in truth, thou hast never dealt with such a wicked and faithless man. Thou wilt be committing no sin or wrong, but rather doing a deed of charity, for he is the basest creature that ever was or ever shall be." And when he who had been vanquished hears that she wishes him to be killed, he says to him: "Don't believe her, for she hates me; but by that God who was at once Father and Son, and who chose for His mother her who was His daughter and handmaiden, I beg you to have mercy upon me!" "Ah, knight!" the maid exclaims, "pay no attention to what this traitor says! May God give thee all the joy and honour to which thou dost aspire, and may He give thee good success in thy undertaking." Then the knight is in a predicament, as he thinks and ponders over the question: whether to present to her the head she asks him to cut off, or whether he shall allow himself to be touched by pity for him. He wishes to respect the wishes of both her and him. Generosity and pity each command him to do their will; for he was both generous and tender-hearted. But if she carries off the head, then will pity be defeated and put to death; whereas, if she does not carry off the head, generosity will be discomfited. Thus, pity and generosity hold him so confined and so distressed that he is tormented and spurred on by each of them in turn. The damsel asks him to give her the head, and on the other hand the knight makes his request, appealing to his pity and kindness. And, since he has implored him, shall he not receive mercy? Yes, for it never happened that, when he had



**IMAGE 5.26: CHRÉTIEN DE TROYES** | An etching of the French poet Chrétien working in his studio.

**Author:** Unknown

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

off." "Ah," he says, "thou wouldest do wrong to heed my enemy and kill me thus." While she, intent upon his death, admonishes him to cut off his head, and not to believe a word he says. He strikes: the head flies across the sward and the body fails. Then the damsel is pleased and satisfied. Grasping the head by the hair, the knight presents it to the damsel, who takes it joyfully with the words: "May thy heart receive such delight from whatever it most desires as my heart now receives from what I most coveted. I had only one grief in life, and that was that this man was still alive. I have a reward laid up for thee which thou shalt receive at the proper time. I promise thee that thou shalt have a worthy reward for the service thou hast rendered me. Now I will go away, with the prayer that God may guard thee from harm." Then the damsel leaves him, as each commends the other to God. But all those who had seen the battle in the plain are overjoyed, and in their joy they at once relieve the knight of his armour, and honour him in every way they can. Then they wash their hands again and take their places at the meal, which they eat with better cheer than is their wont. When they had been eating for some time, the gentleman turned to his guest at his side, and said: "Sire, a long while ago we came hither from the kingdom of Logres. We were born your countrymen, and we should like to see you win honour and fortune and joy in this country; for we should profit by it as well as you, and it would be to the advantage of many others, if you should gain honour and fortune in the enterprise you have undertaken in this land." And he makes answer: "May God hear your desire."

When the host had dropped his voice and ceased speaking, one of his sons followed him and said: "Sire, we ought to place all our resources at your service, and give them outright rather than promise them; if you have any need of our assistance, we ought not to wait until you ask for it. Sire, be not concerned over your horse which is dead. We have good strong horses here. I want you to take anything of ours which you need, and you shall choose the best of our horses in place of yours." And he replies: "I willingly accept." Thereupon, they have the beds prepared and retire for the night. The next morning they rise early, and dress, after which they prepare to start. Upon

put down an enemy and compelled him to sue for mercy, he would refuse such an one his mercy or longer bear him any grudge. Since this is his custom, he will not refuse his mercy to him who now begs and sues for it. And shall she have the head she covets? Yes, if it be possible. "Knight," he says, "it is necessary for thee to fight me again, and if thou dost care to defend thy head again, I will show thee such mercy as to allow thee to resume the helmet; and I will give thee time to arm thy body and thy head as well as possible. But, if I conquer thee again, know that thou shalt surely die." And he replies: "I desire nothing better than that, and ask for no further favour." "And I will give thee this advantage," he adds: "I will fight thee as I stand, without changing my present position." Then the other knight makes ready, and they begin the fight again eagerly. But this time the knight triumphed more quickly than he had done at first. And the damsel at once cries out: "Do not spare him, knight, for anything he may say to thee. Surely he would not have spared thee, had he once defeated thee. If thou heedest what he says, be sure that he will again beguile thee. Fair knight, cut off the head of the most faithless man in the empire and kingdom, and give it to me! Thou shouldst present it to me, in view of the guerdon I intend for thee. For another day may well come when, if he can, he will beguile thee again with his words." He, thinking his end is near, cries aloud to him for mercy; but his cry is of no avail, nor anything that he can say. The other drags him by the helmet, tearing all the fastening, and he strikes from his head the ventail and the gleaming coif. Then he cries out more loudly still: "Mercy, for God's sake! Mercy, sir!" But the other answers: "So help me, I shall never again show thee pity, after having once let thee

leaving, they fail in no act of courtesy, but take leave of the lady, her lord, and all the rest. But in order to omit nothing, I must remark that the knight was unwilling to mount the borrowed steed which was standing ready at the door; rather, he caused him to be ridden by one of the two knights who had come with him, while he took the latter's horse instead, for thus it pleased him best to do. When each was seated on his horse, they all asked for leave to depart from their host who had served them so honourably. Then they ride along the road until the day draws to a close, and late in the afternoon they reach the sword-bridge.

At the end of this very difficult bridge they dismount from their steeds and gaze at the wicked-looking stream, which is as swift and raging, as black and turgid, as fierce and terrible as if it were the devil's stream; and it is so dangerous and bottomless that anything failing into it would be as completely lost as if it fell into the salt sea. And the bridge, which spans it, is different from any other bridge; for there never was such a one as this. If any one asks of me the truth, there never was such a bad bridge, nor one whose flooring was so bad. The bridge across the cold stream consisted of a polished, gleaming sword; but the sword was stout and stiff, and was as long as two lances. At each end there was a tree-trunk in which the sword was firmly fixed. No one need fear to fall because of its breaking or bending, for its excellence was such that it could support a great weight. But the two knights who were with the third were much discouraged; for they surmised that two lions or two leopards would be found tied to a great rock at the other end of the bridge. The water and the bridge and the lions combine so to terrify them that they both tremble with fear, and say: "Fair sire, consider well what confronts you; for it is necessary and needful to do so. This bridge is badly made and built, and the construction of it is bad. If you do not change your mind in time, it will be too late to repent. You must consider which of several alternatives you will choose. Suppose that you once get across (but that cannot possibly come to pass, any more than one could hold in the winds and forbid them to blow, or keep the birds from singing, or re-enter one's mother's womb and be born again—all of which is as impossible as to empty the sea of its water); but even supposing that you got across, can you think and suppose that those two fierce lions that are chained on the other side will not kill you, and suck the blood from your veins, and eat your flesh and then gnaw your bones? For my part, I am bold enough, when I even dare to look and gaze at them. If you do not take care, they will certainly devour you. Your body will soon be torn and rent apart, for they will show you no mercy. So take pity on us now, and stay here in our company! It would be wrong for you to expose yourself intentionally to such mortal peril." And he, laughing, replies to them: "Gentlemen, receive my thanks and gratitude for the concern you feel for me: it comes from your love and kind hearts. I know full well that you would not like to see any mishap come to me; but I have faith and confidence in God, that He will protect me to the end. I fear the bridge and stream no more than I fear this dry land; so I intend to prepare and make the dangerous attempt to cross. I would rather die than turn back now." The others have nothing more to say; but each weeps with pity and heaves a sigh. Meanwhile he prepares, as best he may, to cross the stream, and he does a very marvellous thing in removing the armour from his feet and hands. He will be in a sorry state when he reaches the other side. He is going to support himself with his bare hands and feet upon the sword, which was sharper than a scythe, for he had not kept on his feet either sole or upper or hose. But he felt no fear of wounds upon his hands or feet; he preferred to maim himself rather than to fall from the bridge and be plunged in the water from which he could never escape. In accordance with this determination, he passes over with great pain and agony, being wounded in the hands, knees, and feet. But even this suffering is sweet to him: for Love, who conducts and leads him on, assuages and relieves the pain. Creeping on his hands, feet, and knees, he proceeds until he reaches the other side. Then he recalls and recollects the two lions which he thought he had seen from the other side; but, on looking about, he does not see so much as a lizard or anything else to do him harm. He raises his hand before his face and looks at his ring, and by this test he proves that neither of the lions is there which he thought he had seen, and that he had been enchanted and deceived; for there was not a living creature there. When those who had remained behind upon the bank saw that he had safely crossed, their joy was natural; but they do not know of his injuries. He, however, considers himself fortunate not to have suffered anything worse. The blood from his wounds drips on his shirt on all sides. Then he sees before him a tower, which was so strong that never had he seen such a strong one before: indeed, it could not have been a better tower. At the window there sat King Bademagu, who was very scrupulous and precise about matters of honour and what was right, and who was careful to observe and practise loyalty above all else; and beside him stood his son, who always did precisely the opposite so far as possible, for he found his pleasure in disloyalty, and never wearied of villainy, treason, and felony. From their point of vantage they had seen the knight cross the bridge with trouble and pain. Meleagant's colour changed with the rage and displeasure he felt; for he knows now that he will be challenged for the Queen; but his character was such that he feared no man, however strong or formidable. If he were not base and disloyal, there could no better knight be found; but he had a heart of wood, without gentleness and pity. What enraged his son and roused his ire, made the king happy and glad. The king knew of a truth that he who had crossed the bridge was much better than any one else. For no one would dare to pass over it in whom there dwelt any of that evil nature which brings more shame upon those who possess it than prowess brings of honour to the virtuous. For prowess cannot accomplish so much as wickedness and sloth can do: it is true beyond a doubt that it is possible to do more evil than good.

I could say more on these two heads, if it did not cause me to delay. But I must turn to something else and resume my subject, and you shall hear how the king speaks profitably to his son: "Son," he says, "it was fortunate that thou and I came to look out this window; our reward has been to witness the boldest deed that ever entered the mind of man. Tell me now if thou art not well disposed toward him who has performed such a marvellous feat. Make peace and be reconciled with him, and deliver the Queen into his hands. Thou shalt gain no glory in battle with him, but rather mayst thou incur great loss. Show thyself to be courteous and sensible, and send the Queen to meet him before he sees thee. Show him honour in this land of thine, and before he asks it, present to him what he has come to seek. Thou knowest well enough that he has come for the Queen Guinevere. Do not act so that people will take thee to be obstinate, foolish, or proud. If this man has entered thy land alone, thou shouldst bear him company, for one gentleman ought not to avoid another, but rather attract him and honour him with courtesy. One receives honour by himself showing it; be sure that the honour will be thine, if thou doest honour and service to him who is plainly the best knight in the world." And he replies: "May God confound me, if there is not as good a knight, or even a better one than he!" It was too bad that he did not mention himself, of whom he entertains no mean opinion. And he adds: "I suppose you wish me to clasp my hands and kneel before him as his liegeman, and to hold my lands from him? So help me God, I would rather become his man than surrender to him the Queen! God forbid that in such a fashion I should deliver her to him! She shall never be given up by me, but rather contested and defended against all who are so foolish as to dare to come in quest of her." Then again the king says to him: "Son, thou wouldest act very courteously to renounce this pretension. I advise thee and beg thee to keep the peace. Thou knowest well that the honour will belong to the knight, if he wins the Queen from thee in battle. He would doubtless rather win her in battle than as a gift, for it will thus enhance his fame. It is my opinion that he is seeking her, not to receive her peaceably, but because he wishes to win her by force of arms. So it would be wise on thy part to deprive him of the satisfaction of fighting thee. I am sorry to see thee so foolish; but if thou dost not heed my advice, evil will come of it, and the ensuing misfortune will be worse for thee. For the knight need fear no hostility from any one here save thee. On behalf of myself and all my men, I will grant him a truce and security. I have never yet done a disloyal deed or practised treason and felony, and I shall not begin to do so now on thy account any more than I would for any stranger. I do not wish to flatter thee, for I promise that the knight shall not lack any arms, or horse or anything else he needs, in view of the boldness he has displayed in coming thus far. He shall be securely guarded and well defended against all men here excepting thee. I wish him clearly to understand that, if he can maintain himself against thee, he need have no fear of any one else." "I have listened to you in silence long enough," says Meleagant, "and you may say what you please. But little do I care for all you say. I am not a hermit, nor so compassionate and charitable, and I have no desire to be so honourable as to give him what I most love. His task will not be performed so quickly or so lightly; rather will it turn out otherwise than as you and he expect. You and I need not quarrel because you aid him against me. Even if he enjoys peace and a truce with you and all your men, what matters that to me? My heart does not quail on that account; rather, so help me God, I am glad that he need not feel concern for any one here but me; I do not wish you to do on my account anything which might be construed as disloyalty or treachery. Be as compassionate as you please, but let me be cruel." "What? Wilt thou not change thy mind?" "No," he says. "Then I will say nothing more. I will leave thee alone to do thy best and will go now to speak with the knight. I wish to offer and present to him my aid and counsel in all respects; for I am altogether on his side."

Then the king goes down and orders them to bring his horse. A large steed is brought to him, upon which he springs by the stirrup, and he rides off with some of his men: three knights and two squires he bade to go with him. They did not stop their ride downhill until they came to the bridge, where they see him stanching his wounds and wiping the blood from them. The king expects to keep him as his guest for a long time while his wounds are healing; but he might as well expect to drain the sea. The king hastens to dismount, and he who was grievously wounded, stood up at once to meet him, though he did not know him, and he gave no more evidence of the pain he felt in his feet and hands than if he had been actually sound. The king sees that he is exerting himself, and quickly runs to greet him with the words: "Sire, I am greatly amazed that you have fallen upon us in this land. But be welcome, for no one will ever repeat the attempt: it never happened in the past, and it will never happen in the future that any one should perform such a hardy feat or expose himself to such peril. And know that I admire you greatly for having executed what no one before ever dared to conceive. You will find me very kindly disposed, and loyal and courteous toward you. I am the king of this land, and offer you freely all my counsel and service; and I think I know pretty well what you have come here to seek. You come, I am sure, to seek the Queen." "Sire," he replies, "your surmise is correct; no other cause brings me here." "Friend, you must suffer hardship to obtain her," he replies; "and you are sorely wounded, as I see by the wounds and the flowing blood. You will not find him who brought her hitherto so generous as to give her up without a struggle; but you must tarry, and have your wounds cared for until they are completely healed. I will give you some of 'the three Marys' ointment, and something still better, if it can be found, for I am very solicitous about your comfort and your recovery. And the Queen is so confined that no mor-

tal man has access to her—not even my son, who brought her here with him and who resents such treatment, for never was a man so beside himself and so desperate as he. But I am well disposed toward you, and will gladly give you, so help me God, all of which you stand in need. My son himself will not have such good arms but that I will give you some that are just as good, and a horse, too, such as you will need, though my son will be angry with me. Despite the feelings of any one, I will protect you against all men. You will have no cause to fear any one excepting him who brought the Queen here. No man ever menaced another as I have menaced him, and I came near driving him from my land, in my displeasure because he will not surrender her to you. To be sure, he is my son; but feel no concern, for unless he defeats you in battle, he can never do you the slightest harm against my will." "Sire," he says, "I thank you. But I am losing time here which I do not wish to waste. I have no cause to complain, and have no wound which is paining me. Take me where I can find him; for with such arms as I have, I am ready to divert myself by giving and receiving blows." "Friend, you had better wait two or three weeks until your wounds are healed, for it would be well for you to tarry here at least two weeks, and not on any account could I allow it, or look on, while you fought in my presence with such arms and with such an outfit." And he replies: "With your permission, no other arms would be used than these, for I should prefer to fight with them, and I should not ask for the slightest postponement, adjournment or delay. However, in deference to you, I will consent to wait until to-morrow; but despite what any one may say, longer I will not wait." Then the king assured him that all would be done as he wished; then he has the lodging-place prepared, and insistently requests his men, who are in the company, to serve him, which they do devotedly. And the king, who would gladly have made peace, had it been possible, went at once to his son and spoke to him like one who desires peace and harmony, saying: "Fair son, be reconciled now with this knight without a fight! He has not come here to disport himself or to hunt or chase, but he comes in search of honour and to increase his fame and renown, and I have seen that he stands in great need of rest. If he had taken my advice, he would not have rashly undertaken, either this month or the next, the battle which he so greatly desires. If thou makest over the Queen to him, dost thou fear any dishonour in the deed? Have no fear of that, for no blame can attach to thee; rather is it wrong to keep that to which one has no rightful claim. He would gladly have entered the battle at once, though his hands and feet are not sound, but cut and wounded." Meleagant answers his father thus: "You are foolish to be concerned. By the faith I owe St. Peter, I will not take your advice in this matter. I should deserve to be drawn apart with horses, if I heeded your advice. If he is seeking his honour, so do I seek mine; if he is in search of glory, so am I; if he is anxious for the battle, so am I a hundred times more so than he." "I see plainly," says the king, "that thou art intent upon thy mad enterprise, and thou shalt have thy fill of it. Since such is thy pleasure, to-morrow thou shalt try thy strength with the knight." "May no greater hardship ever visit me than that!" Meleagant replies; "I would much rather it were to-day than to-morrow. Just see how much more downcast I am than is usual! My eyes are wild, and my face is pale! I shall have no joy or satisfaction or any cause for happiness until I am actually engaged with him."

The king understands that further advice and prayers are of no avail, so reluctantly he leaves his son and, taking a good, strong horse and handsome arms, he sends them to him who well deserves them, together with a surgeon who was a loyal and Christian man. There was in the world no more trusty man, and he was more skilled in the cure of wounds than all the doctors of Montpeilier. That night he treated the knight as best he could, in accordance with the king's command. Already the news was known by the knights and damsels, the ladies and barons of all the country-side, and all through the night until daybreak strangers and friends were making long journeys from all the country round. When morning came, there was such a press before the castle that there was not room to move one's foot. And the king, rising early in his distress about the battle, goes directly to his son, who had already laced upon his head the helmet which was of Poitiers make. No delay or peace is possible, for though the king did his best, his efforts are of no effect. In the middle of the castle-square, where all the people are assembled, the battle will be fought in compliance with the king's wish and command. The king sends at once for the stranger knight, and he is conducted to the grounds which were filled with people from the kingdom of Logres. For just as people are accustomed to go to church to hear the organ on the annual feast-days of Pentecost or Christmas, so they had all assembled now. All the foreign maidens from King Arthur's realm had fasted three days and gone barefoot in their shifts, in order that God might endow with strength and courage the knight who was to fight his adversary on behalf of the captives. Very early, before prime had yet been sounded, both of the knights fully armed were led to the place, mounted upon two horses equally protected. Meleagant was very graceful, alert, and shapely; the hauberk with its fine meshes, the helmet, and the shield hanging from his neck—all these became him well. All the spectators, however, favoured the other knight, even those who wished him ill, and they say that Meleagant is worth nothing compared with him. As soon as they were both on the ground, the king comes and detains them as long as possible in an effort to make peace between them, but he is unable to persuade his son. Then he says to them: "Hold in your horses until I reach the top of the tower. It will be only a slight favour, if you will wait so long for me." Then in sorrowful mood he leaves them and goes directly to the place where he knew he would find the Queen. She had begged him the evening before to place her where she might have an unobstructed view of the battle; he had granted her the boon, and went now to seek and fetch her, for he was very anxious to show her honour and courtesy. He

placed her at one window, and took his place at another window on her right. Beside them, there were gathered there many knights and prudent dames and damsels, who were natives of that land; and there were many others, who were captives, and who were intent upon their orisons and prayers. Those who were prisoners were praying for their lord, for to God and to him they entrusted their succour and deliverance. Then the combatants without delay make all the people stand aside; then they clash the shields with their elbows, and thrust their arms into the straps, and spur at each other so violently that each sends his lance two arms' length through his opponent's shield, causing the lance to split and splinter like a flying spark. And the horses meet head on, clashing breast to breast, and the shields and helmets crash with such a noise that it seems like a mighty thunder-clap; not a breast-strap, girth, rein or surcingle remains unbroken, and the saddle-bows, though strong, are broken to pieces. The combatants felt no shame in falling to earth, in view of their mishaps, but they quickly spring to their feet, and without waste of threatening words rush at each other more fiercely than two wild boars, and deal great blows with their swords of steel like men whose hate is violent. Repeatedly they trim the helmets and shining hauberks so fiercely that after the sword the blood spurts out. They furnished an excellent battle, indeed, as they stunned and wounded each other with their heavy, wicked blows. Many fierce, hard, long bouts they sustained with equal honour, so that the onlookers could discern no advantage on either side. But it was inevitable that he who had crossed the bridge should be much weakened by his wounded hands. The people who sided with him were much dismayed, for they notice that his strokes are growing weaker, and they fear he will get the worst of it; it seemed to them that he was weakening, while Meleagant was triumphing, and they began to murmur all around. But up at the window of the tower there was a wise maiden who thought within herself that the knight had not undertaken the battle either on her account or for the sake of the common herd who had gathered about the list, but that his only incentive had been the Queen; and she thought that, if he knew that she was at the window seeing and watching him, his strength and courage would increase. And if she had known his name, she would gladly have called to him to look about him. Then she came to the Queen and said: "Lady, for God's sake and your own as well as ours, I beseech you to tell me, if you know, the name of yonder knight, to the end that it may be of some help to him." "Damsel," the Queen replies, "you have asked me a question in which I see no hate or evil, but rather good intent; the name of the knight, I know, is Lancelot of the Lake." "God, how happy and glad at heart I am!" the damsel says. Then she leans forward and calls to him by name so loudly that all the people hear: "Lancelot, turn about and see who is here taking note of thee!"

### Part III: Vv. 3685 Vv. 5594

When Lancelot heard his name, he was not slow to turn around: he turns and sees seated up there at the window of the tower her whom he desired most in the world to see. From the moment he caught sight of her, he did not turn or take his eyes and face from her, defending himself with backhand blows. And Meleagant meanwhile attacked him as fiercely as he could, delighted to think that the other cannot withstand him now; and they of the country are well pleased too, while the foreigners are so distressed that they can no longer support themselves, and many of them fall to earth either upon their knees or stretched out prone; thus some are glad, and some distressed. Then the damsel cried again from the window: "Ah, Lancelot, how is it that thou dost now conduct thyself so foolishly? Once thou wert the embodiment of prowess and of all that is good, and I do not think God ever made a knight who could equal thee in valour and in worth. But now we see thee so distressed that thou dealest back-hand blows and fightest thy adversary, behind thy back. Turn, so as to be on the other side, and so that thou canst face toward this tower, for it will help thee to keep it in view." Then Lancelot is so ashamed and mortified that he hates himself, for he knows full well that all have seen how, for some time past, he has had the worst of the fight. Thereupon he leaps backward and so manoeuvres as to force Meleagant into a position between him and the tower. Meleagant makes every effort to regain his former position. But Lancelot rushes upon him, and strikes him so violently upon his body and shield whenever he tries to get around him, that he compels him to whirl about two or three times in spite of himself. Lancelot's strength and courage grow, partly because he has love's aid, and partly because he never hated any one so much as him with whom he is engaged. Love and mortal hate, so fierce that never before was such hate seen, make him so fiery and bold that Meleagant ceases to treat it as a jest and begins to stand in awe of him, for he had never met or known so doughty a knight, nor had any knight ever wounded or injured him as this one does. He is glad to get away from him, and he winces and sidesteps, fearing his blows and avoiding them. And Lancelot does not idly threaten him, but drives him rapidly toward the tower where the Queen was stationed on the watch. There upon the tower he did her the homage of his blows until he came so close that, if he advanced another step, he would lose sight of her. Thus Lancelot drove him back and forth repeatedly in whatever direction he pleased, always stopping before the Queen, his lady, who had kindled the flame which compels him to fix his gaze upon her. And this same flame so stirred him against Meleagant that he was enabled to lead and drive him wherever he pleased. In spite of himself he drives him on like a blind man or a man with a wooden leg. The king sees his son so hard pressed that he is sorry for him and he pities him, and he will not deny him aid and

assistance if possible; but if he wishes to proceed courteously, he must first beg the Queen's permission. So he began to say to her: "Lady, since I have had you in my power, I have loved you and faithfully served and honoured you. I never consciously left anything undone in which I saw your honour involved; now repay me for what I have done. For I am about to ask you a favour which you should not grant unless you do so willingly. I plainly see that my son is getting the worst of this battle; I do not speak so because of the chagrin I feel, but in order that Lancelot, who has him in his power, may not kill him. Nor ought you to wish to see him killed; not because he has not wronged both you and him, but because I make the request of you: so tell him, please, to stop beating him. If you will, you can thus repay me for what I have done for you." "Fair sire, I am willing to do so at your request," the Queen replies; "had I mortal hatred for your son, whom it is true I do not love, yet you have served me so well that, to please you, I am quite willing that he should desist." These words were not spoken privately, but Lancelot and Meleagant heard what was said. The man who is a perfect lover is always obedient and quickly and gladly does his mistress' pleasure. So Lancelot was constrained to do his Lady's will, for he loved more than Pyramus, if that were possible for any man to do. Lancelot heard what was said, and as soon as the last word had issued from her mouth, "since you wish him to desist, I am willing that he should do so," Lancelot would not have touched him or made a movement for anything, even if the other had killed him. He does not touch him or raise his hand. But Meleagant, beside himself with rage and shame when he hears that it has been necessary to intercede in his behalf, strikes him with all the strength he can muster. And the king went down from the tower to upbraid his son, and entering the list he addressed him thus: "How now? Is this becoming, to strike him when he is not touching thee? Thou art too cruel and savage, and thy prowess is now out of place! For we all know beyond a doubt that he is thy superior." Then Meleagant, choking with shame, says to the king: "I think you must be blind! I do not believe you see a thing. Any one must indeed be blind to think I am not better than he." "Seek some one to believe thy words!" the king replies, "for all the people know whether thou speakest the truth or a lie. All of us know full well the truth." Then the king bids his barons lead his son away, which they do at once in execution of his command: they led away Meleagant. But it was not necessary to use force to induce Lancelot to withdraw, for Meleagant might have harmed him grievously, before he would have sought to defend himself. Then the king says to his son: "So help me God, now thou must make peace and surrender the Queen. Thou must cease this quarrel once for all and withdraw thy claim." "That is great nonsense you have uttered! I hear you speak foolishly. Stand aside! Let us fight, and do not mix in our affairs!" But the king says he will take a hand, for he knows well that, were the fight to continue, Lancelot would kill his son. "He kill me! Rather would I soon defeat and kill him, if you would leave us alone and let us fight." Then the king says: "So help me God, all that thou sayest is of no avail." "Why is that?" he asks. "Because I will not consent. I will not so trust in thy folly and pride as to allow thee to be killed. A man is a fool to court death, as thou dost in thy ignorance. I know well that thou hatest me because I wish to save thy life. God will not let me see and witness thy death, if I can help it, for it would cause me too much grief." He talks to him and reproves him until finally peace and good-will are restored. The terms of the peace are these: he will surrender the Queen to Lancelot, provided that the latter without reluctance will fight them again within a year of such time as he shall choose to summon him: this is no trial to Lancelot. When peace is made, all the people press about, and it is decided that the battle shall be fought at the court of King Arthur, who holds Britain and Cornwall in his sway: there they decide that it shall be. And the Queen has to consent, and Lancelot has to promise, that if Meleagant can prove him recreant, she shall come back with him again without the interference of any one. When the Queen and Lancelot had both agreed to this, the arrangement was concluded, and they both retired and removed their arms. Now the custom in the country was that when one issued forth, all the others might do so too. All called down blessings upon Lancelot: and you may know that he must have felt great joy, as in truth he did. All the strangers assemble and rejoice over Lancelot, speaking so as to be heard by him: "Sire, in truth we were joyful as soon as we heard your name, for we felt sure at once that we should all be set free." There was a great crowd present at this glad scene, as each one strives and presses forward to touch him if possible. Any one who succeeded in touching him was more delighted than he could tell. There was plenty of joy, and of sorrow too; those who were now set free rejoiced unrestrainedly; but Meleagant and his followers have not anything they want, but are pensive, gloomy, and downcast. The king turns away from the list, taking with him Lancelot, who begs him to take him to the Queen. "I shall not fail to do so," the king replies; "for it seems to me the proper thing to do. And if you like, I will show you Kay the seneschal." At this Lancelot is so glad that he almost falls at his feet. Then the king took him at once into the hall, where the Queen had come to wait for him.

When the Queen saw the king holding Lancelot by the hand, she rose before the king, but she looked displeased with clouded brow, and she spoke not a word. "Lady, here is Lancelot come to see you," says the king; "you ought to be pleased and satisfied." "I, sire? He cannot please me. I care nothing about seeing him." "Come now, lady," says the king who was very frank and courteous, "what induces you to act like this? You are too scornful toward a man who has served you so faithfully that he has repeatedly exposed his life to mortal danger on this journey for your sake, and who has defended and rescued you from my son Meleagant who had deeply wronged you." "Sire, truly he has made poor use of his time. I shall never deny that I feel no gratitude toward him." Now Lancelot is dumbfound-

ed; but he replies very humbly like a polished lover: "Lady, certainly I am grieved at this, but I dare not ask your reason." The Queen listened as Lancelot voiced his disappointment, but in order to grieve and confound him, she would not answer a single word, but returned to her room. And Lancelot followed her with his eyes and heart until she reached the door; but she was not long in sight, for the room was close by. His eyes would gladly have followed her, had that been possible; but the heart, which is more lordly and masterful in its strength, went through the door after her, while the eyes remained behind weeping with the body. And the king said privily to him: "Lancelot, I am amazed at what this means: and how it comes about that the Queen cannot endure the sight of you, and that she is so unwilling to speak with you. If she is ever accustomed to speak with you, she ought not to be niggardly now or avoid conversation with you, after what you have done for her. Now tell me, if you know, why and for what misdeed she has shown you such a countenance." "Sire, I did not notice that just now; but she will not look at me or hear my words, and that distresses and grieves me much." "Surely," says the king, "she is in the wrong, for you have risked your life for her. Come away now, fair sweet friend, and we shall go to speak with the seneschal." "I shall be glad to do so," he replies. Then they both go to the seneschal. As soon as Lancelot came where he was, the seneschal's first exclamation was: "How thou hast shamed me!" "I? How so?" Lancelot inquires; "tell me what disgrace have I brought upon you?" "A very great disgrace, for thou hast carried out what I could not accomplish, and thou hast done what I could not do."

Then the king left them together in the room, and went out alone. And Lancelot inquires of the seneschal if he has been badly off. "Yes," he answers, "and I still am so. I was never more wretched than I am now. And I should have died a long time ago, had it not been for the king, who in his compassion has shown me so much gentleness and kindness that he willingly let me lack nothing of which I stood in need; but I was furnished at once with everything that I desired. But opposed to the kindness which he showed me, was Meleagant his son, who is full of wickedness, and who summoned the physicians to him and bade them apply such ointments as would kill me. Such a father and stepfather have I had! For when the king had a good plaster applied to my wounds in his desire that I should soon be cured, his treacherous son, wishing to put me to death, had it promptly taken off and some harmful salve applied. But I am very sure that the king was ignorant of this; he would not tolerate such base and murderous tricks. But you do not know how courteous he has been to my lady: no frontier tower since the time that Noah built the ark was ever so carefully guarded, for he has guarded her so vigilantly that, though his son chafed under the restraint, he would nor let him see her except in the presence of the king himself. Up to the present time the king in his mercy has shown her all the marks of consideration which she herself proposed. She alone had the disposition of her affairs. And the king esteemed her all the more for the loyalty she showed. But is it true, as I am told, that she is so angry with you that she has publicly refused to speak with you?" "You have been told the exact truth," Lancelot replies, "but for God's sake, can you tell me why she is so displeased with me?" He replies that he does not know, and that he is greatly surprised at it. "Well, let it be as she pleases," says Lancelot, feeling his helplessness; "I must now take my leave, and I shall go to seek my lord Gawain who has entered this land, and who arranged with me that he would proceed directly to the waterbridge." Then, leaving the room, he appeared before the king and asked for leave to proceed in that direction. And the king willingly grants him leave to go. Then those whom Lancelot had set free and delivered from prison ask him what they are to do. And he replies: "All those who desire may come with me, and those who wish to stay with the Queen may do so: there is no reason why they should accompany me." Then all those, who so desire, accompany him, more glad and joyous than is their wont. With the Queen remain her damsels who are light of heart, and many knights and ladies too. But there is not one of those who stay behind, who would not have preferred to return to his own country to staying there. But on my lord Gawain's account, whose arrival is expected, the Queen keeps them, saying that she will never stir until she has news of him.

The news spreads everywhere that the Queen is free to go, and that all the other prisoners have been set at liberty and are free to go whenever it suits and pleases them. Wherever the people of the land gather together, they ask each other about the truth of this report, and never talk of anything else. They are very much enraged that all the dangerous passes have been overcome, and that any one may come and go as he pleases. But when the natives of the country, who had not been present at the battle, learned how Lancelot had been the victor, they all betook themselves to the place where they knew he must pass by, thinking that the king would be well pleased if they should seize Lancelot and hale him back to him. All of his own men were without their arms, and therefore they were at a disadvantage when they saw the natives of the country coming under arms. It was not strange that they seized Lancelot, who was without his arms. They lead him back prisoner, his feet lashed together beneath his horse. Then his own men say: "Gentlemen, this is an evil deed; for the king has given us his safe-conduct, and we are under his protection." But the others reply: "We do not know how that may be; but as we have taken you, you must return with us to court." The rumour, which swiftly flies and runs, reaches the king, that his men have seized Lancelot and put him to death. When the king hears it, he is sorely grieved and swears angrily by his head that they who have killed him shall surely die for the deed; and that, if he can seize or catch them, it shall be their fate to be hanged, burned, or drowned. And if they attempt to deny their deed, he will not believe what they say, for they have

brought him such grief and shame that he would be disgraced were vengeance not to be exacted from them; but he will be avenged without a doubt. The news of this spread until it reached the Queen, who was sitting at meat. She almost killed herself on hearing the false report about Lancelot, but she supposes it to be true, and therefore she is in such dismay that she almost loses the power to speak; but, because of those present, she forces herself to say: "In truth, I am sorry for his death, and it is no wonder that I grieve, for he came into this country for my sake, and therefore I should mourn for him." Then she says to herself, so that the others should not hear, that no one need ask her to drink or eat, if it is true that he is dead, in whose life she found her own. Then grieving she rises from the table, and makes her lament, but so that no one hears or notices her. She is so beside herself that she repeatedly grasps her throat with the desire to kill herself; but first she confesses to herself, and repents with self-reproach, blaming and censuring herself for the wrong she had done him, who, as she knew, had always been hers, and would still be hers, if he were alive. She is so distressed at the thought of her cruelty, that her beauty is seriously impaired. Her cruelty and meanness affected her and marred her beauty more than all the vigils and fastings with which she afflicted herself. When all her sins rise up before her, she gathers them together, and as she reviews them, she repeatedly exclaims: "Alas! of what was I thinking when my lover stood before me and I should have welcomed him, that I would not listen to his words? Was I not a fool, when I refused to look at or speak to him? Foolish indeed? Rather was I base and cruel, so help me God. I intended it as a jest, but he did not take it so, and has not pardoned me. I am sure it was no one but me who gave him his death-blow. When he came before me smiling and expecting that I would be glad to see him and would welcome him, and when I would not look at him, was not that a mortal blow? When I refused to speak with him, then doubtless at one blow I deprived him of his heart and life. These two strokes have killed him, I am sure; no other bandits have caused his death. God! can I ever make amends for this murder and this crime? No, indeed; sooner will the rivers and the sea dry up. Alas! how much better I should feel, and how much comfort I should take, if only once before he died I had held him in my arms! What? Yes, certainly, quite unclad, in order the better to enjoy him. If he is dead, I am very wicked not to destroy myself. Why? Can it harm my lover for me to live on after he is dead, if I take no pleasure in anything but in the woe I bear for him? In giving myself up to grief after his death, the very woes I court would be sweet to me, if he were only still alive. It is wrong for a woman to wish to die rather than to suffer for her lover's sake. It is certainly sweet for me to mourn him long. I would rather be beaten alive than die and be at rest."

For two days the Queen thus mourned for him without eating or drinking, until they thought she too would die. There are plenty of people ready to carry bad news rather than good. The news reaches Lancelot that his lady and sweetheart is dead. You need have no doubt of the grief he felt; every one may feel sure that he was afflicted and overcome with grief. Indeed, if you would know the truth, he was so downcast that he held his life in slight esteem. He wished to kill himself at once, but first he uttered a brief lament. He makes a running noose at one end of the belt he wore, and then tearfully communes thus with himself: "Ah, death, how hast thou spied me out and undone me, when in the bloom of health! I am undone, and yet I feel no pain except the grief within my heart. This is a terrible mortal grief. I am willing that it should be so, and if God will, I shall die of it. Then can I not die some other way, without God's consent? Yes, if he will let me tie this noose around my neck. I think I can compel death, even against her will, to take my life. Death, who covets only those who fear her, will not come to me; but my belt will bring her within my power, and as soon as she is mine, she will execute my desire. But, in truth, she will come too tardily for me, for I yearn to have her now!" Then he delays and hesitates no longer, but adjusts his head within the noose until it rests about his neck; and in order that he may not fail to harm himself, he fastens the end of the belt tightly about the saddle-bow, without attracting the attention of any one. Then he let himself slide to earth, intending his horse to drag him until he was lifeless, for he disdains to live another hour. When those who ride with him see him fallen to earth, they suppose him to be in a faint, for no one sees the noose which he had attached about his neck. At once they caught him in their arms and, on raising him, they found the noose which he had put around his neck and with which he sought to kill himself. They quickly cut the noose; but the noose had so hurt his throat that for some time he could not speak; the veins of his neck and throat are almost broken. Now he could not harm himself, even had he wished to do so; however, he is grieved that they have laid hands on him, and he almost burns up with rage, for willingly would he have killed himself had no one chanced to notice him. And now when he cannot harm himself, he cries: "Ah, vile and shameless death! For God's sake, why hadst thou not the power and might to kill me before my lady died? I suppose it was because thou wouldst not deign to do what might be a kindly deed. If thou didst spare me, it must be attributed to thy wickedness. Ah, what kind of service and kindness is that! How well hast thou employed them here! A curse upon him who thanks thee or feels gratitude for such a service! I know not which is more my enemy: life, which detains me, or death, which will not slay me. Each one torments me mortally; and it serves me right, so help me God, that in spite of myself I should still live on. For I ought to have killed myself as soon as my lady the Queen showed her hate for me; she did not do it without cause, but she had some good reason, though I know not what it is. And if I had known what it was before her soul went to God, I should have made her such rich amends as would have pleased her and gained her mercy. God! what could my crime have

been? I think she must have known that I mounted upon the cart. I do not know what other cause she can have to blame me. This has been my undoing. If this is the reason of her hate, God! what harm could this crime do? Any one who would reproach me for such an act never knew what love is, for no one could mention anything which, if prompted by love, ought to be turned into a reproach. Rather, everything that one can do for his lady-love is to be regarded as a token of his love and courtesy. Yet, I did not do it for my 'lady-love'. I know not by what name to call her, whether 'lady-love', or not. I do not dare to call her by this name. But I think I know this much of love: that if she loved me, she ought not to esteem me less for this crime, but rather call me her true lover, inasmuch as I regarded it as an honour to do all love bade me do, even to mount upon a cart. She ought to ascribe this to love; and this is a certain proof that love thus tries his devotees and thus learns who is really his. But this service did not please my lady, as I discovered by her countenance. And yet her lover did for her that for which many have shamefully reproached and blamed him, though she was the cause of it; and many blame me for the part I have played, and have turned my sweetness into bitterness. In truth, such is the custom of those who know so little of love, that even honour they wash in shame. But whoever dips honour into shame, does not wash it, but rather sullies it. But they, who maltreat him so, are quite ignorant of love; and he, who fears not his commands, boasts himself very superior to him. For unquestionably he fares well who obeys the commands of love, and whatever he does is pardonable, but he is the coward who does not dare."

Thus Lancelot makes his lament, and his men stand grieving by his side, keeping hold of him and guarding him. Then the news comes that the Queen is not dead. Thereupon Lancelot at once takes comfort, and if his grief for her death had before been intense and deep, now his joy for her life was a hundred thousand times as great. And when they arrived within six or seven leagues of the castle where King Bademagu was, grateful news of Lancelot was told him, how he was alive and was coming hale and hearty, and this news the king was glad to hear. He did a very courteous thing in going at once to appraise the Queen. And she replies: "Fair sire, since you say so, I believe it is true, but I assure you that, if he were dead, I should never be happy again. All my joy would be cut off, if a knight had been killed in my service."

Then the king leaves her, and the Queen yearns ardently for the arrival of her lover and her joy. She has no desire this time to bear him any grudge. But rumour, which never rests but runs always unceasingly, again reaches the Queen to the effect that Lancelot would have killed himself for her sake, if he had had the chance. She is happy at the thought that this is true, but she would not have had it happen so for anything, for her sorrow would have been too great. Thereupon Lancelot arrived in haste. As soon as the king sees him, he runs to kiss and embrace him. He feels as if he ought to fly, borne along by the buoyancy of his joy. But his satisfaction is cut short by those who had taken and bound his guest, and the king tells them they have come in an evil hour, for they shall all be killed and confounded. Then they made answer that they thought he would have it so. "It is I whom you have insulted in doing your pleasure. He has no reason to complain," the king replies; "you have not shamed him at all, but only me who was protecting him. However you look at it, the shame is mine. But if you escape me now, you will see no joke in this." When Lancelot hears his wrath, he puts forth every effort to make peace and adjust matters; when his efforts have met with success, the king takes him away to see the Queen. This time the Queen did not lower her eyes to the ground, but she went to meet him cheerfully, honouring him all she could, and making him sit down by her side. Then they talked together at length of all that was upon their hearts, and love furnished them with so much to say that topics did not lack. And when Lancelot sees how well he stands, and that all he says finds favour with the Queen, he says to her in confidence: "Lady, I marvel greatly why you received me with such a countenance when you saw me the day before yesterday, and why you would not speak a word to me: I almost died of the blow you gave me, and I had not the courage to dare to question you about it, as I now venture to do. I am ready now, lady, to make amends, when you have told me what has been the crime which has caused me such distress." Then the Queen replies: "What? Did you not hesitate for shame to mount the cart? You showed you were loath to get in, when you hesitated for two whole steps. That is the reason why I would neither address nor look at you." "May God save me from such a crime again," Lancelot replies, "and may God show me no mercy, if you were not quite right! For God's sake, lady, receive my amends at once, and tell me, for God's sake, if you can ever pardon me." "Friend, you are quite forgiven," the Queen replies; "I pardon you willingly." "Thank you for that, lady," he then says; "but I cannot tell you here all that I should like to say; I should like to talk with you more at leisure, if possible." Then the Queen indicates a window by her glance rather than with her finger, and says: "Come through the garden to-night and speak with me at yonder window, when every one inside has gone to sleep. You will not be able to get in: I shall be inside and you outside: to gain entrance will be impossible. I shall be able to touch you only with my lips or hand, but, if you please, I will stay there until morning for love of you. Our bodies cannot be joined, for close beside me in my room lies Kay the seneschal, who is still suffering from his wounds. And the door is not open, but is tightly closed and guarded well. When you come, take care to let no spy catch sight of you." "Lady," says he, "if I can help it, no spy shall see me who might think or speak evil of us." Then, having agreed upon this plan, they separate very joyfully.

Lancelot leaves the room in such a happy frame that all his past troubles are forgotten. But he was so impatient for the night to come that his restlessness made the day seem longer than a hundred ordinary days or than an entire year. If night had only come, he would gladly have gone to the trysting place. Dark and sombre night at last won its struggle with the day, and wrapped it up in its covering, and laid it away beneath its cloak. When he saw the light of day obscured, he pretended to be tired and worn, and said that, in view of his protracted vigils, he needed rest. You, who have ever done the same, may well understand and guess that he pretends to be tired and goes to bed in order to deceive the people of the house; but he cared nothing about his bed, nor would he have sought rest there for anything, for he could not have done so and would not have dared, and furthermore he would not have cared to possess the courage or the power to do so. Soon he softly rose, and was pleased to find that no moon or star was shining, and that in the house there was no candle, lamp, or lantern burning. Thus he went out and looked about, but there was no one on the watch for him, for all thought that he would sleep in his bed all night. Without escort or company he quickly went out into the garden, meeting no one on the way, and he was so fortunate as to find that a part of the garden-wall had recently fallen down. Through this break he passes quickly and proceeds to the window, where he stands, taking good care not to cough or sneeze, until the Queen arrives clad in a very white chemise. She wore no cloak or coat, but had thrown over her a short cape of scarlet cloth and shrew-mouse fur. As soon as Lancelot saw the Queen leaning on the window-sill behind the great iron bars, he honoured her with a gentle salute. She promptly returned his greeting, for he was desirous of her, and she of him. Their talk and conversation are not of vulgar, tiresome affairs. They draw close to one another, until each holds the other's hand. But they are so distressed at not being able to come together more completely, that they curse the iron bars. Then Lancelot asserts that, with the Queen's consent, he will come inside to be with her, and that the bars cannot keep him out. And the Queen replies: "Do you not see how the bars are stiff to bend and hard to break? You could never so twist, pull or drag at them as to dislodge one of them." "Lady," says he, "have no fear of that. It would take more than these bars to keep me out. Nothing but your command could thwart my power to come to you. If you will but grant me your permission, the way will open before me. But if it is not your pleasure, then the way is so obstructed that I could not possibly pass through." "Certainly," she says, "I consent. My will need not stand in your way; but you must wait until I retire to my bed again, so that no harm may come to you, for it would be no joke or jest if the seneschal, who is sleeping here, should wake up on hearing you. So it is best for me to withdraw, for no good could come of it, if he should see me standing here." "Go then, lady," he replies; "but have no fear that I shall make any noise. I think I can draw out the bars so softly and with so little effort that no one shall be aroused."

Then the Queen retires, and he prepares to loosen the window. Seizing the bars, he pulls and wrenches them until he makes them bend and drags them from their places. But the iron was so sharp that the end of his little finger was cut to the nerve, and the first joint of the next finger was torn; but he who is intent upon something else paid no heed to any of his wounds or to the blood which trickled down. Though the window is not low, Lancelot gets through it quickly and easily. First he finds Kay asleep in his bed, then he comes to the bed of the Queen, whom he adores and before whom he kneels, holding her more dear than the relic of any saint. And the Queen extends her arms to him and, embracing him, presses him tightly against her bosom, drawing him into the bed beside her and showing him every possible satisfaction; her love and her heart go out to him. It is love that prompts her to treat him so; and if she feels great love for him, he feels a hundred thousand times as much for her. For there is no love at all in other hearts compared with what there is in his; in his heart love was so completely embodied that it was niggardly toward all other hearts. Now Lancelot possesses all he wants, when the Queen voluntarily seeks his company and love, and when he holds her in his arms, and she holds him in hers. Their sport is so agreeable and sweet, as they kiss and fondle each other, that in truth such a marvellous joy comes over them as was never heard or known. But their joy will not be revealed by me, for in a story, it has no place. Yet, the most choice and delightful satisfaction was precisely that of which our story must not speak. That night Lancelot's joy and pleasure were very great. But, to his sorrow, day comes when he must leave his mistress' side. It cost him such pain to leave her that he suffered a real martyr's agony. His heart now stays where the Queen remains; he has not the power to lead it away, for it finds such pleasure in the Queen that it has no desire to leave her: so his body goes, and his heart remains. But enough of his body stays behind to spot and stain the sheets with the blood which has fallen from his fingers. Full of sighs and tears, Lancelot leaves in great distress. He grieves that no time is fixed for another meeting, but it cannot be. Regretfully he leaves by the window through which he had entered so happily. He was so badly wounded in the fingers that they were in sorry, state; yet he straightened the bars and set them in their place again, so that from neither side, either before or behind, was it evident that any one had drawn out or bent any of the bars. When he leaves the room, he bows and acts precisely as if he were before a shrine; then he goes with a heavy heart, and reaches his lodgings without being recognised by any one. He throws himself naked upon his bed without awaking any one, and then for the first time he is surprised to notice the cuts in his fingers; but he is not at all concerned, for he is very sure that the wound was caused by dragging the window bars from the wall. Therefore he was not at all worried, for he would rather have had both arms dragged from his body than not

enter through the window. But he would have been very angry and distressed, if he had thus injured and wounded himself under any other circumstances.

In the morning, within her curtained room, the Queen had fallen into a gentle sleep; she had not noticed that her sheets were spotted with blood, but she supposed them to be perfectly white and clean and presentable. Now Meleagant, as soon as he was dressed and ready, went to the room where the Queen lay. He finds her awake, and he sees the sheets spotted with fresh drops of blood, whereupon he nudges his companions and, suspicious of some mischief, looks at the bed of Kay the seneschal, and sees that his sheets are blood-stained too, for you must know that in the night his wounds had begun to bleed afresh. Then he said: "Lady, now I have found the evidence that I desired. It is very true that any man is a fool to try to confine a woman: he wastes his efforts and his pains. He who tries to keep her under guard loses her sooner than the man who takes no thought of her. A fine watch, indeed, has been kept by my father, who is guarding you on my behalf! He has succeeded in keeping you from me, but, in spite of him, Kay the seneschal has looked upon you last night, and has done what he pleased with you, as can readily be proved." "What is that?" she asks. "Since I must speak, I find blood on your sheets, which proves the fact. I know it and can prove it, because I find on both your sheets and his the blood which issued from his wounds: the evidence is very strong." Then the Queen saw on both beds the bloody sheets, and marvelling, she blushed with shame and said: "So help me God, this blood which I see upon my sheets was never brought here by Kay, but my nose bled during the night, and I suppose it must be from my nose." In saying so, she thinks she tells the truth. "By my head," says Meleagant, "there is nothing in what you say. Swearing is of no avail, for you are taken in your guilt, and the truth will soon be proved." Then he said to the guards who were present: "Gentlemen, do not move, and see to it that the sheets are not taken from the bed until I return. I wish the king to do me justice, as soon as he has seen the truth." Then he searched until he found him, and failing at his feet, he said: "Sire, come to see what you have failed to guard. Come to see the Queen, and you shall see the certain marvels which I have already seen and tested. But, before you go, I beg you not to fail to be just and upright toward me. You know well to what danger I have exposed myself for the Queen; yet, you are no friend of mine and keep her from me under guard. This morning I went to see her in her bed, and I remarked that Kay lies with her every night. Sire, for God's sake, be not angry, if I am disgruntled and if I complain. For it is very humiliating for me to be hated and despised by one with whom Kay is allowed to lie." "Silence!" says the king; "I don't believe it." "Then come, my lord, and see the sheets and the state in which Kay has left them. Since you will not believe my words, and since you think I am lying, I will show you the sheets and the quilt covered with blood from Kay's wounds." "Come now," says the king, "I wish to see for myself, and my eyes will judge of the truth." Then the king goes directly to the room, where the Queen got up at his approach. He sees that the sheets are blood-stained on her bed and on Kay's alike and he says: "Lady, it is going badly now, if what my son has said is true." Then she replies: "So help me God, never even in a dream was uttered such a monstrous lie. I think Kay the seneschal is courteous and loyal enough not to commit such a deed, and besides, I do not expose my body in the market-place, nor offer it of my own free will. Surely, Kay is not the man to make an insulting proposal to me, and I have never desired and shall never desire to do such a thing myself." "Sire, I shall be much obliged to you," says Meleagant to his father, "if Kay shall be made to atone for this outrage, and the Queen's shame thus be exposed. It devolves upon you to see that justice is done, and this justice I now request and claim. Kay has betrayed King Arthur, his lord, who had such confidence in him that he entrusted to him what he loved most in the world." "Let me answer, sire," says Kay, "and I shall exonerate myself. May God have no mercy upon my soul when I leave this world, if I ever lay with my lady! Indeed, I should rather be dead than ever do my lord such an ugly wrong, and may God never grant me better health than I have now but rather kill me on the spot, if such a thought ever entered my mind! But I know that my wounds bled profusely last night, and that is the reason why my sheets are stained with blood. That is why your son suspects me, but surely he has no right to do so." And Meleagant answers him: "So help me God, the devils and demons have betrayed you. You grew too heated last night and, as a result of your exertions, your wounds have doubtless bled afresh. There is no use in your denying it; we can see it, and it is perfectly evident. It is right that he should atone for his crime, who is so plainly taken in his guilt. Never did a knight with so fair a name commit such iniquities as this, and yours is the shame for it." "Sire, sire," says Kay to the king, "I will defend the Queen and myself against the accusation of your son. He harasses and distresses me, though he has no ground to treat me so." "You cannot fight," the king replies, "you are too ill." "Sire, if you will allow it, I will fight with him, ill as I am, and will show him that I am not guilty of the crime which he imputes to me." But the Queen, having secretly sent word to Lancelot, tells the king that she will present a knight who will defend the seneschal, if Meleagant dares to urge this charge. Then Meleagant said at once: "There is no knight without exception, even were he a giant, whom I will not fight until one of us is defeated." Then Lancelot came in, and with him such a rout of knights that the whole hall was filled with them. As soon as he had entered, in the hearing of all, both young and old, the Queen told what had happened, and said: "Lancelot, this insult has been done me by Meleagant. In the presence of all who hear his words he says I have lied, if you do not make him take it back. Last night, he asserted, Kay lay with me, because he found my sheets, like his, all stained with blood; and he says that he stands

convicted, unless he will undertake his own defence, or unless some one else will fight the battle on his behalf?" Lancelot says: "You need never use arguments with me. May it not please God that either you or he should be thus discredited! I am ready to fight and to prove to the extent of my power that he never was guilty of such a thought. I am ready to employ my strength in his behalf, and to defend him against this charge." Then Meleagant jumped up and said: "So help me God, I am pleased and well satisfied with that: no one need think that I object." And Lancelot said: "My lord king, I am well acquainted with suits and laws, with trials and verdicts: in a question of veracity an oath should be taken before the fight." Meleagant at once replies: "I agree to take an oath; so let the relics be brought at once, for I know well that I am right." And Lancelot answers him: "So help me God, no one who ever knew Kay the seneschal would doubt his word on such a point." Then they call for their horses, and ask that their arms be brought. This is promptly done, and when the valets had armed them, they were ready for the fight. Then the holy relics are brought forth: Meleagant steps forward, with Lancelot by his side, and both fall on their knees. Then Meleagant, laying his hands upon the relics, swears unreservedly: "So help me God and this holy relic, Kay the seneschal lay with the Queen in her bed last night and, had his pleasure with her." "And I swear that thou liest," says Lancelot, "and furthermore I swear that he neither lay with her nor touched her. And may it please God to take vengeance upon him who has lied, and may He bring the truth to light! Moreover, I will take another oath and swear, whoever may dislike it or be displeased, that if I am permitted to vanquish Meleagant to-day, I will show him no mercy, so help me God and these relics here!" The king felt no joy when he heard this oath.

When the oaths had been taken, their horses were brought forward, which were fair and good in every way. Each man mounts his own horse, and they ride at once at each other as fast as the steeds can carry them; and when the horses are in mid-career, the knights strike each other so fiercely that there is nothing left of the lances in their hands. Each brings the other to earth; however, they are not dismayed, but they rise at once and attack each other with their sharp drawn swords. The burning sparks fly in the air from their helmets. They assail each other so bitterly with the drawn swords in their hands that, as they thrust and draw, they encounter each other with their blows and will not pause even to catch their breath. The king in his grief and anxiety called the Queen, who had gone up in the tower to look out from the balcony: he begged her for God's sake, the Creator, to let them be separated. "Whatever is your pleasure is agreeable to me," the Queen says honestly: "I shall not object to anything you do." Lancelot plainly heard what reply the Queen made to the king's request, and from that time he ceased to fight and renounced the struggle at once. But Meleagant does not wish to stop, and continues to strike and hew at him. But the king rushes between them and stops his son, who declares with an oath that he has no desire for peace. He wants to fight, and cares not for peace. Then the king says to him: "Be quiet, and take my advice, and be sensible. No shame or harm shall come to thee, if thou wilt do what is right and heed my words. Dost thou not remember that thou hast agreed to fight him at King Arthur's court? And dost thou not suppose that it would be a much greater honour for thee to defeat him there than anywhere else?" The king says this to see if he can so influence him as to appease him and separate them. And Lancelot, who was impatient to go in search of my lord Gawain, requests leave of the king and Queen to depart. With their permission he goes away toward the water-bridge, and after him there followed a great company of knights. But it would have suited him very well, if many of those who went had stayed behind. They make long days' journeys until they approach the water-bridge, but are still about a league from it. Before they came in sight of the bridge, a dwarf came to meet them on a mighty hunter, holding a scourge with which to urge on and incite his steed. In accordance with his instructions, he at once inquired: "Which of you is Lancelot? Don't conceal him from me; I am of your party; tell me confidently, for I ask the question for your good." Lancelot replies in his own behalf, and says: "I am he whom thou seekest and askest for." "Ah," says the dwarf, "frank knight, leave these people, and trust in me. Come along with me alone, for I will take thee to a goodly place. Let no one follow thee for anything, but let them wait here; for we shall return presently." He, suspecting no harm in this, bids all his men stay there, and follows the dwarf who has betrayed him. Meanwhile his men who wait for him may continue to expect him long in vain, for they, who have taken and seized him, have no desire to give him up. And his men are in such a state of grief at his failure to return that they do not know what steps to take. They all say sorrowfully that the dwarf has betrayed them. It would be useless to inquire for him: with heavy hearts they begin to search, but they know not where to look for him with any hope of finding him. So they all take counsel, and the most reasonable and sensible agree on this, it seems: to go to the passage of the water-bridge, which is close by, to see if they can find my lord Gawain in wood or plain, and then with his advice search for Lancelot. Upon this plan they all agree without dissension. Toward the water-bridge they go, and as soon as they reach the bridge, they see my lord Gawain overturned and fallen from the bridge into the stream which is very deep. One moment he rises, and the next he sinks; one moment they see him, and the next they lose him from sight. They make such efforts that they succeed in raising him with branches, poles and hooks. He had nothing but his hauberk on his back, and on his head was fixed his helmet, which was worth ten of the common sort, and he wore his iron greaves, which were all rusty with his sweat, for he had endured great trials, and had passed victoriously through many perils and assaults. His lance, his shield, and horse were all behind on the other bank. Those who have rescued him do not believe he is alive. For

his body was full of water, and until he got rid of it, they did not hear him speak a word. But when his speech and voice and the passageway to his heart are free, and as soon, as what he said could be heard and understood, he tried to speak he inquired at once for the Queen, whether those present had any news of her. And they replied that she is still with King Bademagu, who serves her well and honourably. "Has no one come to seek her in this land?" my lord Gawain then inquires of them. And they answer him: "Yes, indeed." "Who?" "Lancelot of the Lake," they say, "who crossed the sword-bridge, and rescued and delivered her as well as all the rest of us. But we have been betrayed by a pot-bellied, humpbacked, and crabbed dwarf. He has deceived us shamefully in seducing Lancelot from us, and we do not know what he has done with him." "When was that?" my lord Gawain inquires. "Sire, near here this very day this trick was played on us, while he was coming with us to meet you." "And how has Lancelot been occupied since he entered this land?" Then they begin to tell him all about him in detail, and then they tell him about the Queen, how she is waiting for him and asserting that nothing could induce her to leave the country, until she sees him or hears some credible news of him. To them my lord Gawain replies: "When we leave this bridge, we shall go to search for Lancelot." There is not one who does not advise rather that they go to the Queen at once, and have the king seek Lancelot, for it is their opinion that his son Meleagant has shown his enmity by having him cast into prison. But if the king can learn where he is, he will certainly make him surrender him: they can rely upon this with confidence.

They all agreed upon this plan, and started at once upon their way until they drew near the court where the Queen and king were. There, too, was Kay the seneschal, and that disloyal man, full to overflowing of treachery, who has aroused the greatest anxiety for Lancelot on the part of the party which now arrives. They feel they have been discomfited and betrayed, and they make great lament in their misery. It is not a gracious message which reports this mourning to the Queen. Nevertheless, she departs herself with as good a grace as possible. She resolves to endure it, as she must, for the sake of my lord Gawain. However, she does not so conceal her grief that it does not somewhat appear. She has to show both joy and grief at once: her heart is empty for Lancelot, and to my lord Gawain she shows excessive joy. Every one who hears of the loss of Lancelot is grief-stricken and distracted. The king would have rejoiced at the coming of my lord Gawain and would have been delighted with his acquaintance; but he is so sorrowful and distressed over the betrayal of Lancelot that he is prostrated and full of grief. And the Queen beseeches him insistently to have him searched for, up and down throughout the land, without postponement or delay. My lord Gawain and Kay and all the others join in this prayer and request. "Leave this care to me, and speak no more of it," the king replies, "for I have been ready to do so for some time. Without need of request or prayer this search shall be made with thoroughness." Everyone bows in sign of gratitude, and the king at once sends messengers through his realm, sagacious and prudent men-at-arms, who inquired for him throughout the land. They made inquiry for him everywhere, but gained no certain news of him. Not finding any, they come back to the place where the knights remain; then Gawain and Kay and all the others say that they will go in search of him, fully armed and lance in rest; they will not trust to sending some one else.

One day after dinner they were all in the hall putting on their arms, and the point had been reached where there was nothing to do but start, when a valet entered and passed by them all until he came before the Queen, whose cheeks were by no means rosy! For she was in such mourning for Lancelot, of whom she had no news, that she had lost all her colour. The valet greeted her as well as the king, who was by her side, and then all the others and Kay and my lord Gawain. He held a letter in his hand which he gave to the king, who took it. The king had it read in the hearing of all by one who made no mistake in reading it. The reader knew full well how to communicate to them what was written in the parchment: he says that Lancelot sends greetings to the king as his kind lord, and thanks him for the honour and kindness he has shown him, and that he now places himself at the king's orders. And know that he is now hale and hearty at King Arthur's court, and he bids him tell the Queen to come thither, if she will consent, in company with my lord Gawain and Kay. In proof of which, he affixed his signature which they should recognise, as indeed they did. At this they were very happy and glad; the whole court resounds with their jubilation, and they say they will start next day as soon as it is light. So, when the day broke, they make ready and prepare: they rise and mount and start. With great joy and jubilee the king escorts them for a long distance on their way. When he has conducted them to the frontier and has seen them safely across the border, he takes leave of the Queen, and likewise of all the rest. And when he comes to take his leave, the Queen is careful to express her gratitude for all the kindness he has shown to her, and throwing her arms about his neck, she offers and promises him her own service and that of her lord: no greater promise can she make. And my lord Gawain promises his service to him, as to his lord and friend, and then Kay does likewise, and all the rest. Then the king commends them to God as they start upon their way. After these three, he bids the rest farewell, and then turns his face toward home. The Queen and her company do not tarry a single day until news of them reaches the court. King Arthur was delighted at the news of the Queen's approach, and he is happy and pleased at the thought that his nephew had brought about the Queen's return, as well as that of Kay and of the lesser folk. But the truth is quite different from what he thinks. All the town is cleared as they go to meet them, and knights and vassals join in shouting as they approach:

"Welcome to my lord Gawain, who has brought back the Queen and many another captive lady, and has freed for us many prisoners!" Then Gawain answered them: "Gentlemen, I do not deserve your praise. Do not trouble ever to say this again, for the compliment does not apply to me. This honour causes me only shame, for I did not reach the Queen in time; my detention made me late. But Lancelot reached there in time, and won such honour as was never won by any other knight." "Where is he, then, fair dear sire, for we do not see him here?" "Where?" echoes my lord Gawain; "at the court of my lord the King, to be sure. Is he not?" "No, he is not here, or anywhere else in this country. Since my lady was taken away, we have had no news of him." Then for the first time my lord Gawain realised that the letter had been forged, and that they had been betrayed and deceived: by the letter they had been misled. Then they all begin to lament, and they come thus weeping to the court, where the King at once asks for information about the affair. There were plenty who could tell him how much Lancelot had done, how the Queen and all the captives were delivered from durance by him, and by what treachery the dwarf had stolen him and drawn him away from them. This news is not pleasing to the King, and he is very sorry and full of grief; but his heart is so lightened by the pleasure he takes in the Queen's return, that his grief concludes in joy. When he has what he most desires, he cares little for the rest.

While the Queen was out of the country, I believe, the ladies and the damsels who were disconsolate, decided among themselves that they would marry, soon, and they organised a contest and a tournament. The lady of Noauz was patroness of it, with the lady of Pomeleglo. They will have nothing to do with those who fare ill, but they assert that they will accept those who comport themselves well in the tournament. And they had the date of the contest proclaimed a long while in advance in all the countries near and far, in order that there might be more participants. Now the Queen arrived before the date they had set, and as soon as the ladies heard of the Queen's return, most of them came at once to the King and besought him to grant them a favour and boon, which he did. He promised to do whatever they wished, before he knew what their desire might be. Then they told him that they wished him to let the Queen come to be present at their contest. And he who was not accustomed to forbid, said he was willing, if she wished it so. In happy mood they go to the Queen and say to her: "Lady, do not deprive us of the boon which the King has granted us." Then she asks them: "What is that? Don't fail to tell!" Then they say to her: "If you will come to our tournament, he will not gainsay you nor stand in the way." Then she said that she would come, since he was willing that she should. Promptly the dames send word throughout the realm that they are going to bring the Queen on the day set for the tournament. The news spread far and near, here and there, until it reached the kingdom whence no one used to return—but now whoever wished might enter or pass out unopposed. The news travelled in this kingdom until it came to a seneschal of the faithless Meleagant may an evil fire burn him! This seneschal had Lancelot in his keeping, for to him he had been entrusted by his enemy Meleagant, who hated him with deadly hate. Lancelot learned the hour and date of the tournament, and as soon as he heard of it, his eyes were not tearless nor was his heart glad. The lady of the house, seeing Lancelot sad and pensive, thus spoke to him: "Sire, for God's sake and for your own soul's good, tell me truly," the lady said, "why you are so changed. You won't eat or drink anything, and I see that you do not make merry or laugh. You can tell me with confidence why you are so sad and troubled." "Ah, lady, for God's sake, do not be surprised that I am sad! Truly, I am very much downcast, since I cannot be present where all that is good in the world will be assembled: that is, at the tournament where there will be a gathering of the people who make the earth tremble. Nevertheless, if it pleased you, and if God should incline your heart to let me go thither, you might rest assured that I should be careful to return to my captivity here." "I would gladly do it," she replied, "if I did not see that my death and destruction would result. But I am in such terror of my lord, the despicable Meleagant, that I would not dare to do it, for he would kill my husband at once. It is not strange that I am afraid of him, for, as you know, he is very bad." "Lady, if you are afraid that I may not return to you at once after the tournament, I will take an oath which I will never break, that nothing will detain me from returning at once to my prison here immediately after the tournament." Upon my word," said she, "I will allow it upon one condition." "Lady, what condition is that?" Then she replies: "Sire, upon condition that you wilt swear to return to me, and promise that I shall have your love." "Lady, I give you all the love I have, and swear to come back." Then the lady laughs and says: "I have no cause to boast of such a gift, for I know you have bestowed upon some one else the love for which I have just made request. However, I do not disdain to take so much of it as I can get. I shall be satisfied with what I can have, and will accept your oath that you will be so considerate of me as to return hither a prisoner."

In accordance with her wish, Lancelot swears by Holy Church that he will return without fail. And the lady at once gives him the vermillion arms of her lord, and his horse which was marvellously good and strong and brave. He mounts and leaves, armed with handsome, new arms, and proceeds until he comes to Noauz. He espoused this side in the tournament, and took his lodging outside the town. Never did such a noble man choose such a small and lowly lodging-place; but he did not wish to lodge where he might be recognised. There were many good and excellent knights gathered within the town. But there were many more outside, for so many had come on account of the presence of the Queen that the fifth part could not be accommodated inside. For every one who would have

been there under ordinary circumstances, there were seven who would not have come excepting on the Queen's account. The barons were quartered in tents, lodges, and pavilions for five leagues around. Moreover, it was wonderful how many gentle ladies and damsels were there. Lancelot placed his shield outside the door of his lodging-place, and then, to make himself more comfortable, he took off his arms and lay down upon a bed which he held in slight esteem; for it was narrow and had a thin mattress, and was covered with a coarse hempen cloth. Lancelot had thrown himself upon the bed all disarmed, and as he lay there in such poor estate, behold! a fellow came in in his shirt-sleeves; he was a herald-at-arms, and had left his coat and shoes in the tavern as a pledge; so he came running barefoot and exposed to the wind. He saw the shield hanging outside the door, and looked at it: but naturally he did not recognise it or know to whom it belonged, or who was the bearer of it. He sees the door of the house standing open, and upon entering, he sees Lancelot upon the bed, and as soon as he saw him, he recognised him and crossed himself. And Lancelot made a sign to him, and ordered him not to speak of him wherever he might go, for if he should tell that he knew him, it would be better for him to have his eyes put out or his neck broken. "Sire," the herald says, "I have always held you in high esteem, and so long as I live, I shall never do anything to cause you displeasure." Then he runs from the house and cries aloud: "Now there has come one who will take the measure! Now there has come one who will take the measure!" The fellow shouts this everywhere, and the people come from every side and ask him what is the meaning of his cry. He is not so rash as to answer them, but goes on shouting the same words: "Now there has come one who will take the measure!" This herald was the master of us all, when he taught us to use the phrase, for he was the first to make use of it.

#### Part IV: Vv. 5595 Vv. 7134

Now the crowd was assembled, including the Queen and all the ladies, the knights and the other people, and there were many men-at-arms everywhere, to the right and left. At the place where the tournament was to be, there were some large wooden stands for the use of the Queen with her ladies and damsels. Such fine stands were never seen before they were so long and well constructed. Thither the ladies betook themselves with the Queen, wishing to see who would fare better or worse in the combat. Knights arrive by tens, twenties, and thirties, here eighty and there ninety, here a hundred, there still more, and yonder twice as many yet; so that the press is so great in front of the stands and all around that they decide to begin the joust. As they assemble, armed and unarmed, their lances suggest the appearance of a wood, for those who have come to the sport brought so many lances that there is nothing in sight but lances, banners, and standards. Those who are going to take part begin to joust, and they find plenty of their companions who had come with similar intent. Still others prepare to perform other feats of chivalry. The fields, meadows, and fallow lands are so full of knights that it is impossible to estimate how many of them are there. But there was no sign of Lancelot at this first gathering of the knights; but later, when he entered the middle of the field, the herald saw him and could not refrain from crying out: "Behold him who will take the measure! Behold him who will take the measure!" And the people ask him who he is, but he will not tell them anything.

When Lancelot entered the tournament, he was as good as twenty of the best, and he began to fight so doughtily that no one could take his eyes from him, wherever he was. On the Pomelegloï side there was a brave and valorous knight, and his horse was spirited and swifter than a wild stag. He was the son of the Irish king, and fought well and handsomely. But the unknown knight pleased them all more a hundred times. In wonder they all make haste to ask: "Who is this knight who fights so well?" And the Queen privily called a clever and wise damsel to her and said: "Damsel, you must carry a message, and do it quickly and with few words. Go down from the stand, and approach yonder knight with the vermillion shield, and tell him privately that I bid him do his 'worst.'" She goes quickly, and with intelligence executes the Queen's command. She sought the knight until she came up close to him; then she said to him prudently and in a voice so low that no one standing by might hear: "Sire, my lady the Queen sends you word by me that you shall do your 'worst.'" When he heard this, he replied: "Very willingly," like one who is altogether hers. Then he rides at another knight as hard as his horse can carry him, and misses his thrust which should have struck him. From that time till evening fell he continued to do as badly as possible in accordance with the Queen's desire. But the other, who fought with him, did not miss his thrust, but struck him with such violence that he was roughly handled. Thereupon he took to flight, and after that he never turned his horse's head toward any knight, and were he to die for it, he would never do anything unless he saw in it his shame, disgrace, and dishonour; he even pretends to be afraid of all the knights who pass to and fro. And the very knights who formerly esteemed him now hurled jests and jibes at him. And the herald who had been saying: "He will beat them all in turn!" is greatly dejected and discomfited when he hears the scornful jokes of those who shout: "Friend, say no more! This fellow will not take any one's measure again. He has measured so much that his yardstick is broken, of which thou hast boasted to us so much." Many say: "What is he going to do? He was so brave just now; but now he is so cowardly that there is not a knight whom he dares to face. The cause of his first success must have been that he never engaged at arms before, and he was so brave at his first attack that the most skilled knight dared not withstand him,

for he fought like a wild man. But now he has learned so much of arms that he will never wish to bear them again his whole life long. His heart cannot longer endure the thought, for there is nothing more cowardly than his heart." And the Queen, as she watches him, is happy and well-pleased, for she knows full well, though she does not say it, that this is surely Lancelot. Thus all day long till evening he played his coward's part, and late in the afternoon they separated. At parting there was a great discussion as to who had done the best. The son of the Irish king thinks that without doubt or contradiction he has all the glory and renown. But he is grievously mistaken, for there were plenty of others as good as he. Even the vermillion knight so pleased the fairest and gentlest of the ladies and damsels that they had gazed at him more than at any other knight, for they had remarked how well he fought at first, and how excellent and brave he was; then he had become so cowardly that he dared not face a single knight, and even the worst of them could defeat and capture him at will. But knights and ladies all agreed that on the morrow they should return to the list, and the damsels should choose as their lords those who should win honour in that day's fight: on this arrangement they all agree. Then they turn toward their lodgings, and when they had returned, here and there men began to say: "What has become of the worst, the most craven and despised of knights? Whither did he go? Where is he concealed? Where is he to be found? Where shall we search for him? We shall probably never see him again. For he has been driven off by cowardice, with which he is so filled that there is no greater craven in the world than he. And he is not wrong, for a coward is a hundred times more at ease than a valorous fighting man. Cowardice is easy of entreaty, and that is the reason he has given her the kiss of peace and has taken from her all she has to give. Courage never so debased herself as to lodge in his breast or take quarters near him. But cowardice is altogether lodged with him, and she has found a host who will honour her and serve her so faithfully that he is willing to resign his own fair name for hers." Thus they wrangle all night, vying with each other in slander. But often one man maligns another, and yet is much worse himself than the object of his blame and scorn. Thus, every one said what he pleased about him. And when the next day dawned, all the people prepared and came again to the jousting place. The Queen was in the stand again, accompanied by her ladies and damsels and many knights without their arms, who had been captured or defeated, and these explained to them the armorial bearings of the knights whom they most esteem. Thus they talk among themselves: "Do you see that knight yonder with a golden band across the middle of his red shield? That is Governauz of Roberdic. And do you see that other one, who has an eagle and a dragon painted side by side upon his shield? That is the son of the King of Aragon, who has come to this land in search of glory and renown. And do you see that one beside him, who thrusts and jousts so well, bearing a shield with a leopard painted on a green ground on one part, and the other half is azure blue? That is Ignaures the well-beloved, a lover himself and jovial. And he who bears the shield with the pheasants portrayed beak to beak is Coguillanz of Mautirec. Do you see those two side by side, with their dappled steeds, and golden shields showing black lions? One is named Semiramis, and the other is his companion; their shields are painted alike. And do you see the one who has a shield with a gate painted on it, through which a stag appears to be passing out? That is King Ider, in truth." Thus they talk up in the stand. "That shield was made at Limoges, whence it was brought by Pilades, who is very ardent and keen to be always in the fight. That shield, bridle, and breast-strap were made at Toulouse, and were brought here by Kay of Estraus. The other came from Lyons on the Rhone, and there is no better under heaven; for his great merit it was presented to Taulas of the Desert, who bears it well and protects himself with it skilfully. Yonder shield is of English workmanship and was made at London; you see on it two swallows which appear as if about to fly; yet they do not move, but receive many blows from the Poitevin lances of steel; he who has it is poor Thoas." Thus they point out and describe the arms of those they know; but they see nothing of him whom they had held in such contempt, and, not remarking him in the fray, they suppose that he has slipped away. When the Queen sees that he is not there, she feels inclined to send some one to search for him in the crowd until he be found. She knows of no one better to send in search of him than she who yesterday performed her errand. So, straightway calling her, she said to her: "Damsel, go and mount your palfrey! I send you to the same knight as I sent you yesterday, and do you seek him until you find him. Do not delay for any cause, and tell him again to do his 'worst'. And when you have given him this message, mark well what reply he makes." The damsel makes no delay, for she had carefully noticed the direction he took the night before, knowing well that she would be sent to him again. She made her way through the ranks until she saw the knight, whom she instructs at once to do his "worst" again, if he desires the love and favour of the Queen which she sends him. And he makes answer: "My thanks to her, since such is her will." Then the damsel went away, and the valets, sergeants, and squires begin to shout: "See this marvellous thing! He of yesterday with the vermillion arms is back again. What can he want? Never in the world was there such a vile, despicable, and craven wretch! He is so in the power of cowardice that resistance is useless on his part." And the damsel returns to the Queen, who detained her and would not let her go until she heard what his response had been; then she heartily rejoiced, feeling no longer any doubt that this is he to whom she altogether belongs, and he is hers in like manner. Then she bids the damsel quickly return and tell him that it is her command and prayer that he shall do his "best"; and she says she will go at once without delay. She came down from the stand to where her valet with the palfrey was awaiting her. She mounted and rode until she found the knight, to whom

she said at once: "Sire, my lady now sends word that you shall do the 'best' you can!" And he replies: "Tell her now that it is never a hardship to do her will, for whatever pleases her is my delight." The maiden was not slow in bearing back this message, for she thinks it will greatly please and delight the Queen. She made her way as directly as possible to the stand, where the Queen rose and started to meet her, however, she did not go down, but waited for her at the top of the steps. And the damsels came happy in the message she had to bear. When she had climbed the steps and reached her side, she said: "Lady, I never saw so courteous a knight, for he is more than ready to obey every command you send to him, for, if the truth be known, he accepts good and evil with the same countenance. "Indeed," says the Queen, "that may well be so." Then she returns to the balcony to watch the knights. And Lancelot without delay seizes his shield by the leather straps, for he is kindled and consumed by the desire to show his prowess. Guiding his horse's head, he lets him run between two lines. All those mistaken and deluded men, who have spent a large part of the day and night in heaping him with ridicule, will soon be disconcerted. For a long time they have had their sport and joke and fun. The son of the King of Ireland held his shield closely gripped by the leather straps, as he spurs fiercely to meet him from the opposite direction. They come together with such violence that the son of the Irish king having broken and splintered his lance, wishes no more of the tournament; for it was not moss he struck, but hard, dry boards. In this encounter Lancelot taught him one of his thrusts, when he pinned his shield to his arm, and his arm to his side, and brought him down from his horse to earth. Like arrows the knights at once fly out, spurring and pricking from either side, some to relieve this knight, others to add to his distress. While some thus try to aid their lords, many a saddle is left empty in the strife and fray. But all that day Gawain took no hand at arms, though he was with the others there, for he took such pleasure in watching the deeds of him with the red painted arms that what the others did seemed to him pale in comparison. And the herald cheered up again, as he shouted aloud so that all could hear: "Here there has one come who will take the measure! To-day you shall see what he can do. To-day his prowess shall appear." Then the knight directs his steed and makes a very skilful thrust against a certain knight, whom he strikes so hard that he carries him a hundred feet or more from his horse. His feats with sword and lance are so well performed that there is none of the onlookers who does not find pleasure in watching him. Many even of those who bear arms find pleasure and satisfaction in what he does, for it is great sport to see how he makes horses and knights tumble and fall. He encounters hardly a single knight who is able to keep his seat, and he gives the horses he wins to those who want them. Then those who had been making game of him said: "Now we are disgraced and mortified. It was a great mistake for us to deride and vilify this man, for he is surely worth a thousand such as we are on this field; for he has defeated and outdone all the knights in the world, so that there is no one now that opposes him." And the damsels, who amazed were watching him, all said that he might take them to wife; but they did not dare to trust in their beauty or wealth, or power or highness, for not for her beauty or wealth would this peerless knight deign to choose any one of them. Yet, most of them are so enamoured of him that they say that, unless they marry him, they will not be bestowed upon any man this year. And the Queen, who hears them boast, laughs to herself and enjoy the fun, for well she knows that if all the gold of Arabia should be set before him, yet he who is beloved by them all would not select the best, the fairest, or the most charming of the group. One wish is common to them all—each wishes to have him as her spouse. One is jealous of another, as if she were already his wife; and all this is because they see him so adroit that in their opinion no mortal man could perform such deeds as he had done. He did so well that when the time came to leave the list, they admitted freely on both sides that no one had equalled the knight with the vermillion shield. All said this, and it was true. But when he left, he allowed his shield and lance and trappings to fall where he saw the thickest press, then he rode off hastily with such secrecy that no one of all the host noticed that he had disappeared. But he went straight back to the place whence he had come, to keep his oath. When the tournament broke up, they all searched and asked for him, but without success, for he fled away, having no desire to be recognised. The knights are disappointed and distressed, for they would have rejoiced to have him there. But if the knights were grieved to have been deserted thus, still greater was the damsels' grief when they learned the truth, and they asserted by St. John that they would not marry at all that year. If they can't have him whom they truly love, then all the others may be dismissed. Thus the tourney was adjourned without any of them choosing a husband. Meanwhile Lancelot without delay repairs to his prison. But the seneschal arrived two or three days before Lancelot, and inquired where he was. And his wife, who had given to Lancelot his fair and well-equipped vermillion arms, as well as his harness and his horse, told the truth to the seneschal—how she had sent him where there had been jousting at the tourney of Noauz. "Lady," the seneschal replies, "you could truly have done nothing worse than that. Doubtless, I shall smart for this, for my lord Meleagant will treat me worse than the beach-combers' law would treat me were I a mariner in distress. I shall be killed or banished the moment he hears the news, and he will have no pity for me." "Fair sire, be not now dismayed," the lady said; "there is no occasion for the fear you feel. There is no possibility of his detention, for he swore to me by the saints that he would return as soon as possible."

Then the seneschal mounts, and coming to his lord, tells him the whole story of the episode; but at the same time, he emphatically reassures him, telling how his wife had received his oath that he would return to his prison.

"He will not break his word, I know," says Meleagant: "and yet I am very much displeased at what your wife has done. Not for any consideration would I have had him present at that tournament. But return now, and see to it that, when he comes back, he be so strictly guarded that he shall not escape from his prison or have any freedom of body: and send me word at once." "Your orders shall be obeyed," says the seneschal. Then he goes away and finds Lancelot returned as prisoner in his yard. A messenger, sent by the seneschal, runs back at once to Meleagant, appraising him of Lancelot's return. When he heard this news, he took masons and carpenters who unwillingly or of their own free-will executed his commands. He summoned the best artisans in the land, and commanded them to build a tower, and exert themselves to build it well. The stone was quarried by the seaside; for near Gorre on this side there runs a big broad arm of the sea, in the midst of which an island stood, as Meleagant well knew. He ordered the stone to be carried thither and the material for the construction of the tower. In less than fifty-seven days the tower was completely built, high and thick and well-founded. When it was completed, he had Lancelot brought thither by night, and after putting him in the tower, he ordered the doors to be walled up, and made all the masons swear that they would never utter a word about this tower. It was his will that it should be thus sealed up, and that no door or opening should remain, except one small window. Here Lancelot was compelled to stay, and they gave him poor and meagre fare through this little window at certain hours, as the disloyal wretch had ordered and commanded them.

Now Meleagant has carried out all his purpose, and he betakes himself to King Arthur's court: behold him now arrived! And when he was before the King, he thus spoke with pride and arrogance: "King, I have scheduled a battle to take place in thy presence and in thy court. But I see nothing of Lancelot who agreed to be my antagonist. Nevertheless, as my duty is, in the hearing of all who are present here, I offer myself to fight this battle. And if he is here, let him now step forth and agree to meet me in your court a year from now. I know not if any one has told you how this battle was agreed upon. But I see knights here who were present at our conference, and who, if they would, could tell you the truth. If he should try to deny the truth, I should employ no hireling to take my place, but would prove it to him hand to hand." The Queen, who was seated beside the King, draws him to her as she says: "Sire, do you know who that knight is? It is Meleagant who carried me away while escorted by Kay the seneschal; he caused him plenty of shame and mischief too." And the King answered her: "Lady, I understand; I know full well that it is he who held my people in distress." The Queen says no more, but the King addresses Meleagant: "Friend," he says, "so help me God, we are very sad because we know nothing of Lancelot." "My lord King," says Meleagant, "Lancelot told me that I should surely find him here. Nowhere but in your court must I issue the call to this battle, and I desire all your knights here to bear me witness that I summon him to fight a year from to-day, as stipulated when we agreed to fight."

At this my lord Gawain gets up, much distressed at what he hears: "Sire, there is nothing known of Lancelot in all this land," he says; "but we shall send in search of him and, if God will, we shall find him yet, before the end of the year is reached, unless he be dead or in prison. And if he does not appear, then grant me the battle, and I will fight for him: I will arm myself in place of Lancelot, if he does not return before that day." "Ah," says Meleagant, "for God's sake, my fair lord King, grant him the boon. I join my request to his desire, for I know no knight in all the world with whom I would more gladly try my strength, excepting only Lancelot. But bear in mind that, if I do not fight with one of them, I will accept no exchange or substitution for either one." And the King says that



**IMAGE 5.27: KNIGHTS' TOURNAMENT** | Two knights fight while the audience looks on from the background.

**Author:** User "Ssire"

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

this is understood, if Lancelot does not return within the time. Then Meleagant left the royal court and journeyed until he found his father, King Bademagu. In order to appear brave and of consideration in his presence, he began by making a great pretence and by assuming an expression of marvellous cheer. That day the king was holding a joyous court at his city of Bade; it was his birthday, which he celebrated with splendour and generosity, and there were many people of divers sorts gathered with him. All the palace was filled with knights and damsels, and among them was the sister of Meleagant, of whom I shall tell you, farther on, what is my thought and reason for mentioning her here. But it is not fitting that I should explain it here, for I do not wish to confuse or entangle my material, but rather to treat it straight forwardly. Now I must tell you that Meleagant in the hearing of all, both great and small, spoke thus to his father boastingly: "Father," he says, "so help me God, please tell me truly now whether he ought not to be well-content, and whether he is not truly brave, who can cause his arms to be feared at King Arthur's court?" To this question his father replies at once: "Son," he says, "all good men ought to honour and serve and seek the company of one whose deserts are such." Then he flattered him with the request that he should not conceal why he has alluded to this, what he wishes, and whence he comes. "Sire, I know not whether you remember," Meleagant begins, "the agreements and stipulations which were recorded when Lancelot and I made peace. It was then agreed, I believe, and in the presence of many we were told, that we should present ourselves at the end of a year at Arthur's court. I went thither at the appointed time, ready equipped for my business there. I did everything that had been prescribed: I called and searched for Lancelot, with whom I was to fight, but I could not gain a sight of him: he had fled and run away. When I came away, Gawain pledged his word that, if Lancelot is not alive and does not return within the time agreed upon, no further postponement will be asked, but that he himself will fight the battle against me in place of Lancelot. Arthur has no knight, as is well known, whose fame equals his, but before the flowers bloom again, I shall see, when we come to blows, whether his fame and his deeds are in accord: I only wish it could be settled now!" "Son," says his father, "thou art acting exactly like a fool. Any one, who knew it not before, may learn of thy madness from thy own lips. A good heart truly humbles itself, but the fool and the boastful never lose their folly. Son, to thee I direct my words, for the traits of thy character are so hard and dry, that there is no place for sweetness or friendship. Thy heart is altogether pitiless: thou art altogether in folly's grasp. This accounts for my slight respect for thee, and this is what will cast thee down. If thou art brave, there will be plenty of men to say so in time of need. A virtuous man need not praise his heart in order to enhance his deed; the deed itself will speak in its own praise. Thy self-praise does not aid thee a whit to increase in any one's esteem; indeed, I hold thee in less esteem. Son, I chasten thee; but to what end? It is of little use to advise a fool. He only wastes his strength in vain who tries to cure the madness of a fool, and the wisdom that one teaches and expounds is worthless, wasted and unemployed, unless it is expressed in works." Then Meleagant was sorely enraged and furious. I may truly say that never could you see a mortal man so full of anger as he was; the last bond between them was broken then, as he spoke to his father these ungracious words: "Are you in a dream or trance, when you say that I am mad to tell you how my matters stand? I thought I had come to you as to my lord and my father; but that does not seem to be the case, for you insult me more outrageously than I think you have any right to do; moreover, you can give no reason for having addressed me thus." "Indeed, I can." "What is it, then?" "Because I see nothing in thee but folly and wrath. I know very well what thy courage is like, and that it will cause thee great trouble yet. A curse upon him who supposes that the elegant Lancelot, who is esteemed by all but thee, has ever fled from thee through fear. I am sure that he is buried or confined in some prison whose door is barred so tight that he cannot escape without leave. I should surely be sorely grieved if he were dead or in distress. It would surely be too bad, were a creature so splendidly equipped, so fair, so bold, yet so serene, to perish thus before his time. But, may it please God, this is not true." Then Bademagu said no more; but a daughter of his had listened attentively to all his words, and you must know that it was she whom I mentioned earlier in my tale, and who is not happy now to hear such news of Lancelot. It is quite clear to her that he is shut up, since no one knows any news of him or his wanderings. "May God never look upon me, if I rest until I have some sure and certain news of him!" Straightway, without making any noise or disturbance, she runs and mounts a fair and easy-stepping mule. But I must say that when she leaves the court, she knows not which way to turn. However, she asks no advice in her predicament, but takes the first road she finds, and rides along at random rapidly, unaccompanied by knight or squire. In her eagerness she makes haste to attain the object of her search. Keenly she presses forward in her quest, but it will not soon terminate. She may not rest or delay long in any single place, if she wishes to carry out her plan, to release Lancelot from his prison, if she can find him and if it is possible. But in my opinion, before she finds him she will have searched in many a land, after many a journey and many a quest, before she has any news of him. But what would be the use of my telling you of her lodgings and her journeyings? Finally, she travelled so far through hill and dale, up and down, that more than a month had passed, and as yet she had learned only so much as she knew before—that is, absolutely nothing. One day she was crossing a field in a sad and pensive mood, when she saw a tower in the distance standing by the shore of an arm of the sea. Not within a league around about was there any house, cottage, or dwelling-place. Meleagant had had it built, and had confined

Lancelot within. But of all this she still was unaware. As soon as she espied the tower, she fixed her attention upon it to the exclusion of all else. And her heart gives her assurance that here is the object of her quest; now at last she has reached her goal, to which Fortune through many trials has at last directed her.

The damsel draws so near to the tower that she can touch it with her hands. She walks about, listening attentively, I suppose, if perchance she may hear some welcome sound. She looks down and she gazes up, and she sees that the tower is strong and high and thick. She is amazed to see no door or window, except one little narrow opening. Moreover, there was no ladder or steps about this high, sheer tower. For this reason she surmises that it was made so intentionally, and that Lancelot is confined inside. But she resolves that before she tastes of food, she will learn whether this is so or not. She thinks she will call Lancelot by name, and is about to do so when she is deterred by hearing from the tower a voice which was making a marvellously sad moan as it called on death. It implores death to come, and complains of misery unbearable. In contempt of the body and life, it weakly piped in a low, hoarse tone: "Ah, fortune, how disastrously thy wheel has turned for me! Thou hast mocked me shamefully: a while ago I was up, but now I am down; I was well off of late, but now I am in a sorry state; not long since thou didst smile on me, but now thy eyes are filled with tears. Alas, poor wretch, why didst thou trust in her, when so soon she has deserted thee! Behold, in a very little while she has cast thee down from thy high estate! Fortune, it was wrong of thee to mock me thus; but what carest thou! Thou carest not how it may turn out. Ah, sacred Cross! All, Holy Ghost! How am I wretched and undone! How completely has my career been closed! Ah, Gawain, you who possess such worth, and whose goodness is unparalleled, surely I may well be amazed that you do not come to succour me. Surely you delay too long and are not showing courtesy. He ought indeed to receive your aid whom you used to love so devotedly! For my part I may truly say that there is no lodging place or retreat on either side of the sea, where I would not have searched for you at least seven or ten years before finding you, if I knew you to be in prison. But why do I thus torment myself? You do not care for me even enough to take this trouble. The rustic is right when he says that it is hard nowadays to find a friend! It is easy to rest the true friend in time ou need. Alas! more than a year has passed since first I was put inside this tower. I feel hurt, Gawain, that you have so long deserted me! But doubtless you know nothing of all this, and I have no ground for blaming you. Yes, when I think of it, this must be the case, and I was very wrong to imagine such a thing; for I am confident that not for all the world contains would you and your men have failed to come to release me from this trouble and distress, if you were aware of it. If for no other reason, you would be bound to do this out of love for me, your companion. But it is idle to talk about it—it cannot be. Ah, may the curse and the damnation of God and St. Sylvester rest upon him who has shut me up so shamefully! He is the vilest man alive, this envious Meleagant, to treat me as evilly as possible!" Then he, who is wearing out his life in grief, ceases speaking and holds his peace. But when she, who was lingering at the base of the tower, heard what he said, she did not delay, but acted wisely and called him thus: "Lancelot," as loudly as she could; "friend, up there, speak to one who is your friend!" But inside he did not hear her words. Then she called out louder yet, until he in his weakness faintly heard her, and wondered who could be calling him. He heard the voice and heard his name pronounced, but he did not know who was calling him: he thinks it must be a spirit. He looks all about him to see, I suppose, if he could espy any one; but there is nothing to be seen but the tower and himself. "God," says he, "what is that I heard? I heard some one speak, but see nothing! Indeed, this is passing marvellous, for I am not asleep, but wide awake. Of course, if this happened in a dream, I should consider it an illusion; but I am awake, and therefore I am distressed." Then with some trouble he gets up, and with slow and feeble steps he moves toward the little opening. Once there, he peers through it, up and down and to either side. When he had looked out as best he might, he caught sight of her who had hailed him. He did not recognise her by sight. But she knew him at once and said: "Lancelot, I have come from afar in search of you. Now, thank God, at last I have found you. I am she who asked of you a boon as you were on your way to the sword-bridge, and you very gladly granted it at my request; it was the head I bade you cut from the conquered knight whom I hated so. Because of this boon and this service you did me, I have gone to this trouble. As a guerdon I shall deliver you from here." "Damsel, many thanks to you," the prisoner then replied; "the service I did you will be well repaid if I am set at liberty. If you can get me out of here, I promise and engage to be henceforth always yours, so help me the holy Apostle Paul! And as I may see God face to face, I shall never fail to obey your commands in accordance with your will. You may ask for anything I have, and receive it without delay." "Friend, have no fear that you will not be released from here. You shall be loosed and set free this very day. Not for a thousand pounds would I renounce the expectation of seeing you free before the datum of another day. Then I shall take you to a pleasant place, where you may rest and take your ease. There you shall have everything you desire, whatever it be. So have no fear. But first I must see if I can find some tool anywhere hereabouts with which you might enlarge this hole, at least enough to let you pass." "God grant that you find something," he said, agreeing to this plan; "I have plenty of rope in here, which the rascals gave me to pull up my food—hard barley bread and dirty water, which sicken my stomach and heart." Then the daughter of Bademagu sought and found a strong, stout, sharp pick, which she handed to him. He pounded, and hammered and struck and dug, notwithstanding the

pain it caused him, until he could get out comfortably. Now he is greatly relieved and glad, you may be sure, to be out Of prison and to get away from the place where he has been so long confined. Now he is at large in the open air. You may be sure that he would not go back again, were some one to gather in a pile and give to him all the gold there is scattered in the world.

Behold Lancelot now released, but so feeble that he staggered from his weakness and disability. Gently, without hurting him, she sets him before her on her mule, and then they ride off rapidly. But the damsels purposely avoids the beaten track, that they may not be seen, and proceeds by a hidden path; for if she had travelled openly, doubtless some one would have recognised them and done them harm, and she would not have wished that to happen. So she avoided the dangerous places and came to a mansion where she often makes her sojourn because of its beauty and charm. The entire estate and the people on it belonged to her, and the place was well furnished, safe, and private. There Lancelot arrived. And as soon as he had come, and had laid aside his clothes, the damsels gently laid him on a lofty, handsome couch, then bathed and rubbed him so carefully that I could not describe half the care she took. She handled and treated him as gently as if he had been her father. Her treatment makes a new man of him, as she revives him with her cares. Now he is no less fair than an angel and is more nimble and more spry than anything you ever saw. When he arose, he was no longer mangy and haggard, but strong and handsome. And the damsels sought out for him the finest robe she could find, with which she clothed him when he arose. And he was glad to put it on, quicker than a bird in flight. He kissed and embraced the maid, and then said to her graciously: "My dear, I have only God and you to thank for being restored to health again. Since I owe my liberty to you, you may take and command at will my heart and body, my service and estate. I belong to you in return for what you have done for me; but it is long since I have been at the court of my lord Arthur, who has shown me great honour; and there is plenty there for me to do. Now, my sweet gentle friend, I beg you affectionately for leave to go; then, with your consent, I should feel free to go." "Lancelot, fair, sweet dear friend, I am quite willing," the damsels says; "I desire your honour and welfare above everything everywhere." Then she gives him a wonderful horse she has, the best horse that ever was seen, and he leaps up without so much as saying to the stirrups "by your leave": he was up without considering them. Then to God, who never lies, they command each other with good intent.

Lancelot was so glad to be on the road that, if I should take an oath, I could not possibly describe the joy he felt at having escaped from his trap. But he said to himself repeatedly that woe was the traitor, the reprobate, whom now he has tricked and ridiculed, "for in spite of him I have escaped." Then he swears by the heart and body of Him who made the world that not for all the riches and wealth from Babylon to Ghent would he let Meleagant escape, if he once got him in his power: for he has him to thank for too much harm and shame! But events will soon turn out so as to make this possible; for this very Meleagant, whom he threatens and presses hard, had already come to court that day without being summoned by any one; and the first thing he did was to search until he found my lord Gawain. Then the rascally proven traitor asks him about Lancelot, whether he had been seen or found, as if he himself did not know the truth. As a matter of fact, he did not know the truth, although he thought he knew it well enough. And Gawain told him, as was true, that he had not been seen, and that he had not come. "Well, since I don't find him," says Meleagant, "do you come and keep the promise you made me: I shall not longer wait for you." Then Gawain makes answer: "I will keep presently my word with you, if it please God in whom I place my trust. I expect to discharge my debt to you. But if it comes to throwing dice for points, and I should throw a higher number than you, so help me God and the holy faith, I'll not withdraw, but will keep on until I pocket all the stakes." Then without delay Gawain orders a rug to be thrown down and spread before him. There was no snivelling or attempt to run away when the squires heard this command, but without grumbling or complaint they execute what he commands. They bring the rug and spread it out in the place indicated; then he who had sent for it takes his seat upon it and gives orders to be armed by the young men who were standing unarmed before him. There were two of them, his cousins or nephews, I know not which, but they were accomplished and knew what to do. They arm him so skilfully and well that no one could find any fault in the world with them for any mistake in what they did. When they finished arming him, one of them went to fetch a Spanish steed able to cross the fields, woods, hills, and valleys more swiftly than the good Bucephalus. Upon a horse such as you have heard Gawain took his seat—the admired and most accomplished knight upon whom the sign of the Cross was ever made. Already he was about to seize his shield, when he saw Lancelot dismount before him, whom he was not expecting to see. He looked at him in amazement, because he had come so unexpectedly; and, if I am not wrong, he was as much surprised as if he had fallen from the clouds. However, no business of his own can detain him, as soon as he sees Lancelot, from dismounting and extending his arms to him, as he embraces, salutes and kisses him. Now he is happy and at ease, when he has found his companion. Now I will tell you the truth, and you must not think I lie, that Gawain would not wish to be chosen king, unless he had Lancelot with him. The King and all the rest now learn that, in spite of all, Lancelot, for whom they so long have watched, has come back quite safe and sound. Therefore they all rejoice, and the court, which so long has looked for him, comes together to honour him. Their

happiness dispels and drives away the sorrow which formerly was theirs. Grief takes flight and is replaced by an awakening joy. And how about the Queen? Does she not share in the general jubilee? Yes, verily, she first of all. How so? For God's sake, where, then, could she be keeping herself? She was never so glad in her life as she was for his return. And did she not even go to him? Certainly she did; she is so close to him that her body came near following her heart. Where is her heart, then? It was kissing and welcoming Lancelot. And why did the body conceal itself? Why is not her joy complete? Is it mingled with anger or hate? No, certainly, not at all; but it may be that the King or some of the others who are there, and who are watching what takes place, would have taken the whole situation in, if, while all were looking on, she had followed the dictates of her heart. If common-sense had not banished this mad impulse and rash desire, her heart would have been revealed and her folly would have been complete. Therefore reason closes up and binds her fond heart and her rash intent, and made it more reasonable, postponing the greeting until it shall see and espy a suitable and more private place where they would fare better than here and now. The King highly honoured Lancelot, and after welcoming him, thus spoke: "I have not heard for a long time news of any man which were so welcome as news of you; yet I am much concerned to learn in what region and in what land you have tarried so long a time. I have had search made for you up and down, all the winter and summer through, but no one could find a trace of you." "Indeed, fair sire," says Lancelot, "I can inform you in a few words exactly how it has fared with me. The miserable traitor Meleagant has kept me in prison ever since the hour of the deliverance of the prisoners in his land, and has condemned me to a life of shame in a tower of his beside the sea. There he put me and shut me in, and there I should still be dragging out my weary life, if it were not for a friend of mine, a damsel for whom I once performed a slight service. In return for the little favour I did her, she has repaid me liberally: she has bestowed upon me great honour and blessing. But I wish to repay without delay him for whom I have no love, who has sought out and devised for me this shame and injury. He need not wait, for the sum is all ready, principal and interest; but God forbid that he find in it cause to rejoice!" Then Gawain said to Lancelot: "Friend, it will be only a slight favour for me, who am in your debt, to make this payment for you. Moreover, I am all ready and mounted, as you see. Fair, sweet friend, do not deny me the boon I desire and request." But Lancelot replies that he would rather have his eye plucked out, or even both of them, than be persuaded to do this: he swears it shall never be so. He owes the debt and he will pay it himself: for with his own hand he promised it. Gawain plainly sees that nothing he can say is of any avail, so he loosens and takes off his hauberk from his back, and completely disarms himself. Lancelot at once arms himself without delay; for he is impatient to settle and discharge his debt. Meleagant, who is amazed beyond measure at what he sees, has reached the end of his good fortunes, and is about to receive what is owing him. He is almost beside himself and comes near fainting. "Surely I was a fool," he says, "not to go, before coming here, to see if I still held imprisoned in my tower him who now has played this trick on me. But, God, why should I have gone? What cause had I to think that he could possibly escape? Is not the wall built strong enough, and is not the tower sufficiently strong and high? There was no hole or crevice in it, through which he could pass, unless he was aided from outside. I am sure his hiding-place was revealed. If the wall were worn away and had fallen into decay, would he not have been caught and injured or killed at the same time? Yes, so help me God, if it had fallen down, he would certainly have been killed. But I guess, before that wall gives away without being torn down, that all the water in the sea will dry up without leaving a drop and the world will come to an end. No, that is not it: it happened otherwise: he was helped to escape, and could not have got out otherwise: I have been outwitted through some trickery. At any rate, he has escaped; but if I had been on my guard, all this would never have happened, and he would never have come to court. But it's too late now to repent. The rustic, who seldom errs, pertinently remarks that it is too late to close the stable when the horse is out. I know I shall now be exposed to great shame and humiliation, if indeed I do not suffer and endure something worse. What shall I suffer and endure? Rather, so long as I live, I will give him full measure, if it please God, in whom I trust." Thus he consoles himself, and has no other desire than to meet his antagonist on the field. And he will not have long to wait, I think, for Lancelot goes in search of him, expecting soon to conquer him. But before the assault begins, the King bids them go down into the plain where the tower stands, the prettiest place this side of Ireland for a fight. So they did, and soon found themselves on the plain below. The King goes down too, and all the rest, men and women in crowds. No one stays behind; but many go up to the windows of the tower, among them the Queen, her ladies and damsels, of whom she had many with her who were fair.

In the field there stood a sycamore as fair as any tree could be; it was wide-spread and covered a large area, and around it grew a fine border of thick fresh grass which was green at all seasons of the year. Under this fair and stately sycamore, which was planted back in Abel's time, there rises a clear spring of water which flows away hurriedly. The bed of the spring is beautiful and as bright as silver, and the channel through which the water flows is formed, I think, of refined and tested gold, and it stretches away across the field down into a valley between the woods. There it pleases the King to take his seat where nothing unpleasant is in sight. After the crowd has drawn back at the King's command, Lancelot rushes furiously at Meleagant as at one whom he hates cordially, but before

striking him, he shouted with a loud and commanding voice: "Take your stand, I defy you! And take my word, this time you shall not be spared." Then he spurs his steed and draws back the distance of a bow-shot. Then they drive their horses toward each other at top speed, and strike each other so fiercely upon their resisting shields that they pierced and punctured them. But neither one is wounded, nor is the flesh touched in this first assault. They pass each other without delay, and come back at the top of their horses: speed to renew their blows on the strong, stout shields. Both of the knights are strong and brave, and both of the horses are stout and fast. So mighty are the blows they deal on the shields about their necks that the lances passed clean through, without breaking or splintering, until the cold steel reached their flesh. Each strikes the other with such force that both are borne to earth, and no breast-strap, girth, or stirrup could save them from falling backward over their saddle-bow, leaving the saddle without an occupant. The horses run riderless over hill and dale, but they kick and bite each other, thus showing their mortal hatred. As for the knights who fell to earth, they leaped up as quickly as possible and drew their swords, which were engraved with chiselled lettering. Holding their shields before the face, they strive to wound each other with their swords of steel. Lancelot stands in no fear of him, for he knew half as much again about fencing as did his antagonist, having learned it in his youth. Both dealt such blows on the shield slung from their necks, and upon their helmets barred with gold, that they crushed and damaged them. But Lancelot presses him hard and gives him a mighty blow upon his right arm which, though encased in mail, was unprotected by the shield, severing it with one clean stroke. And when he felt the loss of his right arm, he said that it should be dearly sold. If it is at all possible, he will not fail to exact the price; he is in such pain and wrath and rage that he is well-nigh beside himself, and he has a poor opinion of himself, if he cannot score on his rival now. He rushes at him with the intent to seize him, but Lancelot forestalls his plan, for with his trenchant sword he deals his body such a cut as he will not recover from until April and May be passed. He smashes his nose-guard against his teeth, breaking three of them in his mouth. And Meleagant's rage is such that he cannot speak or say a word; nor does he deign to cry for mercy, for his foolish heart holds tight in such constraint that even now it deludes him still. Lancelot approaches and, unlacing his helmet, cuts off his head. Never more will this man trouble him; it is all over with him as he falls dead. Not a soul who was present there felt any pity at the sight. The King and all the others there are jubilant and express their joy. Happier than they ever were before, they relieve Lancelot of his arms, and lead him away exultingly.

My lords, if I should prolong my tale, it would be beside the purpose, and so I will conclude. Godefroi de Leigni, the clerk, has written the conclusion of "the Cart"; but let no one find fault with him for having embroidered on Chretien's theme, for it was done with the consent of Chretien who started it. Godefroi has finished it from the point where Lancelot was imprisoned in the tower. So much he wrote; but he would fain add nothing more, for fear of disfiguring the tale.

## THE SONG OF THE CID

Anonymous

Composed ca. 1195-1207 C.E.

Spain

*The Song of the Cid* (called both *El Cantar de Mio Cid* and *El Poema de Mio Cid* in Spanish) is based on real people and events. The hero of the story is Rodrigo Díaz de Vivar (1043-1099 C.E.), called *Mío Cid* (my Lord) by the narrator, *El Cid* by Moors, and *El Campeador* (the Champion) by Christians. In the Cid's lifetime, Spain was a collection of kingdoms, with various Muslim rulers in south and central Spain, and several Christian rulers in the north. Muslim and Christian rulers often formed alliances, and the historical Cid led a combined army of Christian and Muslim troops, working alternately for rulers of both religions. In the story, his fame as a military leader does not protect him or his family from betrayal. Before the story begins, the Cid has been exiled by a Christian ruler based on slander by jealous courtiers. The Cid's sense of honor drives the plot, and his fame lives on to the present day, where he is celebrated as a hero of Spain.

Written by Laura J. Getty

## THE LAY OF THE CID

License: Public Domain

Cid, Translated by R. Seldon Rose and Leonard Bacon

Cantar I*The Banishment of the Cid**I*

**IMAGE 5.28: STATUE OF THE CID** | The Cid sits on his horse with his sword pointed forward.

**Author:** User “chicadelatele”

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** CC BY 2.0

He turned and looked upon them, and he wept very sore  
As he saw the yawning gateway and the hasps wrenched off the door,  
And the pegs whereon no mantle nor coat of vair there hung.  
There perched no moulted goshawk, and there no falcon swung.  
My lord the Cid sighed deeply such grief was in his heart 5  
And he spake well and wisely:  
“Oh Thou, in Heaven that art  
Our Father and our Master, now I give thanks to Thee.  
Of their wickedness my foemen have done this thing to me.”

*II*

Then they shook out the bridle rein further to ride afar. 10  
They had the crow on their right hand as they issued from Bivár;  
And as they entered Burgos upon their left it sped.  
And the Cid shrugged his shoulders, and the Cid shook his head:  
“Good tidings, Alvar Fañez. We are banished from our weal,  
But on a day with honor shall we come unto Castile.” 15

*III*

Roy Diaz entered Burgos with sixty pennons strong,  
And forth to look upon him did the men and women throng.  
And with their wives the townsmen at the windows stood hard by,  
And they wept in lamentation, their grief was risen so high.  
As with one mouth, together they spake with one accord:20  
“God, what a noble vassal, an he had a worthy lord.

*IV*

Fain had they made him welcome, but none dared do the thing  
For fear of Don Alfonso, and the fury of the King.  
His mandate unto Burgos came ere the evening fell.  
With utmost care they brought it, and it was sealed well  
‘That no man to Roy Diaz give shelter now, take heed  
And if one give him shelter, let him know in very deed  
He shall lose his whole possession, nay! the eyes within his head  
Nor shall his soul and body be found in better stead.’  
Great sorrow had the Christians, and from his face they hid.  
Was none dared aught to utter unto my lord the Cid.  
Then the Campeador departed unto his lodging straight.  
But when he was come thither, they had locked and barred the gate.  
In their fear of King Alfonso had they done even so.  
An the Cid forced not his entrance, neither for weal nor woe  
Durst they open it unto him. Loudly his men did call.  
Nothing thereto in answer said the folk within the hall.  
My lord the Cid spurred onward, to the doorway did he go.  
He drew his foot from the stirrup, he smote the door one blow.  
Yet the door would not open, for they had barred it fast.  
But a maiden of nine summers came unto him at last:

25

30

35

40

"Campeador, in happy hour thou girdedst on the sword.  
 "This the King's will. Yestereven came the mandate of our lord.  
 With utmost care they brought it, and it was sealed with care:  
 None to ope to you or greet you for any cause shall dare. 45  
 And if we do, we forfeit houses and lands instead.  
 Nay we shall lose, moreover, the eyes within the head  
 And, Cid, with our misfortune, naught whatever dost thou gain.  
 But may God with all his power support thee in thy pain."  
 So spake the child and turned away. Unto her home went she. 50  
 That he lacked the King's favor now well the Cid might see.  
 He left the door; forth onward he spurred through Burgos town.  
 When he had reached Saint Mary's, then he got swiftly down  
 He fell upon his knee and prayed with a true heart indeed:  
 and when the prayer was over, he mounted on the steed. 55  
 North from the gate and over the Arlanzon he went.  
 Here in the sand by Burgos, the Cid let pitch his tent.  
 Roy Diaz, who in happy hour had girded on the brand,  
 Since none at home would greet him, encamped there on the sand.  
 With a good squadron, camping as if within the wood. 60  
 They will not let him in Burgos buy any kind of food.  
 Provender for a single day they dared not to him sell.

## V

Good Martin Antolínez in Burgos that did dwell  
 To the Cid and to his henchmen much wine and bread gave o'er,  
 That he bought not, but brought with him--of everything good store. 65  
 Content was the great Campeador, and his men were of good cheer.  
 Spake Martin Antolínez. His counsel you shall hear.  
 "In happy hour, Cid Campeador, most surely wast thou born.  
 Tonight here let us tarry, but let us flee at morn,  
 For someone will denounce me, that thy service I have done.  
 In the danger of Alfonso I certainly shall run. 70  
 Late or soon, if I 'scape with thee the King must seek me forth  
 For friendship's sake; if not, my wealth, a fig it is not worth.

## VI

Then said the Cid, who in good hour had girded on the steel:  
 "Oh Martin Antolínez, thou art a good lance and leal. 75  
 And if I live, hereafter I shall pay thee double rent,  
 But gone is all my silver, and all my gold is spent.  
 And well enough thou seest that I bring naught with me  
 And many things are needful for my good company.  
 Since by favor I win nothing by might then must I gain.  
 I desire by thy counsel to get ready coffers twain. 80  
 With the sand let us fill them, to lift a burden sore,  
 And cover them with stamped leather with nails well studded o'er.

## VII

Ruddy shall be the leather, well gilded every nail.  
 In my behalf do thou hasten to Vidas and Raqué.  
 Since in Burgos they forbade me aught to purchase, and the King 85  
 Withdraws his favor, unto them my goods I cannot bring.  
 They are heavy, and I must pawn them for whatso'er is right.  
 That Christians may not see it, let them come for them by night.

May the Creator judge it and of all the Saints the choir.  
I can no more, and I do it against my own desire."

90

*VIII*

Martin stayed not. Through Burgos he hastened forth, and came  
To the Castle. Vidas and Raqué'l, he demanded them by name.

*IX*

Raquél and Vidas sate to count their goods and profits through,  
When up came Antolínez, the prudent man and true.

95

"How now Raqué'l and Vidas, am I dear unto your heart,  
I would speak close." They tarried not. All three they went apart.

"Give me, Raqué'l and Vidas, your hands for promise sure  
That you will not betray me to Christian or to Moor.

I shall make you rich forever. You shall ne'er be needy more.

100

When to gather in the taxes went forth the Campeador,  
Many rich goods he garnered, but he only kept the best.

Therefore this accusation against him was addressed.

And now two mighty coffers full of pure gold hath he.

Why he lost the King's favor a man may lightly see.

105

He has left his halls and houses, his meadow and his field,  
And the chests he cannot bring you lest he should stand revealed.

The Campeador those coffers will deliver to your trust.

And do you lend unto him whatsoever may be just.

Do you take the chests and keep them, but swear a great oath here  
That you will not look within them for the space of all this year."

110

The two took counsel:

"Something to our profit must inure

In all barter. He gained something in the country of the Moor

115

When he marched there, for many goods he brought with him away.

But he sleeps not unsuspected, who brings coined gold to pay.

Let the two of us together take now the coffers twain.

In some place let us put them where unseen they shall remain.

"What the lord Cid demandeth, we prithee let us hear,

120

And what will be our usury for the space of all this year?"

Said Martin Antolínez like a prudent man and true:

"Whatever you deem right and just the Cid desires of you.

He will ask little since his goods are left in a safe place.

But needy men on all sides beseech the Cid for grace.

For six hundred marks of money, the Cid is sore bested."

125

"We shall give them to him gladly," Raqué'l and Vidas said.

"Tis night. The Cid is sorely pressed. So give the marks to us.

Answered Raqué'l and Vidas: "Men do not traffic thus.

But first they take their surety and thereafter give the fee."

Said Martin Antolínez:

130

"So be it as for me.

Come ye to the great Campeador for 'tis but just and fair

That we should help you with the chests, and put them in your care,

So that neither Moor nor Christian thereof shall hear the tale."

"Therewith are we right well content," said Vidas and Raqué'l,

135

"You shall have marks six hundred when we bring the chests again."

And Martin Antolínez rode forth swiftly with the twain.

And they were glad exceeding. O'er the bridge he did not go,

But through the stream, that never a Burgalese should know

Through him thereof. And now behold the Campeador his tent.

140

When they therein had entered to kiss his hands they bent.  
 My lord the Cid smiled on them and unto them said he:  
 "Ha, don Raqué'l and Vidas, you have forgotten me!  
 And now must I get hence away who am banished in disgrace,  
 For the king from me in anger hath turned away his face.  
 I deem that from my chattels you shall gain somewhat of worth.  
 And you shall lack for nothing while you dwell upon the earth.'  
 A-kissing of his hands forthwith Raqué'l and Vidas fell.  
 Good Martin Antolínez had made the bargain well,  
 That to him on the coffers marks six hundred they should lend.  
 And keep them safe, moreover, till the year had made an end.  
 For so their word was given and sworn to him again,  
 If they looked ere that within them, forsworn should be the twain,  
 The Cid would never give them one groat of usury.  
 Said Martin, "Let the chests be ta'en as swiftly as may be,  
 Take them, Raqué'l and Vidas, and keep them in your care.  
 And we shall even go with you that the money we may bear,  
 For ere the first cock croweth must my lord the Cid depart."  
 At the loading of the coffers you had seen great joy of heart.  
 For they could not heave the great chests up though they were  
 stark and hale.  
 Dear was the minted metal to Vidas and Raqué'l;  
 And they would be rich forever till their two lives it were o'er

145

150

155

160

## X

The hand of my good lord the Cid, Raqué'l had kissed once more:  
 "Ha! Campeador, in happy hour thou girdedst on the brand.  
 Forth from Castile thou goest to the men of a strange land.  
 Such is become thy fortune and great thy gain shall be  
 Ah Cid, I kiss thine hands again--but make a gift to me  
 Bring me a Moorish mantle splendidly wrought and red."  
 "So be it. It is granted," the Cid in answer said,  
 "If from abroad I bring it, well doth the matter stand;  
 If not, take it from the coffers I leave here in your hand."  
 And then Raqué'l and Vidas bore the two chests away.  
 With Martin Antolínez into Burgos entered they.  
 And with fitting care, and caution unto their dwelling sped.  
 And in the midmost of the hall a plaited quilt they spread.  
 And a milk-white cloth of linen thereon did they unfold.  
 Three hundred marks of silver before them Martin told.  
 And forthwith Martin took them, no whit the coins he weighed.  
 Then other marks three hundred in gold to him they paid.  
 Martin had five esquires. He loaded all and one.  
 You shall hear what said don Martin when all this gear was done:  
 "Ha! don Raqué'l and Vidas, ye have the coffers two.  
 Well I deserve a guerdon, who obtained this prize for you."

165

170

175

180

185

190

## XI

Together Vidas and Raqué'l stepped forth apart thereon:  
 "Let us give him a fair present for our profit he has won.  
 Good Martin Antolínez in Burgos that dost dwell,  
 We would give thee a fair present for thou deserves well.  
 Therewith get breeches and a cloak and mantle rich and fine.  
 Thou hast earned it. For a present these thirty marks are thine.  
 For it is but just and honest, and, moreover, thou wilt stand  
 Our warrant in this bargain whereto we set our hand."

Don Martin thanked them duly and took the marks again.  
 He yearned to leave the dwelling and well he wished the twain.  
 He is gone out from Burgos. O'er the Arlanzon he went.  
 And him who in good hour was born he found within his tent.  
 The Cid arose and welcomed him, with arms held wide apart:  
 "Thou art come, Antolínez, good vassal that thou art!  
 May you live until the season when you reap some gain of me."  
 "Here have I come, my Campeador, with as good heed as might be.  
 Thou hast won marks six hundred, and thirty more have I.  
 Ho! order that they strike the tents and let us swiftly fly.  
 In San Pedro de Cardeñas let us hear the cock ere day.  
 We shall see your prudent lady, but short shall be our stay.  
 And it is needful for us from the kingdom forth to wend,  
 For the season of our suffrance drawns onward to its end."

195

200

205

*XII*

They spake these words and straightaway the tent upgathered then,  
 My lord the Cid rode swiftly with all his host of men.  
 And forth unto Saint Mary's the horse's head turned he,  
 And with his right hand crossed himself: "God, I give thanks to thee  
 Heaven and Earth that rulest. And thy favor be my weal  
 Holy Saint Mary, for forthright must I now quit Castile.  
 For I look on the King with anger, and I know not if once more  
 I shall dwell there in my life-days. But may thy grace watch o'er  
 My parting, Blessed Virgin, and guard me night and day.  
 If thou do so and good fortune come once more in my way,  
 I will offer rich oblations at thine altar, and I swear  
 Most solemnly that I will chant a thousand masses there."

210

215

*XIII*

And the lord Cid departed fondly as a good man may.  
 Forthwith they loosed the horses, and out they spurred away.  
 Said good Martin Antolínez in Burgos that did dwell:  
 "I would see my lady gladly and advise my people well  
 What they shall do hereafter. It matters not to me  
 Though the King take all. Ere sunrise I shall come unto thee."

220

*XIV*

Martin went back to Burgos but my lord the Cid spurred on  
 To San Pedro of Cardeñas as hard as horse could run,  
 With all his men about him who served him as is due.  
 And it was nigh to morning, and the cocks full oft they crew,  
 When at last my lord the Campeador unto San Pedro came.  
 God's Christian was the Abbot. Don Sancho was his name;  
 And he was saying matins at the breaking of the day.  
 With her five good dames in waiting Xiména there did pray.  
 They prayed unto Saint Peter and God they did implore:  
 "O thou who guidest all mankind, succor the Campeador."

225

230

*XV*

One knocked at the doorway, and they heard the tidings then.  
 God wot the Abbot Sancho was the happiest of men.  
 With the lights and with the candles to the court they ran forth right,  
 And him who in good hour was born they welcomed in delight.  
 "My lord Cid," quoth the Abbot, "Now God be praised of grace!"

235

|                                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Do thou accept my welcome, since I see thee in this place."       | 240 |
| And the Cid who in good hour was born, hereunto answered he:      |     |
| "My thanks to thee, don Sancho, I am content with thee.           |     |
| For myself and for my vassals provision will I make.              |     |
| Since I depart to exile, these fifty marks now take.              |     |
| If I may live my life-span, they shall be doubled you.            | 245 |
| To the Abbey not a groatsworth of damage will I do.               |     |
| For my lady do I give you an hundred marks again,                 |     |
| Herself, her dames and daughters for this year do you maintain.   |     |
| I leave two daughters with you, but little girls they be.         |     |
| In thine arms keep them kindly. I command them here to thee.      | 250 |
| Don Sancho do thou guard them, and of my wife take care.          |     |
| If thou wantest yet and lackest for anything whate'er,            |     |
| Look well to their provision, thee I conjure once more,           |     |
| And for one mark that thou spendest the Abbey shall have four."   |     |
| And with glad heart the Abbot his full assent made plain.         | 255 |
| And lo! the Dame Xiména came with her daughters twain.            |     |
| Each had her dame-in-waiting who the little maiden bore.          |     |
| And Dame Xiména bent the knee before the Campeador.               |     |
| And fain she was to kiss his hand, and, oh, she wept forlorn!     |     |
| "A boon! A boon! my Campeador. In a good hour wert thou born.     | 260 |
| And because of wicked slanderers art thou banished from the land. |     |

*XVI*

|                                                                       |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| "Oh Campeador fair-bearded, a favor at thy hand!                      |     |
| Behold I kneel before thee, and thy daughters are here with me,       |     |
| That have seen of days not many, for children yet they be,            |     |
| And these who are my ladies to serve my need that know.               | 265 |
| Now well do I behold it, thou art about to go.                        |     |
| Now from thee our lives a season must sunder and remove,              |     |
| But unto us give succor for sweet Saint Mary's love."                 |     |
| The Cid, the nobly bearded, reached down unto the twain,              |     |
| And in his arms his daughters has lifted up again,                    | 270 |
| And to his heart he pressed them, so great his love was grown,        |     |
| And his tears fell fast and bitter, and sorely did he moan:           |     |
| "Xiména as mine own spirit I loved thee, gentle wife;                 |     |
| But o'er well dost thou behold it, we must sunder in our life.        |     |
| I must flee and thou behind me here in the land must stay.            | 275 |
| Please God and sweet Saint Mary that yet upon a day                   |     |
| I shall give my girls in marriage with mine own hand rich and well,   |     |
| And thereafter in good fortune be suffered yet to dwell,              |     |
| May they grant me, wife, much honored, to serve thee then once more." |     |

*XVII*

|                                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| A mighty feast they had prepared for the Great Campeador          | 280 |
| The bells within San Pedro they clamor and they peal.             |     |
| That my lord the Cid is banished men cry throughout Castile.      |     |
| And some have left their houses, from their lands some fled away. |     |
| Of knights an hundred and fifteen were seen upon that day,        |     |
| By the bridge across the Arlanzon together they came o'er.        | 285 |
| One and all were they calling on the Cid Campeador.               |     |
| And Martin Antolínez has joined him with their power.             |     |
| They sought him in San Pedro, who was born in a good hour.        |     |

*XVIII*

|                                                                   |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| When that his host was growing, heard the great Cid of Bivár,     |     |
| Swift he rode forth to meet them, for his fame would spread afar. | 290 |

When they were come before him, he smiled on them again.  
 And one and all drew near him and to kiss his hand were fain.  
 My lord the Cid spake gladly: "Now to our God on high  
 I make my supplication that ere I come to die I  
 may repay your service that house and land has cost,  
 And return unto you double the possession that ye lost."  
 My lord the Cid was merry that so great his commons grew,  
 And they that were come to him they all were merry too.  
 Six days of grace are over, and there are left but three,  
 Three and no more. The Cid was warned upon his guard to be,  
 For the King said, if thereafter he should find him in the land,  
 Then neither gold nor silver should redeem him from his hand.  
 And now the day was over and night began to fall  
 His cavaliers unto him he summoned one and all:  
 "Hearken, my noble gentlemen. And grieve not in your care.  
 Few goods are mine, yet I desire that each should have his share.  
 As good men ought, be prudent. When the cocks crow at day,  
 See that the steeds are saddled, nor tarry nor delay.  
 In San Pedro to say matins the Abbot good will be;  
 He will say mass in our behalf to the Holy Trinity.  
 And when the mass is over, from the abbey let us wend,  
 For the season of our sufferance draws onward to an end.  
 And it is sure, moreover, that we have far to go."  
 Since so the Cid had ordered, they must do even so.  
 Night passed, and came the morning. The second cock he crew;  
 Forthwith upon the horses the caparisons they threw.  
 And the bells are rung for matins with all the haste they may.  
 My lord Cid and his lady to church they went their way.  
 On the steps Xiména cast herself, that stood the shrine before,  
 And to God passionately she prayed to guard the Campeador:  
 "Our Father who art in Heaven, such glory is in Thee!  
 Thou madest firmament and earth, on the third day the sea.  
 The stars and moon Thou madest, and the great sun to warm.  
 In the womb of Mary Mother, Thou tookest human form.  
 Thou didst appear in Bethlehem as was Thy will and choice.  
 And in Thy praise and glory shepherds lifted up their voice.  
 And thither to adore Thee from Arabia afar  
 Came forth the three kings, Caspar, Melchior and Balthasar.  
 And gold and myrrh and frankincense they proffered eagerly.  
 Thou didst spare the prophet Jonah when he fell into the sea.  
 And Thou didst rescue Daniel from the lions in the cave.  
 And, moreover, in Rome city Saint Sebastian didst Thou save.  
 From the sinful lying witness Saint Susanna didst Thou ward.  
 And years two and thirty didst Thou walk the Earth, our Lord,  
 Showing the which all men take heed, Thy miracles divine.  
 Of the stone, bread Thou madest, and of the water, wine.  
 Thou didst raise up Saint Lazarus according to Thy will.  
 Thou didst let the Hebrews take Thee. On Calvary the hill,  
 In the place Golgotha by name, Thee, Lord, they crucified.  
 And the two thieves were with Thee, whom they hanged on either side,  
 One is in heaven, the other he came not thereunto.  
 A miracle most mighty on the cross there didst Thou do.  
 Blind was Longinus never had seen from his birth-year.  
 The side of our Lord Jesus he pierced it with the spear.  
 Forth the blood issued swiftly, and ran down the shaft apace.  
 It stained his hands. He raised them and put them to his face.  
 Forthwith his eyes were opened and in every way might see.  
 He is ransomed from destruction for he straight believed on Thee.

295

300

305

310

315

320

325

330

335

340

345

From the sepulchre Thou rodest, and into Hell didst go,  
 According to Thy purpose, and its gates didst overthrow,  
 To bring forth the Holy Fathers. And King of Kings Thou art,  
 And of all the world the Father, and Thee with all my heart  
 Do I worship and acknowledge, and further I implore  
 That Saint Peter speed my prayer for the Cid Campeador,  
 That God keep his head from evil; and when this day we twain  
 Depart, then grant it to us that we meet in life again." 350

And now the prayer is over and the mass in its due course.  
 From church they came, and already were about to get to horse.  
 And the Cid clasped Xiména, but she, his hand she kissed.  
 Sore wept the Dame, in no way the deed to do she wist.  
 He turned unto his daughters and he looked upon the two:  
 "To the Spiritual Father, have I commended you.  
 We must depart. God knoweth when we shall meet again."  
 Weeping most sore--for never hast thou beheld such pain  
 As the nail from the flesh parteth, from each other did they part. 360

And Cid with all his vassals disposed himself to start,  
 And as he waited for them anew he turned his head,  
 Minaya Alvar Fañez then in good season said:  
 "Cid! Where is now thy courage? Upon a happy day  
 Wast thou born. Let us bethink us of the road and haste away.  
 A truce to this. Rejoicing out of these griefs shall grow.  
 The God who gave us spirits shall give us aid also."  
 Don Sancho the good Abbot, they charged him o'er again  
 To watch and ward Xiména and likewise her daughters twain,  
 And the ladies that were with them. That he shall have no lack  
 Of guerdon let the Abbot know. By this was he come back,  
 Then out spake Alvar Fañez: "Abbot, if it betide  
 That men should come desirous in our company to ride,  
 Bid them follow but be ready on a long road to go  
 Through the sown and through the desert; they may overtake us so." 370

They got them upon horseback, they let the rein go slack.  
 The time drew near when on Castile they needs must turn the back.  
 Spinaz de Can, it was the place where the Cid did alight.  
 And a great throng of people welcomed him there that night.  
 On the next day at morning, he got to horse once more,  
 And forth unto his exile rode the true Campeador. 380

To the left of San Estévan the good town did he wheel.  
 He marched through Alcobiella the frontier of Castile.  
 O'er the highway to Quinéa his course then has he bent.  
 Hard by Navas de Palos o'er Duero stream he went.  
 All night at Figueruélá did my lord the Cid abide.  
 And very many people welcomed him on every side. 390

## XIX

When it was night the Cid lay down. In a deep sleep he fell,  
 And to him in a vision came the angel Gabriel:  
 "Ride, Cid, most noble Campeador, for never yet did knight  
 Ride forth upon an hour whose aspect was so bright.  
 While thou shalt live good fortune shall be with thee and shine."  
 When he awoke, upon his face he made the holy sign. 395

## XX

He crossed himself, and unto God his soul commended then,  
 he was glad of the vision that had come into his ken 400

The next day at morning they began anew to wend.  
 Be it known their term of sufferance at the last has made an end.  
 In the mountains of Miédes the Cid encamped that night,  
 With the towers of Atiénza where the Moors reign on the right.

*XXI*

'Twas not yet come to sunset, and lingered still the day.  
 My lord the Cid gave orders his henchmen to array.  
 Apart from the footsoldiers, and valiant men of war,  
 There were three hundred lances that each a pennon bore.

405

*XXII*

"Feed all the horses early, so may our God you speed.  
 Let him eat who will; who will not, let him get upon the steed.  
 We shall pass the mountain ranges rough and of dreadful height.  
 The land of King Alfonso we can leave behind tonight.  
 And whosoe'er will seek us shall find us ready then."  
 By night the mountain ranges he traversed with his men.  
 Morn came. From the hills downward they were about to fare.  
 In a marvelous great forest the Cid bade halt them there,  
 And to feed the horses early; and he told them all aright  
 In what way he was desirous that they should march by night.  
 They all were faithful vassals and gave assent thereto;  
 The behests of their great captain it behooved them all to do.  
 Ere night, was every man of them unto the riding fit.  
 So did the Cid that no man might perchance get wind of it.  
 They marched all through the night-tide and rested not at all.  
 Near Henáres a town standeth that Castejón men call.  
 There the Cid went into ambush with the men of his array.

410

415

420

425

*XXIII*

He couched there in the ambush till the breaking of the day.  
 This Minaya Alvar Fañez had counselled and had planned:  
 "Ha, Cid, in happy hour thou girdedst on the brand.  
 Thou with an hundred henchmen shalt abide to hold the rear.  
 Till we have drawn forth Castejón unto the bushment here.  
 But give me now two hundred men on a harrying raid to ride.  
 We shall win much if thy fortune and our God be on our side.  
 "Well didst thou speak, Minaya," the Campeador he said,  
 "Do thou with the two hundred ride on a harrying raid.  
 With Alvar Salvadórez, Alvar Alvarez shall advance,  
 likewise Galínd Garcíaz, who is a gallant lance.  
 Let them ride beside Minaya, each valiant cavalier.  
 Let them ride unfearing forward and turn from naught for fear.  
 Out unto Guadalajára, from Hita far and wide,  
 To Alcalá the city forth let the harriers ride.  
 That they bring all the booty let them be very sure,  
 Let them leave naught behind them for terror of the Moor.  
 Here with an hundred lances in the rear will I remain,  
 And capture Castejón good store of provender to gain.  
 If thou come in any danger as thou ridest on the raid,  
 Send swiftly hither, and all Spain shall say how I gave aid."  
 Now all the men were chosen who on the raid should ride,  
 And those who in the rearguard with the lord Cid should abide.  
 And now the dawn was breaking and morning coming on,

430

435

440

445

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| And the sun rising. Very God! how beautifully it shone!<br>All men arose in Castejón, and wide they threw the gates;<br>And forth they went to oversee their farmlands and estates.<br>All were gone forth, and the gates stand open as they were thrown,<br>And but a little remnant were left in Castejón.        | 450 |
| Round the city were the people scattered the whole country o'er.<br>Then forth out of the ambush issued the Campeador.<br>And without fail round Castejón he rushed along his way.<br>The Moors, both men and women, he took them for a prey,<br>And of their flocks as many as thereabouts there strayed.          | 455 |
| My lord Cid don Rodrigo straight for the gateway made,<br>And they that held it, when they saw that swift attack begin,<br>Fled in great fear, and through the gates Roy Diaz entered in<br>With the sword naked in his hand; and fifteen Moors he slew<br>Whom he ran down. In Castejón much gold, and silver too, | 460 |
| He captured. Then unto him his knights the booty brought.<br>To my lord Cid they bore it. The spoil they valued naught.<br>Lo! the two hundred men and three to plunder that rode out,<br>Sped fearlessly, and ravaged the country roundabout.                                                                      | 465 |
| For the banner of Minaya unto Alcalá did gleam.<br>Then they bore home the booty up the Henáres stream<br>Past Guadalajára. Booty exceeding great they bore<br>Of sheep and kine and vesture and of other wealth good store.                                                                                        | 470 |
| Straightway returned Minaya. None dared the rear attack.<br>With the treasure they had taken his company turned back.<br>Lo, they wore come to Castejón, where the Campeador abode.                                                                                                                                 | 475 |
| He left the hold well guarded. Out from the place he rode.<br>With all his men about him to meet them did he come,<br>And with arms wide asunder welcomed Minaya home:<br>"Thou art come, Alvar Fañez, good lance thou art indeed.                                                                                  | 480 |
| Whereso I send thee, in such wise I well may hope to speed.<br>Put straightway all together the spoil both shine and mine;<br>The fifth part of all, Minaya, an thou so desire, is thine."                                                                                                                          | 480 |

## XXIV

"Much do I thank thee for it, illustrious Campeador.  
With what thou giv'st me, the fifth part of all our spoils of war,  
The King Alfonso of Castile full well content would be.  
I renounce it in thy favor; and without a claim to thee.  
But I swear to God who dwelleth in the high firmament,  
That till upon my charger I gallop in content  
Against the Moors, and till I wield both spear and brand again,  
And till unto my elbow from the blade the blood doth drain  
Before the Cid illustrious, howe'er so small it be,  
I will not take the value of a copper groat from thee.  
When through me some mighty treasure thou hast at thy command.  
I will take thy gift; till such a time, all else is in thine hand."

## XXV

They heaped the spoil together. Pondered the Cid my lord,  
He who in happy hour had girded on the sword,  
How tidings of his raiding to the King would come ere long,  
And Alfonso soon would seek him with his host to do him wrong.  
He bade his spoil-dividers make a division fair,  
And furthermore in writing give to each man his share.  
The fortune of each cavalier had sped exceeding well,

One hundred marks of silver to each of them there fell,  
And each of the foot soldiers the half of that obtained.  
A round fifth of the treasure for my lord the Cid remained  
But here he could not sell it, nor in gifts give it away. 505  
No captives, men or women, he desired in his array.  
And with the men of Castejón he spoke to this intent  
To Hita and Guadalajára ambassadors he sent  
To find how high the ransom of the fifth part they would rate.  
Even as they assessed it, his profit would be great. 510  
Three thousand marks of silver the Moors agreed to pay.  
The Cid was pleased. And duly was it paid on the third day.  
My lord the Cid determined with all his men of war  
That there within the castle they would abide no more,  
And that they would have held it, but that water sore it lacked: 515  
“Ye Moors are friendly to the King; even so runs the pact,  
With his host will he pursue us. And I desire to flee  
From Castejón; Minaya and my men, so hark to me;

## XXVI

“Nor take it ill, mine utterance. For here we cannot stay.  
The king will come to seek us, for he is not far away; 520  
But to destroy the castle seems in no way good to me.  
An hundred Moorish women in that place I will set free  
And of the Moors an hundred. Since there, as it befell,  
I captured them. Hereafter shall they all speak of me well.  
Ye all are paid; among you is no man yet to pay. 525  
Let us on the morrow morning prepare to ride away,  
For against my lord Alfonso the strife I would not stir.”  
What the Cid said was pleasing to his every follower.  
Rich men they all departed from the hold that they had ta'en  
And the Moors both men and women blessed them o'er and o'er again. 530  
Up the Henáres hastened they and hard they rode and strong.  
They passed through the Alcárrias, and swift they marched along,  
By the Caverns of Anquita they hastened on their way.  
They crossed the stream. Into Taránz the great plain entered they,  
And on down through that region as hard as they might fare. 535  
Twixt Faríza and Cetína would the Cid seek shelter there.  
And a great spoil he captured in the country as he went,  
For the Moors had no inkling whatso'er of his intent.  
On the next day marched onward the great Cid of Bivár,  
And he went by Alháma, and down the vale afar. 540  
And he passed Bubiérca and Atéca likewise passed,  
And it was nigh to Alcocér that he would camp at last  
Upon a rounded hillock that was both strong and high.  
They could not rob him of water; the Jalón it flowed hard by.  
My lord Cid don Rodrigo planned to storm Alcocér. 545

## XXVII

He pitched a strong encampment upon the hillock there,  
Some men were toward the mountains, some by the stream arrayed.  
The gallant Cid, who in good hour had girded on the blade,  
Bade his men near the water dig a trench about the height,  
That no man might surprise them by day nor yet by night. 550  
So might men know that there the Cid had taken up his stand.

## XXVIII

And thereupon the tidings went out through all that land,  
 How my lord Cid the Campeador had there got footing sure,  
 He is gone forth from the Christians, he is come unto the Moor,  
 In his presence no man dareth plough the farmlands as of yore.  
 Very merry with his vassals was the great Campeador.  
 And Alcocér the Castle wider tribute had he laid.

555

## XXIX

In Alcocér the burghers to the Cid their tribute paid  
 And all the dwellers in Terrér and Teca furthermore.  
 And the townsmen of Calatayúd, know well, it irked them sore.  
 Full fifteen weeks he tarried there, but the town yielded not  
 And when he saw it forthwith the Cid devised a plot.  
 Save one left pitched behind him, he struck his every tent.  
 Then with his ensign lifted, down the Jalón he went,  
 With mail-shirts on and girded swords, as a wise man should him bear.  
 To draw forth to his ambush the men of Alcocér.  
 And when they saw it, name of God! How glad was everyone!

570

“The provender and fodder of my lord the Cid are gone.  
 If he leaves one tent behind him, the burden is not light  
 Of the others that he beareth. He ‘scapes like one in flight.  
 Let us now fall upon him, great profit shall we gain.  
 We shall win a mighty booty before he shall be ta’en  
 By them who have their dwelling in the city of Terrér;  
 For if by chance they take him, in the spoil we shall not share.  
 The tribute that he levied, double he shall restore.”

585

Forth from the town of Alcocér in wild haste did they pour.  
 When the Cid saw them well without he made as if he fled;  
 With his whole host in confusion down the Jalón he sped.  
 “The prize ‘scapes,” cried the townsmen. Forth rushed both great and small,

590

In the lust of conquest thinking of nothing else at all.  
 They left the gates unguarded, none watched them any more.  
 And then his face upon them turned the great Campeador,  
 He saw how twixt them and their hold there lay a mighty space;  
 He made them turn the standard. They spurred the steeds apace.  
 “Ho! cavaliers! Now swiftly let every man strike in,

595

By the Creator’s favor this battle we shall win.”  
 And there they gave them battle in the midmost of the mead.  
 Ah God! is the rejoicing on this morning great indeed.

The Cid and Alvar Fañez went spurring on ahead;  
 Know ye they had good horses that to their liking sped.  
 ‘Twixt the townsmen and the castle swiftly the way they broke.

600

And the Cid’s henchmen merciless, came striking stroke on stroke,  
 In little space three hundred of the Moors they there have slain.  
 Loud was the shouting of the Moors in the ambush that were ta’en.  
 But the twain left them; on they rushed. Right for the hold they made  
 And at the gate they halted, each with a naked blade.  
 Then up came the Cid’s henchmen for the foe were all in flight.  
 Know ye the Cid has taken Alcocér by such a sleight.

605

## XXX

Per Vermudóz came thither who the Cid’s flag did bear.  
 On the high place of the city he lifted it in air.  
 Outspoke the Cid Roy Diaz. Born in good hour was he:

610

"To God in Heaven and all his saints great thanks and praises be.  
We shall better now our lodging for cavalier and steed."

XXXI

Alvar Fañez and all ye my knights, now hearken and give heed  
We have taken with the castle a booty manifold. 615  
Dead are the Moors. Not many of the living I behold  
Surely we cannot sell them the women and the men;  
And as for striking off their heads, we shall gain nothing then.  
In the hold let us receive them, for we have the upper hand.  
When we lodge within their dwellings, they shall do as we  
command." 620

XXXII

The Cid with all his booty lieth in Alcocér.  
He let the tent be sent for, that he left behind him there.  
It irked the men of Teca, wroth in Terrér were they;  
Know ye on all Calatayúd sorely the thing did weigh. 625  
To the Sovereign of Valencia they sent the news apace:  
How that the King Alfonso hath banished in disgrace  
One whom men call my lord the Cid, Roy Diaz of Bivár,  
He came to lodge by Alcocér, and strong his lodgings are.  
He drew them out to ambush; he has won the castle there. 630  
"If thou adest not needs must thou lose both Teca and Terrér,  
Thou wilt have lost Calatayúd that cannot stand alone.  
All things will go to ruin on the banks of the Jalón,  
And round about Jilóca on the far bank furthermore."  
When the King Tamín had heard it, his heart was troubled sore: 635  
"Here do I see three Moorish kings. Let two without delay  
With three thousand Moors and weapons for the fight ride there away;  
Likewise they shall be aided by the men of the frontier.  
See that ye take him living and bring him to me here.  
He must pay for the realm's trespass till I be satisfied." 640  
Three thousand Moors have mounted and fettered them to ride.  
All they unto Segórbe have come to lodge that night.  
The next day they got ready to ride at morning light.  
In the evening unto Celfa they came the night to spend.  
And there they have determined for the borderers to send. 645  
Little enow they tarried; from every side they came.  
Then they went forth from Celfa (of Canál it has its name),  
Never a whit they rested, but marched the livelong day.  
And that night unto their lodging in Calatayúd came they.  
And they sent forth their heralds through the length of all the land. 650  
A great and sovran army they gathered to their hand.  
With the two Kings Fáriz and Gálve (these are the names they bear).  
They will besiege my noble lord the Cid in Alcocér.

XXXIII

They pitched the tents and got them to their lodging there and then.  
Strong grew their bands for thereabouts was found great store of men. 655  
Moreover all the outposts, which the Moors set in array,  
Marched ever hither and thither in armour night and day.  
And many are the outposts, and great that host of war.  
From the Cid's men, of water have they cut off all the store.  
My lord the Cid's brave squadrons great lust to fight they had, 660

But he who in good hour was born firmly the thing forbade.  
For full three weeks together they hemmed the city in.

## XXXIV

When three weeks were well nigh over and the fourth would soon begin,  
My lord Cid and his henchmen agreed after this guise:

“They have cut us off from water; and our food must fail likewise.”

665

They will not grant unto us that we depart by night,  
And very great is their power for us to face and fight.

My knights what is your pleasure, now say, that we shall do?

Then first outspake Minaya the good knight and the true:

“Forth from Castile the noble unto this place we sped;  
If with the Moors we fight not, they will not give us bread.

670

Here are a good six hundred and some few more beside.

In the name of the Creator let nothing else betide:

Let us smite on them tomorrow.”

The Campeador said he:

675

“Minaya Alvar Fañez, thy speaking liketh me.

Thou hast done thyself much honor, as of great need thou must.”

All the Moors, men and women, he bade them forth to thrust

That none his secret counsel might understand aright

And thereupon they armed them all through that day and night.

680

And the next day in the dawning when soon the sun should rise,

The Cid was armed and with him all the men of his emprise.

My lord the Cid spake to them even as you shall hear.

“Let all go forth, let no one here tarry in the rear,

Save only two footsoldiers the gates to watch and shield.

685

They will capture this our castle, if we perish in the field;

But if we win, our fortunes shall grow both great and fair.

Per Vermudóz, my banner I bid thee now to bear;

As thou art very gallant, do thou keep it without stain.

But unless I so shall order thou shalt not loose the rein.”

690

He kissed the Cid’s hand. Forth he ran the battle-flag to take.

They oped the gates, and outward in a great rush did they break.

And all the outposts of the Moor beheld them coming on,

And back unto the army forthwith they got them gone.

What haste there was among the Moors! To arm they turned them back.

695

With the thunder of the war-drum the earth was like to crack.

There might you see Moors arming, that swift their ranks did close.

Above the Moorish battle two flags-in-chief arose,

But of their mingling pennons the number who shall name?

Now all the squadrons of the Moors marching right onward came,

700

That the Cid and all his henchmen they might capture out of hand.

“My gallant men here in this place see that ye firmly stand,

Let no man leave the war-ranks till mine order I declare.”

Per Vermudóz, he found it too hard a thing to bear,

He spurred forth with the banner that in his hand he bore:

705

“May the Creator aid thee, thou true Cid Campeador,

Through the line of battle yonder thy standard I will take;

I shall see how you bring succor, who must for honor’s sake.”

Said the Campeador: “Of charity, go not to the attack.”

For answer said Per Vermudóz: “Is naught shall hold me back.”

710

Spurring the steed he hurled him through the strong line of the foes.

The serried Moors received him and smote him mighty blows,

To take from him the banner; yet they could not pierce his mail.

Said the Campeador: “Of charity go help him to prevail.”

## XXXV

Before their breasts the war-shields there have they buckled strong,  
 The lances with the pennons they laid them low along,  
 And they have bowed their faces over the saddlebow,  
 And thereaway to strike them with brave hearts did they go.  
 He who in happy hour was born with a great voice did call:  
 "For the love of the Creator, smite them, my gallants ah.  
 I am Roy Diaz of Bivár, the Cid, the Campeador."  
 At the rank where was Per Vermudóz the mighty strokes they bore.  
 They are three hundred lances that each a pennon bear.  
 At one blow every man of them his Moor has slaughtered there,  
 And when they wheeled to charge anew as many more were slain.

715

720

725

## XXXV

You might see great clumps of lances lowered and raised again,  
 And many a shield of leather pierced and shattered by the stroke,  
 And many a coat of mail run through, its meshes all to-broke,  
 And many a white pennon come forth all red with blood,  
 And running without master full many a charger good.  
 Cried the Moors "Mahound!" The Christians shouted on Saint James of grace.  
 On the field Moors thirteen hundred were slain in little space.

730

## XXXVII

On his gilded selle how strongly fought the Cid, the splendid knight.  
 And Minaya Alvar Fañez who Zoríta held of right,  
 And brave Martin Antolínez that in Burgos did abide,  
 And likewise Muño Gustiáz, the Cid's esquire tried!  
 So also Martin Gustiáz who ruled Montemayór,  
 And by Alvar Salvadórez Alvar Alvarez made war  
 And Galínd Garcíaz the good knight that came from Aragon,  
 There too came Felez Múñoz the Cid his brother's son.  
 As many as were gathered there straightway their succor bore,  
 And they sustained the standard and the Cid Campeador.

735

740

## XXXVIII

Of Minaya Alvar Fañez the charger they have slain  
 The gallant bands of Christians came to his aid amain.  
 His lance was split and straightway he set hand upon the glaive,  
 What though afoot, no whit the less he dealt the buffets brave.  
 The Cid, Roy Diaz of Castile, saw how the matter stood.  
 He hastened to a governor that rode a charger good.  
 With his right hand he smote him such a great stroke with the sword  
 That the waist he clave; the half of him he hurled unto the sward.  
 To Minaya Alvar Fañez forthwith he gave the steed.  
 "Right arm of mine, Minaya, now horse thee with all speed!  
 I shall have mighty succor from thee this very day.  
 The Moors leave not the battle; firm standeth their array,  
 And surely it behooves us to storm their line once more."  
 Sword in hand rode Minaya; on their host he made great war,  
 Whom he overtook soever, even to death he did.  
 He who was born in happy hour, Roy Diaz, my lord Cid,  
 Thrice smote against King Fáriz. Twice did the great strokes fail,  
 But the third found the quarry. And down his shirt of mail  
 Streamed the red blood. To leave the field he wheeled his horse away.  
 By that one stroke the foeman were conquered in the fray.

745

750

755

760

## XXXIX

And Martin Antolínez a heavy stroke let drive  
 At Gálve. On his helmet the rubies did he rive;  
 The stroke went through the helmet for it reached unto the flesh.  
 Be it known, he dared not tarry for the man to strike afresh.  
 King Fáriz and King Gálve, but beaten men are they.  
 What a great day for Christendom! On every side away  
 Fled the Moors. My lord Cid's henchmen still striking gave them chase.  
 Into Terrér came Fáriz, but the people of the place  
 Would not receive King Gálve. As swiftly as he might  
 Onward unto Calatayúd he hastened in his flight.  
 And after him in full pursuit came on the Campeador.  
 Till they came unto Calatayúd that chase they gave not o'er.

765

770

XL

Minaya Alvar Fañez hath a horse that gallops well.  
 Of the Moors four and thirty that day before him fell.  
 And all his arm was bloody, for 'tis a biting sword;  
 And streaming from his elbow downward the red blood poured.  
 Said Minaya: "Now am I content; well will the rumor run  
 To Castile, for a pitched battle my lord the Cid hath won."  
 Few Moors are left, so many have already fallen dead,  
 For they who followed after slew them swiftly as they fled.  
 He who was born in happy hour came with his host once more.  
 On his noble battle-charger rode the great Campeador.  
 His coif was wrinkled. Name of God! but his great beard was fair.  
 His mail-hood on his shoulders lay. His sword in hand he bare.  
 And he looked upon his henchmen and saw them drawing nigh:  
 "Since we ha' won such a battle, glory to God on high!"  
 The Cid his henchmen plundered the encampment far and wide  
 Of the shields and of the weapons and other wealth beside.  
 Of the Moors they captured there were found five hundred steeds and ten.  
 And there was great rejoicing among those Christian men,  
 And the lost of their number were but fifteen all told.  
 They brought a countless treasure of silver and of gold.

775

780

785

790

795

800

Enriched were all those Christians with the spoil that they had ta'en  
 And back unto their castle they restored the Moors again;  
 To give them something further he gave command and bade.  
 With all his train of henchmen the Cid was passing glad.  
 He gave some monies, some much goods to be divided fair,  
 And full an hundred horses fell to the Cid's fifth share.  
 God's name! his every vassal nobly did he requite,  
 Not only the footsoldiers but likewise every knight.  
 He who in happy hour was born wrought well his government,  
 And all whom he brought with him therewith were well content.  
 "Harken to me, Minaya, my own right arm art thou.  
 Of the wealth, wherewith our army the Creator did endow,  
 Take in thine hand whatever thou deemest good to choose.  
 To Castile I fain would send thee to carry there the news  
 Of our triumph. To Alphonso the King who banished me  
 A gift of thirty horses I desire to send with thee.  
 Saddled is every charger, each steed is bridled well.  
 There hangeth a good war-sword at the pommel of each selle."  
 Said Minaya Alvar Fañez: "I will do it with good cheer."

805

810

*XLI*

"Of the gold and the fine silver, behold a bootful here  
 Nothing thereto is lacking. Thou shalt pay the money down  
 At Saint Mary's Church for masses fifty score in Burgos town;  
 To my wife and to my daughters the remainder do thou bear.  
 Let them offer day and night for me continually their prayer.  
 If I live, exceeding wealthy all of those dames shall be.

815

*XLII*

Minaya Alvar Fañez, therewith content was he.  
 They made a choice of henchmen along with him to ride.  
 They fed the steeds. Already came on the eventide.  
 Roy Diaz would decide it with his companions leal.

820

*XLIII*

"Dost thou then go, Minaya, to the great land of Castile  
 And unto our well-wishers with a clear heart canst thou say:  
 'God granted us his favor, and we conquered in the fray?'  
 If returning thou shalt find us here in this place, 'tis well;  
 If not, where thou shalt hear of us, go seek us where we dwell.  
 For we must gain our daily bread with the lance and with the brand,  
 Since otherwise we perish here in a barren land.  
 And therefore as methinketh, we must get hence away."

825

830

*XLIV*

So was it, and Minaya went at the break of day.  
 But there behind the Campeador abode with all his band.  
 And waste was all the country, an exceeding barren land.  
 Each day upon my lord the Cid there in that place they spied,  
 The Moors that dwelt on the frontier and outlanders beside.  
 Healed was King Fáriz. With him they held a council there,  
 The folk that dwelt in Teca and the townsmen of Terrér,  
 And the people of Calatayúd, of the three the fairest town.  
 In such wise have they valued it and on parchment set it down  
 That for silver marks three thousand Alcocér the Cid did sell.

835

840

*XLV*

Roy Diaz sold them Alcocér. How excellently well  
 He paid his vassals! Horse and foot he made them wealthy then,  
 And a poor man you could not find in all his host of men.  
 In joy he dwelleth aye who serves a lord of noble heart.

845

*XLVI*

When my lord the Cid was ready from the Castle to depart,  
 The Moors both men and women cried out in bitter woe:  
 "Lord Cid art thou departing? Still may our prayers go  
 Before thy path, for with thee we are full well content."  
 For my lord the great Cid of Bivár, when from Alcocér he went,  
 The Moors both men and women made lamentation sore.  
 He lifted up the standard, forth marched the Campeador.  
 Down the Jalón he hastened, on he went spurring fast.  
 He saw birds of happy omen, as from the stream he passed.  
 Glad were the townsmen of Terrér that he had marched away,  
 And the dwellers in Calatayúd were better pleased than they.

850

855

But in the town of Alcocér 'twas grief to all and one,  
 For many a deed of mercy unto them the Cid had done.  
 My lord the Cid spurred onward. Forward apace he went;  
 'Twas near to the hill Monréal that he let pitch his tent.  
 Great is the hill and wondrous and very high likewise.  
 Be it known from no quarter doth he need to dread surprise.  
 And first he forced Doróca tribute to him to pay,  
 And then levied on Molína on the other side that lay,  
 Teruél o'er against him to submit he next compelled  
 And lastly Celfa de Canál within his power he held.

860

May my lord the Cid, Roy Diaz, at all times God's favor feel.  
 Minaya Alvar Fañez has departed to Castile.

To the King thirty horses for a present did he bring.  
 And when he had beheld them beautifully smiled the King:  
 "Who gave thee these, Minaya, so prosper thee the Lord?"  
 "Even the Cid Roy Diaz, who in good hour girded sword.  
 Since you banished him, by cunning has he taken Alcocér.  
 To the King of Valencia the tidings did they bear.

He bade that they besiege him; from every water-well  
 They cut him off. He sallied forth from the citadel,  
 In the open field he fought them, and he beat in that affray  
 Two Moorish kings he captured, sire, a very mighty prey.  
 Great King, this gift he sends thee. Thine hands and feet also

He kisses. Show him mercy; such God to thee shall show."

875

Said the King:  
 "'Tis over early for one banished, without grace  
 In his lord's sight, to receive it at the end of three week's space.

But since 'tis Moorish plunder to take it I consent.  
 That the Cid has taken such a spoil, I am full well content.

Beyond all this. Minaya. thine exemption I accord,  
 For all thy lands and honors are unto thee restored.

Go and come! Henceforth my favor I grant to thee once more.

But to thee I say nothing of the Cid Campeador.

880

885

"Beyond this, Alvar Fañez, I am fain to tell it thee  
 That whosoever in my realm in that desire may be,  
 Let them, the brave and gallant, to the Cid betake them straight.  
 I free them and exempt them both body and estate."

Minaya Alvar Fañez has kissed the King's hands twain:

"Great thanks, as to my rightful lord I give thee, King, again.

This dost thou now, and better yet as at some later hour.

We shall labor to deserve it, if God will give us power."

Said the King: "Minaya, peace for that. Take through Castile thy way.

None shall molest. My lord the Cid seek forth without delay."

890

895

### *XLVII*

"Beyond this, Alvar Fañez, I am fain to tell it thee  
 That whosoever in my realm in that desire may be,  
 Let them, the brave and gallant, to the Cid betake them straight.  
 I free them and exempt them both body and estate."

Minaya Alvar Fañez has kissed the King's hands twain:

"Great thanks, as to my rightful lord I give thee, King, again.

This dost thou now, and better yet as at some later hour.

We shall labor to deserve it, if God will give us power."

Said the King: "Minaya, peace for that. Take through Castile thy way.

None shall molest. My lord the Cid seek forth without delay."

### Cantar II

#### *The Marriage of the Cid's Daughters*

### *XCVIII*

O'er the mountains, o'er the rivers, o'er the hills they took the road.  
 And at length before Valladolid where the King lay they were.

Minaya and Per Vermudóz sent tidings to him there,  
 That reception to their followers he might bid his men extend.  
 "My lord Cid of Valencia presents with us doth send."

5

## XCIX

Glad was the King. Man gladder you never yet did see.  
 He commanded all his nobles to ride forth hastily.  
 And forth among the first of them did King Alfonso go,  
 Of him who in good hour was born the tidings for to know.  
 Know you the Heirs of Carrión happed in that place to be,  
 Also Count don García the Cid's worst enemy. 10  
 Of the tidings some were merry, and some were all folorn.  
 They caught sight of his henchmen who in happy hour was born.  
 They feared it was an army for no herald came before.  
 Straightway the King Alfonso crossed himself o'er and o'er. 15  
 Minaya and Per Vermudóz came forward with all speed,  
 They leaped from the saddle, they dismounted from the steed.  
 Before the King Alfonso upon their knees they fell.  
 They kissed the ground beneath him, the kissed his feet as well:  
 "Now a boon, King Alfonso. Thou art great and glorious. 20  
 For my lord Cid the Campeador do we embrace thee thus.  
 He holds himself thy vassal; he owns thee for his lord.  
 He prizes high the honor thou didst to him accord.  
 O King, but a few days agone in the fight he overcame  
 The King out of Morocco, Yússuf (that is his name), 25  
 With a host of fifty thousand from the field he drove away.  
 The booty that he captured was a great and sovran prey.  
 Great wealth unto his followers because of this did fall.  
 He sends thee twoscore horses and doth kiss thy hands withal.  
 Said King Alfonso: 30  
 "Gladly to accept them am I fain.  
 To the Cid who sent me such a gift I send my thanks again.  
 When I do unto his liking, may he live to see the day."  
 Thereat were many of good cheer and kissed his hands straightway.  
 Grieved was Count don García. Wroth was his heart within. 35  
 Apart he wells a little with ten men of his kin:  
 "A marvel is this matter of the Cid, so grows his fame.  
 Now by the honor that he hath we shall be put to shame.  
 Kings he o'erthroweth lightly, and lightly bringeth steeds  
 As though he dead had found them; we are minished by his deeds." 40

## C

Hear now of King Alfonso what he said upon this score:  
 "Thanks be to the Creator and the lord Saint Isidore



**IMAGE 5.29: THE CID'S SIGNATURE** | An autographed signature of the Cid.

**Author:** User "Escarlati"

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

For the two hundred horses that the Cid to me hath sent.  
 Yet shall he serve me better in this my government.  
 To Minaya Alvar Fañez and Per Vermudóz I say  
 That you forthwith clothe your bodies in honorable array,  
 And as you shall require it of me take battle-gear  
 Such as before Roy Diaz in good manner shall appear.  
 Take then the gift I give you even these horses three.  
 As it seems to my avisement, as my heart telleth me,  
 Out of all these adventures some good will come to light." 45  
 50

*CI*

They kissed his hands and entered to take their rest that night.  
 In all things that they needed he bade men serve them well.  
 Of the two Heirs of Carrión now am I fain to tell,  
 How secretly they counselled what thing should be their cast:  
 "Of my lord Cid the high affairs go forward wondrous fast.  
 Let us demand his daughters that with them we may wed.  
 Our fortune and our honor thereby may be well sped."  
 Unto the King Alfonso with their secret forth went they. 55

*CII*

"As from our King and master a boon of thee we pray  
 By favor of thy counsel we desire to obtain  
 That thou ask for us in marriage of the Cid his daughters twain.  
 With honor and with profit shall the match for then, be fraught." 60

Cantar III*The Affront of Corpes**CXXIV*

"Now of the Cid the Campeador let us demand our wives.  
 Let us say that we will bear them to the lands of Carrión.  
 The place where they are heiresses shall unto them be shown.  
 We shall take them from Valencia, from the Campeador his reach.  
 And then upon the journey we shall work our will on each,  
 Ere the matter of the lion for a sore reproach and scorn 5  
 They turn to our discomfort who are heirs of Carrión born.  
 We shall bear with us of treasure nigh priceless a fair stock.  
 Of the daughters of the Campeador we two shall make our mock.  
 We shall be rich men always who possess such valiant things,  
 And fit to marry daughters of emperors or kings,  
 Who art the Counts of Carrión by virtue of our birth. 10  
 The Campeador his daughters we shall mock at in our mirth.  
 Ere the matter of the lion they throw at us in disdain."  
 When this they had decided the two returned again.  
 Ontspake Ferrández Golbalvez for silence in the Court:  
 "Cid Campeador, so may our God abide thy strong support,  
 May it please Dame Xiména, but first seem good to thee,  
 And Minaya Alvar Fañez and all men here that be  
 Give us our wives. By marriage are they ours in very deed.  
 Unto our lands in Carrión those ladies we will lead. 15  
 With the dower-lands to enfeoff them that we gave for bridal right  
 Of the lands of our possession, thy daughters shall have sight,  
 And those wherein the children to be born to us shall share." 20

The Cid my lord the Campeador scented no insult there:  
 "I shall give you my daughters and of my wealth dispone.  
 Ye gave them glebe of dowry in the lands of Carrión,  
 Three thousands marks of dower shall to my girls belong.  
 I will give mules and palfreys both excellent and strong,  
 And great steeds of battle swift and of mighty thew,  
 And cloth and silken garments with the gold woven through.  
 Coláda and Tizón the swords I will give to you likewise  
 Full well ye know I got them in very gallant guise.  
 My sons ye are, for to you do I give my daughters two.  
 My very heart's blood thither ye carry home with you.  
 In León and in Galicia and Castile let all men hear  
 How I sent forth my sons-in-law with such abundant gear.  
 And serve you well my daughters, your wedded wives that be.  
 An you serve them well rich guerdon ye shall obtain of me."  
 To this the heirs of Carrión their full assent made plain.  
 The daughters of the Campeador were given them and ta'en,  
 And they began receiving as the Cid's orders went.  
 When of all their heart's desire they were at last content,  
 Then Carrión's heirs commanded that the packs be loaded straight,  
 Through Valencia the city was the press of business great,  
 And all have taken weapons and all men gallop strong,  
 For they must forth the daughters of the Cid to speed along  
 Unto the lands of Carrión. To mount all men prepare,  
 Farewell all men are saying. But the two sisters there,  
 Dame Sol and Dame Elvíra, kneeled to the Cid Campeador:  
 "A boon, so may God keep thee, O father, we implore.  
 Thou begottest us. Our mother she brought us forth in pain.  
 Our liege-lord and our lady, here do ye stand ye twain.  
 Now to the lands of Carrión to send us is your will;  
 It is our bounden duty thy commandment to fulfil.  
 And so we two together ask but this boon of thee,  
 That in the lands of Carrión thy tidings still may be."  
 My lord the Cid has clasped them, and he has kissed the twain.

## CXXV

This hath he done. Their mother hath doubled it again.  
 "Go, daughters! the Creator of you henceforth have care  
 Mine and your father's blessing you still with you shall bear.  
 Go forth where you are dowered in Carrión to dwell.  
 I have, after my thinking, married you passing well."  
 The hands of their father and their mother kissed the two.  
 Blessing and benediction they gave to them anew.  
 My lord Cid and the others have fettled them to ride,  
 With armor and with horses and caparisons of pride.  
 From Valencia the splendid were the Heirs departing then.  
 They took leave of the ladies and all their bands of men.  
 Through the meadow of Valencia forth under arms they went.  
 The Cid and all his armies were very well content.  
 He who in good hour belted brand in signs had seen it plain  
 That these marriages in no way should stand without a stain.  
 But since the twain are married, he may not repent him now.

## CXXVI

"My nephew Felez Múñoz, I prithee where art thou?  
 Thou art my daughters' cousin in thy soul and in thine heart.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| With them even unto Carrión I command thee to depart.<br>Thou shalt see what lands for dower to my girls are given o'er,<br>And shalt come again with tidings unto the Campeador."                                                                                                                                                                        | 80  |
| Quoth Felez Múñoz: "Heart and soul that duty pleases me."<br>Minaya Alvar Fañez before the Cid came he:<br>"Back to the town of Valencia, Oh Cid, now let us go;<br>For if our God and Father the Creator's will be so,<br>To Carrión's lands thy daughters to visit we shall wend.<br>Dame Sol and Dame Elvíra, to God do we commend.                    | 85  |
| Dame Sol and Dame Elvíra, to God do we commend.<br>Such things may you accomplish as will make us glad and fain."<br>The sons-in-law gave answer: "Now that may God ordain."<br>They lamented much at parting. Daughters and sire wept sore,<br>So also wept the cavaliers of the Cid Campeador.                                                          |     |
| "Thou, cousin, Felez Múñoz, now hark to this aright.<br>Thou shalt go by Molína, and there shalt lie one night,<br>And greet fair the Morisco Avengalvón my friend;<br>That he may most fair reception to my sons-in-law extend.<br>Tell him I send my daughters to the lands of Carrión,<br>In all their needs his courtesy as beseemeth shall be shown. | 90  |
| Let him ward them to Medína for the love he beareth me.<br>For all that he cloth for them I will give him a rich fee."<br>They parted then, as when the nail out of the flesh is torn.<br>He turned back to Valencia who in happy hour was born.<br>And now the Heirs of Carrión have fettled them to fare.                                               | 95  |
| Saint Mary of Alvarrazín, their halting-place was there.<br>From thence the Heirs of Carrión plied furiously the spur.<br>Ho! in Molína with the Moor Avengalvón they were.<br>The Morisco when he heard it in his heart was well content,<br>And forth with great rejoicings to welcome them he went.                                                    | 100 |
| Ah, God! how well he served them in what e 'er their joy might be!<br>The next day in the morning to horse with them got he.<br>He bade two hundred horsemen for escort forth to ride.<br>They crossed the mountains of Luzón (so are they signified),<br>And the Vale of Arbujuélo to the Jalón they came.                                               | 105 |
| The place where they found lodging, Ansaréra is its name.<br>Unto the daughters of the Cid, the Moor fair presents gave,<br>And to either Heir of Carrión beside a charger brave.<br>For the love he bore the Campeador, all this for them he wrought.                                                                                                    | 110 |
| They looked upon the riches that the Moor with him had brought<br>And then together treason did the brothers twain concert.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 115 |
| "Since the daughters of the Campeador we shortly shall desert,<br>If but we might do unto death Aengalvon the Moor,<br>The treasure he possesses for ourselves we should secure<br>Safe as our wealth in Carrión those goods we will maintain.                                                                                                            | 120 |
| And ne'er will the Cid Campeador avenge on us the stain."<br>While they of Carrión this shame complotted each with each,<br>In the midst a Moor o'erheard them, that could of Latin speech.<br>He kept no secret. With it to Avengalvón he ran:                                                                                                           |     |
| "Thou art my lord. Be wary of these persons, Castellan.<br>I heard the heirs of Carrión that plotted death for thee."                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 125 |

## CXXVII

This same Avengalvón the Moor, a gallant man was he  
He got straightway on horseback with servitors ten score.  
He brandished high his weapons, he came the Heirs before.  
And the two Heirs with what he said but little pleased they are:

130

"If for his sake I forebore not, my lord Cid of Bivár,  
 I would do such deeds upon you as through all the world should ring,  
 And then to the true Campeador his daughters would I bring.  
 And unto Carrión never should you enter from that day.

## CXXVIII

What I have done against you, ho! Heirs of Carrión, say,  
 For without guile I served you, and lo, my death ye plot.  
 For wicked men and traitors I will leave you on the spot.  
 Dame Sol and Dame Elvira with your good leave I go;  
 For of these men of Carrión I rate the fame but low.  
 God will it and command it, who is Lord of all the Earth.  
 That the Campeador hereafter of this match have joy and mirth."  
 That thing the Moor has told them, and back he turned him there.  
 When he crossed over thee Jalón, weapon he waved in air.  
 He returned unto Molína like a man of prudent heart.  
 And now from Ansaréra did Carrión's Heirs depart;  
 And they began thereafter to travel day and night.  
 And they let Atiénza on the left, a craggy height.  
 The forest of Miédes, now have they overpassed,  
 And on through Montes Claros they pricked forward spurring fast.  
 And then passed Griza on the left that Alamos did found.  
 There be the caves where Elpha he imprisoned underground.  
 And they left San Estévan, on their right that lay afar.  
 Within the woods of Corpés, the Heirs of Carrión are.  
 And high the hills are wooded, to the clouds the branches sweep,  
 And savage are the creatures that roundabout them creep;  
 And there upon a bower with a clear spring they light  
 And there the Heirs of Carrión bade that their tent be pight.  
 There with their men about them, that night they lay at rest.  
 With their wives clasped to their bosom their affection they protest,  
 But ill the twain fulfilled it, when the dawn came up the East.  
 They bade put goods a plenty on the back of every beast.  
 Where they at night found lodging, now have they struck the tent.  
 The people of their household far on before them went.  
 Of the two Heirs of Carrión so the commandment ran,  
 That none behind should linger, a woman or a man.  
 But Dame Sol and Dame Elvira their wives shall tarry still,  
 With whom it is their pleasure to dally to their fill.  
 The others have departed. They four are left alone.  
 Great evil had been plotted by the Heirs of Carrión.  
 "Dame Sol and Dame Elvira, ye may take this for true:  
 Here in the desert wildwood shall a mock be made of you.  
 Today is our departure, we will leave you here behind.  
 And in the lands of Carrión no portion shall you find.  
 Let them hasten with these tidings to the Cid Campeador.  
 Thus, the matter of the lion, we avenge ourselves therefor."  
 Their furs and their mantles, from the ladies they have whipped.  
 In their shifts and their tunics they left the ladies stripped.  
 With spur on heel before them those wicked traitors stand,  
 And saddle-girths both stout and strong they have taken in the hand.  
 When the ladies had beheld it, then out spake Sol the dame:  
 "Don Diégo, don Ferrando, we beechech you in God's name.  
 You have two swords about you, that for strength and edge are known.  
 And one they call Coláda, the other is Tizón.  
 Strike off our heads together, and martyrs we shall die.

135

140

145

150

155

160

165

170

175

180

The Moriscos and the Christians against this deed shall cry.  
It stands not with our deserving that we should suffer thus.  
So evil an example, then do not make of us.  
Unto our own abasement, if you scourge us, you consent,  
That men will bring against you in parle and parliament."  
Naught profits it the ladies, however hard they pray.  
And now the Heirs of Carrión upon them 'gan to lay.  
With the buckled girths they scourged them in fashion unbeseen,  
And exceeding was their anguish from the sharp spurs and keen.  
They rent the shifts and wounded the bodies of the two,  
And forth upon the tunics the clear blood trickled through.  
In their very hearts the ladies have felt that agony.  
What a fair fortune were it, if God's will it might be,  
Had then appeared before them the Cid the Campeador.  
Powerless were the ladies, and the brothers scourged them sore.  
Their shifts and their sullies throughout the blood did stain.  
Of scourging the two ladies wearied the brothers twain,  
Which man should smite most fiercely they had vied each with each.  
Dame Sol and Dame Elvíra had no longer power of speech.  
Within the wood of Corpes for dead they left the pair.

## CXXIX

Their cloaks and furs of ermine along with them they bare,  
In their shifts and tunics, fainting, they left them there behind,  
A prey to every wild-fowl and beast of savage kind.  
Know you, for dead, not living, they left them in such cheer.  
Good hap it were if now the Cid, Roy Diaz, should appear.

## CXXX

The Heirs of Carrión for dead have left them thus arrayed,  
For the one dame to the other, could give no sort of aid.  
They sang each other's praises as they journeyed through the wood:  
"For the question of our marriage we have made our vengeance good.  
Unbesought, to be our lemans we should not take that pair,  
Because as wedded consorts for our arms unfit they were.  
For the insult of the lion vengeance shall thus be ta'en."

## CXXXI

They sang each other's praises, the Heirs of Carrión twain.  
But now of Felez Múñoz will I tell the tale once more.  
Even he that was nephew to the Cid Campeador.  
They had bidden him ride onward, but he was not well content.  
And his heart smote within him as along the road he went.  
Straightway from all the others' a space did he withdraw.  
There Felez Múñoz entered into a thick-grown straw,  
Till the coming of his cousins should be plain to be perceived  
Or what the Heirs of Carrión as at that time achieved.  
And he beheld them coming, and heard them say their say,  
But they did not espy him, nor thought of him had they.  
Be it known death he had not scaped, had they on him laid eye.  
And the two Heirs rode onward, pricking fast the spur they ply.  
On their trail Felez Múñoz has turned him back again.  
He came upon his cousins. In a swoon lay the twain.  
And crying "Oh my cousins!" straightway did he alight.  
By the reins the horse he tethered, and went to them forthright.  
"Dame Sol and Dame Elvíra, cousins of mine that be,

- The two Heirs of Carrión have borne them dastardly.235  
 Please God that for this dealing they may get a shameful gain."  
 And straightway he bestirred him to life to bring the twain.  
 Deep was their swoon. Of utterance all power they had forlorn.  
 Of his heart the very fabric thereby in twain was torn.  
 "Oh my cousins Dame Elvíra and Dame Sol," he cried and spake,240  
 "For the love of the Creator, my cousins twain, awake,  
 While yet the day endureth, ere falls the evening-hour,  
 Lest in the wood our bodies the savage beast devour."  
 In Dame Sol and Dame Elvíra fresh life began to rise;245  
 And they looked on Felez Múñoz when at last they oped their eyes:  
 "For the love of God my cousins, now be of courage stout.  
 From the time the Heirs of Carrión shall miss me from their rout,  
 With utmost speed thereafter will they hunt me low and high.  
 And if God will not help us, in this place we then must die."  
 To him out spoke the Lady Sol in bitter agony:250  
 "If the Campeador, our father, deserveth well of thee,  
 My cousin give us water, so may God help thee too."  
 A hat had Felez Múñoz, from Valencia, fine and new,  
 Therein he caught the water, and to his cousins bore.  
 To drink their fill he gave them, for they were stricken sore.255  
 Till they rose up, most earnestly he begged them and implored.  
 He comforts them and heartens them until they are restored.  
 He took the two and quickly set them a-horse again.  
 He wrapped them in his mantle. He took the charger's rein  
 And sped them on, and through Corpes Wood they took their way.260  
 They issued from the forest between the night and day.  
 The waters of Duero they at the last attain.  
 At Dame Urráca's tower he left behind the twain,  
 And then unto Saint Stephen's did Felez Múñoz fare.  
 He found Diégo Tellez, Alvar Fañez' vassal, there.265  
 When he had heard those tidings on his heart great sorrow fell.  
 And he took beasts of burden and garments that excel.  
 Dame Sol and Dame Elvíra to welcome did he go.  
 He lodged the in Saint Stephen's. Great honor did he show  
 Those ladies. In Saint Stephen's very gentle are the men,270  
 When they had heard the tidings their hearts were sorry then.  
 To the Cid's daughters tribute of plenteous fare they yield.  
 In that place the ladies tarried, till the time when they were healed.  
 Loud they sang each other's praises, those Heirs of Carrión,  
 And of their deeds the tidings through all these lands were known.275  
 Of the good King don Alfonso the heart for grief was torn.  
 To Valencia the city now are the tidings borne.  
 To my lord Cid the Campeador that message when they brought,  
 Thereon for a full hour's space, he pondered and he thought.  
 His hand he has uplifted and gripped his beard amain:280  
 "Now unto Christ be glory who o'er all the earth doth reign.  
 Since thus sought they of Carrión to keep mine honor whole.  
 Now by this beard that never was plucked by living soul,  
 Thereby the Heirs of Carrión no pleasure shall they gain.  
 As for the dames my daughters, I shall marry well the twain.285  
 The Cid and all his courtiers were sorry grievously,  
 Heart and soul Alvar Fañez a sad man was he.  
 Minaya with Per Vermudóz straightway the steed bestrode,  
 And good Martin Antolínez in Burgos that abode,  
 With ten score horse that to that end the Cid set in array.290  
 Most earnestly he charged them to ride both night and day,  
 And to the town Valencia his daughters twain to bring.



**IMAGE 5.30: JURA DE SANTA GADEA** | The “Santa Gadea Oath,” where the man in the center with the red cape swears on the Bible that he did not murder his brother, while the Cid stands witness.

**Author:** Marcos Hiráldez Acosta

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

About their lord's commandment there was no tarrying.  
Swiftly they got on horseback and rode both day and night.  
Into Gormaz they entered, a strong place of might.  
In sooth one night they lodged there. To Saint Stephen's tidings flew  
That Minaya was come thither to bring home his cousins two.  
The dwellers in Saint Stephen's, as becomes the true and brave,  
To Minaya and his henchmen a noble welcome gave,  
And for tribute to Minaya brought that night of cheer good store.  
He desired not to accept it, but he thanked them well therefor;  
“Thanks, stout men of Saint Stephen's, for ye bear you wise and well.  
For the honor that ye did us, for the thing that us befel,  
Where bides the Cid the Campeador he gives true thanks to you,  
As I do here. May God on high give you your payment due.”  
Therewith they thanked him greatly, with him were all content  
Then swiftly to their lodging to rest that night they went.  
Where bode his kin, Minaya to see them went his ways. Dame  
Sol and Dame Elvira upon him fixed their gaze: “So heartily we  
thank thee, as our eyes on God were set,  
And prithee thank Him for it, since we are living yet.  
In the days of ease thereafter, in Valencia when we dwell,  
The tale of our affliction, we shall have strength to tell.

295

300

305

310

## CXXXII

The dames and Alvar Fañez, the tears flowed from their eyes.  
Per Vermudóz because of them was sorely grieved likewise.  
“Dame Sol and Dame Elvira, be not down-hearted still,  
Since you are well and living and without other ill.  
Ye have lost a good marriage, better matches shall ye make.

315

- Oh may we soon behold the day when vengeance we shall take!"  
 So all that night they lay there keeping a merry tide. 320  
 The next day in the morning they fettled them to ride.  
 The people of Saint Stephen's their party escort bore,  
 With every sort of solace éen to Riódamor.  
 There they took leave, and got them in stead to travel back.  
 Minaya and the ladies rode forward on the track. 325  
 They have passed Alcoceva. On the right Gormaz left they.  
 They have come o'er the river in the place called Vadorrey,  
 And in the town Berlanga their lodging have they made.  
 The next day in the morning set forth the cavalcade.  
 In the place called Medína their shelter have they sought. 330  
 From Medína to Molína on the next day were they brought.  
 And there the Moor Avengalvón was pleased in heart thereby.  
 Forth with good will he issued to give them welcome high,  
 For my lord Cid's love a supper he gave them rich and great.  
 Thence on unto Valencia they have departed straight. 335  
 When to him who in good honor was born the news of it was sent,  
 Swiftly he got on horseback, and forth to greet them went.  
 As he rode he brandished weapons; very joyful was his face.  
 My lord the Cid came forward his daughters to embrace.  
 And after he had kissed them he smiled upon the two: 340  
 "Are ye then come my daughters? 'Gainst ill God succor you.  
 This marriage I accepted, daring not say otherwise.  
 May the Creator grant it, who dwelleth in the skies,  
 That you with better husbands hereafter I may see.  
 God! on my sons of Carrión grant me avenged to be. 345  
 "The hands of their father to kiss, the two bent down.  
 And under arms they hastened and came into the town.  
 Their mother Dame Xiména with them good cheer she made.  
 And he who in good hour was born, he tarried not nor stayed,  
 But there unto his comrades so privily he spake: 350  
 To King Alfonso of Castile those tidings shall they take.

## CL

- The Cid then put spur to the charger and made him gallop  
 so fast that all were astonished at the career he ran.  
 The King with hand uplifted signed the cross upon his face.  
 "By San Isidro of León, I swear it by his grace 355  
 Is no nobleman so mighty our whole country o'er."  
 My lord Cid on the charger came then the King before,  
 And of his lord Alfonso there has he kissed the hand.  
 "To start fleet Baviéca thou gavest me command.  
 Today no Moor nor Christian has a horse so strong and swift. 360  
 Sire, unto thee I give him. Say thou wilt accept the gift."  
 Then said the King:  
 "No pleasure would I have therein indeed.  
 If I took him, then less glorious were the master of the steed.  
 But a horse like this befitteh too well a man like thee, 365  
 Swift to chase the Moors ye routed in the battle, when they flee.  
 Who that war-horse taketh from thee, God succor not again,  
 For by thee and by the charger to great honor we attain."  
 Their leave then have they taken. He left the Court forthright.  
 The Campeador most wisely counselled them who were to fight: 370  
 "Ha, Martin Antolínez! Per Vermudóz thou, too,  
 So likewise Muño Gustiáz, my tried man and true.  
 Be resolute in combat like the gentlemen ye be.

- See that of you good tidings in Valencia come to me." Said Martin Antolínez: "Oh sire, what sayest thou? For we must bear the burden we accepted even now. Thou shalt hear naught of the vanquished, though haply of the slain." He who in happy hour was born, thereof was glad and fain. Of all his leave he taketh that for his friends are known.
- Went my lord Cid to Valencia, and the King to Carrión. But now the three weeks' respite of the term is past and o'er. Lo! at the time appointed, they who serve the Campeador, The debt their lord laid on them they were very fain to pay. In safe-keeping of Alfonso, King of León, were they.
- There for the Heirs of Carrión for two days' space they stayed. With horses and caparisons, came the Heirs there well arrayed. And in close compact with them have agreed their kinsmen all, On the Campeador his henchmen, if in secret they might fall, To slay them in the meadows, because their lords were silent.
- They did not undertake it, though foul was their intent, For of Alfonso of León they stood in mighty dread.
- Watch o'er their arms they kept that night. And prayers to God they said. At last has night passed over, and breaketh now the dawn, And many worthy nobles there to the place have drawn, For to behold that combat, wherefore their mirth was high.
- Moreover King Alfonso above all men is by, Since he desireth justice and that no wrong should be done. The men of the good Campeador, they get their armour on. All three are in agreement for one lord's men are they.
- The Heirs of Carrión elsewhere have armed them for the fray. The Count García Ordoñez sate with them in counsel there. What suit they planned unto the King Alfonso they declare, That neither should Coláda nor Tizón share in that war,
- That in fight they might not wield them, who served the Campeador That the brands were given over, they deemed a bitter ill; Unto the King they told it. He would not do their will:
- "When we held the court exception unto no sword did ye take; But if ye have good weapons, your fortune they will make. For them who serve the Campeador the swords e'en so will do.
- Up, Carrión's Heirs, to battle now get you forth, ye two! Like noblemen this combat, ye ought duly to achieve, For the Campeador his henchmen naught undone therein will leave.
- If forth, ye come victorious, then great shall be your fame; But if that ye are vanquished, impute to us no blame.
- All know ye sought it."
- Carrión's Heirs were filled with grief each one. And greatly they repented the thing that they had done. Were it undone fain were they to give all Carrión's fee.
- The henchmen of the Campeador are fully armed all three. Now was the King Alfonso come forth to view them o'er.
- Then spake to him the henchmen that served the Campeador: "We kiss thy hands as vassals to their lord and master may, 'Twixt our party and their party thou shalt be judge this day. For our succor unto justice but not to evil stand.
- Here Carrión's Heirs of henchmen have gathered them a band. What, or what not, we know not, that in secret they intend; But our lord in thine hand left us our safety to defend.
- For the love of the Creator justly maintain our part."
- Said then the King in answer: "With all my soul and heart." They brought for them the chargers of splendid strength and speed.
- They signed the cross upon the selles. They leaped upon the steed.

The bucklers with fair bosses about their necks are cast.  
 And the keen pointed lances, in the hand they grip them fast.  
 Each lance for each man of the three doth its own pennon bear.  
 And many worthy nobles have gathered round them there.  
 To the field where were the boundaries, accordingly they went.  
 The three men of the Campeador were all of one intent,  
 That mightily his foeman to smite each one should ride.  
 Lo! were the Heirs of Carrión upon the other side,  
 With stores of men, for many of their kin were with the two.  
 The King has given them judges, justice and naught else to do,  
 That yea or nay they should not any disputation make.  
 To them where in the field they sate the King Alfonso spake:  
 "Hearken, ye Heirs of Carrión, what thing to you I say:  
 In Toledo ye contrived it, but ye did not wish this fray.  
 Of my lord Cid the Campeador I brought these knights all three  
 To Carrión's land, that under my safe-conduct they might be.  
 Wait justice. Unto evil no wise turn your intent.  
 Whoso desireth evil with force will I prevent;  
 Such a thing throughout my kingdom he shall bitterly bemoan."  
 How downcast were the spirits of the Heirs of Carrión!  
 Now with the King the judges have marked the boundaries out.  
 They have cleared all the meadow of people roundabout.  
 And unto the six champions the boundaries have they shown—  
 Whoever went beyond them should be held for overthrown.  
 The folk that round were gathered now all the space left clear;  
 To approach they were forbiddon within six lengths of a spear.  
 'Gainst the sun no man they stationed, but by lot gave each his place.  
 Forth between them came the judges, and the foes are face to face.  
 Of my lord Cid the henchmen toward the Heirs of Carrión bore,  
 And Carrión's Heirs against them who served the Campeador.  
 The glance of every champion fixes on his man forthright;  
 Before their breasts the bucklers with their hands have they gripped tight,  
 The lances with the pennons now have they pointed low,  
 And each bends down his countenance over the saddlebow;  
 Thereon the battle-chargers with the sharp spurs smote they,  
 And fain the earth had shaken where the steeds sprang away.  
 The glance of every champion fixes on his man forthright.  
 Three against three together now have they joined the fight.  
 Whoso stood round for certain deemed that they dead would fall.  
 Per Vermudóz the challenge who delivered first of all,  
 Against Ferrández González there face to face he sped.  
 They smote each other's bucklers withouten any dread.  
 There has Ferrández González pierced don Pero's target through.  
 Well his lance-shaft in two places he shattered it in two.  
 Unto the flesh it came not, for there glanced off the steel.  
 Per Vermudóz sat firmly, therefore he did not reel.  
 For every stroke was dealt him, the buffet back he gave,  
 He broke the boss of the buckler, the shield aside he drove.  
 He clove through guard and armour, naught availed the man his gear.  
 Nigh the heart into the bosom he thrust the battle-spear.  
 Three mail-folds had Ferrández, and the third was of avail.  
 Two were burst through, yet firmly held the third fold of mail.  
 Ferrández's shirt and tunic, with the unpierced iron mesh,  
 A handsbreadth by Per Vermudóz were thrust into the flesh.  
 And forth from his mouth straightway a stream of blood did spout.  
 His saddle-girths were broken; not one of them held out.  
 O'er the tail of the charger he hurled him to the ground.  
 That his death stroke he had gotten thought all the folk around.

435

440

445

450

455

460

465

470

475

480

485



Throughout the lands of Carrión was sorrow at the height.  
 The King my lord Cid's henchmen has sent away by night,  
 That they should not be frightened or ambushed on the way,  
 Like men of prudent spirit they journeyed night and day.  
 Ho! in Valencia with the Cid the Campeador they stand.  
 On Carrión's Heirs of knavery the three have put the brand,  
 And paid the debt the lord Cid set upon them furthermore.  
 On that account right merry was the Cid Campeador.  
 Upon the heirs of Carrión is come a mighty smirch. 545  
 Who flouts a noble lady and leaves her in the lurch,  
 May such a thing befall him, or worse fortune let him find.  
 Of Carrión's Heirs the dealings let us leave them now behind.  
 For what has been vouchsafed them now were they all forlorn.  
 Of this man let us make mention who in happy hour was born.  
 And great are the rejoicings through Valencia the town,  
 Because the Campeador his men had won such great renown.  
 His beard their lord Roy Diaz hard in his hand has ta'en:  
 "Thanks to the King of Heaven, well are 'venged my daughters twain.  
 Now may they hold their Carrión lands. Their shame is wiped away.  
 I will wed them in great honor, let it grieve whom it may." 550  
 They of Navarre and Aragon were busied now to treat,  
 And with Alfonso of León in conference they meet.  
 Dame Sol and Dame Elvira in due course wedded are.  
 Great were their former matches, but these are nobler far. 555  
 He gave with greater honor than before the twain to wed;  
 He who in happy hour was born still doth his glory spread,  
 Since o'er Navarre and Aragon as queens his daughters reign;  
 Today are they kinswomen unto the kings of Spain.  
 From him came all that honor who in good hour had birth.  
 The Cid who ruled Valencia has departed from the earth 570  
 At Pentecost. His mercy may Christ to him extend.  
 To us all, just men or sinners, may He yet stand our friend.  
 Lo! the deeds of the Cid Campeador! Here takes the book an end.

## THE TRAVELS OF MARCO POLO

S. Rustichello and Marco Polo (ca. 1254-1324 C.E.)

Written ca. 1298 C.E.

Italy

Marco Polo's father Niccolò and his uncle Maffeo were merchants and adventurers from Venice, who traded with the Middle East for a long time and traveled to Bukhara (currently, the capital of Uzbekistan) ca. 1250, establishing friendly relations with Kublai Khan of the Mongol empire. Kublai Khan's empire, which ranged from the Pacific to the Black Sea, occupied all of China and other neighboring regions, and officially established the Yuan dynasty (1271-1368) in China. When Niccolò and Maffeo left for the Mongol Court the second time in 1271, they took Marco, who was about sixteen or seventeen years old. After staying in China and serving the emperor for seventeen years, they returned to Venice in 1295. Soon after his return to Venice, Marco was imprisoned by the Genoese, having joined the battle between Venice and Genoa. In prison, he met Rustichello from Pisa, a writer of romances and chivalry literature. Marco Polo dictated his travel story and Rustichello wrote it down in Franco-Italian. The result was meant to be a "description of the world," and it became an instant success. The title of a popular version of the manuscript was titled "Il Milione (The Million)," and it is known as *The Travels of Marco Polo* in English. A classic of travel literature, it was particularly influential in Europe in the 15<sup>th</sup> and 16<sup>th</sup> centuries, notably to Christopher Columbus.

*Written by Kyounghye Kwon*

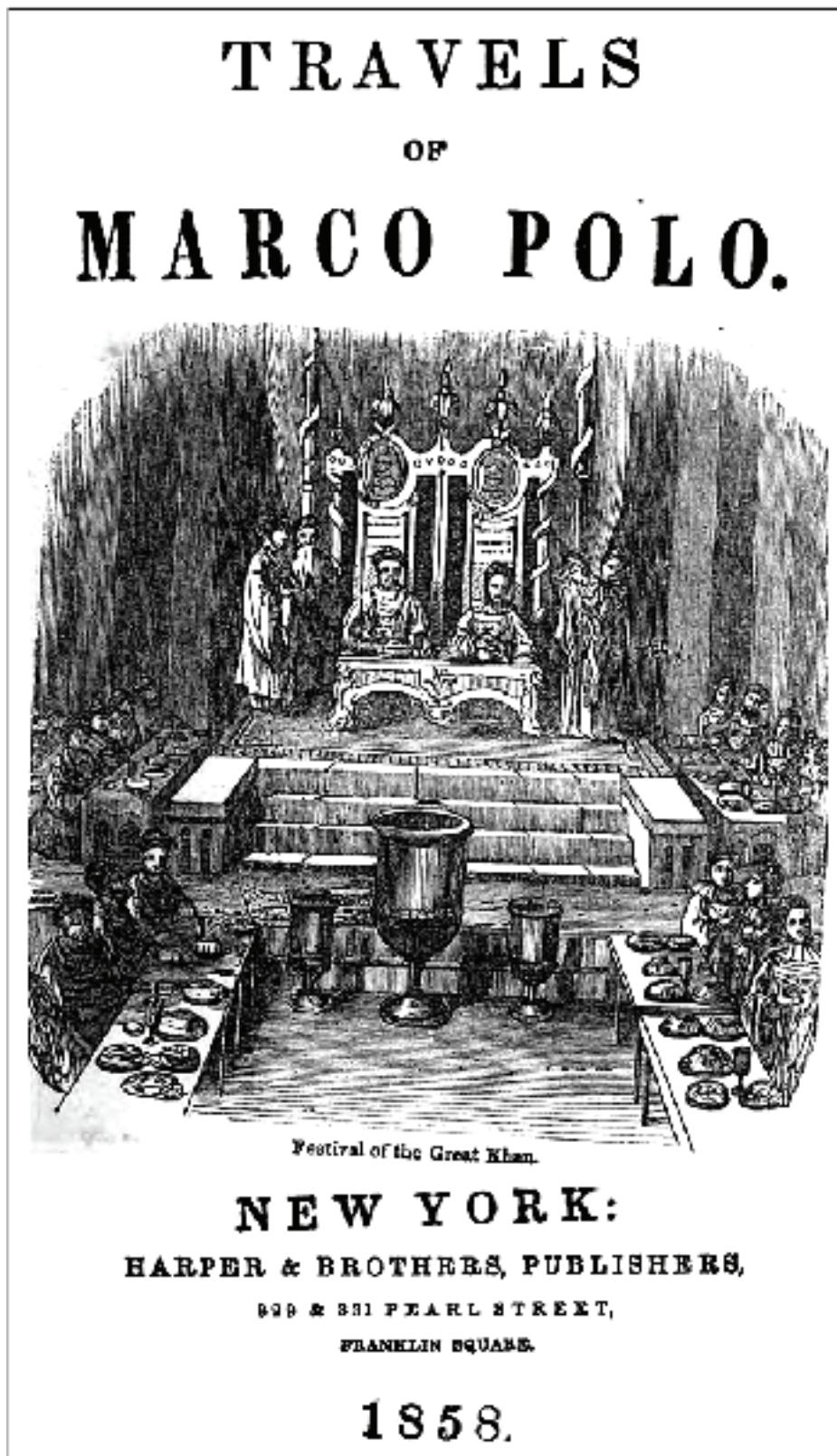


IMAGE 5.31: THE TRAVELS OF MARCO POLO | Title page for *The Travels of Marco Polo* published in 1858 by Harper & Brothers.

Author: Hugh Murray

Source: HathiTrust Digital Library

License: Public Domain

## TRAVELS OF MARCO POLO

License: Public Domain

Marco Polo, Translated by Hugh Murray

### Preliminary Notice

At the time when the events now related took place, ties of a more salutary nature connected Europe with the Eastern world. The Italian towns had become conspicuous as the scenes where arts and commerce, after being nearly crushed by the inroad of the barbarous nations, first began to revive. Their manufacturing industry, indeed, though very considerable, was surpassed by that of the Low Countries; still they formed almost the sole channel by which intercourse was maintained with Asia, whence at that time were imported all articles of luxury,—precious stones, pearls, spices, and cloths of unrivalled fineness. Venice, Genoa, and Pisa contended with each other in this career; but the first, owing to her situation and superior power, held the principal place. Her position was much advanced by a very extraordinary event, which occurred in the beginning of the thirteenth century. A crusade had been organized in France among a number of the nobles, who, proceeding to Venice, procured the necessary shipping by inducing Dandolo, the doge, a gallant chief, with other distinguished persons, to share in the enterprise. On reaching the shores of the Levant, their views took a very singular direction; for instead of advancing to the Holy Land, they turned their arms against Constantinople, carried that capital by storm, and placed Baldwin, count of Flanders, on the imperial throne of the East. The Venetians shared, not only the booty, but also the power acquired by this wicked achievement. They were allowed to occupy an extensive quarter of the city, and to maintain there a podesta or bailo, in vested with very ample jurisdiction.

There had never been wanting native merchants, ready to bring the desired commodities from the remoter provinces of Asia to the contiguous parts of Europe. But the Venetian traders, encouraged by their increasing prosperity, and the advantageous position now attained, began to aim at penetrating into the interior, and obtaining the goods on better terms in the country where they were produced. The dominions of the caliph, the head of the Mohammedan faith, opposed, it is true, a powerful obstacle to their taking the most direct route. But the successors of Gengis, though so terrible and merciless in the field, welcomed in their tented cities, without the least distinction of country or religion, all who brought articles that were either ornamental or useful. We have seen from Rubruquis, how Christian merchants, on paving their way with presents, passed unmolested through the camps of Sartach and Baatu. There were soon found distinguished citizens of Venice ready to follow in the same track.

Nicolo and Maffio Polo, two individuals who united the character, then common, of nobles and traffickers, in the middle of the thirteenth century, set out for Constantinople, whence they proceeded to the shores of the Crimea. There they were encouraged to visit a great Tartar chief on the Volga, where a series of events, for which we shall refer to the following narrative, led them on eastwards as far as China. After a short stay, they returned to Venice; and two years later, went back, according to engagement, carrying with them Marco, son to Nicolo, a promising youth. They spent twenty-four years in the East, chiefly at the court of the great khan, the Tartar monarch who ruled over China. At the end of that time they finally returned; but, on reaching Venice, were so completely altered,—their dress, appearance, and even language had become so foreign,—that their nearest friends were unable to recognise them. After obtaining with difficulty access to their paternal mansion, they determined by a public display to satisfy their countrymen as to the happy results of their journey. All their relations and acquaintances were invited to a magnificent feast. They then presented themselves in splendid dresses, first of crimson satin, next of damask, and lastly of velvet bearing the same colour, which they successively threw off and distributed among the company. Returning in their ordinary attire, Marco produced the rags in which they had been disguised, ripped them open, and exhibited such a profusion of diamonds, rubies, sapphires, and precious jewels, as completely dazzled the spectators. Mr Marsden questions this anecdote, as unsuitable to the dignity of their characters; yet there is no reason to suppose in them any indifference to display; and Ramusio assures us, that about 200 years after, when he was a boy, he had been told it by Malipiero, an aged and respectable senator, who had heard the story from his own grandfather. It appears certain, that on the news of their wealth and adventures, persons of all ranks, ages, and professions, flocked to the house with congratulations and inquiries. Marco, whose society was courted by all the distinguished youths, stood forth as principal orator. Having often occasion in his enumerations of people and treasure, to repeat the term million, then not very common in Europe, the surname of Millione was applied to him, first in jest, but Ramusio says he has seen him thus named in the records of the republic; and the house in which he lived, down to that day, bore the title of the *Corte del Millione*. Count Boni has even adopted this as the title of his learned work on the subject.

Meantime, he appears not to have thought of committing his observations to writing; and the fruits of his travels would probably never have reached posterity, but for a severe misfortune by which he was overtaken. Venice and Genoa, those two mighty rivals, were then at open war; and news arrived that a fleet belonging to the latter had appeared on the coast of Dalmatia. Andrea Dandolo was immediately sent against them, when Marco, with

characteristic spirit, offered his services, and was appointed to the command of a galley. The squadrons encountered near the island of Curzola; and it was a disastrous day for Venice. Her fleet was completely defeated; and Dandolo himself, who was made prisoner, escaped only by a voluntary death the ignominy of being carried in triumph to Genoa. Marco, also, was wounded and taken; but, too wise to imitate the rash example of his commander, he was conveyed to that city, and lodged in prison. Here, according to Ramusio, his character and adventures excited an extraordinary interest; and being visited by the principal inhabitants, his captivity was rendered as mild as possible. A more important circumstance was, that he had a fellow-prisoner, Rusticians, a citizen of Pisa, though of French origin, who was imbued with an enthusiastic love of legendary and romantic lore. One of such a temper could not but listen with rapture to the wondrous tale of his companion; and it was soon agreed between them, that it would be most unjust to the world to withhold from it the knowledge of so many marvellous scenes as those which he had witnessed. Marco, we suspect, was no great penman; but his companion was fond of composition, though without having attained very high proficiency. We quite agree with Count Boni, from the tenor of the narrative, that the traveller wrote no part of it, but merely dictated; nay, we doubt much if there was any such regular or author-like process as this term would imply. We should rather say that he talked it to his companion, who wrote it down as he best could. The frequent change from the first to the third person seems to prove, that while some parts were thus committed to paper, others were written from memory after the conversation. Thus, by a curious combination of circumstances, was produced, in a foreign language and an irregular form, this extraordinary history. It was still a sealed book to the traveller's countrymen; but there seems every reason to believe that it soon received an Italian dress, under which it was rapidly circulated. On the 12th May 1299, peace was concluded between the two rival cities; and Marco in consequence regained his liberty." On his arrival, he found a considerable change in the family. His father, dreading, it is said, that through the son's captivity there should be no heirs to his great wealth, had taken a young wife; not being, perhaps, unwilling to excuse, on this ground, a step which might seem unsuitable to his age. Hence Marco found on his return three young brothers who had been born during his absence. He had too much discretion to take umbrage at this circumstance, or the consequent diminution of riches, which, indeed, were still sufficiently ample for all parties. Following soon after the example of his parent, he became the father of two daughters, named Moretta and Fantina. The rest of his life was spent in Venice; but modern inquirers have in vain sought to trace in it a single incident. It has only been discovered, that his will was made in 1323, proving him to have at least exceeded the age of sixty-six.

### Introductory Narrative of the Journey

*Prologue—Journey of Nicolo and Maffio Polo into the East—Their Arrival at the Court of Kublai, the Tartar Emperor of China—Sent back on a Mission to the Pope—Return, carrying Marco with them—Final Departure, and Voyage through the Indian Ocean to Persia—Arrival at Venice.*

### *Prologue*

Emperors, kings, dukes, marquises, counts, knights, and all persons wishing to know the various generations of men in the world, also the kingdoms, provinces, and all the regions of the East, read this book: in it you will find very great and wonderful things of the nations, chiefly of Armenia, Persia, and Tartary, India, and various other provinces. In the present work Messer Marco Polo, a prudent and learned citizen of Venice, relates in order the various things which he himself saw, or heard from men of honour and truth. And those who read this book may be assured that all things in it are true. For I would have you to know that, from the creation of Adam to the present day, no Pagan, or Saracen, or Christian, or any other person of whatever race or generation, explored so many parts of the world, or saw such great wonders, as this Messer Marco Polo. He being in the year of our Lord 1295 shut up as a captive in the prisons of Genoa, thought with himself what a great evil it would be, if the wonders seen and heard by him should not be known to those who could not view them with their own eyes. He therefore caused the accounts here contained to be written by Messer S. Rusticians of Pisa, who was confined with him in the same prison, in the year of our Lord 1298.

### *I—Nicolo and Maffio Polo travel into the East*

In the year of our Lord 1250, the Emperor Baldwin reigning at Constantinople, Nicolo Polo, father of the said Marco, and Maffio, brother of Nicolo, entered a ship, laden with divers costly goods; and, spreading their sails, committed themselves to the deep. They arrived in safety at Constantinople, where they disposed of their cargo with advantage. They then determined to proceed together, in search of farther profit, to the Greater Sea and, having purchased many precious jewels, departed from Constantinople, and, entering a ship, sailed to Soldaia. After remaining there some days, they resolved to proceed farther, and, mounting on horseback, came by continued jour-

neys to Sara, the residence of Barka Khan, king and lord of the Tartars, who then inhabited Bulgaria. That prince, who was much rejoiced at their arrival, received them very honourably and kindly. They gave him all the jewels brought from Constantinople, which he gladly accepted, and bestowed in return double their value. After they had dwelt in this city a year, a most furious war arose between Barka and Alau, the ruler of Eastern Tartary. Their forces were led against each other; and, after a very sharp contest and much slaughter on both sides, Alau was victorious.) This war rendered it impossible for the Venetians to return with safety by the same road, and they thought it advisable to proceed eastward, and endeavour by another route to find their way back to Venice. Departing from Barka they happily reached a certain city named Oukaka, subject to the dominion of a western chief. Thence they passed a river named Tigris, and wandered through a desert during seventeen successive days, finding no inhabitants, except Tartars dwelling in tents and subsisting by their cattle. They then came to a city in the province of Persia, named Bokhara, the noblest in that country, governed by a king called Barak. Here, being unable to proceed, they remained three full years.

## *II—They arrive at the Court of the Tartar Emperor of China*

While the brothers sojourned in Bokhara, it happened that Alau, lord of the East, despatched ambassadors to the sovereign of all the Tartars, who in their language is called the great khan, meaning the king of kings, and whose name was Kublai. They, on meeting the brothers, felt not a little wonder, having never seen any men from the Latin countries. And dressing them courteously, they besought that they would accompany the embassy to the khan, promising much honour and wealth, since, though wonderfully desirous, he had never seen one of their nation. The Venetians made a suitable answer, and frankly agreed to comply with the request. They set out and continued a whole year travelling in a north-eastern direction; and though much delayed by heavy snows and the swelling of rivers, at length reached the residence of that mighty monarch, having beheld on their way many wonderful objects, which will be described hereafter in this book.

## *III—Their Reception*

Kublai, illustrious for his benignity, received the brothers kindly and joyfully, being very desirous to see Latins. He urgently inquired what sort of emperor they had, how he lived and administered justice; asking questions also respecting the supreme pontiff, and all the acts and manners of the Christians—to which they made judicious replies in the Tartar language, which they had learned.

## *IV—Sent back on an Embassy to the Pope*

This great king and master of all the Tartars in the world, and of all those regions, being informed respecting the actions of the Latins, was greatly pleased. Calling a council of his barons, he informed them, that he wished to send messengers to the pope, the lord of the Christian; which they unanimously approved. He then asked the brothers in friendly terms to be the bearers of his message; and this they prudently declared themselves ready and willing to undertake. He next ordered letters to be written, to be conveyed by them in company with a certain baron named Kogotal, whom he assigned as a companion. He instructed them, after the necessary salutations, to request of his holiness to send a hundred wise men, learned in all the seven arts, who might show to the idolaters, and others subject to his dominion, the diabolical nature of their law, and how that of the Christians was superior. Farther, he piously enjoined them to bring a portion of the oil of the lamp burning in Jerusalem before the sepulchre of our Saviour. Moreover, he gave to them a golden tablet marked with his seal, containing an express order, that wherever they went they should have their necessities supplied. Having received this, and taken leave of the king, barons, and the whole court, they mounted their horses and commenced their journey. After some days, Kogotal, the baron, at a city named Alau, fell sick and could not proceed; but the brothers went on till they came safely to Laias in Armenia. In this journey, however, owing to the bad roads, and the large rivers which they could not cross on horseback, three years were consumed. Wherever they went, on showing the golden tablet, they were received with the greatest honours, and supplied with whatever they wanted.

## *V—Find him dead, and await a new Election*

Departing from Laias in April 1269, the brothers arrived at Acre, where they learned with much grief that his holiness Clement IV was dead. They there fore went to Theobald, viscount of Piacenza, who resided there as legate of the apostolical see, and was a man of high authority and virtue. They related to him the cause why they wished to visit the supreme pontiff. He was struck with admiration, and revolving in his mind, that the holy Roman church and the Christian faith might hence derive the greatest benefit, advised them to wait till another pope should be named, to whom they might deliver their embassy. They there fore determined to spend the interval in visiting their families

at Venice. Departing from Acre, they proceeded to Negropont, and thence to their native city. Here Messer Nicolo found that his wife, whom he left pregnant, had died, leaving a son named Marco, the same who wrote this book.

Waiting the appointment of another pope, the travellers spent two full years at Venice.

### *VI—Their Return to Kublai*

At last seeing that no pontiff was elected, and unwilling to delay their return to the great khan, they departed, taking with them Marco, son of Nicolo. They repaired to Acre, and told the legate, that having tarried too long, and there being no appearance of an election, they must beg permission, in conformity with that monarch's injunctions, to take the portion of oil from the lamp burning before the sepulchre. Having obtained his consent, they went to Jerusalem, took what they desired, and returned, when he gave them letters, with permission to depart. They proceeded from Acre to Laias; but during their stay there, were informed that the legate himself had been appointed pope, under the name of Gregory X of Piacenza, being the same who afterwards held a council at Lyons, on the Rhone. The new pontiff sent a messenger after them, desiring their immediate return; and they joyfully obeyed, making the voyage in a galley prepared for them by the King of Armenia. They paid their homage to his holiness, who received them graciously, loaded them with many honours, and gave them two very learned friars, of the order of preachers, the wisest that could be found in those parts, named Nicolo of Vicenza and William of Tripoli, to accompany them to the great khan. He bestowed on them letters and privileges, instructed them in the message which he wished to be conveyed to that monarch, and gave his benediction to Nicolo, Maffio, Marco, and the two friars. They then proceeded together to Laias; but while there, the Soldan of Babylonia, named Bonduchdaree, came with a mighty army to attack the city. In these circumstances, the preachers, struck with the fear of war, and with the dangers already encountered, gave to Nicolo and Maffio certain letters, and resolved to proceed no farther. Then the brothers commenced their journey, and by constant marches arrived safely at a very rich and powerful city named Clemenfu, where the great khan resided. The observations made by them on this expedition will be narrated afterwards in the proper place; but on account of the severe weather, as well as the difficulty and danger of passing the rivers, they consumed in it three years and a half. When their return became known to the khan, he rejoiced exceedingly, and ordered forty of his messengers to go to meet them, by whom they were supplied with every necessary, and loaded with honours.

### *VII—They are honourably received*

Having reached this great city, where the monarch had his abode, they went to his palace, presenting themselves most humbly on bended knees. He desired them to rise, and asked how they did; they replied, that, by the grace of God, they were well, especially since they had found him healthy and cheerful. He then inquired about their transactions with the supreme pontiff, when they explained to him all that they had done, delivering the letters confided to them by Pope Gregory. He received them graciously, commanding them for their fidelity and attention. They next presented the oil from the sepulchre, which he reverently accepted. He inquired, who was that young man with them, to which Nicole replied: "my lord, he is your servant, my son." "Then," said the great khan, "he is welcome, I am much pleased with him." He celebrated their return by a joyful feast; and while they remained in his court, they were honoured before all his barons.

### *VIII—Employments and Missions of Marco*

During this stay, Messer Marco acquired the Tartar and four other languages, so as to speak and write them well; he learned also their manners, and became in all things exceedingly sensible and sagacious. When the great khan saw him display so much worth and prudence, he sent him as his messenger to a very distant land, which it required six months to reach. He returned and reported his embassy very sensibly, relating many new things respecting the countries through which he had travelled; while other ambassadors, being able to say nothing, except about the special message intrusted to them, were accounted foolish and ignorant by the khan, who was greatly delighted to become acquainted with the varieties of nations. Messer Marco, aware of this, studied all these strange objects, and thus pleased beyond measure his majesty and the barons, who predicted that, if he lived, he would become an eminent man. In short, he remained in the court of the khan seventeen years, and never ceased to be employed as an ambassador. The other chiefs then began to envy the honours paid to him, and his knowledge of the country, which exceeded that of any other person who ever visited it.

### *IX—They seek to return Home*

After Nicolo, Maffio, and Marco had remained long at the court of the great khan, and accumulated very considerable wealth in gold and jewels, they felt a strong desire to revisit their native country. Nicolo therefore took

an opportunity one day, when the monarch seemed in particularly good humour, to throw himself at his feet, and solicit for them all permission to depart; but the sovereign was now so much attached to his visitors that he would by no means listen to this proposal. It happened, however, that the Queen Bolgana, the spouse of Argon, lord of the East, died, and in her last will enjoined that he should receive no wife unless of her family. He therefore sent as ambassadors to the khan three barons, Aulatam, Alpusca, and Goza, with a great train, requesting a lady of the same lineage with the deceased queen. The monarch received the embassy with joy, and selected a young princess of that house. Every thing being arranged, and a numerous train of attendants appointed, they were graciously dismissed, and began their return; but after travelling eight months, their advance was rendered impossible by fresh wars that had arisen among the Tartar princes. They were therefore very reluctantly obliged to retrace their steps, and state the cause that had arrested their progress. It happened that at that time Marco arrived from a voyage to India, and by relating the novelties he had observed, pleased those envoys very much, proving himself well fitted to guide them by this route, which he recommended as shorter and easier than that by land. They therefore besought as a favour of the khan, that the Latins might accompany them and the queen. The sovereign granted this favour, yet unwillingly, on account of his love for them.

### X—*Voyage, and Arrival at Venice*

When that great monarch saw that they were about to depart, he called them before him, and delivering golden tablets signed with the royal seal, ordered that they should have free passage through his land, and that their charges, with those of all their family, should be every where defrayed. He caused to be prepared fourteen ships, each with four masts, and many with twelve sails; upon which the barons, the lady, and the three brothers took leave, and, with numerous attendants, went on board. The prince gave them their expenses for two years; and after sailing three months, they came to a certain island named Java, where are many wonderful things, which I shall relate in this book. They then departed from it; and I must tell you that they sailed through the seas of India full eighteen months, and saw many strange objects, which will also be hereafter described. At length they came to the court of King Argon, but found that he was already dead, when it was determined to give the princess in marriage to Casan, his son. I must tell you, that though in that vessel there embarked full 600 persons, exclusive of mariners, all died except eighteen and they found the dominion of the land of Argon held by Achatu, to whom they very tenderly recommended the lady on the part of the great khan. Casan was then at a place on the borders of Persia, which has its name from the *arbor secco*, where an army of 60,000 men was assembled to guard certain positions against hostile irruption. They accordingly went thither, fulfilled their mission, and then returned to the residence of Achatu, where they reposed during the space of nine months. They then took leave and went on their way, when the monarch presented four golden tablets, with instructions that they should be honoured, and all the expenses of themselves and their family defrayed. This was fully executed, so that they frequently went accompanied by 200 horsemen. I have also to tell you to the honour of those three Latins, in whom the great khan had placed such confidence, appointing them to conduct the Queen Cocacin, with a daughter of the King of Manji, to Argon, the lord of the East;—that those two young and beautiful ladies were guarded by them as if they had been their daughters, and bestowed upon them the veneration due to fathers. Indeed, Cocacin and her husband Casan, now reigning, treated the messengers with such kindness, that there was nothing they would not have done for them; and when they were about to depart, the queen grieved very much, and even shed tears. Thus, after much time and many labours, by the grace of God they came to Trebisond, then to Constantinople, Negropont, and finally to Venice. They arrived in the year 1295, bringing with them great riches, and giving thanks to God, who had delivered them from many labours and dangers.

### Part I

#### *Description of China, and of the Court of the Emperor Kublai.*

Kublai, Great Khan of the Tartars, and Emperor of China—His War with Nayan—Favour for the Christians—Description of Kambalu (Peking)—An Insurrection there—Great Festivals celebrated by the Emperor—Their Order and Pomp—His extensive Hunting Expeditions—Leopards, Falcons, and other Animals employed—Mode of pursuing and taking the Game—Hunting Palace at Shanduin Tartary—At Cianganor—Paper Money—Large Revenue—Arrangement of his Government and Officers—Bounty towards the People—Manners and Superstitions of the Chinese—Marco Polo's Journey through the Western Provinces—Thibet, Bengal, and the neighbouring Countries—Return to the Vicinity of Peking Journey through the Eastern Provinces—The Yellow River—Manjior Southern China—Its Conquest by Kublai—Character of the deposed king—Nan-king and other great Cities—The Kiang—Its immense Trade and Shipping—Kin-sai, the Capital—Its extra ordinary Extent and Magnificence—Splendour of its Palace—Journey through Tche-kiang and Fo-kien—The Porcelain Manufacture—Arrival at Zai-tun or Amoy.

*I—Power and Magnificence of Kublai*

Now I am to give you a wonderful account of the greatest king of the Tartars, still reigning, named Kublai, or lord of lords. That name is assuredly well merited, since he is the most powerful in people, in lands, and in treasure, that is, or ever was, from the creation of Adam to the present day; and by the statements to be made in this book, every man shall be satisfied that he really is so. Whosoever descends in the direct line from Gengis is entitled to be master of all the Tartars, and Kublai is the sixth great khan. He began to reign in the year of our Lord 1256, and maintained the dominion by his valour, address, and wisdom. His brothers sought to oppose his succession, but by bravery and right he triumphed over them. From the beginning of his reign, forty-two years have elapsed to the present day, in the year 1298. He is now full eighty-five years old, and before his accession commanded many armies, when he approved himself good at weapons, and a brave captain. But since that time he has joined the army only once, which was in the year 1286, and I will tell you on what occasion.

*II—Insurrection raised by Nayan*

You must understand that a certain cousin of his, named Nayan, who, like his ancestors, was his vassal, yet had many lands and provinces of his own, and could raise 400,000 horsemen, being thirty years old, refused to remain longer in subjection, and assumed the whole sovereignty to himself. He sent to a certain great lord, named Kaidu, a nephew of that monarch, but in rebellion against him, and desirous of doing him the greatest injury. To him Nayan proposed to attack the monarch on one side, while he himself advanced on another, so that they might acquire the dominion over his whole territory. Kaidu declared himself well pleased, and promised to be ready at the time appointed. He could bring into the field 100,000 cavalry; and those two assembled a mighty army on horseback and foot, and marched against the great khan.

*III—Kublai prepares to meet him*

When Kublai learned these things, he was not at all alarmed, but declared, that he wished he might never wear a crown, nor hold sway over a kingdom, if he did not bring the traitors to an evil death. He therefore made his whole army be prepared in twenty-two days, and so secretly, that nothing was known beyond his own council. He raised full 360,000 mounted soldiers, and 100,000 infantry; and the reason of their number not being greater, was, that they consisted only of his huntsmen, and those immediately round his person, the rest being employed in carrying on distant wars; for if he could have assembled his whole host, the multitude would have been such as no man could have numbered. He then called his astrologers, and asked of them if he would be victorious; they answered, that he would do to his enemies according to his pleasure.

*IV—Description of the Battle*

The great khan having assembled these forces, took his departure, and in twenty days came to a vast plain, where Nayan had assembled all his troops, amounting to 400,000 warriors. The khan took much care to scour the paths, and intercept all who could have carried the intelligence; so that when he approached at dawn of day, the rebel was lying asleep in bed with a favourite wife, not having the least dread of his arrival, and, consequently, no guard on any side of the camp. Kublai then advanced, having a tower fixed upon four elephants, whereon were placed his ensigns, so that he could be seen by the whole army. His men, divided into bands of twenty thousand, surrounded in a moment the adverse force, each soldier having a footman on the crupper behind him, with a bow in his hand. When Nayan and his men saw their camp thus encircled by the khan and his host, they were seized with amaze; yet they ran to arms, formed themselves in order of battle, and were soon prepared to strike. Then began the beating on many instruments, and singing with loud voices; for it is the custom of the Tartars, that until the horn termed *nac-car* is winded the troops do not engage. But when that grand trumpet of the great khan was sounded, all the other performers began playing, and raising their voices very loud, making a noise that was truly most wonderful. Then the two armies rushed against each other with sword, spear, and lance, while the footmen were prepared with bow and quiver. The battle was fierce and cruel; the arrows filled the air like rain; horses and horsemen were seen falling to the ground; and the tumult was such, that if Jove had thundered, he could not have been heard. Nayan was a baptized Christian, and therefore had the cross upon his standard. Never, in our day, was there so hard and terrible a combat, nor so many assembled on one field, especially of horsemen; and the number who fell on both sides was fearful to behold. The battle continued from nine in the morning till mid day; but the great khan at last remained master of the field. When Nayan and his men saw that they could hold out no longer, they betook themselves to flight; but it availed them nothing; he was taken, and all his troops surrendered.

### V—*The Death of Nayan*

When that great monarch heard that Nayan was taken, he ordered him to be put to death in the manner I am now to tell you. He was wrapped in a carpet, and violently tossed to and fro till he died. This mode was adopted, that, being of imperial lineage, his blood might not be shed on the ground, nor his cries ascend into the air. When that battle was gained, four of his provinces paid tribute and homage to the great khan. These were Cicoria, Cauli, Bastol, and Suchintin.

### VI—*Kublai silences the Mockery of the Jews and Saracens*

When the monarch had achieved this triumph, the Saracens, Pagans, Jews, and other generations of men who believe not in God, expressed wonder at the cross which the vanquished leader had carried on his standard, and said in derision of the Christians,—“see how the cross of your God has aided Nayan and his people.” They made such a noise on this subject, that it came to the ears of the prince, who was much displeased, and sending for the Christians, said to them,—“if your God did not assist Nayan, he acted with great justice, because he is a good and righteous God. Nayan was a traitor and rebel against his lord, and there fore God did well in not assisting him.” Then the Christians replied,—“O, great sire! thou hast spoken the truth, for the cross will aid nothing unjust, and he met only what he well deserved.” Having gained this victory, the great khan returned to his capital, Kambalu, with much festival and rejoicing. When the other king, named Kaidu, heard how his ally had been worsted, he was struck with fear, and did not attempt to lead his army against the monarch. Now you have seen how that prince went to battle, and for what cause, while on all other occasions he sent his son and his barons; but this war was of such magnitude that it seemed to deserve his own immediate presence.

### VII—*His Opinions as to the Christian Religion*

The grand khan, having obtained this splendid victory, returned with great pomp and triumph to his capital of Kambalu. He arrived there in November, and remained till after March, in which month our festival of Easter occurred. Aware that this was one of our most solemn periods, he commanded all the Christians to attend him, bringing with them their book containing the four gospels. He caused it, in a very respectful manner, to be repeatedly perfumed with incense, ordering all his nobles present to do the same. Such was the custom upon each of the two great festivals of Easter and Christmas; and he followed the same course as that pursued by the Saracens, Jews, and idolaters. Being asked the reason of this conduct, he replied,—“there are four great prophets revered and worshipped by different classes of mankind. The Christians hold Christ as their divinity; the Saracens, Mohammed; the Jews, Moses; and the idolaters, Sogomombar Khan, their most distinguished idol. I honour and respect all the four, and seek aid from them, as any one of them may really be supreme in heaven.” Yet, from the behaviour of his majesty towards the Christians, he evidently believed their faith the best and truest; observing, that it enjoined nothing on its professors that was not full of virtue and holiness. He would not indeed allow the cross to be borne before them in processions, because, as he said, on it so exalted a person had been nailed and put to death. Some may ask, why if thus partial to the true faith, he did not openly embrace it? He stated his reason to Nicolo and Maffio Polo, when, on his sending them ambassadors to the Pope, they ventured to address to him a few words on the subject. “Why,” said he, “should I become a Christian? You must yourselves see that the professors of that faith now in this country are ignorant and weak, unable to do anything extraordinary, while the idolaters have power to do whatever they please. While I am seated at table, the cups, filled with wine or other beverage, come to me from the middle of the hall spontaneously, without being touched by any human hand. They are able to control bad weather, and force it to retire to any quarter of the heavens; they can perform other wonderful things of the same nature. You have witnessed their idols exercising the faculty of speech, and predicting whatever events are inquired into. Should I become a convert and profess Christianity, the nobles of my court, and others disinclined to the faith, will ask what adequate motives have induced me to be baptized. What wonders, what miracles, they will say, have its ministers performed? But the idolaters declare, that their exhibitions are made through their own holiness and the might of their idols. To this I shall be unable to make any answer, and be considered as labouring under a grievous mistake, while the heathen teachers, by the profound art which they display, may easily accomplish my death. Return, however, to your pontiff, and present to him my request, that he would send a hundred persons learned in your law, who, when confronted with the others, will be able to control them, and while proving themselves endowed with similar skill, shall render their antagonists unable in their presence to carry on these practices. On witnessing this, I will interdict the exercise of their religion, and suffer myself to be baptized. This example will be followed by all my nobility, and by my subjects in general; so that the Christians in these regions will become more numerous than those inhabiting your own country.” From this language it evidently appears that had the pope sent out persons duly qualified to preach the gospel, the great khan would have embraced that faith, for which he certainly entertained a strong predilection.

### VIII—Rewards bestowed on his Soldiers

Now let us tell of the officers and barons of the great khan, and how he rewarded those who fought with him in the battle against Nayan. To those who commanded 100 men, he gave the command of 1,000, and to those of 1,000 that of 10,000; and he bestowed, according to their rank, tablets of gold or of silver, on all of which was written,—“By the might of the great God, and by the favour which he gave to our emperor: may that prince be blessed, and may all those who do not obey him die and be destroyed.” Those who hold these documents enjoy certain privileges, with written instructions how they are to exercise their authority. He who commands 100,000 men receives a golden one, weighing 300 saggi, under which is sculptured a lion on one side, and on the other the sun and moon. Those who bear these noble tablets have instructions, that whenever they ride they should bear above their head an umbrella of gold, and as often as they are seated, it should be upon silver. There are also tablets whereon is sculptured a gerkalcon, which he gives to three great barons, who have then equal authority with himself. They can take, whenever they please, and lead from place to place, the troops and horses of any prince or king; and whoever dares to disobey in any thing their will and mandate, must die as a rebel to the sovereign.” Now let us speak of the outward form and manners of this mighty prince.

### IX—The Person of Kublai—His Wives, Concubines, and Sons

The great khan, lord of lords, named Kublai, is of a fine middle size, neither too tall nor too short; he has a beautiful fresh complexion, and well-proportioned limbs. His colour is fair and vermeil like the rose, his eyes dark and fine, his nose well formed and placed. He has four ladies, who always rank as his wives; and the eldest son, born to him by one of them, succeeds as the rightful heir of the empire. They are named empresses; each bears his name, and holds a court of her own; there is not one who has not 300 beautiful maidens, with eunuchs, and many other male and female attendants, so that some of the courts of these ladies contain 10,000 persons; and when he wishes to visit any one, he makes her come to his apartment, or sometimes goes to hers. He maintains also a number of concubines. There is a race of Tartars who are called Migrat or Ungrat, and are a very handsome people. From them are selected 100 girls, the most beautiful in all their country, who are conducted to court. He makes them be guarded by the ladies of the palace; and they are examined if they have a sweet breath, and be sound in all their limbs. Those that are approved in every respect wait upon their great lord in the following order: six of them attend every three days, then other six come in their place, and so on throughout the year. It may be asked, if the people of this province do not feel aggrieved by having their children thus forcibly taken away. Assuredly not: on the contrary, they regard it as a favour and an honour; and the fathers feel highly gratified when their daughters are thus selected. If, says one, my daughter is born under an auspicious planet, his majesty can best fulfil her destiny by marrying her more nobly than I can do. On the contrary, if the young lady, by bad conduct or any misfortune, be found disqualified, he attributes the dis appointment to her malignant stars. Know, too, that the great khan has by his wives twenty-two sons; the elder was named Gyngym Khan, and was to be lord of all the empire after his father; but he died, leaving a son named Temur, who in time will succeed; he is a wise and good man, tried in many battles. The monarch has also twenty-five sons by his concubines; and each is a great baron; and of the twenty-two sons by his four wives, seven reign over large kingdoms, like wise and good men, because they resemble their father,—and he is the best ruler of nations and conductor of wars in the world. Now I have told you about himself, his wives, sons, and concubines; next I will relate how he holds his court.

### X—His magnificent Palace in Kambaln

He resides in the vast city of Kambalu, three months in the year, December, January, and February, and has here his great palace, which I will now describe. It is a complete square, a mile long on every side, so that the whole is four miles in circuit; and in each angle is a very fine edifice, containing bows, arrows, cords, saddles, bridles, and all other implements of war. In the middle of the wall between these four edifices are others, making altogether eight, filled with stores, and each containing only a single article. Towards the south are five gates, the middle one very large, never opened nor shut unless when the great khan is to pass through; while on the other side is one by which all enter in common. Within that wall is another, containing eight edifices similarly constructed; in which is lodged the wardrobe of the sovereign. These walls enclose the palace of that mighty lord, which is the greatest that ever was seen. The floor rises ten palms above the ground, and the roof is exceedingly lofty. The walls of the chambers and stairs are all covered with gold and silver, and adorned with pictures of dragons, horses, and other races of animals. The hall is so spacious that 6,000 can sit down to banquet; and the number of apartments is incredible. The roof is externally painted with red, blue, green, and other colours, and is so varnished that it shines like crystal, and is seen to a great distance around. It is also very strongly and durably built. Between the walls are pleasant meadows filled with various living creatures, as white stags, the musk animal, deer, wild goats, ermines, and other

beautiful creatures. The whole enclosure is full of animals, except the path by which men pass. On the other side, towards the south, is a magnificent lake, whither many kinds of fish are brought and nourished. A river enters and flows out; but the fish are retained by iron gratings. Towards the north, about a bowshot from the palace, Kublai has constructed a mound, full a hundred paces high and a mile in circuit, all covered with evergreen trees which never shed their leaves. When he hears of a beautiful tree, he causes it to be dug up, with all the roots and the earth round it, and to be conveyed to him on the backs of elephants, whence the eminence has been made verdant all over, and is called the green mountain. On the top is a palace, also covered with verdure; it and the trees are so lovely that all who look upon them feel delight and joy. In the vicinity is another palace, where resides the grandson of the great khan, Temur, who is to reign after him, and who follows the same life and customs as his grandsire. He has already a golden bull and the imperial seal; but he has no authority while his grandfather lives.

### *XI—Description of the City of Kambalu*

Having described to you the palaces, I will tell you of the great city of Cathay, which contains them. Near it is another large and splendid one, also named Kambalu, which means in our language city of the lord; but the monarch, finding by astrology that this town would rebel, built another near it, divided only by a river, and bearing the same name, to which its inhabitants were compelled to remove. It forms a regular square, six miles on each side, and thus twenty-four miles in circumference. It is surrounded by walls of earth, ten paces thick and twenty in height; yet the upper part becomes gradually thinner, so that at top the breadth is only three paces. There are twelve gates, each containing an edifice, making one in each square of that wall, and filled with men, who guard the place. The streets are so broad and so straight that from one gate an other is visible. It contains many beautiful houses and palaces, and a very large one in the midst, containing a steeple with a large bell, which at night sounds three times; after which no man must leave the city without some urgent necessity, as of sickness, or a woman about to bear a child. At each gate a thousand men keep guard, not from dread of any enemy, but in reverence of the monarch who dwells within it, and to prevent injury by robbers.

### *XII—The Suburbs—Merchants*

When the monarch comes to his chief city, he remains in his noble palace three days and no more, when he holds a great court, making high festival and rejoicing with his ladies. There is a vast abundance of people through all the suburbs of Kambalu, which are twelve in number, one corresponding to each gate; no one can count the number of residents; and they contain as stately edifices as any in the city, except the king's palace. No one is allowed to be buried within the city; and no females of bad character can reside there, but most have their dwellings in the suburbs, where there are said to be no fewer than 20,000. There are brought also to Kambalu the most costly articles in the world, the finest productions of India, as precious stones and pearls, with all the produce of Cathay and the surrounding countries, in order to supply the lords and the barons and ladies who reside there. Numerous merchants, likewise, bring more than a thousand wagons laden with grain; and all who are within a hundred miles of the city come thither to purchase what they want."

### *XIII—Wicked Administration of Achmac—Insurrection*

I will hereafter particularly mention a council of twelve persons, having power to dispose at will of the lands, governments, and all things belonging to the state. One of these, a Saracen, named Achmac, had acquired an extraordinary influence with the great khan; indeed his master was so infatuated with him that he allowed him the most uncontrolled license. It was even discovered after his death that he had employed spells to fascinate the khan, and compel him to give full credit to what was told him by his favourite, who was thus enabled to conduct public affairs according to his pleasure. He disposed of all the commands and public offices; passed sentence upon offenders; and when desirous to inflict an injury on any one whom he hated, needed only to go to the emperor and say, "such a man has been guilty of an offence against your majesty, and deserves death." The monarch usually replied, do as you judge best, and Achmac then ordered him to be immediately executed. So manifest were the proofs of his influence, and of the sovereign's implicit reliance on his statements, that no one dared to contradict him on any occasion; even those highest in office stood in awe of him. Any one charged by him with a capital offence, whatever means he might employ to justify himself and refute the accusation, could not find an advocate; for none dared to oppose the purpose of Achmac. Thus he caused unjustly the death of many, and was also enabled to indulge his unlawful propensities. Whenever he saw a woman who pleased him, he contrived either to add her to the number of his wives, or to lead her into a criminal intimacy. On receiving information of any man having a beautiful daughter, he despatched emissaries with instructions to say to him, "what are your views with regard to this handsome girl? the best thing you can do is to give her to the lord-vice gerent;" for so they termed Achmac, implying that he was

his majesty's representative; "we will induce him to appoint you to a certain government or office for three years." The father was thus tempted to give away his child; and as soon as the affair was arranged, the other went and informed the emperor that a government was vacant, or would become so on a particular day, and recommended the parent as well qualified to discharge its duties. His majesty consented; and the appointment was immediately made. Thus, either through ambition to hold high office, or dread of his power, he obtained possession of the fairest females, under the denomination of wives or of concubines. Besides, he had twenty-five sons, who held the highest offices in the state, and, availing themselves of his authority, were guilty of similar violent and licentious proceedings. He had likewise accumulated great wealth, since every one who obtained an appointment found it requisite to make him a liberal present.

During a period of twenty-two years, he exercised this absolute authority. At length the Kataians, natives of the country, unable to endure longer his multiplied acts of injustice and violation of domestic rights, began to devise means of bringing about his death and the overthrow of the government. Among the leading persons in this plot was Chenku, a commander of 6,000 men, in whose family his dissolute conduct had spread dishonour. He proposed the measure to one of his nation, named Vanku, who commanded 10,000 men, and suggested for its execution the period when the great khan, having completed his three months' residence in Kambalu, should have departed for his palace at Shandu, while his son Gengis had also retired to the place usually visited by him at that season. The charge of the city was then intrusted to Achmac, who communicated all affairs that occurred during his master's absence, and received the necessary instructions. Vanku and Chenku, having thus consulted together, imparted the design to some leading persons among the Kataians, and also to their friends in various other cities. They formed an agreement, that on a certain day, immediately on perceiving a signal made by fire, they should rise and put to death all persons wearing beards. This distinction was made because they themselves naturally wanted this appendage, which characterized the Tartars, the Saracens, and the Christians. The grand khan, having acquired the sovereignty of Kataia, not by any legitimate right, but solely by force of arms, placed no confidence in the natives, and therefore intrusted all the provincial governments to Tartars, Saracens, Christians, and other foreigners belonging to his household. From this cause his reign was universally detested by the people, who found themselves treated as slaves by the Tartars, and still worse by the Saracens.

Vanku and Chenku, having thus arranged their plans, succeeded at night in entering the palace; when the former placed himself on one of the royal seats, made the apartment be lighted up, and sent a messenger to Achmac, then residing in the old city. He professed to come from Gengis, the emperor's son, who, he said, had unexpectedly arrived, and required his immediate attendance. The viceroy was much surprised by this intelligence; but, as he stood in awe of the prince, he presently obeyed. On passing the gate of the new city, he met the Tartar officer named Kogatai, who commanded the guard of 12,000 men, and who asked him whither he was going at that late hour. He stated his intention of waiting upon Gengis, whose arrival had just been announced to him. "It is very surprising," said the officer, "how he should have come so secretly that I was not apprized of it, so as to send a party of guards to attend him." The two Kataians, meantime, felt confident, that if they could succeed in despatching Achmac, they had nothing farther to fear. On entering the palace, and seeing so many lights blazing, he prostrated himself before Vanku, whom he supposed to be the prince, when Chenku, who held a sword ready in his hand, severed his head from his body. Kogatai had stopped at the door; but, seeing this catastrophe, he exclaimed that treason was at work, and presently discharged an arrow, which slew Vanku as he sat upon the throne. He then caused his men to seize the other, and despatched an order to the city to kill every one who should be found abroad. The Kataians, however, seeing the conspiracy discovered, one of their chiefs killed, and the survivor a prisoner, remained in their houses, and could not make the concerted signals to the other towns. Kogatai lost no time in sending messengers with a particular relation of these events to the khan, who, in reply, ordered him diligently to investigate the conspiracy, and to punish according to the degree of their guilt those found implicated in it. Next day, after receiving this command, he examined all the Kataians, and inflicted the punishment of death on the ringleaders. Other cities known to have participated in the guilt suffered similar inflictions.

When his majesty returned to Kambalu, he inquired eagerly into the cause of this disturbance, and learned that the infamous Achmac and seven of his sons (the others being less culpable) had committed several enormities. He gave orders that the treasure, which he had accumulated to an incredible amount, should be removed from his place of residence to the new city, where it was lodged in his own treasury. He directed even that his corpse should be disinterred, and thrown into the street, where the dogs might tear it in pieces. The sons, who had pursued the same criminal course with their father, were ordered to be flayed alive. Considering also the principles of the accused sect of the Saracens, which allow them to indulge in the commission of every crime, and even to murder those who differ from them on points of belief, whence even the detestable Achmac and his sons might have imagined themselves guiltless, he regarded the whole body with contempt and abomination. Summoning them to his presence, he forbade the continuance of many practices enjoined in their law, ordering that in future their marriages should be

arranged according to the Tartar custom; and that, in killing animals for food, instead of cutting their throats, they should rip open the stomach. Marco Polo was on the spot when these events took place.

#### XIV—*Guards of the Great Khan*

When the great khan holds a court, he is guarded, on account of his excellency and honour, by 12,000 horsemen, who are called *quiesitan*, that is, faithful servants of their lord; and this he does not from fear but regard to his high dignity. Over these 12,000 are four captains, so that each commands 3,000; and they keep guard in turn three days and three nights, eating and drinking at the expense of the prince. Then they go away, and another party comes; and so they proceed throughout the whole year.

#### XV—*The Magnificence of his Festivals*

When the khan wishes to celebrate a splendid festival, the tables are so arranged that his is much higher than the others, and he sits on the north, with his face toward the south. His first wife is seated beside him on the left, while, on the right, are his sons and nephews, and all those of imperial lineage, who are so stationed that their head is on a level with the feet of the monarch. The barons sit still lower; while the ladies, daughters, and female relations of the khan are placed beneath the queen on the left side, and under them all the wives of the barons; every class knows the spot where they ought to sit. The tables are so arranged that the monarch can see all the company, who are very numerous; and outside of that hall there eat more than 40,000 persons, who have come with presents or remarkable objects from foreign parts, and attend on the days when he holds a court or celebrates a marriage. In the midst of this hall is a very large vessel of fine gold, containing wine, and on each side two smaller ones, whence the liquor is poured out into flagons, each containing fully enough for eight men; and one of these is placed between every two guests, who have besides separate cups of gold to drink out of. This supply of plate is of very great value, and indeed the khan has so many vessels of gold and silver that none without seeing could possibly believe it.

At each door of the great hall, or of any part of the palace occupied by his majesty, stand two officers of gigantic height, holding in their hands staves, to prevent persons who enter from touching the threshold. If any one chances to commit this offence, they take from him his garment, which he must redeem by a payment, or if they spare his dress, inflict at least a number of blows fixed by authority. As strangers may not be aware of this prohibition, officers are appointed to warn them of it at the time of introduction. Since, however, some of the company, on leaving the hall, may be so affected with liquor as to be unable to guard against the accident, it is not then severely punished. Those who serve the khan at table are great barons, who hold their mouths carefully wrapped in rich towels of silk and gold, that their breath may not blow upon the dishes. When he begins to drink, all the instruments, which are very numerous, are sounded, and while the cup is in his hand, the barons and others present fall on their knees, and make signs of great humility; this is done every time he drinks, or when new viands are brought in. These I shall not attempt to recount, since any one may believe that he will have the greatest variety of beasts and birds, wild and domestic, and of fishes in their season, and in the greatest abundance, prepared most delicately in various modes suitable to his magnificence and dignity. Every baron or knight brings his wife, and she sits at table along with the other ladies. When the great sire has eaten, and the tables are removed, a number of jesters, players, and other witty persons perform various pieces, exciting much mirth and pleasure among the company, who then all depart and go to their homes.

#### XVI—*Great Festival at the King's Birthday*

The Tartars celebrate a festival on the day of their nativity. The birthday of the khan is on the 28th September, and is the greatest of all, except that at the beginning of the year. On this occasion he clothes himself in robes of beaten gold, and his twelve barons and 12,000 soldiers wear like him dresses of a uniform colour and shape; not that they are so costly, but similarly made of silk, gilded, and bound by a cincture of gold. Many have these robes adorned with precious stones and pearls, so as to be worth 10,000 golden bezants. The great khan, twelve times in the year, presents to those barons and knights robes of the same colour with his own; and this is what no lord in the world can do. On the day of his nativity, all the Tartars from every province of the world, who hold lands under him, celebrate a festival, and bring presents suited to their station. The same is done by every individual who asks from him any favour or office. He has twelve barons who bestow commands on such persons as they think proper. On that day, the Christians, Saracens, and all the races of men who are subject to him, make prayers to their gods that they will preserve, and grant him a long, healthy, and happy life. I will tell you no more of this festival, but of another which they celebrate at the beginning of the year, called the White Feast.

### XVII—Festival of the New Year

The Tartars begin their year in February, when the khan and his people celebrate a feast, where all, both men and women, are clothed in white robes. They consider these as signifying joy and good fortune, and that hence all prosperity will happen to them throughout the year. On that day, all who hold land or any dominion under him, make the most magnificent presents in their power, consisting of gold, silver, pearls, precious stones, and rich white cloths; so that, during the whole year, he may have abundance of treasures, and of the means of enjoying himself. They present also more than 5,000 camels, with about 100,000 beautiful white horses. On that day, too, he is gratified with at least 5,000 elephants covered with cloths of silk and gold, finely wrought with figures of beasts and birds, and each having on his back a box filled with vessels of gold and silver, and other things necessary for the feast. They all pass before the great khan, and form the most brilliant spectacle ever seen in this world. In the morning of that festal day, before the tables are spread, the kings, generals, counts, astrologers, physicians, falconers, and many other officers and rulers, repair to the hall of the sovereign, and those who are not admitted remain without the palace in a place where the monarch can fully see them. They are in the following order:—Foremost, his sons, nephews, and others of his lineage, then kings, generals, and others according to their rank. As soon as each has taken his place, a great prelate rises and says, with a loud voice, “incline and adore;” and presently all bend down, strike their foreheads on the earth, and make prayers to their master, adoring him as a god.” This they do four times, and then go to an altar, on which is written the name of the great khan. Then, out of a beautiful box, they pour incense on that table in reverence of him, and return to their place; they next make those rich and valuable presents which I have described. When all these things have been done, and the prince has seen them all, the tables are placed, and they sit down, when the feast is ordered and celebrated in the manner already explained. Now that I have described to you the joy of the White Feast, I will tell you of a most noble thing done by this monarch; for he has ordered vestments to be bestowed upon the barons there present.

### XVIII—Robes bestowed by the Great Khan

He has twelve barons, who are called *quiesitan*, or the faithful men of the supreme lord. He gives to each thirteen vestments, differing in colour, and adorned with precious stones, pearls, and other great and most valuable articles; also a golden girdle, and sandals worked with threads of silver, so that each, in these several dresses, appears like a king; and there is a regulation what dress ought to be worn at each of the feasts. The monarch has thirteen robes of the same colour with those of his barons, but more costly. And now I will relate a most wonderful thing, namely, that a large lion is led into his presence, which, as soon as it sees him, drops down, and makes a sign of deep humility, owning him for its lord, and moving about without any chain. Now you shall hear of the great hunting made by this powerful ruler.

### XIX—Profusion of Game supplied to his Court

He resides in the city of Cathay, that is Kambalu, three months, December, January, and February, and has commanded that, for forty days' journey round, all the people should engage in hunting and falconry. The various lords of nations and lands are ordered to bring to him large beasts, stags, boars, wild-goats, and other animals. Those at the distance of thirty days' journey send the bodies preserved with the entrails taken out, while those at forty send only the skins, which are employed as furniture for his army.

### XX—Leopards and other wild Animals kept for Hunting

Now let us tell of the beasts which his majesty keeps for hunting. Among these are leopards and lynxes, or stag-wolves, well fitted for that purpose. He has also many lions larger than those of Babylon, of a beautiful hair and colour, striped lengthways, black, red, and white, and trained to catch stags, wild-oxen, hogs, wild-goats, and asses; and it is delightful to see one of these chases, where the hunters go out, carrying the lion in a cage, and with him a small dog. They have likewise abundance of eagles, with which they capture hares, foxes, and even wolves; those which are trained to catch these last are very large, and of great weight, so that no wolf can escape them.

### XXL—His numerous Dogs and splendid Hunting Expeditions

Now let us speak of the dogs kept by this monarch. He has two barons who are brothers, named Bayam and Migam; they are called *cinuci*, that is, the keepers of mastiff dogs, and each commands a party of 10,000 men, one clothed in vermillion, and the other in blue; whenever they go out with the monarch they are dressed in these vestments. In each party there are 2,000 of the men, who guide respectively one, two, or more large mastiffs, making altogether a vast multitude. When his majesty goes to hunt, these two brothers attend him on opposite sides, each

with 10,000 men and 5,000 dogs; and they hunt thus a day's journey distant from each other, and never pursue any animal which is not captured. It is indeed beautiful to see the speed of these dogs and the hunters, for when the prince goes out with his barons, boars and other animals are running on every side, and the dogs pursuing.

### XXII—Falconry and the Chase after Birds

When the monarch has remained in Kambalu these three months, he departs and goes southward to the ocean two days' journey distant. He leads with him 10,000 falconers, conveying full 5,000 gerfalcons, peregrine falcons in abundance, and also many vultures; but do not imagine that these are all kept in one place; there are 200 here, 300 there, and so on. The birds caught are mostly presented to the great sire, and when he goes to hunt with his gerfalcons, vultures, and falcons, 10,000 men are ranged, two together, so as to enclose much ground; these are called *toscaor*, meaning in our language men who remain on the watch, and each has a call and a hood to invite the birds. And when any falconer, by order of his majesty, sends forth a falcon, he has no need to follow it, because wherever it may go, it is watched by the men ranged in double order, who can either catch it again, or if necessary afford it succour. Each of the birds belonging to the sovereign and barons has a tablet of silver on its feet, with its name and that of the owner inscribed, so that wherever caught, it can be returned to him. If he is unknown, the animal must be carried to a chief named *bulangazi*, or guardian of things that are lost, who stands with his flag on an elevated spot, and all who have missed any thing go to him and recover it. Whoever finds a horse, a bird, a sword, or any thing else, and does not carry it to the owner or to this officer, is treated as a robber; thus scarcely any thing is ever lost. When the monarch goes upon these excursions, he has with him four elephants, and a chamber prepared, covered within with cloth of beaten gold, and outwardly with lions' skins, where he keeps twelve of his very best gerfalcons, with twelve barons to amuse him by their society. As the falconers ride by, they call, "Sire, the birds are passing," when he throws open the chamber, and seeing the object, selects the gerfalcons that please him, and sends them forth against the birds, few of which ever escape. Lying on his couch, he can view and enjoy the chase. Thus, I think, there is not, and never will be, any lord in the world, who has or can have so much diversion as the great khan.

### XXIII—Magnificent Tents of the Great Khan

When this mighty monarch comes to one of his places, named Chaccia, he causes his tents to be pitched, with those of his sons and barons. These exceed 10,000 in number, and are very beautiful and rich. That in which he keeps his court is so large that 1,000 knights can dwell in it; this is for his nobles and other attendants. He himself resides in another, looking west ward, where those to whom he wishes to speak are introduced; while there is an interior chamber in which he sleeps. The two halls have each three fine columns of aromatic wood, and are covered outwardly with beautiful lions' hides, all striped with black, white, and vermillion, so that water cannot enter. The inside is lined with skins of ermine and zibelline, of the highest value, especially the latter, of which a robe suitable for a man would be worth 2,000 golden bezants, while a common one would be worth 1,000. The Tartars call them royal skins, and they are as large as those of a fawn; the whole hall is covered with them, worked most delicately in intaglio. These apartments contain furniture of such value that a little king could not purchase them. Around are large tents for his ladies, and for his gerfalcons and other beasts and birds; for he brings all his train, doctors, astronomers, hunters, and other officials, so that the whole appears a large and crowded city. He remains there till the feast of the Resurrection, during which time he does nothing but chase cranes, swans, and other birds, when those who catch any bring them to him, and thus the sport is beyond what any one can describe. No baron, nor lord, nor husbandman, can keep a dog or falcon for twenty days' journey round his residence; beyond that distance they may do what they please. No person, too, of whatever condition, must, from March to October, take any game, but leave them to multiply their kind; so that hares and stags become so fearless as frequently to come up to men, yet are not taken. The great khan then returns to the city of Kambalu by the same road, hawking and sporting.

### XXIV—Hunting Palace at Shandu in Tartary

At Shandu in Tartary, near the western frontier of China, he has built a very large palace of marble and other valuable stones. The halls are gilded all over and wonderfully beautiful, and a space sixteen miles in circuit is surrounded by a wall, within which are fountains, rivers, and meadows. Here he finds stags, deer, and wild-goats to give for food to the falcons and gyrfalcons, which he keeps in cages, and goes out once a week to sport with them. Frequently he rides through that enclosure, having a leopard on the crupper of his horse, which, whenever he is inclined, he lets go, and it catches a stag, deer, or wild-goat, which is given to the gerfalcons in the cage. In this park, too, the monarch has a large palace framed of cane, the interior gilded all over, having pictures of beasts and birds most skilfully worked on it. The roof is of the same material, and so richly varnished that no water can penetrate. I assure you these canes are more than three palms thick, and from ten to fifteen paces long. They are cut length

ways, from one knot to the other, and then arranged so as to form the roof. The whole structure is so disposed that the khan, when he pleases, can order it to be taken down, for it is supported by more than 200 cords of silk. His majesty remains there three months of the year, June, July, and August, the situation being cool and agreeable; and during this period his palace of cane is set up, while all the rest of the year it is down. On the 28th of August, he departs thence, and for the following purpose:—There are a race of marcs white as snow, with no mixture of any other colour, and in number 10,000, whose milk must not be drunk by any one who is not of imperial lineage. Only one other race of men can drink it, called Boriat, because they gained a victory for Gengis Khan. When one of these white animals is passing, the Tartars pay respect to it as to a great lord, standing by to make way for it. The astrologers and idolaters, too, have told the khan, that on the 28th August this milk must be sprinkled through the air, and over the earth, that the spirits may drink plentifully, and may preserve all that belong to him, men, women, beasts, birds, and other things. But there is a wonderful circumstance that I had forgotten. When the monarch remained in that palace, and there came on rain, fog, or any bad weather, he had skilful astronomers and enchanters, who made these mischiefs fly away from his palace, so that none of them could approach it. These wise men are called Tebet and Quesmur; they are idolaters, and more skilful in diabolical arts and enchantments than any other generation; and though they do it by the art of the devil, they make other men believe that it is through their great sanctity and by the power of God. I must tell you, too, another of their customs, that when any man is judged and condemned to death by his lord, they cook and eat him, but not when he dies a natural death. I will tell you, too, a great wonder which these *baksi* do by their enchantments. When the monarch sits at table in his hall of state, and the cups are ten paces distant, full of wine, milk, and other beverages, they cause them, by their magical spells, to rise from the pavement and place themselves before the prince, without any one touching them; this is done in the presence of 10,000 men; and the fact is real and true, without any lie. These *baksi*, when the festivals of their idols come round, go to his majesty and say, "Great sire, you know the feast of such an idol approaches, and are aware that he can cause bad weather and much mischief to your cattle and grain. We pray, therefore, that you will give us all the sheep with black heads, also incense, aloe-wood, and such and such other things." This they tell to the barons, who repeat it to the khan, and he gives what they demand. Then they go to the image and raise in his presence a delicious fragrance, with incense and spices, cook the flesh, and place it with bread before him. Thus every god has his day of commemoration in the same manner as our saints. They have also extensive abbeys and monasteries, one of which here resembles a little city, containing upwards of 2,000 monks, who are clothed in a particular dress, which is handsomer than that of other men. They worship their idols by the grandest feasts, songs, and lights that ever were seen. And I may tell you that many of these *baksi*, according to their order, may take wives, do so, and have a number of children. Yet there is another kind of religious men called *sensi*, who observe strict abstinence; they eat nothing but the husks of corn boiled in warm water, fast often in the course of the year, have many large idols, and sometimes adore fire. Their observances differ from those of every other sect; they would not take a wife for any thing in the world. They shave the head and beard, wear black and blue dresses of coarse canvas, sleep upon mats, and lead the hardest life of any men on earth. Their monasteries and their idols all bear the names of women.

### XXV—*Palace at Cianganor*

At Cianganor, too, three days' journey distant, the khan has a large palace, where he is fond of residing, because there are many lakes and rivers, as well as fine plains, abounding in cranes, pheasants, partridges, and other birds. Here, therefore, he has delightful hawking, and abundant exercise for his falcons and gyrfalcons. There are five kinds of cranes which I must describe. The first are black like crows, and very large. The second are white, and very beautiful, for all the feathers are full of round eyes, like those of the peacock, and glitter like gold. The head is white, black, and red all round, and they are larger than any of the others. The third species resemble ours. The fourth are small, and have in their ears very magnificent red and black feathers. The fifth are all gray, with handsome red and black heads, and are very large. Near this city is a valley where the khan has ordered the erection of various small houses, in which are kept flocks of partridges, and he employs a number of men to guard these birds, so that they are in abundance; and whenever he comes into this palace, he finds as many as he desires.

### XXVI—*Paper Money—Immense Wealth of the Great Khan*

With regard to the money of Kambalu, the great khan may be called a perfect alchymist, for he makes it himself. He orders people to collect the bark of a certain tree, whose leaves are eaten by the worms that spin silk. The thin rind between the bark and the interior wood is taken, and from it cards are formed like those of paper, all black. He then causes them to be cut into pieces, and each is declared worth respectively half a livre, a whole one, a silver grosso of Venice, and so on to the value of ten bezants. All these cards are stamped with his seal, and so many are fabricated, that they would buy all the treasures in the world. He makes all his payments in them, and circulates them through the kingdoms and provinces over which he holds dominion; and none dares to refuse

them under pain of death. All the nations under his sway receive and pay this money for their merchandise, gold, silver, precious stones, and whatever they transport, buy, or sell. The merchants often bring to him goods worth 400,000 bezants, and he pays them all in these cards, which they willingly accept, because they can make purchases with them through out the whole empire. He frequently commands those who have gold, silver, cloths of silk and gold, or other precious commodities, to bring them to him. Then he calls twelve men skilful in these matters, and commands them to look at the articles, and fix their price. What ever they name is paid in these cards, which the merchant cordially receives. In this manner the great sire possesses all the gold, silver, pearls, and precious stones in his dominions. When any of the cards are torn or spoiled, the owner carries them to the place whence they were issued, and receives fresh ones, with a deduction of 3 per cent. If a man wishes gold or silver to make plate, girdles, or other ornaments, he goes to the office, carrying a sufficient number of cards, and gives them in payment for the quantity which he requires. This is the reason why the khan has more treasure than any other lord in the world; nay, all the princes in the world together have not an equal amount.

### *XXVII—The Twelve Governors of Provinces and their Duty*

He has appointed twelve very great barons, who hold command over all things in the thirty-four provinces. They reside in a palace within the city of Kambalu, large and beautiful, containing many halls and apartments; and for every province there is an agent and a number of writers or notaries, having each a house to himself. They manage all the provincial affairs according to the will and pleasure of the twelve barons. The latter have power to appoint the lords of the provinces above mentioned; and having chosen the one whom they judge best qualified, they name him to the great khan, who confirms him, and bestows a golden tablet corresponding to his command. These twelve barons are called in the Tartar language *scieng*, that is, the greater officers of state. They order the army to go where and in what numbers they please, but all according to the commands of the great sire; and they do every other thing necessary for the provinces. The palace in which they dwell is called *scien*, and is the largest in all the court; they have the power of doing much good to any one whom they favour.

### *XXVIII—The Couriers of the Great Khan and their Stations*

I must now inform you, that from the city of Kambalu, many messengers are sent to divers provinces, and on all the roads they find, at every twenty-five miles, a post called *jamb*, where the imperial envoys are received. At each is a large edifice, containing a bed covered with silk, and every thing useful and convenient for a traveller; so that if a king were to come, he would be well accommodated. Here, too, they find full 400 horses whom the prince has ordered to be always in waiting to convey them when sent into any quarter, along the principal roads. When they have to go through any district where there is no habitation, the monarch has caused such edifices to be reared at the distance of thirty-five or at most forty miles; thus they go through all the provinces, finding every where inns and horses for their reception. This is the greatest establishment that ever was kept by any king or emperor in the world; for at those places there are maintained more than 200,000 horses. Also the edifices, furnished and prepared in the manner now described, amount to more than 10,000. Moreover, in the intervals between these stations, at every three miles, are erected villages of about forty houses, inhabited by foot-runners, also employed on these despatches. They wear a large girdle, set round with bells, which are heard at a great distance. When one of them receives a letter or packet, he runs full speed to the next village, where his approach being announced by the bells, another is ready to start and proceed to the next, and so on. By these pedestrian messengers the khan receives news in one day and night from places distant ten days' journey; in two, from those distant twenty; and in ten, from those distant a hundred. From them he exacts no tribute, but gives them horses and many other things. When his messengers go on horseback to carry intelligence into the provinces or bring tidings from distant parts, and, more especially, respecting any district that has rebelled, they ride in one day and night 200, 250, or even 300 miles; and when there are two, they receive two good horses, bind themselves round the head and body, and gallop full speed from one station to the next at twenty-five miles' distance, where they find two others fresh and ready harnessed, on which they proceed with the same rapidity. They stop not for an instant day nor night, and are thus enabled to bring news in so short a period. Now, I will tell you the great bounty which the monarch bestows twice in the year.

### *XXIX—The Care and Bounty of the Monarch towards his Subjects*

He sends his messengers through all his kingdoms and provinces, to know if any of his subjects have had their crops injured through bad weather or any other disaster; and if such injury has happened, he does not exact from them any tribute for that season or year; nay, he gives them corn out of his own stores to subsist upon, and to sow their fields. This he does in summer; in winter he inquires if there has been a mortality among the cattle, and in that case grants similar exemption and aid. When there is a great abundance of grain, he causes magazines to be formed, to contain wheat, rice, millet, or barley, and care to be taken that it be not lost or spoiled; then when a scarcity

occurs, this grain is drawn forth, and sold for a third or fourth of the current price. Thus there cannot be any severe famine; for he does it through all his dominions; he bestows also great charity on many poor families in Kambalu; and when he hears of individuals who have not food to eat, he causes grain to be given to them. Bread is not refused at the court throughout the whole year to any who come to beg for it; and on this account he is adored as a god by his people. His majesty provides them also with raiment out of his tithes of wool, silk, and hemp. These materials he causes to be woven into different sorts of cloth, in a house erected for that purpose, where every artisan is obliged to work one day in the week for his service. Garments made of the stuffs thus manufactured are given to destitute families for their winter and summer dresses. A dress is also prepared for his armies; and in every city a quantity of woollen cloth is woven, being defrayed from the tithes there levied. It must be observed, that the Tartars, according to their original customs, when they had not yet adopted the religion of the idolaters, never bestowed alms; but when applied to by any necessitous person, repelled him with reproachful expressions, saying,—begone with your complaints of a bad season, God has sent it to you, and had he loved you, as he evidently loves me, you would have similarly prospered. But since some of the wise men among the idolaters, especially the baksi, have represented to his majesty, that to provide for the poor is a good work and highly grateful to their deities, he has bestowed charity in the manner now described, so that, at his court, none are denied food who come to ask for it. He has also so arranged that in all the highways by which messengers, merchants, and other persons travel, trees are planted at short distances on both sides of the road, and are so tall that they can be seen from a great distance. They serve thus both to show the way and afford a grateful shade. This is done whenever the nature of the soil admits of plantation; but when the route lies through sandy deserts or over rocky mountains, he has ordered stones to be set up, or columns erected, to guide the traveller. Officers of rank are appointed, whose duty it is to take care that these matters be properly arranged, and the roads kept constantly in good order. Besides other motives, the great khan is influenced by the declaration of his soothsayers and astrologers, that those who plant trees receive long life as their reward.

### *XXX—Liquor used for Wine in Cathay*

You must know that the greater part of the people of Cathay drink a wine made of rice and many good spices, and prepare it in such a way that it is more agreeable to drink than any other liquid. It is clear and beautiful, and it makes a man drunk sooner than any other wine, for it is extremely hot.

### *XXXI—Stones which are burnt instead of Wood*

It may be observed, also, that throughout the whole province of Cathay, there are a kind of black stones cut from the mountains in veins, which burn like logs. They maintain the fire better than wood. If you put them on in the evening, they will preserve it the whole night, and will be found burning in the morning. Throughout the whole of Cathay this fuel is used. They have also wood indeed; but the stones are much less expensive.

### *XXXII—The Astrologers of Kambalu—the Tartar Computation of Time*

The city of Kambalu contains, inclusive of Christians, Saracens, and Kataians, about 5,000 astrologers and soothsayers, whom the emperor provides with food and clothing, as he does the poor families; and they are constantly practising their art. They have astrolabes, on which are delineated the planetary signs, the hours of passing the meridian, and their successive aspects during the whole year. The astrologers of each separate sect annually examine their respective tables, to ascertain thence the course of the heavenly bodies, and their relative positions for every lunation. From the paths and configurations of the planets in the several signs, they foretell the state of the weather and the peculiar phenomena which are to occur in each month. In one, for instance, there will be thunder and storms; in another earthquakes; in a third violent lightning and rain; in a fourth pestilence, mortality, war, discord, conspiracy. What they find in their astrolabes they predict, adding, however, that God may at his pleasure do either more or less than they have announced.

Their annual prophecies are written on small squares called *takuini*, which are sold at a moderate price to all persons anxious to search into futurity. Those whose announcements prove more generally correct are accounted the most perfect masters of their art, and consequently held in the highest honour. When any one projects a great work, a long journey for commercial purposes, or any other undertaking, the probable success of which he is desirous to learn, he goes to one of these astrologers, informs him of the time at which he intends to set out, and inquires what aspect the heavens then exhibit. The astrologer replies, that before he can answer, he must be informed of the year, month, and hour of his nativity, on learning which he examines how the constellation that was then in the ascendant corresponds with the aspect of the celestial bodies at the time of the inquiry. Upon this comparison he finds his prediction as to the favourable or unfavourable issue of the enterprise.

The Tartars compute time by a cycle of twelve years, the first of which they name the lion; the second, the ox;

the third, the dragon; the fourth, the dog; and so on till all the twelve have elapsed. When any one, therefore, is asked the year in which he was born, he answers, it was in that of the lion, on such a day, and at such an hour and minute; all of which had been care fully noted in a book. When the years of the cycle are completed, they begin again with the first, and constantly go over the same ground.

### XXXIII—Religion and Customs of the Tartars (Chinese)

These people are idolaters, and each person has, for the object of worship, a tablet fixed against an elevated part of the wall of his apartment, having a name written on it which denotes the high, heavenly, and mighty God, and this they daily worship, burning incense before it. Raising their hands, and beating their faces three times against the floor, they entreat from him the blessings of sound understanding and bodily health, addressing no other petition. Below, on the floor, they have a statue named *Natigai*, considered as the god of terrestrial objects, or of whatever is produced on the earth. They suppose him to have a wife and children, and worship him in the same manner with incense, lifting their hands, and bending to the ground. They pray to him for good weather, plentiful crops, increase of family, and other such objects. They believe the soul to be so far immortal, that immediately after death it enters another body, and according as a man's actions in this life have been virtuous or wicked, his future state will be progressively more or less fortunate. If he has been poor, yet acted worthily and respectably, he will be born anew, first of a lady, becoming himself a gentleman; then of a woman of rank, becoming a noble man, and he will continually ascend in the scale of existence till he becomes united with the divinity. On the contrary, if a gentleman's son have acted unworthily, he will, at his next birth, become a clown, and at length a dog; descending always to a condition more vile than the former.

They converse courteously, accosting each other with politeness and with countenances expressive of pleasure; they have a well-bred air, and a manner of eating particularly cleanly. The utmost reverence is shown to parents; and should any child treat his with disrespect, or neglect to assist them, there is a public tribunal having for its especial object to punish the crime of filial ingratitude. Malefactors, when found guilty, after being apprehended and thrown into prison, are strangled; but such as remain till the expiry of three years, a time appointed by his majesty for a general release, are set at liberty, having however a brand fixed on one of the cheeks, by which they may be recognised.

The great khan has prohibited all gambling and other species of fraud, to which this people are addicted beyond any other upon earth; and as a reason for this prohibition, he tells them in his edict, "I subdued you by the power of my sword, and consequently whatever you possess belongs of right to me; in gambling, there fore, you sport with my property." Yet he does not, by the right thus claimed, take any thing on an arbitrary principle. The orderly and regular manner in which all ranks present themselves before him deserves notice. On approaching within half a mile of his residence, they testify their reverence for his exalted rank by an humble, subdued, and quiet demeanour, so that not the least noise is heard, nor does any one call, or even speak aloud. Every man of rank carries with him, while he continues in the hall of audience, a vessel into which he spits, that he may not soil the floor; and having done so, he replaces the cover, and makes a bow. They usually take with them handsome buskins of white leather, and on reaching the court, before entering the hall, where they wait to be summoned by his majesty, put them on, giving those worn in walking to the care of the servants. This precaution is taken that they may not sully the beautiful carpets, curiously wrought with silk and gold, and exhibiting a variety of colours.

### XXXIV—Marco Polo's Journey—The River Pulisangan and its beautiful Bridge

I have now to inform you that the great khan having sent Messer Marco as his ambassador into the western provinces, he departed from Kambalu, and travelled in that direction full four months. You shall now hear all that he saw on that journey going and returning. When a man leaves Kambalu and has gone ten miles, he finds a river called Pulisangan, which flows on to the ocean, and is crossed by many merchants with their goods. Over it is a grand stone bridge, which has not its equal in the world; it is 300 paces long and eight broad, and ten horsemen can ride abreast over it. It has twenty-four arches, supported by piers in the water, and is wholly of marble, finely wrought into columns in the manner that I will tell you. At the head of the bridge is a column of marble, above and beneath which are beautifully carved lions of the same material, and about a pace distant is another column, with its lions, and between the two are slabs of gray marble, to secure passengers from falling into the water; and the whole bridge thus formed is the most magnificent object in the world.

### XXXV—The great City of Gco-gui

After leaving that bridge a man travels thirty miles westward, finding every where fine trees, villages, and inns, and then comes to a city which is named Geo-gui. The country is rich in grain, the people are all idolaters; they

live by merchandise and the arts, making cloth of gold, as well as silk, and beautiful linen. There are also numerous houses for the reception of strangers. A mile beyond that city are two roads, one leading westward through Cathay, the other southward to the great province of Manji. In riding westward through Cathay full ten days, you find always handsome cities and castles, abundance of arts and merchandise, fine inns, trees, vines, and a civilized people.

### *XXXVI—The Cities of Ta-in-fu and Pi-an-fu*

At the end of this journey is a kingdom named Ta-in-fu, with a capital of the same name. It contains many arts and much merchandise, with a large supply of stores necessary for the imperial army. The district presents numerous vineyards, and being the only part of Cathay where wine is made, supplies it to the surrounding provinces. It yields also much silk, abounding in the trees on which the worms are fed. A degree of civilisation prevails among all the people of this country, in consequence of their frequent intercourse with the numerous towns which lie very near each other. The merchants are constantly carrying their goods from one to another, as fairs are successively held at each. Five days' journey beyond the ten already mentioned, there is said to be another city still larger and handsomer, named Achbaluch, where are the limits of his majesty's hunting-ground, within which no person must sport, except princes of his family, and others whose names are inscribed on the grand falconer's list; beyond, all persons qualified by their rank have that liberty. The khan scarcely ever follows the chase in this quarter; hence the wild animals, especially hares, multiply to such a degree, as to cause the destruction of all the growing corn. This having come to his knowledge, he was induced to repair thither with his whole court, and prodigious quantities of game were then taken. Leaving Ta-in-fu, and riding westward full seven days through very fine districts, amid numerous merchants, you find a large town, named Pi-an-fu, supported by commerce and the silk manufacture.

### *XXXVII—The Castle of Caya-fu—Story of its King and Prester John*

Two miles west of Pi-an-fu is a famous castle, named Caya-fu, built anciently by a king named Dor. In this castle is a very beautiful palace, with a great hall, containing portraits, beautifully painted, of all the kings who formerly reigned in these provinces. Having mentioned this King Dor, I will tell you a curious story of what passed between him and Prester John. The two sovereigns being at war, Dor was in so strong a situation that the other could not reach him, and was therefore much chagrined; upon which seven of his servants said that they would bring before him his adversary, and if he wished even alive. He said he should be very much obliged to them. Having obtained this permission, they went to the king and presented themselves as strangers desirous to serve him. He gave them an honourable welcome, and they began their duties with the utmost zeal, rendering themselves extremely acceptable. After they had remained two years, he became greatly attached to them, and confided in their love as if they had been his sons. Now hear what these wicked fellows did, and how difficult it is to find defence against a traitor. The king happened to go out on an excursion with a small number of persons, among whom were these seven. When they had passed a river distant from the palace, seeing that the king had not attendants enough to defend him, they laid hands on him, drew their swords, and threatened to kill him unless he instantly went along with them. He was greatly surprised, and said to them,—“What mean you by this, my sons!—what are you saying—whither do you wish me to go?” They replied:—“We wish you to come with us to Prester John, who is our master.” When Dor heard this, he almost died with grief, and said,—“ha! my good friends, have I not honoured and treated you as children; why will you betray me into the hands of my enemy! This would be a most wicked and disloyal action.” They replied that it must be so. They led him to their sovereign, who rejoiced greatly, and addressed the king in very rough language. He made no reply, not knowing what to answer; upon which, the other set him to keep his cattle, as a mark of disgrace and contempt, and during two years he performed this menial office. After that time Prester John was appeased, and resolved to spare his captive. He bestowed on him splendid regal vestments, paying him great honour, and saying,—“Now own you were not a man capable of making war against me.” The king then replied,—“Sire, I always knew that I was unable to contend with you; I repent much of my former bad conduct, and promise faithfully that I will always be your friend.” Then said the Christian prince,—“I will impose upon you no more hardship and grief; you shall receive favour and honour.” Having then supplied him with many horses handsomely equipped, and a numerous attendance, he permitted him to go. Dor then returned to his kingdom, and from that time was a faithful friend and servant of Prester John.

### *XXXVIII—The great River Kara-moran, and the City Ca-cian-fu*

Twenty miles westward from that castle is a river called Kara-moran, so large and broad that it cannot be crossed by a bridge, and flows on even to the ocean. On its banks are many cities and castles, likewise many merchants and manufactured goods; and in the country around ginger grows in great abundance. The number of birds is wonderful, so that for a Venetian grosso one can buy three pheasants; and after travelling three days, you find a

noble city named Ca-cian-fu. The people are idolaters, as likewise those of Cathay. It is a city of great merchandise and many arts. They have abundance of silk, with cloth of gold of all fashions. I will go on to tell you of the capital of the kingdom.

### *XXXIX—The City of Quen-gian-fu*

When a man has left the city of Ca-cian-fu, and travel led eight days westward, he finds always cities and castles, merchandise and arts, pleasure-grounds and houses; and the whole country is full of mulberries, producing abundance of silk. The men are idolaters and live by labouring the ground, hunting, and hawking. At the end of the eight days he comes to the noble city of Quen-gian-fu, capital of a kingdom anciently magnificent and powerful, and which had many noble and valiant kings. At present the crown is held by Mangalu, a son of the great khan. That city is rich in merchandise and manufactures, particularly of implements for the supply of an army; likewise every thing necessary for the subsistence of man. The people are all idolaters. Westward is a beautiful palace of King Mangalu, which I will describe to you. It lies in a great plain watered by a river, as also by many lakes and fountains. A wall five miles in circuit, surrounded with battlements, and well built, encloses this splendid edifice, having halls and chambers adorned with beaten gold. Mangalu exercises his dominion with great justice, and is much beloved by his people; the residents in the district enjoy great amusement in hawking and hunting.

### *XL—The Province of Cun-chin*

A man departing from this palace travels three days westward through a very fine plain, always finding villages and castles, with men living by merchandise and rearing silk in great abundance. He then comes to great mountains and valleys belonging to the province of Cun-chin; the people are all idolaters, and subsist by agriculture and hunting, having many forests full of various wild animals. Thus a man rides for twenty days through mountains, valleys, and woods, always finding cities, castles, and good inns.

### *XLI—The Province of Achalech-Manji*

After this journey, he enters a province named Acha lech-Manji, entirely level, and full of cities and castles. The people are all idolaters, and live by merchandise and art, and the province yields such a quantity of ginger, that it is distributed throughout Cathay, to the great profit of the inhabitants. The land also yields rice, wheat, and other grain, and is rich in all productions. The principal country is called Achalech-Manji, which means in our language one of the borders of Manji. This plain lasts for two days, and we then travel twenty through mountains, valleys, and woods, seeing many cities and castles. These people are idolaters, and live on the fruits of the earth and the flesh of birds and beasts; for there are abundance of lions, bears, wolves, stags, deer, and particularly of those animals which yield the musk.

### *XLII—The Province and City of Sin-din-fu*

When a man has left this country and travelled twenty days westward, he approaches a province on the borders of Manji named Sin-din-fu. The capital, bearing the same name, was anciently very great and noble, governed by a mighty and wealthy sovereign. He died, leaving three sons, who divided the city into three parts, and each enclosed his portion with a wall, which was within the great wall of twenty miles in circuit. They ranked still as kings, and had ample possessions; but the great khan overcame them, and took full possession of their territory. Through the city, a large river of fresh water, abounding with fish, passes and flows on to the ocean, distant eighty or a hundred days' journey; it is called Quian-su. On that current is a very great number of cities and castles, and such a multitude of ships, as no one who has not seen could possibly believe. Equally wonderful is the quantity of merchandise conveyed; indeed it is so broad as to appear a sea and not a river. Within the city, it is crossed by a bridge, wholly of marble, half a mile long and eight paces broad; the upper part is supported by marble columns, and richly painted; and upon it are many houses where merchants expose goods for sale; but these are set up in the morning and taken down in the evening. At one of them, larger than the others, stands the chamberlain of the khan, who receives the duty on the merchandise sold, which is worth annually a thousand golden bezants. The inhabitants are all idolaters; and from that city a man goes five days' journey through castles, villages, and scattered houses. The people subsist by agriculture, and the tract abounds with wild beasts. There are also large manufactures of gauzes and cloth of gold. After travelling these five days, he comes to Thibet.

*XLIII—The Province of Thibet*

This is a very large province; the men have a language of their own, and are idolaters. They border upon Manji and many other countries, and are very great robbers; the extent is such, that it contains eight kingdoms and many cities and castles. There are also extensive rivers, lakes, and mountains, where is found a vast quantity of gold. Cinnamon and coral occur, which last is very dear, because they place it round the neck of their women and their idols, and hold it as a precious jewel. Here are made camlets, and other cloths of silk and gold. There are very skilful enchanters and astrologers, but extremely wicked men, who perform works of the devil, which it were unlawful to relate, they would strike with such amazement. They have mastiff dogs as large as asses, and excellent in taking wild animals. This province was entirely destroyed by Mangou, the fifth great khan, in his wars; and its many villages and castles are all demolished. Here grow large canes, fifteen paces long and four palms thick, while from one knot to the other is full three palms. The merchants and travellers, who pass through that country in the night, take these canes and set them on fire, when they make such a loud crackling noise that lions, bears, and other destructive animals are terrified, and dare not approach. They also split them in the middle, and produce thus so mighty a sound, that it would be heard in the night at the distance of five miles; and the explosion is so alarming, that horses unaccustomed to it often break their reins and harness, and take to flight. For this reason, travellers, riding such horses, bind them by the feet, and stop their eyes and ears. A man travels twenty days through these countries without finding either inns or victuals; he must therefore carry with him food for himself and his cattle during the whole of that space, meeting always, too, ferocious wild beasts, which are very dangerous.

*XLIV—Another Part of Thibet*

The traveller then comes to a part of Thibet where there are houses and castles; but the people have a bad custom. None of them for the whole world will marry a virtuous maiden, saying that she is worth nothing without having had many lovers. When strangers, therefore, pass through, and have pitched their tents, or taken their lodging in inns, the old women bring their daughters, often to the number of thirty or forty, and offer them as wives during their stay; but they must not carry them thence, either back or forward. When the merchant is about to depart, he gives to the lady some toy or jewel as a testimony that she has lived with him. These jewels she hangs to her neck, and is anxious to have at least twenty; for the more she can show, the higher is she valued, and the more readily obtains a husband. After being married, she is strictly watched, and any infidelity is deeply resented. These people are idolatrous and wicked, not holding it sinful to commit wrong and robbery; in short, they are the greatest thieves in the world. They live on the fruits of the earth, but mostly by hunting and falconry; and the country contains many of those animals which produce musk, and are called in the Tartar language *gudderis*. That sinful people have many good dogs, which they employ in the pursuit of wild animals. They have neither the cards nor money circulated by the great khan, but make money of salt. They are poorly clad with the skins of beasts, canvass, and buckram; they have a language of their own, which they call Tebet. Now I will tell you of Kain-du.

*XLV—The Province of Kain-du*

This is a province lying to the west, having only one king, the inhabitants idolaters, and subject to the great khan. It contains a number of cities and castles, with a lake, in which are found many pearls; but the monarch forbids them, under a severe penalty, to be removed except for his own use; because, if any one were allowed to take them, they would become worth almost nothing. There is also a mountain, whence are quarried turquoise stones in great abundance, very large and beautiful; but he does not allow them to be removed unless by his mandate. In this province they have a strange and base custom, that a man thinks there is no disgrace in an improper intimacy between his wife or sister and a stranger or other person. On the contrary, when such a one comes to reside in his house, the master presently goes out, and leaves him with his wife. The visiter remains often three days, and places a hat or something else at the window as a signal; and the husband never returns till he sees this taken away. This is said to be done in honour of their idols, who on that account bestow on them many blessings. Their gold is in small rods,—the value being determined according to the weight, and not marked by any stamp. The small money is thus made: they take salt, form it into a shape, so that it weighs about half a pound, and eighty of these are worth a rod of gold. They have a very great number of the animals which yield the musk; likewise fishes from the same lake whence the pearls are drawn; also the usual kinds of wild birds and beasts. No wine is obtained from vines, but it is made from grain or rice with many spices, which makes a good liquor. In that province also grows a tree called *garofol*; it is small, with leaves like a laurel, but longer and narrower; it bears a small white flower. It yields ginger, cinnamon, and other spices, which come into our country; but I have now said to you enough of Kain-du. After travelling ten days you come to a river which bounds it, named Brius. In it is found a great quantity of gold dust; and on its banks abundance of cinnamon; it flows on to the ocean. Now let us tell you of Caraian.

### *XLVI—The Province of Caraian*

When a man has departed and crossed the river, he enters this province, which is large, and contains seven kingdoms extending westward. The people are all idolaters, and under the dominion of the great khan. The king is a son of his, named Essetemur, and is great, rich, and powerful. He is also brave and upright, ruling his country with much justice." When the traveller has crossed the river, he passes, during a journey of five days, through a country where there is abundance of cities and castles, with many very good horses; and the people are supported by cattle and the produce of land. Their language is extremely difficult to understand. At the end of these five days, he comes to the capital of the country, named Yaci, which is particularly great and noble, with many merchants and numerous arts. There are here various sects, Saracens, idolaters, and Nestorian Christians. There is a good deal of grain and rice, yet the country is not very fertile. They make a drink of the latter which intoxicates like wine. Money is formed of porcelain, such as is found in the sea, and eighty pieces are worth one bar of gold, or eight of silver. They have pits whence they draw vast quantities of salt, from which the king derives a great revenue. Adultery is not considered as a crime, unless when accompanied with violence. There is a lake here extending a hundred miles, and containing many large fishes, the best in the world. They use the raw flesh of all fowls and beasts; for the poor people go to the market and get it newly taken from the animal, put it in garlic sauce, then eat it; the rich likewise eat it raw, but previously cut into small pieces, and the sauce mixed with good spices.

### *XLVII—The Province of Karazan and its great Serpents*

When a man leaves Yaci, or Chiaci, and goes ten days westward, he finds the province of Karazan, with a capital of the same name. The people are all idolaters, and subject to the great khan; the king is a son of that monarch, named Kogatin. Gold dust is found in the river, and on the mountains in large pieces so abundantly that a bar is given for six of silver. The porcelain, too, formerly described circulates for money, but is procured from India. Here are snakes and serpents so huge as to strike all men with astonishment; they are ten paces long, ten palms broad, and have no feet, but only a hoof like that of the lion; the nose is like a loaf of bread, the mouth so huge that it would swallow at once a man whole; the teeth are immense, nor is there any wild beast whom they do not strike with terror. There are smaller ones eight paces long and six palms broad. The mode of catching them is this:—They remain during the day in great caverns under the earth, to avoid the heat, but at night go out to feed, and seize all the animals whom they can reach; they also seek drink at the rivers, fountains, and lakes, and then make a deep track in the sand, as if a barrel had been dragged through it. In it the people fix a stake, fasten to it a steel instrument sharpened like a razor, and cover it over with sand. When the serpent comes through the track, and strikes against the steel, he is pierced with such violence, that his body is divided from one side to the other, as high as the umbilical cord, and he presently dies. They then take the body and extract the gall-bladder, which they sell very dear, being an excellent medicine for the bite of a mad dog, when administered in small doses. It is also valuable in childbirth, and when given to the woman, a safe delivery immediately follows. The flesh also is sold at a high price, being considered delicate food. The serpent also enters the dens of lions, bears, and other fierce animals, and devours their whelps, when he can get at them. Here, too, are very large horses, which are carried into India to be sold. They cut two or three nerves from the tail, so that they may not strike with it the man who rides, which is considered disgraceful. These people ride like the French, with long staffs, have arms covered with buffalo hide, and carry lances, spears, and poisoned arrows. Before the great khan conquered them they had a wicked custom, that when any stranger came to lodge with them who was agreeable, wise, and opulent, they killed him during the night by poison or some other mode. This was not out of enmity or with the view of taking his money, but because they imagined that his wisdom and other good qualities would thus remain with them. However, about thirty-five years ago, after that monarch conquered the country, he prohibited this crime, which, from fear of him, they no longer commit. Now let us tell of another province called Kardandan.

### *XLVIII—The Province of Kardandan*

When a man departs from Karazan, and travels to the westward, he enters a province named Kardandan, inhabited by idolaters, and subject to the great khan. The chief city is called Vociam. All the people have their teeth, both upper and lower, covered with gold, which thus appear to be made of that metal. The men are soldiers, and regard nothing but war; the women, with the slaves, perform all the work. When any lady has been delivered of a boy, the husband goes to bed, taking the child with him, and remains there forty days. He thus allows rest to the mother, who is only obliged to suckle the infant. All his friends then come and make a festival, when the wife rises, manages the domestic affairs, and serves her husband, still lying in bed. They eat all kinds of flesh, both raw and cooked, and rice dressed along with it, and make a very good wine of rice and spices. They have money of gold and porcelain, and give a bar of gold for five of silver, having no mines of the latter metal within five days' distance; by this

exchange the merchants make great profit. This people have neither idols nor churches, but adore the master of the house, and say of him, "we are his; and he is our god." They have neither letters nor writing, which is not wonderful, because they live in an unfrequented place, that cannot be visited in the summer on account of the air, which is then so corrupted and pestilent that no foreigner can live there. Whenever they have dealings together, they select a piece of timber, square or round, cleave it in the middle, and each takes a half; this must be done before two, three, or four witnesses. When the payment comes to be made, the one receives the money and gives his half of the wood. In all those provinces there is no physician, but when any one is sick, doctors and exorcists of evil spirits are sent for, who, on coming to the patient, begin their incantations, beating instruments, singing and dancing. In a short time one of them falls to the ground, foams at the mouth, and becomes half-dead, when the devil enters into his body. The other magicians then ask the half-dead man what is the cause of the patient's illness. The demon answers from his mouth that the sufferer has given displeasure to such or such a spirit, who is therefore tormenting him. They then say, "we beseech you to pardon him, and take in compensation for his blood the presents which we now exhibit." Then if the sick man is to die, the fiend in the body of the magician says,—"the spirit has been wronged and displeased to such a degree, that he will not spare him for any thing in the world." If on the contrary a cure is to take place, the devil from the body says, "take so many sheep and so many dishes of rich pottage, and make a sacrifice of them to the angry spirit." The relations of the patient do every thing thus ordered, killing the sheep, sprinkling the blood, and preparing the dishes of pottage. A great assemblage is made of men and women, who hold a joyous feast, dancing and singing songs in praise of the spirit. They burn incense and myrrh, with which they fumigate and illuminate the whole house. When they have acted thus for about an hour, the first magician again falls down, and they inquire if the sick man is now pardoned and will be cured. It is then answered that he is not yet pardoned, but something more must be done, after which forgiveness will be granted. This order is obeyed, when he says, "he is pardoned, and will be immediately cured." The company then exclaim, "the spirit is on our side," and having eaten the sheep and drunk the pottage with great joy and festivity, they return to their homes.

#### *XLIX—Of the great Battle fought between the Tartars and the King of Mien*

Now I must mention a very great battle which was fought in the kingdom of Vociam, and you shall hear all how it happened. In the year of our Lord 1272, the great khan sent a mighty captain, named Nescardin, with 12,000 men, to defend the province of Caraian. He was a prudent man, very strong in arms and skilful in war; and the soldiers with him were good and very brave warriors. Now the King of Mien and of Ban-gala were afraid lest he should invade their territory; yet they thought they were able to overcome and destroy the whole army in such a manner that the great khan might never feel inclined to send another into the same quarter. They assembled, therefore, 60,000 horse and foot, with 2,000 elephants, each of which had on its back a castle well fortified and defended by twelve, fourteen, or sixteen men. The King of Mien came with the above army to the city of Vociam, where was the array of the Tartars, and took post in a plain at the distance of three days' journey. Nescardin was somewhat alarmed, considering how small a force he had in comparison with the host of the King of Mien; but he took courage, reflecting that his troops were brave and most valiant warriors. He therefore marched to meet them in the plain of Vociam, and pitched his camp near a great forest, filled with lofty trees, into which he was aware that elephants could not enter. The King of Mien, seeing the army of Nescardin, advanced to attack it. The Tartars went with great boldness to meet them, but when their horses saw the elephants with the wooden castles upon them, stationed and arranged in the first line, they were struck with such terror that the riders could not, either by force or any contrivance, make them approach. They, therefore, immediately alighted, and tied them to the trees, when the infantry returned to the line of elephants, and began to discharge their arrows with the utmost violence. Those who were on the backs of the animals fought bravely; but the Tartars were stronger, and more accustomed to battle. They wounded very severely with these missiles a multitude of the elephants, which, being terrified, took to flight and rushed with violence into the adjacent wood. As they could not be restrained from entering, and rushing backward and forward through the thick trees in confusion, they broke the wooden castles on their backs, and destroyed all their equipments. When the Tartars saw these animals disposed of, they ran to their horses, which were bound to the trees, mounted them, and rushed upon the warriors of the King of Mien. They began the attack with a shower of arrows, but as the king and his troops still defended themselves valiantly, they drew their swords, and rushed into close combat. Now mighty blows were struck; swords and spears were fiercely thrust on both sides; heads, arms, and hands were struck off; and many warriors fell to the earth dead and dying. The noise and cries would have drowned the loudest thunder. At length, after mid day, the host of Mien gave way; and the king, with all who survived the battle, took to flight, pursued by the Tartars, who killed many of the fugitives. When satisfied with pursuit, they returned to the wood to catch the elephants. They endeavoured to stop the flight of these animals by cutting down the trees and laying them across; yet they are so intelligent, that the soldiers would not have succeeded but for the aid of some of the captives taken in battle, through whose means they were able to recover two hundred. From

this time the great khan began to employ elephants in his army, which he had not hitherto done. Afterwards that monarch conquered the lands of Mien, and added them to his dominion.

### *L—Of the great Descent*

When you have departed from the said province of Caraian, there begins a great descent, which continues for two days and a half; and in all this journey nothing occurs worthy of notice, except that there is a great space in which a market is held on certain days of the year. Thither come many merchants from divers countries and districts, some of whom bring gold and silver to exchange; and they give an ounce of the former for five of the latter. None but those who bring the gold can penetrate into the countries where it is produced, so difficult and intricate are the roads. When a man has travelled these two days and a half, he comes to a district which is called Anniz, on the borders of India, towards the south, and then he goes for fifteen days through a region covered with woods filled with elephants, unicorns, and other savage beasts, but not containing any human habitation.

### *LI—Of the City of Men, and the most beautiful Tomb of the King*

At the termination of these wild and pathless tracts is a large and noble city called Mien, the capital of the province. The people are all idolaters, with a language peculiar to themselves, and are subject to the great khan. About this city I will tell you a thing very remarkable. There was anciently in it a rich and powerful king, who, being about to die, commanded that on his tomb should be erected two towers, one of gold, and the other of silver. They are full ten paces high, and of a suitable thickness; the first, being composed of stone, is covered all over with gold to the thickness of a finger, so that to the spectator it appears wholly of that metal. The summit is round, and filled with little golden bells, which the wind, whenever it strikes them, causes to ring. The other tower is similarly formed, but is coated with silver, and has silver bells. By these buildings the king intended to display his greatness and dignity, and they are the most beautiful and valuable to be seen in the world. Between them he caused the sepulchre to be constructed, where he is now buried. When the great khan conquered that city, he desired all the players and buffoons, of whom there were a great number in his court, to go and achieve the conquest, offering them a captain and some warlike aid. The jesters willingly undertook the affair, and setting out with the proffered assistance, subdued this province of Mien. When they came to that noble city, and saw these splendid edifices, they admired exceedingly, and sent to the great khan an account of their beauty, and of the manner in which they were constructed, asking if he wished them to be demolished, and the gold and silver sent to him. The monarch, on hearing this, commanded that they should not be destroyed, since the king had erected them to commemorate his greatness, and no Tartar touches any thing belonging to a dead man. They were therefore to continue in the same condition as they now stood. This province contains elephants, wild oxen large and beautiful, stags, deer, and other animals. Now, let me tell you of another which is called Bangala.

### *LII—Of the Province of Bangala*

This is a province towards the south, which, in the year 1290, while I, Marco, was at the court of the great khan, was not yet conquered, but the army was there, ready to march for that purpose. It has a king and languages of its own, and the people are most wicked idolaters. They are on the confines of India. The barons and lords of that country have oxen as tall as elephants, but not so weighty; and live on flesh and rice. They have great abundance of silk, with which they carry on extensive manufactures; also ginger, sugar, and many other costly spices. This place is visited by numerous merchants, who purchase slaves, make them eunuchs, and then either sell or convey them to other places.

### *LIU—Of the Province of Kangigu*

Kangigu is a province towards the east, subject to a king; the people are all idolaters; have a language of their own; and owning the supremacy of the great khan, they pay him an annual tribute. The king is so luxurious as to have 300 wives, for as soon as he hears of a beautiful woman in the country he takes her to himself. The people have much gold and many precious spices; but being far from the sea, their commodities do not bring the full value. They have many elephants and beasts of various other kinds. All the men and women paint their bodies, the colours being worked in with the claws of lions, dragons, and eagles, and thus never effaced. In this manner they stain their neck, breast, hands, limbs, and indeed their whole person. This is considered extremely genteel, and the more any one is painted, the higher is his rank considered. Now let us tell you of another province named Amu.

*LIV—Of the Province of Amu*

Amu is also a province towards the east, subject to the great khan. The people are idolaters, live by pasturage and agriculture, and have a language of their own. The ladies wear on their arms and legs valuable bracelets of gold and silver, and the men have these still finer and rarer. They have good horses in considerable numbers, many of which the Indians purchase and sell again to much advantage. They have also abundance of oxen and buffaloes, because they have extensive and good pastures; in short, they have plenty of the means of subsistence. From Amu to Kangigu, are fifteen days, and thence to Bangala, which is the third province behind, are thirty days. Now let us come to another province, which is called Tholoman, and lies eight journeys from this to the east.

*LV—Of the Province of Tholoman*

Tholoman is a third province towards the east. All the people are idolaters, have a language of their own, and are under the great khan. They are handsome, of rather a brown complexion, good men at arms, and have a number of cities, castles, and forts, on the top of very high mountains. When they die, the bodies are burned, and the bones which cannot be consumed are placed in chests and carried to the caverns of high mountains, where they are kept suspended, so that neither man nor beast can touch them. Gold is found here; but the smart money is of porcelain, which circulates in all these provinces. The merchants, though few, are rich; the people live on flesh and rice, and have many good spices.

*LVI—Of the Province of Cyn-gui and its Lions*

Cyn-gui is a province likewise situated towards the east, and when a man leaves Tholoman, he goes twelve days along a river, where there are towns and castles, but nothing else worth mentioning. At the end of these twelve days, he finds the city Sinugul, very large and noble. The inhabitants are all idolaters, and subject to the great khan. They live by merchandise and arts, and weave cloths of the bark of trees, which make fine summer dresses. They are good men at arms; but they have no money except paper. There are in this country so many lions, that if a man were to sleep out of doors, he would presently be killed and eaten by them; and at night, when a bark sails along the river, if it were not kept at a good distance from the bank, they would rush in and carry off the crew. However, though these animals be so large and dangerous, the natives have a wonderful manner of defending themselves; for the dogs of that country are so daring, that they will assault a large one, and, seconded by a man, will kill him. I will tell you how: when a man is on horseback with two of these dogs, as soon as they see a lion, they throw themselves behind him, and bite his thighs and body. The lion turns furiously round, but they wheel about with him so swiftly, that he cannot reach them. He then retreats till he comes to a tree, against which he places his back, and turns his face to the dogs; but they continue always biting him from behind, and making him turn round and round. Meantime the man discharges arrows without ceasing, till the animal falls down dead, and thus one man and two spirited dogs are sufficient to kill a large lion. The inhabitants of this province have a good deal of silk, and a great trade is carried on to all quarters along the river.

*LVII—Arrival at Sin-din-fu, and Journey back to Gin-gui*

Continuing to journey on its banks for twelve days more, we discover a number of cities and castles. The people are idolaters, subject to the great khan, and use paper money. Some are good at arms, others are merchants and artificers. At the end of the twelve days, the traveller comes to Sin-din-fu, of which mention has been made above. He then rides seventy days through provinces and lands which we formerly went over, and have already described. At the end of that period, he comes to Gin-gui, where we formerly were.

*LVIII—Cities of Ca-cian-fu, Cian-glu, and Cian-gli*

From Gin-gui or Geo-gui a man travels four days, finding a variety of cities and castles. The people are great artificers and merchants, subject to the mighty khan, and use paper money. At the end of the four days you come to Ca-cian-fu, a large and noble city, lying to the south, in the province of Cathay. The inhabitants are subject to the same monarch, are all idolaters, and burn the bodies of their dead. They have a good supply of silk, which they make into different kinds of cloth. A large river flows past it, along which great abundance of merchandise is conveyed to Kambalu, with which it is made to communicate by the digging of many canals. Now let us pass to another city called Cian-glu. The natives are idolaters, subject to the khan, use paper money, and burn the bodies of their dead. In that city, salt is made very extensively, and I will tell you how. There is a species of earth full of it, and they pile it up in heaps, upon which they throw a great quantity of water, to saturate it with the mineral. They next boil it in large cauldrons of iron, till it evaporates, and leaves a white and minute salt, which is exported to all the countries

round. Five days' journey from Cian-glu is Cian-gli, where are many cities and castles. It is a town of Cathay, and the whole people are idolaters, subject to the khan, and use paper money. Through the middle of that territory flows a great river, on which is conveyed much merchandise of various kinds.

### *LIX—Condi-fu—Rebellion against the Great Khan*

In departing from Cian-gli, we come in six days to Condi-fu, a great city, which the khan conquered by force of arms, but still it is the noblest in the province. There is a wonderful abundance of silk, as well as orchards with many delicate fruits, and the situation is delightful; it has also under it fifteen other cities of great importance and commerce, whence it derives high honour and dignity. In the year 1273, the khan gave to Litan, one of his barons, 70,000 horse to defend and secure that city; but when the said baron had remained some time in the country, he arranged with certain men to betray it, and rebel against his lord. When the khan knew this, he sent two of his commanders, Aguil and Mongatai, with many troops, against the traitor. On their approach, the rebel went forth to meet them with his forces, consisting of a hundred thousand cavalry and many infantry, both of the country and of those he had brought with him; and there was a very great battle between him and those two chiefs. Litan was killed, with many others; and the khan caused all those who had been guilty to be put to death, and spared the lives of the rest. Now let us tell of another country named Sin-gui.

### *LX—Cities of Sin-gui, Lin-gui, Pin-gui, and Cin-gui*

When a man has gone south from Condi-fu, he finds cities and castles, many animals of the chase and birds, with a vast abundance of all productions, and then comes to Sin-gui, which is noble, great, and beautiful, with much merchandise and many arts; the whole people are idolaters, subject to the khan, and use paper money. They have a river which is of great utility, because the people of the country have divided the stream which comes from the south into two parts; one goes eastward towards Manji, the other westward towards Cathay; and the land has thus a wonderful number of ships, though not of large size, with which they convey goods to other provinces, and bring thence an almost in credible quantity of merchandise. When a man departs from Sin-gui and goes eight days to the south, he finds many rich cities and castles. The people are idolaters, subject to the khan; they burn the bodies of their dead, and use paper money. At the end of eight days he arrives at a town named Lin-gui, great and noble, with men-at-arms, and also arts and merchandise. Here are wild animals and every kind of provision in abundance. When he departs from Lin-gui, he goes three days to the south, finding cities and castles under the powerful khan; the people idolatrous, and burning the bodies of their dead. There is much excellent hunting of birds and beasts. At the end of these three days, he discovers a very good city named Pin-gui. The people have all things necessary for subsistence, raise much silk, and pay a large revenue to the sovereign. A great quantity of merchandise is laden here for the province of Manji. When a man has departed from Pin-gui, and travelled two days with his face to the south, through beautiful and rich countries, he finds the city of Cin-gui, very large, and full of merchandise and arts. The people are wholly idolatrous, burn the bodies of their dead, their money is paper, and they are under the khan. They have much grain and grass. When a man leaves Cin-gui, he finds cities, villages, and castles, with handsome dogs and good pasture; the people being such as are above described.

### *LXI—Of the great River Kara-moran*

At the end of two days a man finds the great river called Kara-moran, coming from the lands of Prester John. It is full, broad, and so deep that a large ship can pass through its channel; and there are on it full 15,000 vessels, all belonging to the khan, meant for conveying his goods when he goes to the islands of the sea, which is distant about a day's journey. And each of these ships requires fifteen mariners, and carries fifteen horses with their riders, provisions, and every thing else necessary for them. When a man passes that river, he enters the province of Manji, and I will tell you how it was conquered by the khan.

### *LXII—Of the Province of Manji, and how it was made subject to the Great Khan*

In the extensive province of Manji there was a lord and king named Facfur, who, excepting the great khan, was the mightiest sovereign in the world, the most powerful in money and people; but the men are not good at arms, nor have horses trained to war, nor experience in battle and military operations, otherwise they would never have lost so strong a country. All the lands are surrounded by waters so deep that they cannot be passed unless by bridges, and the chief cities are encompassed by broad ditches filled with water. The khan, however, in the year of our Lord 1273, sent one of his barons, Bayam Cinqsan, which means Bayam with the Hundred Eyes: for the King of Manji had found out by astrology, that he could lose his kingdom only by a man having a hundred eyes. This Bayam marched with a very great force, many ships, horse and foot, and came to the first city of Manji, called Koi-gan-zu,

which we will presently describe. He called upon it to surrender; but the people refused. He then went to another city, which also refused, and so he passed five, leaving them behind, because he knew that the khan was sending a large additional force. He took, however, the sixth by storm, and then successively reduced other twelve; after which he marched direct to the capital of the kingdom, called Kin-sai, where the king and queen resided. When the monarch saw this great army, he was struck with such terror that he fled from the continent with many of his people, having 1,000 ships, and sought refuge among the islands. The queen, however, remained and defended herself as well as she could against Bayam. But having at length asked what was the name of that commander, and being told it was Bayam with the Hundred Eyes, she remembered the prophecy mentioned above, and immediately surrendered the city to him. Presently all the cities of Manji yielded, and the whole world does not contain such a kingdom, and I will now describe its magnificence.

### *LXIII—Of the Piety and Justice of the King towards his Subjects*

This King Facfur maintained 15,000 poor children, because in that province many are exposed as soon as they are born by parents who cannot support them; so, when a rich man had no issue, he went to the king and got as many as he pleased. And when the boys and girls came of age, the king married them together, and gave them the means of living; and thus were educated 20,000 males or females annually. He did another thing: when he went through any place and saw two fine houses, and by the side of them a small one, he inquired why the first were greater than the other; and being told that it belonged to a poor man, who could not afford to build one larger, presently he gave him money enough to enable him to do so. He made himself be served by more than 1,000 domestic servants of both sexes. He maintained his kingdom in such justice, that no evil was done, and all commodities could be left unguarded except by the royal equity. Now I have given you an account of the king; I will tell you of the queen. She was led to the great khan, who made her be honoured and served as a powerful sovereign; but the king, her husband, never came out of the islands of the ocean, and died there, and thus the whole kingdom remained with the khan. Now let us tell of the province of Manji, and the manners and customs of the people; beginning with the city of Koi-gan-zu.

### *LXIV—Of the Cities of Koi-gan-zu, Pau-chym, and Chaym*

Koi-gan-zu is a great, rich, and noble city, at the entrance of the province of Manji, lying to the south. The whole people are subject to the khan; they are idolaters, and burn the bodies of their dead. It lies on the river Kara-moran, and hence is full of ships; for many merchants bring their commodities thither to be distributed throughout other cities. It is the capital of the province. Here is made a very great quantity of salt, which is supplied thence to forty different towns; the khan has a large revenue from this and other trades here carried on. And now let me tell you of another city called Pau-chym. When a man departs from Koi-gan-zu, he goes a whole day along a causeway finely built of stone, and on each side is a large water, so that it is impossible to enter the province unless by this causeway. He then finds a city called Pau-chym; all the people are idolaters, burn the bodies of their dead, and are under the great khan. They are artificers and merchants, have abundance of silk, and make much cloth of it mixed with gold, and thus earn a sufficient livelihood. Through all that country the paper money of the khan is circulated.

When a man sets out from Pau-chym, he travels a day and discovers a very large city named Chaym. There is great abundance of the necessaries of life; fish beyond measure, beasts and birds for sport in great numbers, so that for a Venetian silver gross you may purchase three pheasants.

### *LXV—Of the City of Tin-gui, and its great Saltworks*

Tin-gui is a pretty agreeable city, a full day's journey from Chaym. The people are idolaters, subject to the khan, and use paper money; they have merchandise and arts, and numerous ships belonging to them. It lies to the south-east, and on the left, nearly three days' journey to the eastward, is the ocean, where salt is made in great quantities. Here is a city named Cyn-gui, large, rich, and noble, to which all the salt is brought, and the khan draws from it a revenue so wonderful that it could not be believed.

### *LXVI—Of the great City of Yan-gui*

When a man leaves Tin-gui he proceeds a day towards the south-east, through a very fine country, finding towns and castles, and then comes to Yan-gui, a large and beautiful city, which has under it twenty-four, all good and of great trade. Its affairs are administered by one of the twelve barons of the khan; Messer Marco Polo, of whom this book treats, governed it three years. Here are made many arms and other equipments for knights and men of war; for in this place and around it numerous troops are quartered. I will now tell you of two great provinces lying to the west, and as I shall have much to say, I will begin with Nan-ghin.

*LXVII—Of the great City of Nan-ghin*

Nan-ghin is a province towards the west, belonging to Manji, and is very noble and rich. The people are idolaters, use paper money, and are subject to the great khan. They live by merchandise and arts, have silk in abundance, and make cloths of it interwoven with gold, in all fashions. They have an ample supply of every kind of grain and provisions; for the land is very fruitful. There are also lions and animals for hunting. There are many rich merchants who carry on much trade, and pay a large revenue to the great sire. But I will now go to the noble city of Sa-yan-fu, respecting which I shall have much to say.

*LXVIII—Of the City of Sa-yan-fu, and how it was taken*

Sa-yan-fu is a large and magnificent city, having under it twelve others also great and noble; it is the seat of many valuable arts and of much merchandize. The inhabitants are idolaters; they use paper money, are subject to the khan, and burn the bodies of their dead. This city held out three years after all the rest of the province had yielded to the conqueror, who besieged it with a mighty army; but he could approach it only on the side which lies to the north, because it was elsewhere surrounded by a large and deep lake, by which the besieged obtained abundance of provisions. The army was therefore about to abandon the siege in much grief and wrath, and this news was just brought to the khan, when Messeri Nicolo, Maffio, and Marco Polo said,—“we shall find a way by which the city shall be made to surrender.” The monarch, who was most eagerly bent on its capture, readily listened. Then said the two brothers and their son Marco,—“Great sire, we have with us in our train men who will make such an engine as will discharge large stones, which the citizens will not be able to endure, and will be obliged to yield.” The khan was much rejoiced, and desired that they should execute their plan as soon as possible. Now, they had in their company a German and a Nestorian Christian who were skilful in such works, and made two or three machines sufficient to throw stones of 300 pounds weight. When these were conveyed to the army and set up, they appeared to the Tartars the greatest wonder of the world. They then began discharging stones into the city, which struck the houses, broke and destroyed every thing, and caused the utmost noise and alarm. When the inhabitants saw a calamity such as they had never witnessed before, they knew not what to think or say. They met in council, and concluded that they must be all killed, unless they submitted. They therefore intimated to the lord of the host that they would surrender on the same terms that others had done. This was agreed to, and Sa-yan-fu came under the power of the great khan, through the interposition of Messeri Nicolo, Maffio, and Marco; and it was not a small service, for this town and province are among the best in his possession, and he draws from them a great revenue. Now, we shall leave this subject and treat of a city called Sin-gui.

*LXIX—Of the City of Sin-gui and the River Kiang, and the Multitude of Cities on that River*

When a man leaves Yan-gui and goes fifteen miles south-east, he perceives a certain city named Sin-gui, which is not very extensive, but has great merchandise and much shipping. The people are idolaters, use paper money, and are subject to the khan. That city stands upon a river, named Kiang, which is the largest in the world; being in some places ten miles broad, and up wards of a hundred days' journey in length. Through it the inhabitants have a lucrative trade, which yields a large revenue to the khan. And on account of the many cities on it, the ships navigating and the goods conveyed by means of it are more numerous and valuable than in all the rivers of Christendom and the adjacent seas beside. I tell you I have seen at that city no fewer than 5,000 ships sailing at once on its stream. For that river flows through sixteen provinces, and has more than two hundred great towns on its banks. The ships are covered, and have only one mast; yet they are of heavy burden, and carry each from 4,000 to 12,000 cantars. They have ropes composed of cane for drawing them through the water; those belonging to the larger vessels are thick, and fifteen paces in length, being cloven at the end, and bound together in such a way as to make a cord 300 paces long.

*LXX—Of the City of Cai-gui*

Cai-gui is a small city towards the south-east, situated upon the bank of the above-mentioned river; all the people are idolaters, subject to the khan, and use paper money. Here are collected large quantities of corn and rice; and there is a passage by water to the city of Kampala and the court of the khan; grain from this place forms a considerable part of the provision required by his court. The monarch made this communication by digging long and deep canals from one river to another, and from lake to lake, so that a large ship may pass through. And by the side of this water-channel goes a road, so that you may take either the one or the other, as is most convenient. In the middle of that river, opposite the city, is an isle of rocks, on which is a monastery of idolaters, where there are 200 monks, who serve a very great number of gods. Now, let us cross the river, and tell of a city named Cin-ghian-fu.

*LXXI—Of the City of Cin-ghian-fu*

Cin-ghian-fu is a city of Manji, and the people are such as we have already described, idolaters, and subjects of the great khan. They are artificers, merchants, and hunters, raise much grain, and make cloths of silk and gold. Here are two churches of Nestorian Christians, formed in the year 1278; which happened because at that time the governor under the khan was a Nestorian, named Marsarchis, and he caused these two edifices to be built. Now, let us go to the great city of Cin-ghin-gui.

*LXXII—Of the City of Cin-ghin-gui, and of a dreadful Slaughter*

When a man leaves Cin-ghian-fu, and travels three or four days south-east, he always discovers cities and castles, with much merchandise; the people are all idolaters, subject to the khan, and use paper money. Then he comes to the city of Cin-ghin-gui great and noble, the people idolaters, and subject to the khan; they have abundance of provisions, produce and manufacture a vast quantity of silk. And here I will tell you a wicked thing which the people of this city did, but it cost them dear. When Bayam, called the chief of the Hundred Eyes, conquered all the province, and took the capital itself, he sent a body of troops to reduce this place. It surrendered, and the soldiers entered and found such good wine, that they drank till they were intoxicated, and became quite insensible. When the men of the city saw them in this condition, that very night they slew them all, so that not one escaped. When Bayam the commander heard of this disloyal conduct, he sent an army who took the town, and put all the inhabitants to the sword. Now, let us go on, and I will tell you of another named Sin-gui.

*LXXIII—Of the City of Sin-gui, of Un-gui, and of Ughim*

Sin-gui is a very great and noble city. The people are idolaters, subject to the great khan, and use paper money. Most of them live by merchandise and arts, raise much silk, make cloths of it interwoven with gold very costly and fine. The town is forty miles in circuit, and the number of inhabitants is so great, that no person can count them, and if they were men-at-arms, those of the province of Manji would conquer the whole world; they are not so, however, but prudent merchants, and, as already observed, skilful in all the arts. They have also many persons learned in natural science, good physicians, and able philosophers. The city has 1,600 stone bridges under which a galley might pass; and in the mountains adjacent grow rhubarb and ginger in such abundance, that for a Venetian grosso you may buy forty pounds of the latter, fresh and good. Sin-gui has under it sixteen large cities of arts and trade. Its name signifies the earth, and another large town near it is called heaven, and these appellations they derive from their great nobleness. Now, let us depart from this place, and I will tell you of another city called Un-gui. It is a day's journey from Sin-gui, and is large and good, with merchandise and arts; but there is nothing so remarkable about it as to be worth describing; therefore we shall go on to delineate another called Ughim. It is great and rich; the men are idolaters, subject to the great khan, use paper money, and have abundance of all things. There is nothing else worth mentioning; therefore I will go on to tell you of the noble city of Kin-sai, which is the capital of the kingdom of Manji.

*LXXIV—Of the most noble and wonderful City of Kin-sai; and of its Population, Trades, Lake, Villas, and splendid Palace*

When a man leaves Ughim, and goes three days, he observes many noble and rich cities and castles, with great merchandise. The people are all idolaters, subject to the khan, use paper money, and have abundant means of subsistence. At the end of these three days, he finds a very noble city named Kin-sai, which means in our language the city of heaven. And now I will tell you all its nobleness; for without doubt it is the largest city in the world. And I will give you the account which was written by the Queen of Manji to Bayam, who conquered that kingdom, to be transmitted to his master, who thereby might be persuaded not to destroy it. And this letter contained the truth, as I Marco saw with my own eyes. It related, that the city of Kin-sai is 100 miles in circumference, and has 12,000 stone bridges; and beneath the greater part of these a large ship might pass, and beneath the others a smaller one. And you need not wonder there are so many bridges; because the city is wholly on the water, and surrounded by it like Venice. It contains twelve arts or trades, and each trade has 12,000 stations or houses; and in each station there are of masters and labourers at least ten, in some fifteen, thirty, and even forty, because this town supplies many others round it. The merchants are so numerous and so rich, that their wealth can neither be told nor believed. They, their ladies, and the heads of the trades do nothing with their own hands, but live as cleanly and delicately as if they were kings. These females also are of angelic beauty, and live in the most elegant manner. But it is established that no one can practise any other art than that which his father followed, even though he were worth 100,000 bezants. To the south of that city is a lake, full thirty miles in circuit; and all around it are beautiful palaces and houses, so wonderfully built that nothing can possibly surpass them; they belong to the great and noble men of the city. There

are also abbeys and monasteries of idolaters in great numbers. In the middle of the lake are two islands, on one of which stands a palace, so wonderfully adorned that it seems worthy of belonging to the emperor. Whoever wishes to celebrate a marriage or other festival, goes thither, where he finds dishes, plates, and all implements necessary for the occasion. The city of Kin-sai contains many beautiful houses, and one great stone tower, to which the people convey all their property when the houses take fire, as often happens, because many of them are of wood. They are idolaters, subject to the great khan, and use paper money. They eat the flesh of dogs and other beasts, such as no Christian would touch for the world. On each of the said 12,000 bridges, ten men keep guard day and night, so that no one may dare to raise a disturbance, or commit theft or homicide. I will tell you another thing, that in the middle of the city is a mound, on which stands a tower, wherein is placed a wooden table, against which a man strikes with a hammer, so that it is heard to a great distance; this he does when there is an alarm of fire, or any kind of danger or disturbance. The great khan causes that city to be most strongly guarded, because it is the capital of all the province of Manji, and he derives from it vast treasure and revenue; he is likewise afraid of any revolt. All the streets are paved with stones and bricks; and so are the high roads of Manji, on which account men may travel very pleasantly either on horse back or on foot. In this city, too, are 4,000 baths, in which the citizens, both men and women, take great delight, and frequently resort thither, because they keep their persons very cleanly. They are the largest and most beautiful baths in the world, insomuch that 100 of either sex may bathe in them at once. Twenty-five miles from thence is the ocean, between south and east; and there is a city named Gan-fu, which has a very fine port, with large ships, and much merchandise of immense value from India and other quarters. Past this city to the port flows a stately river, by which the ships can come up to it, and which runs thither from a great distance. The khan has divided the whole province of Manji into nine large kingdoms, all of which pay him annual tribute. In Gan-fu resides one of the kings, who has under him 140 cities. I will tell you a thing you will much wonder at, that in this province there are 1,200 towns, and in each a garrison amounting to 1,000, 10,000, 20,000, and in some instances to 30,000 men. But do not suppose these are all Tartar cavalry; for part are infantry and sent from Cathay. But the riches and profit which the khan derives from the province of Manji is so great that no man could dare to mention it, nor would any one believe him; and therefore I shall be silent. I will tell you, however, some of the customs of Manji. One is, that whenever a boy or girl is born, the day, hour, and minute are written down, also the sign and planet under which the birth takes place, so that all may know their nativity. And when any one wishes to undertake a journey, or do any thing else of importance, he repairs to the astrologer, states these particulars, and asks if he should go or act otherwise. And they are often thus diverted from their journeys and other designs; for these astrologers are skilful in their arts and diabolical enchantments, and tell them many things which they implicitly believe. Another custom is, that when a body is to be burned, all the relations dress themselves in canvass to express grief, and go with the corpse, beating instruments, and making songs and prayers to their idols. When they come to the place where the ceremony is to be performed, they frame images of men, women, camels, horses, clothes, money, and various other things, all of cards. When the fire is fully lighted, they throw in all these things, saying that the dead will enjoy them in the other world, and that the honour now done to him will be done there also by idols. In this city of Kin-sai is a palace of the king who fled, which is the noblest and most beautiful in the world. It is a square, ten miles in circuit, surrounded by a lofty wall, within which are gardens abounding in all the most delicate fruits, fountains, and lakes supplied with many kinds of fish. In the middle is the edifice itself, large and beautiful, with a hall so extensive that a vast number of persons can sit down at table. That hall is painted all over with gold and azure, representing many stories, in which are beasts, birds, knights, ladies, and various wonders. Nothing can be seen upon the walls and roof but these ornaments. There are twenty others of similar dimensions, such that 10,000 men can conveniently sit at table; and they are covered and worked in gold very nobly. This palace contains also 1,000 chambers. In the city are 160 toman of fires, that is, of houses; and the toman is 10,000, making 1,600,000 houses, among which are many great and rich palaces. There is only one church of Nestorian Christians. Each man of that city, as also of the others, has written on his door the name of his wife, his children, of his sons' wives, his slaves, and of all his household; and when any one is born, he adds the name, and when he dies, takes it away. Thus the governor of each city knows the names of every person in it; and this practice is followed in all the towns of Manji and Cathay. The same account is given of the strangers who reside for a time in their houses, both when they come and when they go; and by that means the great khan knows whoever arrives and departs, which is of great advantage.

#### *LXXV—Farther Particulars of that City*

There are within the city ten principal squares or market-places, besides which, numberless shops run along the streets. These squares are each half a mile in length, and have in front the main street, forty paces wide, and reaching in a straight line from one end of the city to the other. Thus they are, altogether, two miles in circuit, and four miles distant from each other. The street is crossed by many low and convenient bridges. Parallel to it, but

on the opposite side to the squares, is a very large canal, and on its bank capacious warehouses, built of stone, to accommodate the merchants from India and other countries, and receive their goods; this situation being chosen as convenient with regard to the market-squares. Each of these, on three days in every week, contains an assemblage of from 40,000 to 50,000 persons, who bring for sale every desirable article of provision. There appears abundance of all kinds of game, roebucks, stags, fallow-deer, hares, and rabbits, with partridges, pheasants, francolins, quails, common fowls, capons, ducks and geese almost innumerable; these last being so easily bred on the lake, that for a Venetian silver grosso you may buy a couple of geese and two pairs of ducks. In the same place are also the shambles, where cattle, as oxen, calves, kids, and lambs, are killed for the tables of the rich and of magistrates. These markets afford at all seasons a great variety of herbs and fruits; in particular, uncommonly large pears, weighing each ten pounds, white in the inside like paste, and very fragrant. The peaches also, both yellow and white, are in their season of delicious flavour. Grapes are not cultivated, but very good ones are brought dried from other districts. Wine is not esteemed by the natives, who are accustomed to their own liquor, prepared from rice and various spices. From the sea, twenty-five miles distant, a vast supply of fish is conveyed on the river; and the lake also contains abundance, the taking of which affords constant employment to numerous fishermen. The species vary according to the season, and the offal carried thither from the city renders them large and rich. In short, the quantity in the market is so immense, that you would think it impossible it could find purchasers; yet in a few hours it is all disposed of, so many inhabitants are there who can afford to indulge in such luxuries. They eat fish and flesh at one meal. Each of the ten squares is surrounded with lofty dwelling-houses; the lower part being made into shops, where manufactures of every kind are carried on, and imported articles are sold, as spices, drugs, toys, and pearls. In some shops is kept only the country wine, which is constantly made fresh, and served out at a moderate price. In the several streets connected with the squares are numerous baths, attended by servants of both sexes, to perform the functions of ablution for the male and female visitors, who from their childhood are accustomed to bathe in cold water, as being highly conducive to health. Here, too, are apartments provided with warm water for the use of strangers, who, from want of use, cannot endure the shock of the cold. All are in the daily habit of washing their persons, especially before meals.

In other streets reside the females of bad character, who are extremely numerous; and not only in the streets near the squares, which are specially appropriated to them, but in every other quarter they appear, highly dressed out and perfumed, in well furnished houses, and with a train of domestics. They are perfectly skilled in all the arts of seduction, which they can adapt to persons of every description; so that strangers who have once yielded to their fascination are said to be like men bewitched, and can never get rid of the impression. Intoxicated with these unlawful pleasures, even after returning home, they always long to revisit the place where they were thus seduced. In other streets reside the physicians and the astrologers, who also teach reading and writing, with many other arts. On opposite sides of the squares are two large edifices, where officers appointed by his majesty promptly decide any differences that arise between the foreign merchants and the inhabitants. They are bound also to take care that the guards be duly stationed on the neighbouring bridges, and in case of neglect, to inflict a discretionary punishment on the delinquent.

On each side of the principal street, mentioned as reaching across the whole city, are large houses and mansions with gardens; near to which are the abodes and shops of the working artisans. At all hours you observe such multitudes of people passing backwards and forwards on their various avocations, that it might seem impossible to supply them with food. A different judgment will, however, be formed, when every market-day the squares are seen crowded with people, and covered with provisions brought in for sale by carts and boats. To give some idea of the quantity of meat, wine, spices, and other articles brought for the consumption of the people of Kin-sai, I shall instance the single article of pepper. Marco Polo was informed by an officer employed in the customs, that the daily amount was forty-three loads, each weighing 243 pounds.

The houses of the citizens are well built, and richly adorned with carving, in which, as well as in painting and ornamental buildings, they take great delight, and lavish enormous sums. Their natural disposition is pacific, and the example of their former unwarlike kings has accustomed them to live in tranquillity. They keep no arms in their houses, and are unacquainted with their use. Their mercantile transactions are conducted in a manner perfectly upright and honourable. They also behave in a friendly manner to each other, so that the inhabitants of the same neighbourhood appear like one family. In their domestic relations, they show no jealousy or suspicion of their wives, but treat them with great respect. Any one would be held as infamous that should address indecent expressions to married women. They behave with cordiality to strangers who visit the city for commercial purposes, hospitably entertain them, and afford their best assistance in their business. On the other hand, they hate the very sight of soldiers, even the guards of the great khan; recollecting, that by their means they have been deprived of the government of their native sovereigns.

On the lake above mentioned are a number of pleasure-barges, capable of holding from ten to twenty persons, being from fifteen to twenty paces long, with a broad level floor, and moving steadily through the water. Those who

delight in this amusement, and propose to enjoy it, either with their ladies or companions, engage one of these barges, which they find always in the very best order, with seats, tables, and every thing necessary for an entertainment. The boatmen sit on a flat upper deck, and with long poles reaching to the bottom of the lake, not more than two fathoms deep, push along the vessels to any desired spot. These cabins are painted in various colours, and with many figures; the exterior is similarly adorned. On each side are windows, which can at pleasure be kept open or shut, when the company seated at table may delight their eyes with the varied beauty of the passing scenes. Indeed, the gratification derived from these water-excursions exceeds any that can be enjoyed on land; for as the lake extends all along the city, you discover, while standing in the boat, at a certain distance from the shore, all its grandeur and beauty, palaces, temples, convents, and gardens, while lofty trees reach down to the water's edge. At the same time are seen other boats continually passing, similarly filled with parties of pleasure. Generally, indeed, the inhabitants, when they have finished the labours of the day, or closed their mercantile transactions, think only of seeking amusement with their wives or mistresses, either in these barges or driving about the city in carriages. The main street already mentioned is paved with stone and brick to the width of ten paces on each side, the interval being filled up with small gravel, and having arched drains to carry off the water into the canals, so that it is always kept dry. On this road the carriages are constantly driving. They are long, covered at top, have curtains and cushions of silk, and can hold six persons. Citizens of both sexes, desirous of this amusement, hire them for that purpose, and you see them at every hour moving about in vast numbers. In many cases the people visit gardens, where they are introduced by the managers of the place into shady arbours, and remain till the time of returning home.

The palace already mentioned had a wall with a passage dividing the exterior court from an inner one, which formed a kind of cloister, supporting a portico that surrounded it, and led to various royal apartments. Hence you entered a covered passage or corridor, six paces wide, and so long as to reach to the margin of the lake. On each side were corresponding entrances to ten courts, also resembling cloisters with porticos, and each having fifty private rooms, with gardens attached,—the residence of a thousand young females, whom the king maintained in his service. In the company either of his queen or of a party of those ladies he used to seek amusement on the lake, visiting the idol-temples on its banks. The other two portions of this seraglio were laid out in groves, pieces of water, beautiful orchards, and enclosures for animals suited for the chase, as antelopes, deer, stags, hares, and rabbits. Here, too, the king amused himself,—his damsels accompanying him in carriages or on horseback. No man was allowed to be of the party, but the females were skilled in the art of coursing and pursuing the animals. When fatigued they retired into the groves on the margin of the lake, and, quitting their dresses, rushed into the water, when they swam sportively in different directions,—the king remaining a spectator of the exhibition. Sometimes he had his repast provided beneath the dense foliage of one of these groves, and was there waited upon by the damsels. Thus he spent his time in this enervating society, profoundly ignorant of martial affairs; hence the grand khan, as already mentioned, was enabled to deprive him of his splendid possessions, and drive him with ignominy from his throne. All these particulars were related to me by a rich merchant of Kin-sai, who was then very old; and, having been a confidential servant of King Facfur, was acquainted with every circumstance of his life. He knew the palace in its former splendour, and desired me to come and take a view of it. Being then the residence of the khan's viceroy, the colonnades were preserved entire, but the chambers had been allowed to go to ruin,—only their foundations remaining visible. The walls, too, including the parks and gardens, had been left to decay, and no longer contained any trees or animals.

### *LXXVI—Revenues of the Great Khan from Kin-sai and Manji*

I will now tell you of the large revenue which the khan draws from this city, and the territory under its jurisdiction, which is the ninth part of the province of Manji. The salt of that country yields to him in the year eighty tomans of gold, and each toman is 70,000 saiks, which amount to 5,600,000, and each saik is worth more than a gold florin; and is not this most great and wonderful! In that country, too, there grows more sugar than in the whole world besides, and it yields a very large revenue. I will not state it particularly, but remark that, taking all spices together, they pay 3 1/3 per cent, which is levied too on all other merchandise. Large taxes are also derived from wine, rice, coal, and from the twelve arts, which, as already mentioned, have each twelve thousand stations. On every thing a duty is imposed; and on silk especially and other articles is paid ten per cent. But I, Marco Polo, tell you, because I have often heard the account of it, that the revenue on all these commodities amounts every year to 210 tomans, or 14,700,000 saiks, and that is the most enormous amount of money that ever was heard of, and yet is paid by only the ninth part of the province of Manji. Now let us depart from this city of Kin-sai, and go to another called Tam-pin-gui.

*LXXVII—Tam-pin-gui and other Cities*

When a man departs from Kin-sai, and goes a day to the south-east, he finds always most pleasant houses and gardens, and all the means of living in great abundance. At the end of the day he discovers the city already named, which is very large and beautiful, and is dependent on Kin-sai. The people are subject to the khan, use paper money, are idolaters, and burn the bodies of their dead in the manner already described. They live by merchandise and arts, and have an ample supply of provisions. And when a man goes three days to the south-east, seeing very large cities and castles, and much trade, he comes to the city of Un-gui, under the government of Kin-sai, and otherwise like the former. When he departs from Un-gui and goes two days south-east, he every where perceives towns and castles, so that he seems to be going through a city. Every thing is in abundance; and here are the largest and longest canes in all the country, for know that some are four palms in circuit and fifteen paces long. At the end of the two days he comes to Chen-gui, which is large and beautiful. The people, who are idolaters, are under the great khan and the jurisdiction of Kin-sai, and have abundance of silk and provisions. In going four days south-east he finds cities and castles, and all things in the utmost plenty. There are birds and beasts for the chase, with lions very large and fierce. Throughout all the province of Manji there are neither sheep nor lambs, but oxen, goats, and hogs in great variety. At the end of the four days he finds Cian-cian, a town situated on a mountain, which divides the river into two parts, each flowing in a different direction. The people are like the former; and, at the end of three days more we reach the city of Can-giu, large and beautiful; and this is the last under the jurisdiction of Kin-sai; for now commences another kingdom, which is one of the nine parts of Manji, and is called Fu-gui.

*LXXVIII—The Kingdom of Fu-gui*

When a man goes from the last-mentioned city of Kin-sai he enters the kingdom of Fu-gui and, after travelling seven days, he finds houses and villages, the inhabitants of which are all idolaters, and under the jurisdiction of Fu-gui. They have provisions in great abundance, with numerous wild beasts for hunting; also large and fierce lions. They have ample supplies of ginger and galanga, so that for a Venetian grosso you can buy eighty pounds. And there is a fruit or flower having the appearance of saffron, and though not really so, yet of equal value, being much employed in manufacture. They eat the flesh of the filthiest animals, and even that of a man, provided he has not died a natural death; but if he has been killed, they account his flesh extremely delicate. When they go to war they cut their hair very close, and paint their faces an azure colour like the iron of a lance. They fight all on foot except their chief; and are the most cruel race in the world, because they go about the whole day killing men, drinking their blood, and eating their flesh.

*LXXIX—Of the Cities of Que-lin-fu and Un-quem*

In the middle of these seven days you come to a city called Que-lin-fu, which is very large and beautiful, subject to the great khan. It has three bridges, the largest and most magnificent in the world; for each is a mile long and ten paces broad, and all supported by columns of marble. The people live by merchandise and arts, and have abundance of silk and ginger. The ladies here are very beautiful. They have another strange thing, hens that have no feathers, but skins like a cat. They lay eggs like those of our hens, and are very good eating. And in the remainder of the seven days' journey we discover many cities and castles, merchants and merchandise, and men of art. There are lions, great and fierce, doing much injury to the passengers, who on this account cannot travel without imminent danger. At the end of the journey is found a city called Un-quem, where there is made such a quantity of sugar, that the whole court of the khan is thence supplied, which is worth a vast treasure. Beyond it is the large city of Fu-gui, capital of this kingdom.

*LXXX—Of the City of Fu-gui*

Fu-gui, as just stated, is the capital of the kingdom of Con-cha, which is one of the nine parts of Manji. In that city is much merchandise and art; the people are idolatrous, and subject to the great khan. He keeps there a strong army, because the towns and castles often revolt, and whenever they do so the troops hasten thither, take, and destroy them. Through the middle of that city flows a river a mile broad; here much sugar is made, and an extensive trade is carried on in precious stones and pearls, which are brought by merchants from India and its isles. It is also near the port of Zai-tun on the ocean, whither come many ships from Hindostan with much merchandise; and they ascend by the great river to Fu-gui. The people have abundance of all things necessary for subsistence; fine gardens, with good fruit; and the city is wonderfully well ordered in all respects. But we will now go on to other matters.

*LXXXI—Of the most noble Port of Zai-tun, and of Ti-min-gui*

When one departs from Fu-gui, passes the river, and goes five days south-east, he finds cities and castles, where

there is abundance of all things, woods, birds, and beasts, with the tree which bears camphor. The people are all idolaters, under the great khan and the jurisdiction of Fu-gui. At the end of the five days he finds a city called Zai-tun, which is a noble port, where all the ships of India arrive, and for one laden with pepper which comes from Alexandria to be sold throughout Christendom, there go to that city a hundred. It is one of the two best ports in the world, and the most frequented by merchants and merchandise. Know, too, that the khan draws thence a large revenue, because all the ships from India pay upon their several kinds of goods, stones, and pearls, ten per cent, that is one in ten. The ships take for their height, on small merchandise, thirty per cent.; on pepper, forty-four; on lignum, aloes, sandalwood, and other bulky articles, forty; so that merchants, between the height and the duty, pay a full half of all commodities brought into that port. Those of this country are all idolaters, and have great abundance of every thing necessary for the human body. In that province is a city, named Ti-min-gui, where they make the most beautiful cups in the world; they are of porcelain, and are manufactured in no other part of the earth besides that city; for a Venetian grosso you may purchase three cups of this most elegant ware. The people of Fu-gui have a language of their own. Now, I have told you of this kingdom, which is one of the nine, and the great khan draws from it as much duty and revenue as from that of Kin-sai. We have not told you of the nine kingdoms of Manji, but only of three, Manji, Kin-sai, and Fu-gui, and of these you have heard fully; but the others I cannot now describe, because it would be too tedious, and our book has not yet treated of other things which I wish to write about; for I have to tell you of the Indians, who are well worthy of being known. Their country contains many wonderful things found in none of the other parts of the world, which it will be good and profitable to write. And, I assure you, Marco remained so long in India, and saw so much of its produce, customs, and merchandise, that no man could better tell the truth. Therefore I will put them in writing, precisely as Messer Marco truly said them to me.



# 6

## Middle East

---

The selections in this chapter are from both Persian and Arabic sources. The center of the Persian Empire was located in what is modern-day Iran, and there was a long history of classical Persian literature before the Islamic invasion in the mid-seventeenth century C.E. After the violent overthrow of the Sassanid Empire by nomadic Arab tribes, the library in Ctesiphon (the capital city) was burned, as were libraries in other major cities. Although many pre-invasion Persian works were lost, some stories are recorded in later works. Abolqasem Ferdowsi, in his *Shahnameh*, writes the history of Persia from the creation of the world to the Islamic invasion; while Ferdowsi was Muslim, he writes in Persian, and his epic preserves the stories of Persia's Zoroastrian heroes (Zoroastrianism was the state religion of Persia before the invasion).

Medieval Persian authors often wrote in both Persian and Arabic, and the most prestigious literary form was poetry. In many cases, prose writing was combined with poetry, with lines of poetry appearing at regular intervals in the prose. The emphasis was on works that were educational or enlightening, rather than simply entertaining, so works such as the *Rose Garden* of Sa'di combined wise sayings and stories with humor and wit, demonstrating Sa'di's talents in both prose and poetry.

Sa'di often admires Sufi dervishes (similar to Christian mendicant friars in their poverty and austerity) in his works; an offshoot of Islam, Sufism combines Islamic, Christian, and Buddhist beliefs. The focus is on connecting with God; since humans are unable to understand God fully with their rational minds, Sufis attempt an emotional connection. Sa'di admired their willingness to confront rulers fearlessly about their (less-than) moral behavior, since death would only reunite them with God. Jalal al-Din Rumi, one of the finest poets in Persian literature, was also a founder of a Sufi order of dervishes (sometimes called "whirling dervishes" because of the spinning that they do to achieve a trance-like state of meditation). Although seemingly conventional on the surface, his love poetry ultimately is about longing for a spiritual union with God.

The *Qur'an* is the most important work in Arabic. Believed by Muslims to be the word of God as dictated to Mohammed through the angel Jibreel (Gabriel), its influence on Arabic literature and culture is immeasurable. Only the *Qur'an* in Arabic is considered to be the true *Qur'an*; any translation alters the actual words of the text, so followers are expected to read the text in the original language. Therefore, the text presented in this anthology is not the true document, but an approximation in English.

The other major work in Arabic in this chapter is secular: *The Thousand and One Nights* (also known as *The Arabian Nights*). Technically, this sort of storytelling would not have been considered "high" literature at the time, since it was not poetry, religious, or a collection of wise sayings. Its impact on literature, however, has been considerable, both in the Middle East and Europe. The stories are drawn from Arabic, Persian, and Indian folktales (among others). Thanks to early translations, many of the individual stories are well known around the world.

### AS YOU READ, CONSIDER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

- What kind of relationship do the heroes have to their societies, their leaders (rulers), their families, and their religion?
- How is the frame tale found in *The Thousand and One Nights* similar to the frame tales in Chaucer and Boccaccio?
- What is similar and different about the poetry of Rumi and Dante?
- How is the *Shahnameh* similar to and different from the epics from the Ancient World (such as *The Iliad*, *The Mahabharata*, and *The Aeneid*)?
- How has the role of religion changed in the stories, now that there are no pantheons of gods?

Written by Laura J. Getty

## THE ROSE GARDEN (GOLESTAN OR GULISTAN)

Sa'di (ca. 1213-1291 C.E.)

Published 1258 C.E.

Iran

Musharrif al-Dīn ibn Muṣlih al-Dīn, known as Sa'di or Saadi, wrote both poetry and prose in Persian. *The Rose Garden* is a combination of the two genres: mostly prose, with poems and lines of poetry scattered throughout. The stories and anecdotes in *The Rose Garden* offer examples of wisdom drawn from history and literature. Sa'di clearly admired Sufis, and he devotes a section of the work to "The Wisdom of Dervishes"; in it, the Sufi dervishes challenge rulers to behave morally, unafraid of earthly consequences. There are examples of rulers who are driven from power because of their cruelty, greed, or even stupidity. In other anecdotes, people are advised to avoid conflict when possible: suggesting, in one famous example, that a kind lie sometimes might be better than a harmful truth. *The Rose Garden* influenced authors such as Johannes Wolfgang Goethe, Victor Hugo, and Ralph Waldo Emerson, and it is still popular today.

*Written by Laura J. Getty*

### THE ROSE GARDEN OF SA'DI

License: Public Domain

Sa'dī, Translated by L. Cranmer-Byng and S. A. Kapadia

#### Chapter I

*The Manners of Kings*

*Faithlessness of the World*

*This was written over the portico of the Palace of King Feridun.*

The world, O brother! may with none abide.  
Look to thy God, let Him suffice alone!  
This world that cherished thee will cast aside:  
A little while and all thy wealth is flown.  
What matter when depart thou must,  
If death should find thee in the dust,  
Or call thee from thy throne!

#### *A Vision of Sultan Mahmud*

One of the Kings of Khorasan in a dream beheld the vision of Sultan Mahmud, an hundred years after he had died. His whole body seemed to have crumbled and turned to dust, save only his eyes, which were moving in their sockets and looking about them. All the learned ones failed to interpret this, except a Dervish, who made obeisance and said: "He is still looking to see how it came to pass that his kingdom belongs to others."

#### *Verses*

Many are they, once famed, beneath the ground,  
That left no record of their little worth,  
And the old corse surrendered, earth to earth,  
Was so consumed that not a bone is found.  
The glories of King Nusherwan remain,  
And time remembers his munificence.

Be generous, O friend! ere passing hence,  
They shall proclaim thee with the moons that  
wane.

### *On the Deception of Appearances*

The man that never will declare his thought  
Conceals a soul of honour or of sin.  
Dost think yon silent jungle holdeth naught?  
Perchance a lurking tiger sleeps therein.

### *Friendship*

He is no friend who in thine hour of pride  
Brags of his love and calls himself thy kin.  
He is a friend who hales his fellow in,  
And clangs the door upon the wolf outside.

### *Retirement and Peace*

A vezier, having been deprived of his post, joined the brotherhood of Dervishes. The blessing of their society was such upon him that he acquired content once more. The Sultan became well disposed towards him, and bade him resume his office; but he refused, saying: "It is better to be retired than busy."

### *Verses*

Those that have sought the hermit's cell where  
quiet seasons rule  
Have drawn the venom of the dog, the malice of  
the fool;  
They tore their controversies up, the pen away  
they flung,  
And so escaped the critic's lash, and foiled the  
slanderer's tongue.

The king said: "Verily we are in need of one sufficiently intelligent who is able to carry on the affairs of the government." He answered: "It is a sign of sufficient intelligence not to meddle with such matters."

### *Toil and Servitude*

There were two brothers in Egypt, one of them in the service of the Sultan, the other living by his own industry. The rich man once asked his poor brother why he did not serve the Sultan, in order to be released from the hardships of toil? He answered: "Why dost thou not labour, in order to be free from the baseness of service, since wise men have said it is better to eat barley-bread and sit at ease than to be girt with a golden girdle and stand in service?"

### *On Rejoicing Over a Fallen Foe*

A certain person told Nusherwan the Just that God Most High had taken from this world an enemy of his. He asked: "Hast thou heard by any means that He intendeth to spare me?"

Exult not o'er the dying foe! One day  
Thou too must quit thy tenement of clay.



**IMAGE 6.1: SAADI IN A ROSE GARDEN |** Saadi (also Sa'di) stands in a garden with another man, surrounded by flowers with a mountain in the background.

**Author:** Govardhan

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

Chapter II*The Morals of Dervishes**Fault-Finding and Self-Conceit*

I remember being pious in my youth, given to night vigils, prayers, and abstinence. One night I was sitting with my father, on whom God have mercy, keeping awake and holding the precious Koran in my lap, whilst the company around us slept. I said: "Of these people not one lifts up the head or bows the knee (in prayer). They are all sound asleep, as though they were dead." He answered: "Little one of thy father, would that thou wert also asleep, rather than proclaiming the faults of others."

*Verses*

The braggart sees himself alone,  
Since he is veiled in self-conceit;  
Were God's all-seeing eye his own,  
He would no weaker braggart meet.

*Forbearance*

A band of vagabonds meeting a Dervish spoke evilly to him, beat him and ill-used him, where- upon he brought his complaint to his superior. The Director replied: "My son! the patched gown of the Dervishes is the garb of resignation, and he who, wearing it, cannot bear with injury, is but a pretender to whom our garb is forbidden."

*Distich*

Thou canst not stir the river's bed with stones:  
Wisdom aggrieved is but'a shallow brook.

*Verses*

If any injure thee, thy spleen control,  
Since by forgiveness thou shalt cleanse thy soul.  
O brother, since the end of all is dust,  
Be dust, ere unto dust return thou must.

*Humility*

Hark to my tale, how once a quarrel rose  
Betwixt a flag and curtain in Bagdad,—  
How, drooping from the march, the dusty flag  
Reproached the curtain: "Art not thou and I  
Both servants in the Sultan's court? I know  
No respite from his service. From the light  
Of cock-crow to the gloom of nightingales  
I travel, travel: thou hast neither siege  
Nor battle to endure, nor whirling sand,  
Nor wind, nor heat to suffer; while my step  
Is ever on the march. Why art thou held  
More honoured? Thou art cherished by slim boys  
Of moon-pale beauty, jasmine-scented maids  
Touch thee caressingly; while I am rolled  
By raw recruits, and oftentimes on the trail  
Carried head downwards."

Then the curtain spake:  
"My head is humbly on the threshold laid,  
Unlike thine own, that flaunting would defy  
The golden-armoured sun. Whoever rears  
The neck of exaltation shall descend  
Most speedily neck level with the dust."

### *The Dervish Way*

The way of dervishes is gratefulness, praise,  
worship, obedience, contentment, and charity,  
believing in the unity of God, faith, submission,  
and patience. Whoever hath these qualities is  
indeed a Dervish, though he may wear fine  
raiment; whereas the idler, who neglecteth  
prayer, who goeth after ease and pleasure, turneth  
day into night in the bondage of desire, and night  
into day in the slumber of forgetfulness, eateth  
whatever he layeth hold on, and speaketh that  
which is uppermost, he is an evil-doer, though  
he may wear the garb of the Dervishes.

### *Verses*

Thou who within of good resolve art bare,  
Yet dost the mantle of the righteous wear;  
Thou who hast but a reed-mat to thy floor,  
Hang not the rainbow-curtain on the door.

## Chapter III

### *The Preciousness of Contentment*

#### *Wisdom and Worldly Power*

Two sons of princes lived in Egypt, the one given to the study of science, the other heaping up riches, till the former became the wise man of the age, and the latter the King of Egypt. Then the rich man looked with the eye of scorn upon the philosopher, and said: "I have reached the sovereign power whilst thou remainest poor as before." He replied: "O brother! I must needs be grateful to the Most High Creator, that I have found the inheritance of the prophets, while thou hast obtained the inheritance of Pharaoh and Haman —the Kingdom of Egypt."

#### *Mesnevi*

I am that ant which under foot is trod.  
No wasp am I, for man to curse my sting.  
How can I rightly thank Almighty God  
That I am harmless both to clown and king?

#### *Frugality*

It is written in the annals of Ardeshir Babekan that he asked an Arabian physician how much food ought to be taken daily. He answered: "The weight of one hundred dirrhems were enough." The king asked him: "What strength will this quantity give me?" He replied: "This quantity will carry thee; but whatever more is taken, thou wilt be the carrier of it."

Eat to live, thy prayers repeating;  
Think not life was made for eating.

#### *Self-Dependence*

They asked of Hâtim Tai if he had seen any one in the world of nobler sentiments than himself. He replied: "Yes, one day I slew forty camels to give a banquet to Arab chieftains. I went forth upon some affair to a corner of the desert, where I saw a gatherer of sticks, who had piled up a heap of brushwood. I asked him why he had not become a guest of Hâtim, seeing that many people had gathered around his carpet. But he replied:

'He that hath bread procured by honest sweat,  
To Hâtim will not bear to be in debt.'

Then I perceived that his sentiments were nobler than mine own."

### *Pearls and Starvation*

I saw an Arab sitting amid a circle of jewelers at Bosrah, and telling them tales. He said: "Once I lost my way in the desert, and had consumed all my provisions. I was prepared to die, when suddenly I beheld a bag of pearls. Never shall I forget the joy I felt, deeming them to be parched grain, nor the bitterness and despair with which I found them to be pearls."

#### *Verses*

In deserts, amid shifting sand and drouth,  
Nor pearl nor shell is manna to the mouth.  
Ah! what avails, when food and strength are  
    gone,  
The girdle with its pearls or pebbles strown?

### Chapter IV

#### *The Blessing of Silence*

#### *On the Choice of Words*

Subhân Vail is held to have had no peer in oratory, since he had spoken before an assembly for a whole year without using the same phrase twice; but if the same meaning happened to occur, he expressed it in another way: and this is one of the accomplishments of courtiers and princes.

#### *Mesnevi*

A word, if binding on the heart and sweet,  
Is worthy of belief and approbation.  
What thou hast said ne'er let thy tongue repeat:  
We do not twice partake the same collation.

#### *On Interruptions*

I once heard a philosopher say that no one has ever confessed his own ignorance, save him who begins to talk whilst another has not yet finished.

#### *Mesnevi*

Words have a head, O shrewd man, and a tail;  
Into no other's discourse fit thine own.  
The man of sound discretion will not fail  
To bide his time and hold the floor alone.

#### *On Hearing Ourselves*

A certain preacher was wont to think that his harsh voice gave pleasure, and often he shouted aloud and needlessly. Thou mightest have said that *the raven of separation* was the burden of his song; and the verse, *for the most detestable of voices is surely the voice of asses*, appears to have fitted him. This distich is also concerning him:

When Abu-l-Fares brays of Heaven's bliss,  
He rocks the ruins of Persepolis.

By reason of his rank the people of the place endured this defect, and did not think fit to distress him. Afterwards, however, another preacher of those parts arrived, who bore a secret grudge against him, and said: "I have dreamed about thee, and may it prove fortunate!" "What hast thou dreamed?" "I dreamed that thy voice had become melodious, and that the people had ease during thy sermons." For a little while the preacher pondered on these words; then made answer: "Truly thou hast dreamed a blessed dream, since thou hast made me aware of my weakness. Now I know that my voice is harsh, and that the people are distressed with my loud reading; accordingly I have vowed that henceforth I will not preach save with the tones of moderation."

## Chapter VII

### *The Effects of Education*

#### *Knowledge is Wealth*

A philosopher was teaching boys, and said to them: "O darlings of your fathers, learn a trade, since no reliance may be placed upon the possessions and riches of the world: for silver and gold are a source of peril, since either a thief may steal them at once or the owner waste them by degrees; but a profession is a living spring and wealth enduring. Although a professional man may lose his fortune, he need not grieve, for his knowledge is wealth of itself, and wherever he go he will be honoured, and sit in the upper seat: but he who has no calling will glean the crumbs and suffer want."

#### *Distich*

He finds not easy to obey whose word was man's behest,  
Nor will he bear with insolence whom all men have caressed.

#### *Verses*

Once confusion filled Damascus,  
Each one left his quiet corner;  
Learned sons of lusty peasants  
Were the veziers of the Caliphs:  
While the silly sons of veziers  
Begged their bread through every village.

#### *Verses*

Dost want thy sire's inheritance?  
Acquire his business ways,  
Since all the gold that feeds thy glance  
May melt within ten days.

#### *The Lilies of Immortality*

A certain illustrious man had a worthy son who died. When they asked him what he desired should be written upon the urn of the tomb, he answered: "The verses of the Holy Book are deserving of more reverence than to be written in such a place, where they might be effaced by time, or trodden upon by men, or defiled by dogs. If it is needful to write anything, let this suffice:

How gladly when the lilies bloomed,  
My heart the loaded ways did roam!  
Pass with the spring, O friend, and, lo!  
The lilies breaking through my loam."

## THE QURAN

Compiled ca. 632-651 B.C.E.

Mecca, Arabia (what is now Saudi Arabia)

The *Quran* (a.k.a. *Qur'an* or *Koran*), meaning "the recitation," is the sacred scripture of Islam, or the word of God, and is meant to be musically read aloud. Islam, rooted in the Arabic word "salema" (meaning "peace"), means "obedience" and "submission." Muslims believe that the *Quran* was revealed through the angel Gabriel to the prophet Muhammad in the seventh century. Existing only as an oral recitation during Muhammad's time, the *Quran* was compiled in written form under the first several caliphs. The holy book is written in Arabic, Islam's sacred language, and has 114 suras, or chapters. Translations of the *Quran*, although they are helpful for understanding the original, are not regarded as the same as the holy book in Arabic. As part of Abrahamic religions, the *Quran* shows connections to Jewish and Christian biblical characters and stories.



IMAGE 6.2: THE QURAN | A copy of the Quran from the Chester Beatty Library.

Author: User "Jonsafari"

Source: Wikimedia Commons

License: Public Domain

## SELECTIONS FROM THE QURAN WITH SURAH INTRODUCTIONS

### SAHEEH INTERNATIONAL TRANSLATION

License: Public Domain

Edited by A. B. al-Mehri

#### Sūrah 1: al-Fātiḥah

1. In the name of God, the Entirely Merciful, the Especially Merciful.
2. [All] praise is [due] to God, Lord of the worlds—
3. The Entirely Merciful, the Especially Merciful,
4. Sovereign of the Day of Recompense.
5. It is You we worship and You we ask for help.
6. Guide us to the straight path—
7. The path of those upon whom You have bestowed favor, not of those who have evoked [Your] anger or of those who are astray.

Sūrah 5: al-Mā'idah

*In the Name of God, the Most Compassionate, the Most Merciful*

1. O you who have believed, fulfill [all] contracts. Lawful for you are the animals of grazing livestock except for that which is recited to you [in this Qur'ān]—hunting not being permitted while you are in the state of ihrām. Indeed, God ordains what He intends.
2. O you who have believed, do not violate the rites of God or [the sanctity of] the sacred month or [neglect the marking of] the sacrificial animals and garlanding [them] or [violate the safety of] those coming to the Sacred House seeking bounty from their Lord and [His] approval. But when you come out of ihrām, then [you may] hunt. And do not let the hatred of a people for having obstructed you from al-Masjid al-Harām lead you to transgress. And cooperate in righteousness and piety, but do not cooperate in sin and aggression. And fear God; indeed, God is severe in penalty.
3. Prohibited to you are dead animals, blood, the flesh of swine, and that which has been dedicated to other than God, and [those animals] killed by strangling or by a violent blow or by a head-long fall or by the goring of horns, and those from which a wild animal has eaten, except what you [are able to] slaughter [before its death], and those which are sacrificed on stone altars, and [prohibited is] that you seek decision through divining arrows. That is grave disobedience. This day those who disbelieve have despaired of [defeating] your religion; so fear them not, but fear Me. This day I have perfected for you your religion and completed My favor upon you and have approved for you Islām as religion. But whoever is forced by severe hunger with no inclination to sin—then indeed, God is Forgiving and Merciful.
4. They ask you, [O Muhammad], what has been made lawful for them. Say, "Lawful for you are [all] good foods and [game caught by] what you have trained of hunting animals which you train as God has taught you. So eat of what they catch for you, and mention the name of God upon it, and fear God." Indeed, God is swift in account.
5. This day [all] good foods have been made lawful, and the food of those who were given the Scripture is lawful for you and your food is lawful for them. And [lawful in marriage are] chaste women from among the believers and chaste women from among those who were given the Scripture before you, when you have given them their due compensation, desiring chastity, not unlawful sexual intercourse or taking [secret] lovers. And whoever denies the faith—his work has become worthless, and he, in the Hereafter, will be among the losers.
6. O you who have believed, when you rise to [perform] prayer, wash your faces and your forearms to the elbows and wipe over your heads and wash your feet to the ankles. And if you are in a state of janābah, then purify yourselves. But if you are ill or on a journey or one of you comes from the place of relieving himself or you have contacted women and do not find water, then seek clean earth and wipe over your faces and hands with it. God does not intend to make difficulty for you, but He intends to purify you and complete His favor upon you that you may be grateful.
7. And remember the favor of God upon you and His covenant with which He bound you when you said, "We hear and we obey"; and fear God. Indeed, God is Knowing of that within the breasts.
8. O you who have believed, be persistently standing firm for God, witnesses in justice, and do not let the hatred of a people prevent you from being just. Be just; that is nearer to righteousness. And fear God; indeed, God is Acquainted with what you do.
9. God has promised those who believe and do righteous deeds [that] for them there is forgiveness and great reward.
10. But those who disbelieve and deny Our signs—those are the companions of Hellfire.
11. O you who have believed, remember the favor of God upon you when a people determined to extend their hands [in aggression] against you, but He withheld their hands from you; and fear God. And upon God let the believers rely.
12. And God had already taken a covenant from the Children of Israel, and We delegated from among them twelve leaders. And God said, "I am with you. If you establish prayer and give zakāh and believe in My messengers and support them and loan God a goodly loan, I will surely remove from you your misdeeds and admit you to gardens beneath which rivers flow. But whoever of you disbelieves after that has certainly strayed from the soundness of the way."

13. So for their breaking of the covenant We cursed them and made their hearts hard. They distort words from their [proper] places [i.e., usages] and have forgotten a portion of that of which they were reminded. And you will still observe deceit among them, except a few of them. But pardon them and overlook [their misdeeds]. Indeed, God loves the doers of good.
14. And from those who say, "We are Christians" We took their covenant; but they forgot a portion of that of which they were reminded. So We caused among them animosity and hatred until the Day of Resurrection. And God is going to inform them about what they used to do.
15. O People of the Scripture, there has come to you Our Messenger making clear to you much of what you used to conceal of the Scripture and overlooking much. There has come to you from God a light and a clear Book [i.e., the Qur'ān]
16. By which God guides those who pursue His pleasure to the ways of peace and brings them out from darknesses into the light, by His permission, and guides them to a straight path.
17. They have certainly disbelieved who say that God is Christ, the son of Mary. Say, "Then who could prevent God at all if He had intended to destroy Christ, the son of Mary, or his mother or everyone on the earth?" And to God belongs the dominion of the heavens and the earth and whatever is between them. He creates what He wills, and God is over all things competent.
18. But the Jews and the Christians say, "We are the children of God and His beloved." Say, "Then why does He punish you for your sins?" Rather, you are human beings from among those He has created. He forgives whom He wills, and He punishes whom He wills. And to God belongs the dominion of the heavens and the earth and whatever is between them, and to Him is the [final] destination.
19. O People of the Scripture, there has come to you Our Messenger to make clear to you [the religion] after a period [of suspension] of messengers, lest you say, "There came not to us any bringer of good tidings or a warner." But there has come to you a bringer of good tidings and a warner. And God is over all things competent.
20. And [mention, O Muhammad], when Moses said to his people, "O my people, remember the favor of God upon you when He appointed among you prophets and made you possessors and gave you that which He had not given anyone among the worlds.
21. O my people, enter the Holy Land [i.e., Palestine] which God has assigned to you and do not turn back [from fighting in God's cause] and [thus] become losers."
22. They said, "O Moses, indeed within it is a people of tyrannical strength, and indeed, we will never enter it until they leave it; but if they leave it, then we will enter."
23. Said two men from those who feared [to disobey] upon whom God had bestowed favor, "Enter upon them through the gate, for when you have entered it, you will be predominant. And upon God rely, if you should be believers."
24. They said, "O Moses, indeed we will not enter it, ever, as long as they are within it; so go, you and your Lord, and fight. Indeed, we are remaining right here."
25. [Moses] said, "My Lord, indeed I do not possess [i.e., control] except myself and my brother, so part us from the defiantly disobedient people."
26. [God] said, "Then indeed, it is forbidden to them for forty years [in which] they will wander throughout the land. So do not grieve over the defiantly disobedient people."
27. And recite to them the story of Adam's two sons, in truth, when they both offered a sacrifice [to God], and it was accepted from one of them but was not accepted from the other. Said [the latter], "I will surely kill you." Said [the former], "Indeed, God only accepts from the righteous [who fear Him]."
28. If you should raise your hand against me to kill me—I shall not raise my hand against you to kill you. Indeed, I fear God, Lord of the worlds.
29. Indeed, I want you to obtain [thereby] my sin and your sin so you will be among the companions of the Fire. And that is the recompense of wrongdoers."
30. And his soul permitted to him the murder of his brother, so he killed him and became among the losers.
31. Then God sent a crow searching [i.e., scratching] in the ground to show him how to hide the disgrace of his brother. He said, "O woe to me! Have I failed to be like this crow and hide the disgrace [i.e., body] of my brother?" And he became of the regretful.

32. Because of that, We decreed upon the Children of Israel that whoever kills a soul unless for a soul or for corruption [done] in the land—it is as if he had slain mankind entirely. And whoever saves one—it is as if he had saved mankind entirely. And our messengers had certainly come to them with clear proofs. Then indeed many of them, [even] after that, throughout the land, were transgressors.
33. Indeed, the penalty for those who wage war against God and His Messenger and strive upon earth [to cause] corruption is none but that they be killed or crucified or that their hands and feet be cut off from opposite sides or that they be exiled from the land. That is for them a disgrace in this world; and for them in the Hereafter is a great punishment,
34. Except for those who return [repenting] before you overcome [i.e., apprehend] them. And know that God is Forgiving and Merciful.
35. O you who have believed, fear God and seek the means [of nearness] to Him and strive in His cause that you may succeed.
36. Indeed, those who disbelieve—if they should have all that is in the earth and the like of it with it by which to ransom themselves from the punishment of the Day of Resurrection, it will not be accepted from them, and for them is a painful punishment.
37. They will wish to get out of the Fire, but never are they to emerge therefrom, and for them is an enduring punishment.
38. [As for] the thief, the male and the female, amputate their hands in recompense for what they earned [i.e., committed] as a deterrent [punishment] from God. And God is Exalted in Might and Wise.
39. But whoever repents after his wrongdoing and reforms, indeed, God will turn to him in forgiveness. Indeed, God is Forgiving and Merciful.
40. Do you not know that to God belongs the dominion of the heavens and the earth? He punishes whom He wills and forgives whom He wills, and God is over all things competent.
41. O Messenger, let them not grieve you who hasten into disbelief of those who say, “We believe” with their mouths, but their hearts believe not, and from among the Jews. [They are] avid listeners to falsehood, listening to another people who have not come to you. They distort words beyond their [proper] places [i.e., usages], saying “If you are given this, take it; but if you are not given it, then beware.” But he for whom God intends fitnah—never will you possess [power to do] for him a thing against God. Those are the ones for whom God does not intend to purify their hearts. For them in this world is disgrace, and for them in the Hereafter is a great punishment.
42. [They are] avid listeners to falsehood, devourers of [what is] unlawful. So if they come to you, [O Muhammad], judge between them or turn away from them. And if you turn away from them—never will they harm you at all. And if you judge, judge between them with justice. Indeed, God loves those who act justly.
43. But how is it that they come to you for judgement while they have the Torah, in which is the judgement of God? Then they turn away, [even] after that; but those are not [in fact] believers.
44. Indeed, We sent down the Torah, in which was guidance and light. The prophets who submitted [to God] judged by it for the Jews, as did the rabbis and scholars by that with which they were entrusted of the Scripture of God, and they were witnesses thereto. So do not fear the people but fear Me, and do not exchange My verses for a small price [i.e., worldly gain]. And whoever does not judge by what God has revealed—then it is those who are the disbelievers.
45. And We ordained for them therein a life for a life, an eye for an eye, a nose for a nose, an ear for an ear, a tooth for a tooth, and for wounds is legal retribution. But whoever gives [up his right as] charity, it is an expiation for him. And whoever does not judge by what God has revealed—then it is those who are the wrongdoers [i.e., the unjust].
46. And We sent, following in their footsteps, Jesus, the son of Mary, confirming that which came before him in the Torah; and We gave him the Gospel, in which was guidance and light and confirming that which preceded it of the Torah as guidance and instruction for the righteous.
47. And let the People of the Gospel judge by what God has revealed therein. And whoever does not judge by what God has revealed then it is those who are the defiantly disobedient.
48. And We have revealed to you, [O Muhammad], the Book [i.e., the Qur'an] in truth, confirming that which

preceded it of the Scripture and as a criterion over it. So judge between them by what God has revealed and do not follow their inclinations away from what has come to you of the truth. To each of you We prescribed a law and a method. Had God willed, He would have made you one nation [united in religion], but [He intended] to test you in what He has given you; so race to [all that is] good. To God is your return all together, and He will [then] inform you concerning that over which you used to differ.

49. And judge, [O Muhammad], between them by what God has revealed and do not follow their inclinations and beware of them, lest they tempt you away from some of what God has revealed to you. And if they turn away—then know that God only intends to afflict them with some of their [own] sins. And indeed, many among the people are defiantly disobedient.
50. Then is it the judgement of [the time of] ignorance they desire? But who is better than God in judgement for a people who are certain [in faith].
51. O you who have believed, do not take the Jews and the Christians as allies. They are [in fact] allies of one another. And whoever is an ally to them among you—then indeed, he is [one] of them. Indeed, God guides not the wrongdoing people.
52. So you see those in whose hearts is disease [i.e., hypocrisy] hastening into [association with] them, saying, “We are afraid a misfortune may strike us.” But perhaps God will bring conquest or a decision from Him, and they will become, over what they have been concealing within themselves, regretful.
53. And those who believe will say, “Are these the ones who swore by God their strongest oaths that indeed they were with you?” Their deeds have become worthless, and they have become losers.
54. O you who have believed, whoever of you should revert from his religion—God will bring forth [in place of them] a people He will love and who will love Him [who are] humble toward the believers, powerful against the disbelievers; they strive in the cause of God and do not fear the blame of a critic. That is the favor of God; He bestows it upon whom He wills. And God is all-Encompassing and Knowing.
55. Your ally is none but God and [therefore] His Messenger and those who have believed—those who establish prayer and give zakah, and they bow [in worship],
56. And whoever is an ally of God and His Messenger and those who have believed—indeed, the party of God—they will be the predominant.
57. O you who have believed, take not those who have taken your religion in ridicule and amusement among the ones who were given the Scripture before you nor the disbelievers as allies. And fear God, if you should [truly] be believers.
58. And when you call to prayer, they take it in ridicule and amusement. That is because they are a people who do not use reason.
59. Say, “O People of the Scripture, do you resent us except [for the fact] that we have believed in God and what was revealed to us and what was revealed before and because most of you are defiantly disobedient?”
60. Say, “Shall I inform you of [what is] worse than that as penalty from God? [It is that of] those whom God has cursed and with whom He became angry and made of them apes and pigs and slaves of taghūt. Those are worse in position and further astray from the sound way.”
61. And when they come to you, they say, “We believe.” But they have entered with disbelief [in their hearts], and they have certainly left with it. And God is most knowing of what they were concealing.
62. And you see many of them hastening into sin and aggression and the devouring of [what is] unlawful. How wretched is what they have been doing.
63. Why do the rabbis and religious scholars not forbid them from saying what is sinful and devouring what is unlawful? How wretched is what they have been practicing.
64. And the Jews say, “The hand of God is chained.” Chained are their hands, and cursed are they for what they say. Rather, both His hands are extended; He spends however He wills. And that which has been revealed to you from your Lord will surely increase many of them in transgression and disbelief. And We have cast among them animosity and hatred until the Day of Resurrection. Every time they kindled the fire of war [against you], God extinguished it. And they strive throughout the land [causing] corruption, and God does not like corrupters.

65. And if only the People of the Scripture had believed and feared God, We would have removed from them their misdeeds and admitted them to Gardens of Pleasure.
66. And if only they upheld [the law of] the Torah, the Gospel, and what has been revealed to them from their Lord [i.e., the Qur'ān], they would have consumed [provision] from above them and from beneath their feet. Among them are a moderate [i.e., acceptable] community, but many of them—evil is that which they do.
67. O Messenger, announce that which has been revealed to you from your Lord, and if you do not, then you have not conveyed His message. And God will protect you from the people. Indeed, God does not guide the disbelieving people.
68. Say, “O People of the Scripture, you are [standing] on nothing until you uphold [the law of] the Torah, the Gospel, and what has been revealed to you from your Lord [i.e., the Qur'ān].” And that which has been revealed to you from your Lord will surely increase many of them in transgression and disbelief. So do not grieve over the disbelieving people.
69. Indeed, those who have believed [in Prophet Muhammad] and those [before him] who were Jews or Sa-beans or Christians—those [among them] who believed in God and the Last Day and did righteousness—no fear will there be concerning them, nor will they grieve.
70. We had already taken the covenant of the Children of Israel and had sent to them messengers. Whenever there came to them a messenger with what their souls did not desire, a party [of messengers] they denied, and another party they killed.
71. And they thought there would be no [resulting] punishment, so they became blind and deaf. Then God turned to them in forgiveness; then [again] many of them became blind and deaf. And God is Seeing of what they do.
72. They have certainly disbelieved who say, “God is the Messiah, the son of Mary” while the Messiah has said, “O Children of Israel, worship God, my Lord and your Lord.” Indeed, he who associates others with God—God has forbidden him Paradise, and his refuge is the Fire. And there are not for the wrongdoers any helpers.
73. They have certainly disbelieved who say, “God is the third of three.” And there is no god except one God. And if they do not desist from what they are saying, there will surely afflict the disbelievers among them a painful punishment.
74. So will they not repent to God and seek His forgiveness? And God is Forgiving and Merciful.
75. The Messiah, son of Mary, was not but a messenger; [other] messengers have passed on before him. And his mother was a supporter of truth. They both used to eat food. Look how We make clear to them the signs; then look how they are deluded.
76. Say, “Do you worship besides God that which holds for you no [power of] harm or benefit while it is God who is the Hearing, the Knowing?”
77. Say, “O People of the Scripture, do not exceed limits in your religion beyond the truth and do not follow the inclinations of a people who had gone astray before and misled many and have strayed from the soundness of the way.”
78. Cursed were those who disbelieved among the Children of Israel by the tongue of David and of Jesus, the son of Mary. That was because they disobeyed and [habitually] transgressed.
79. They used not to prevent one another from wrongdoing that they did. How wretched was that which they were doing.
80. You see many of them becoming allies of those who disbelieved [i.e., the polytheists]. How wretched is that which they have put forth for themselves in that God has become angry with them, and in the punishment they will abide eternally.
81. And if they had believed in God and the Prophet and in what was revealed to him, they would not have taken them as allies; but many of them are defiantly disobedient.
82. You will surely find the most intense of the people in animosity toward the believers [to be] the Jews and those who associate others with God; and you will find the nearest of them in affection to the believers those who say, “We are Christians.” That is because among them are priests and monks and because they are not arrogant.

83. And when they hear what has been revealed to the Messenger, you see their eyes overflowing with tears because of what they have recognized of the truth. They say, "Our Lord, we have believed, so register us among the witnesses."
84. And why should we not believe in God and what has come to us of the truth? And we aspire that our Lord will admit us [to Paradise] with the righteous people."
85. So God rewarded them for what they said with gardens [in Paradise] beneath which rivers flow, wherein they abide eternally. And that is the reward of doers of good.
86. But those who disbelieved and denied Our signs—they are the companions of Hellfire.
87. O you who have believed, do not prohibit the good things which God has made lawful to you and do not transgress. Indeed, God does not like transgressors.
88. And eat of what God has provided for you [which is] lawful and good. And fear God, in whom you are believers.
89. God will not impose blame upon you for what is meaningless in your oaths, but He will impose blame upon you for [breaking] what you intended of oaths. So its expiation is the feeding of ten needy people from the average of that which you feed your [own] families or clothing them or the freeing of a slave. But whoever cannot find [or afford it]—then a fast of three days [is required]. That is the expiation for oaths when you have sworn. But guard your oaths. Thus does God make clear to you His verses [i.e., revealed law] that you may be grateful.
90. O you who have believed, indeed, intoxicants, gambling, [sacrificing on] stone alters [to other than God], and divining arrows are but defilement from the work of Satan, so avoid it that you may be successful.
91. Satan only wants to cause between you animosity and hatred through intoxicants and gambling and to avert you from the remembrance of God and from prayer. So will you not desist?
92. And obey God and obey the Messenger and beware. And if you turn away—then know that upon Our Messenger is only [the responsibility for] clear notification.
93. There is not upon those who believe and do righteousness [any] blame concerning what they have eaten [in the past] if they [now] fear God and believe and do righteous deeds, and then fear God and believe, and then fear God and do good; and God loves the doers of good.
94. O you who have believed, God will surely test you through something of the game that your hands and spears [can] reach, that God may make evident those who fear Him unseen. And whoever transgresses after that—for him is a painful punishment.
95. O you who have believed, do not kill game while you are in the state of *ihrām*. And whoever of you kills it intentionally—the penalty is an equivalent from sacrificial animals to what he killed, as judged by two just men among you as an offering [to God] delivered to the *Ka'bāh*, or an expiation: the feeding of needy people or the equivalent of that in fasting, that he may taste the consequence of his matter [i.e., deed]. God has pardoned what is past; but whoever returns [to violation], then God will take retribution from him. And God is Exalted in Might and Owner of Retribution.
96. Lawful to you is game from the sea and its food as provision for you and the travelers, but forbidden to you is game from the land as long as you are in the state of *ihrām*. And fear God to whom you will be gathered.
97. God has made the *Ka'bāh*, the Sacred House, standing for the people and [has sanctified] the sacred months and the sacrificial animals and the garlands [by which they are identified]. That is so you may know that God knows what is in the heavens and what is in the earth and that God is Knowing of all things.
98. Know that God is severe in penalty and that God is Forgiving and Merciful.
99. Not upon the Messenger is [responsibility] except [for] notification. And God knows whatever you reveal and whatever you conceal.
100. Say, "Not equal are the evil and the good, although the abundance of evil might impress you." So fear God, O you of understanding, that you may be successful.
101. O you who have believed, do not ask about things which, if they are shown to you, will distress you. But if you ask about them while the *Qur'ān* is being revealed, they will be shown to you. God has pardoned it [i.e., that which is past]; and God is Forgiving and Forbearing.

102. A people asked such [questions] before you; then they became thereby disbelievers.
103. God has not appointed [such innovations as] bahirah or sā'ibah or wasīlah or hām. But those who disbelieve invent falsehood about God, and most of them do not reason.
104. And when it is said to them, "Come to what God has revealed and to the Messenger," they say, "Sufficient for us is that upon which we found our fathers." Even though their fathers knew nothing, nor were they guided?
105. O you who have believed, upon you is [responsibility for] yourselves. Those who have gone astray will not harm you when you have been guided. To God is your return all together; then He will inform you of what you used to do.
106. O you who have believed, testimony [should be taken] among you when death approaches one of you at the time of bequest—[that of] two just men from among you or two others from outside if you are traveling through the land and the disaster of death should strike you. Detain them after the prayer and let them both swear by God if you doubt [their testimony, saying], "We will not exchange it [i.e., our oath] for a price [i.e., worldly gain], even if he should be a near relative, and we will not withhold the testimony of [i.e., ordained by] God. Indeed, we would then be of the sinful."
107. But if it is found that those two were guilty of sin [i.e., perjury], let two others stand in their place [who are] foremost [in claim] from those who have a lawful right. And let them swear by God, "Our testimony is truer than their testimony, and we have not transgressed. Indeed, we would then be of the wrongdoers."
108. That is more likely that they will give testimony according to its [true] objective, or [at least] they would fear that [other] oaths might be taken after their oaths. And fear God and listen [i.e., obey Him]; and God does not guide the defiantly disobedient people.
109. [Be warned of] the Day when God will assemble the messengers and say, "What was the response you received?" They will say, "We have no knowledge. Indeed, it is You who is Knower of the unseen"—
110. [The Day] when God will say, "O Jesus, Son of Mary, remember My favor upon you and upon your mother when I supported you with the Pure Spirit [i.e., the angel Gabriel] and you spoke to the people in the cradle and in maturity; and [remember] when I taught you writing and wisdom and the Torah and the Gospel; and when you designed from clay [what was] like the form of a bird with My permission, then you breathed into it, and it became a bird with My permission; and you healed the blind [from birth] and the leper with My permission; and when you brought forth the dead with My permission; and when I restrained the Children of Israel from [killing] you when you came to them with clear proofs and those who disbelieved among them said, "This is not but obvious magic."
111. And [remember] when I inspired to the disciples, "Believe in Me and in My messenger [i.e., Jesus]." They said, "We have believed, so bear witness that indeed we are Muslims [in submission to God]."
112. [And remember] when the disciples said, "O Jesus, Son of Mary, can your Lord send down to us a table [spread with food] from the heaven? [Jesus] said, "Fear God, if you should be believers."
113. They said, "We wish to eat from it and let our hearts be reassured and know that you have been truthful to us and be among its witnesses."
114. Said Jesus, the son of Mary, "O God, our Lord, send down to us a table [spread with food] from the heaven to be for us a festival for the first of us and the last of us and a sign from You. And provide for us, and You are the best of providers."
115. God said, "Indeed, I will send it down to you, but whoever disbelieves afterwards from among you—then indeed will I punish him with a punishment by which I have not punished anyone among the worlds."
116. And [beware the Day] when God will say, "O Jesus, Son of Mary, did you say to the people, 'Take me and my mother as deities besides God?'" He will say, "Exalted are You! It was not for me to say that to which I have no right. If I had said it, You would have known it. You know what is within myself, and I do not know what is within Yourself. Indeed, it is You who is Knower of the unseen."
117. I said not to them except what You commanded me—to worship God, my Lord and your Lord. And I was a witness over them as long as I was among them; but when You took me up, You were the Observer over them, and You are, over all things, Witness.
118. If You should punish them—indeed they are Your servants; but if You forgive them—indeed it is You who is the Exalted in Might, the Wise."

119. God will say, "This is the Day when the truthful will benefit from their truthfulness." For them are gardens [in Paradise] beneath which rivers flow, wherein they will abide forever, God being pleased with them, and they with Him. That is the great attainment.
120. God belongs the dominion of the heavens and the earth and whatever is within them. And He is over all things competent.

### Sūrah 10: Yūnus

*In the Name of God, the Most Compassionate, the Most Merciful*

1. Alif, Lām, Rā. These are the verses of the wise Book.
2. Have the people been amazed that We revealed [revelation] to a man from among them, [saying], "Warn mankind and give good tidings to those who believe that they will have a [firm] precedence of honor with their Lord"? [But] the disbelievers say, "Indeed, this is an obvious magician."
3. Indeed, your Lord is God, who created the heavens and the earth in six days and then established Himself above the Throne, arranging the matter [of His creation]. There is no intercessor except after His permission. That is God, your Lord, so worship Him. Then will you not remember?
4. To Him is your return all together. [It is] the promise of God [which is] truth. Indeed, He begins the [process of] creation and then repeats it that He may reward those who have believed and done righteous deeds, in justice. But those who disbelieved will have a drink of scalding water and a painful punishment for what they used to deny.
5. It is He who made the sun a shining light and the moon a derived light and determined for it phases—that you may know the number of years and account [of time]. God has not created this except in truth. He details the signs for a people who know.
6. Indeed, in the alternation of the night and the day and [in] what God has created in the heavens and the earth are signs for a people who fear God.
7. Indeed, those who do not expect the meeting with Us and are satisfied with the life of this world and feel secure therein and those who are heedless of Our signs—
8. For those their refuge will be the Fire because of what they used to earn.
9. Indeed, those who have believed and done righteous deeds—their Lord will guide them because of their faith. Beneath them rivers will flow in the Gardens of Pleasure.
10. Their call therein will be, "Exalted are You, O God," and their greeting therein will be, "Peace." And the last of their call will be, "Praise to God, Lord of the worlds!"
11. And if God was to hasten for the people the evil [they invoke] as He hastens for them the good, their term would have been ended for them. But We leave the ones who do not expect the meeting with Us, in their transgression, wandering blindly.
12. And when affliction touches man, he calls upon Us, whether lying on his side or sitting or standing; but when We remove from him his affliction, he continues [in disobedience] as if he had never called upon Us to [remove] an affliction that touched him. Thus is made pleasing to the transgressors that which they have been doing.
13. And We had already destroyed generations before you when they wronged, and their messengers had come to them with clear proofs, but they were not to believe. Thus do We recompense the criminal people.
14. Then We made you successors in the land after them so that We may observe how you will do.
15. And when Our verses are recited to them as clear evidences, those who do not expect the meeting with Us say, "Bring us a Qur'ān other than this or change it." Say, [O Muhammad], "It is not for me to change it on my own accord. I only follow what is revealed to me. Indeed I fear, if I should disobey my Lord, the punishment of a tremendous Day."
16. Say, "If God had willed, I would not have recited it to you, nor would He have made it known to you, for I had remained among you a lifetime before it. Then will you not reason?"
17. So who is more unjust than he who invents a lie about God or denies His signs? Indeed, the criminals will not succeed.

18. And they worship other than God that which neither harms them nor benefits them, and they say, "These are our intercessors with God." Say, "Do you inform God of something He does not know in the heavens or on the earth?" Exalted is He and high above what they associate with Him.
19. And mankind was not but one community [united in religion], but [then] they differed. And if not for a word that preceded from your Lord, it would have been judged between them [immediately] concerning that over which they differ.
20. And they say, "Why is a sign not sent down to him from his Lord?" So say, "The unseen is only for God [to administer], so wait; indeed, I am with you among those who wait."
21. And when We give the people a taste of mercy after adversity has touched them, at once they conspire against Our verses. Say, "God is swifter in strategy." Indeed, Our messengers [i.e., angels] record that which you conspire.
22. It is He who enables you to travel on land and sea until, when you are in ships and they sail with them by a good wind and they rejoice therein, there comes a storm wind and the waves come upon them from everywhere and they assume that they are surrounded [i.e., doomed], supplicating God, sincere to Him in religion, "If You should save us from this, we will surely be among the thankful."
23. But when He saves them, at once they commit injustice upon the earth without right. O mankind, your injustice is only against yourselves, [being merely] the enjoyment of worldly life. Then to Us is your return, and We will inform you of what you used to do.
24. The example of [this] worldly life is but like rain which We have sent down from the sky that the plants of the earth absorb—[those] from which men and livestock eat—until, when the earth has taken on its adornment and is beautified and its people suppose that they have capability over it, there comes to it Our command by night or by day, and We make it as a harvest, as if it had not flourished yesterday. Thus do We explain in detail the signs for a people who give thought.
25. And God invites to the Home of Peace [i.e., Paradise] and guides whom He wills to a straight path.
26. For them who have done good is the best [reward]—and extra. No darkness will cover their faces, nor humiliation. Those are companions of Paradise; they will abide therein eternally.
27. But they who have earned [blame for] evil doings—the recompense of an evil deed is its equivalent, and humiliation will cover them. They will have from God no protector. It will be as if their faces are covered with pieces of the night—so dark [are they]. Those are the companions of the Fire; they will abide therein eternally.
28. And [mention, O Muhammad], the Day We will gather them all together—then We will say to those who associated others with God, "[Remain in] your place, you and your 'partners.'" Then We will separate them, and their "partners" will say, "You did not used to worship us,"
29. And sufficient is God as a witness between us and you that we were of your worship unaware."
30. There, [on that Day], every soul will be put to trial for what it did previously, and they will be returned to God, their master, the Truth, and lost from them is whatever they used to invent.
31. Say, "Who provides for you from the heaven and the earth? Or who controls hearing and sight and who brings the living out of the dead and brings the dead out of the living and who arranges [every] matter?" They will say, "God," so say, "Then will you not fear Him?"
32. For that is God, your Lord, the Truth. And what can be beyond truth except error? So how are you averted?
33. Thus the word [i.e., decree] of your Lord has come into effect upon those who defiantly disobeyed—that they will not believe.
34. Say, "Are there of your 'partners' any who begins creation and then repeats it?" Say, "God begins creation and then repeats it, so how are you deluded?"
35. Say, "Are there of your 'partners' any who guides to the truth?" Say, "God guides to the truth. So is He who guides to the truth more worthy to be followed or he who guides not unless he is guided? Then what is [wrong] with you—how do you judge?"
36. And most of them follow not except assumption. Indeed, assumption avails not against the truth at all. Indeed, God is Knowing of what they do.

37. And it was not [possible] for this Qur'ān to be produced by other than God, but [it is] a confirmation of what was before it and a detailed explanation of the [former] Scripture, about which there is no doubt, from the Lord of the worlds.
38. Or do they say [about the Prophet], "He invented it?" Say, "Then bring forth a sūrah like it and call upon [for assistance] whomever you can besides God, if you should be truthful."
39. Rather, they have denied that which they encompass not in knowledge and whose interpretation has not yet come to them. Thus did those before them deny. Then observe how was the end of the wrongdoers.
40. And of them are those who believe in it, and of them are those who do not believe in it. And your Lord is most knowing of the corrupters.
41. And if they deny you, [O Muhammad], then say, "For me are my deeds, and for you are your deeds. You are disassociated from what I do, and I am disassociated from what you do."
42. And among them are those who listen to you. But can you cause the deaf to This phrase refers back to the Qur'ān hear [i.e., benefit from this hearing], although they will not use reason?
43. And among them are those who look at you. But can you guide the blind although they will not [attempt to] see?
44. Indeed, God does not wrong the people at all, but it is the people who are wronging themselves.
45. And on the Day when He will gather them, [it will be] as if they had not remained [in the world] but an hour of the day, [and] they will know each other. Those will have lost who denied the meeting with God and were not guided.
46. And whether We show you some of what We promise them, [O Muhammad], or We take you in death, to Us is their return; then, [either way], God is a witness concerning what they are doing.
47. And for every nation is a messenger. So when their messenger comes, it will be judged between them in justice, and they will not be wronged.
48. And they say, "When is [the fulfillment of] this promise, if you should be truthful?"
49. Say, "I possess not for myself any harm or benefit except what God should will. For every nation is a [specified] term. When their time has come, then they will not remain behind an hour, nor will they precede [it]."
50. Say, "Have you considered: if His punishment should come to you by night or by day—for which [aspect] of it would the criminals be impatient?"
51. Then is it that when it has [actually] occurred you will believe in it? Now? And you were [once] for it impatient.
52. Then it will be said to those who had wronged, "Taste the punishment of eternity; are you being compensated except for what you used to earn?"
53. And they ask information of you, [O Muhammad], "Is it true?" Say, "Yes, by my Lord. Indeed, it is truth; and you will not cause failure [to God]."
54. And if each soul that wronged had everything on earth, it would offer it in ransom. And they will confide regret when they see the punishment; and they will be judged in justice, and they will not be wronged.
55. Unquestionably, to God belongs whatever is in the heavens and the earth. Unquestionably, the promise of God is truth, but most of them do not know.
56. He gives life and causes death, and to Him you will be returned.
57. O mankind, there has come to you instruction from your Lord and healing for what is in the breasts and guidance and mercy for the believers.
58. Say, "In the bounty of God and in His mercy—in that let them rejoice; it is better than what they accumulate."
59. Say, "Have you seen what God has sent down to you of provision of which you have made [some] lawful and [some] unlawful?" Say, "Has God permitted you [to do so], or do you invent [something] about God?"
60. And what will be the supposition of those who invent falsehood about God on the Day of Resurrection? Indeed, God is full of bounty to the people, but most of them are not grateful.

61. And, [O Muhammad], you are not [engaged] in any matter or recite any of the Qur'ān and you [people] do not do any deed except that We are witness over you when you are involved in it. And not absent from your Lord is any [part] of an atom's weight within the earth or within the heaven or [anything] smaller than that or greater but that it is in a clear register.
62. Unquestionably, [for] the allies of God there will be no fear concerning them, nor will they grieve—
63. Those who believed and were fearing God.
64. For them are good tidings in the worldly life and in the Hereafter. No change is there in the words [i.e., decrees] of God. That is what is the great attainment.
65. And let not their speech grieve you. Indeed, honor [due to power] belongs to God entirely. He is the Hearing, the Knowing.
66. Unquestionably, to God belongs whoever is in the heavens and whoever is on the earth. And those who invoke other than God do not [actually] follow [His] "partners." They follow not except assumption, and they are not but falsifying.
67. It is He who made for you the night to rest therein and the day, giving sight. Indeed in that are signs for a people who listen.
68. They have said, "God has taken a son." Exalted is He; He is the [one] Free of need. To Him belongs whatever is in the heavens and whatever is in the earth. You have no authority for this [claim]. Do you say about God that which you do not know?
69. Say, "Indeed, those who invent falsehood about God will not succeed."
70. [For them is brief] enjoyment in this world; then to Us is their return; then We will make them taste the severe punishment because they used to disbelieve.
71. And recite to them the news of Noah, when he said to his people, "O my people, if my residence and my reminding of the signs of God has become burdensome upon you—then I have relied upon God. So resolve upon your plan and [call upon] your associates. Then let not your plan be obscure to you. Then carry it out upon me and do not give me respite."
72. And if you turn away [from my advice]—then no payment have I asked of you. My reward is only from God, and I have been commanded to be of the Muslims [i.e., those who submit to God]."
73. And they denied him, so We saved him and those with him in the ship and made them successors, and We drowned those who denied Our signs. Then see how was the end of those who were warned.
74. Then We sent after him messengers to their peoples, and they came to them with clear proofs. But they were not to believe in that which they had denied before. Thus We seal over the hearts of the transgressors.
75. Then We sent after them Moses and Aaron to Pharaoh and his establishment with Our sins, but they behaved arrogantly and were a criminal people.
76. So when there came to them the truth from Us, they said, "Indeed, this is obvious magic."
77. Moses said, "Do you say [thus] about the truth when it has come to you? Is this magic? But magicians will not succeed."
78. They said, "Have you come to us to turn us away from that upon which we found our fathers and so that you two may have grandeur in the land? And we are not believers in you."
79. And Pharaoh said, "Bring to me every learned magician."
80. So when the magicians came, Moses said to them, "Throw down whatever you will throw."
81. And when they had thrown, Moses said, "What you have brought is [only] magic. Indeed, God will expose its worthlessness. Indeed, God does not amend the work of corrupters."
82. And God will establish the truth by His words, even if the criminals dislike it."
83. But no one believed Moses, except [some] offspring [i.e., youths] among his people, for fear of Pharaoh and his establishment that they would persecute them. And indeed, Pharaoh was haughty within the land, and indeed, he was of the transgressors.
84. And Moses said, "O my people, if you have believed in God, then rely upon Him, if you should be Muslims [i.e., submitting to him]."

85. So they said, "Upon God do we rely. Our Lord, make us not [objects of] trial for the wrongdoing people."
86. And save us by Your mercy from the disbelieving people."
87. And We inspired to Moses and his brother, "Settle your people in Egypt in houses and make your houses [facing the] qiblah and establish prayer and give good tidings to the believers."
88. And Moses said, "Our Lord, indeed You have given Pharaoh and his establishment splendor and wealth in the worldly life, our Lord, that they may lead [men] astray from Your way. Our Lord, obliterate their wealth and harden their hearts so that they will not believe until they see the painful punishment."
89. [God] said, "Your supplication has been answered." So remain on a right course and follow not the way of those who do not know."
90. And We took the Children of Israel across the sea, and Pharaoh and his soldiers pursued them in tyranny and enmity until, when drowning overtook him, he said, "I believe that there is no deity except that in whom the Children of Israel believe, and I am of the Muslims."
91. Now? And you had disobeyed [Him] before and were of the corrupters?
92. So today We will save you in body that you may be to those who succeed you a sign. And indeed, many among the people, of Our signs, are heedless.
93. And We had certainty settled the Children of Israel in an agreeable settlement and provided them with good things. And they did not differ until [after] knowledge had come to them. Indeed, your Lord will judge between them on the Day of Resurrection concerning that over which they used to differ.
94. So if you are in doubt, [O Muhammad], about that which We have revealed to you, then ask those who have been reading the Scripture before you. The truth has certainly come to you from your Lord, so never be among the doubters.
95. And never be of those who deny the signs of God and [thus] be among the losers.
96. Indeed, those upon whom the word [i.e., decree] of your Lord has come into effect will not believe,
97. Even if every sign should come to them, until they see the painful punishment.
98. Then has there not been a [single] city that believed so its faith benefited it except the people of Jonah? When they believed, We removed from them the punishment of disgrace in worldly life and gave them enjoyment [i.e., provision] for a time.
99. And had your Lord willed, those on earth would have believed—all of them entirely. Then, [O Muhammad], would you compel the people in order that they become believers?
100. And it is not for a soul [i.e., anyone] to believe except by permission of God, and He will place defilement upon those who will not use reason.
101. Say, "Observe what is in the heavens and earth." But of no avail will be signs or warners to a people who do not believe.
102. So do they wait except for like [what occurred in] the days of those who passed on before them? Say, "Then wait; indeed, I am with you among those who wait."
103. Then We will save Our messengers and those who have believed. Thus, it is an obligation upon Us that We save the believers.
104. Say, [O Muhammad], "O people, if you are in doubt as to my religion—then I do not worship those which you worship besides God; but I worship God, who causes your death. And I have been commanded to be of the believers
105. And [commanded], 'Direct your face [i.e., self] toward the religion, inclining to truth, and never be of those who associate others with God;
106. And do not invoke besides God that which neither benefits you nor harms you, for if you did, then indeed you would be of the wrongdoers.'"
107. And if God should touch you with adversity, there is no remover of it except Him; and if He intends for you good, then there is no repeller of His bounty. He causes it to reach whom He wills of His servants. And He is the Forgiving, the Merciful.

108. Say, "O mankind, the truth has come to you from your Lord, so whoever is guided is only guided for [the benefit of] his soul, and whoever goes astray
109. And follow what is revealed to you, [O Muhammad], and be patient until God will judge. And He is the best of judges.

### Sūrah 12: Yūsuf

*In the Name of God, the Most Compassionate, the Most Merciful*

1. Alif, Lam, Rā. These are the verses of the clear Book.
2. Indeed, We have sent it down as an Arabic Qur'ān that you might understand.
3. We relate to you, [O Muhammad], the best of stories in what We have revealed to you of this Qur'ān although you were, before it, among the unaware.
4. [Of these stories mention] when Joseph said to his father, "O my father, indeed I have seen [in a dream] eleven stars and the sun and the moon; I saw them prostrating to me."
5. He said, "O my son, do not relate your vision to your brothers or they will contrive against you a plan. Indeed Satan, to man, is a manifest enemy."
6. And thus will your Lord choose you and teach you the interpretation of narratives [i.e., events of dreams] and complete His favor upon you and upon the family of Jacob, as He completed it upon your fathers before, Abraham and Isaac. Indeed, your Lord is Knowing and Wise."
7. Certainly were there in Joseph and his brothers signs for those who ask, [such as]
8. When they said, "Joseph and his brother are more beloved to our father than we, while we are a clan. Indeed, our father is in clear error."
9. Kill Joseph or cast him out to [another] land; the countenance [i.e., attention] of your father will [then] be only for you, and you will be after that a righteous people."
10. Said a speaker among them, "Do not kill Joseph but throw him into the bottom of the well; some travelers will pick him up—if you would do [something]."
11. They said, "O our father, why do you not entrust us with Joseph while indeed, we are to him sincere counselors?"
12. Send him with us tomorrow that he may eat well and play. And indeed, we will be his guardians."
13. [Jacob] said, "Indeed, it saddens me that you should take him, and I fear that a wolf would eat him while you are of him unaware."
14. They said, "If a wolf should eat him while we are a [strong] clan, indeed, we would then be losers."
15. So when they took him [out] and agreed to put him into the bottom of the well... But We inspired to him, "You will surely inform them [someday] about this affair of theirs while they do not perceive [your identity]."
16. And they came to their father at night, weeping.
17. They said, "O our father, indeed we went racing each other and left Joseph with our possessions, and a wolf ate him. But you would not believe us, even if we were truthful."
18. And they brought upon his shirt false blood. [Jacob] said, "Rather, your souls have enticed you to something, so patience is most fitting. And God is the one sought for help against that which you describe."
19. And there came a company of travelers; then they sent their water drawer, and he let down his bucket. He said, "Good news! Here is a boy." And they concealed him, [taking him] as merchandise; and God was knowing of what they did.
20. And they sold him for a reduced price—a few dirhams—and they were, concerning him, of those content with little.
21. And the one from Egypt who bought him said to his wife, "Make his residence comfortable. Perhaps he will benefit us, or we will adopt him as a son." And thus, We established Joseph in the land that We might teach him the interpretation of events [i.e., dreams]. And God is predominant over His affair, but most of the people do not know.

22. And when he [i.e., Joseph] reached maturity, We gave him judgment and knowledge. And thus We reward the doers of good.
23. And she, in whose house he was, sought to seduce him. She closed the doors and said, "Come, you." He said, "[I seek] the refuge of God. Indeed, he is my master, who has made good my residence. Indeed, wrongdoers will not succeed."
24. And she certainly determined [to seduce] him, and he would have inclined to her had he not seen the proof [i.e., sign] of his Lord. And thus [it was] that We should avert from him evil and immorality. Indeed, he was of Our chosen servants
25. And they both raced to the door, and she tore his shirt from the back, and they found her husband at the door. She said, "What is the recompense of one who intended evil for your wife but that he be imprisoned or a painful punishment?"
26. [Joseph] said, "It was she who sought to seduce me." And a witness from her family testified, "If his shirt is torn from the front, then she has told the truth, and he is of the bars."
27. But if his shirt is torn from the back, then she has lied, and he is of the truthful."
28. So when he [i.e., her husband] saw his shirt torn from the back, he said, "Indeed, it is of your [i.e., women's] plan. Indeed, your plan is great [i.e., vehement]."
29. Joseph, ignore this. And, [my wife], ask forgiveness for your sin. Indeed, you were of the sinful."
30. And women in the city said, "The wife of al-'Azeez is seeking to seduce her slave boy; he has impassioned her with love. Indeed, we see her [to be] in clear error."
31. So when she heard of their scheming, she sent for them and prepared for them a banquet and gave each one of them a knife and said [to Joseph], "Come out before them." And when they saw him, they greatly admired him and cut their hands and said, "Perfect is God! This is not a man; this is none but a noble angel."
32. She said, "That is the one about whom you blamed me. And I certainly sought to seduce him, but he firmly refused; and if he will not do what I order him, he will surely be imprisoned and will be of those debased."
33. He said, "My Lord, prison is more to my liking than that to which they invite me. And if You do not avert from me their plan, I might incline toward them and [thus] be of the ignorant."
34. So his Lord responded to him and averted from him their plan. Indeed, He is the Hearing, the Knowing.
35. Then it appeared to them after they had seen the signs that he [i.e., al-Azeez] should surely imprison him for a time.
36. And there entered the prison with him two young men. One of them said, "Indeed, I have seen myself [in a dream] pressing wine." The other said, "Indeed, I have seen myself carrying upon my head [some] bread, from which the birds were eating. Inform us of its interpretation; indeed, we see you to be of those who do good."
37. He said, "You will not receive food that is provided to you except that I will inform you of its interpretation before it comes to you. That is from what my Lord has taught me. Indeed, I have left the religion of a people who do not believe in God, and they, in the Hereafter, are disbelievers."
38. And I have followed the religion of my fathers, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. And it was not for us to associate anything with God. That is from the favor of God upon us and upon the people, but most of the people are not grateful.
39. O [my] two companions of prison, are separate lords better or God, the One, the Prevailing?
40. You worship not besides Him except [mere] names you have named them, you and your fathers, for which God has sent down no authority. Legislation is not but for God. He has commanded that you worship not except Him. That is the correct religion, but most of the people do not know.
41. O two companions of prison, as for one of you, he will give drink to his master of wine; but as for the other, he will be crucified, and the birds will eat from his head. The matter has been decreed about which you both inquire."
42. And he said to the one whom he knew would go free, "Mention me before your master." But Satan made him forget the mention [to] his master, and he [i.e., Joseph] remained in prison several years.

43. And [subsequently] the king said, "Indeed, I have seen [in a dream] seven fat cows being eaten by seven [that were] lean, and seven green spikes [of grain] and others [that were] dry. O eminent ones, explain to me my vision, if you should interpret visions."
44. They said, "[It is but] a mixture of false dreams, and we are not learned in the interpretation of dreams."
45. But the one who was freed and remembered after a time said, "I will inform you of its interpretation, so send me forth."
46. [He said], "Joseph, O man of truth, explain to us about seven fat cows eaten by seven [that were] lean, and seven green spikes [of grain] and others [that were] dry—that I may return to the people [i.e., the king and his court]; perhaps they will know [about you]."
47. [Joseph] said, "You will plant for seven years consecutively; and what you harvest leave in its spikes, except a little from which you will eat."
48. Then will come after that seven difficult [years] which will consume what you advanced [i.e., saved] for them, except a little from which you will store.
49. Then will come after that a year in which the people will be given rain and in which they will press [olives and grapes]."
50. And the king said, "Bring him to me." But when the messenger came to him, [Joseph] said, "Return to your master and ask him what is the case of the women who cut their hands. Indeed, my Lord is Knowing of their plan."
51. Said [the king to the women], "What was your condition when you sought to seduce Joseph?" They said, "Perfect is God! We know about him no evil." The wife of al-Azeez said, "Now the truth has become evident. It was I who sought to seduce him, and indeed, he is of the truthful."
52. That is so he [i.e., al-Azeez] will know that I did not betray him in [his] absence and that God does not guide the plan of betrayers.
53. And I do not acquit myself. Indeed, the soul is a persistent enjoiner of evil, except those upon which my Lord has mercy. Indeed, my Lord is Forgiving and Merciful."
54. And the king said, "Bring him to me; I will appoint him exclusively for myself." And when he spoke to him, he said, "Indeed, you are today established [in position] and trusted."
55. [Joseph] said, "Appoint me over the storehouses of the land. Indeed, I will be a knowing guardian."
56. And thus We established Joseph in the land to settle therein wherever he willed. We touch with Our mercy whom We will, and We do not allow to be lost the reward of those who do good.
57. And the reward of the Hereafter is better for those who believed and were fearing God.
58. And the brothers of Joseph came [seeking food], and they entered upon him; and he recognized them, but he was to them unknown.
59. And when he had furnished them with their supplies, he said, "Bring me a brother of yours from your father. Do not you see that I give full measure and that I am the best of accommodators?"
60. But if you do not bring him to me, no measure will there be [hereafter] for you from me, nor will you approach me."
61. They said, "We will attempt to dissuade his father from [keeping] him, and indeed, we will do [it]."
62. And [Joseph] said to his servants, "Put their merchandise into their saddlebags so they might recognize it when they have gone back to their people that perhaps they will [again] return."
63. So when they returned to their father, they said, "O our father, [further] measure has been denied to us, so send with us our brother [that] we will be given measure. And indeed, we will be his guardians."
64. He said, "Should I entrust you with him except [under coercion] as I entrusted you with his brother before? But God is the best guardian, and He is the most merciful of the merciful."
65. And when they opened their baggage, they found their merchandise returned to them. They said, "O our father, what [more] could we desire? This is our merchandise returned to us. And we will obtain supplies [i.e., food] for our family and protect our brother and obtain an increase of a camel's load; that is an easy measurement."

66. [Jacob] said, "Never will I send him with you until you give me a promise [i.e., oath] by God that you will bring him [back] to me, unless you should be surrounded [i.e., overcome by enemies]." And when they had given their promise, he said, "God, over what we say, is Witness."
67. And he said, "O my sons, do not enter from one gate but enter from different gates; and I cannot avail you against [the decree of] God at all. The decision is only for God; upon Him I have relied, and upon Him let those who would rely [indeed] rely."
68. And when they entered from where their father had ordered them, it did not avail them against God at all except [it was] a need [i.e., concern] within the soul of Jacob, which he satisfied. And indeed, he was a possessor of knowledge because of what We had taught him, but most of the people do not know.
69. And when they entered upon Joseph, he took his brother to himself; he said, "Indeed, I am your brother, so do not despair over what they used to do [to me]."
70. So when he had furnished them with their supplies, he put the [gold measuring] bowl into the bag of his brother. Then an announcer called out, "O caravan, indeed you are thieves."
71. They said while approaching them, "What is it you are missing?"
72. They said, "We are missing the measure of the king. And for he who produces it is [the reward of] a camel's load, and I am responsible for it."
73. They said, "By God, you have certainly known that we did not come to cause corruption in the land, and we have not been thieves."
74. They [the accusers] said, "Then what would be its recompense if you should be liars?"
75. The brothers] said, "Its recompense is that he in whose bag it is found—he [himself] will be its recompense. Thus do we recompense the wrongdoers."
76. So he began [the search] with their bags before the bag of his brother; then he extracted it from the bag of his brother. Thus did We plan for Joseph. He could not have taken his brother within the religion [i.e., law] of the king except that God willed. We raise in degrees whom We will, but over every possessor of knowledge is one [more] knowing.
77. They said, "If he steals—a brother of his has stolen before." But Joseph kept it within himself and did not reveal it to them. He said, "You are worse in position, and God is most knowing of what you describe."
78. They said, "O Azeez, indeed he has a father [who is] an old man, so take one of us in place of him. Indeed, we see you as a doer of good."
79. He said, "[I seek] the refuge of God [to prevent] that we take except him with whom we found our possession. Indeed, we would then be unjust."
80. So when they had despaired of him, they secluded themselves in private consultation. The eldest of them said, "Do you not know that your father has taken upon you an oath by God and [that] before you failed in [your duty to] Joseph? So I will never leave [this] land until my father permits me or God decides for me, and He is the best of judges."
81. Return to your father and say, 'O our father, indeed your son has stolen, and we did not testify except to what we knew. And we were not witnesses of the unseen.'
82. And ask the city in which we were and the caravan in which we came—and indeed, we are truthful,"
83. [Jacob] said, "Rather, your souls have enticed you to something, so patience is most fitting. Perhaps God will bring them to me all together. Indeed, it is He who is the Knowing, the Wise."
84. And he turned away from them and said, "Oh, my sorrow over Joseph," and his eyes became white from grief, for he was [of that] a suppressor.
85. They said, "By God, you will not cease remembering Joseph until you become fatally ill or become of those who perish."
86. He said, "I only complain of my suffering and my grief to God, and I know from God that which you do not know.
87. O my sons, go and find out about Joseph and his brother and despair not of relief from God. Indeed, no one despairs of relief from God except the disbelieving people."

88. So when they entered upon him [i.e., Joseph], they said, "O 'Azeez, adversity has touched us and our family, and we have come with goods poor in quality, but give us full measure and be charitable to us. Indeed, God rewards the charitable."
89. He said, "Do you know what you did with Joseph and his brother when you were ignorant?"
90. They said, "Are you indeed Joseph?" He said, "I am Joseph, and this is my brother. God has certainly favored us. Indeed, he who fears God and is patient, then indeed, God does not allow to be lost the reward of those who do good."
91. They said, "By God, certainly has God preferred you over us, and indeed, we have been sinners."
92. He said, "No blame will there be upon you today. God will forgive you; and He is the most merciful of the merciful."
93. Take this, my shirt, and cast it over the face of my father; he will become seeing. And bring me your family, all together."
94. And when the caravan departed [from Egypt], their father said, "Indeed, I find the smell of Joseph [and would say that he was alive] if you did not think me weakened in mind."
95. They said, "By God, indeed you are in your [same] old error."
96. And when the bearer of good tidings arrived, he cast it over his face, and he returned [once again] seeing. He said, "Did I not tell you that I know from God that which you do not know?"
97. They said, "O our father, ask for us forgiveness of our sins; indeed, we have been sinners."
98. He said, "I will ask forgiveness for you from my Lord. Indeed, it is He who is the Forgiving, the Merciful."
99. And when they entered upon Joseph, he took his parents to himself [i.e., embraced them] and said, "Enter Egypt, God willing, safe [and secure]."
100. And he raised his parents upon the throne, and they bowed to him in prostration. And he said, "O my father, this is the explanation of my vision of before. My Lord has made it reality. And He was certainly good to me when He took me out of prison and brought you [here] from bedouin life after Satan had induced [estrangement] between me and my brothers. Indeed, my Lord is Subtle in what He wills. Indeed, it is He who is the Knowing, the Wise."
101. My Lord, You have given me [something] of sovereignty and taught me of the interpretation of dreams. Creator of the heavens and earth, You are my protector in this world and in the Hereafter. Cause me to die a Muslim and join me with the righteous."
102. That is from the news of the unseen which We reveal, [O Muhammad], to you. And you were not with them when they put together their plan while they conspired.
103. And most of the people, although you strive [for it], are not believers.
104. And you do not ask of them for it any payment. It is not except a reminder to the worlds.
105. And how many a sign within the heavens and earth do they pass over while they, therefrom, are turning away.
106. And most of them believe not in God except while they associate others with Him.
107. Then do they feel secure that there will not come to them an overwhelming [aspect] of the punishment of God or that the Hour will not come upon them suddenly while they do not perceive?
108. Say, "This is my way; I invite to God with insight, I and those who follow me. And exalted is God; and I am not of those who associate others with Him."
109. And We sent not before you [as messengers] except men to whom We revealed from among the people of cities. So have they not traveled through the earth and observed how was the end of those before them? And the home of the Hereafter is best for those who fear God; then will you not reason?
110. [They continued] until, when the messengers despaired and were certain that they had been denied, there came to them Our victory, and whoever We willed was saved. And Our punishment cannot be repelled from the people who are criminals.
111. There was certainly in their stories a lesson for those of understanding. Never was it [i.e., the Qur'an] a narration invented, but a confirmation of what was before it and a detailed explanation of all things and guidance and mercy for a people who believe.

Sūrah 19: Maryam*In the Name of God, the Most Compassionate, the Most Merciful*

1. Kāf, Hā, Yā, ‘Ayn, Sād.
2. [This is] a mention of the mercy of your Lord to His servant Zechariah
3. When he called to his Lord a private call [i.e., supplication],
4. He said, “My Lord, indeed my bones have weakened, and my head has filled with white, and never have I been in my supplication to You, my Lord, unhappy [i.e., disappointed].
5. And indeed, I fear the successors after me, and my wife has been barren, so give me from Yourself an heir
6. Who will inherit me and inherit from the family of Jacob. And make him, my Lord, pleasing [to You].”
7. [He was told], “O Zechariah, indeed We give you good tidings of a boy whose name will be John. We have not assigned to any before [this] name.”
8. He said, “My Lord, how will I have a boy when my wife has been barren and I have reached extreme old age?”
9. [An angel] said, “Thus [it will be]; your Lord says, ‘It is easy for Me, for I created you before, while you were nothing.’”
10. [Zechariah] said, “My Lord, make for me a sign.” He said, “Your sign is that you will not speak to the people for three nights, [being] sound.”
11. So he came out to his people from the prayer chamber and signaled to them to exalt [God] in the morning and afternoon.
12. [God said], “O John, take the Scripture [i.e., adhere to it] with determination.” And We gave him judgement [while yet] a boy
13. And affection from Us and purity, and he was fearing of God
14. And dutiful to his parents, and he was not a disobedient tyrant.
15. And peace be upon him the day he was born and the day he dies and the day he is raised alive.
16. And mention, [O Muhammad], in the Book [the story of] Mary, when she withdrew from her family to a place toward the east.
17. And she took, in seclusion from them, a screen. Then We sent to her Our Angel [i.e., Gabriel], and he represented himself to her as a well-proportioned man.
18. She said, “Indeed, I seek refuge in the Most Merciful from you, [so leave me], if you should be fearing of God.”
19. He said, “I am only the messenger of your Lord to give you [news of] a pure boy [i.e., son].”
20. She said, “How can I have a boy while no man has touched me and I have not been unchaste?”
21. He said, “Thus [it will be]; your Lord says, ‘It is easy for Me, and We will make him a sign to the people and a mercy from Us. And it is a matter [already] decreed.’”
22. So she conceived him, and she withdrew with him to a remote place.
23. And the pains of childbirth drove her to the trunk of a palm tree. She said, “Oh, I wish I had died before this and was in oblivion, forgotten.”
24. But he called her from below her, “Do not grieve; your Lord has provided beneath you a stream.
25. And shake toward you the trunk of the palm tree; it will drop upon you ripe, fresh dates.
26. So eat and drink and be contented. And if you see from among humanity anyone, say, ‘Indeed, I have vowed to the Most Merciful abstention, so I will not speak today to [any] man.’”
27. Then she brought him to her people, carrying him. They said, “O Mary, you have certainly done a thing unprecedented.
28. O sister of Aaron, your father was not a man of evil, nor was your mother unchaste.”
29. So she pointed to him. They said, “How can we speak to one who is in the cradle a child?”
30. [Jesus] said, “Indeed, I am the servant of God. He has given me the Scripture and made me a prophet.

31. And He has made me blessed wherever I am and has enjoined upon me prayer and zakāh as long as I remain alive
32. And [made me] dutiful to my mother, and He has not made me a wretched tyrant.
33. And peace is on me the day I was born and the day I will die and the day I am raised alive.”
34. That is Jesus, the son of Mary—the word of truth about which they are in dispute.
35. It is not [befitting] for God to take a son; exalted is He! When He decrees an affair, He only says to it, “Be,” and it is.
36. [Jesus said], “And indeed, God is my Lord and your Lord, so worship Him. That is a straight path.”
37. Then the factions differed [concerning Jesus] from among them, so woe to those who disbelieved—from the scene of a tremendous Day.
38. How [clearly] they will hear and see the Day they come to Us, but the wrongdoers today are in clear error.
39. And warn them, [O Muhammad], of the Day of Regret, when the matter will be concluded; and [yet], they are in [a state of] heedlessness, and they do not believe.
40. Indeed, it is We who will inherit the earth and whoever is on it, and to Us they will be returned.
41. And mention in the Book [the story of] Abraham. Indeed, he was a man of truth and a prophet.
42. [Mention] when he said to his father, “O my father, why do you worship that which does not hear and does not see and will not benefit you at all?”
43. O my father, indeed there has come to me of knowledge that which has not come to you, so follow me; I will guide you to an even path.
44. O my father, do not worship [i.e., obey] Satan. Indeed Satan has ever been, to the Most Merciful, disobedient.
45. O my father, indeed I fear that there will touch you a punishment from the Most Merciful so you would be to Satan a companion [in Hellfire].”
46. [His father] said, “Have you no desire for my gods, O Abraham? If you do not desist, I will surely stone you, so avoid me a prolonged time.”
47. [Abraham] said, “Peace [i.e., safety] will be upon you. I will ask forgiveness for you of my Lord. Indeed, He is ever gracious to me.
48. And I will leave you and those you invoke other than God and will invoke my Lord. I expect that I will not be in invocation to my Lord unhappy [i.e., disappointed].”
49. So when he had left them and those they worshipped other than God, We gave him Isaac and Jacob, and each [of them] We made a prophet.
50. And We gave them of Our mercy, and We made for them a mention [i.e., reputation] of high honour.
51. And mention in the Book, Moses. Indeed, he was chosen, and he was a messenger and a prophet.
52. And We called him from the side of the mount at [his] right and brought him near, confiding [to him].
53. And We gave him out of Our mercy his brother Aaron as a prophet.
54. And mention in the Book, Ishmael. Indeed, he was true to his promise, and he was a messenger and a prophet.
55. And he used to enjoin on his people prayer and zakāh and was to his Lord pleasing [i.e., accepted by Him],
56. And mention in the Book, Idrees. Indeed, he was a man of truth and a prophet.
57. And We raised him to a high station.
58. Those were the ones upon whom God bestowed favor from among the prophets of the descendants of Adam and of those We carried [in the ship] with Noah, and of the descendants of Abraham and Israel [i.e., Jacob], and of those whom We guided and chose. When the verses of the Most Merciful were recited to them, they fell in prostration and weeping.
59. But there came after them successors [i.e., later generations] who neglected prayer and pursued desires; so they are going to meet evil—

60. Except those who repent, believe and do righteousness; for those will enter Paradise and will not be wronged at all.
61. [Therein are] gardens of perpetual residence which the Most Merciful has promised His servants in the unseen. Indeed, His promise has ever been coming.
62. They will not hear therein any ill speech—only [greetings of] peace—and they will have their provision therein, morning and afternoon.
63. That is Paradise, which We give as inheritance to those of Our servants who were fearing of God.
64. [Gabriel said], “And we [angels] descend not except by the order of your Lord. To Him belongs that before us and that behind us and what is in between. And never is your Lord forgetful—
65. Lord of the heavens and the earth and whatever is between them—so worship Him and have patience for His worship. Do you know of any similarity to Him?”
66. And man [i.e., the disbeliever] says, “When I have died, am I going to be brought forth alive?”
67. Does man not remember that We created him before, while he was nothing?
68. So by your Lord, We will surely gather them and the devils; then We will bring them to be present around Hell upon their knees.
69. Then We will surely extract from every sect those of them who were worst against the Most Merciful in insolence.
70. Then, surely it is We who are most knowing of those most worthy of burning therein.
71. And there is none of you except he will come to it. This is upon your Lord an inevitability decreed.
72. Then We will save those who feared God and leave the wrongdoers within it, on their knees.
73. And when Our verses are recited to them as clear evidences, those who disbelieve say to those who believe, “Which of [our] two parties is best in position and best in association?”
74. And how many a generation have We destroyed before them who were better in possessions and [outward] appearance?
75. Say, “Whoever is in error—let the Most Merciful extend for him an extension [in wealth and time] until, when they see that which they were promised—either punishment [in this world] or the Hour [of resurrection]—they will come to know who is worst in position and weaker in soldiers.”
76. And God increases those who were guided, in guidance, and the enduring good deeds are better to your Lord for reward and better for recourse.
77. Then, have you seen he who disbelieved in Our verses and said, “I will surely be given wealth and children [in the next life]?”
78. Has he looked into the unseen, or has he taken from the Most Merciful a promise?
79. No! We will record what he says and extend [i.e., increase] for him from the punishment extensively.
80. And We will inherit him [in] what he mentions, and he will come to Us alone.
81. And they have taken besides God [false] deities that they would be for them [a source of] honour.
82. No! They [i.e., those “gods”] will deny their worship of them and will be against them opponents [on the Day of Judgement].
83. Do you not see that We have sent the devils upon the disbelievers, inciting them [to evil] with [constant] incitement?
84. So be not impatient over them. We only count out [i.e., allow] to them a [limited] number.
85. On the Day We will gather the righteous to the Most Merciful as a delegation
86. And will drive the criminals to Hell in thirst
87. None will have [power of] intercession except he who had taken from the Most Merciful a covenant.
88. And they say, “The Most Merciful has taken [for Himself] a son.”
89. You have done an atrocious thing.

90. The heavens almost rupture therefrom and the earth splits open and the mountains collapse in devastation
91. That they attribute to the Most Merciful a son.
92. And it is not appropriate for the Most Merciful that He should take a son.
93. There is no one in the heavens and earth but that he comes to the Most Merciful as a servant.
94. He has enumerated them and counted them a [full] counting.
95. And all of them are coming to Him on the Day of Resurrection alone.
96. Indeed, those who have believed and done righteous deeds—the Most Merciful will appoint for them affection.
97. So, [O Muhammad], We have only made it [i.e., the Qur'ān] easy in your tongue [i.e., the Arabic language] that you may give good tidings thereby to the righteous and warn thereby a hostile people.
98. And how many have We destroyed before them of generations? Do you perceive of them anyone or hear from them a sound?

### Sūrah 55: ar-Rahmān

*In the Name of God, the Most Compassionate, the Most Merciful*

1. The Most Merciful
2. Taught the Qur'ān,
3. Created man,
4. [And] taught him eloquence.
5. The sun and the moon [move] by precise calculation,
6. And the stars and trees prostrate.
7. And the heaven He raised and imposed the balance
8. That you not transgress within the balance.
9. And establish weight in justice and do not make deficient the balance.
10. And the earth He laid [out] for the creatures.
11. Therein is fruit and palm trees having sheaths [of dates]
12. And grain having husks and scented plants.
13. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
14. He created man from clay like [that of] pottery.
15. And He created the jinn from a smokeless flame of fire.
16. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
17. [He is] Lord of the two sunrises and Lord of the two sunsets.
18. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
19. He released the two seas, meeting [side by side];
20. Between them is a barrier [so] neither of them transgresses.
21. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
22. From both of them emerge pearl and coral.
23. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
24. And to Him belong the ships [with sails] elevated in the sea like mountains.
25. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
26. Everyone upon it [i.e., the earth] will perish,

27. And there will remain the Face of your Lord, Owner of Majesty and Honour.
28. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
29. Whoever is within the heavens and earth asks Him; every day He is in [i.e., bringing about] a matter.
30. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
31. We will attend to you, O prominent beings.
32. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
33. O company of jinn and mankind, if you are able to pass beyond the regions of the heavens and the earth, then pass. You will not pass except by authority [from God].
34. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
35. There will be sent upon you a flame of fire and smoke, and you will not defend yourselves.
36. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
37. And when the heaven is split open and becomes rose-colored like oil—
38. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?—
39. Then on that Day none will be asked about his sin among men or jinn.
40. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
41. The criminals will be known by their marks, and they will be seized by the forelocks and the feet.
42. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
43. This is Hell, which the criminals deny.
44. They will go around between it and scalding water, heated [to the utmost degree].
45. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
46. But for he who has feared the position of his Lord are two gardens—
47. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?—
48. Having [spreading] branches.
49. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
50. In both of them are two springs, flowing.
51. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
52. In both of them are of every fruit, two kinds.
53. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
54. [They are] reclining on beds whose linings are of silk brocade, and the fruit of the two gardens is hanging low.
55. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
56. In them are women limiting [their] glances, untouched before them by man or jinn!—
57. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?—
58. As if they were rubies and coral.
59. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
60. Is the reward for good [anything] but good?
61. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
62. And below them both [in excellence] are two [other] gardens—
63. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?—
64. Dark green [in color].
65. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
66. In both of them are two springs, spouting.

67. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
68. In both of them are fruit and palm trees and pomegranates.
69. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
70. In them are good and beautiful women
71. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?—
72. Fair ones reserved in pavilions—
73. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?—
74. Untouched before them by man or jinni—
75. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?—
76. Reclining on green cushions and beautiful fine carpets.
77. So which of the favors of your Lord would you deny?
78. Blessed is the name of your Lord, Owner of Majesty and Honour.

### Sūrah 76: al-Insān

*In the Name of God, the Most Compassionate, the Most Merciful*

1. Has there [not] come upon man a period of time when he was not a thing [even] mentioned?
2. Indeed, We created man from a sperm-drop mixture that We may try him; and We made him hearing and seeing.
3. Indeed, We guided him to the way, be he grateful or be he ungrateful.
4. Indeed, We have prepared for the disbelievers chains and shackles and a blaze.
5. Indeed, the righteous will drink from a cup [of wine] whose mixture is of Kāfūr,
6. A spring of which the [righteous] servants of God will drink; they will make it gush forth in force [and abundance].
7. They [are those who] fulfill [their] vows and fear a Day whose evil will be widespread.
8. And they give food in spite of love for it to the needy, the orphan, and the captive,
9. [Saying], “We feed you only for the countenance [i.e., approval] of God. We wish not from you reward or gratitude.
10. Indeed, We fear from our Lord a Day austere and distressful.”
11. So God will protect them from the evil of that Day and give them radiance and happiness
12. And will reward them for what they patiently endured [with] a garden [in Paradise] and silk [garments].
13. [They will be] reclining therein on adorned couches. They will not see therein any [burning] sun or [freezing] cold.
14. And near above them are its shades, and its [fruit] to be picked will be lowered in compliance.
15. And there will be circulated among them vessels of silver and cups having been [created] clear [as glass],
16. Clear glasses [made] from silver of which they have determined the measure.
17. And they will be given to drink a cup [of wine] whose mixture is of ginger
18. [From] a fountain within it [i.e., Paradise] named Salsabeel.
19. There will circulate among them young boys made eternal. When you see them, you would think them [as beautiful as] scattered pearls.
20. And when you look there [in Paradise], you will see pleasure and great dominion.
21. Upon them [i.e., the inhabitants] will be green garments of fine silk and brocade. And they will be adorned with bracelets of silver, and their Lord will give them a purifying drink.

22. [And it will be said], “Indeed, this is for you a reward, and your effort has been appreciated.”
23. Indeed, it is We who have sent down to you, [O Muhammad], the Qur’ān progressively.
24. So be patient for the decision of your Lord and do not obey from among them a sinner or ungrateful [disbeliever].
25. And mention the name of your Lord [in prayer] morning and evening
26. And during the night prostrate to Him and exalt [i.e., praise] Him a long [part of the] night.
27. Indeed, these [disbelievers] love the immediate and leave behind them a grave Day.
28. We have created them and strengthened their forms, and when We will, We can change their likenesses with [complete] alteration.
29. Indeed, this is a reminder, so he who wills may take to his Lord a way.
30. And you do not will except that God wills. Indeed, God is ever Knowing and Wise.
31. He admits whom He wills into His mercy; but the wrongdoers—He has prepared for them a painful punishment.

### Sūrah 112: al-Ikhlās

*In the Name of God, the Most Compassionate, the Most Merciful*

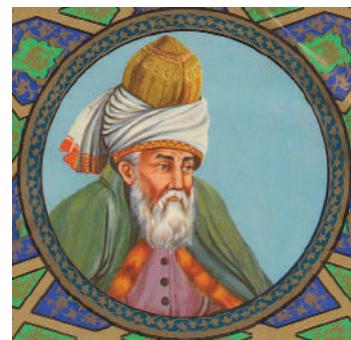
1. Say, “He is God, [who is] One,
2. God, the Eternal Refuge.
3. He neither begets nor is born,
4. Nor is there to Him any equivalent.”

## DIVANI SHAMSI TABRIZ AND MASNAVI

Jalal al-Din Rumi (1207-1273 C.E.)

Persian literature

Although Rumi was born in Afghanistan and lived in Turkey, his poetry was written mostly in Persian, and his Sufi religious beliefs transcended national boundaries. Afghanistan was on the edge of the Persian Empire, and Rumi's father was a traditional Islamic religious teacher who trained his son to follow in his footsteps. When he was forty, Rumi had a religious epiphany when he met Shams, a wandering Sufi, who was about sixty. Rumi became a Sufi, and the outpouring of poetry that followed was staggering. Sufism combines ideas from Islam, Christianity, and Buddhism, and it attempts to achieve union with God: not by logical means (which is beyond the ability of the human mind), but by emotional means. Rumi founded the Mevlevi order of dervishes, sometimes called whirling dervishes because of the spinning dance that they do to achieve a trance-like state. Despite the loss of Shams, who may have been murdered by Rumi's jealous disciples, Rumi continued to write, amassing over forty thousand couplets of poetry over his lifetime. The *Divani Shamsi Tabriz* is a collection of individual poems, including poems in the *ghazal* form and the *rubaiyat* form (which are different ways to group couplets). The *Masnavi* (also spelled *Mathnawi* or *Mathnawi*) is referred to as the “*Quran* in Persian”; it was meant to teach his followers the spirit of Sufi Islam, drawing on the *Quran*, folktales, and anecdotes (among other forms) for the prose sections between the poems. Unlike the *Divani Shamsi Tabriz*, the *Masnavi* is a cohesive collection, with a moral to each story. Today Rumi is the most important medieval Persian poet and one of the most widely-read mystical poets. Perhaps in part because of his emphasis on the positive, and his embrace of all religions, Rumi is now the best-selling poet in the United States (Ciabattari).



**IMAGE 6.3: RUMI** | A portrait of Rumi (or Molavi, as he is known in Iran) well-dressed and with a white beard.

**Author:** User “Bellavista1957”

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

## SELECTIONS FROM THE PERSIAN MYSTICS

Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, Edited by F. Hadland Davis, L. Cranmer-Byng, and S. A. Kapadia

License: Public Domain

### Sorrow Quenched In The Beloved

Through grief my days are as labour and sorrow.  
My days move on, hand in hand with anguish.  
Yet, though my days vanish thus, 'tis no matter.  
Do Thou abide, Incomparable Pure One.

### The Music Of Love

Hail to thee, then, O love, sweet madness!  
Thou who healest all our infirmities!  
Who art the Physician of our pride and self-conceit!  
Who art our Plato and our Galen!  
Love exalts our earthly bodies to heaven,  
And makes the very hills to dance with joy!  
O lover, 'twas Love that gave life to Mount Sinai,  
When "it quaked, and Moses fell down in a swoon."  
Did my Beloved only touch me with His lips,  
I too, like a flute, would burst out into melody.

### When The Rose Has Faded

When the rose has faded and the garden is withered,  
The song of the nightingale is no longer to be heard.  
The BELOVED is all in all, the lover only veils Him;  
The BELOVED is all that lives, the lover a dead thing.  
When the lover feels no longer love's quickening,  
He becomes like a bird who has lost its wings. Alas!  
How can I retain my senses about me,  
When the beloved shows not the Light of His countenance?

### The Silence Of Love

Love is the astrolabe of God's mysteries.  
A lover may hanker after this love or that love,  
But at the last he is drawn to the king of Love.  
However much we describe and explain Love,  
When we fall in love we are ashamed of our words.  
Explanation by the tongue makes most things clear,  
But Love unexplained is better.

### Earthly Love Essential To The Love Divine

In one 'twas said, "Leave power and weakness alone;  
Whatever withdraws thine eyes from God is an idol."  
In one 'twas said, "Quench not thy earthy torch,  
That it may be a light to lighten mankind.  
If thou neglectest regard and care for it,  
Thou wilt quench at midnight the lamp of Union."

### The Eternal Spendour Of The Beloved

Why dost Thou flee from the cries of us on earth?  
Why pourest Thou sorrow on the heart of the sorrowful?  
O Thou who, as each new morn dawns from the east,

Art seen uprising anew, like a bright fountain!  
 What excuse makest Thou for Thy witcheries?  
 O Thou whose lips are sweeter than sugar.  
 Thou that ever renewest the life of this old world.  
 Hear the cry of this lifeless body and heart!

### Woman

Woman is a ray of God, not a mere mistress,  
 The Creator's Self, as it were, not a mere creature!

### The Divine Union

Mustafa became beside himself at that sweet call,  
 His prayer failed on "the night of the early morning halt."  
 He lifted not head from that blissful sleep,  
 So that his morning prayer was put off till noon.  
 On that, his wedding night, in the presence of his bride.  
 His pure soul attained to kiss her hands.  
 Love and mistress are both veiled and hidden.  
 Impute it not a fault if I call Him "Bride."

### "He Knows About It All"

He who is from head to foot a perfect rose or lily.  
 To him spring brings rejoicing.  
 The useless thorn desires the autumn,  
 That autumn may associate itself with the garden;  
 And hide the rose's beauty and the thorn's shame,  
 That men may not see the bloom of the one and the other's shame;  
 That common stone and pure ruby may appear all as one.

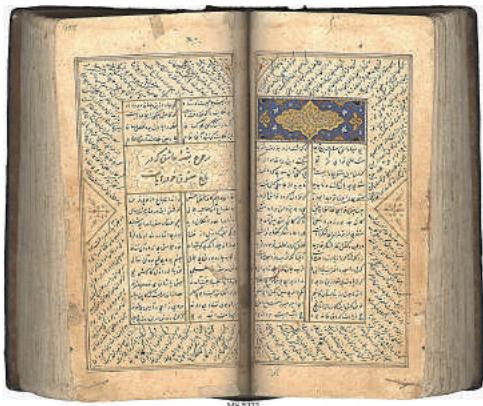


IMAGE 6.4: JALAL AL-DIN RUMI MATHNAVI-I MA'NAVI | The pages of a Persian manuscript.

**Author:** Hussain ibn Shaikh 'Ali  
**Source:** Wikimedia Commons  
**License:** Public Domain

### Resignation

True, the Gardener knows the difference in the autumn,  
 But the sight of One is better than the world's sight.

### Resignation The Way To Prefection

Whoso recognises and confesses his own defects  
 Is hastening in the way that leads to Perfection!  
 But he advances not towards the Almighty  
 Who fancies himself to be perfect.

### Love The Source Of Light Rather Than Vanishing Form

Whatsoever is perceived by sense He annuls,  
 But He establishes that which is hidden from the senses.  
 The lover's love is visible, his Beloved hidden.  
 The Friend is absent, the distraction He causes present.  
 Renounce these affections for outward forms,  
 Love depends not on outward form or face.  
 Whatever is beloved is not a mere empty form,  
 Whether your beloved be of the earth or heaven.  
 Whatever is the form you have fallen in love with—  
 Why do you forsake it the moment life leaves it?

### The Religion Of Love

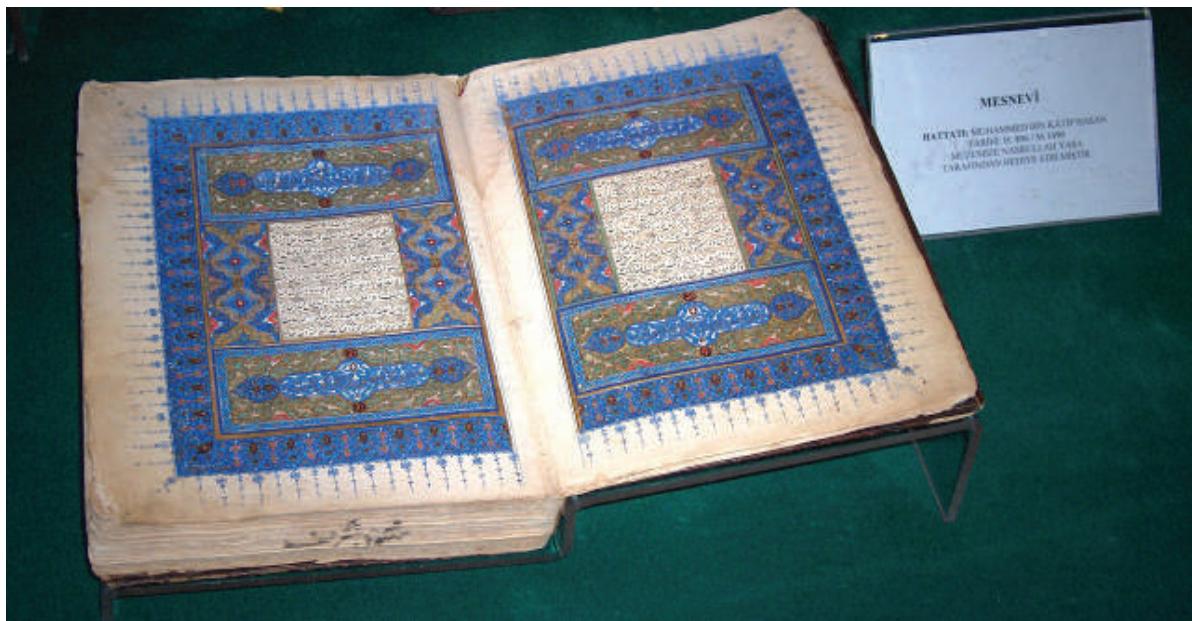
The form is still there; whence then this disgust at it?  
Ah! lover, consider well what is really your beloved.  
If a thing perceived by outward senses is the beloved,  
Then all who retain their senses must still love it;  
And since Love increases constancy,  
How can constancy fail while form abides?  
But the truth is, the sun's beams strike the wall.  
And the wall only reflects that borrowed light.  
Why give your heart to mere stones, simpleton?  
Go! Seek the Source of Light which shineth alway!

### The Religion Of Love

The sect of lovers is distinct from all others,  
Lovers have a religion and a faith of their own.  
Though the ruby has no stamp, what matters it?  
Love is fearless in the midst of the sea of fear.

### “Pain Is Treasure”

Pain is a treasure, for it contains mercies;  
The kernel is soft when the rind is scraped off.



**IMAGE 6.5: MASNAVI** | Pages of a Persian manuscript with beautiful blue decorations around the text.

**Author:** Georges Jansoone

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** CC BY 3.0

**SELECTIONS FROM THE FLOWERS OF THE PERSIAN POETS**

License: Public Domain

Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, Edited by Nathan Haskell Dole and Belle M. Walker

"I To Myself Am Unknown"

Lo, for I to myself am unknown, now in God's name what must I do?  
 I adore not the Cross nor the Crescent, I am not a Gianour nor a Jew.  
 East nor West land nor sea is my home, I have kin nor with angel nor gnome,  
 I am wrought not of fire nor of foam, I am shaped not of dust nor of dew.  
 I was born not in China afar, not in Saqsin and not in Bulghar;  
 Not in India, where five rivers are, nor 'Iraq nor Khorasan I grew.  
 Not in this world nor that world I dwell, not in Paradise, neither in Hell;  
 Not from Eden and Rizwan I fell, not from Adam my lineage I drew.  
 In a place beyond uttermost Place, in a tract without shadow of trace,  
 Soul and body transcending, I live in the soul of my Loved One anew!

**SHAHNAMEH**

Abu'l-Qasim Ferdowsi (ca. 935-ca. 1020 C.E.)

Begun ca. 977 and finished 1010 C.E.

Iran

Ferdowsi's *Shahnameh*, or *Book of Kings*, is an epic that includes other material, stretching from the creation of the world, through the legendary heroes that are the protagonists of epic literature, to the historical kings of Persia (modern-day Iran) up to the Muslim invasion. Written in classical Persian, with very few Arabic words, the *Shahnameh* records the history of Persia at a time when its traditions were changing. The characters in the epic follow Zoroastrianism, the state religion of Persia from at least 1000 B.C.E. (and perhaps as early as 1500 B.C.E.) until the Muslim invasion in 650 C.E. Zoroastrianism is monotheistic; the one god is Ahura Mazda (also called Hormozd in the text), who is challenged by an evil spirit named Angra Mainyu (also called Ahriman in the text). In the story of "Sekander" (Alexander the Great), Ferdowsi rewrites history, making Alexander the (secret) son of a Persian king, so that his conquest of the Persian Empire is an internal struggle, rather than a Persian defeat by an outside invader. In "Rudabeh," the meeting of Rudabeh and her true love includes the earliest written reference to a Rapunzel-like scene in literature. The other selection is from the story of Rostam and his son Sohrab, one of the most famous and frequently translated sections in the epic because of its subject matter: a father and son who unknowingly end up on opposite sides on a battlefield.

Written by Laura J. Getty

**THE SHAH NAMEH FROM PERSIAN LITERATURE, VOLUME 1**

License: Public Domain

Firdusi, Translated by James Atkinson

Rúdábeh

The chief of Kábúl was descended from the family of Zohák. He was named Mihráb, and to secure the safety of his state, paid annual tribute to Sám. Mihráb, on the arrival of Zál, went out of the city to see him, and was hospitably entertained by the young hero, who soon discovered that he had a daughter of wonderful attractions.

Her name Rúdábeh; screened from public view,  
 Her countenance is brilliant as the sun;  
 From head to foot her lovely form is fair  
 As polished ivory. Like the spring, her cheek  
 Presents a radiant bloom,—in stature tall,  
 And o'er her silvery brightness, richly flow

Dark musky ringlets clustering to her feet.  
 She blushes like the rich pomegranate flower;  
 Her eyes are soft and sweet as the narcissus,  
 Her lashes from the raven's jetty plume  
 Have stolen their blackness, and her brows are bent  
 Like archer's bow. Ask ye to see the moon?  
 Look at her face. Seek ye for musky fragrance?  
 She is all sweetness. Her long fingers seem  
 Pencils of silver, and so beautiful  
 Her presence, that she breathes of Heaven and love.

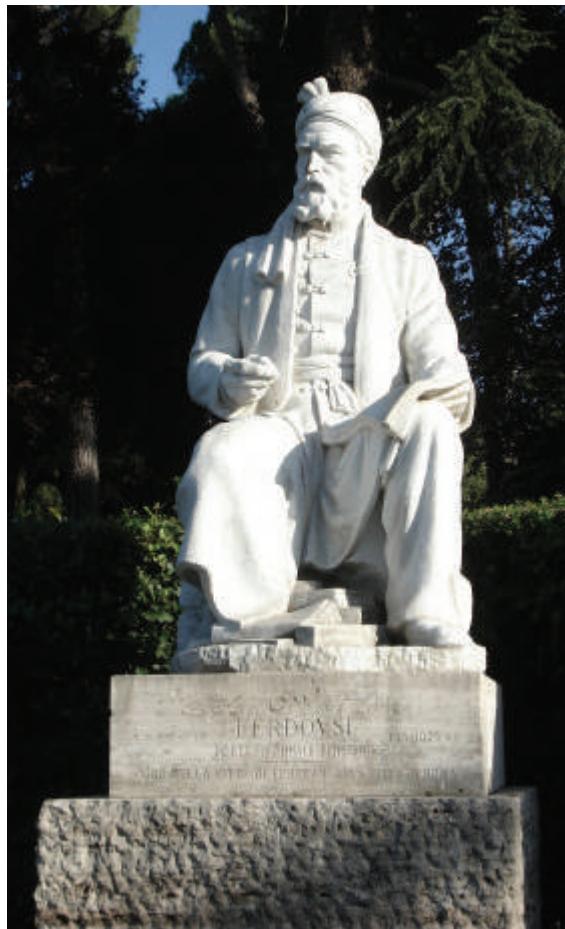
Such was the description of Rúdábeh, which inspired the heart of Zál with the most violent affection, and imagination added to her charms.

Mihráb again waited on Zál, who received him graciously, and asked him in what manner he could promote his wishes. Mihráb said that he only desired him to become his guest at a banquet he intended to invite him to; but Zál thought proper to refuse, because he well knew, if he accepted an invitation of the kind from a relation of Zohák, that his father Sám and the King of Persia would be offended. Mihráb returned to Kábúl disappointed, and having gone into his harem, his wife, Síndokht, inquired after the stranger from Zábul, the white-headed son of Sám. She wished to know what he was like, in form and feature, and what account he gave of his sojourn with the Símúrgh. Mihráb described him in the warmest terms of admiration—he was valiant, he said, accomplished and handsome, with no other defect than that of white hair. And so boundless was his praise, that Rúdábeh, who was present, drank every word with avidity, and felt her own heart warmed into admiration and love. Full of emotion, she afterwards said privately to her attendants:

“To you alone the secret of my heart  
 I now unfold; to you alone confess  
 The deep sensations of my captive soul.  
 I love, I love; all day and night of him  
 I think alone—I see him in my dreams—  
 You only know my secret—aid me now,  
 And soothe the sorrows of my bursting heart.”

The attendants were startled with this confession and entreaty, and ventured to remonstrate against so preposterous an attachment.

“What! hast thou lost all sense of shame,  
 All value for thy honored name!  
 That thou, in loveliness supreme,  
 Of every tongue the constant theme,  
 Should choose, and on another's word.  
 The nursling of a Mountain Bird!  
 A being never seen before,  
 Which human mother never bore!  
 And can the hoary locks of age,  
 A youthful heart like thine engage?  
 Must thy enchanting form be prest  
 To such a dubious monster's breast?  
 And all thy beauty's rich array,  
 Thy peerless charms be thrown away?”



**IMAGE 6.6: STATUE OF FERDOWSI** | Marble statue of Ferdowsi seated.

**Author:** User “Harlock81”

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** CC BY-SA 3.0

This violent remonstrance was more calculated to rouse the indignation of Rúdábeh than to induce her to change her mind. It did so. But she subdued her resentment, and again dwelt upon the ardor of her passion.

"My attachment is fixed, my election is made,  
And when hearts are enchain'd 'tis in vain to upbraid.  
Neither Kízar nor Faghfúr I wish to behold,  
Nor the monarch of Persia with jewels and gold;  
All, all I despise, save the choice of my heart,  
And from his beloved image I never can part.  
Call him aged, or young, 'tis a fruitless endeavour  
To uproot a desire I must cherish for ever;  
Call him old, call him young, who can passion control?  
Ever present, and loved, he entrances my soul.  
'Tis for him I exist—him I worship alone,  
And my heart it must bleed till I call him my own."

As soon as the attendants found that Rúdábeh's attachment was deeply fixed, and not to be removed, they changed their purpose, and became obedient to her wishes, anxious to pursue any measure that might bring Zál and their mistress together. Rúdábeh was delighted with this proof of their regard.

It was spring-time, and the attendants repaired towards the halting-place of Zál, in the neighborhood of the city. Their occupation seemed to be gathering roses along the romantic banks of a pellucid streamlet, and when they purposely strayed opposite the tent of Zál, he observed them, and asked his friends—why they presumed to gather roses in his garden. He was told that they were damsels sent by the moon of Kábulistán from the palace of Mihráb to gather roses, and upon hearing this his heart was touched with emotion. He rose up and rambled about for amusement, keeping the direction of the river, followed by a servant with a bow. He was not far from the damsels, when a bird sprung up from the water, which he shot, upon the wing, with an arrow. The bird happened to fall near the rose-gatherers, and Zál ordered his servant to bring it to him. The attendants of Rúdábeh lost not the opportunity, as he approached them, to inquire who the archer was. "Know ye not," answered the servant, "that this is Ním-rúz, the son of Sám, and also called Dustán, the greatest warrior ever known." At this the damsels smiled, and said that they too belonged to a person of distinction—and not of inferior worth—to a star in the palace of Mihráb. "We have come from Kábul to the King of Zábulistán, and should Zál and Rúdábeh be of equal rank, her ruby lips may become acquainted with his, and their wished-for union be effected." When the servant returned, Zál was immediately informed of the conversation that had taken place, and in consequence presents were prepared.

They who to gather roses came—went back  
With precious gems—and honorary robes;  
And two bright finger-rings were secretly  
Sent to the princess.

Then did the attendants of Rúdábeh exult in the success of their artifice, and say that the lion had come into their toils. Rúdábeh herself, however, had some fears on the subject. She anxiously sought to know exactly the personal appearance of Zál, and happily her warmest hopes were realized by the description she received. But one difficulty remained—how were they to meet? How was she to see with her own eyes the man whom her fancy had depicted in such glowing colors? Her attendants, sufficiently expert at intrigue, soon contrived the means of gratifying her wishes. There was a beautiful rural retreat in a sequestered situation, the apartments of which were adorned with pictures of great men, and ornamented in the most splendid manner. To this favorite place Rúdábeh retired, and most magnificently dressed, awaiting the coming of Zál, whom her attendants had previously invited to repair thither as soon as the sun had gone down. The shadows of evening were falling as he approached, and the enamoured princess thus addressed him from her balcony:—

"May happiness attend thee ever, thou,  
Whose lucid features make this gloomy night  
Clear as the day; whose perfume scents the breeze;  
Thou who, regardless of fatigue, hast come  
On foot too, thus to see me—"

Hearing a sweet voice, he looked up, and beheld a bright face in the balcony, and he said to the beautiful vision:

"How often have I hoped that Heaven  
 Would, in some secret place display  
 Thy charms to me, and thou hast given  
 My heart the wish of many a day;  
 For now thy gentle voice I hear,  
 And now I see thee—speak again!  
 Speak freely in a willing ear,  
 And every wish thou hast obtain."

Not a word was lost upon Rúdábeh, and she soon accomplished her object. Her hair was so luxuriant, and of such a length, that casting it loose it flowed down from the balcony; and, after fastening the upper part to a ring, she requested Zál to take hold of the other end and mount up. He ardently kissed the musky tresses, and by them quickly ascended.

Then hand in hand within the chambers they  
 Gracefully passed.—Attractive was the scene,  
 The walls embellished by the painter's skill,  
 And every object exquisitely formed,  
 Sculpture, and architectural ornament,  
 Fit for a king. Zál with amazement gazed  
 Upon what art had done, but more he gazed  
 Upon the witching radiance of his love,  
 Upon her tulip cheeks, her musky locks,  
 Breathing the sweetness of a summer garden;  
 Upon the sparkling brightness of her rings,  
 Necklace, and bracelets, glittering on her arms.  
 His mien too was majestic—on his head  
 He wore a ruby crown, and near his breast  
 Was seen a belted dagger. Fondly she  
 With side-long glances marked his noble aspect,  
 The fine proportions of his graceful limbs,  
 His strength and beauty. Her enamoured heart  
 Suffused her cheek with blushes, every glance  
 Increased the ardent transports of her soul.  
 So mild was his demeanour, he appeared  
 A gentle lion toying with his prey.  
 Long they remained rapt in admiration  
 Of each other. At length the warrior rose,  
 And thus addressed her: "It becomes not us  
 To be forgetful of the path of prudence,  
 Though love would dictate a more ardent course,  
 How oft has Sám, my father, counselled me,  
 Against unseemly thoughts,—unseemly deeds,—  
 Always to choose the right, and shun the wrong.  
 How will he burn with anger when he hears  
 This new adventure; how will Minúchihr  
 Indignantly reproach me for this dream!  
 This waking dream of rapture! but I call  
 High Heaven to witness what I now declare—  
 Whoever may oppose my sacred vows,  
 I still am thine, affianced thine, for ever."

And thus Rúdábeh: "Thou hast won my heart,  
 And kings may sue in vain; to thee devoted,  
 Thou art alone my warrior and my love."  
 Thus they exclaimed,—then Zál with fond adieu  
 Softly descended from the balcony,  
 And hastened to his tent.

As speedily as possible he assembled together his counsellors and Múbids to obtain their advice on the present extraordinary occasion, and he represented to them the sacred importance of encouraging matrimonial alliances.

For marriage is a contract sealed by Heaven—  
How happy is the Warrior's lot, amidst  
His smiling children; when he dies, his son  
Succeeds him, and enjoys his rank and name.  
And is it not a glorious thing to say—  
This is the son of Zál, or this of Sám,  
The heir of his renowned progenitor?

He then related to them the story of his love and affection for the daughter of Mihráb; but the Múbids, well knowing that the chief of Kábúl was of the family of Zohák, the serpent-king, did not approve the union desired, which excited the indignation of Zál. They, however, recommended his writing a letter to Sám, who might, if he thought proper, refer the matter to Minúchihr. The letter was accordingly written and despatched, and when Sám received it, he immediately referred the question to his astrologers, to know whether the nuptials, if solemnized between Zál and Rúdábeh, would be prosperous or not. They foretold that the nuptials would be prosperous, and that the issue would be a son of wonderful strength and power, the conqueror of the world. This announcement delighted the heart of the old warrior, and he sent the messenger back with the assurance of his approbation of the proposed union, but requested that the subject might be kept concealed till he returned with his army from the expedition to Karugsár, and was able to consult with Minúchihr.

Zál, exulting at his success, communicated the glad tidings to Rúdábeh by their female emissary, who had hitherto carried on successfully the correspondence between them. But as she was conveying an answer to this welcome news, and some presents to Zál, Síndokht, the mother of Rúdábeh, detected her, and, examining the contents of the packet, she found sufficient evidence, she thought, of something wrong.

“What treachery is this? What have we here!  
Surbund and male attire? Thou, wretch, confess!  
Disclose thy secret doings.”

The emissary, however, betrayed nothing; but declared that she was a dealer in jewels and dresses, and had been only showing her merchandise to Rúdábeh. Síndokht, in extreme agitation of mind, hastened to her daughter's apartment to ascertain the particulars of this affair, when Rúdábeh at once fearlessly acknowledged her unalterable affection for Zál,

“I love him so devotedly, all day,  
All night my tears have flowed unceasingly;  
And one hair of his head I prize more dearly  
Than all the world beside; for him I live;  
And we have met, and we have sat together,  
And pledged our mutual love with mutual joy  
And innocence of heart.”

Rúdábeh further informed her of Sám's consent to their nuptials, which in some degree satisfied the mother. But when Mihráb was made acquainted with the arrangement, his rage was unbounded, for he dreaded the resentment of Sám and Minúchihr when the circumstances became fully known to them. Trembling with indignation he drew his dagger, and would have instantly rushed to Rúdábeh's chamber to destroy her, had not Síndokht fallen at his feet and restrained him. He insisted, however, on her being brought before him; and upon his promise not to do her any harm, Síndokht complied. Rúdábeh disdained to take off her ornaments to appear as an offender and a suppliant, but, proud of her choice, went into her father's presence, gayly adorned with jewels, and in splendid apparel. Mihráb received her with surprise.

“Why all this glittering finery? Is the devil  
United to an angel? When a snake  
Is met with in Arabia, it is killed!”

But Rúdábeh answered not a word, and was permitted to retire with her mother.

When Minúchihr was apprised of the proceedings between Zál and Rúdábeh, he was deeply concerned, anticipating nothing but confusion and ruin to Persia from the united influence of Zál and Mihráb. Feridún had purified the world from the abominations of Zohák, and as Mihráb was a descendant of that merciless tyrant, he feared that some attempt would be made to resume the enormities of former times; Sám was therefore required to give his advice on the occasion.

The conqueror of Karugsár and Mázinderán was received on his return with cordial rejoicings, and he charmed the king with the story of his triumphant success. The monarch against whom he had fought was descended, on the mother's side, from Zohák, and his Demon army was more numerous than ants, or clouds of locusts, covering mountain and plain. Sám thus proceeded in his description of the conflict.

"And when he heard my voice, and saw what deeds  
I had performed, approaching me, he threw  
His noose; but downward bending I escaped,  
And with my bow I showered upon his head  
Steel-pointed arrows, piercing through the brain;  
Then did I grasp his loins, and from his horse  
Cast him upon the ground, deprived of life.  
At this, the demons terrified and pale,  
Shrunk back, some flying to the mountain wilds,  
And others, taken on the battle-field,  
Became obedient to the Persian king."

Minúchihr, gratified by this result of the expedition, appointed Sám to a new enterprise, which was to destroy Kábul by fire and sword, especially the house of Mihráb; and that ruler, of the serpent-race, and all his adherents were to be put to death. Sám, before he took leave to return to his own government at Zábul, tried to dissuade him from this violent exercise of revenge, but without making any sensible impression upon him.

Meanwhile the vindictive intentions of Minúchihr, which were soon known at Kábul, produced the greatest alarm and consternation in the family of Mihráb. Zál now returned to his father, and Sám sent a letter to Minúchihr, again to deprecate his wrath, and appointed Zál the messenger. In this letter Sám enumerates his services at Karugsár and Mázinderán, and especially dwells upon the destruction of a prodigious dragon.

"I am thy servant, and twice sixty years  
Have seen my prowess. Mounted on my steed,  
Wielding my battle-axe, overthrowing heroes,  
Who equals Sám, the warrior? I destroyed  
The mighty monster, whose devouring jaws  
Unpeopled half the land, and spread dismay  
From town to town. The world was full of horror,  
No bird was seen in air, no beast of prey  
In plain or forest; from the stream he drew  
The crocodile; the eagle from the sky.  
The country had no habitant alive,  
And when I found no human being left,  
I cast away all fear, and girt my loins,  
And in the name of God went boldly forth,  
Armed for the strife. I saw him towering rise,  
Huge as a mountain, with his hideous hair  
Dragging upon the ground; his long black tongue  
Shut up the path; his eyes two lakes of blood;  
And, seeing me, so horrible his roar,  
The earth shook with affright, and from his mouth  
A flood of poison issued. Like a lion  
Forward I sprang, and in a moment drove  
A diamond-pointed arrow through his tongue,  
Fixing him to the ground. Another went  
Down his deep throat, and dreadfully he writhed.  
A third passed through his middle. Then I raised

My battle-axe, cow-headed, and with one  
 Tremendous blow, dislodged his venomous brain,  
 And deluged all around with blood and poison.  
 There lay the monster dead, and soon the world  
 Regained its peace and comfort. Now I'm old,  
 The vigour of my youth is past and gone,  
 And it becomes me to resign my station,  
 To Zál, my gallant son."

Mihráb continued in such extreme agitation, that in his own mind he saw no means of avoiding the threatened desolation of his country but by putting his wife and daughter to death. Síndokht however had a better resource, and suggested the expediency of waiting upon Sám herself, to induce him to forward her own views and the nuptials between Zál and Rúdábeh. To this Mihráb assented, and she proceeded, mounted on a richly caparisoned horse, to Zábúl with most magnificent presents, consisting of three hundred thousand dínars; ten horses with golden, and thirty with silver, housings; sixty richly attired damsels, carrying golden trays of jewels and musk, and camphor, and wine, and sugar; forty pieces of figured cloth; a hundred milch camels, and a hundred others for burden; two hundred Indian swords, a golden crown and throne, and four elephants. Sám was amazed and embarrassed by the arrival of this splendid array. If he accepted the presents, he would incur the anger of Minúchihr; and if he rejected them, Zál would be disappointed and driven to despair. He at length accepted them, and concurred in the wishes of Síndokht respecting the union of the two lovers.

When Zál arrived at the court of Minúchihr, he was received with honor, and the letter of Sám being read, the king was prevailed upon to consent to the pacific proposals that were made in favor of Mihráb, and the nuptials. He too consulted his astrologers, and was informed that the offspring of Zál and Rúdábeh would be a hero of matchless strength and valor. Zál, on his return through Kábúl, had an interview with Rúdábeh, who welcomed him in the most rapturous terms:—

Be thou for ever blest, for I adore thee,  
 And make the dust of thy fair feet my pillow.

In short, with the approbation of all parties the marriage at length took place, and was celebrated at the beautiful summer-house where first the lovers met. Sám was present at Kábúl on the happy occasion, and soon afterwards returned to Sístán, preparatory to resuming his martial labors in Karugsár and Mázinderán.

As the time drew near that Rúdábeh should become a mother, she suffered extremely from constant indisposition, and both Zál and Síndokht were in the deepest distress on account of her precarious state.

The cypress leaf was withering; pale she lay,  
 Unsoothed by rest or sleep, death seemed approaching.

At last Zál recollected the feather of the Símúrgh, and followed the instructions which he had received, by placing it on the fire. In a moment darkness surrounded them, which was, however, immediately dispersed by the sudden appearance of the Símúrgh. "Why," said the Símúrgh, "do I see all this grief and sorrow? Why are the tear-drops in the warrior's eyes? A child will be born of mighty power, who will become the wonder of the world."

The Símúrgh then gave some advice which was implicitly attended to, and the result was that Rúdábeh was soon out of danger. Never was beheld so prodigious a child. The father and mother were equally amazed. They called the boy Rustem. On the first day he looked a year old, and he required the milk of ten nurses. A likeness of him was immediately worked in silk, representing him upon a horse, and armed like a warrior, which was sent to Sám, who was then fighting in Mázinderán, and it made the old champion almost delirious with joy. At Kábúl and Zábúl there was nothing but feasting and rejoicing, as soon as the tidings were known, and thousands of dínars were given away in charity to the poor. When Rustem was five years of age, he ate as much as a man, and some say that even in his third year he rode on horseback. In his eighth year he was as powerful as any hero of the time.

In beauty of form and in vigour of limb,  
 No mortal was ever seen equal to him.

Both Sám and Mihráb, though far distant from the scene of felicity, were equally anxious to proceed to Zábúlistán to behold their wonderful grandson. Both set off, but Mihráb arrived first with great pomp, and a whole army for his suite, and went forth with Zál to meet Sám, and give him an honorable welcome. The boy Rustem was

mounted on an elephant, wearing a splendid crown, and wanted to join them, but his father kindly prevented him undergoing the inconvenience of alighting. Zál and Mihráb dismounted as soon as Sám was seen at a distance, and performed the ceremonies of an affectionate reception. Sám was indeed amazed when he did see the boy, and showered blessings on his head.

Afterwards Sám placed Mihráb on his right hand, and Zál on his left, and Rustem before him, and began to converse with his grandson, who thus manifested to him his martial disposition.

"Thou art the champion of the world, and I  
The branch of that fair tree of which thou art  
The glorious root: to thee I am devoted,  
But ease and leisure have no charms for me;  
Nor music, nor the songs of festive joy.  
Mounted and armed, a helmet on my brow,  
A javelin in my grasp, I long to meet  
The foe, and cast his severed head before thee."

Then Sám made a royal feast, and every apartment in his palace was richly decorated, and resounded with mirth and rejoicing. Mihráb was the merriest, and drank the most, and in his cups saw nothing but himself, so vain had he become from the countenance he had received. He kept saying:—

"Now I feel no alarm about Sám or Zál-zer,  
Nor the splendour and power of the great Minúchihr;  
Whilst aided by Rustem, his sword, and his mace,  
Not a cloud of misfortune can shadow my face.  
All the laws of Zohák I will quickly restore,  
And the world shall be fragrant and blest as before."

This exultation plainly betrayed the disposition of his race; and though Sám smiled at the extravagance of Mihráb, he looked up towards Heaven, and prayed that Rustem might not prove a tyrant, but be continually active in doing good, and humble before God.

Upon Sám departing, on his return to Karugsár and Mázinderán, Zál went with Rustem to Sístán, a province dependent on his government, and settled him there. The white elephant, belonging to Minúchihr, was kept at Sístán. One night Rustem was awakened out of his sleep by a great noise, and cries of distress when starting up and inquiring the cause, he was told that the white elephant had got loose, and was trampling and crushing the people to death. In a moment he issued from his apartment, brandishing his mace; but was soon stopped by the servants, who were anxious to expostulate with him against venturing out in the darkness of night to encounter a ferocious elephant. Impatient at being thus interrupted he knocked down one of the watchmen, who fell dead at his feet, and the others running away, he broke the lock of the gate, and escaped. He immediately opposed himself to the enormous animal, which looked like a mountain, and kept roaring like the River Nil. Regarding him with a cautious and steady eye, he gave a loud shout, and fearlessly struck him a blow, with such strength and vigor, that the iron mace was bent almost double. The elephant trembled, and soon fell exhausted and lifeless in the dust. When it was communicated to Zál that Rustem had killed the animal with one blow, he was amazed, and fervently returned thanks to heaven. He called him to him, and kissed him, and said: "My darling boy, thou art indeed unequalled in valor and magnanimity."

Then it occurred to Zál that Rustem, after such an achievement, would be a proper person to take vengeance on the enemies of his grandfather Narímán, who was sent by Feridún with a large army against an enchanted fort situated upon the mountain Sipund, and who whilst endeavoring to effect his object, was killed by a piece of rock thrown down from above by the besieged. The fort, which was many miles high, inclosed beautiful lawns of the freshest verdure, and delightful gardens abounding with fruit and flowers; it was also full of treasure. Sám, on hearing of the fate of his father, was deeply afflicted, and in a short time proceeded against the fort himself; but he was surrounded by a trackless desert. He knew not what course to pursue; not a being was ever seen to enter or come out of the gates, and, after spending months and years in fruitless endeavors, he was compelled to retire from the appalling enterprise in despair. "Now," said Zál to Rustem, "the time is come, and the remedy is at hand; thou art yet unknown, and may easily accomplish our purpose." Rustem agreed to the proposed adventure, and according to his father's advice, assumed the dress and character of a salt-merchant, prepared a caravan of camels, and secreted arms for himself and companions among the loads of salt. Everything being ready they set off, and it was not long before they reached the fort on the mountain Sipund. Salt being a precious article, and much wanted, as soon as

the garrison knew that it was for sale, the gates were opened; and then was Rustem seen, together with his warriors, surrounded by men, women, and children, anxiously making their purchases, some giving clothes in exchange, some gold, and some silver, without fear or suspicion.

But when the night came on, and it was dark,  
 Rustem impatient drew his warriors forth,  
 And moved towards the mansion of the chief—  
 But not unheard. The unaccustomed noise,  
 Announcing warlike menace and attack,  
 Awoke the Kotwál, who sprung up to meet  
 The peril threatened by the invading foe.  
 Rustem meanwhile uplifts his ponderous mace,  
 And cleaves his head, and scatters on the ground  
 The reeking brains. And now the garrison  
 Are on the alert, all hastening to the spot  
 Where battle rages; midst the deepened gloom  
 Flash sparkling swords, which show the crimson earth  
 Bright as the ruby.

Rustem continued fighting with the people of the fort all night, and just as morning dawned, he discovered the chief and slew him. Those who survived, then escaped, and not one of the inhabitants remained within the walls alive. Rustem's next object was to enter the governor's mansion. It was built of stone, and the gate, which was made of iron, he burst open with his battle-axe, and advancing onward, he discovered a temple, constructed with infinite skill and science, beyond the power of mortal man, and which contained amazing wealth, in jewels and gold. All the warriors gathered for themselves as much treasure as they could carry away, and more than imagination can conceive; and Rustem wrote to Zál to know his further commands on the subject of the capture. Zál, overjoyed at the result of the enterprise, replied:

Thou hast illumed the soul of Narímán,  
 Now in the blissful bowers of Paradise,  
 By punishing his foes with fire and sword.

He then recommended him to load all the camels with as much of the invaluable property as could be removed, and bring it away, and then burn and destroy the whole place, leaving not a single vestige; and the command having been strictly complied with, Rustem retraced his steps to Zábulistán.

On his return Zál pressed him to his heart,  
 And paid him public honors. The fond mother  
 Kissed and embraced her darling son, and all  
 Uniting, showered their blessings on his head.

### Story of Sohráb

O ye, who dwell in Youth's inviting bowers,  
 Waste not, in useless joy, your fleeting hours,  
 But rather let the tears of sorrow roll,  
 And sad reflection fill the conscious soul.  
 For many a jocund spring has passed away,  
 And many a flower has blossomed, to decay;  
 And human life, still hastening to a close,  
 Finds in the worthless dust its last repose.  
 Still the vain world abounds in strife and hate,  
 And sire and son provoke each other's fate;  
 And kindred blood by kindred hands is shed,  
 And vengeance sleeps not—dies not, with the dead.  
 All nature fades—the garden's treasures fall,

Young bud, and citron ripe—all perish, all.

And now a tale of sorrow must be told,  
A tale of tears, derived from Múbid old,  
And thus remembered.—

15

With the dawn of day,  
Rustem arose, and wandering took his way,  
Armed for the chase, where sloping to the sky,  
Túrán's lone wilds in sullen grandeur lie;  
There, to dispel his melancholy mood,  
He urged his matchless steed through glen and wood.  
Flushed with the noble game which met his view,  
He starts the wild-ass o'er the glistening dew;  
And, oft exulting, sees his quivering dart,  
Plunge through the glossy skin, and pierce the heart.  
Tired of the sport, at length, he sought the shade,  
Which near a stream embowering trees displayed,  
And with his arrow's point, a fire he raised,  
And thorns and grass before him quickly blazed.  
The severed parts upon a bough he cast,  
To catch the flames; and when the rich repast  
Was drest; with flesh and marrow, savory food,  
He quelled his hunger; and the sparkling flood  
That murmured at his feet, his thirst represt;  
Then gentle sleep composed his limbs to rest.

20

25

30

35

Meanwhile his horse, for speed and form renown'd,  
Ranged o'er the plain with flowery herbage crown'd,  
Encumbering arms no more his sides opprest,  
No folding mail confined his ample chest,  
Gallant and free, he left the Champion's side,  
And cropp'd the mead, or sought the cooling tide;  
When lo! it chanced amid that woodland chase,  
A band of horsemen, rambling near the place,  
Saw, with surprise, superior game astray,  
And rushed at once to seize the noble prey;  
But, in the imminent struggle, two beneath  
His steel-clad hoofs received the stroke of death;  
One proved a sterner fate—for downward borne,  
The mangled head was from the shoulders torn.  
Still undismayed, again they nimbly sprung,  
And round his neck the noose entangling flung:  
Now, all in vain, he spurns the smoking ground,  
In vain the tumult echoes all around;  
They bear him off, and view, with ardent eyes,  
His matchless beauty and majestic size;  
Then soothe his fury, anxious to obtain,  
A bounding steed of his immortal strain.

40

45

50

55

When Rustem woke, and miss'd his favourite horse,  
The loved companion of his glorious course;  
Sorrowing he rose, and, hastening thence, began  
To shape his dubious way to Samengán;  
“Reduced to journey thus, alone!” he said,  
“How pierce the gloom which thickens round my head;  
Burthen'd, on foot, a dreary waste in view,

60

65

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Where shall I bend my steps, what path pursue?<br>The scoffing Turks will cry, ‘Behold our might!<br>We won the trophy from the Champion-knight!<br>From him who, reckless of his fame and pride,<br>Thus idly slept, and thus ignobly died,’”<br>Girding his loins he gathered from the field,<br>His quivered stores, his beamy sword and shield,<br>Harness and saddle-gear were o'er him slung.<br>Bridle and mail across his shoulders hung. | 70  |
| Then looking round, with anxious eye, to meet,<br>The broad impression of his charger's feet,<br>The track he hail'd, and following, onward prest.<br>While grief and hope alternate filled his breast.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 75  |
| O'er vale and wild-wood led, he soon descries.<br>The regal city's shining turrets rise.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 80  |
| And when the Champion's near approach is known,<br>The usual homage waits him to the throne.<br>The king, on foot, received his welcome guest<br>With preferred friendship, and his coming blest:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 85  |
| But Rustem frowned, and with resentment fired,<br>Spoke of his wrongs, the plundered steed required.<br>“I've traced his footsteps to your royal town,<br>Here must he be, protected by your crown;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |     |
| But if retained, if not from fetters freed,<br>My vengeance shall o'ertake the felon-deed.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 90  |
| “My honored guest!” the wondering King replied—<br>“Shall Rustem's wants or wishes be denied?<br>But let not anger, headlong, fierce, and blind,<br>O'ercloud the virtues of a generous mind.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |     |
| If still within the limits of my reign,<br>The well known courser shall be thine again:<br>For Rakush never can remain concealed,<br>No more than Rustem in the battle-field!                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 95  |
| Then cease to nourish useless rage, and share<br>With joyous heart my hospitable fare.”                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 100 |
| The son of Zál now felt his wrath subdued,<br>And glad sensations in his soul renewed.<br>The ready herald by the King's command,<br>Convened the Chiefs and Warriors of the land;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 105 |
| And soon the banquet social glee restored,<br>And China wine-cups glittered on the board;<br>And cheerful song, and music's magic power,<br>And sparkling wine, beguiled the festive hour.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |     |
| The dulcet draughts o'er Rustem's senses stole,<br>And melting strains absorbed his softened soul.<br>But when approached the period of repose,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 110 |
| All, prompt and mindful, from the banquet rose;<br>A couch was spread well worthy such a guest,<br>Perfumed with rose and musk; and whilst at rest,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |     |
| In deep sound sleep, the wearied Champion lay,<br>Forgot were all the sorrows of the way.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 115 |
| One watch had passed, and still sweet slumber shed<br>Its magic power around the hero's head—<br>When forth Tahmíneh came—a damsel held                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 120 |

An amber taper, which the gloom dispelled,  
 And near his pillow stood; in beauty bright,  
 The monarch's daughter struck his wondering sight.  
 Clear as the moon, in glowing charms arrayed,  
 Her winning eyes the light of heaven displayed;  
 Her cypress form entranced the gazer's view,  
 Her waving curls, the heart, resistless, drew,  
 Her eye-brows like the Archer's bended bow;  
 Her ringlets, snares; her cheek, the rose's glow,  
 Mixed with the lily—from her ear-tips hung  
 Rings rich and glittering, star-like; and her tongue,  
 And lips, all sugared sweetness—pearls the while  
 Sparkled within a mouth formed to beguile.  
 Her presence dimmed the stars, and breathing round  
 Fragrance and joy, she scarcely touched the ground,  
 So light her step, so graceful—every part  
 Perfect, and suited to her spotless heart.

125

Rustem, surprised, the gentle maid addressed,  
 And asked what lovely stranger broke his rest.  
 "What is thy name," he said—"what dost thou seek  
 Amidst the gloom of night? Fair vision, speak!"

140

"O thou," she softly sigh'd, "of matchless fame!  
 With pity hear, Tahmíneh is my name!  
 The pangs of love my anxious heart employ,  
 And flattering promise long-expected joy;  
 No curious eye has yet these features seen,  
 My voice unheard, beyond the sacred screen.  
 How often have I listened with amaze,  
 To thy great deeds, enamoured of thy praise;  
 How oft from every tongue I've heard the strain,  
 And thought of thee—and sighed, and sighed again.  
 The ravenous eagle, hovering o'er his prey,  
 Starts at thy gleaming sword and flies away:  
 Thou art the slayer of the Demon brood,  
 And the fierce monsters of the echoing wood.  
 Where'er thy mace is seen, shrink back the bold,  
 Thy javelin's flash all tremble to behold.  
 Enchanted with the stories of thy fame,  
 My fluttering heart responded to thy name;  
 And whilst their magic influence I felt,  
 In prayer for thee devotedly I knelt;  
 And fervent vowed, thus powerful glory charms,  
 No other spouse should bless my longing arms.  
 Indulgent heaven propitious to my prayer,  
 Now brings thee hither to reward my care.  
 Túrán's dominions thou hast sought, alone,  
 By night, in darkness—thou, the mighty one!  
 O claim my hand, and grant my soul's desire;  
 Ask me in marriage of my royal sire;  
 Perhaps a boy our wedded love may crown,  
 Whose strength like thine may gain the world's renown.  
 Nay more—for Samengán will keep my word—  
 Rakush to thee again shall be restored."

145

150

155

160

165

170

- The damsel thus her ardent thought expressed,  
And Rustem's heart beat joyous in his breast,  
Hearing her passion—not a word was lost,  
And Rakush safe, by him still valued most;  
He called her near; with graceful step she came,  
And marked with throbbing pulse his kindled flame. 175
- And now a Múbid, from the Champion-knight,  
Requests the royal sanction to the rite;  
O'erjoyed, the King the honoured suit approves,  
O'erjoyed to bless the doting child he loves,  
And happier still, in showering smiles around,  
To be allied to warrior so renowned. 180  
When the delighted father, doubly blest,  
Resigned his daughter to his glorious guest,  
The people shared the gladness which it gave,  
The union of the beauteous and the brave.  
To grace their nuptial day—both old and young,  
The hymeneal gratulations sung: 185  
“May this young moon bring happiness and joy,  
And every source of enmity destroy.”  
The marriage-bower received the happy pair,  
And love and transport shower'd their blessings 190  
Ere from his lofty sphere the morn had thrown  
His glittering radiance, and in splendour shone,  
The mindful Champion, from his sinewy arm,  
His bracelet drew, the soul-ennobling charm;  
And, as he held the wondrous gift with pride, 200  
He thus address'd his love-devoted bride!  
“Take this,” he said, “and if, by gracious heaven,  
A daughter for thy solace should be given,  
Let it among her ringlets be displayed,  
And joy and honour will await the maid; 205  
But should kind fate increase the nuptial-joy,  
And make thee mother of a blooming boy,  
Around his arm this magic bracelet bind,  
To fire with virtuous deeds his ripening mind;  
The strength of Sám will nerve his manly form, 210  
In temper mild, in valour like the storm;  
His not the dastard fate to shrink, or turn  
From where the lions of the battle burn;  
To him the soaring eagle from the sky  
Will stoop, the bravest yield to him, or fly; 215  
Thus shall his bright career imperious claim  
The well-won honours of immortal fame!”  
Ardent he said, and kissed her eyes and face,  
And lingering held her in a fond embrace.
- When the bright sun his radiant brow displayed,  
And earth in all its loveliest hues arrayed,  
The Champion rose to leave his spouse's side,  
The warm affections of his weeping bride.  
For her, too soon the winged moments flew, 220  
Too soon, alas! the parting hour she knew;  
Clasped in his arms, with many a streaming tear,  
She tried, in vain, to win his deafen'd ear; 225

Still tried, ah fruitless struggle! to impart,  
The swelling anguish of her bursting heart.

The father now with gratulations due  
Rustum approaches, and displays to view  
The fiery war-horse—welcome as the light  
Of heaven, to one immersed in deepest night;  
The Champion, wild with joy, fits on the rein,  
And girds the saddle on his back again;  
Then mounts, and leaving sire and wife behind,  
Onward to Sistán rushes like the wind.

230

But when returned to Zábul's friendly shade,  
None knew what joys the Warrior had delayed;  
Still, fond remembrance, with endearing thought,  
Oft to his mind the scene of rapture brought.

235

When nine slow-circling months had roll'd away,  
Sweet-smiling pleasure hailed the brightening day—  
A wondrous boy Tahmíneh's tears suppresset,  
And lull'd the sorrows of her heart to rest;  
To him, predestined to be great and brave,  
The name Sohráb his tender mother gave;  
And as he grew, amazed, the gathering throng,  
View'd his large limbs, his sinews firm and strong;  
His infant years no soft endearment claimed:  
Athletic sports his eager soul inflamed;  
Broad at the chest and taper round the loins,  
Where to the rising hip the body joins;  
Hunter and wrestler; and so great his speed,  
He could overtake, and hold the swiftest steed.  
His noble aspect, and majestic grace,  
Betrayed the offspring of a glorious race.  
How, with a mother's ever anxious love,  
Still to retain him near her heart she strove!  
For when the father's fond inquiry came,  
Cautious, she still concealed his birth and name,  
And feign'd a daughter born, the evil fraught  
With misery to avert—but vain the thought;  
Not many years had passed, with downy flight,  
Ere he, Tahmíneh's wonder and delight,  
With glistening eye, and youthful ardour warm,  
Filled her foreboding bosom with alarm.  
“O now relieve my heart!” he said, “declare,  
From whom I sprang and breathe the vital air.  
Since, from my childhood I have ever been,  
Amidst my play-mates of superior mien;  
Should friend or foe demand my father's name,  
Let not my silence testify my shame!  
If still concealed, you falter, still delay,  
A mother's blood shall wash the crime away.”

245

250

255

260

265

270

275

“This wrath forego,” the mother answering cried,  
“And joyful hear to whom thou art allied.  
A glorious line precedes thy destined birth,  
The mightiest heroes of the sons of earth.  
The deeds of Sám remotest realms admire,  
And Zál, and Rustem thy illustrious sire!”

280

- In private, then, she Rustem's letter placed  
 Before his view, and brought with eager haste  
 Three sparkling rubies, wedges three of gold,  
 From Persia sent—"Behold," she said, "behold  
 Thy father's gifts, will these thy doubts remove  
 The costly pledges of paternal love!  
 Behold this bracelet charm, of sovereign power  
 To baffle fate in danger's awful hour;  
 But thou must still the perilous secret keep,  
 Nor ask the harvest of renown to reap;  
 For when, by this peculiar signet known,  
 Thy glorious father shall demand his son,  
 Doomed from her only joy in life to part,  
 O think what pangs will rend thy mother's heart!—  
 Seek not the fame which only teems with woe;  
 Afrásiyáb is Rustem's deadliest foe!  
 And if by him discovered, him I dread,  
 Revenge will fail upon thy guiltless head." 285
- The youth replied: "In vain thy sighs and tears,  
 The secret breathes and mocks thy idle fears.  
 No human power can fate's decrees control,  
 Or check the kindled ardour of my soul.  
 Then why from me the bursting truth conceal?  
 My father's foes even now my vengeance feel;  
 Even now in wrath my native legions rise,  
 And sounds of desolation strike the skies;  
 Káus himself, hurled from his ivory throne,  
 Shall yield to Rustem the imperial crown,  
 And thou, my mother, still in triumph seen,  
 Of lovely Persia hailed the honoured queen!  
 Then shall Túrán unite beneath my hand,  
 And drive this proud oppressor from the land!  
 Father and Son, in virtuous league combined,  
 No savage despot shall enslave mankind;  
 When Sun and Moon o'er heaven resplendent blaze,  
 Shall little stars obtrude their feeble rays?" 300
- He paused, and then: "O mother, I must now  
 My father seek, and see his lofty brow;  
 Be mine a horse, such as a prince demands,  
 Fit for the dusty field, a warrior's hands;  
 Strong as an elephant his form should be,  
 And chested like the stag, in motion free,  
 And swift as bird, or fish; it would disgrace  
 A warrior bold on foot to show his face." 305
- The mother, seeing how his heart was bent,  
 His day-star rising in the firmament,  
 Commands the stables to be searched to find  
 Among the steeds one suited to his mind;  
 Pressing their backs he tries their strength and nerve,  
 Bent double to the ground their bellies curve;  
 Not one, from neighbouring plain and mountain brought,  
 Equals the wish with which his soul is fraught;  
 Fruitless on every side he anxious turns,  
 Fruitless, his brain with wild impatience burns, 310
- 315
- 320
- 325
- 330
- 335

But when at length they bring the destined steed,  
 From Rakush bred, of lightning's winged speed,  
 Fleet, as the arrow from the bow-string flies,  
 Fleet, as the eagle darting through the skies,  
 Rejoiced he springs, and, with a nimble bound,  
 Vaults in his seat, and wheels the courser round;  
 "With such a horse—thus mounted, what remains?  
 Káús, the Persian King, no longer reigns!"  
 High flushed he speaks—with youthful pride elate,  
 Eager to crush the Monarch's glittering state;  
 He grasps his javelin with a hero's might,  
 And pants with ardour for the field of fight.

340

Soon o'er the realm his fame expanding spread,  
 And gathering thousands hasten'd to his aid.  
 His Grand-sire, pleased, beheld the warrior-train  
 Successive throng and darken all the plain;  
 And bounteously his treasures he supplied,  
 Camels, and steeds, and gold.—In martial pride,  
 Sohráb was seen—a Grecian helmet graced  
 His brow—and costliest mail his limbs embraced.

350

Afrásiyáb now hears with ardent joy,  
 The bold ambition of the warrior-boy,  
 Of him who, perfumed with the milky breath  
 Of infancy, was threatening war and death,  
 And bursting sudden from his mother's side,  
 Had launched his bark upon the perilous tide.

355

The insidious King sees well the tempting hour,  
 Favouring his arms against the Persian power,  
 And thence, in haste, the enterprise to share,  
 Twelve thousand veterans selects with care;  
 To Húmán and Bármán the charge consigns,  
 And thus his force with Samengán combines;  
 But treacherous first his martial chiefs he prest,  
 To keep the secret fast within their breast:—  
 "For this bold youth must not his father know,  
 Each must confront the other as his foe—  
 Such is my vengeance! With unhallowed rage,  
 Father and Son shall dreadful battle wage!  
 Unknown the youth shall Rustem's force withstand,  
 And soon o'erwhelm the bulwark of the land.  
 Rustem removed, the Persian throne is ours,  
 An easy conquest to confederate powers;  
 And then, secured by some propitious snare,  
 Sohráb himself our galling bonds shall wear.  
 Or should the Son by Rustem's falchion bleed,  
 The father's horror at that fatal deed,  
 Will rend his soul, and 'midst his sacred grief,  
 Káús in vain will supplicate relief."

360

The tutored chiefs advance with speed, and bring  
 Imperial presents to the future king;  
 In stately pomp the embassy proceeds;  
 Ten loaded camels, ten unrivalled steeds,  
 A golden crown, and throne, whose jewels bright

375

380

385

- Gleam in the sun, and shed a sparkling light,  
A letter too the crafty tyrant sends,  
And fraudulent thus the glorious aim commends.—  
“If Persia’s spoils invite thee to the field,  
Accept the aid my conquering legions yield;  
Led by two Chiefs of valour and renown,  
Upon thy head to place the kingly crown.” 395
- Elate with promised fame, the youth surveys  
The regal vest, the throne’s irradiant blaze,  
The golden crown, the steeds, the sumptuous load  
Of ten strong camels, craftily bestowed;  
Salutes the Chiefs, and views on every side,  
The lengthening ranks with various arms supplied.  
The march begins—the brazen drums resound,  
His moving thousands hide the trembling ground;  
For Persia’s verdant land he wields the spear,  
And blood and havoc mark his groaning rear. 405
- To check the Invader’s horror-spreading course,  
The barrier-fort opposed unequal force;  
That fort whose walls, extending wide, contained  
The stay of Persia, men to battle trained.  
Soon as Hujír the dusky crowd despaired,  
He on his own presumptuous arm relied,  
And left the fort; in mail with shield and spear,  
Vaunting he spoke—“What hostile force is here?  
What Chieftain dares our war-like realms invade?”  
“And who art thou?” Sohráb indignant said,  
Rushing towards him with undaunted look—  
“Hast thou, audacious! nerve and soul to brook  
The crocodile in fight, that to the strife  
Singly thou comest, reckless of thy life?” 415
- To this the foe replied—“A Turk and I  
Have never yet been bound in friendly tie;  
And soon thy head shall, severed by my sword,  
Gladden the sight of Persia’s mighty lord,  
While thy torn limbs to vultures shall be given,  
Or bleach beneath the parching blast of heaven.” 425
- The youthful hero laughing hears the boast,  
And now by each continual spears are tost,  
Mingling together; like a flood of fire  
The boaster meets his adversary’s ire;  
The horse on which he rides, with thundering pace,  
Seems like a mountain moving from its base;  
Sternly he seeks the stripling’s loins to wound,  
But the lance hurtless drops upon the ground;  
Sohráb, advancing, hurls his steady spear  
Full on the middle of the vain Hujír, 430  
Who staggers in his seat. With proud disdain  
The youth now flings him headlong on the plain,  
And quick dismounting, on his heaving breast  
Triumphant stands, his Khunjér firmly prest,  
To strike the head off—but the blow was stayed—Trembling,  
for life, the craven boaster prayed. 440

That mercy granted eased his coward mind,  
Though, dire disgrace, in captive bonds confined,  
And sent to Húmán, who amazed beheld  
How soon Sohráb his daring soul had quelled.

445

When Gúrd-afríd, a peerless warrior-dame,  
Heard of the conflict, and the hero's shame,  
Groans heaved her breast, and tears of anger flowed,  
Her tulip cheek with deeper crimson glowed;  
Speedful, in arms magnificent arrayed,  
A foaming palfrey bore the martial maid; 450  
The burnished mail her tender limbs embraced,  
Beneath her helm her clustering locks she placed;  
Poised in her hand an iron javelin gleamed,  
And o'er the ground its sparkling lustre streamed;  
Accoutred thus in manly guise, no eye 455  
However piercing could her sex descry;  
Now, like a lion, from the fort she bends,  
And 'midst the foe impetuously descends;  
Fearless of soul, demands with haughty tone,  
The bravest chief, for war-like valour known, 460  
To try the chance of fight. In shining arms,  
Again Sohráb the glow of battle warms;  
With scornful smiles, "Another deer!" he cries,  
"Come to my victor-toils, another prize!"  
The damsel saw his noose insidious spread, 465  
And soon her arrows whizzed around his head;  
With steady skill the twanging bow she drew,  
And still her pointed darts unerring flew;  
For when in forest sports she touched the string,  
Never escaped even bird upon the wing; 470  
Furious he burned, and high his buckler held,  
To ward the storm, by growing force impell'd;  
And tilted forward with augmented wrath,  
But Gúrd-áfríd aspires to cross his path;  
Now o'er her back the slacken'd bow resounds; 475  
She grasps her lance, her goaded courser bounds,  
Driven on the youth with persevering might—  
Unconquer'd courage still prolongs the fight;  
The stripling Chief shields off the threaten'd blow,  
Reins in his steed, then rushes on the foe; 480  
With outstretch'd arm, he bending backwards hung,  
And, gathering strength, his pointed javelin flung;  
Firm through her girdle belt the weapon went,  
And glancing down the polish'd armour rent.  
Staggering, and stunned by his superior force, 485  
She almost tumbled from her foaming horse,  
Yet unsubdued, she cut the spear in two,  
And from her side the quivering fragment drew,  
Then gain'd her seat, and onward urged her steed,  
But strong and fleet Sohráb arrests her speed: 490  
Strikes off her helm, and sees—a woman's face,  
Radiant with blushes and commanding grace!  
Thus undeceived, in admiration lost,  
He cries, "A woman, from the Persian host!  
If Persian damsels thus in arms engage, 495  
Who shall repel their warrior's fiercer rage?"

- Then from his saddle thong—his noose he drew,  
And round her waist the twisted loop he threw—  
“Now seek not to escape,” he sharply said,  
“Such is the fate of war, unthinking maid!  
And, as such beauty seldom swells our pride,  
Vain thy attempt to cast my toils aside.”
- 500
- In this extreme, but one resource remained,  
Only one remedy her hope sustained—  
Expert in wiles each siren-art she knew,  
And thence exposed her blooming face to view;  
Raising her full black orbs, serenely bright,  
In all her charms she blazed before his sight;
- 505
- And thus addressed Sohráb—“O warrior brave,  
Hear me, and thy imperilled honour save,  
These curling tresses seen by either host,  
A woman conquered, whence the glorious boast?  
Thy startled troops will know, with inward grief,  
A woman’s arm resists their towering chief,
- 510
- A woman’s arm resists their towering chief,  
Better preserve a warrior’s fair renown,  
And let our struggle still remain unknown,  
For who with wanton folly would expose  
A helpless maid, to aggravate her woes;  
The fort, the treasure, shall thy toils repay,
- 515
- The chief, and garrison, thy will obey,  
And thine the honours of this dreadful day.”
- Raptured he gazed, her smiles resistless move  
The wildest transports of ungoverned love.  
Her face disclosed a paradise to view,  
Eyes like the fawn, and cheeks of rosy hue—  
Thus vanquished, lost, unconscious of her aim,
- 520
- And only struggling with his amorous flame,  
He rode behind, as if compelled by fate,  
And heedless saw her gain the castle-gate.
- 525
- Safe with her friends, escaped from brand and spear,  
Smiling she stands, as if unknown to fear.  
—The father now, with tearful pleasure wild,  
Clasps to his heart his fondly-foster’d child;  
The crowding warriors round her eager bend,
- 530
- And grateful prayers to favouring heaven ascend.
- Now from the walls, she, with majestic air,  
Exclaims: “Thou warrior of Túrán! forbear,  
Why vex thy soul, and useless strife demand!  
Go, and in peace enjoy thy native land.”
- 535
- Stern he rejoins: “Thou beauteous tyrant! say,  
Though crown’d with charms, devoted to betray,  
When these proud walls, in dust and ruins laid,  
Yield no defence, and thou a captive maid,  
Will not repentance through thy bosom dart,
- 540
- And sorrow soften that disdainful heart?”
- Quick she replied: “O’er Persia’s fertile fields  
The savage Turk in vain his falchion yields;  
When King Káús this bold invasion hears,

- And mighty Rustem clad in arms appears!550  
 Destruction wide will glut the slippery plain,  
 And not one man of all thy host remain.  
 Alas! that bravery, high as thine, should meet  
 Amidst such promise, with a sure defeat,  
 But not a gleam of hope remains for thee,555  
 Thy wondrous valour cannot keep thee free.  
 Avert the fate which o'er thy head impends,  
 Return, return, and save thy martial friends!"
- Thus to be scorned, defrauded of his prey,560  
 With victory in his grasp—to lose the day!  
 Shame and revenge alternate filled his mind;  
 The suburb-town to pillage he consigned,  
 And devastation—not a dwelling spared;  
 The very owl was from her covert scared;  
 Then thus: "Though luckless in my aim to-day,565  
 To-morrow shall behold a sterner fray;  
 This fort, in ashes, scattered o'er the plain."  
 He ceased—and turned towards his troops again;  
 There, at a distance from the hostile power,570  
 He brooding waits the slaughter-breathing hour.
- Meanwhile the sire of Gúrd-afríd, who now  
 Governed the fort, and feared the warrior's vow;  
 Mournful and pale, with gathering woes opprest,  
 His distant Monarch trembling thus addrest.  
 But first invoked the heavenly power to shed575  
 Its choicest blessings o'er his royal head.  
 "Against our realm with numerous foot and horse,  
 A stripling warrior holds his ruthless course.  
 His lion-breast unequalled strength betrays,  
 And o'er his mien the sun's effulgence plays:580  
 Sohráb his name; like Sám Suwár he shows,  
 Or Rustem terrible amidst his foes.  
 The bold Hujír lies vanquished on the plain,  
 And drags a captive's ignominious chain;  
 Myriads of troops besiege our tottering wall,585  
 And vain the effort to suspend its fall.  
 Haste, arm for fight, this Tartar-power withstand,  
 Let sweeping Vengeance lift her flickering brand;  
 Rustem alone may stem the roaring wave,  
 And, prompt as bold, his groaning country save.590  
 Meanwhile in flight we place our only trust,  
 Ere the proud ramparts crumble in the dust."
- Swift flies the messenger through secret ways,  
 And to the King the dreadful tale conveys,  
 Then passed, unseen, in night's concealing shade,595  
 The mournful heroes and the warrior maid.
- Soon as the sun with vivifying ray,  
 Gleams o'er the landscape, and renewes the day;  
 The flaming troops the lofty walls surround,  
 With thundering crash the bursting gates resound.600  
 Already are the captives bound, in thought,  
 And like a herd before the conqueror brought;

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Sohráb, terrific o'er the ruin, views<br>His hopes deceived, but restless still pursues.<br>An empty fortress mocks his searching eye,<br>No steel-clad chiefs his burning wrath defy;<br>No warrior-maid reviving passion warms,<br>And soothes his soul with fondly-valued charms. | 605 |
| Deep in his breast he feels the amorous smart,<br>And hugs her image closer to his heart.                                                                                                                                                                                            | 610 |
| "Alas! that Fate should thus invidious shroud<br>The moon's soft radiance in a gloomy cloud;<br>Should to my eyes such winning grace display,<br>Then snatch the enchanter of my soul away!                                                                                          |     |
| A beauteous roe my toils enclosed in vain,<br>Now I, her victim, drag the captive's chain;<br>Strange the effects that from her charms proceed,<br>I gave the wound, and I afflicted bleed!                                                                                          | 615 |
| Vanquished by her, I mourn the luckless strife;<br>Dark, dark, and bitter, frowns my morn of life.<br>A fair unknown my tortured bosom rends,<br>Withers each joy, and every hope suspends."                                                                                         | 620 |
| Impassioned thus Sohráb in secret sighed,<br>And sought, in vain, o'er-mastering grief to hide.<br>Can the heart bleed and throb from day to day,<br>And yet no trace its inmost pangs betray?                                                                                       | 625 |
| Love scorns control, and prompts the labouring sigh,<br>Pales the red lip, and dims the lucid eye;<br>His look alarmed the stern Túránián Chief,<br>Closely he mark'd his heart-corroding grief;—                                                                                    | 630 |
| And though he knew not that the martial dame,<br>Had in his bosom lit the tender flame;<br>Full well he knew such deep repnings prove,<br>The hapless thraldom of disastrous love.                                                                                                   |     |
| Full well he knew some idol's musky hair,<br>Had to his youthful heart become a snare,<br>But still unnoted was the gushing tear,<br>Till haply he had gained his private ear:—                                                                                                      | 635 |
| "In ancient times, no hero known to fame,<br>Not dead to glory e'er indulged the flame;<br>Though beauty's smiles might charm a fleeting hour,<br>The heart, unsway'd, repelled their lasting power.                                                                                 |     |
| A warrior Chief to trembling love a prey?<br>What! weep for woman one inglorious day?<br>Canst thou for love's effeminate control,<br>Barter the glory of a warrior's soul?                                                                                                          | 640 |
| Although a hundred damsels might be gained,<br>The hero's heart shall still be free, unchained.<br>Thou art our leader, and thy place the field<br>Where soldiers love to fight with spear and shield;                                                                               |     |
| And what hast thou to do with tears and smiles,<br>The silly victim to a woman's wiles?                                                                                                                                                                                              | 645 |
| Our progress, mark! from far Túrán we came,<br>Through seas of blood to gain immortal fame;<br>And wilt thou now the tempting conquest shun,<br>When our brave arms this Barrier-fort have won?                                                                                      |     |
| Why linger here, and trickling sorrows shed,<br>Till mighty Káús thunders o'er thy head!                                                                                                                                                                                             | 650 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 655 |

- Till Tús, and Gíw, and Gúdarz, and Báhrám,  
And Rustem brave, Ferámurz, and Rehám,  
Shall aid the war! A great emprise is thine,  
At once, then, every other thought resign;  
For know the task which first inspired thy zeal,  
Transcends in glory all that love can feel.  
Rise, lead the war, prodigious toils require  
Unyielding strength, and unextinguished fire;  
Pursue the triumph with tempestuous rage,  
Against the world in glorious strife engage,  
And when an empire sinks beneath thy sway  
(O quickly may we hail the prosperous day),  
The fickle sex will then with blooming charms,  
Adoring throng to bless thy circling arms!"
- Húmán's warm speech, the spirit-stirring theme,  
Awoke Sohráb from his inglorious dream.  
No more the tear his faded cheek bedewed,  
Again ambition all his hopes renewed:  
Swell'd his bold heart with unforgotten zeal,  
The noble wrath which heroes only feel;  
Fiercely he vowed at one tremendous stroke,  
To bow the world beneath the tyrant's yoke!  
"Afrásiyáb," he cried, "shall reign alone,  
The mighty lord of Persia's gorgeous throne!"
- Burning, himself, to rule this nether sphere,  
These welcome tidings charmed the despot's ear.  
Meantime Káús, this dire invasion known,  
Had called his chiefs around his ivory throne:  
There stood Gurgín, and Báhrám, and Gushwád,  
And Tús, and Gíw, and Gúdarz, and Ferhád;  
To them he read the melancholy tale,  
Gust'hem had written of the rising bale;  
Besought their aid and prudent choice, to form  
Some sure defence against the threatening storm.  
With one consent they urge the strong request,  
To summon Rustem from his rural rest.—  
Instant a warrior-delegate they send,  
And thus the King invites his patriot-friend,
- "To thee all praise, whose mighty arm alone,  
Preserves the glory of the Persian throne!  
Lo! Tartar hordes our happy realms invade;  
The tottering state requires thy powerful aid;  
A youthful Champion leads the ruthless host,  
His savage country's widely-rumoured boast.  
The Barrier-fortress sinks beneath his sway,  
Hujír is vanquished, ruin tracks his way;  
Strong as a raging elephant in fight,  
No arm but thine can match his furious might.  
Mázinderán thy conquering prowess knew;  
The Demon-king thy trenchant falchion slew,  
The rolling heavens, abash'd with fear, behold  
Thy biting sword, thy mace adorned with gold!  
Fly to the succour of a King distress'd,  
Proud of thy love, with thy protection blest.

- When o'er the nation dread misfortunes lower,  
Thou art the refuge, thou the saving power.  
The chiefs assembled claim thy patriot vows,  
Give to thy glory all that life allows;  
And while no whisper breathes the direful tale,  
O, let thy Monarch's anxious prayers prevail." 715
- Closing the fragrant page o'ercome with dread,  
The afflicted King to Gíw, the warrior, said:—  
"Go, bind the saddle on thy fleetest horse,  
Outstrip the tempest in thy rapid course,  
To Rustem swift his country's woes convey,  
Too true art thou to linger on the way;  
Speed, day and night—and not one instant wait,  
Whatever hour may bring thee to his gate." 720
- Followed no pause—to Gíw enough was said,  
Nor rest, nor taste of food, his speed delayed.  
And when arrived, where Zábul's bowers exhale  
Ambrosial sweets and scent the balmy gale,  
The sentinel's loud voice in Rustem's ear,  
Announced a messenger from Persia, near;  
The Chief himself amidst his warriors stood,  
Dispensing honours to the brave and good,  
And soon as Gíw had joined the martial ring,  
(The sacred envoy of the Persian King), 730  
He, with becoming loyalty inspired,  
Asked what the monarch, what the state required;  
But Gíw, apart, his secret mission told—  
The written page was speedily unrolled. 735
- Struck with amazement, Rustem—"Now on earth  
A warrior-knight of Sám's excelling worth?  
Whence comes this hero of the prosperous star?  
I know no Turk renowned, like him, in war;  
He bears the port of Rustem too, 'tis said,  
Like Sám, like Narímán, a warrior bred! 740  
He cannot be my son, unknown to me;  
Reason forbids the thought—it cannot be!  
At Samengán, where once affection smiled,  
To me Tahmíneh bore her only child,  
That was a daughter?" Pondering thus he spoke,  
And then aloud—"Why fear the invader's yoke?  
Why trembling shrink, by coward thoughts dismayed,  
Must we not all in dust, at length, be laid? 745
- But come, to Nírum's palace, haste with me,  
And there partake the feast—from sorrow free;  
Breathe, but awhile—ere we our toils renew,  
And moisten the parched lip with needful dew.  
Let plans of war another day decide,  
We soon shall quell this youthful hero's pride. 750
- The force of fire soon flutters and decays  
When ocean, swelled by storms, its wrath displays.  
What danger threatens! whence the dastard fear!  
Rest, and at leisure share a warrior's cheer." 755
- In vain the Envoy prest the Monarch's grief; 760

- The matchless prowess of the stripling chief;  
 How brave Hujír had felt his furious hand;  
 What thickening woes beset the shuddering land.  
 But Rustem, still, delayed the parting day,  
 And mirth and feasting rolled the hours away;  
 Morn following morn beheld the banquet bright,  
 Music and wine prolonged the genial rite;  
 Rapt by the witchery of the melting strain,  
 No thought of Káús touch'd his swimming brain. 770
- The trumpet's clang, on fragrant breezes borne,  
 Now loud salutes the fifth revolving morn;  
 The softer tones which charm'd the jocund feast,  
 And all the noise of revelry, had ceased,  
 The generous horse, with rich embroidery deckt,  
 Whose gilded trappings sparkling light reflect,  
 Bears with majestic port the Champion brave,  
 And high in air the victor-banners wave.  
 Prompt at the martial call, Zúára leads  
 His veteran troops from Zábul's verdant meads. 775
- Ere Rustem had approached his journey's end,  
 Tús, Gúdarz, Gushwád, met their champion-friend  
 With customary honours; pleased to bring  
 The shield of Persia to the anxious King.  
 But foaming wrath the senseless monarch swayed;  
 His friendship scorned, his mandate disobeyed,  
 Beneath dark brows o'er-shadowing deep, his eye  
 Red gleaming shone, like lightning through the sky  
 And when the warriors met his sullen view,  
 Frowning revenge, still more enraged he grew:—  
 Loud to the Envoy thus he fiercely cried:— 780
- “Since Rustem has my royal power defied,  
 Had I a sword, this instant should his head  
 Roll on the ground; but let him now be led  
 Hence, and impaled alive.” Astounded Gíw  
 Shrunk from such treatment of a knight so true;  
 But this resistance added to the flame,  
 And both were branded with revolt and shame;  
 Both were condemned, and Tús, the stern decree  
 Received, to break them on the felon-tree. 795
- Could daring insult, thus deliberate given,  
 Escape the rage of one to frenzy driven?  
 No, from his side the nerveless Chief was flung,  
 Bent to the ground. Away the Champion sprung;  
 Mounted his foaming horse, and looking round—  
 His boiling wrath thus rapid utterance found:— 800
- “Ungrateful King, thy tyrant acts disgrace  
 The sacred throne, and more, the human race;  
 Midst clashing swords thy recreant life I saved,  
 And am I now by Tús contemptuous braved?  
 On me shall Tús, shall Káús dare to frown?  
 On me, the bulwark of the regal crown? 810
- Wherefore should fear in Rustem's breast have birth,  
 Káús, to me, a worthless clod of earth!  
 Go, and thyself Sohráb's invasion stay,  
 Go, seize the plunderers growling o'er their prey! 815
- 820

- Wherefore to others give the base command?  
 Go, break him on the tree with thine own hand.  
 Know, thou hast roused a warrior, great and free,  
 Who never bends to tyrant Kings like thee!  
 Was not this untired arm triumphant seen, 825  
 In Misser, Rúm, Mázinderán, and Chín!  
 And must I shrink at thy imperious nod!  
 Slave to no Prince, I only bow to God.  
 Whatever wrath from thee, proud King! may fall,  
 For thee I fought, and I deserve it all. 830  
 The regal sceptre might have graced my hand,  
 I kept the laws, and scorned supreme command.  
 When Kai-kobád and Alberz mountain strayed,  
 I drew him thence, and gave a warrior's aid;  
 Placed on his brows the long-contested crown, 835  
 Worn by his sires, by sacred right his own;  
 Strong in the cause, my conquering arms prevailed,  
 Wouldst thou have reign'd had Rustem's valour failed  
 When the White Demon raged in battle-fray,  
 Wouldst thou have lived had Rustem lost the day?" 840  
 Then to his friends: "Be wise, and shun your fate,  
 Fly the wide ruin which o'erwhelms the state;  
 The conqueror comes—the scourge of great and small,  
 And vultures, following fast, will gorge on all.  
 Persia no more its injured Chief shall view"— 845  
 He said, and sternly from the court withdrew.
- The warriors now, with sad forebodings wrung,  
 Torn from that hope to which they proudly clung,  
 On Gúdarz rest, to soothe with gentle sway,  
 The frantic King, and Rustem's wrath allay. 850  
 With bitter grief they wail misfortune's shock,  
 No shepherd now to guard the timorous flock.  
 Gúdarz at length, with boding cares imprest,  
 Thus soothed the anger in the royal breast.  
 "Say, what has Rustem done, that he should be 855  
 Impaled upon the ignominious tree?  
 Degrading thought, unworthy to be bred  
 Within a royal heart, a royal head.  
 Hast thou forgot when near the Caspian-wave,  
 Defeat and ruin had appalled the brave, 860  
 When mighty Rustem struck the dreadful blow,  
 And nobly freed thee from the savage foe?  
 Did Demons huge escape his flaming brand?  
 Their reeking limbs bestrew'd the slippery strand.  
 Shall he for this resign his vital breath? 865  
 What! shall the hero's recompense be death?  
 But who will dare a threatening step advance,  
 What earthly power can bear his withering glance?  
 Should he to Zábul fired with wrongs return,  
 The plunder'd land will long in sorrow mourn! 870  
 This direful presage all our warriors feel,  
 For who can now oppose the invader's steel;  
 Thus is it wise thy champion to offend,  
 To urge to this extreme thy warrior-friend?  
 Remember, passion ever scorns control, 875  
 And wisdom's mild decrees should rule a Monarch's soul."

Káús, relenting, heard with anxious ear,  
 And groundless wrath gave place to shame and fear;  
 "Go then," he cried, "his generous aid implore,  
 And to your King the mighty Chief restore!"

880

When Gúdarz rose, and seized his courser's rein,  
 A crowd of heroes followed in his train.  
 To Rustem, now (respectful homage paid),  
 The royal prayer he anxious thus conveyed.  
 "The King, repentant, seeks thy aid again,  
 Grieved to the heart that he has given thee pain;  
 But though his anger was unjust and strong,  
 Thy country still is guiltless of the wrong,  
 And, therefore, why abandoned thus by thee?  
 Thy help the King himself implores through me."

885

Rustem rejoined: "Unworthy the pretence,  
 And scorn and insult all my recompense?  
 Must I be galled by his capricious mood?  
 I, who have still his firmest champion stood?  
 But all is past, to heaven alone resigned,  
 No human cares shall more disturb my mind!"  
 Then Gúdarz thus (consummate art inspired  
 His prudent tongue, with all that zeal required);  
 "When Rustem dreads Sohráb's resistless power,  
 Well may inferiors fly the trying hour!

890

The dire suspicion now pervades us all,  
 Thus, unavenged, shall beauteous Persia fall!  
 Yet, generous still, avert the lasting shame,  
 O, still preserve thy country's glorious fame!  
 Or wilt thou, deaf to all our fears excite,

900

Forsake thy friends, and shun the pending fight?  
 And worse, O grief! in thy declining days,  
 Forfeit the honours of thy country's praise?"  
 This artful censure set his soul on fire,  
 But patriot firmness calm'd his burning ire;  
 And thus he said—"Inured to war's alarms,  
 Did ever Rustem shun the din of arms?  
 Though frowns from Káús I disdain to bear,  
 My threatened country claims a warrior's care."  
 He ceased, and prudent joined the circling throng,

905

And in the public good forgot the private wrong.

915

From far the King the generous Champion viewed,  
 And rising, mildly thus his speech pursued:—  
 "Since various tempers govern all mankind,  
 Me, nature fashioned of a foward mind;  
 And what the heavens spontaneously bestow,  
 Sown by their bounty must for ever grow.  
 The fit of wrath which burst within me, soon  
 Shrunk up my heart as thin as the new moon;  
 Else had I deemed thee still my army's boast,  
 Source of my regal power, beloved the most,  
 Unequalled. Every day, remembering thee,  
 I drain the wine cup, thou art all to me;  
 I wished thee to perform that lofty part,  
 Claimed by thy valour, sanctioned by my heart;  
 Hence thy delay my better thoughts supprest,

920

925

930

And boisterous passions revelled in my breast;  
 But when I saw thee from my Court retire  
 In wrath, repentance quenched my burning ire.  
 O, let me now my keen contrition prove,  
 Again enjoy thy fellowship and love:  
 And while to thee my gratitude is known,  
 Still be the pride and glory of my throne.”

935

Rustem, thus answering said:—“Thou art the King,  
 Source of command, pure honour’s sacred spring;  
 And here I stand to follow thy behest,  
 Obedient ever—be thy will expressed,  
 And services required—Old age shall see  
 My loins still bound in fealty to thee.”

940

To this the King:—“Rejoice we then to-day,  
 And on the morrow marshal our array.”  
 The monarch quick commands the feast of joy,  
 And social cares his buoyant mind employ,  
 Within a bower, beside a crystal spring,  
 Where opening flowers, refreshing odours fling,  
 Cheerful he sits, and forms the banquet scene,  
 In regal splendour on the crowded green;  
 And as around he greets his valiant bands,  
 Showers golden presents from his bounteous hands;  
 Voluptuous damsels trill the sportive lay,  
 Whose sparkling glances beam celestial day;  
 Fill’d with delight the heroes closer join,  
 And quaff till midnight cups of generous wine.

945

950

955

Soon as the Sun had pierced the veil of night,  
 And o'er the prospect shed his earliest light,  
 Káús, impatient, bids the clarions sound,  
 The sprightly notes from hills and rocks rebound;  
 His treasure gates are opened:—and to all  
 A largess given; obedient to the call,  
 His subjects gathering crowd the mountain’s brow,  
 And following thousands shade the vales below;  
 With shields, in armor, numerous legions bend;  
 And troops of horse the threatening lines extend.  
 Beneath the tread of heroes fierce and strong,  
 By war’s tumultuous fury borne along,  
 The firm earth shook: the dust, in eddies driven,  
 Whirled high in air, obscured the face of heaven;  
 Nor earth, nor sky appeared—all, seeming lost,  
 And swallowed up by that wide-spreading host.  
 The steely armour glitter’d o'er the fields,  
 And lightnings flash'd from gold emblazoned shields;  
 Thou wouldest have said, the clouds had burst in showers,  
 Of sparkling amber o'er the martial powers.  
 Thus, close embodied, they pursued their way,  
 And reached the Barrier-fort in terrible array.

960

965

970

975

980

The legions of Túrán, with dread surprise,  
 Saw o'er the plain successive myriads rise;  
 And showed them to Sohráb; he, mounting high  
 The fort, surveyed them with a fearless eye;

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| To Húmán, who, with withering terror pale,<br>Had marked their progress through the distant vale,<br>He pointed out the sight, and ardent said:—<br>“Dispel these woe-fraught broodings from thy head,<br>I wage the war, Afrásiyáb! for thee,<br>And make this desert seem a rolling sea.” | 985  |
| Thus, while amazement every bosom quell'd,<br>Sohráb, unmoved, the coming storm beheld,<br>And boldly gazing on the camp around,<br>Raised high the cup with wine nectareous crowned:<br>O'er him no dreams of woe insidious stole,                                                         | 990  |
| No thought but joy engaged his ardent soul.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 995  |
| The Persian legions had restrained their course,<br>Tents and pavilions, countless foot and horse,<br>Clothed all the spacious plain, and gleaming threw<br>Terrific splendours on the gazer's view.<br>But when the Sun had faded in the west,                                             | 1000 |
| And night assumed her ebon-coloured vest,<br>The mighty Chief approached the sacred throne,<br>And generous thus made danger all his own:<br>“The rules of war demand a previous task,<br>To watch this dreadful foe I boldly ask;                                                          | 1005 |
| With wary step the wondrous youth to view,<br>And mark the heroes who his path pursue.”<br>The King assents: “The task is justly thine,<br>Favourite of heaven, inspired by power divine.”                                                                                                  | 1010 |
| In Turkish habit, secretly arrayed,<br>The lurking Champion wandered through the shade<br>And, cautious, standing near the palace gate,<br>Saw how the chiefs were ranged in princely state.                                                                                                |      |
| What time Sohráb his thoughts to battle turned,<br>And for the first proud fruits of conquest burned,<br>His mother called a warrior to his aid,<br>And Zinda-ruzm his sister's call obeyed.<br>To him Tahmineh gave her only joy,                                                          | 1015 |
| And bade him shield the bold adventurous boy:<br>“But, in the dreadful strife, should danger rise,<br>Present my child before his father's eyes!<br>By him protected, war may rage in vain,<br>Though he may never bless these arms again!”                                                 | 1020 |
| This guardian prince sat on the stripling's right,<br>Viewing the imperial banquet with delight.<br>Húmán and Bármán, near the hero placed,<br>In joyous pomp the full assembly graced;<br>A hundred valiant Chiefs begirt the throne,                                                      | 1025 |
| And, all elate, were chaunting his renown.<br>Closely concealed, the gay and splendid scene,<br>Rustum contemplates with astonished mien;<br>When Zind, retiring, marks the listener nigh,<br>Watching the festal train with curious eye;                                                   | 1030 |
| And well he knew, amongst his Tartar host,<br>Such towering stature not a Chief could boast—<br>“What spy is here, close shrouded by the night?<br>Art thou afraid to face the beams of light?”<br>But scarcely from his lips these words had past,                                         | 1035 |

- Ere, fell'd to earth, he groaning breathed his last; 1040  
 Unseen he perish'd, fate decreed the blow,  
 To add fresh keenness to a parent's woe.
- Meantime Sohráb, perceiving the delay  
 In Zind's return, looked round him with dismay;  
 The seat still vacant—but the bitter truth,  
 Full soon was known to the distracted youth; 1045  
 Full soon he found that Zinda-ruzm was gone,  
 His day of feasting and of glory done;  
 Speedful towards the fatal spot he ran,  
 Where slept in bloody vest the slaughtered man. 1050
- The lighted torches now displayed the dead,  
 Stiff on the ground his graceful limbs were spread;  
 Sad sight to him who knew his guardian care,  
 Now doom'd a kinsman's early loss to bear; 1055  
 Anguish and rage devour his breast by turns,  
 He vows revenge, then o'er the warrior mourns:  
 And thus exclaims to each afflicted Chief:—  
 “No time, to-night, my friends, for useless grief;  
 The ravenous wolf has watched his helpless prey, 1060  
 Sprung o'er the fold, and borne its flower away;  
 But if the heavens my lifted arm befriend,  
 Upon the guilty shall my wrath descend—  
 Unsheathed, this sword shall dire revenge pursue,  
 And Persian blood the thirsty land bedew.” 1065
- Frowning he paused, and check'd the spreading woe,  
 Resumed the feast, and bid the wine-cup flow!
- The valiant Gíw was sentinel that night,  
 And marking dimly by the dubious light,  
 A warrior form approach, he claps his hands,  
 With naked sword and lifted shield he stands, 1070  
 To front the foe; but Rustem now appears,  
 And Gíw the secret tale astonished hears;  
 From thence the Champion on the Monarch waits.  
 The power and splendour of Sohráb relates:  
 “Circled by Chiefs this glorious youth was seen, 1075  
 Of lofty stature and majestic mien;  
 No Tartar region gave the hero birth:  
 Some happier portion of the spacious earth;  
 Tall, as the graceful cypress he appears;  
 Like Sám, the brave, his warrior-front he rears!” 1080  
 Then having told how, while the banquet shone,  
 Unhappy Zind had sunk, without a groan;  
 He forms his conquering bands in close array,  
 And, cheer'd by wine, awaits the coming day.
- When now the Sun his golden buckler raised,  
 And genial light through heaven diffusive blazed,  
 Sohráb in mail his nervous limbs attired,  
 For dreadful wrath his soul to vengeance fired; 1085  
 With anxious haste he bent the yielding cord,  
 Ring within ring, more fateful than the sword;  
 Around his brows a regal helm he bound;  
 His dappled steed impatient stamp't the ground. 1090

- Thus armed, ascending where the eye could trace  
 The hostile force, and mark each leader's place,  
 He called Hujír, the captive Chief addressed,  
 And anxious thus, his soul's desire expressed:  
 "A prisoner thou, if freedom's voice can charm,  
 And dungeon darkness fill thee with alarm,  
 That freedom merit, shun severest woe,  
 And truly answer what I ask to know!  
 If rigid truth thy ready speech attend,  
 Honours and wealth shall dignify my friend." 1095
- "Obedient to thy wish," Hujír replied,  
 "Truth thou shalt hear, whatever chance betide;  
 For what on earth to praise has better claim?  
 Falsehood but leads to sorrow and to shame!" 1100
- "Then say, what heroes lead the adverse host,  
 Where they command, what dignities they boast;  
 Say, where does Káús hold his kingly state,  
 Where Tús, and Gúdarz, on his bidding wait;  
 Gíw, Gust'hem, and Báhrám—all known to thee,  
 And where is mighty Rustem, where is he?  
 Look round with care, their names and power display  
 Or instant death shall end thy vital day." 1110
- "Where yonder splendid tapestries extend,  
 And o'er pavilions bright infolding bend,  
 A throne triumphal shines with sapphire rays,  
 And golden suns upon the banners blaze;  
 Full in the centre of the hosts—and round  
 The tent a hundred elephants are bound,  
 As if, in pomp, he mocked the power of fate;  
 There royal Káús holds his kingly state. 1115
- "In yonder tent which numerous guards protect,  
 Where front and rear illustrious Chiefs collect;  
 Where horsemen wheeling seem prepared for fight,  
 Their golden armour glittering in the light;  
 Tús lifts his banners, deck'd with royal pride,  
 Feared by the brave, the soldier's friend and guide. 1120
- "That crimson tent where spear-men frowning stand,  
 And steel-clad veterans form a threatening band,  
 Holds mighty Gúdarz, famed for martial fire,  
 Of eighty valiant sons the valiant sire;  
 Yet strong in arms, he shuns inglorious ease,  
 His lion-banners floating in the breeze. 1125
- "But mark, that green pavilion; girt around  
 By Persian nobles, speaks the Chief renowned;  
 Fierce on the standard, worked with curious art,  
 A hideous dragon writhing seems to start;  
 Throned in his tent the warrior's form is seen,  
 Towering above the assembled host between! 1130
- A generous horse before him snorts and neighs,  
 The trembling earth the echoing sound conveys.  
 Like him no Champion ever met my eyes, 1135
- 1140

- No horse like that for majesty and size;  
What Chief illustrious bears a port so high?  
Mark, how his standard flickers through the sky!” 1145
- Thus ardent spoke Sohráb. Hujír dismayed,  
Paused ere reply the dangerous truth betrayed.  
Trembling for Rustem's life the captive groaned;  
Basely his country's glorious boast disowned,  
And said the Chief from distant China came—  
Sohráb abrupt demands the hero's name;  
The name unknown, grief wrings his aching heart,  
And yearning anguish speeds her venom'd dart;  
To him his mother gave the tokens true,  
He sees them all, and all but mock his view.  
When gloomy fate descends in evil hour,  
Can human wisdom bribe her favouring power?  
Yet, gathering hope, again with restless mien  
He marks the Chiefs who crowd the warlike scene. 1150  
1155
- “Where numerous heroes, horse and foot, appear,  
And brazen trumpets thrill the listening ear,  
Behold the proud pavilion of the brave!  
With wolves emboss'd the silken banners wave.  
The throne's bright gems with radiant lustre glow,  
Slaves rank'd around with duteous homage bow.  
What mighty Chieftain rules his cohorts there?  
His name and lineage, free from guile, declare!” 1165
- “Gíw, son of Gúdarz, long a glorious name,  
Whose prowess even transcends his father's fame.” 1170
- “Mark yonder tent of pure and dazzling white,  
Whose rich brocade reflects a quivering light;  
An ebon seat surmounts the ivory throne;  
There frowns in state a warrior of renown.  
The crowding slaves his awful nod obey,  
And silver moons around his banners play;  
What Chief, or Prince, has grasped the hostile sword?  
Fríburz, the son of Persia's mighty lord.” 1175
- Again: “These standards show one champion more,  
Upon their centre flames the savage boar;  
The saffron-hued pavilion bright ascends,  
Whence many a fold of tasselled fringe depends;  
Who there presides?” 1180
- “Guráz, from heroes sprung,  
Whose praise exceeds the power of mortal tongue.” 1185
- Thus, anxious, he explored the crowded field,  
Nor once the secret of his birth revealed;  
Heaven will'd it so. Pressed down by silent grief,  
Surrounding objects promised no relief.  
This world to mortals still denies repose,  
And life is still the scene of many woes.  
Again his eye, instinctive turned, descried  
The green pavilion, and the warrior's pride.  
Again he cries: “O tell his glorious name; 1190

- Yon gallant horse declares the hero's fame!" 1195  
 But false Hujír the aspiring hope repelled,  
 Crushed the fond wish, the soothing balm withheld,  
 "And why should I conceal his name from thee?  
 His name and title are unknown to me."
- Then thus Sohráb—"In all that thou hast said, 1200  
 No sign of Rustem have thy words conveyed;  
 Thou sayest he leads the Persian host to arms,  
 With him has battle lost its boisterous charms?  
 Of him no trace thy guiding hand has shown;  
 Can power supreme remain unmark'd, unknown?" 1205
- "Perhaps returned to Zábul's verdant bowers,  
 He undisturbed enjoys his peaceful hours,  
 The vernal banquets may constrain his stay,  
 And rural sports invite prolonged delay."
- "Ah! say not thus; the Champion of the world, 1210  
 Shrink from the kindling war with banners furl'd!  
 It cannot be! Say where his lightnings dart,  
 Show me the warrior, all thou know'st impart;  
 Treasures uncounted shall be thy reward,  
 Death changed to life, my friendship more than shared. 1215  
 Dost thou not know what, in the royal ear,  
 The Múbid said—befitting Kings to hear?  
 'Untold, a secret is a jewel bright,  
 Yet profitless whilst hidden from the light;  
 But when revealed, in words distinctly given, 1220  
 It shines resplendent as the sun through heaven."
- To him, Hujír evasive thus replies:  
 "Through all the extended earth his glory flies!  
 Whenever dangers round the nation close,  
 Rustem approaches, and repels its foes; 1225  
 And shouldst thou see him mix in mortal strife,  
 Thou'dst think 'twere easier to escape with life  
 From tiger fell, or demon—or the fold  
 Of the chafed dragon, than his dreadful hold—  
 When fiercest battle clothes the fields with fire, 1230  
 Before his rage embodied hosts retire!"
- "And where didst thou encountering armies see?  
 Why Rustem's praise so proudly urge to me?  
 Let us but meet and thou shalt trembling know,  
 How fierce that wrath which bids my bosom glow:  
 If living flames express his boundless ire, 1235  
 O'erwhelming waters quench consuming fire!  
 And deepest darkness, glooms of ten-fold night,  
 Fly from the piercing beams of radiant light."
- Hujír shrunk back with undissembled dread,  
 And thus communing with himself, he said—  
 "Shall I, regardless of my country, guide  
 To Rustem's tent this furious homicide?  
 And witness there destruction to our host? 1240  
 The bulwark of the land for ever lost!" 1245

- What Chief can then the Tartar power restrain!  
 Káüs dethroned, the mighty Rustem slain!  
 Better a thousand deaths should lay me low,  
 Than, living, yield such triumph to the foe.  
 For in this struggle should my blood be shed,  
 No foul dishonour can pursue me, dead;  
 No lasting shame my father's age oppress,  
 Whom eighty sons of martial courage bless!  
 They for their brother slain, incensed will rise,  
 And pour their vengeance on my enemies." 1250  
 Then thus aloud—"Can idle words avail?  
 Why still of Rustem urge the frequent tale?  
 Why for the elephant-bodied hero ask?  
 Thee, he will find—no uncongenial task.  
 Why seek pretences to destroy my life?  
 Strike, for no Rustem views th' unequal strife!" 1255  
 Sohráb confused, with hopeless anguish mourned,  
 Back from the lofty walls he quick returned,  
 And stood amazed.
- Now war and vengeance claim,  
 Collected thought and deeds of mighty name;  
 The jointed mail his vigorous body clasps,  
 His sinewy hand the shining javelin grasps;  
 Like a mad elephant he meets the foe,  
 His steed a moving mountain—deeply glow 1265  
 His cheeks with passionate ardour, as he flies  
 Resistless onwards, and with sparkling eyes,  
 Full on the centre drives his daring horse—  
 The yielding Persians fly his furious course;  
 As the wild ass impetuous springs away,  
 When the fierce lion thunders on his prey. 1270  
 By every sign of strength and martial power,  
 They think him Rustem in his direst hour;  
 On Káüs now his proud defiance falls,  
 Scornful to him the stripling warrior calls:  
 "And why art thou misnamed of royal strain? 1275  
 What work of thine befits the tented plain?  
 This thirsty javelin seeks thy coward breast;  
 Thou and thy thousands doomed to endless rest.  
 True to my oath, which time can never change,  
 On thee, proud King! I hurl my just revenge. 1280  
 The blood of Zind inspires my burning hate,  
 And dire resentment hurries on thy fate;  
 Whom canst thou send to try the desperate strife?  
 What valiant Chief, regardless of his life?  
 Where now can Fríburz, Tús, Gíw, Gúdarz, be, 1285  
 And the world-conquering Rustem, where is he?"
- No prompt reply from Persian lip ensued—  
 Then rushing on, with demon-strength endued,  
 Sohráb elate his javelin waved around,  
 And hurled the bright pavilion to the ground;  
 With horror Káüs feels destruction nigh,  
 And cries: "For Rustem's needful succour fly!  
 This frantic Turk, triumphant on the plain, 1290  
 1295

|                                                                                                                                                   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Withers the souls of all my warrior train."                                                                                                       | 1300 |
| That instant Tús the mighty Champion sought,<br>And told the deeds the Tartar Chief had wrought;                                                  |      |
| “Tis ever thus, the brainless Monarch’s due!                                                                                                      |      |
| Shame and disaster still his steps pursue!”                                                                                                       |      |
| This saying, from his tent he soon desried,                                                                                                       | 1305 |
| The wild confusion spreading far and wide;                                                                                                        |      |
| And saddled Rakush—whilst, in deep dismay,<br>Girgín incessant cried—“Speed, speed, away.”                                                        |      |
| Rehám bound on the mace, Tús promptly ran,<br>And buckled on the broad Burgustuwán.                                                               | 1310 |
| Rustem, meanwhile, the thickening tumult hears<br>And in his heart, untouched by human fears,<br>Says: “What is this, that feeling seems to stun! |      |
| This battle must be led by Ahirmun,<br>The awful day of doom must have begun.”                                                                    | 1315 |
| In haste he arms, and mounts his bounding steed,<br>The growing rage demands redoubled speed;                                                     |      |
| The leopard’s skin he o'er his shoulders throws,<br>The regal girdle round his middle glows.                                                      |      |
| High wave his glorious banners; broad revealed,<br>The pictured dragons glare along the field                                                     | 1320 |
| Borne by Zúára. When, surprised, he views<br>Sohráb, endued with ample breast and thews,<br>Like Sám Suwár, he beckons him apart;                 |      |
| The youth advances with a gallant heart,<br>Willing to prove his adversary’s might,<br>By single combat to decide the fight;                      | 1325 |
| And eagerly, “Together brought,” he cries,<br>“Remote from us be foemen, and allies,<br>And though at once by either host surveyed,               |      |
| Ours be the strife which asks no mortal aid.”                                                                                                     | 1330 |
| Rustem, considerate, view’d him o'er and o'er,<br>So wondrous graceful was the form he bore,<br>And frankly said: “Experience flows with age,     |      |
| And many a foe has felt my conquering rage;<br>Much have I seen, superior strength and art                                                        | 1335 |
| Have borne my spear thro’ many a demon’s heart;<br>Only behold me on the battle plain,                                                            |      |
| Wait till thou see’st this hand the war sustain,<br>And if on thee should changeful fortune smile,                                                | 1340 |
| Thou needst not fear the monster of the Nile!<br>But soft compassion melts my soul to save,                                                       |      |
| A youth so blooming with a mind so brave!”                                                                                                        |      |
| The generous speech Sohráb attentive heard,<br>His heart expanding glowed at every word:                                                          |      |
| “One question answer, and in answering show,<br>That truth should ever from a warrior flow;                                                       | 1345 |
| Art thou not Rustem, whose exploits sublime,<br>Endear his name thro’ every distant clime?”                                                       |      |
| “I boast no station of exalted birth,<br>No proud pretensions to distinguished worth;                                                             |      |
| To him inferior, no such powers are mine,<br>No offspring I of Nírum’s glorious line!”                                                            | 1350 |

- The prompt denial damp't his filial joy,  
All hope at once forsook the Warrior-boy,  
His opening day of pleasure, and the bloom  
Of cherished life, immersed in shadowy gloom.  
Perplexed with what his mother's words implied;—  
A narrow space is now prepared, aside,  
For single combat. With disdainful glance  
Each boldly shakes his death-devoting lance,  
And rushes forward to the dubious fight;  
Thoughts high and brave their burning souls excite;  
Now sword to sword; continuous strokes resound,  
Till glittering fragments strew the dusty ground. 1365  
Each grasps his massive club with added force,  
The folding mail is rent from either horse;  
It seemed as if the fearful day of doom  
Had, clothed in all its withering terrors, come.  
Their shattered corslets yield defence no more—  
At length they breathe, defiled with dust and gore;  
Their gasping throats with parching thirst are dry,  
Gloomy and fierce they roll the lowering eye,  
And frown defiance. Son and Father driven  
To mortal strife! are these the ways of Heaven? 1375  
The various swarms which boundless ocean breeds,  
The countless tribes which crop the flowery meads,  
All know their kind, but hapless man alone  
Has no instinctive feeling for his own!  
Compell'd to pause, by every eye surveyed,  
Rustum, with shame, his wearied strength betrayed;  
Foil'd by a youth in battle's mid career,  
His groaning spirit almost sunk with fear;  
Recovering strength, again they fiercely meet; 1385  
Again they struggle with redoubled heat;  
With bended bows they furious now contend;  
And feather'd shafts in rattling showers descend;  
Thick as autumnal leaves they strew the plain,  
Harmless their points, and all their fury vain.  
And now they seize each other's girdle-band; 1390  
Rustum, who, if he moved his iron hand,  
Could shake a mountain, and to whom a rock  
Seemed soft as wax, tried, with one mighty stroke,  
To hurl him thundering from his fiery steed,  
But Fate forbids the gallant youth should bleed;  
Finding his wonted nerves relaxed, amazed 1395  
That hand he drops which never had been raised  
Uncrowned with victory, even when demons fought,  
And pauses, wildered with despairing thought.  
Sohráb again springs with terrific grace,  
And lifts, from saddle-bow, his ponderous mace;  
With gather'd strength the quick-descending blow  
Wounds in its fall, and stuns the unwary foe;  
Then thus contemptuous: "All thy power is gone; 1405  
Thy charger's strength exhausted as thy own;  
Thy bleeding wounds with pity I behold;  
O seek no more the combat of the bold!"
- Rustum to this reproach made no reply,  
But stood confused—meanwhile, tumultuously

- The legions closed; with soul-appalling force,  
Troop rushed on troop, o'erwhelming man and horse;  
Sohráb, incensed, the Persian host engaged,  
Furious along the scattered lines he raged;  
Fierce as a wolf he rode on every side,  
The thirsty earth with streaming gore was dyed.  
Midst the Túránians, then, the Champion sped,  
And like a tiger heaped the fields with dead.  
But when the Monarch's danger struck his thought,  
Returning swift, the stripling youth he sought;  
Grieved to the soul, the mighty Champion view'd  
His hands and mail with Persian blood imbrued;  
And thus exclaimed with lion-voice—"O say,  
Why with the Persians dost thou war to-day?  
Why not with me alone decide the fight,  
Thou'rt like a wolf that seek'st the fold by night." 1425
- To this Sohráb his proud assent expressed—  
And Rustem, answering, thus the youth addressed.  
"Night-shadows now are thickening o'er the plain,  
The morrow's sun must see our strife again;  
In wrestling let us then exert our might!" 1430  
He said, and eve's last glimmer sunk in night
- Thus as the skies a deeper gloom displayed,  
The stripling's life was hastening into shade!
- The gallant heroes to their tents retired,  
The sweets of rest their wearied limbs required:  
Sohráb, delighted with his brave career,  
Describes the fight in Húmán's anxious ear:  
Tells how he forced unnumbered Chiefs to yield,  
And stood himself the victor of the field!  
"But let the morrow's dawn," he cried, "arrive,  
And not one Persian shall the day survive;  
Meanwhile let wine its strengthening balm impart,  
And add new zeal to every drooping heart." 1440
- The valiant Gíw with Rustem pondering stood,  
And, sad, recalled the scene of death and blood;  
Grief and amazement heaved the frequent sigh,  
And almost froze the crimson current dry.
- Rustem, oppressed by Gíw's desponding thought,  
Amidst his Chiefs the mournful Monarch sought;  
To him he told Sohráb's tremendous sway,  
The dire misfortunes of this luckless day;  
Told with what grasping force he tried, in vain,  
To hurl the wondrous stripling to the plain:  
"The whispering zephyr might as well aspire  
To shake a mountain—such his strength and fire.  
But night came on—and, by agreement, we  
Must meet again to-morrow—who shall be  
Victorious, Heaven knows only:—for by Heaven,  
Victory or death to man is ever given." 1455
- This said, the King, o'erwhelmed in deep despair,  
Passed the dread night in agony and prayer. 1460

- The Champion, silent, joined his bands at rest,  
And spurned at length despondence from his breast;  
Removed from all, he cheered Zúára's heart,  
And nerved his soul to bear a trying part:—  
“Ere early morning gilds the ethereal plain,  
In martial order range my warrior-train;  
And when I meet in all his glorious pride,  
This valiant Turk whom late my rage defied,  
Should fortune's smiles my arduous task requite,  
Bring them to share the triumph of my might;  
But should success the stripling's arm attend,  
And dire defeat and death my glories end,  
To their loved homes my brave associates guide;  
Let bowery Zábul all their sorrows hide—  
Comfort my venerable father's heart;  
In gentlest words my heavy fate impart.  
The dreadful tidings to my mother bear,  
And soothe her anguish with the tenderest care;  
Say, that the will of righteous Heaven decreed,  
That thus in arms her mighty son should bleed.  
Enough of fame my various toils acquired,  
When warring demons, bathed in blood, expired.  
Were life prolonged a thousand lingering years,  
Death comes at last and ends our mortal fears;  
Kirshásp, and Sám, and Narímán, the best  
And bravest heroes, who have ever blest  
This fleeting world, were not endued with power,  
To stay the march of fate one single hour;  
The world for them possessed no fixed abode,  
The path to death's cold regions must be trod;  
Then, why lament the doom ordained for all?  
Thus Jemshíd fell, and thus must Rustom fall.”
- When the bright dawn proclaimed the rising day,  
The warriors armed, impatient of delay;  
But first Sohráb, his proud confederate nigh,  
Thus wistful spoke, as swelled the boding sigh—  
“Now, mark my great antagonist in arms!  
His noble form my filial bosom warms;  
My mother's tokens shine conspicuous here,  
And all the proofs my heart demands, appear;  
Sure this is Rustom, whom my eyes engage!  
Shall I, O grief! provoke my Father's rage?  
Offended Nature then would curse my name,  
And shuddering nations echo with my shame.”  
He ceased, then Húmán: “Vain, fantastic thought,  
Oft have I been where Persia's Champion fought;  
And thou hast heard, what wonders he performed,  
When, in his prime, Mázinderán was stormed;  
That horse resembles Rustom's, it is true,  
But not so strong, nor beautiful to view.”
- Sohráb now buckles on his war attire,  
His heart all softness, and his brain all fire;  
Around his lips such smiles benignant played,  
He seemed to greet a friend, as thus he said:—  
“Here let us sit together on the plain,
- 1465
- 1470
- 1475
- 1480
- 1485
- 1490
- 1495
- 1500
- 1505
- 1510
- 1515

Here, social sit, and from the fight refrain;  
 Ask we from heaven forgiveness of the past,  
 And bind our souls in friendship that may last;  
 Ours be the feast—let us be warm and free,  
 For powerful instinct draws me still to thee;  
 Fain would my heart in bland affection join,  
 Then let thy generous ardour equal mine;  
 And kindly say, with whom I now contend—  
 What name distinguished boasts my warrior-friend!  
 Thy name unfit for champion brave to hide,  
 Thy name so long, long sought, and still denied;  
 Say, art thou Rustem, whom I burn to know?  
 Ingenuous say, and cease to be my foe!"

1520

Sternly the mighty Champion cried, "Away—  
 Hence with thy wiles—now practised to delay;  
 The promised struggle, resolute, I claim,  
 Then cease to move me to an act of shame."  
 Sohráb rejoined—"Old man! thou wilt not hear  
 The words of prudence uttered in thine ear;  
 Then, Heaven! look on."

1530

Preparing for the shock,  
 Each binds his charger to a neighbouring rock;  
 And girds his loins, and rubs his wrists, and tries  
 Their suppleness and force, with angry eyes;  
 And now they meet—now rise, and now descend,  
 And strong and fierce their sinewy arms extend;  
 Wrestling with all their strength they grasp and strain,  
 And blood and sweat flow copious on the plain;  
 Like raging elephants they furious close;  
 Commutual wounds are given, and wrenching blows.  
 Sohráb now clasps his hands, and forward springs  
 Impatiently, and round the Champion clings;  
 Seizes his girdle belt, with power to tear  
 The very earth asunder; in despair  
 Rustem, defeated, feels his nerves give way,  
 And thundering falls. Sohráb bestrides his prey:  
 Grim as the lion, prowling through the wood,  
 Upon a wild ass springs, and pants for blood.  
 His lifted sword had lopt the gory head,  
 But Rustem, quick, with crafty ardour said:—  
 "One moment, hold! what, are our laws unknown?  
 A Chief may fight till he is twice o'erthrown;  
 The second fall, his recreant blood is spilt,  
 These are our laws, avoid the menaced guilt."

1540

1545

1560

1565

1570

Proud of his strength, and easily deceived,  
 The wondering youth the artful tale believed;  
 Released his prey, and, wild as wind or wave,  
 Neglecting all the prudence of the brave,  
 Turned from the place, nor once the strife renewed,  
 But bounded o'er the plain and other cares pursued,  
 As if all memory of the war had died,  
 All thoughts of him with whom his strength was tried.

1575

- Húmán, confounded at the stripling's stay,  
Went forth, and heard the fortune of the day;  
Amazed to find the mighty Rustem freed,  
With deepest grief he wailed the luckless deed.  
“What! loose a raging lion from the snare,  
And let him growling hasten to his lair?  
Bethink thee well; in war, from this unwise,  
This thoughtless act what countless woes may rise;  
Never again suspend the final blow,  
Nor trust the seeming weakness of a foe!”  
“Hence with complaint,” the dauntless youth replied,  
“To-morrow's contest shall his fate decide.”
- 1580
- When Rustem was released, in altered mood  
He sought the coolness of the murmuring flood;  
There quenched his thirst; and bathed his limbs, and prayed,  
Beseeching Heaven to yield its strengthening aid.  
His pious prayer indulgent Heaven approved,  
And growing strength through all his sinews moved;  
Such as erewhile his towering structure knew,  
When his bold arm unconquered demons slew.  
Yet in his mien no confidence appeared,  
No ardent hope his wounded spirits cheered.
- 1595
- 1600
- Again they met. A glow of youthful grace,  
Diffused its radiance o'er the stripling's face,  
And when he saw in renovated guise,  
The foe so lately mastered; with surprise,  
He cried—“What! rescued from my power, again  
Dost thou confront me on the battle plain?  
Or, dost thou, wearied, draw thy vital breath,  
And seek, from warrior bold, the shaft of death?  
Truth has no charms for thee, old man; even now,  
Some further cheat may lurk upon thy brow;  
Twice have I shown thee mercy, twice thy age  
Hath been thy safety—twice it soothed my rage.”  
Then mild the Champion: “Youth is proud and vain!  
The idle boast a warrior would disdain;  
This aged arm perhaps may yet control,  
The wanton fury that inflames thy soul!”
- 1605
- 1610
- 1615
- Again, dismounting, each the other viewed  
With sullen glance, and swift the fight renewed;  
Clenched front to front, again they tug and bend,  
Twist their broad limbs as every nerve would rend;  
With rage convulsive Rustem grasps him round;  
Bends his strong back, and hurls him to the ground;  
Him, who had deemed the triumph all his own;  
But dubious of his power to keep him down,  
Like lightning quick he gives the deadly thrust,  
And spurns the Stripling weltering in the dust.  
—Thus as his blood that shining steel imbrues,  
Thine too shall flow, when Destiny pursues;  
For when she marks the victim of her power,  
A thousand daggers speed the dying hour.
- 1620
- Writhing with pain Sohráb in murmurs sighed—  
And thus to Rustem—“Vaunt not, in thy pride;
- 1625
- 1630

- Upon myself this sorrow have I brought,  
 Thou but the instrument of fate—which wrought  
 My downfall; thou are guiltless—guiltless quite;  
 O! had I seen my father in the fight,  
 My glorious father! Life will soon be o'er,  
 And his great deeds enchant my soul no more!  
 Of him my mother gave the mark and sign,  
 For him I sought, and what an end is mine!  
 My only wish on earth, my constant sigh,  
 Him to behold, and with that wish I die.  
 But hope not to elude his piercing sight,  
 In vain for thee the deepest glooms of night;  
 Couldst thou through Ocean's depths for refuge fly,  
 Or midst the star-beams track the upper sky!  
 Rustem, with vengeance armed, will reach thee there,  
 His soul the prey of anguish and despair.”
- 1635
- An icy horror chills the Champion's heart,  
 His brain whirls round with agonizing smart;  
 O'er his wan cheek no gushing sorrows flow,  
 Senseless he sinks beneath the weight of woe;  
 Relieved at length, with frenzied look, he cries:  
 “Prove thou art mine, confirm my doubting eyes!  
 For I am Rustem!” Piercing was the groan,  
 Which burst from his torn heart—as wild and lone,  
 He gazed upon him. Dire amazement shook  
 The dying youth, and mournful thus he spoke:  
 “If thou art Rustem, cruel is thy part,  
 No warmth paternal seems to fill thy heart;  
 Else hadst thou known me when, with strong desire,  
 I fondly claimed thee for my valiant sire;  
 Now from my body strip the shining mail,  
 Untie these bands, ere life and feeling fail;  
 And on my arm the direful proof behold!  
 Thy sacred bracelet of resplendent gold!
- 1650
- When the loud brazen drums were heard afar,  
 And, echoing round, proclaimed the pending war,  
 Whilst parting tears my mother's eyes o'erflowed,  
 This mystic gift her bursting heart bestowed:  
 ‘Take this,’ she said, ‘thy father's token wear,  
 And promised glory will reward thy care.’  
 The hour is come, but fraught with bitterest woe,  
 We meet in blood to wail the fatal blow.”
- 1655
- The loosened mail unfolds the bracelet bright,  
 Unhappy gift! to Rustem's wildered sight,  
 Prostrate he falls—“By my unnatural hand,  
 My son, my son is slain—and from the land  
 Uprooted”—Frantic, in the dust his hair  
 He rends in agony and deep despair;  
 The western sun had disappeared in gloom,  
 And still, the Champion wept his cruel doom;  
 His wondering legions marked the long delay,  
 And, seeing Rakush riderless astray,  
 The rumour quick to Persia's Monarch spread,  
 And there described the mighty Rustem dead.  
 Káús, alarmed, the fatal tidings hears;
- 1660
- 1665
- 1670
- 1675
- 1680
- 1685

- His bosom quivers with increasing fears.  
 "Speed, speed, and see what has befallen to-day  
 To cause these groans and tears—what fatal fray!  
 If he be lost, if breathless on the ground,  
 And this young warrior, with the conquest crowned—  
 Then must I, humbled, from my kingdom torn,  
 Wander like Jemshíd, through the world forlorn."
- 1690
- The army roused, rushed o'er the dusty plain,  
 Urged by the Monarch to revenge the slain;  
 Wild consternation saddened every face,  
 Tús winged with horror sought the fatal place,  
 And there beheld the agonizing sight—  
 The murderous end of that unnatural fight.
- 1695
- Sohráb, still breathing, hears the shrill alarms,  
 His gentle speech suspends the clang of arms:  
 "My light of life now fluttering sinks in shade,  
 Let vengeance sleep, and peaceful vows be made.  
 Beseech the King to spare this Tartar host,  
 For they are guiltless, all to them is lost;
- 1700
- I led them on, their souls with glory fired,  
 While mad ambition all my thoughts inspired.  
 In search of thee, the world before my eyes,  
 War was my choice, and thou the sacred prize;  
 With thee, my sire! in virtuous league combined,
- 1705
- No tyrant King should persecute mankind.  
 That hope is past—the storm has ceased to rave—  
 My ripening honours wither in the grave;  
 Then let no vengeance on my comrades fall,  
 Mine was the guilt, and mine the sorrow, all;
- 1710
- How often have I sought thee—oft my mind  
 Figured thee to my sight—o'erjoyed to find  
 My mother's token; disappointment came,  
 When thou denied thy lineage and thy name;  
 Oh! still o'er thee my soul impassioned hung,
- 1715
- Still to my father fond affection clung!  
 But fate, remorseless, all my hopes withheld,  
 And stained thy reeking hands in kindred blood."
- 1720
- His faltering breath protracted speech denied:  
 Still from his eye-lids flowed a gushing tide;  
 Through Rustem's soul redoubled horror ran,  
 Heart-rending thoughts subdued the mighty man,  
 And now, at last, with joy-illumined eye,
- 1725
- The Zábul bands their glorious Chief descry;  
 But when they saw his pale and haggard look,  
 Knew from what mournful cause he gazed and shook,  
 With downcast mien they moaned and wept aloud;  
 While Rustem thus addressed the weeping crowd
- 1730
- "Here ends the war! let gentle peace succeed,  
 Enough of death, I—I have done the deed!"
- 1735
- Then to his brother, groaning deep, he said—  
 "O what a curse upon a parent's head!  
 But go—and to the Tartar say—no more,  
 Let war between us steep the earth with gore."
- 1740
- Zúára flew and wildly spoke his grief,  
 To crafty Húmán, the Túránian Chief,

Who, with dissembled sorrow, heard him tell  
 The dismal tidings which he knew too well;  
 "And who," he said, "has caused these tears to flow?" 1745  
 Who, but Hujír? He might have stayed the blow,  
 But when Sohráb his Father's banners sought;  
 He still denied that here the Champion fought;  
 He spread the ruin, he the secret knew,  
 Hence should his crime receive the vengeance due!" 1750  
 Zúára, frantic, breathed in Rustem's ear,  
 The treachery of the captive Chief, Hujír;  
 Whose headless trunk had weltered on the strand,  
 But prayers and force withheld the lifted hand.  
 Then to his dying son the Champion turned, 1755  
 Remorse more deep within his bosom burned;  
 A burst of frenzy fired his throbbing brain;  
 He clenched his sword, but found his fury vain;  
 The Persian Chiefs the desperate act represt,  
 And tried to calm the tumult in his breast: 1760  
 Thus Gúdarz spoke—"Alas! wert thou to give  
 Thyself a thousand wounds, and cease to live;  
 What would it be to him thou sorrowest o'er?  
 It would not save one pang—then weep no more;  
 For if removed by death, O say, to whom 1765  
 Has ever been vouchsafed a different doom?  
 All are the prey of death—the crowned, the low,  
 And man, through life, the victim still of woe."  
 Then Rustem: "Fly! and to the King relate,  
 The pressing horrors which involve my fate; 1770  
 And if the memory of my deeds e'er swayed  
 His mind, O supplicate his generous aid;  
 A sovereign balm he has whose wondrous power,  
 All wounds can heal, and fleeting life restore;  
 Swift from his tent the potent medicine bring." 1775  
 —But mark the malice of the brainless King!  
 Hard as the flinty rock, he stern denies  
 The healthful draught, and gloomy thus replies:  
 "Can I forgive his foul and slanderous tongue?  
 The sharp disdain on me contemptuous flung? 1780  
 Scorned 'midst my army by a shameless boy,  
 Who sought my throne, my sceptre to destroy!  
 Nothing but mischief from his heart can flow,  
 Is it, then, wise to cherish such a foe?  
 The fool who warms his enemy to life, 1785  
 Only prepares for scenes of future strife."

Gúdarz, returning, told the hopeless tale—  
 And thinking Rustem's presence might prevail;  
 The Champion rose, but ere he reached the throne,  
 Sohráb had breathed the last expiring groan. 1790

Now keener anguish rack'd the father's mind,  
 Reft of his son, a murderer of his kind;  
 His guilty sword distained with filial gore,  
 He beat his burning breast, his hair he tore;  
 The breathless corse before his shuddering view, 1795  
 A shower of ashes o'er his head he threw;  
 "In my old age," he cried, "what have I done?

- Why have I slain my son, my innocent son!  
 Why o'er his splendid dawning did I roll  
 The clouds of death—and plunge my burthened soul  
 In agony? My son! from heroes sprung;  
 Better these hands were from my body wrung;  
 And solitude and darkness, deep and drear,  
 Fold me from sight than hated linger here.  
 But when his mother hears, with horror wild,  
 That I have shed the life-blood of her child,  
 So nobly brave, so dearly loved, in vain,  
 How can her heart that rending shock sustain?"
- 1800
- Now on a bier the Persian warriors place  
 The breathless Youth, and shade his pallid face;  
 And turning from that fatal field away,  
 Move towards the Champion's home in long array.  
 Then Rustem, sick of martial pomp and show,  
 Himself the spring of all this scene of woe,  
 Doomed to the flames the pageantry he loved,  
 Shield, spear, and mace, so oft in battle proved;  
 Now lost to all, encompassed by despair;  
 His bright pavilion crackling blazed in air;  
 The sparkling throne the ascending column fed;  
 In smoking fragments fell the golden bed;  
 The raging fire red glimmering died away,  
 And all the Warrior's pride in dust and ashes lay.
- 1810
- 1815
- 1820
- Káus, the King, now joins the mournful Chief,  
 And tries to soothe his deep and settled grief;  
 For soon or late we yield our vital breath,  
 And all our worldly troubles end in death!  
 "When first I saw him, graceful in his might,  
 He looked far other than a Tartar knight;  
 Wondering I gazed—now Destiny has thrown  
 Him on thy sword—he fought, and he is gone;  
 And should even Heaven against the earth be hurled,  
 Or fire inwrap in crackling flames the world,  
 That which is past—we never can restore,  
 His soul has travelled to some happier shore.  
 Alas! no good from sorrow canst thou reap,  
 Then wherefore thus in gloom and misery weep?"
- 1825
- 1830
- 1835
- But Rustem's mighty woes disdained his aid,  
 His heart was drowned in grief, and thus he said:  
 "Yes, he is gone! to me for ever lost!  
 O then protect his brave unguided host;  
 From war removed and this detested place,  
 Let them, unharmed, their mountain-wilds retrace;  
 Bid them secure my brother's will obey,  
 The careful guardian of their weary way,  
 To where the Jihún's distant waters stray."  
 To this the King: "My soul is sad to see  
 Thy hopeless grief—but, since approved by thee,  
 The war shall cease—though the Túrárian brand  
 Has spread dismay and terror through the land."
- 1840
- 1845

- The King, appeased, no more with vengeance burned,  
The Tartar legions to their homes returned;  
The Persian warriors, gathering round the dead,  
Grovelled in dust, and tears of sorrow shed;  
Then back to loved Irán their steps the monarch led. 1850
- But Rustem, midst his native bands, remained,  
And further rites of sacrifice maintained;  
A thousand horses bled at his command,  
And the torn drums were scattered o'er the sand;  
And now through Zábul's deep and bowery groves,  
In mournful pomp the sad procession moves. 1855
- The mighty Chief on foot precedes the bier;  
His Warrior-friends, in grief assembled near:  
The dismal cadence rose upon the gale,  
And Zál astonished heard the piercing wail;  
He and his kindred joined the solemn train;  
Hung round the bier and wondering viewed the slain. 1860
- "There gaze, and weep!" the sorrowing Father said,  
"For there, behold my glorious offspring dead!"  
The hoary Sire shrunk backward with surprise,  
And tears of blood overflowed his aged eyes; 1865
- And now the Champion's rural palace gate  
Receives the funeral group in gloomy state;  
Rúdábeh loud bemoaned the Stripling's doom;  
Sweet flower, all drooping in the hour of bloom,  
His tender youth in distant bowers had past,  
Sheltered at home he felt no withering blast; 1870
- In the soft prison of his mother's arms,  
Secure from danger and the world's alarms.  
O ruthless Fortune! flushed with generous pride,  
He sought his sire, and thus unhappy, died. 1880
- Rustem again the sacred bier unclosed;  
Again Sohráb to public view exposed;  
Husbands, and wives, and warriors, old and young,  
Struck with amaze, around the body hung,  
With garments rent and loosely flowing hair; 1885
- Their shrieks and clamours filled the echoing air;  
Frequent they cried: "Thus Sám the Champion slept!  
Thus sleeps Sohráb!" Again they groaned, and wept.
- Now o'er the corpse a yellow robe is spread,  
The aloes bier is closed upon the dead; 1890
- And, to preserve the hapless hero's name,  
Fragrant and fresh, that his unblemished fame  
Might live and bloom through all succeeding days,  
A mound sepulchral on the spot they raise,  
Formed like a charger's hoof. 1895
- In every ear  
The story has been told—and many a tear,  
Shed at the sad recital. Through Túrán,  
Afrásiyáb's wide realm, and Samengán,  
Deep sunk the tidings—nuptial bower, and bed,  
And all that promised happiness, had fled! 1900

- But when Tahmíneh heard this tale of woe,  
 Think how a mother bore the mortal blow!  
 Distracted, wild, she sprang from place to place;  
 With frenzied hands deformed her beauteous face;  
 The musky locks her polished temples crowned.  
 Furious she tore, and flung upon the ground;  
 Starting, in agony of grief, she gazed—  
 Her swimming eyes to Heaven imploring raised;  
 And groaning cried: "Sole comfort of my life!  
 Doomed the sad victim of unnatural strife,  
 Where art thou now with dust and blood defiled?  
 Thou darling boy, my lost, my murdered child!  
 When thou wert gone—how, night and lingering day,  
 Did thy fond mother watch the time away; 1905  
 For hope still pictured all I wished to see,  
 Thy father found, and thou returned to me,  
 Yes—thou, exulting in thy father's fame!  
 And yet, nor sire nor son, nor tidings, came:  
 How could I dream of this? ye met—but how?  
 That noble aspect—that ingenuous brow,  
 Moved not a nerve in him—ye met—to part,  
 Alas! the life-blood issuing from the heart  
 Short was the day which gave to me delight,  
 Soon, soon, succeeds a long and dismal night;  
 On whom shall now devolve my tender care?  
 Who, loved like thee, my bosom-sorrows share?  
 Whom shall I take to fill thy vacant place,  
 To whom extend a mother's soft embrace?  
 Sad fate! for one so young, so fair, so brave,  
 Seeking thy father thus to find a grave. 1910  
 These arms no more shall fold thee to my breast,  
 No more with thee my soul be doubly blest;  
 No, drowned in blood thy lifeless body lies,  
 For ever torn from these desiring eyes;  
 Friendless, alone, beneath a foreign sky,  
 Thy mail thy death-clothes—and thy father, by;  
 Why did not I conduct thee on the way,  
 And point where Rustem's bright pavilion lay?  
 Thou hadst the tokens—why didst thou withhold  
 Those dear remembrances—that pledge of gold?  
 Hadst thou the bracelet to his view restored,  
 Thy precious blood had never stained his sword." 1915  
 The strong emotion choked her panting breath,  
 Her veins seemed withered by the cold of death:  
 The trembling matrons hastening round her mourned,  
 With piercing cries, till fluttering life returned;  
 Then gazing up, distraught, she wept again,  
 And frantic, seeing 'midst her pitying train,  
 The favourite steed—now more than ever dear,  
 The hoofs she kissed, and bathed with many a tear;  
 Clasping the mail Sohráb in battle wore,  
 With burning lips she kissed it o'er and o'er;  
 His martial robes she in her arms comprest,  
 And like an infant strained them to her breast; 1920  
 The reins, and trappings, club, and spear, were brought,  
 The sword, and shield, with which the Stripling fought,  
 On whom shall now devolve my tender care?  
 Who, loved like thee, my bosom-sorrows share?  
 Whom shall I take to fill thy vacant place,  
 To whom extend a mother's soft embrace?  
 Sad fate! for one so young, so fair, so brave,  
 Seeking thy father thus to find a grave. 1925  
 These arms no more shall fold thee to my breast,  
 No more with thee my soul be doubly blest;  
 No, drowned in blood thy lifeless body lies,  
 For ever torn from these desiring eyes;  
 Friendless, alone, beneath a foreign sky,  
 Thy mail thy death-clothes—and thy father, by;  
 Why did not I conduct thee on the way,  
 And point where Rustem's bright pavilion lay?  
 Thou hadst the tokens—why didst thou withhold  
 Those dear remembrances—that pledge of gold?  
 Hadst thou the bracelet to his view restored,  
 Thy precious blood had never stained his sword." 1930  
 The strong emotion choked her panting breath,  
 Her veins seemed withered by the cold of death:  
 The trembling matrons hastening round her mourned,  
 With piercing cries, till fluttering life returned;  
 Then gazing up, distraught, she wept again,  
 And frantic, seeing 'midst her pitying train,  
 The favourite steed—now more than ever dear,  
 The hoofs she kissed, and bathed with many a tear;  
 Clasping the mail Sohráb in battle wore,  
 With burning lips she kissed it o'er and o'er;  
 His martial robes she in her arms comprest,  
 And like an infant strained them to her breast; 1935  
 The reins, and trappings, club, and spear, were brought,  
 The sword, and shield, with which the Stripling fought,  
 On whom shall now devolve my tender care?  
 Who, loved like thee, my bosom-sorrows share?  
 Whom shall I take to fill thy vacant place,  
 To whom extend a mother's soft embrace?  
 Sad fate! for one so young, so fair, so brave,  
 Seeking thy father thus to find a grave. 1940  
 These arms no more shall fold thee to my breast,  
 No more with thee my soul be doubly blest;  
 No, drowned in blood thy lifeless body lies,  
 For ever torn from these desiring eyes;  
 Friendless, alone, beneath a foreign sky,  
 Thy mail thy death-clothes—and thy father, by;  
 Why did not I conduct thee on the way,  
 And point where Rustem's bright pavilion lay?  
 Thou hadst the tokens—why didst thou withhold  
 Those dear remembrances—that pledge of gold?  
 Hadst thou the bracelet to his view restored,  
 Thy precious blood had never stained his sword." 1945  
 The strong emotion choked her panting breath,  
 Her veins seemed withered by the cold of death:  
 The trembling matrons hastening round her mourned,  
 With piercing cries, till fluttering life returned;  
 Then gazing up, distraught, she wept again,  
 And frantic, seeing 'midst her pitying train,  
 The favourite steed—now more than ever dear,  
 The hoofs she kissed, and bathed with many a tear;  
 Clasping the mail Sohráb in battle wore,  
 With burning lips she kissed it o'er and o'er;  
 His martial robes she in her arms comprest,  
 And like an infant strained them to her breast; 1950  
 The reins, and trappings, club, and spear, were brought,  
 The sword, and shield, with which the Stripling fought,  
 On whom shall now devolve my tender care?  
 Who, loved like thee, my bosom-sorrows share?  
 Whom shall I take to fill thy vacant place,  
 To whom extend a mother's soft embrace?  
 Sad fate! for one so young, so fair, so brave,  
 Seeking thy father thus to find a grave. 1955

These she embraced with melancholy joy,  
 In sad remembrance of her darling boy.  
 And still she beat her face, and o'er them hung,  
 As in a trance—or to them wildly clung—  
 Day after day she thus indulged her grief,  
 Night after night, disdaining all relief;  
 At length worn out—from earthly anguish riven,  
 The mother's spirit joined her child in Heaven.

1960

1965

### Sikander

Failakús, before his death, placed the crown of sovereignty upon the head of Sikander, and appointed Aristú, who was one of the disciples of the great Aflátún, his vizir. He cautioned him to pursue the path of virtue and rectitude, and to cast from his heart every feeling of vanity and pride; above all he implored him to be just and merciful, and said:—

“Think not that thou art wise, but ignorant,  
 And ever listen to advice and counsel;  
 We are but dust, and from the dust created;  
 And what our lives but helplessness and sorrow!”

Sikander for a time attended faithfully to the instructions of his father, and to the counsel of Aristú, both in public and private affairs.

Upon Sikander's elevation to the throne, Dárá sent an envoy to him to claim the customary tribute, but he received for answer: “The time is past when Rúm acknowledged the superiority of Persia. It is now thy turn to pay tribute to Rúm. If my demand be refused, I will immediately invade thy dominions; and think not that I shall be satisfied with the conquest of Persia alone, the whole world shall be mine; therefore prepare for war.” Dárá had no alternative, not even submission, and accordingly assembled his army, for Sikander was already in full march against him. Upon the confines of Persia the armies came in sight of each other, when Sikander, in the assumed character of an envoy, was resolved to ascertain the exact condition of the enemy. With this view he entered the Persian camp, and Dárá allowing the person whom he supposed an ambassador, to approach, enquired what message the king of Rúm had sent to him. “Hear me!” said the pretended envoy: “Sikander has not invaded thy empire for the exclusive purpose of fighting, but to know its history, its laws, and customs, from personal inspection. His object is to travel through the whole world. Why then should he make war upon thee? Give him but a free passage through thy kingdom, and nothing more is required. However if it be thy wish to proceed to hostilities, he apprehends nothing from the greatness of thy power.” Dárá was astonished at the majestic air and dignity of the envoy, never having witnessed his equal, and he anxiously said:—

“What is thy name, from whom art thou descended?  
 For that commanding front, that fearless eye,  
 Bespeaks illustrious birth. Art thou indeed  
 Sikander, whom my fancy would believe thee,  
 So eloquent in speech, in mien so noble?”  
 “No!” said the envoy, “no such rank is mine,  
 Sikander holds among his numerous host  
 Thousands superior to the humble slave  
 Who stands before thee. It is not for me  
 To put upon myself the air of kings,  
 To ape their manners and their lofty state.”

Dárá could not help smiling, and ordered refreshments and wine to be brought. He filled a cup and gave it to the envoy, who drank it off, but did not, according to custom, return the empty goblet to the cup-bearer. The cup-bearer demanded the cup, and Dárá asked the envoy why he did not give it back. “It is the custom in my country,” said the envoy, “when a cup is once given into an ambassador's hands, never to receive it back again.” Dárá was still more amused by this explanation, and presented to him another cup, and successively four, which the envoy did not fail to appropriate severally in the same way. In the evening a feast was held, and Sikander partook of the delicious refreshments that had been prepared for him; but in the midst of the entertainment one of the persons present recognized him, and immediately whispered to Dárá that his enemy was in his power.

Sikander's sharp and cautious eye now marked  
 The changing scene, and up he sprang, but first  
 Snatched the four cups, and rushing from the tent,  
 Vaulted upon his horse, and rode away.  
 So instantaneous was the act, amazed  
 The assembly rose, and presently a troop  
 Was ordered in pursuit—but night, dark night,  
 Baffled their search, and checked their eager speed.



**IMAGE 6.7: FERDOWSI AND THE THREE GHAZNAVID COURT POETS |**  
 Ferdowsi and several other people enjoy a colorful garden with small ponds.

**Author:** User "Napoleon 100"  
**Source:** Wikimedia Commons  
**License:** Public Domain

few troops, still faithful to their unfortunate king, offered to make another effort against the enemy, and Dárá was too grateful and too brave to discountenance their enthusiastic fidelity, though with such little chance of success. A fragment of an army was consequently brought into action, and the result was what had been anticipated. Dárá was again a fugitive; and after the defeat, escaped with three hundred men into the neighboring desert. Sikander captured his wife and family, but magnanimously restored them to the unfortunate monarch, who, destitute of all further hope, now asked for a place of refuge in his own dominions, and for that he offered him all the buried treasure of his ancestors. Sikander, in reply, invited him to his presence; and promised to restore him to his throne,

As soon as he reached his own army, he sent for Aristátalís and his courtiers, and exultingly displayed to them the four golden cups. "These," said he, "have I taken from my enemy, I have taken them from his own table, and before his own eyes. His strength and numbers too I have ascertained, and my success is certain." No time was now lost in arrangements for the battle. The armies engaged, and they fought seven days without a decisive blow being struck. On the eighth, Dárá was compelled to fly, and his legions, defeated and harassed, were pursued by the Rúmís with great slaughter to the banks of the Euphrates. Sikander now returned to take possession of the capital. In the meantime Dárá collected his scattered forces together, and again tried his fortune, but he was again defeated. After his second success, the conqueror devoted himself so zealously to conciliate and win the affections of the people, that they soon ceased to remember their former king with any degree of attachment to his interests. Sikander said to them: "Persia indeed is my inheritance: I am no stranger to you, for I am myself descended from Dáráb; you may therefore safely trust to my justice and paternal care, in everything that concerns your welfare." The result was, that legion after legion united in his cause, and consolidated his power.

When Dárá was informed of the universal disaffection of his army, he said to the remaining friends who were personally devoted to him: "Alas! my subjects have been deluded by the artful dissimulation and skill of Sikander; your next misfortune will be the captivity of your wives and children. Yes, your wives and children will be made the slaves of the conquerors." A

that he might himself be enabled to pursue other conquests; but Dárá refused to go, although advised by his nobles to accept the invitation. "I am willing to put myself to death," said he with emotion, "but I cannot submit to this degradation. I cannot go before him, and thus personally acknowledge his authority over me." Resolved upon this point, he wrote to Faúr, one of the sovereigns of Ind, to request his assistance, and Faúr recommended that he should pay him a visit for the purpose of concerting what measures should be adopted. This correspondence having come to the knowledge of Sikander, he took care that his enemy should be intercepted in whatever direction he might proceed.

Dárá had two ministers, named Mahiyár and Jamúsipár, who, finding that according to the predictions of the astrologers their master would in a few days fall into the hands of Sikander, consulted together, and thought they had better put him to death themselves, in order that they might get into favor with Sikander. It was night, and the soldiers of the escort were dispersed at various distances, and the vizirs were stationed on each side of the king. As they travelled on, Jamúsipár took an opportunity of plunging his dagger into Dárá's side, and Mahiyár gave another blow, which felled the monarch to the ground. They immediately sent the tidings of this event to Sikander, who hastened to the spot, and the opening daylight presented to his view the wounded king.

Dismounting quickly, he in sorrow placed  
The head of Dárá on his lap, and wept  
In bitterness of soul, to see that form  
Mangled with ghastly wounds.

Dárá still breathed; and when he lifted up his eyes and beheld Sikander, he groaned deeply. Sikander said, "Rise up, that we may convey thee to a place of safety, and apply the proper remedies to thy wounds."—"Alas!" replied Dárá, "the time for remedies is past. I leave thee to Heaven, and may thy reign give peace and happiness to the empire."—"Never," said Sikander, "never did I desire to see thee thus mangled and fallen—never to witness this sight! If the Almighty should spare thy life, thou shalt again be the monarch of Persia, and I will go from hence. On my mother's word, thou and I are sons of the same father. It is this brotherly affection which now wrings my heart!" Saying this, the tears chased each other down his cheeks in such abundance that they fell upon the face of Dárá. Again, he said, "Thy murderers shall meet with merited vengeance, they shall be punished to the uttermost." Dárá blessed him, and said, "My end is approaching, but thy sweet discourse and consoling kindness have banished all my grief. I shall now die with a mind at rest. Weep no more—

"My course is finished, thine is scarce begun;  
But hear my dying wish, my last request:  
Preserve the honour of my family,  
Preserve it from disgrace. I have a daughter  
Dearer to me than life, her name is Roshung;  
Espouse her, I beseech thee—and if Heaven  
Should bless thee with a boy, O! let his name be  
Isfendiyár, that he may propagate  
With zeal the sacred doctrines of Zerdusht,  
The Zendavesta, then my soul will be  
Happy in Heaven; and he, at Náu-rúz tide,  
Will also hold the festival I love,  
And at the altar light the Holy Fire;  
Nor will he cease his labour, till the faith  
Of Lohurásp be everywhere accepted,  
And everywhere believed the true religion."

Sikander promised that he would assuredly fulfil the wishes he had expressed, and then Dárá placed the palm of his brother's hand on his mouth, and shortly afterwards expired. Sikander again wept bitterly, and then the body was placed on a golden couch, and he attended it in sorrow to the grave.

After the burial of Dárá, the two ministers, Jamúsipár and Mahiyár, were brought near the tomb, and executed upon the dar.

Just vengeance upon the guilty head,  
For they their generous monarch's blood had shed.

Sikander had now no rival to the throne of Persia, and he commenced his government under the most favorable auspices. He continued the same customs and ordinances which were handed down to him, and retained every one in his established rank and occupation. He gladdened the heart by his justice and liberality. Keeping in mind his promise to Dárá, he now wrote to the mother of Roshung, and communicating to her the dying solicitations of the king, requested her to send Roshung to him, that he might fulfil the last wish of his brother. The wife of Dárá immediately complied with the command, and sent her daughter with various presents to Sikander, and she was on her arrival married to the conqueror, acceding to the customs and laws of the empire. Sikander loved her exceedingly, and on her account remained some time in Persia, but he at length determined to proceed into Ind to conquer that country of enchanters and enchantment.

On approaching Ind he wrote to Kaid, summoning him to surrender his kingdom, and received from him the following answer: "I will certainly submit to thy authority, but I have four things which no other person in the world possesses, and which I cannot relinquish. I have a daughter, beautiful as an angel of Paradise, a wise minister, a skilful physician, and a goblet of inestimable value!" Upon receiving this extraordinary reply, Sikander again addressed a letter to him, in which he peremptorily required all these things immediately. Kaid not daring to refuse, or make any attempt at evasion, reluctantly complied with the requisition. Sikander received the minister and the physician with great politeness and attention, and in the evening held a splendid feast, at which he espoused the beautiful daughter of Kaid, and taking the goblet from her hands, drank off the wine with which it was filled. After that, Kaid himself waited upon Sikander, and personally acknowledged his authority and dominion.

Sikander then proceeded to claim the allegiance and homage of Faúr, the king of Kanúj, and wrote to him to submit to his power; but Faúr returned a haughty answer, saying:—

"Kaid Indí is a coward to obey thee,  
But I am Faúr, descended from a race  
Of matchless warriors; and shall I submit,  
And to a Greek!"

Sikander was highly incensed at this bold reply. The force he had now with him amounted to eighty thousand men; that is, thirty thousand Iránians, forty thousand Rúmis, and ten thousand Indís. Faúr had sixty thousand horsemen, and two thousand elephants. The troops of Sikander were greatly terrified at the sight of so many elephants, which gave the enemy such a tremendous superiority. Aristátlis, and some other ingenious counsellors, were requested to consult together to contrive some means of counteracting the power of the war-elephants, and they suggested the construction of an iron horse, and the figure of a rider also of iron, to be placed upon wheels like a carriage, and drawn by a number of horses. A soldier, clothed in iron armor, was to follow the vehicle—his hands and face besmeared with combustible matter, and this soldier, armed with a long staff, was at an appointed signal, to pierce the belly of the horse and also of the rider, previously filled with combustibles, so that when the ignited point came in contact with them, the whole engine would make a tremendous explosion and blaze in the air. Sikander approved of this invention, and collected all the blacksmiths and artisans in the country to construct a thousand machines of this description with the utmost expedition, and as soon as they were completed, he prepared for action. Faúr too pushed forward with his two thousand elephants in advance; but when the Kanújians beheld such a formidable array they were surprised, and Faúr anxiously inquired from his spies what it could be. Upon being told that it was Sikander's artillery, his troops pushed the elephants against the enemy with vigor, at which moment the combustibles were fired by the Rúmis, and the machinery exploding, many elephants were burnt and destroyed, and the remainder, with the troops, fled in confusion. Sikander then encountered Faúr, and after a severe contest, slew him, and became ruler of the kingdom of Kanúj.

After the conquest of Kanúj, Sikander went to Mekka, carrying thither rich presents and offerings. From thence he proceeded to another city, where he was received with great homage by the most illustrious of the nation. He enquired of them if there was anything wonderful or extraordinary in their country, that he might go to see it, and they replied that there were two trees in the kingdom, one a male, the other a female, from which a voice proceeded. The male-tree spoke in the day, and the female-tree in the night, and whoever had a wish, went thither to have his desires accomplished. Sikander immediately repaired to the spot, and approaching it, he hoped in his heart that a considerable part of his life still remained to be enjoyed. When he came under the tree, a terrible sound arose and rung in his ears, and he asked the people present what it meant. The attendant priest said it implied that fourteen years of his life still remained. Sikander, at this interpretation of the prophetic sound, wept and the burning tears ran down his cheeks. Again he asked, "Shall I return to Rúm, and see my mother and children before I die?" and the answer was, "Thou wilt die at Kashán."

"Nor mother, nor thy family at home  
 Wilt thou behold again, for thou wilt die,  
 Closing thy course of glory at Kashán."

Sikander left the place in sorrow, and pursued his way towards Rúm. In his progress he arrived at another city, and the inhabitants gave him the most honorable welcome, representing to him, however, that they were dreadfully afflicted by the presence of two demons or giants, who constantly assailed them in the night, devouring men and goats and whatever came in their way. Sikander asked their names; and they replied, Yájuj and Májuj (Gog and Magog). He immediately ordered a barrier to be erected five hundred yards high, and three hundred yards wide, and when it was finished he went away. The giants, notwithstanding all their efforts, were unable to scale this barrier, and in consequence the inhabitants pursued their occupations without the fear of molestation.

To scenes of noble daring still he turned  
 His ardent spirit—for he knew not fear.  
 Still he led on his legions—and now came  
 To a strange place, where countless numbers met  
 His wondering view—countless inhabitants  
 Crowding the city streets, and neighbouring plains;  
 And in the distance presently he saw  
 A lofty mountain reaching to the stars.  
 Onward proceeding, at its foot he found  
 A guardian-dragon, terrible in form,  
 Ready with open jaws to crush his victim;  
 But unappalled, Sikander him beholding  
 With steady eye, which scorned to turn aside,  
 Sprang forward, and at once the monster slew.

Ascending then the mountain, many a ridge,  
 Oft resting on the way, he reached the summit,  
 Where the dead corse of an old saint appeared  
 Wrapt in his grave-clothes, and in gems imbedded.  
 In gold and precious jewels glittering round,  
 Seeming to show what man is, mortal man!  
 Wealth, worldly pomp, the baubles of ambition,  
 All left behind, himself a heap of dust!

None ever went upon that mountain top,  
 But sought for knowledge; and Sikander hoped  
 When he had reached its cloudy eminence,  
 To see the visions of futurity  
 Arise from that departed, holy man!  
 And soon he heard a voice: "Thy time is nigh!  
 Yet may I thy career on earth unfold.  
 It will be thine to conquer many a realm,  
 Win many a crown; thou wilt have many friends  
 And numerous foes, and thy devoted head  
 Will be uplifted to the very heavens.  
 Renowned and glorious shalt thou be; thy name  
 Immortal; but, alas! thy time is nigh!"  
 At these prophetic words Sikander wept,  
 And from that ominous mountain hastened down.

After that Sikander journeyed on to the city of Kashán, where he fell sick, and in a few days, according to the oracle and the prophecy, expired. He had scarcely breathed his last, when Aristú, and Bilniyás the physician, and his family, entered Kashán, and found him dead. They beat their faces, and tore their hair, and mourned for him forty days.

## THE THOUSAND AND ONE NIGHTS

First published ca. 879 C.E.

Middle East and India

*The Thousand and One Nights* is a collection of mostly Middle Eastern and Indian stories, written in Arabic. Within a frame narrative, it contains numerous stories from different cultures in these regions. The first appearance of a physical fragment of *The Thousand and One Nights* dates from 879 C.E., and the next evidence was mentioned in the 10<sup>th</sup> century. By the mid-twentieth century, six different forms had been recognized. The French translation in 1704 by Antoine Galland was the first European translation. English translations of the text began in the nineteenth century, and early English translations sanitized parts of the stories. Based on popular oral storytelling traditions, the stories tend to have improvisational, sensuous, and enchanting qualities.

*Written by Kyounghye Kwon*

### SELECTIONS FROM THOUSAND AND ONE NIGHTS

License: Public Domain

Anonymous, Translated by Edward William Lane

#### Introduction

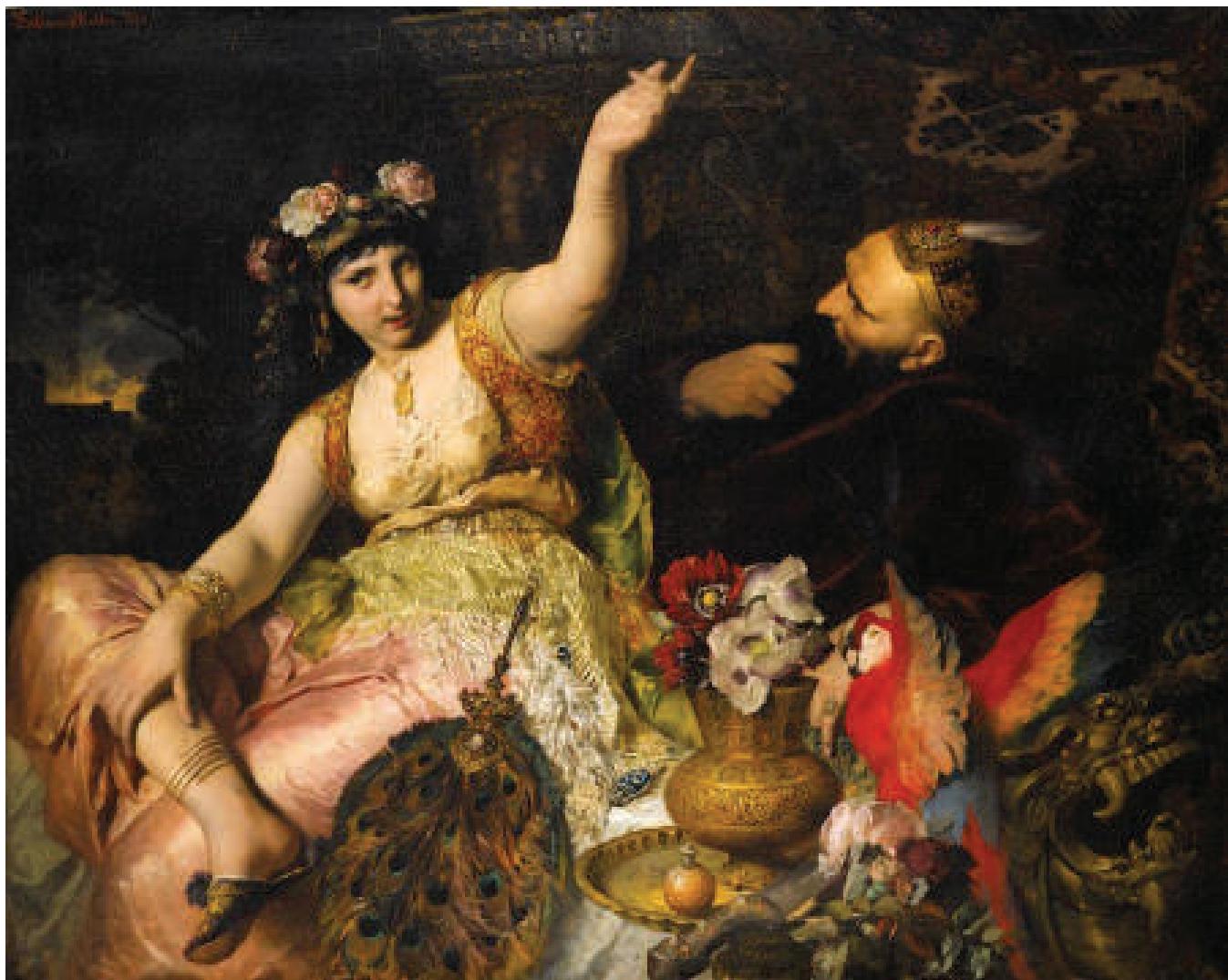
*In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful.*

Praise be to God, the Beneficent King, the Creator of the universe, who hath raised the heavens without pillars, and spread out the earth as abed; and blessing and peace be on the lord of apostles, our lord and our master Mohammad, and his Family; blessing and peace, enduring and constant, unto the day of judgment.

To proceed:—The lives of former generations are a lesson to posterity; that a man may review the remarkable events which have happened to others, and be admonished; and may consider the history of people of preceding ages, and of all that hath befallen them, and be restrained. Extolled be the perfection of Him who hath thus ordained the history of former generations to be a lesson to those which follow. Such are the Tales of a Thousand and One Nights, with their romantic stories and their fables.

It is related (but God alone is all-knowing, as well as all-wise, and almighty, and all-bountiful,) that there was, in ancient times, a King of the countries of India and China, possessing numerous troops, and guards, and servants, and domestic dependents: and he had two sons; one of whom was a man of mature age; and the other, a youth. Both of these princes were brave horsemen; but especially the elder, who inherited the kingdom of his father; and governed his subjects with such justice that the inhabitants of his country and whole empire loved him. He was called King Shahriyár: his younger brother was named Sháh-Zemán, and was King of Samarkand. The administration of their governments was conducted with rectitude, each of them ruling over his subjects with justice during a period of twenty years with the utmost enjoyment and happiness. After this period, the elder King felt a strong desire to see his brother, and ordered his Wezeer to repair to him and bring him.

Having taken the advice of the Wezeer on this subject, he immediately gave orders to prepare handsome presents, such as horses adorned with gold and costly jewels, and memlooks, and beautiful virgins, and expensive stuffs. He then wrote a letter to his brother, expressive of his great desire to see him; and having sealed it, and given it to the Wezeer, together with the presents above mentioned, he ordered the minister to strain his nerves, and tuck up his skirts, and use all expedition in returning. The Wezeer answered, without delay, I hear and obey; and forthwith prepared for the journey: he packed his baggage, removed the burdens, and made ready all his provisions within three days; and on the fourth day, he took leave of the King Shahriyár, and went forth towards the deserts and wastes. He proceeded night and day; and each of the kings under the authority of King Shahriyár by whose residence he passed came forth to meet him, with costly presents, and gifts of gold and silver, and entertained him three days; after which, on the fourth day, he accompanied him one day's journey, and took leave of him. Thus he continued on his way until he drew near to the city of Samarkand, when he sent forward a messenger to inform King Sháh-Zemán of his approach. The messenger entered the city, inquired the way to the palace, and, introducing himself to the King, kissed the ground before him, and acquainted him with the approach of his brother's Wezeer; upon which Sháh-Zemán ordered the chief officers of his court, and the great men of his kingdom, to go forth a day's journey to meet him; and they did so; and when they met him, they welcomed him, and walked by his stirrups until they returned to the city. The Wezeer then presented himself before the King Sháh-Zemán, greeted him with a prayer for the divine assistance in his favour, kissed the ground before him, and informed him of his brother's desire to see him; after which he handed to him the letter. The King took it, read it, and understood its contents; and



**IMAGE 6.8: SHEHERAZADE AND SULTAN SCHARIAR** | Sheherazade, the Sultan's most recent wife, tells him one of her many stories.

**Author:** Ferdinand Keller

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

answered by expressing his readiness to obey the commands of his brother. But, said he (addressing the Wezeer), I will not go until I have entertained thee three days. Accordingly, he lodged him in a palace befitting his rank, accommodated his troops in tents, and appointed them all things requisite in the way of food and drink: and so they remained three days. On the fourth day, he equipped himself for the journey, made ready his baggage, and collected together costly presents suitable to his brother's dignity.

These preparations being completed, he sent forth his tents and camels and mules and servants and guards, appointed his Wezeer to be governor of the country during his absence, and set out towards his brother's dominions. At midnight, however, he remembered that he had left in his palace an article which he should have brought with him; and having returned to the palace to fetch it, he there beheld his wife sleeping in his bed, and attended by a male negro slave, who had fallen asleep by her side. On beholding this scene, the world became black before his eyes; and he said within himself, If this is the case when I have not departed from the city, what will be the conduct of this vile woman while I am sojourning with my brother? He then drew his sword, and slew them both in the bed: after which he immediately returned, gave orders for departure, and journeyed to his brother's capital.

Shahriyár, rejoicing at the tidings of his approach, went forth to meet him, saluted him, and welcomed him with the utmost delight. He then ordered that the city should be decorated on the occasion, and sat down to entertain his brother with cheerful conversation: but the mind of King Sháh-Zemán was distracted by reflections upon the conduct of his wife; excessive grief took possession of him; and his countenance became sallow; and his frame,

emaciated. His brother observed his altered condition, and, imagining that it was occasioned by his absence from his dominions, abstained from troubling him or asking respecting the cause, until after the lapse of some days, when at length he said to him, O my brother, I perceive that thy body is emaciated, and thy countenance is become sallow. He answered, O brother, I have an internal sore:—and he informed him not of the conduct of his wife which he had witnessed. Shahriyár then said, I wish that thou wouldest go out with me on a hunting excursion; perhaps thy mind might so be diverted:—but he declined; and Shahriyár went alone to the chase.

Now there were some windows in the King's palace commanding a view of his garden; and while his brother was looking out from one of these, a door of the palace was opened, and there came forth from it twenty females and twenty male black slaves; and the King's wife, who was distinguished by extraordinary beauty and elegance, accompanied them to a fountain, where they all disrobed themselves, and sat down together. The King's wife then called out, O Mesood! and immediately a black slave came to her, and embraced her; she doing the like. So also did the other slaves and the women; and all of them continued revelling together until the close of the day. When Sháh-Zemán beheld this spectacle, he said within himself, By Allah! my affliction is lighter than this! His vexation and grief were alleviated, and he no longer abstained from sufficient food and drink.

When his brother returned from his excursion, and they had saluted each other, and King Shahriyár observed his brother Sháh-Zemán, that his colour had returned, that his face had recovered the flush of health, and that he ate with appetite, after his late abstinence, he was surprised, and said, O my brother, when I saw thee last, thy countenance was sallow, and now thy colour hath returned to thee: acquaint me with thy state.—As to the change of my natural complexion, answered Sháh-Zemán, I will inform thee of its cause; but excuse my explaining to thee the return of my colour.—First, said Shahriyár, relate to me the cause of the change of thy proper complexion, and of thy weakness: let me hear it.—Know then, O my brother, he answered, that when thou sentest thy Wezeer to me to invite me to thy presence, I prepared myself for the journey, and when I had gone forth from the city, I remembered that I had left behind me the jewel that I have given thee; I therefore returned to my palace for it, and there I found my wife sleeping in my bed, and attended by a black male slave; and I killed them both, and came to thee: but my mind was occupied by reflections upon this affair, and this was the cause of the change of my complexion, and of my weakness: now, as to the return of my colour, excuse my informing thee of its cause.—But when his brother heard these words, he said, I conjure thee by Allah that thou acquaint me with the cause of the return of thy colour:—so he repeated to him all that he had seen. I would see this, said Shahriyár, with my own eye.—Then, said Sháh-Zemán, give out that thou art going again to the chase, and conceal thyself here with me, and thou shalt witness this conduct, and obtain ocular proof of it.

Shahriyár, upon this, immediately announced that it was his intention to make another excursion. The troops went out of the city with the tents, and the King followed them; and after he had reposed awhile in the camp, he said to his servants, Let no one come in to me:—and he disguised himself, and returned to his brother in the palace, and sat in one of the windows overlooking the garden; and when he had been there a short time, the women and their mistress entered the garden with the black slaves, and did as his brother had described, continuing so until the hour of the afternoon-prayer.

When King Shahriyár beheld this occurrence, reason fled from his head, and he said to his brother Sháh-Zemán, Arise, and let us travel whither we please, and renounce the regal state, until we see whether such a calamity as this have befallen any other person like unto us; and if not, our death will be preferable to our life. His brother agreed to his proposal, and they went out from a private door of the palace, and journeyed continually, days and nights, until they arrived at a tree in the midst of a meadow, by a spring of water, on the shore of the sea. They drank of this spring, and sat down to rest; and when the day had a little advanced, the sea became troubled before them, and there arose from it a black pillar, ascending towards the sky, and approaching the meadow. Struck with fear at the sight, they climbed up into the tree, which was lofty; and thence they gazed to see what this might be: and behold, it was a Jinnee, of gigantic stature, broad-fronted and bulky, bearing on his head a chest. He landed, and came to the tree into which the two Kings had climbed, and, having seated himself beneath it, opened the chest, and took out of it another box, which he also opened; and there came forth from it a young woman, fair and beautiful, like the shining sun. When the Jinnee cast his eyes upon her, he said, O lady of noble race, whom I carried off on thy wedding-night, I have a desire to sleep a little:—and he placed his head upon her knee, and slept. The damsel then raised her head towards the tree, and saw there the two Kings; upon which she removed the head of the Jinnee from her knee, and, having placed it on the ground, stood under the tree, and made signs to the two Kings, as though she would say, Come down, and fear not this 'Efreet. They answered her, We conjure thee by Allah that thou excuse us in this matter. But she said, I conjure you by the same that ye come down; and if ye do not, I will rouse this 'Efreet, and he shall put you to a cruel death. So, being afraid, they came down to her; and, after they had remained with her as long as she required, she took from her pocket a purse, and drew out from this a string, upon which were ninety-eight seal-rings; and she said to them, Know ye what are these? They answered, We know not.—The owners of these rings, said she, have, all of them, been admitted to converse with me, like as ye have, unknown to this fool-

ish 'Efreet; therefore, give me your two rings, ye brothers. So they gave her their two rings from their fingers; and she then said to them, This 'Efreet carried me off on my wedding-night, and put me in the box, and placed the box in the chest, and affixed to the chest seven locks, and deposited me, thus imprisoned, in the bottom of the roaring sea, beneath the dashing waves; not knowing that, when one of our sex desires to accomplish any object, nothing can prevent her. In accordance with this, says one of the poets:—

Never trust in women; nor rely upon their vows;  
 For their pleasure and displeasure depend upon their passions.  
 They offer a false affection; for perfidy lurks within their clothing.  
 By the tale of Yoosuf be admonished, and guard against their stratagems.  
 Dost thou not consider that Iblees ejected Adam by means of woman?

And another poet says:—

Abstain from censure; for it will strengthen the censured, and increase desire into violent passion.  
 If I suffer such passion, my case is but the same as that of many a man before me:  
 For greatly indeed to be wondered at is he who hath kept himself safe from women's artifice.

When the two Kings heard these words from her lips, they were struck with the utmost astonishment, and said, one to the other, If this is an 'Efreet, and a greater calamity hath happened unto him than that which hath befallen us, this is a circumstance that should console us:—and immediately they departed, and returned to the city.

As soon as they had entered the palace, Shahriyár caused his wife to be beheaded, and in like manner the women and black slaves; and thenceforth he made it his regular custom, every time that he took a virgin to his bed, to kill her at the expiration of the night. Thus he continued to do during a period of three years; and the people raised an outcry against him, and fled with their daughters, and there remained not a virgin in the city of a sufficient age for marriage. Such was the case when the King ordered the Wezeer to bring him a virgin according to his custom; and the Wezeer went forth and searched, and found none; and he went back to his house enraged and vexed, fearing what the King might do to him.

Now the Wezeer had two daughters; the elder of whom was named Shahrazád; and the younger, Dunyázád. The former had read various books of histories, and the lives of preceding kings, and stories of past generations: it is asserted that she had collected together a thousand books of histories, relating to preceding generations and kings, and works of the poets: and she said to her father on this occasion, Why do I see thee thus changed, and oppressed with solicitude and sorrows? It has been said by one of the poets:—

Tell him who is oppressed with anxiety, that anxiety will not last:  
 As happiness passeth away, so passeth away anxiety.

When the Wezeer heard these words from his daughter, he related to her all that had happened to him with regard to the King: upon which she said, By Allah, O my father, give me in marriage to this King: either I shall die, and be a ransom for one of the daughters of the Muslims, or I shall live, and be the cause of their deliverance from him.—I conjure thee by Allah, exclaimed he, that thou expose not thyself to such peril:—but she said, It must be so. Then, said he, I fear for thee that the same will befall thee that happened in the case of the ass and the bull and the husbandman.—And what, she asked, was that, O my father.

Know, O my daughter, said the Wezeer, that there was a certain merchant, who possessed wealth and cattle, and had a wife and children; and God, whose name be exalted, had also endowed him with the knowledge of the languages of beasts and birds. The abode of this merchant was in the country; and he had, in his house, an ass and a bull. When the bull came to the place where the ass was tied, he found it swept and sprinkled; in his manger were sifted barley and sifted cut straw, and the ass was lying at his ease; his master being accustomed only to ride him occasionally, when business required, and soon to return: and it happened, one day, that the merchant overheard the bull saying to the ass, May thy food benefit thee! I am oppressed with fatigue, while thou art enjoying repose: thou eatest sifted barley, and men serve thee; and it is only occasionally that thy master rides thee, and returns; while I am continually employed in ploughing, and turning the mill.—The ass answered, When thou goest out to the field, and they place the yoke upon thy neck, lie down, and do not rise again, even if they beat thee; or, if thou rise, lie down a second time; and when they take thee back, and place the beans before thee, eat them not, as though thou wert sick: abstain from eating and drinking a day, or two days, or three; and so shalt thou find rest from trouble and labour.—Accordingly, when the driver came to the bull with his fodder, he ate scarcely any of it; and on the morrow, when the driver came again to take him to plough, he found him apparently quite infirm: so the merchant said,

Take the ass, and make him draw the plough in his stead all the day. The man did so; and when the ass returned at the close of the day, the bull thanked him for the favour he had conferred upon him by relieving him of his trouble on that day; but the ass returned him no answer, for he repented most grievously. On the next day, the ploughman came again, and took the ass, and ploughed with him till evening; and the ass returned with his neck flayed by the yoke, and reduced to an extreme state of weakness; and the bull looked upon him, and thanked and praised him. The ass exclaimed, I was living at ease, and nought but my meddling hath injured me! Then said he to the bull, Know that I am one who would give thee good advice: I heard our master say, If the bull rise not from his place, take him to the butcher, that he may kill him, and make a naṭa of his skin:—I am therefore in fear for thee, and so I have given thee advice; and peace be on thee!—When the bull heard these words of the ass, he thanked him, and said, To-morrow I will go with alacrity:—so he ate the whole of his fodder, and even licked the manger.—Their master, meanwhile, was listening to their conversation.

On the following morning, the merchant and his wife went to the bull's crib, and sat down there; and the driver came, and took out the bull; and when the bull saw his master, he shook his tail, and showed his alacrity by sounds and actions, bounding about in such a manner that the merchant laughed until he fell backwards. His wife, in surprise, asked him, At what dost thou laugh? He answered, At a thing that I have heard and seen; but I cannot reveal it; for if I did, I should die. She said, Thou must inform me of the cause of thy laughter, even if thou die.—I cannot reveal it, said he: the fear of death prevents me.—Thou laughedst only at *me*, she said; and she ceased not to urge and importune him until he was quite overcome and distracted. So he called together his children, and sent for the Kádee and witnesses, that he might make his will, and reveal the secret to her, and die: for he loved her excessively, since she was the daughter of his paternal uncle, and the mother of his children, and he had lived with her to the age of a hundred and twenty years. Having assembled her family and his neighbours, he related to them his story, and told them that as soon as he revealed his secret he must die; upon which every one present said to her, We conjure thee by Allah that thou give up this affair, and let not thy husband, and the father of thy children, die. But she said, I will not desist until he tell me, though he die for it. So they ceased to solicit her; and the merchant left them, and went to the stable to perform the ablution, and then to return, and tell them the secret, and die.

Now he had a cock, with fifty hens under him, and he had also a dog; and he heard the dog call to the cock, and reproach him, saying, Art thou happy when our master is going to die? The cock asked, How so?—and the dog related to him the story; upon which the cock exclaimed, By Allah! our master has little sense: *I* have fifty wives; and I please this, and provoke that; while *he* has but *one* wife, and cannot manage this affair with her: why does he not take some twigs of the mulberry-tree, and enter her chamber, and beat her until she dies or repents? She would never, after that, ask him a question respecting anything.—And when the merchant heard the words of the cock, as he addressed the dog, he recovered his reason, and made up his mind to beat her.—Now, said the Wezeer to his daughter Shahrazád, perhaps I may do to thee as the merchant did to his wife. She asked, And what did he? He answered, He entered her chamber, after he had cut off some twigs of the mulberry-tree, and hidden them there; and then said to her, Come into the chamber, that I may tell thee the secret while no one sees me, and then die:—and when she had entered, he locked the chamber-door upon her, and beat her until she became almost senseless and cried out, I repent:—and she kissed his hands and his feet, and repented, and went out with him; and all the company, and her own family, rejoiced; and they lived together in the happiest manner until death.

When the Wezeer's daughter heard the words of her father, she said to him, It must be as I have requested. So he arrayed her, and went to the King Shahriyár. Now she had given directions to her young sister, saying to her, When I have gone to the King, I will send to request thee to come; and when thou comest to me, and seest a convenient time, do thou say to me, O my sister, relate to me some strange story to beguile our waking hour:—and I will relate to thee a story that shall, if it be the will of God, be the means of procuring deliverance.

Her father, the Wezeer, then took her to the King, who, when he saw her, was rejoiced, and said, Hast thou brought me what I desired? He answered, Yes. When the King, therefore, introduced himself to her, she wept; and he said to her, What aileth thee? She answered, O King, I have a young sister, and I wish to take leave of her. So the King sent to her; and she came to her sister, and embraced her, and sat near the foot of the bed; and after she had waited for a proper opportunity, she said, By Allah! O my sister, relate to us a story to beguile the waking hour of our night. Most willingly, answered Shahrazád, if this virtuous King permit me. And the King, hearing these words, and being restless, was pleased with the idea of listening to the story; and thus, on the first night of the thousand and one, Shahrazád commenced her recitations.

## Chapter I

*Commencing with the first night, and ending with the part of the third.*

### *The Story of the Merchant and the Jinnee*

It has been related to me, O happy King, said Shahrazád, that there was a certain merchant who had great wealth, and traded extensively with surrounding countries; and one day he mounted his horse, and journeyed to a neighbouring country to collect what was due to him, and, the heat oppressing him, he sat under a tree, in a garden, and put his hand into his saddle-bag, and ate a morsel of bread and a date which were among his provisions. Having eaten the date, he threw aside the stone, and immediately there appeared before him an 'Efreet, of enormous height, who, holding a drawn sword in his hand, approached him, and said, Rise, that I may kill thee, as thou hast killed my son. The merchant asked him, How have I killed thy son? He answered, When thou atest the date, and threwest aside the stone, it struck my son upon the chest, and, as fate had decreed against him, he instantly died.

The merchant, on hearing these words, exclaimed, Verily to God we belong, and verily to Him we must return! There is no strength nor power but in God, the High, the Great! If I killed him, I did it not intentionally, but without knowing it; and I trust in thee that thou wilt pardon me.—The Jinnee answered, Thy death is indispensable, as thou hast killed my son:—and so saying, he dragged him, and threw him on the ground, and raised his arm to strike him with the sword. The merchant, upon this, wept bitterly, and said to the Jinnee, I commit my affair unto God, for no one can avoid what He hath decreed:—and he continued his lamentation, repeating the following verses:—

Time consists of two days; this, bright; and that, gloomy: and life, of two moieties; this, safe; and that, fearful.  
 Say to him who hath taunted us on account of misfortunes, Doth fortune oppose any but the eminent?  
 Dost thou not observe that corpses float upon the sea, while the precious pearls remain in its furthest depths?  
 When the hands of time play with us, misfortune is imparted to us by its protracted kiss.  
 In the heaven are stars that cannot be numbered; but none is eclipsed save the sun and the moon.  
 How many green and dry trees are on the earth; but none is assailed with stones save that which beareth fruit!  
 Thou thoughtest well of the days when they went well with thee, and fearedst not the evil that destiny was bringing.

—When he had finished reciting these verses, the Jinnee said to him, Spare thy words, for thy death is unavoidable.

Then said the merchant, Know, O 'Efreet, that I have debts to pay, and I have much property, and children, and a wife, and I have pledges also in my possession: let me, therefore, go back to my house, and give to every one his due, and then I will return to thee: I bind myself by a vow and covenant that I will return to thee, and thou shalt do what thou wilt; and God is witness of what I say.—Upon this, the Jinnee accepted his covenant, and liberated him; granting him a respite until the expiration of the year.

The merchant, therefore, returned to his town, accomplished all that was upon his mind to do, paid every one what he owed him, and informed his wife and children of the event which had befallen him; upon hearing which, they and all his family and women wept. He appointed a guardian over his children, and remained with his family until the end of the year; when he took his grave-clothes under his arm, bade farewell to his household and neighbours, and all his relations, and went forth, in spite of himself; his family raising cries of lamentation, and shrieking.

He proceeded until he arrived at the garden before mentioned; and it was the first day of the new year; and as he sat, weeping for the calamity which he expected soon to befall him, a sheykh, advanced in years, approached him, leading a gazelle with a chain attached to its neck. This sheykh saluted the merchant, wishing him a long life, and said to him, What is the reason of thy sitting alone in this place, seeing that it is a resort of the Jinn? The merchant therefore informed him of what had befallen him with the 'Efreet, and of the cause of his sitting there; at which the sheykh, the owner of the gazelle, was astonished, and said, By Allah, O my brother, thy faithfulness is great, and thy story is wonderful! if it were engraved upon the intellect, it would be a lesson to him who would be admonished!—And he sat down by his side, and said, By Allah, O my brother, I will not quit this place until I see what will happen unto thee with this 'Efreet. So he sat down, and conversed with him. And the merchant became almost senseless; fear entered him, and terror, and violent grief, and excessive anxiety. And as the owner of the gazelle sat by his side, lo, a second sheykh approached them, with two black hounds, and inquired of them, after saluting them, the reason of their sitting in that place, seeing that it was a resort of the Jánn: and they told him the story from beginning to end. And he had hardly sat down when there approached them a third sheykh, with a dapple mule; and he asked them the same question, which was answered in the same manner.

Immediately after, the dust was agitated, and became an enormous revolving pillar, approaching them from the midst of the desert; and this dust subsided, and behold, the Jinnee, with a drawn sword in his hand; his eyes casting forth sparks of fire. He came to them, and dragged from them the merchant, and said to him, Rise, that I may kill thee, as thou killedst my son, the vital spirit of my heart. And the merchant wailed and wept; and the three sheykhs also manifested their sorrow by weeping and crying aloud and wailing: but the first sheykh, who was the owner

of the gazelle, recovering his self-possession, kissed the hand of the 'Efreet, and said to him, O thou Jinnee, and crown of the kings of the Jánn, if I relate to thee the story of myself and this gazelle, and thou find it to be wonderful, and more so than the adventure of this merchant, wilt thou give up to me a third of thy claim to his blood? He answered, Yes, O sheykh; if thou relate to me the story, and I find it to be as thou hast said, I will give up to thee a third of my claim to his blood.

### *The Story of the First Sheykh and the Gazelle*

Then said the sheykh, Know, O 'Efreet, that this gazelle is the daughter of my paternal uncle, and she is of my flesh and my blood. I took her as my wife when she was young, and lived with her about thirty years; but I was not blessed with a child by her; so I took to me a concubine slave, and by her I was blessed with a male child, like the rising full moon, with beautiful eyes, and delicately-shaped eyebrows, and perfectly-formed limbs; and he grew up by little and little until he attained the age of fifteen years. At this period, I unexpectedly had occasion to journey to a certain city, and went thither with a great stock of merchandise.

Now my cousin, this gazelle, had studied enchantment and divination from her early years; and during my absence, she transformed the youth above mentioned into a calf; and his mother, into a cow; and committed them to the care of the herdsman: and when I returned, after a long time, from my journey, I asked after my son and his mother, and she said, Thy slave is dead, and thy son hath fled, and I know not whither he is gone. After hearing this, I remained for the space of a year with mourning heart and weeping eye, until the Festival of the Sacrifice; when I sent to the herdsman, and ordered him to choose for me a fat cow; and he brought me one, and it was my concubine, whom this gazelle had enchanted. I tucked up my skirts and sleeves, and took the knife in my hand, and prepared myself to slaughter her; upon which she moaned and cried so violently that I left her, and ordered the herdsman to kill and skin her: and he did so, but found in her neither fat nor flesh, nor anything but skin and bone; and I repented of slaughtering her, when repentance was of no avail. I therefore gave her to the herdsman, and said to him, Bring me a fat calf: and he brought me my son, who was transformed into a calf. And when the calf saw me, he broke his rope, and came to me, and fawned upon me, and wailed and cried, so that I was moved with pity for him; and I said to the herdsman, Bring me a cow, and let this—

Here Shahrazád perceived the light of morning, and discontinued the recitation with which she had been allowed thus far to proceed. Her sister said to her, How excellent is thy story! and how pretty! and how pleasant! and how sweet!—but she answered, What is this in comparison with that which I will relate to thee in the next night, if I live, and the King spare me! And the King said, By Allah, I will not kill her until I hear the remainder of her story. Thus they pleasantly passed the night until the morning, when the King went forth to his hall of judgment, and the Wezeer went thither with the grave-clothes under his arm: and the King gave judgment, and invested and displaced, until the close of the day, without informing the Wezeer of that which had happened; and the minister was greatly astonished. The court was then dissolved; and the King returned to the privacy of his palace.

[On the second and each succeeding night, Shahrazád continued so to interest King Shahriyár by her stories as to induce him to defer putting her to death, in expectation that her fund of amusing tales would soon be exhausted; and as this is expressed in the original work in nearly the same words at the close of every night, such repetitions will in the present translation be omitted.]

When the sheykh, continued Shahrazád, observed the tears of the calf, his heart sympathized with him, and he said to the herdsman, Let this calf remain with the cattle—Meanwhile, the Jinnee wondered at this strange story; and the owner of the gazelle thus proceeded.

O lord of the kings of the Jánn, while this happened, my cousin, this gazelle, looked on, and said, Slaughter this calf; for he is fat: but I could not do it; so I ordered the herdsman to take him back; and he took him and went away. And as I was sitting, on the following day, he came to me, and said, O my master, I have to tell thee something that thou wilt be rejoiced to hear; and a reward is due to me for bringing good news. I answered, Well:—and he said, O merchant, I have a daughter who learned enchantment in her youth from an old woman in our family; and yesterday, when thou gavest me the calf, I took him to her, and she looked at him, and covered her face, and wept, and then laughed, and said, O my father, hath my condition become so degraded in thy opinion that thou bringest before me strange men?—Where, said I, are any strange men? and wherefore didst thou weep and laugh? She answered, This calf that is with thee is the son of our master, the merchant, and the wife of our master hath enchanted both him and his mother; and this was the reason of my laughter; but as to the reason of my weeping, it was on account of his mother, because his father had slaughtered her.—And I was excessively astonished at this; and scarcely was I certain that the light of morning had appeared when I hastened to inform thee.

When I heard, O Jinnee, the words of the herdsman, I went forth with him, intoxicated without wine, from the excessive joy and happiness that I received, and arrived at his house, where his daughter welcomed me, and kissed my hand; and the calf came to me, and fawned upon me. And I said to the herdsman's daughter, Is that true which

thou hast said respecting this calf? She answered, Yes, O my master; he is verily thy son, and the vital spirit of thy heart.—O maiden, said I, if thou wilt restore him, all the cattle and other property of mine that thy father hath under his care shall be thine. Upon this, she smiled, and said, O my master, I have no desire for the property unless on two conditions: the first is, that thou shalt marry me to him; and the second, that I shall enchant her who enchanted him, and so restrain her; otherwise, I shall not be secure from her artifice. On hearing, O Jinnee, these her words, I said, And thou shalt have all the property that is under the care of thy father besides; and as to my cousin, even her blood shall be lawful to thee. So, when she heard this, she took a cup, and filled it with water, and repeated a spell over it, and sprinkled with it the calf, saying to him, If God created thee a calf, remain in this form, and be not changed; but if thou be enchanted, return to thy original form, by permission of God, whose name be exalted!—upon which he shook, and became a man; and I threw myself upon him, and said, I conjure thee by Allah that thou relate to me all that my cousin did to thee and to thy mother. So he related to me all that had happened to them both; and I said to him, O my son, God hath given thee one to liberate thee, and to avenge thee:—and I married to him, O Jinnee, the herdsman's daughter; after which, she transformed my cousin into this gazelle. And as I happened to pass this way, I saw this merchant, and asked him what had happened to him; and when he had informed me, I sat down to see the result.—This is my story. The Jinnee said, This is a wonderful tale; and I give up to thee a third of my claim to his blood.

The second sheykh, the owner of the two hounds, then advanced, and said to the Jinnee, If I relate to thee the story of myself and these hounds, and thou find it to be in like manner wonderful, wilt thou remit to me, also, a third of thy claim to the blood of this merchant? The Jinnee answered, Yes.

### *The Story of the Second Sheykh and the Two Black Hounds*

Then said the sheykh, Know, O lord of the kings of the Jānn, that these two hounds are my brothers. My father died, and left to us three thousand pieces of gold; and I opened a shop to sell and buy. But one of my brothers made a journey, with a stock of merchandise, and was absent from us for the space of a year with the caravans; after which, he returned destitute. I said to him, Did I not advise thee to abstain from travelling? But he wept, and said, O my brother, God, to whom be ascribed all might and glory, decreed this event; and there is no longer any profit in these words: I have nothing left. So I took him up into the shop, and then went with him to the bath, and clad him in a costly suit of my own clothing; after which, we sat down together to eat; and I said to him, O my brother, I will calculate the gain of my shop during the year, and divide it, exclusive of the principal, between me and thee. Accordingly, I made the calculation, and found my gain to amount to two thousand pieces of gold; and I praised God, to whom be ascribed all might and glory, and rejoiced exceedingly, and divided the gain in two equal parts between myself and him.—My other brother then set forth on a journey; and after a year, returned in the like condition; and I did unto him as I had done to the former.

After this, when we had lived together for some time, my brothers again wished to travel, and were desirous that I should accompany them; but I would not. What, said I, have ye gained in your travels, that I should expect to gain? They importuned me; but I would not comply with their request; and we remained selling and buying in our shops a whole year. Still, however, they persevered in proposing that we should travel, and I still refused, until after the lapse of six entire years, when at last I consented, and said to them, O my brothers, let us calculate what property we possess. We did so, and found it to be six thousand pieces of gold: and I then said to them, We will bury half of it in the earth, that it may be of service to us if any misfortune befall us, in which case each of us shall take a thousand pieces, with which to traffic. Excellent is thy advice, said they. So I took the money and divided it into two equal portions, and buried three thousand pieces of gold; and of the other half, I gave to each of them a thousand pieces. We then prepared merchandise, and hired a ship, and embarked our goods, and proceeded on our voyage for the space of a whole month, at the expiration of which we arrived at a city, where we sold our merchandise; and for every piece of gold we gained ten.

And when we were about to set sail again, we found, on the shore of the sea, a maiden clad in tattered garments, who kissed my hand, and said to me, O my master, art thou possessed of charity and kindness? If so, I will requite thee for them. I answered, Yes, I have those qualities, though thou requite me not. Then said she, O my master, accept me as thy wife, and take me to thy country; for I give myself to thee: act kindly towards me; for I am one who requires to be treated with kindness and charity, and who will requite thee for so doing; and let not my present condition at all deceive thee. When I heard these words, my heart was moved with tenderness towards her, in order to the accomplishment of a purpose of God, to whom be ascribed all might and glory; and I took her, and clothed her, and furnished for her a place in the ship in a handsome manner, and regarded her with kind and respectful attention.

We then set sail; and I became most cordially attached to my wife, so that, on her account, I neglected the society of my brothers, who, in consequence, became jealous of me, and likewise envied me my wealth, and the abundance of my merchandise; casting the eyes of covetousness upon the whole of the property. They therefore

consulted together to kill me, and take my wealth; saying, Let us kill our brother, and all the property shall be ours:—and the devil made these actions to seem fair in their eyes; so they came to me while I was sleeping by the side of my wife, and took both of us up, and threw us into the sea. But as soon as my wife awoke, she shook herself, and became transformed into a Jinneeyeh. She immediately bore me away, and placed me upon an island, and, for a while, disappeared. In the morning, however, she returned, and said to me, I am thy wife, who carried thee, and rescued thee from death, by permission of God, whose name be exalted. Know that I am a Jinneeyeh: I saw thee, and my heart loved thee for the sake of God; for I am a believer in God and his Apostle, God bless and save him! I came to thee in the condition in which thou sawest me, and thou didst marry me; and see, I have rescued thee from drowning. But I am incensed against thy brothers, and I must kill them.—When I heard her tale, I was astonished, and thanked her for what she had done;—But, said I, as to the destruction of my brothers, it is not what I desire. I then related to her all that had happened between myself and them from first to last; and when she had heard it, she said, I will, this next night, fly to them, and sink their ship, and destroy them. But I said, I conjure thee by Allah that thou do it not; for the author of the proverb saith, O thou benefactor of him who hath done evil, the action that he hath done is sufficient for him:—besides, they are at all events my brothers. She still, however, said, They must be killed;—and I continued to propitiate her towards them: and at last she lifted me up, and soared through the air, and placed me on the roof of my house.

Having opened the doors, I dug up what I had hidden in the earth; and after I had saluted my neighbours, and bought merchandise, I opened my shop. And in the following night, when I entered my house, I found these two dogs tied up in it; and as soon as they saw me, they came to me, and wept, and clung to me; but I knew not what had happened until immediately my wife appeared before me, and said, These are thy brothers. And who, said I, hath done this unto them? She answered, I sent to my sister and she did it; and they shall not be restored until after the lapse of ten years. And I was now on my way to her, that she might restore them, as they have been in this state ten years, when I saw this man, and, being informed of what had befallen him, I determined not to quit the place until I should have seen what would happen between thee and him.—This is my story.—Verily, said the Jinnee, it is a wonderful tale; and I give up to thee a third of the claim that I had to his blood on account of his offence.

Upon this, the third sheykh, the owner of the mule, said to the Jinnee, As to me, break not my heart if I relate to thee nothing more than this:—

### *The Story of the Third Sheykh and the Mule*

The mule that thou seest was my wife: she became enamoured of a black slave; and when I discovered her with him, she took a mug of water, and, having uttered a spell over it, sprinkled me, and transformed me into a dog. In this state, I ran to the shop of a butcher, whose daughter saw me, and, being skilled in enchantment, restored me to my original form, and instructed me to enchant my wife in the manner thou beholdest.—And now I hope that thou wilt remit to me also a third of the merchant's offence. Divinely was he gifted who said,

Sow good, even on an unworthy soil; for it will not be lost wherever it is sown.

When the sheykh had thus finished his story, the Jinnee shook with delight, and remitted the remaining third of his claim to the merchant's blood. The merchant then approached the sheykhs, and thanked them, and they congratulated him on his safety; and each went his way.

But this, said Shahrazád, is not more wonderful than the story of the fisherman. The King asked her, And what is the story of the fisherman? And she related it as follows:—

## Chapter II

### *Commencing with Part of the Third Night, and Ending with Part of the Ninth*

#### *The Story of the Fisherman*

There was a certain fisherman, advanced in age, who had a wife and three children; and though he was in indigent circumstances, it was his custom to cast his net, every day, no more than four times. One day he went forth at the hour of noon to the shore of the sea, and put down his basket, and cast his net, and waited until it was motionless in the water, when he drew together its strings, and found it to be heavy: he pulled, but could not draw it up: so he took the end of the cord, and knocked a stake into the shore, and tied the cord to it. He then stripped himself, and dived round the net, and continued to pull until he drew it out: whereupon he rejoiced, and put on his clothes; but when he came to examine the net, he found in it the carcass of an ass. At the sight of this he mourned, and exclaimed, There is no strength nor power but in God, the High, the Great! This is a strange piece of fortune!—And he repeated the following verse:—

O thou who occupiest thyself in the darkness of night, and in peril! Spare thy trouble; for the support of Providence is not obtained by toil!

He then disencumbered his net of the dead ass, and wrung it out; after which he spread it, and descended into the sea, and—exclaiming, In the name of God!—cast it again, and waited till it had sunk and was still, when he pulled it, and found it more heavy and more difficult to raise than on the former occasion. He therefore concluded that it was full of fish: so he tied it, and stripped, and plunged and dived, and pulled until he raised it, and drew it upon the shore; when he found in it only a large jar, full of sand and mud; on seeing which, he was troubled in his heart, and repeated the following words of the poet:—

O angry fate, forbear! or, if thou wilt not forbear, relent!  
Neither favour from fortune do I gain, nor profit from the work of my hands,  
I came forth to seek my sustenance, but have found it to be exhausted.  
How many of the ignorant are in splendour! and how many of the wise, in obscurity!

So saying, he threw aside the jar, and wrung out and cleansed his net; and, begging the forgiveness of God for his impatience, returned to the sea the third time, and threw the net, and waited till it had sunk and was motionless: he then drew it out, and found in it a quantity of broken jars and pots.

Upon this, he raised his head towards heaven, and said, O God, Thou knowest that I cast not my net more than four times; and I have now cast it three times! Then—exclaiming, In the name of God!—he cast the net again into the sea, and waited till it was still; when he attempted to draw it up, but could not, for it clung to the bottom. And he exclaimed, There is no strength nor power but in God!—and stripped himself again, and dived round the net, and pulled it until he raised it upon the shore; when he opened it, and found in it a bottle of brass, filled with something, and having its mouth closed with a stopper of lead, bearing the impression of the seal of our lord Suleymán. At the sight of this, the fisherman was rejoiced, and said, This I will sell in the copper-market; for it is worth ten pieces of gold. He then shook it, and found it to be heavy, and said, I must open it, and see what is in it, and store it in my bag; and then I will sell the bottle in the copper-market. So he took out a knife, and picked at the lead until he extracted it from the bottle. He then laid the bottle on the ground, and shook it, that its contents might pour out; but there came forth from it nothing but smoke, which ascended towards the sky, and spread over the face of the earth; at which he wondered excessively. And after a little while, the smoke collected together, and was condensed, and then became agitated, and was converted into an ‘Efreet, whose head was in the clouds, while his feet rested upon the ground: his head was like a dome: his hands were like winnowing forks; and his legs, like masts: his mouth resembled a cavern: his teeth were like stones; his nostrils, like trumpets; and his eyes, like lamps; and he had di-shevelled and dust-coloured hair.

When the fisherman beheld this ‘Efreet, the muscles of his sides quivered, his teeth were locked together, his spittle dried up, and he saw not his way. The ‘Efreet, as soon as he perceived him, exclaimed, There is no deity but God: Suleymán is the Prophet of God. O Prophet of God, slay me not; for I will never again oppose thee in word, or rebel against thee in deed!—O Márid, said the fisherman, dost thou say, Suleymán is the Prophet of God? Suleymán hath been dead a thousand and eight hundred years; and we are now in the end of time. What is thy history, and what is thy tale, and what was the cause of thy entering this bottle? When the Márid heard these words of the fisherman, he said, There is no deity but God! Receive news, O fisherman!—Of what, said the fisherman, dost thou give me news? He answered, Of thy being instantly put to a most cruel death. The fisherman exclaimed, Thou deservest, for this news, O master of the ‘Efrets, the withdrawal of protection from thee, O thou remote! Wherefore wouldst thou kill me? and what requires thy killing me, when I have liberated thee from the bottle, and rescued thee from the bottom of the sea, and brought thee up upon the dry land?—The ‘Efreet answered, Choose what kind of death thou wilt die, and in what manner thou shalt be killed.—What is my offence, said the fisherman, that this should be my recompense from thee? The ‘Efreet replied, Hear my story, O fisherman.—Tell it then, said the fisherman, and be short in thy words; for my soul hath sunk down to my feet.

Know then, said he, that I am one of the heretical Jinn: I rebelled against Suleymán the son of Dáood: I and Şakhr the Jinnee; and he sent to me his Wezeer, Áşaf the son of Barkhiyà, who came upon me forcibly, and took me to him in bonds, and placed me before him: and when Suleymán saw me, he offered up a prayer for protection against me, and exhorted me to embrace the faith, and to submit to his authority; but I refused; upon which he called for this bottle, and confined me in it, and closed it upon me with the leaden stopper, which he stamped with the Most Great Name: he then gave orders to the Jinn, who carried me away, and threw me into the midst of the sea. There I remained a hundred years; and I said in my heart, Whosoever shall liberate me, I will enrich him for ever:—but the hundred years passed over me, and no one liberated me: and I entered upon another hundred years; and I said, Whosoever shall liberate me, I will open to him the treasures of the earth;—but no one did so: and four

hundred years more passed over me, and I said, Whosoever shall liberate me, I will perform for him three wants:—but still no one liberated me. I then fell into a violent rage, and said within myself, Whosoever shall liberate me now, I will kill him; and only suffer him to choose in what manner he will die. And lo, now thou hast liberated me, and I have given thee thy choice of the manner in which thou wilt die.

When the fisherman had heard the story of the 'Efreet, he exclaimed, O Allah! that I should not have liberated thee but in such a time as this! Then said he to the 'Efreet, Pardon me, and kill me not, and so may God pardon thee; and destroy me not, lest God give power over thee to one who will destroy thee. The Márid answered, I must positively kill thee; therefore choose by what manner of death thou wilt die. The fisherman then felt assured of his death; but he again implored the 'Efreet, saying, Pardon me by way of gratitude for my liberating thee.—Why, answered the 'Efreet, I am not going to kill thee but for that very reason, because thou hast liberated me.—O Sheykh of the 'Efrets, said the fisherman, do I act kindly towards thee, and dost thou recompense me with baseness? But the proverb lieth not that saith,—

We did good to them, and they returned us the contrary; and such, by my life, is the conduct of the wicked. Thus he who acteth kindly to the undeserving is recompensed in the same manner as the aider of Umm-Ámir.

The 'Efreet, when he heard these words, answered by saying, Covet not life, for thy death is unavoidable. Then said the fisherman within himself, This is a Jinnee, and I am a man; and God hath given me sound reason; therefore, I will now plot his destruction with my art and reason, like as he hath plotted with his cunning and perfidy. So he said to the 'Efreet, Hast thou determined to kill me? He answered, Yes. Then said he, By the Most Great Name engraved upon the seal of Suleymán, I will ask thee one question; and wilt thou answer it to me truly? On hearing the mention of the Most Great Name, the 'Efreet was agitated, and trembled, and replied, Yes; ask, and be brief. The fisherman then said, How wast thou in this bottle? It will not contain thy hand or thy foot; how then can it contain thy whole body?—Dost thou not believe that I was in it? said the 'Efreet. The fisherman answered, I will never believe thee until I see thee in it. Upon this, the 'Efreet shook, and became converted again into smoke, which rose to the sky, and then became condensed, and entered the bottle by little and little, until it was all enclosed; when the fisherman hastily snatched the sealed leaden stopper, and, having replaced it in the mouth of the bottle, called out to the 'Efreet, and said, Choose in what manner of death thou wilt die. I will assuredly throw thee here into the sea, and build me a house on this spot; and whosoever shall come here, I will prevent his fishing in this place, and will say to him, Here is an 'Efreet, who, to any person that liberates him, will propose various kinds of death, and then give him his choice of one of them. On hearing these words of the fisherman, the 'Efreet endeavoured to escape; but could not, finding himself restrained by the impression of the seal of Suleymán, and thus imprisoned by the fisherman as the vilest and filthiest and least of 'Efrets. The fisherman then took the bottle to the brink of the sea. The 'Efreet exclaimed, Nay! nay!—to which the fisherman answered, Yea, without fail! yea, without fail! The Márid then addressing him with a soft voice and humble manner, said, What dost thou intend to do with me, O fisherman? He answered, I will throw thee into the sea; and if thou hast been there a thousand and eight hundred years, I will make thee to remain there until the hour of judgment. Did I not say to thee, Spare me, and so may God spare thee; and destroy me not, lest God destroy thee? But thou didst reject my petition, and wouldest nothing but treachery; therefore God hath caused thee to fall into my hand, and I have betrayed thee.—Open to me, said the 'Efreet, that I may confer benefits upon thee. The fisherman replied, Thou liest, thou accursed! I and thou are like the Wezeer of King Yoonán and the sage Doobán.—What, said the 'Efreet, was the case of the Wezeer of King Yoonán and the sage Doobán, and what is their story? The fisherman answered as follows:—

### *The Story of King Yoonán and the Sage of Doobán*

Know, O 'Efreet, that there was, in former times, in the country of the Persians, a monarch who was called King Yoonán, possessing great treasures and numerous forces, valiant, and having troops of every description; but he was afflicted with leprosy, which the physicians and sages had failed to remove; neither their potions, nor powders, nor ointments were of any benefit to him; and none of the physicians was able to cure him. At length there arrived at the city of this king a great sage, stricken in years, who was called the sage Doobán: he was acquainted with ancient Greek, Persian, modern Greek, Arabic, and Syriac books, and with medicine and astrology, both with respect to their scientific principles and the rules of their practical applications for good and evil; as well as the properties of plants, dried and fresh, the injurious and the useful: he was versed in the wisdom of the philosophers, and embraced a knowledge of all the medical and other sciences.

After this sage had arrived in the city, and remained in it a few days, he heard of the case of the King, of the leprosy with which God had afflicted him, and that the physicians and men of science had failed to cure him. In consequence of this information, he passed the next night in deep study; and when the morning came, and diffused

its light, and the sun saluted the Ornament of the Good, he attired himself in the richest of his apparel, and presented himself before the King. Having kissed the ground before him, and offered up a prayer for the continuance of his power and happiness, and greeted him in the best manner he was able, he informed him who he was, and said, O King, I have heard of the disease which hath attacked thy person, and that many of the physicians are unacquainted with the means of removing it; and I will cure thee without giving thee to drink any potion, or anointing thee with ointment. When King Yoonán heard his words, he wondered, and said to him, How wilt thou do this? By Allah, if thou cure me, I will enrich thee and thy children's children, and I will heap favours upon thee, and whatever thou shalt desire shall be thine, and thou shalt be my companion and my friend.—He then bestowed upon him a robe of honour, and other presents, and said to him, Wilt thou cure me of this disease without potion or ointment? He answered, Yes; I will cure thee without any discomfort to thy person. And the King was extremely astonished, and said, O Sage, at what time, and on what day, shall that which thou hast proposed to me be done? Hasten it, O my Son.—He answered, I hear and obey.

He then went out from the presence of the King, and hired a house, in which he deposited his books, and medicines, and drugs. Having done this, he selected certain of his medicines and drugs, and made a goff-stick, with a hollow handle, into which he introduced them; after which he made a ball for it, skilfully adapted; and on the following day, after he had finished these, he went again to the King, and kissed the ground before him, and directed him to repair to the horse-course, and to play with the ball and goff-stick. The King, attended by his Emeers and Chamberlains and Wezeers, went thither, and, as soon as he arrived there, the sage Doobán presented himself before him, and handed to him the goff-stick, saying, Take this goff-stick, and grasp it thus, and ride along the horse-course, and strike the ball with it with all thy force, until the palm of thy hand and thy whole body become moist with perspiration, when the medicine will penetrate into thy hand, and pervade thy whole body; and when thou hast done this, and the medicine remains in thee, return to thy palace, and enter the bath, and wash thyself, and sleep: then shalt thou find thyself cured: and peace be on thee. So King Yoonán took the goff-stick from the sage, and grasped it in his hand, and mounted his horse; and the ball was thrown before him, and he urged his horse after it until he overtook it, when he struck it with all his force; and when he had continued this exercise as long as was necessary, and bathed and slept, he looked upon his skin, and not a vestige of the leprosy remained: it was clear as white silver. Upon this he rejoiced exceedingly; his heart was dilated, and he was full of happiness.

On the following morning he entered the council-chamber, and sat upon his throne; and the Chamberlains and great officers of his court came before him. The sage Doobán also presented himself; and when the King saw him, he rose to him in haste, and seated him by his side. Services of food were then spread before them, and the sage ate with the King, and remained as his guest all the day; and when the night approached, the King gave him two thousand pieces of gold, besides dresses of honour and other presents, and mounted him on his own horse, and so the sage returned to his house. And the King was astonished at his skill; saying, This man hath cured me by an external process, without anointing me with ointment: by Allah, this is consummate science; and it is incumbent on me to bestow favours and honours upon him, and to make him my companion and familiar friend as long as I live. He passed the night happy and joyful on account of his recovery, and when he arose, he went forth again, and sat upon his throne; the officers of his court standing before him, and the Emeers and Wezeers sitting on his right hand and on his left; and he called for the sage Doobán, who came, and kissed the ground before him; and the King rose, and seated him by his side, and ate with him, and greeted him with compliments: he bestowed upon him again a robe of honour and other presents, and, after conversing with him till the approach of night, gave orders that five other robes of honour should be given to him, and a thousand pieces of gold; and the sage departed, and returned to his house.

Again, when the next morning came, the King went as usual to his council-chamber, and the Emeers and Wezeers and Chamberlains surrounded him. Now there was, among his Wezeers, one of ill aspect, and of evil star; sordid, avaricious, and of an envious and malicious disposition; and when he saw that the King had made the sage Doobán his friend, and bestowed upon him these favours, he envied him this distinction, and meditated evil against him; agreeably with the adage which saith, There is no one void of envy;—and another, which saith, Tyranny lurketh in the soul: power manifesteth it, and weakness concealeth it. So he approached the King, and kissed the ground before him, and said, O King of the age, thou art he whose goodness extendeth to all men, and I have an important piece of advice to give thee: if I were to conceal it from thee, I should be a base-born wretch: therefore, if thou order me to impart it, I will do so. The King, disturbed by these words of the Wezeer, said, What is thy advice? He answered, O glorious King, it hath been said, by the ancients, He who looketh not to results, fortune will not attend him:—now I have seen the King in a way that is not right; since he hath bestowed favours upon his enemy, and upon him who desireth the downfall of his dominion: he hath treated him with kindness, and honoured him with the highest honours, and admitted him to the closest intimacy: I therefore fear, for the King, the consequence of this conduct.—At this the King was troubled, and his countenance changed; and he said, Who is he whom thou regardest as mine enemy, and to whom I shew kindness? He replied, O King, if thou hast been asleep, awake! I allude to the sage Doobán.—The King said, He is my intimate companion, and the dearest of men in my estimation; for he

restored me by a thing that I merely held in my hand, and cured me of my disease which the physicians were unable to remove, and there is not now to be found one like to him in the whole world, from west to east. Wherefore, then, dost thou utter these words against him? I will, from this day, appoint him a regular salary and maintenance, and give him every month a thousand pieces of gold; and if I gave him a share of my kingdom it were but a small thing to do unto him. I do not think that thou hast said this from any other motive than that of envy. If I did what thou desirest, I should repent after it, as the man repented who killed his parrot.

### *The Story of the Husband and the Parrot*

There was a certain merchant, of an excessively jealous disposition, having a wife endowed with perfect beauty, who had prevented him from leaving his home; but an event happened which obliged him to make a journey; and when he found his doing so to be indispensable, he went to the market in which birds were sold, and bought a parrot, which he placed in his house to act as a spy, that, on his return, she might inform him of what passed during his absence; for this parrot was cunning and intelligent, and remembered whatever she heard. So, when he had made his journey, and accomplished his business, he returned, and caused the parrot to be brought to him, and asked her respecting the conduct of his wife. She answered, Thy wife has a lover, who visited her every night during thy absence:—and when the man heard this, he fell into a violent rage, and went to his wife, and gave her a severe beating.

The woman imagined that one of the female slaves had informed him of what had passed between her and her paramour during his absence: she therefore called them together, and made them swear; and they all swore that they had not told their master anything of the matter; but confessed that they had heard the parrot relate to him what had passed. Having thus established, on the testimony of the slaves, the fact of the parrot's having informed her husband of her intrigue, she ordered one of these slaves to grind with a hand-mill under the cage, another to sprinkle water from above, and a third to move a mirror from side to side, during the next night on which her husband was absent; and on the following morning, when the man returned from an entertainment at which he had been present, and inquired again of the parrot what had passed that night during his absence, the bird answered, O my master, I could neither see nor hear anything, on account of the excessive darkness, and thunder, and lightning, and rain. Now this happened during summer: so he said to her, What strange words are these? It is now summer, when nothing of what thou hast described ever happens.—The parrot, however, swore by Allah the Great that what she had said was true; and that it had so happened: upon which the man, not understanding the case, nor knowing the plot, became violently enraged, and took out the bird from the cage, and threw her down upon the ground with such violence that he killed her.

But after some days, one of his female slaves informed him of the truth; yet he would not believe it, until he saw his wife's paramour going out from his house; when he drew his sword, and slew the traitor by a blow on the back of his neck: so also did he to his treacherous wife; and thus both of them went, laden with the sin which they had committed, to the fire; and the merchant discovered that the parrot had informed him truly of what she had seen; and he mourned grievously for her loss.

When the Wezeer heard these words of King Yoonán, he said, O King of great dignity, what hath this crafty sage—this man from whom nought but mischief proceedeth—done unto me, that I should be his enemy, and speak evil of him, and plot with thee to destroy him? I have informed thee respecting him in compassion for thee, and in fear of his despoiling thee of thy happiness; and if my words be not true, destroy me, as the Wezeer of Es-Sindibád was destroyed.—The King asked, How was that? And the Wezeer thus answered:—

### *The Story of the Envious Wezeer and the Prince and the Ghooleh*

The King above mentioned had a son who was ardently fond of the chase; and he had a Wezeer whom he charged to be always with this son wherever he went. One day the son went forth to hunt, and his father's Wezeer was with him; and as they rode together, they saw a great wild beast; upon which the Wezeer exclaimed to the Prince, Away after this wild beast! The King's son pursued it until he was out of the sight of his attendants, and the beast also escaped from before his eyes in the desert; and while the Prince wandered in perplexity, not knowing whither to direct his course, he met in his way a damsels, who was weeping. He said to her, Who art thou?—and she answered, I am a daughter of one of the kings of India; I was in the desert, and slumber overtook me, and I fell from my horse in a state of insensibility, and being thus separated from my attendants, I lost my way. The Prince, on hearing this, pitied her forlorn state, and placed her behind him on his horse; and as they proceeded, they passed by a ruin, and the damsels said to him, O my master, I would alight here for a little while. The Prince therefore lifted her from his horse at this ruin; but she delayed so long to return, that he wondered wherefore she had loitered so, and entering after her, without her knowledge, perceived that she was a Ghooleh, and heard her say, My children, I have brought you to-day a fat young man:—on which they exclaimed, Bring him in to us, O mother! that we may fill our stomachs with his flesh. When the Prince heard their words, he felt assured of destruction; the muscles of his sides

quivered, and fear overcame him, and he retreated. The Ghooleh then came forth, and, seeing that he appeared alarmed and fearful, and that he was trembling, said to him, Wherefore dost thou fear? He answered, I have an enemy of whom I am in fear. The Ghooleh said, Thou assertest thyself to be the son of the King. He replied, Yes.—Then, said she, wherefore dost thou not give some money to thine enemy, and so conciliate him? He answered, He will not be appeased with money, nor with anything but life; and therefore do I fear him: I am an injured man. She then said to him, If thou be an injured man, as thou affirmest, beg aid of God against thine oppressor, and He will avert from thee his mischievous design, and that of every other person whom thou fearest. Upon this, therefore, the Prince raised his head towards heaven, and said, O thou who answerest the distressed when he prayeth to Thee, and dispelst evil, assist me, and cause mine enemy to depart from me; for Thou art able to do whatsoever Thou wilt!—and the Ghooleh no sooner heard his prayer, than she departed from him. The Prince then returned to his father, and informed him of the conduct of the Wezeer; upon which the King gave orders that the minister should be put to death.

### *Continuation of the Story of King Yoonán and the Safe Doobán*

And thou, O King, continued the Wezeer of King Yoonán, if thou trust in this sage, he will kill thee in the foulest manner. If thou continue to bestow favours upon him, and to make him thine intimate companion, he will plot thy destruction. Dost thou not see that he hath cured thee of the disease by external means, by a thing that thou heldest in thy hand? Therefore thou art not secure against his killing thee by a thing that thou shalt hold in the same manner.—King Yoonán answered, Thou hast spoken truth: the case is as thou hast said, O faithful Wezeer: it is probable that this sage came as a spy to accomplish my death; and if he cured me by a thing I held in my hand, he may destroy me by a thing that I may smell: what then, O Wezeer, shall be done respecting him? The Wezeer answered, Send to him immediately, and desire him to come hither; and when he is come, strike off his head, and so shalt thou avert from thee his evil design, and be secure from him. Betray him before he betray thee.—The King said, Thou hast spoken right.

Immediately, therefore, he sent for the sage, who came, full of joy, not knowing what the Compassionate had decreed against him, and addressed the King with these words of the poet:—

If I fail any day to render thee due thanks, tell me for whom I have composed my verse and prose.  
Thou hast loaded me with favours unsolicited, bestowed without delay on thy part, or excuse.  
How then should I abstain from praising thee as thou deservest, and lauding thee both with my heart and voice?  
Nay, I will thank thee for thy benefits conferred upon me: they are light upon my tongue, though weighty to my back.

Knowest thou, said the King, wherefore I have summoned thee? The sage answered, None knoweth what is secret but God, whose name be exalted! Then said the King, I have summoned thee that I may take away thy life. The sage, in the utmost astonishment at this announcement, said, O King, wherefore wouldst thou kill me, and what offence hath been committed by me? The King answered, It hath been told me that thou art a spy, and that thou hast come hither to kill me: but I will prevent thee by killing thee first:—and so saying, he called out to the executioner, Strike off the head of this traitor, and relieve me from his wickedness,—Spare me, said the sage, and so may God spare thee; and destroy me not, lest God destroy thee.—And he repeated these words several times, like as I did, O 'Efreet; but thou wouldst not let me go, desiring to destroy me.

King Yoonán then said to the sage Doobán, I shall not be secure unless I kill thee; for thou curedst me by a thing that I held in my hand, and I have no security against thy killing me by a thing that I may smell, or by some other means.—O King, said the sage, is this my recompense from thee? Dost thou return evil for good?—The King answered, Thou must be slain without delay. When the sage, therefore, was convinced that the King intended to put him to death, and that his fate was inevitable, he lamented the benefit that he had done to the undeserving. The executioner then advanced, and bandaged his eyes, and, having drawn his sword, said, Give permission. Upon this the sage wept, and said again, Spare me, and so may God spare thee; and destroy me not, lest God destroy thee! Wouldst thou return me the recompense of the crocodile?—What, said the King, is the story of the crocodile? The sage answered, I cannot relate it while in this condition; but I conjure thee by Allah to spare me, and so may He spare thee. And he wept bitterly. Then one of the chief officers of the King arose, and said, O King, give up to me the blood of this sage; for we have not seen him commit any offence against thee; nor have we seen him do aught but cure thee of thy disease, which wearied the other physicians and sages. The King answered, Ye know not the reason wherefore I would kill the sage: it is this, that if I suffered him to live, I should myself inevitably perish; for he who cured me of the disease under which I suffered by a thing that I held in my hand, may kill me by a thing that I may smell; and I fear that he would do so, and would receive an appointment on account of it; seeing that it is probable he is a spy who hath come hither to kill me; I must therefore kill him, and then shall I feel myself safe.—The sage then said again, Spare me, and so may God spare thee; and destroy me not, lest God destroy thee.

But he now felt certain, O 'Efreet, that the King would put him to death, and that there was no escape for him; so he said, O King, if my death is indispensable, grant me some respite, that I may return to my house, and acquit myself of my duties, and give directions to my family and neighbours to bury me, and dispose of my medical books; and among my books is one of most especial value, which I offer as a present to thee, that thou mayest treasure it in thy library.—And what, said the King, is this book? He answered, It contains things not to be enumerated; and the smallest of the secret virtues that it possesses is this; that, when thou hast cut off my head, if thou open this book, and count three leaves, and then read three lines on the page to the left, the head will speak to thee, and answer whatever thou shalt ask. At this the King was excessively astonished, and shook with delight, and said to him, O

Sage, when I have cut off thy head will it speak? He answered, Yes, O King; and this is a wonderful thing.

The King then sent him in the custody of guards; and the sage descended to his house, and settled all his affairs on that day; and on the following day he went up to the court: and the Emeers and Wezeers, and Chamberlains and Deputies, and all the great officers of the state, went thither also: and the court resembled a flower-garden. And when the sage had entered, he presented himself before the King, bearing an old book, and a small pot containing a powder: and he sat down, and said, Bring me a tray. So they brought him one; and he poured out the powder into it, and spread it. He then said, O King, take this book, and do nothing with it until thou hast cut off my head; and when thou hast done so, place it upon this tray, and order some one to press it down upon the powder; and when this is done, the blood will be stanched: then open the book. As soon as the sage had said this, the King gave orders to strike off his head; and it was done. The King then opened the book, and found that its leaves were stuck together; so he put his finger to his mouth, and moistened it with his spittle, and opened the first leaf, and the second, and the third; but the leaves were not opened without difficulty. He opened six leaves, and looked at them; but found upon them no writing. So he said, O Sage, there is nothing written in it. The head of the sage answered, Turn over more leaves. The King did so; and in a little while, the poison penetrated into his system; for the book was poisoned; and the King fell back, and cried out, The poison hath penetrated into me!—and upon this, the head of the sage Doobán repeated these verses:—

They made use of their power, and used it tyrannically; and soon it became as though it never had existed.

Had they acted equitably, they had experienced equity; but they oppressed; wherefore fortune oppressed them with calamities and trials.

Then did the case itself announce to them, This is the reward of your conduct, and fortune is blameless.

And when the head of the sage Doobán had uttered these words, the King immediately fell down dead.

### *Continuation of the Story of the Fisherman*

Now, O 'Efreet, continued the fisherman, know that if King Yoonán had spared the sage Doobán, God had spared him; but he refused, and desired his destruction; therefore God destroyed him: and thou, O 'Efreet, if thou hadst spared me, God had spared thee, and I had spared thee; but thou desiredst my death; therefore will I put thee to death imprisoned in this bottle, and will throw thee here into the sea. The Márid, upon this, cried out, and said, I conjure thee by Allah, O fisherman, that thou do it not: spare me in generosity, and be not angry with me for what I did; but if I have done evil, do thou good, according to the proverb,—O thou benefactor of him who hath done evil,



**IMAGE 6.9: THE STORY OF SEYF OL-MOLÙK AND BADÌ' OL-JAMÀL |** This Indian manuscript with illustrations shares a common tale with The Thousand and One Nights.

**Author:** User "e-codices"

**Source:** Flickr

**License:** CC BY-NC

the action that he hath done is sufficient for him:—do not therefore as Umáneh did to ‘Átikeh.—And what, said the fisherman, was their case? The ‘Efreet answered, This is not a time for telling stories, when I am in this prison; but when thou liberatest me, I will relate to thee their case. The fisherman said, Thou must be thrown into the sea, and there shall be no way of escape for thee from it; for I endeavoured to propitiate thee, and humbled myself before thee, yet thou wouldest nothing but my destruction, though I had committed no offence to deserve it, and had done no evil to thee whatever, but only good, delivering thee from thy confinement; and when thou didst thus unto me, I perceived that thou wast radically corrupt: and I would have thee know, that my motive for throwing thee into this sea, is, that I may acquaint with thy story every one that shall take thee out, and caution him against thee, that he may cast thee in again: thus shalt thou remain in this sea to the end of time, and experience varieties of torment.—The ‘Efreet then said, Liberate me, for this is an opportunity for thee to display humanity; and I vow to thee that I will never do thee harm; but, on the contrary, will do thee a service that shall enrich thee for ever.

Upon this the fisherman accepted his covenant that he would not hurt him, but that he would do him good; and when he had bound him by oaths and vows, and made him swear by the Most Great Name of God, he opened to him; and the smoke ascended until it had all come forth, and then collected together, and became, as before, an ‘Efreet of hideous form. The ‘Efreet then kicked the bottle into the sea. When the fisherman saw him do this, he made sure of destruction, and said, This is no sign of good:—but afterwards he fortified his heart, and said, O ‘Efreet, God, whose name be exalted, hath said, Perform the covenant, for the covenant shall be inquired into:—and thou has covenanted with me, and sworn that thou wilt not act treacherously towards me; therefore, if thou so act, God will recompense thee; for He is jealous; He respiteth, but suffereth not to escape; and remember that I said to thee as said the sage Doobán to King Yoonán, Spare me, and so may God spare thee.

The ‘Efreet laughed, and, walking on before him, said, O fisherman, follow me. The fisherman did so, not believing in his escape, until they had quitted the neighbourhood of the city, and ascended a mountain, and descended into a wide desert tract, in the midst of which was a lake of water. Here the ‘Efreet stopped, and ordered the fisherman to cast his net and take some fish; and the fisherman, looking into the lake, saw in it fish of different colours, white and red and blue and yellow; at which he was astonished; and he cast his net, and drew it in, and found in it four fish, each fish of a different colour from the others, at the sight of which he rejoiced. The ‘Efreet then said to him, Take them to the Sultán, and present them to him, and he will give thee what will enrich thee; and for the sake of God accept my excuse, for, at present, I know no other way of rewarding thee, having been in the sea a thousand and eight hundred years, and not seen the surface of the earth until now: but take not fish from the lake more than once each day: and now I commend thee to the care of God.—Having thus said, he struck the earth with his feet, and it clove asunder, and swallowed him.

The fisherman then went back to the city, wondering at all that had befallen him with the ‘Efreet, and carried the fish to his house; and he took an earthen bowl, and, having filled it with water, put the fish into it; and they struggled in the water: and when he had done this, he placed the bowl upon his head, and repaired to the King’s palace, as the ‘Efreet had commanded him, and, going up unto the King, presented to him the fish; and the King was excessively astonished at them, for he had never seen any like them in the course of his life; and he said, Give these fish to the slave cook-maid. This maid had been sent as a present to him by the King of the Greeks, three days before; and he had not yet tried her skill. The Wezeer, therefore, ordered her to fry the fish, and said to her, O maid, the King saith unto thee, I have not reserved my tear but for the time of my difficulty:—to-day, then, gratify us by a specimen of thy excellent cookery, for a person hath brought these fish as a present to the Sultán. After having thus charged her, the Wezeer returned, and the King ordered him to give the fisherman four hundred pieces of gold: so the Wezeer gave them to him; and he took them in his lap, and returned to his home and his wife, joyful and happy, and bought what was needful for his family.

Such were the events that befell the fisherman: now we must relate what happened to the maid.—She took the fish, and cleaned them, and arranged them in the frying-pan, and left them until one side was cooked, when she turned them upon the other side; and lo, the wall of the kitchen clove asunder, and there came forth from it a damsel of tall stature, smooth-cheeked, of perfect form, with eyes adorned with kohl, beautiful in countenance, and with heavy, swelling hips; wearing a koofeyeh interwoven with blue silk; with rings in her ears, and bracelets on her wrists, and rings set with precious jewels on her fingers; and in her hand was a rod of Indian cane: and she dipped the end of the rod in the frying-pan, and said, O fish, are ye remaining faithful to your covenant? At the sight of this, the cook-maid fainted. The damsel then repeated the same words a second and a third time; after which the fish raised their heads from the frying-pan, and answered, Yes, yes. They then repeated the following verse:—

If thou return, we return; and if thou come, we come; and if thou forsake, we verily do the same.

And upon this the damsel overturned the frying-pan, and departed by the way she had entered, and the wall of the kitchen closed up again. The cook-maid then arose, and beheld the four fish burnt like charcoal; and she ex-

claimed, In his first encounter his staff broke!—and as she sat reproaching herself, she beheld the Wezeer standing at her head; and he said to her, Bring the fish to the Sultán:—and she wept, and informed him of what had happened.

The Wezeer was astonished at her words, and exclaimed, This is indeed a wonderful event;—and he sent for the fisherman, and when he was brought, he said to him, O fisherman, thou must bring to us four fish like those which thou broughtest before. The fisherman accordingly went forth to the lake, and threw his net, and when he had drawn it in he found in it four fish as before; and he took them to the Wezeer, who went with them to the maid, and said to her, Rise, and fry them in my presence, that I may witness this occurrence. The maid, therefore, prepared the fish, and put them in the frying-pan, and they had remained but a little while, when the wall clove asunder, and the damsel appeared, clad as before, and holding the rod; and she dipped the end of the rod in the frying-pan, and said, O fish, O fish, are ye remaining faithful to your old covenant? Upon which they raised their heads, and answered as before; and the damsel overturned the frying-pan with the rod, and returned by the way she had entered, and the wall closed up again.

The Wezeer then said, This is an event which cannot be concealed from the King:—so he went to him, and informed him of what had happened in his presence; and the King said, I must see this with my own eyes. He sent, therefore, to the fisherman, and commanded him to bring four fish like the former; granting him a delay of three days. And the fisherman repaired to the lake, and brought the fish thence to the King, who ordered again that four hundred pieces of gold should be given to him; and then, turning to the Wezeer, said to him, Cook the fish thyself here before me. The Wezeer answered, I hear and obey. He brought the frying-pan, and, after he had cleaned the fish, threw them into it; and as soon as he had turned them, the wall clove asunder, and there came forth from it a negro, in size like a bull, or like one of the tribe of 'Ad, having in his hand a branch of a green tree; and he said, with a clear but terrifying voice, O fish, O fish, are ye remaining faithful to your old covenant? Upon which they raised their heads, and answered as before, Yes, yes:

If thou return, we return; and if thou come, we come; and if thou forsake, we verily do the same.

The black then approached the frying-pan, and overturned it with the branch, and the fish became like charcoal, and he went away as he had come.

When he had thus disappeared from before their eyes, the King said, This is an event respecting which it is impossible to keep silence, and there must, undoubtedly, be some strange circumstance connected with these fish. He then ordered that the fisherman should be brought before him, and when he had come, he said to him, Whence came these fish? The fisherman answered, From a lake between four mountains behind this mountain which is without thy city. The King said to him, How many days' journey distant? He answered, O our lord the Sultán, a journey of half-an-hour. And the Sultán was astonished, and ordered his troops to go out immediately with him and the fisherman, who began to curse the 'Efreet. They proceeded until they had ascended the mountain, and descended into a wide desert tract which they had never before seen in their whole lives; and the Sultán and all the troops wondered at the sight of this desert, which was between four mountains, and at the fish, which were of four colours, red and white and yellow and blue. The King paused in astonishment, and said to the troops, and to the other attendants who were with him, Hath any one of you before seen this lake in this place? They all answered, No. Then said the King, By Allah, I will not enter my city, nor will I sit upon my throne, until I know the true history of this lake, and of its fish. And upon this he ordered his people to encamp around these mountains; and they did so. He then called for the Wezeer, who was a well-informed, sensible, prudent, and learned man; and when he had presented himself before him, he said to him, I desire to do a thing with which I will acquaint thee; and it is this:—I have resolved to depart alone this night, to seek for information respecting this lake and its fish: therefore, sit thou at the door of my pavilion, and say to the Emeers and Wezeers and Chamberlains, The Sultán is sick, and hath commanded me not to allow any person to go in unto him:—and acquaint no one with my intention.

The Wezeer was unable to oppose his design; so the King disguised himself, and slung on his sword, and withdrew himself from the midst of his troops. He journeyed the whole of the night, until the morning, and proceeded until the heat became oppressive to him: he then paused to rest; after which he again proceeded the remainder of the day and the second night until the morning, when there appeared before him, in the distance, something black, at the sight of which he rejoiced, and said, Perhaps I shall there find some person who will inform me of the history of the lake and its fish. And when he approached this black object, he found it to be a palace built of black stones, and overlaid with iron; and one of the leaves of its doors was open, and the other shut. The King was glad, and he stood at the door, and knocked gently, but heard no answer; he knocked a second and a third time, but again heard no answer: then he knocked a fourth time, and with violence; but no one answered. So he said, It is doubtless empty:—and he took courage, and entered from the door into the passage, and cried out, saying, O inhabitants of the palace, I am a stranger and a traveller! have ye any provision? And he repeated these words a second and a third

time; but heard no answer. And upon this he fortified his heart, and emboldened himself, and proceeded from the passage into the midst of the palace; but he found no one there, and only saw that it was furnished, and that there was, in the centre of it, a fountain with four lions of red gold, which poured forth the water from their mouths, like pearls and jewels: around this were birds; and over the top of the palace was extended a net which prevented their flying out. At the sight of these objects he was astonished, and he was grieved that he saw no person there whom he could ask for information respecting the lake, and the fish, and the mountains, and the palace. He then sat down between the doors, reflecting upon these things; and as he thus sat, he heard a voice of lamentation from a sorrowful heart, chanting these verses:—

O fortune, thou pitiest me not, nor releasest me! See my heart is straitened between affliction and peril!

Will not you [O my wife] have compassion on the mighty whom love hath abased, and the wealthy who is reduced to indigence?

We were jealous even of the zephyr which passed over you: but when the divine decree is issued, the eye becometh blind!

What resource hath the archer when, in the hour of conflict, he desireth to discharge the arrow, but findeth his bow-string broken.

And when troubles are multiplied upon the noble-minded, where shall he find refuge from fate and from destiny?

When the Sultán heard this lamentation, he sprang upon his feet, and, seeking the direction whence it proceeded, found a curtain suspended before the door of a chamber; and he raised it, and beheld behind it a young man sitting on a couch raised to the height of a cubit from the floor. He was a handsome youth, well-shaped, and of eloquent speech, with shining forehead, and rosy cheek, marked with a mole resembling ambergris. The King was rejoiced at seeing him, and saluted him; and the young man (who remained sitting, and was clad with a vest of silk, embroidered with gold, but who exhibited traces of grief) returned his salutation, and said to him, O my master, excuse my not rising.—O youth! said the King, inform me respecting the lake, and its fish of various colours, and respecting this palace, and the reason of thy being alone in it, and of thy lamentation. When the young man heard these words, tears trickled down his cheeks, and he wept bitterly. And the King was astonished, and said to him, What causeth thee to weep, O youth? He answered, How can I refrain from weeping, when this is my state?—and so saying, he stretched forth his hand, and lifted up the skirts of his clothing; and lo, half of him, from his waist to the soles of his feet, was stone; and from his waist to the hair of his head, he was like other men. He then said, Know, O King, that the story of the fish is extraordinary; if it were engraved upon the intellect, it would be a lesson to him who would be admonished:—and he related as follows:—

### *The Story of the Young King of the Black Islands*

My father was king of the city which was here situate: his name was Mahmood, and he was lord of the Black Islands, and of the four mountains. After a reign of seventy years, he died, and I succeeded to his throne; whereupon I took as my wife the daughter of my uncle; and she loved me excessively, so that when I absented myself from her, she would neither eat nor drink till she saw me again. She remained under my protection five years. After this, she went one day to the bath; and I had commanded the cook to prepare the supper, and entered this palace, and slept in my usual place. I had ordered two maids to fan me; and one of them sat at my head, and the other at my feet; but I was restless, because my wife was not with me; and I could not sleep. My eyes were closed, but my spirit was awake; and I heard the maid at my head say to her at my feet, O Mes'oodeh, verily our lord is unfortunate in his youth, and what a pity is it that it should be passed with our depraved, wicked mistress!—Perdition to unfaithful wives! replied the other: but (added she) such a person as our lord, so endowed by nature, is not suited to this profligate woman, who passes every night absent from his bed.—Verily, rejoined she at my head, our lord is careless in not making any inquiry respecting her.—Wo to thee! said the other: hath our lord any knowledge of her conduct, or doth she leave him to his choice? Nay, on the contrary, she contriveth to defraud him by means of the cup of wine which he drinketh every night before he sleepeth, putting benj into it; in consequence of which he sleepeth so soundly that he knoweth not what happeneth, nor whither she goeth, nor what she doeth; for, after she hath given him the wine to drink, she dresseth herself, and goeth out from him, and is absent until daybreak, when she returneth to him, and burneth a perfume under his nose, upon which he awaketh from his sleep.

When I heard this conversation of the maids, the light became darkness before my face, and I was hardly conscious of the approach of night, when my cousin returned from the bath. The table was prepared, and we ate, and sat a while drinking our wine as usual. I then called for the wine which I was accustomed to drink before I lay down to sleep, and she handed to me the cup; but I turned away, and, pretending to drink it as I was wont to do, poured it into my bosom, and immediately lay down: upon which she said, Sleep on; I wish that thou wouldest never wake

again! By Allah, I abhor thee, and abhor thy person, and my soul is weary of thy company!—She then arose, and attired herself in the most magnificent of her apparel, and, having perfumed herself, and slung on a sword, opened the door of the palace, and went out. I got up immediately, and followed her until she had quitted the palace, and passed through the streets of the city, and arrived at the city-gates, when she pronounced some words that I understood not; whereupon the locks fell off, and the gates opened, and she went out, I still following her, without her knowledge. Thence she proceeded to a space among the mounds, and arrived at a strong edifice, in which was a ḳubbeh constructed of mud, with a door, which she entered. I then climbed upon the roof of the ḳubbeh, and, looking down upon her through an aperture, saw that she was visiting a black slave, whose large lips, one of which overlapped the other, gathered up the sand from the pebbly floor, while he lay, in a filthy and wet condition, upon a few stalks of sugar-cane.

She kissed the ground before this slave; and he raised his head towards her, and said, Wo to thee! Wherefore hast thou remained away until this hour? The other blacks have been here drinking wine, and each of them has gone away with his mistress; and I refused to drink on thy account.—She answered, O my master, and beloved of my heart, knowest thou not that I am married to my cousin, and that I abhor every man who resembles him, and hate myself while I am in his company? If I did not fear to displease thee, I would reduce the city to ruins, so that the owl and the raven should cry in it, and would transport its stones beyond Mount Káf.—Thou liest, thou infamous woman, replied the slave; and I swear by the generosity of the blacks (and if I speak not truth, may our valour be as the valour of the whites), that if thou loiter as thou hast now done till this hour, I will no longer give thee my company, nor approach thy person, thou faithless one! Dost thou inconvenience me for the sake of thine own pleasure, thou filthy wretch, and vilest of the whites?—When I heard (continued the King) their words, and witnessed what passed between them, the world became dark before my face, and I knew not where I was.—My cousin still stood weeping, and abasing herself before him, and said, O my beloved, and treasure of my heart, there remaineth to me none but thee for whom I care, and if thou cast me off, alas for me! O my beloved! O light of mine eye!—Thus she continued to weep, and to humble herself before him, until he became pacified towards her; upon which she rejoiced, and arose, and, having disrobed herself, said to him, O my master, hast thou here anything that thy maid may eat? He answered, Uncover the dough-pan; it contains some cooked rats' bones: eat of them, and pick them; and take this earthen pot: thou wilt find in it some boozah to drink. So she arose, and ate and drank, and washed her hands; after which she lay down by the side of the slave, upon the stalks of sugar-cane, and covered herself with his tattered clothes and rags.

When I saw her do this, I became unconscious of my existence, and, descending from the roof of the ḳubbeh, entered, and took the sword from the side of my cousin, with the intention of killing them both. I struck the slave upon his neck, and thought that he was killed; but the blow, which I gave with the view of severing his head, only cut the gullet and skin and flesh; and when I thought that I had killed him, he uttered a loud snore, upon which my cousin started up, and as soon as I had gone, took the sword, and returned it to its scabbard, and came back to the city and to the palace, and lay down again in my bed, in which she remained until the morning.

On the following day, I observed that my cousin had cut off her hair, and put on the apparel of mourning; and she said to me, O my cousin, blame me not for what I do; for I have received news that my mother is dead, and that my father hath been slain in a holy war, and that one of my two brothers hath died of a poisonous sting, and the other by the fall of a house: it is natural, therefore, that I should weep and mourn. On hearing these words, I abstained from upbraiding her, and said, Do what seemeth fit to thee; for I will not oppose thee. Accordingly, she continued mourning and weeping and wailing a whole year; after which she said to me, I have a desire to build for myself, in thy palace, a tomb, with a ḳubbeh, that I may repair thither alone to mourn, and I will call it the House of Lamentations. I replied, Do what thou seest fit. So she built for herself a house for mourning, with a ḳubbeh in the middle of it, like the tomb of a saint; after which she removed thither the slave, and there she lodged him. He was in a state of excessive weakness, and unable to render her any service, though he drank wine; and from the day on which I had wounded him, he had never spoken; yet he remained alive, because the appointed term of his life had not expired. My cousin every day visited him in this tomb early and late, to weep and mourn over him, and took to him wine to drink, and boiled meats; and thus she continued to do, morning and evening, until the expiration of the second year, while I patiently suffered her, till one day, I entered her apartment unawares, and found her weeping, and slapping her face, and repeating these verses:—

I have lost my existence among mankind since your absence; for my heart loveth none but you.  
Take my body, then, in mercy, to the place where you are laid; and there bury me by your side:  
And if, at my grave, you utter my name, the moaning of my bones shall answer to your call.

As soon as she had finished the recitation of these verses, I said to her, holding my drawn sword in my hand, This is the language of those faithless women who renounce the ties of affinity, and regard not lawful fellowship!—

and I was about to strike her with the sword, and had lifted up my arm to do so, when she rose—for she knew that it was I who had wounded the slave—and, standing before me, pronounced some words which I understood not, and said, May God, by means of my enchantment, make thee to be half of stone, and half of the substance of man!—whereupon I became as thou seest, unable to move, neither dead nor alive; and when I had been reduced to this state, she enchanted the city and its markets and fields. The inhabitants of our city were of four classes; Muslims, and Christians, and Jews, and Magians; and she transformed them into fish: the white are the Muslims; the red, the Magians; the blue, the Christians; and the yellow, the Jews. She transformed, also, the four islands into four mountains, and placed them around the lake; and from that time she has continued every day to torture me, inflicting upon me a hundred lashes with a leathern whip, until the blood flows from my wounds; after which she puts on my upper half a vest of hair-cloth, beneath these garments.—Having said thus, the young man wept, and ejaculating the following verses:—

Give me patience, O Allah, to bear what Thou decreest! I will be patient, if so I may obtain thine approval.

I am straitened, indeed, by the calamity that hath befallen me: but the Family of the favoured Prophet shall intercede for me!

Upon this, the King, looking towards the young man, said to him, O youth, thou hast increased my anxiety. And where (he added) is this woman?—The young man answered, She is in the tomb where the slave is lying, in the kubbeh; and every day, before she visits him, she strips me of my clothing, and inflicts upon me a hundred lashes with the whip, while I weep and cry out, unable to move so as to repulse her. After thus torturing me, she repairs early to the slave, with the wine and boiled meat.—By Allah, O youth, said the King, I will do thee an act of kindness for which I shall be remembered, and a favour which historians shall record in a biography after me.

He then sat and conversed with him until the approach of night, upon which he arose, and waited till the first dawn of day, when he took off his clothes, and slung on his sword, and went to the place where the slave lay. After remarking the candles and lamps, and perfumes and ointments, he approached the slave, and with a blow of his sword slew him: he then carried him on his back, and threw him into a well which he found in the palace, and, returning to the kubbeh, clad himself with the slave's clothes, and lay down with the drawn sword by his side. Soon after, the vile enchantress went to her cousin, and, having pulled off his clothes, took the whip, and beat him, while he cried, Ah! it is enough for me to be in this state! Have pity on me then!—Didst thou shew pity to me, she exclaimed, and didst thou spare my lover?—She then put on him the hair-cloth vest and his outer garments, and repaired to the slave with a cup of wine, and a bowl of boiled meat. Entering the tomb, she wept and wailed, exclaiming, O my master, answer me! O my master, speak to me!—and poured forth her lamentation in the words of this verse:—

How long shall this aversion and harshness continue? Sufficient is the evil which my passion hath brought upon me!

Then, weeping as before, she exclaimed again, O my master, answer me, and speak to me! Upon this the King, speaking in a low voice, and adapting his tongue to the pronunciation of the blacks, ejaculated, Ah! Ah! there is no strength nor power but in God! On hearing these words, she screamed with joy, and fell down in a swoon; and when she recovered, she exclaimed, Possibly my master is restored to health! The King, again lowering his voice, as if from weakness, replied, Thou profligate wretch, thou deservest not that I should address thee.—Wherefore? said she. He answered, Because all the day long thou tormentest thy husband, while he calleth out, and imploreth the aid of God, so that thou hast prevented my sleeping from the commencement of darkness until morning: thy husband hath not ceased to humble himself, and to imprecate vengeance upon thee, till he hath distracted me; and had it not been for this, I had recovered my strength: this it is which hath prevented my answering thee.—Then, with thy permission, she replied, I will liberate him from his present sufferings.—Liberate him, said the King, and give us ease.

She replied, I hear and obey;—and immediately arose, and went out from the kubbeh to the palace, and, taking a cup, filled it with water, and pronounced certain words over it, upon which it began to boil like a cauldron. She then sprinkled some of it upon her cousin, saying, By virtue of what I have uttered, be changed from thy present state to that in which thou wast at first!—and instantly he shook, and stood upon his feet, rejoicing in his liberation, and exclaimed, I testify that there is no deity but God, and that Mohammad is God's Apostle; God bless and save him! She then said to him, Depart, and return not hither, or I will kill thee:—and she cried out in his face: so he departed from before her, and she returned to the kubbeh, and said, O my master, come forth to me that I may behold thee. He replied, with a weak voice, What hast thou done? Thou hast relieved me from the branch, but hast not relieved me from the root.—O my beloved, she said, and what is the root? He answered, The people of this city, and of the four islands: every night, at the middle hour, the fish raise their heads, and imprecate vengeance upon me and upon thee; and this is the cause that preventeth the return of vigour to my body; therefore, liberate them, and come, and take my hand, and raise me; for vigour hath already in part returned to me.

On hearing these words of the King, whom she imagined to be the slave, she said to him with joy, O my master, on my head and my eye! In the name of Allah!—and she sprang up, full of happiness, and hastened to the lake, where, taking a little of its water, she pronounced over it some unintelligible words, whereupon the fish became agitated, and raised their heads, and immediately became converted into men as before. Thus was the enchantment removed from the inhabitants of the city, and the city became repeopled, and the market-streets re-erected, and every one returned to his occupation: the mountains also became changed into islands as they were at the first. The enchantress then returned immediately to the King, whom she still imagined to be the slave, and said to him, O my beloved, stretch forth thy honoured hand, that I may kiss it.—Approach me, said the King in a low voice. So she drew near to him; and he, having his keen-edged sword ready in his hand, thrust it into her bosom, and the point protruded from her back: he then struck her again, and clove her in twain, and went forth.

He found the young man who had been enchanted waiting his return, and congratulated him on his safety; and the young prince kissed his hand, and thanked him. The King then said to him, Wilt thou remain in thy city, or come with me to my capital?—O King of the age, said the young man, dost thou know the distance that is between thee and thy city? The King answered, Two days and a half.—O King, replied the young man, if thou hast been asleep, awake: between thee and thy city is a distance of a year's journey to him who travelleth with diligence; and thou camest in two days and a half only because the city was enchanted: but, O King, I will never quit thee for the twinkling of an eye. The King rejoiced at his words, and said, Praise be to God, who hath in his beneficence given thee to me: thou art my son; for during my whole life, I have never been blest with a son:—and they embraced each other, and rejoiced exceedingly. They then went together into the palace, where the King who had been enchanted informed the officers of his court that he was about to perform the holy pilgrimage: so they prepared for him everything that he required; and he departed with the Sultán; his heart burning with reflections upon his city, because he had been deprived of the sight of it for the space of a year.

He set forth, accompanied by fifty memlooks, and provided with presents, and they continued their journey night and day for a whole year, after which they drew near to the city of the Sultán, and the Wezeer and the troops, who had lost all hope of his return, came forth to meet him. The troops, approaching him, kissed the ground before him, and congratulated him on his safe return; and he entered the city, and sat upon the throne. He then acquainted the Wezeer with all that had happened to the young King; on hearing which, the Wezeer congratulated the latter, also, on his safety; and when all things were restored to order, the Sultán bestowed presents upon a number of his subjects, and said to the Wezeer, Bring to me the fisherman who presented to me the fish. So he sent to this fisherman, who had been the cause of the restoration of the inhabitants of the enchanted city, and brought him; and the King invested him with a dress of honour, and inquired of him respecting his circumstances, and whether he had any children. The fisherman informed him that he had a son and two daughters; and the King, on hearing this, took as his wife one of the daughters, and the young prince married the other. The King also conferred upon the son the office of treasurer. He then sent the Wezeer to the city of the young prince, the capital of the Black Islands, and invested him with its sovereignty, despatching with him the fifty memlooks who had accompanied him thence, with numerous robes of honour to all the Emeers: and the Wezeer kissed his hands, and set forth on his journey; while the Sultán and the young prince remained. And as to the fisherman, he became the wealthiest of the people of his age; and his daughters continued to be the wives of the Kings until they died.

But this (added Shahrazád) is not more wonderful than what happened to the porter.

# China

---

This chapter introduces two types of representative works from the Chinese period from roughly the fifth century to the fifteenth century, a period that corresponds to the European Middle Age (although it should be noted that the European periodization is not accurate for non-European cultures). There are many noteworthy works from China during this period. Selected in this chapter are poetry from the Tang dynasty (618-960 C.E.) and vernacular fiction that emerged from the late phase of the Yuan dynasty (1271-1368 C.E.) and the early phase of the Ming dynasty (1368-1644 C.E.).

It is often said that the Tang dynasty was the golden age in Chinese literary history, and poetry was the most glorious literary form of the time. The verse forms of the past were refined, and new poetic forms developed. One new form perfected early in the dynasty, which consists of eight lines of five or seven syllables in accordance with tonal patterns, is called *lüshi* (“regulated verse”). Another poetic form popular during the period was the *jueju* (“truncated verse”), which is a shortened version of the *lüshi*. Du Fu (712-770 C.E.) and Li Bo (701-762 C.E.) from the Tang dynasty are considered the greatest poets in China. Du Fu, who was a high official in the 740s, was highly erudite, and he excelled in all verse forms, but his mastery was the best in the *lüshi*. When he was young, he flirted with Daoism and travelled with Li Bo, whom he strongly admired. Li Bo, on the other hand, did not sustain a high-ranking position but instead spent a lot of time wandering. Li Bo expressed his Daoist worldview in his deliberately older and freer verse forms, avoiding the *lüshi*. Other renowned poets during the Tang dynasty include Wang Wei (701-761 C.E.) and Bai Juyi (772-846 C.E.). The Tang dynasty was a period of economic growth and prosperity, and culturally, Buddhism, Daoism, and Confucianism continued to be influential.

The next major dynasty was the Song dynasty, during which literary productivity increased enormously, thanks to the improvement of printing (invented in the eighth century) and to the establishment of public schools throughout the empire. All the literary genres in verse and prose continued to develop during this period. The Song dynasty was later absorbed by the Yuan (or Mongol) dynasty. During the Yuan dynasty, dramatic literature blossomed, possibly catalyzed by Indian and Iranian theatre models available in this period. Many writers turned to playwriting, especially the musical drama of four or five acts along with prologue, epilogue, and songs. Between the late Yuan dynasty and the early Ming dynasty, particularly noteworthy are the works of fiction in the vernacular. *Sanguozhi yanyi* (*Romance of the Three Kingdoms*) and *Shuihuzhuan* (*The Water Margin*), both acclaimed as masterpieces of the historical and picaresque (an early novelistic form of adventure narrative) genres, have been controversially attributed to Luo Guanzhong (ca. 1330-1400 C.E.). *Romance of the Three Kingdoms* is set at the end of the Han dynasty (206 B.C.E.-220 C.E.) and the Three Kingdoms period (220-280 C.E.). All through the Song, Yuan, and Ming dynasties, Daoism, Buddhism, and Confucianism continued to be influential, especially increasingly in the new mixtures of these three thoughts.

As already indicated above, the selections in this chapter, Li Bo’s poems and Luo Guanzhong’s *Romance of the Three Kingdoms*, are good examples of the Tang dynasty and the Yuan/Ming dynasties, respectively. It will be useful to situate these works in their historical and cultural contexts and examine the unique characteristics pertaining to each genre.

#### AS YOU READ, CONSIDER THE FOLLOWING:

- Can you point out connections between Daoism and Li Bo’s poems? (Feel free to consult the video resource about Daoism below.)
- Select specific poems by Li Bo and develop your own interpretive thesis statement for each poem, along with supporting ideas.



**IMAGE 7.1: KUBLAI KHAN |**  
Portrait of Kublai Khan, grandson of Genghis Khan, emperor of China.

**Author:** Anige of Nepal  
**Source:** Wikimedia Commons  
**License:** Public Domain

- Do some quick research about major events in the Han dynasty, the Three Kingdoms period, and the Yuan/Ming dynasties, and examine how Luo's work incorporates elements of earlier and contemporary history and culture.
- What philosophical, religious, political, and personal values do you think Luo's work conveys?

#### FOR MORE INFORMATION, SEE THE FOLLOWING SOURCES:

- Go to the following website for an educational video about Daoism:  
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cZiasFYQSj8>
- Go to the following websites for Chinese history and its timeline:  
<http://archive.artsmia.org/art-of-asia/history/dynasty-ming.cfm.html>  
<http://www.bbc.com/news/world-asia-pacific-13017882>

*Written by Kyounghye Kwon*



IMAGE 7.2: EIGHTY SEVEN CELESTIALS | Artwork by Wu Daozi depicting many angelic people walking along a path.

**Author:** Wu Daozi  
**Source:** Wikimedia Commons  
**License:** Public Domain

## SELECTED POEMS

Li Bo (701-762 C.E.)

Composed ca. 716-762 C.E.

China

Li Bo is regarded as China's greatest poet, along with Du Fu. His name is also spelled Li Bai, Li Po, and Li Pai. His courtesy name is Taibai and his literary name is Qinglian Jushi. There are about a thousand extant poems by Li Bo, and many of them are written in older poetic forms, less regulated than those developed during the Tang dynasty (618-907 C.E.). Also unorthodox is his incorporation of colloquial language and folk songs into his poetry. Importantly, Li Bo's poetic world expresses Daoist views, emphasizing "the (Daoist) Way" and celebrating a free and wandering life. Buddhism (especially Chan Buddhism) is also essential to understanding Li Bo's poems. On a side note, he is well known for his love of alcohol and wrote many poems about drinking. A popular legend says that Li Bo drowned because he was sitting drunk in a boat and was trying to seize the moon's reflection in the water.

*Written by Kyounghye Kwon*

## SELECTIONS FROM THE POET LI BO A.D. 701-760

Bai Li, Translated by Arthur Waley

License: Public Domain

### Fighting

Last year we were fighting at the source of the San-kan;  
 This year we are fighting at the Onion River road.  
 We have washed our swords in the surf of Indian seas;

We have pastured our horses among the snows of T'ien Shan.  
 Three armies have grown gray and old,  
 Fighting ten thousand leagues away from home.  
 The Huns have no trade but battle and carnage;  
 They have no pastures or ploughlands,  
 But only wastes where white bones lie among yellow sands.  
 Where the house of Ch'in built the great wall that was to keep away the Tartars,  
 There, in its turn, the house of Han lit beacons of war.  
 The beacons are always alight; fighting and marching never stop.  
 Men die in the field, slashing sword to sword;  
 The horses of the conquered neigh piteously to Heaven.  
 Crows and hawks peck for human guts,  
 Carry them in their beaks and hang them on the branches of withered trees.  
 Captains and soldiers are smeared on the bushes and grass;  
 The General schemed in vain.  
 Know therefore that the sword is a cursèd thing  
 Which the wise man uses only if he must.

### The Sun

O Sun that rose in the eastern corner of Earth,  
 Looking as though you came from under the ground,  
 When you crossed the sky and entered the deep sea,  
 Where did you stable your six dragon-steeds?  
 Now and of old your journeys have never ceased:  
     Strong were that man's limbs  
 Who could run beside you on your travels to and fro.

The grass does not refuse  
 To flourish in the spring wind;  
 The leaves are not angry  
 At falling through the autumn sky.  
 Who with whip or spur  
 Can urge the feet of Time?  
 The things of the world flourish and decay,  
 Each at its own hour.

Hsi-ho, Hsi-ho,  
 Is it true that once you loitered in the West  
 While Lu Yang raised his spear, to hold  
 The progress of your light;  
 Then plunged and sank in the turmoil of the sea?  
 Rebels against Heaven, slanderers of Fate;  
 Many defy the Way.  
 But I will put | the Whole Lump | of Life in my bag,  
 And merge my being in the Primal Element.



**IMAGE 7.3: LI BAI IN STROLL** | Ink illustration by Liang Kai of the poet Li Bai (also written as Li Bo).

**Author:** Liang Kai  
**Source:** Wikimedia Commons  
**License:** Public Domain

### The White River at Nan-Yang

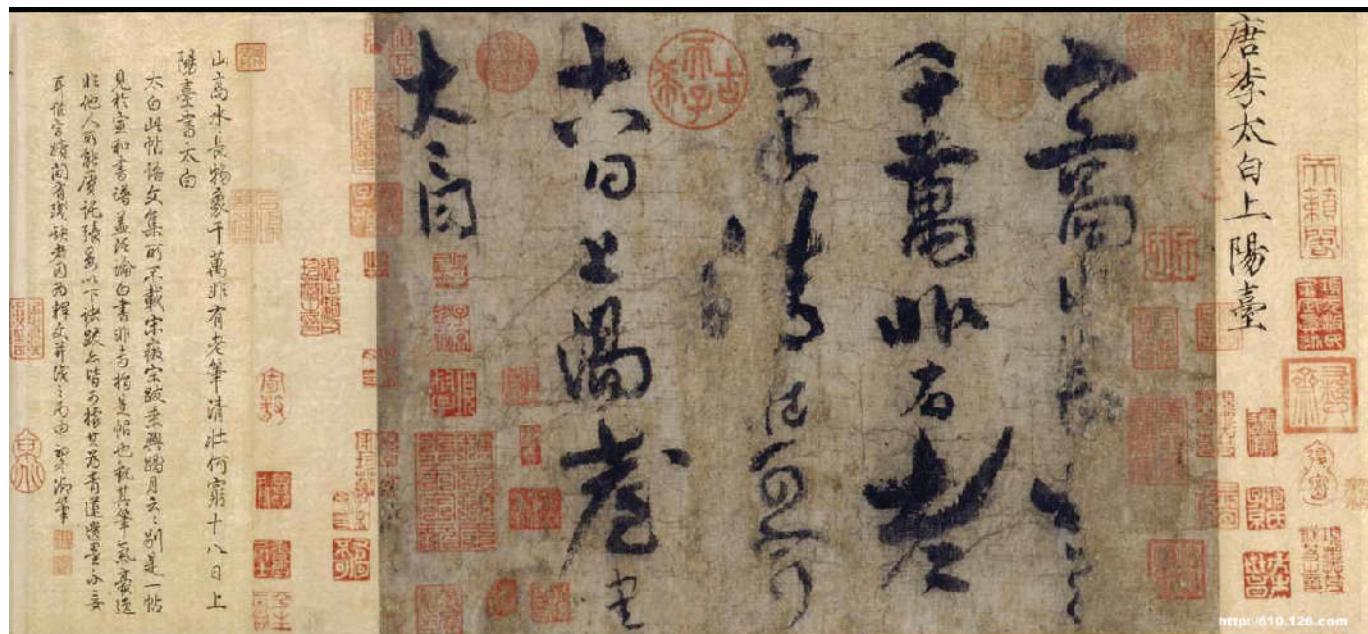
Wading at dawn the White River's source,  
 Severed a while from the common ways of men,  
 To islands tinged with the colours of Paradise,  
 Where the river sky drowns in limpid space.  
 While my eyes were watching the clouds that travel to the sea.  
 My heart was idle as the fish that swim in the stream.  
 With long singing I put the sun to rest:  
 Riding the moon, came back to my fields and home.

## Going Down Chung-Nan Mountain and Spending the Night Drinking with the Hermit Tou-Ssü

At dusk we left the blue mountain-head;  
 The mountain-moon followed our homeward steps.  
 We looked round: the path by which we had come  
 Was a dark cleft across the shoulder of the hill.  
 Hand in hand we reached the walls of the farm;  
 A young boy opened the wicker-gate.  
 Through green bamboos a deep road ran  
 Where dark creepers brushed our coats as we passed.  
 We were glad at last to come to a place of rest,  
 With wine enough to drink together to our fill,  
 Long I sang to the tune of the Pine-tree Wind;  
 When the song was over, the River-stars were few.  
 I was drunk and you happy at my side;  
 Till mingled joy drove the World from our hearts.

## Drinking Alone by Moonlight

A cup of wine, under the flowering-trees:  
 I drink alone, for no friend is near.  
 Raising my cup, I beckon the bright moon,  
 For he, with my shadow, will make three men.  
 The moon, alas! is no drinker of wine:  
 Listless, my shadow creeps about at my side.  
 Yet with the moon as friend and the shadow as slave  
 I must make merry before the Spring is spent.  
 To the songs I sing the moon flickers her beams;  
 In the dance I weave my shadow tangles and breaks.  
 While we were sober, three shared the fun;  
 Now we are drunk, each goes his way.



<http://610.126.com>

IMAGE 7.4: GOING UP TO SUN TERRACE | The only surviving calligraphy of Li Bo's own handwriting.

**Author:** Li Bo

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

May we long share our odd, inanimate feast,  
And meet at last on the Cloudy River of the Sky.

In the third month the town of Hsien-yang  
Is thick-spread with a carpet of fallen flowers.  
Who in Spring can bear to grieve alone?  
Who, sober, look on sights like these?  
Riches and Poverty, long or short life,  
By the Maker of Things are portioned and disposed.  
But a cup of wine levels life and death  
And a thousand things obstinately hard to prove.  
When I am drunk, I lose Heaven and Earth;  
Motionless, I cleave to my lonely bed.  
At last I forget that I exist at all,  
And at *that* moment my joy is great indeed.

If High Heaven had no love for wine,  
There would not be a Wine Star in the sky.  
If Earth herself had no love for wine,  
There would not be a city called Wine Springs.  
Since Heaven and Earth both love wine,  
I can love wine, without shame before God.  
Clear wine was once called "a Saint;"  
Thick wine was once called "a Sage."  
Of Saint and Sage I have long quaffed deep,  
What need for me to study spirits and *hsien*?  
At the third cup I penetrate the Great Way;  
A full gallon—Nature and I are one....  
But the things I feel when wine possesses my soul  
I will never tell to those who are not drunk.

### In the Mountains on a Summer Day

Gently I stir a white feather fan,  
With open shirt, sitting in a green wood.  
I take off my cap and hang it on a jutting stone:  
A wind from the pine-trees trickles on my bare head.

### Drinking Together in the Mountains

Two men drinking together where mountain flowers grow:  
One cup, one cup, and again one cup.  
"Now I am drunk and would like to sleep:  
    so please go away.  
Come back to-morrow, if you feel inclined,  
    and bring your harp with you."

### Clearing up at Dawn

The fields are chill; the sparse rain has stopped;  
The colours of Spring teem on every side.  
With leaping fish the blue pond is full;  
With singing thrushes the green boughs droop.  
The flowers of the field have dabbled their powdered cheeks;  
The mountain grasses are bent level at the waist.  
By the bamboo stream the last fragments of cloud  
Blown by the wind slowly scatter away.

# THE ROMANCE OF THE THREE KINGDOMS

Luo Guanzhong

Written in the 14<sup>th</sup> century C.E.

China

*The Romance of the Three Kingdoms* is one of the stories known as the “Four Classic Novels” or “Four Great Masterpieces” of Chinese literature (the other three being *Water Margin*, *Journey to the West*, and *Dream of the Red Chamber*). Although it was written in the 14<sup>th</sup> century C.E., the story is based on historical events from a thousand years earlier: during the late Han dynasty and the Three Kingdoms Period (starting in 169 C.E. and ending in 280 C.E.). The story depicts the conflicts among the Wu, Wei, and Shu kingdoms. The characters are based on actual people, with the requisite alterations that are expected in fiction (such as the occasional warrior with superhuman strength, and other legendary and mythic elements). The story is 120 chapters long, with literally hundreds of characters to follow. The selections in the anthology begin with the introductory chapter, which includes how one group of heroes meets. The long selection is from the most well-known episode in the story: the Battle of Red Cliffs (208-209 C.E.). *The Romance of the Three Kingdoms* continues to be a popular work, with movies, video games, comics, television series, and card games based on the story.

*Written by Laura J. Getty*

## ROMANCE OF THE THREE KINGDOMS

Luo Quanzhong, Translated by C. H. Brewitt-Taylor

License: Public Domain

### Chapter 1

#### *Three Heroes Swear Brotherhood In The Peach Garden; One Victory Shatters The Rebels In Battlegrounds.*

The world under heaven, after a long period of division, tends to unite; after a long period of union, tends to divide. This has been so since antiquity. When the rule of the Zhou Dynasty weakened, seven contending kingdoms sprang up, warring one with another until the kingdom of Qin prevailed and possessed the empire. But when Qin's destiny had been fulfilled, arose two opposing kingdoms, Chu and Han, to fight for the mastery. And Han was the victor.

The rise of the fortunes of Han began when Liu Bang the Supreme Ancestor slew a white serpent to raise the banners of uprising, which only ended when the whole empire belonged to Han (BC 202). This magnificent heritage was handed down in successive Han emperors for two hundred years, till the rebellion of Wang Mang caused a disruption. But soon Liu Xiu the Latter Han Founder restored the empire, and Han emperors continued their rule for another two hundred years till the days of Emperor Xian, which were doomed to see the beginning of the empire's division into three parts, known to history as The Three Kingdoms.

But the descent into misrule hastened in the reigns of the two predecessors of Emperor Xian—Emperors Huan and Ling—who sat in the dragon throne about the middle of the second century.

Emperor Huan paid no heed to the good people of his court, but gave his confidence to the Palace eunuchs. He lived and died, leaving the scepter to Emperor Ling, whose advisers were Regent Marshal Dou Wu and Imperial Guardian Chen Fan. Dou Wu and Chen Fan, disgusted with the abuses of the eunuchs in the affairs of the state, plotted the destruction for the power-abusing eunuchs. But Chief Eunuch Cao Jie was not to be disposed of easily. The plot leaked out, and the honest Dou Wu and Chen Fan were put to death, leaving the eunuchs stronger than before.

It fell upon the day of full moon of the fourth month, the second year, in the era of Established Calm (AD 168), that Emperor Ling went in state to the Hall of Virtue. As he drew near the throne, a rushing whirlwind arose in the corner of the hall and, lo! from the roof beams floated down a monstrous black serpent that coiled itself up on the very seat of majesty. The Emperor fell in a swoon. Those nearest him hastily raised and bore him to his palace, while the courtiers scattered and fled. The serpent disappeared.

But there followed a terrific tempest, thunder, hail, and torrents of rain, lasting till midnight and working havoc on all sides. Two years later the earth quaked in Capital Luoyang, while along the coast a huge tidal wave rushed in which, in its recoil, swept away all the dwellers by the sea. Another evil omen was recorded ten years later, when the

reign title was changed to Radiant Harmony (AD 178): Certain hens suddenly crowed. At the new moon of the sixth month, a long wreath of murky cloud wound its way into the Hall of Virtue, while in the following month a rainbow was seen in the Dragon Chamber. Away from the capital, a part of the Yuan Mountains collapsed, leaving a mighty rift in the flank.

Such were some of various omens. Emperor Ling, greatly moved by these signs of the displeasure of Heaven, issued an edict asking his ministers for an explanation of the calamities and marvels.

Court Counselor Cai Yong replied bluntly: "Falling rainbows and changes of fowls' sexes are brought about by the interference of empresses and eunuchs in state affairs."

The Emperor read this memorial with deep sighs, and Chief Eunuch Cao Jie, from his place behind the throne, anxiously noted these signs of grief. An opportunity offering, Cao Jie informed his fellows, and a charge was trumped up against Cai Yong, who was driven from the court and forced to retire to his country house.

With this victory the eunuchs grew bolder. Ten of them, rivals in wickedness and associates in evil deeds, formed a powerful party known as the Ten Regular Attendants—Zhang Rang, Zhao Zhong, Cheng Kuang, Duan Gui, Feng Xu, Guo Sheng, Hou Lan, Jian Shuo, Cao Jie, and Xia Yun.

One of them, Zhang Rang, won such influence that he became the Emperor's most honored and trusted adviser. The Emperor even called him "Foster Father". So the corrupt state administration went quickly from bad to worse, till the country was ripe for rebellion and buzzed with brigandage.

At this time in the county of Julu was a certain Zhang family, of whom three brothers bore the name of Zhang Jue, Zhang Ba, and Zhang Lian, respectively. The eldest Zhang Jue was an unclassed graduate, who devoted himself to medicine. One day, while culling simples in the woods, Zhang Jue met a venerable old gentleman with very bright, emerald eyes and fresh complexion, who walked with an oak-wood staff. The old man beckoned Zhang Jue into a cave and there gave him three volumes of *The Book of Heaven*.

"This book," said the old gentleman, "is the Essential Arts of Peace. With the aid of these volumes, you can convert the world and rescue humankind. But you must be single-minded, or, rest assured, you will greatly suffer."

With a humble obeisance, Zhang Jue took the book and asked the name of his benefactor.

"I am Saint Hermit of the Southern Land," was the reply, as the old gentleman disappeared in thin air.

Zhang Jue studied the wonderful book eagerly and strove day and night to reduce its precepts to practice. Before long, he could summon the winds and command the rain, and he became known as the Mystic of the Way of Peace.

In the first month of the first year of Central Stability (AD 184), there was a terrible pestilence that ran throughout the land, whereupon Zhang Jue distributed charmed remedies to the afflicted. The godly medicines brought big successes, and soon he gained the title of the Wise and Worthy Master. He began to have a following of disciples whom he initiated into the mysteries and sent abroad throughout all the land. They, like their master, could write charms and recite formulas, and their fame increased his following.

Zhang Jue began to organize his disciples. He established thirty-six circuits, the larger with ten thousand or more members, the smaller with about half that number. Each circuit had its chief who took the military title of General. They talked wildly of the death of the blue heaven and the setting up of the golden one; they said a new cycle was beginning and would bring universal good fortune to all members; and they persuaded people to chalk the symbols for the first year of the new cycle on the main door of their dwellings.

With the growth of the number of his supporters grew also the ambition of Zhang Jue. The Wise and Worthy Master dreamed of empire. One of his partisans, Ma Yuanyi, was sent bearing gifts to gain the support of the eunuchs within the Palace.

To his brothers Zhang Jue said, "For schemes like ours always the most difficult part is to gain the popular favor. But that is already ours. Such an opportunity must not pass."

And they began to prepare. Many yellow flags and banners were made, and a day was chosen for the uprising. Then Zhang Jue wrote letters to Feng Xu and sent them by one of his followers, Tang Zhou, who alas! betrayed his trust and reported the plot to the court. The Emperor summoned the trusty Regent Marshal He Jin and bade him



**IMAGE 7.5: PEACH GARDEN CEREMONY** | Several heroes from the story gather together in a garden to perform a sacrifice and swear and oath.

**Author:** Anonymous

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

look to the issue. Ma Yuanyi was at once taken and beheaded. Feng Xu and many others were cast into prison.

The plot having thus become known, the Zhang brothers were forced at once to take the field. They took up grandiose titles: Zhang Jue the Lord of Heaven, Zhang Ba the Lord of Earth, and Zhang Lian the Lord of Human. And in these names they put forth this manifesto:

The good fortune of the Han is exhausted, and the Wise and Worthy Man has appeared. Discern the will of Heaven, O ye people, and walk in the way of righteousness, whereby alone ye may attain to peace.

Support was not lacking. On every side people bound their heads with yellow scarves and joined the army of the rebel Zhang Jue, so that soon his strength was nearly half a million strong, and the official troops melted away at a whisper of his coming.

Regent Marshal and Imperial Guardian, He Jin, memorialized for general preparations against the Yellow Scarves, and an edict called upon everyone to fight against the rebels. In the meantime, three Imperial Commanders—Lu Zhi, Huangfu Song, and Zhu Jun—marched against them in three directions with veteran soldiers.

Meanwhile Zhang Jue led his army into Youzhou, the northeastern region of the empire. The Imperial Protector of Youzhou was Liu Yan, a scion of the Imperial House. Learning of the approach of the rebels, Liu Yan called in Commander Zhou Jing to consult over the position.

Zhou Jing said, "They are many and we few. We must enlist more troops to oppose them."

Liu Yan agreed, and he put out notices calling for volunteers to serve against the rebels. One of these notices was posted up in the county of Zhuo, where lived one man of high spirit.

This man was no mere bookish scholar, nor found he any pleasure in study. But he was liberal and amiable, albeit a man of few words, hiding all feeling under a calm exterior. He had always cherished a yearning for high enterprise and had cultivated the friendship of humans of mark. He was tall of stature. His ears were long, the lobes touching his shoulders, and his hands hung down below his knees. His eyes were very big and prominent so that he could see backward past his ears. His complexion was as clear as jade, and he had rich red lips.

He was a descendant of Prince Sheng of Zhongshan whose father was the Emperor Jing (reigned BC 157-141), the fourth emperor of the Han Dynasty. His name was Liu Bei. Many years before, one of his forbears had been the governor of that very county, but had lost his rank for remissness in ceremonial offerings. However, that branch of the family had remained on in the place, gradually becoming poorer and poorer as the years rolled on. His father Liu Hong had been a scholar and a virtuous official but died young. The widow and orphan were left alone, and Liu Bei as a lad won a reputation for filial piety.

At this time the family had sunk deep in poverty, and Liu Bei gained his living by selling straw sandals and weaving grass mats. The family home was in a village near the chief city of Zhuo. Near the house stood a huge mulberry tree, and seen from afar its curved profile resembled the canopy of a wagon. Noting the luxuriance of its foliage, a soothsayer had predicted that one day a man of distinction would come forth from the family.

As a child, Liu Bei played with the other village children beneath this tree, and he would climb up into it, saying, "I am the Son of Heaven, and this is my chariot!" His uncle, Liu Yuanqi, recognized that Liu Bei was no ordinary boy and saw to it that the family did not come to actual want.

When Liu Bei was fifteen, his mother sent him traveling for his education. For a time he served Zheng Xuan and Lu Zhi as masters. And he became great friends with Gongsun Zan.

Liu Bei was twenty-eight when the outbreak of the Yellow Scarves called for soldiers. The sight of the notice saddened him, and he sighed as he read it.

Suddenly a rasping voice behind him cried, "Sir, why sigh if you do nothing to help your country?"

Turning quickly he saw standing there a man about his own height, with a bullet head like a leopard's, large eyes, a swallow pointed chin, and whiskers like a tiger's. He spoke in a loud bass voice and looked as irresistible as a dashing horse. At once Liu Bei saw he was no ordinary man and asked who he was.

"Zhang Fei is my name," replied the stranger. "I live near here where I have a farm; and I am a wine seller and a butcher as well; and I like to become acquainted with worthy people. Your sighs as you read the notice drew me toward you."

Liu Bei replied, "I am of the Imperial Family, Liu Bei is my name. And I wish I could destroy these Yellow Scarves and restore peace to the land, but alas! I am helpless."

"I have the means," said Zhang Fei. "Suppose you and I raised some troops and tried what we could do."

This was happy news for Liu Bei, and the two betook themselves to the village inn to talk over the project. As they were drinking, a huge, tall fellow appeared pushing a hand-cart along the road. At the threshold he halted and entered the inn to rest awhile and he called for wine.

"And be quick!" added he. "For I am in haste to get into the town and offer myself for the army."

Liu Bei looked over the newcomer, item by item, and he noted the man had a huge frame, a long beard, a vivid

face like an apple, and deep red lips. He had eyes like a phoenix's and fine bushy eyebrows like silkworms. His whole appearance was dignified and awe-inspiring. Presently, Liu Bei crossed over, sat down beside him and asked his name.

"I am Guan Yu," replied he. "I am a native of the east side of the river, but I have been a fugitive on the waters for some five years, because I slew a ruffian who, since he was wealthy and powerful, was a bully. I have come to join the army here."

Then Liu Bei told Guan Yu his own intentions, and all three went away to Zhang Fei's farm where they could talk over the grand project.

Said Zhang Fei, "The peach trees in the orchard behind the house are just in full flower. Tomorrow we will institute a sacrifice there and solemnly declare our intention before Heaven and Earth, and we three will swear brotherhood and unity of aims and sentiments: Thus will we enter upon our great task."

Both Liu Bei and Guan Yu gladly agreed.

All three being of one mind, next day they prepared the sacrifices, a black ox, a white horse, and wine for libation. Beneath the smoke of the incense burning on the altar, they bowed their heads and recited this oath:

"We three—Liu Bei, Guan Yu, and Zhang Fei—though of different families, swear brotherhood, and promise mutual help to one end. We will rescue each other in difficulty; we will aid each other in danger. We swear to serve the state and save the people. We ask not the same day of birth, but we seek to die together. May Heaven, the all-ruling, and Earth, the all-producing, read our hearts. If we turn aside from righteousness or forget kindness, may Heaven and Human smite us!"

They rose from their knees. The two others bowed before Liu Bei as their elder brother, and Zhang Fei was to be the youngest of the trio. This solemn ceremony performed, they slew other oxen and made a feast to which they invited the villagers. Three hundred joined them, and all feasted and drank deep in the Peach Garden.

The next day weapons were mustered. But there were no horses to ride. This was a real grief. But soon they were cheered by the arrival of two horse dealers with a drove of horses.

"Thus does Heaven help us!" said Liu Bei.

And the three brothers went forth to welcome the merchants. They were Zhang Shiping and Su Shuang from Zhongshan. They went northwards every year to buy horses. They were now on their way home because of the Yellow Scarves. The brothers invited them to the farm, where wine was served before them. Then Liu Bei told them of the plan to strive for tranquillity. Zhang Shiping and Su Shuang were glad and at once gave the brothers fifty good steeds, and beside, five hundred ounces of gold and silver and one thousand five hundred pounds of steel fit for the forging of weapons.

The brothers expressed their gratitude, and the merchants took their leave. Then blacksmiths were summoned to forge weapons. For Liu Bei they made a pair of ancient swords; for Guan Yu they fashioned a long-handled, curve blade called Green-Dragon Saber, which weighed a full one hundred pounds; and for Zhang Fei they created a ten-foot spear called Serpent Halberd. Each too had a helmet and full armor.

When weapons were ready, the troop, now five hundred strong, marched to Commander Zhou Jing, who presented them to Imperial Protector Liu Yan. When the ceremony of introduction was over, Liu Bei declared his ancestry, and Liu Yan at once accorded him the esteem due to a relation.

Before many days it was announced that the rebellion had actually broken out, and a Yellow Scarves chieftain, Cheng Yuanzhi, had invaded the region with a body of fifty thousand rebels. Liu Yan bade Zhou Jing and the three brothers to go out to oppose them with the five hundred troops. Liu Bei joyfully undertook to lead the van and marched to the foot of the Daxing Hills where they saw the rebels. The rebels wore their hair flying about their shoulders, and their foreheads were bound with yellow scarves.

When the two armies had been drawn up opposite each other, Liu Bei rode to the front, Guan Yu to his left, Zhang Fei to his right.

Flourishing his whip, Liu Bei began to hurl reproaches at the rebels, crying, "O malcontents! Why not dismount and be bound?"

Their leader Cheng Yuanzhi, full of rage, sent out one general, Deng Mao, to begin the battle. At once rode forward Zhang Fei, his serpent halberd poised to strike. One thrust and Deng Mao rolled off his horse, pierced through the heart. At this Cheng Yuanzhi himself whipped up his steed and rode forth with sword raised ready to slay Zhang Fei. But Guan Yu swung up his ponderous green-dragon saber and rode at Cheng Yuanzhi. At the sight, fear seized upon Cheng Yuanzhi, and before he could defend himself, the great saber fell, cutting him in halves.

Two heroes new to war's alarms,  
Ride boldly forth to try their arms.  
Their doughty deeds three kingdoms tell,  
And poets sing how these befell.

Their leader fallen, the rebels threw away their weapons and fled. The official soldiers dashed in among them. Many thousands surrendered and the victory was complete. Thus this part of the rebellion was broken up.

On their return, Liu Yan personally met them and distributed rewards. But the next day, letters came from Imperial Protector Gong Jing of Qingzhou Region saying that the rebels were laying siege to the chief city and it was near falling. Help was needed quickly.

"I will go," said Liu Bei as soon as he heard the news.

And he set out at once with his own soldiers, reinforced by a body of five thousand under Zhou Jing. The rebels, seeing help coming, at once attacked most fiercely. The relieving force being comparatively small could not prevail and retired some ten miles, where they made a camp.

"They are many and we but few," said Liu Bei to his brothers. "We can only beat them by superior strategy."

So they prepared an ambush. Guan Yu and Zhang Fei, each with a goodly party, went behind the hills, right and left, and there hid. When the gongs beat they were to move out to support the main army.

These preparations made, the drums rolled noisily for Liu Bei to advance. The rebels also came forward. But Liu Bei suddenly retired. Thinking this was their chance, the rebels pressed forward and were led over the hills. Then suddenly the gongs sounded for the ambush. Guan Yu and Zhang Fei poured out from right and left as Liu Bei faced around to meet the rebels. Under three-side attack, the rebels lost heavily and fled to the walls of Qingzhou City. But Imperial Protector Gong Jing led out an armed body to attack them, and the rebels were entirely defeated and many slain. Qingzhou was no longer in danger.

Though fierce as tigers soldiers be,  
Battles are won by strategy.  
A hero comes; he gains renown,  
Already destined for a crown.

After the celebrations in honor of victory were over, Commander Zhou Jing proposed to return to Youzhou.

But Liu Bei said, "We are informed that Imperial Commander Lu Zhi has been struggling with a horde of rebels led by Zhang Jue at Guangzong. Lu Zhi was once my teacher, and I want to go help him."

So Liu Bei and Zhou Jing separated, and the three brothers with their troops made their way to Guangzong. They found Lu Zhi's camp, were admitted to his presence, and declared the reason of their coming. The Commander received them with great joy, and they remained with him while he made his plans.

At that time Zhang Jue's one hundred fifty thousand troops and Lu Zhi's fifty thousand troops were facing each other. Neither had had any success.

Lu Zhi said to Liu Bei, "I am able to surround these rebels here. But the other two brothers, Zhang Ba and Zhang Lian, are strongly entrenched opposite Huangfu Song and Zhu Jun at Yingchuan. I will give you a thousand more troops, and with these you can go to find out what is happening, and we can then settle the moment for concerted attack."

So Liu Bei set off and marched as quickly as possible to Yingchuan. At that time the imperial troops were attacking with success, and the rebels had retired upon Changshe. They had encamped among the thick grass.

Seeing this, Huangfu Song said to Zhu Jun, "The rebels are camping in the field. We can attack them by fire."

So the Imperial Commanders bade every man cut a bundle of dry grass and laid an ambush. That night the wind blew a gale, and at the second watch they started a blaze. At the same time Huangfu Song and Zhu Jun's troops attacked the rebels and set their camp on fire. The flames rose to the very heaven. The rebels were thrown into great confusion. There was no time to saddle horses or don armor: They fled in all directions.

The battle continued until dawn. Zhang Lian and Zhang Ba, with a group of flying rebels, found a way of escape. But suddenly a troop of soldiers with crimson banners appeared to oppose them. Their leader was a man of medium stature with small eyes and a long beard. He was Cao Cao, a Beijuo man, holding the rank of Cavalry Commander. His father was Cao Song, but he was not really a Cao. Cao Song had been born to the Xiahou family, but he had been brought up by Eunuch Cao Teng and had taken this family name.

As a young man Cao Cao had been fond of hunting and delighted in songs and dancing. He was resourceful and full of guile. An uncle, seeing the young fellow so unsteady, used to get angry with him and told his father of his misdeeds. His father remonstrated with him.

But Cao Cao made equal to the occasion. One day, seeing his uncle coming, he fell to the ground in a pretended fit. The uncle alarmed ran to tell his father, who came, and there was the youth in most perfect health.

"But your uncle said you were in a fit. Are you better?" said his father.

"I have never suffered from fits or any such illness," said Cao Cao. "But I have lost my uncle's affection, and he has deceived you."

Thereafter, whatever the uncle might say of his faults, his father paid no heed. So the young man grew up licentious and uncontrolled.

A man of the time named Qiao Xuan said to Cao Cao, "Rebellion is at hand, and only a man of the greatest ability can succeed in restoring tranquillity. That man is yourself."

And He Yong of Nanyang said of him, "The dynasty of Han is about to fall. He who can restore peace is this man and only he."

Cao Cao went to inquire his future of a wise man of Runan named Xu Shao.

"What manner of man am I?" asked Cao Cao.

The seer made no reply, and again and again Cao Cao pressed the question.

Then Xu Shao replied, "In peace you are an able subject; in chaos you are a crafty hero!"

Cao Cao greatly rejoiced to hear this.

Cao Cao graduated at twenty and earned a reputation of piety and integrity. He began his career as Commanding Officer in a county within the Capital District. In the four gates of the city he guarded, he hung up clubs of various sorts, and he would punish any breach of the law whatever the rank of the offender. Now an uncle of Eunuch Jian Shuo was found one night in the streets with a sword and was arrested. In due course he was beaten. Thereafter no one dared to offend again, and Cao Cao's name became heard. Soon he became a magistrate of Dunqiu.

At the outbreak of the Yellow Scarves, Cao Cao held the rank of General and was given command of five thousand horse and foot to help fight at Yingchuan. He just happened to fall in with the newly defeated rebels whom he cut to pieces. Thousands were slain and endless banners and drums and horses were captured, together with huge sums of money. However, Zhang Ba and Zhang Lian got away; and after an interview with Huangfu Song, Cao Cao went in pursuit of them.

Meanwhile Liu Bei and his brothers were hastening toward Yingchuan, when they heard the din of battle and saw flames rising high toward the sky. But they arrived too late for the fighting. They saw Huangfu Song and Zhu Jun to whom they told the intentions of Lu Zhi.

"The rebel power is quite broken here," said the commanders, "but they will surely make for Guangzong to join Zhang Jue. You can do nothing better than hasten back."

The three brothers thus retraced their steps. Half way along the road they met a party of soldiers escorting a prisoner in a cage-cart. When they drew near, they saw the prisoner was no other than Lu Zhi, the man they were going to help. Hastily dismounting, Liu Bei asked what had happened.

Lu Zhi explained, "I had surrounded the rebels and was on the point of smashing them, when Zhang Jue employed some of his supernatural powers and prevented my victory. The court sent down Eunuch Zhuo Feng to inquire into my failure, and that official demanded a bribe. I told him how hard pressed we were and asked him where, in the circumstances, I could find a gift for him. He went away in wrath and reported that I was hiding behind my ramparts and would not give battle and that I disheartened my army. So I was superseded by Dong Zhuo, and I have to go to the capital to answer the charge."

This story put Zhang Fei into a rage. He was for slaying the escort and setting free Lu Zhi. But Liu Bei checked him.

"The government will take the due course," said Liu Bei. "You must not act hastily!"

And the escort and the three brothers went two ways.

It was useless to continue on that road to Guangzong, so Guan Yu proposed to go back to Zhuo, and they retook the road. Two days later they heard the thunder of battle behind some hills. Hastening to the top, they beheld the government soldiers suffering great loss, and they saw the countryside was full of Yellow Scarves. On the rebels' banners were the words Zhang Jue the Lord of Heaven written large.

"We will attack this Zhang Jue!" said Liu Bei to his brothers, and they galloped out to join in the battle.

Zhang Jue had worsted Dong Zhuo and was following up his advantage. He was in hot pursuit when the three brothers dashed into his army, threw his ranks into confusion, and drove him back fifteen miles. Then the brothers returned with the rescued general to his camp.

"What offices have you?" asked Dong Zhuo, when he had leisure to speak to the brothers.

"None," replied they.

And Dong Zhuo treated them with disrespect. Liu Bei retired calmly, but Zhang Fei was furious.

"We have just rescued this menial in a bloody fight," cried Zhang Fei, "and now he is rude to us! Nothing but his death can slake my anger!"

Zhang Fei stamped toward Dong Zhuo's tent, holding firmly a sharp sword.

As it was in olden time so it is today,  
The simple wight may merit well,  
Officialdom holds sway;

Zhang Fei, the blunt and hasty,  
 Where can you find his peer?  
 But slaying the ungrateful would  
 Mean many deaths a year.

Dong Zhuo's fate will be unrolled in later chapters.

## Chapter 41

### *Liu Bei Leads His People Over The River; Zhao Zilong Rescues The Child Lord At Dangyang.*

The last chapter closed with the attack made by Zhang Fei as soon as his brother had let loose the waters on the doomed army. He met with Xu Chu and a combat began, but a fight with such a warrior was not to Xu Chu's taste and he ran away. Zhang Fei followed till he came upon Liu Bei and Zhuge Liang, and the three went upstream till they came to the boats that had been prepared by Liu Feng and Mi Fang, when they all crossed over and marched toward Fancheng. As soon as they disembarked, Zhuge Liang ordered the boats and rafts to be burned.

Cao Ren gathered in the remnants of his army and camped at Xinye, while his colleague Cao Hong went to tell their lord the evil tidings of defeat.

"How dare he, this rustic Zhuge Liang!" exclaimed Cao Cao angrily.

Cao Cao then hastily sent an overwhelming army to camp near the place and gave orders for enormous works against the city, leveling hills and turning rivers to launch a violent assault on Fancheng from every side at once.

Then Liu Ye came in to see his lord and said, "Sir, you are new to this region, and you should win over the people's hearts. Liu Bei has moved all the people from Xinye to Fancheng. If we march through the country, the people will be ground to powder. It would be well to call upon Liu Bei first to surrender, which will prove to the people that you have a care for them. If he yields, then we get Jingzhou without fighting."

Cao Cao agreed and asked who would be a suitable messenger. Liu Ye suggested Xu Shu.

"He is a close friend of Liu Bei, and he is here with the army," said Liu Ye.

"But he will not come back," objected Cao Cao.

"If he does not return, he will be a laughing stock to the whole world. He will come back."

Xu Shu was sent for, and Cao Cao said, "My first intention was to level Fancheng with the ground. But out of pity for its people, you may carry an offer to Liu Bei that if he will surrender, he will not only not be punished but he shall be given rank. But if he holds on his present misguided course, the whole of his followers shall be destroyed. Now you are an honest man and so I confide this mission to you, and I trust you will not disappoint me."

Xu Shu said nothing but accepted his orders and went to the city, where he was received by both Liu Bei and Zhuge Liang. They enjoyed a talk over old times before Xu Shu mentioned the object of his mission.

Then he said, "Cao Cao has sent me to invite you to surrender, thereby making a bid for popularity. But you ought also to know that he intends to attack the city from every point, that he is damming up the White River's waters to be sent against you, and I fear you will not be able to hold the city. You ought to prepare."

Liu Bei asked Xu Shu to remain with them, but Xu Shu said, "That is impossible, for all the world would ridicule me if I stayed. My old mother is dead, and I never forget my resentment. My body may be over there, but I swear never to form a plan for Cao Cao. You have the Sleeping Dragon to help you and need have no anxiety about the ultimate achievement of your undertaking. But I must go."

And Xu Shu took his leave. Liu Bei felt he could not press his friend to stay. Xu Shu returned to Cao Cao's camp and reported that Liu Bei had no intention of surrender. This angered Cao Cao who gave orders to begin the advance and siege.

When Liu Bei asked what Zhuge Liang meant to do, Zhuge Liang replied, "We shall abandon Fancheng and take Xiangyang."

"But what of the people who have followed us? They cannot be abandoned."

"You can tell them to do as they wish. They may come if they like, or remain here."

They sent Guan Yu to prepare boats and told Sun Qian to proclaim to the people that Cao Cao was coming, that the city could not be defended, and those who wished to do so might cross the river with the army.

All the people cried, "We will follow the Prince even if it be to death!"

They started at once, some lamenting, some weeping, the young helping the aged, parents leading their children, the strong soldiers carrying the women. As the crowds crossed the river, from both banks arose the sound of lamentation.

Liu Bei was much affected as he saw all this from the boat.

"Why was I ever born," said he, "to be the cause of all this misery to the people?"

He made to leap into the river, but they held him back. All were deeply sympathetic. When the boat reached the southern shore, he looked back at the weeping crowds waiting still on the other bank and was again moved to tears. He bade Guan Yu hasten the boats before he mounted and rode on.

When Xiangyang came in sight, they saw many flags flying on the walls and that the moat was protected by barbed barriers.

Liu Bei checked his horse and called out, "Liu Zong, good nephew! I only wish to save the people and nothing more. I pray you quickly open the gates."

But Liu Zong was too frightened to appear. Cai Mao and Zhang Yun went up to one of the fighting towers and ordered the soldiers to shoot arrows down on those without the walls. The people gazed up at the towers and wept aloud.

Suddenly there appeared a general, with a small following, who cried out, "Cai Mao and Zhang Yun are two traitors. The princely Liu Bei is a most upright man and has come here to preserve his people. Why do you repulse him?"

All looked at this man. He was of eight-span height, with a face dark brown as a ripe date. He was from Yiyang and named Wei Yan. At that moment he looked very terrible, whirling his sword as if about to slice up the gate guards. They lost no time in throwing open the gate and dropping the bridge.

"Come in, Uncle Liu Bei," cried Wei Yan, "and bring your army to slay these traitors!"

Zhang Fei plunged forward to take Cai Mao and Zhang Yun, but he was checked by his brother, who said, "Do not frighten the people!"

Thus Wei Yan let in Liu Bei. As soon as he entered, he saw a general galloping up with a few men.

The newcomer yelled, "Wei Yan, you nobody! How dare you create trouble? Do you not know me, General Wen Ping?"

Wei Yan turned angrily, set his spear, and galloped forward to attack the general. The soldiers joined in the fray and the noise of battle rose to the skies.

"I wanted to preserve the people, and I am only causing them injury," cried Liu Bei distressed. "I do not wish to enter the city."

"Jiangling is an important point. We will first take that as a place to dwell in," said Zhuge Liang.

"That pleases me greatly," said Liu Bei.

So they led the people thither and away from Xiangyang. Many of the inhabitants of that city took advantage of the confusion to escape, and they also joined themselves to Liu Bei.

Meanwhile, within the inhospitable city, Wei Yan and Wen Ping fought. The battle continued for four or five watches, all through the middle of the day, and nearly all the combatants fell. Then Wei Yan got away. As he could not find Liu Bei, he rode off to Changsha and sought an asylum with Governor Han Xuan.

Liu Bei wandered away from the city of Xiangyang that had refused shelter. Soldiers and people, his following numbered more than a hundred thousand. The carts numbered scores of thousands, and the burden bearers were innumerable. Their road led them past the tomb of Liu Biao, and Liu Bei turned aside to bow at the grave.

He lamented, saying, "Shameful is thy brother, lacking both in virtue and in talents. I refused to bear the burden you wished to lay upon me, wherein I was wrong. But the people committed no sin. I pray your glorious spirit descend and rescue these people."

His prayer was fraught with sorrow, and all those about him wept.

Just then a scout rode up with the news that Fancheng was already taken by Cao Cao and that his army were preparing boats and rafts to cross the river.

The generals of Liu Bei said, "Jiangling is a defensible shelter, but with this crowd we can only advance very slowly, and when can we reach the city? If Cao Cao pursue, we shall be in a parlous state. Our counsel is to leave the people to their fate for a time and press on to Jiangling."

But Liu Bei wept, saying, "The success of every great enterprise depends upon humanity. How can I abandon these people who have joined me?"

Those who heard him repeat this noble sentiment were greatly affected.

In time of stress his heart was tender toward the people,  
And he wept as he went down into the ship,  
Moving the hearts of soldiers to sympathy.  
Even today, in the countryside,  
Fathers and elders recall the Princely One's kindness.

The progress of Liu Bei, with the crowd of people in his train, was very slow.

"The pursuers will be upon us quickly," said Zhuge Liang. "Let us send Guan Yu to Jiangxia for succor. Liu Qi should be told to bring soldiers and prepare boats for us at Jiangling."

Liu Bei agreed to this and wrote a letter which he sent by the hands of Guan Yu and Sun Qian and five hundred troops. Zhang Fei was put in command of the rear guard. Zhao Zilong was told to guard Liu Bei's family, while the others ordered the march of the people.

They only traveled three or four miles daily and the halts were frequent.

Meanwhile Cao Cao was at Fancheng, whence he sent troops over the river toward Xiangyang. He summoned Liu Zong, but Liu Zong was too afraid to answer the call. No persuasion could get him to go.

Wang Wei said to him privately, "Now you can overcome Cao Cao if you are wise. Since you have announced surrender and Liu Bei has gone away, Cao Cao will relax his precautions, and you can catch him unawares. Send a well-prepared but unexpected force to waylay him in some commanding position, and the thing is done. If you were to take Cao Cao prisoner, your fame would run throughout the empire, and the land would be yours for the taking. This is a sort of opportunity that does not recur, and you should not miss it."

The young man consulted Cai Mao, who called Wang Wei an evil counselor and spoke to him harshly.

"You are mad! You know nothing and understand nothing of destiny," said Cai Mao.

Wang Wei angrily retorted, saying, "Cai Mao is the betrayer of the country, and I wish I could eat him alive!"

The quarrel waxed deadly, and Cai Mao wanted to slay Wang Wei. But eventually peace was restored by Kuai Yue.

Then Cai Mao and Zhang Yun went to Fancheng to see Cao Cao.

Cai Mao was by instinct specious and flattering, and when his host asked concerning the resources of Jingzhou, he replied, "There are fifty thousand of horse, one hundred fifty thousand of foot, and eighty thousand of marines. Most of the money and grain are at Jiangling. The rest is stored at various places. There are ample supplies for a year."

"How many war vessels are there? Who is in command?" said Cao Cao.

"The ships, of all sizes, number seven thousands, and we two are the commanders."

Upon this Cao Cao conferred upon Cai Mao the title of the Lord Who Controls the South, and Supreme Admiral of the Naval Force; and Zhang Yun was his Vice-Admiral with the title of the Lord Who Brings Obedience.

When they went to thank Cao Cao for these honors, he told them, saying, "I am about to propose to the Throne that Liu Biao's son should be perpetual Imperial Protector of Jingzhou in succession to his late father."

With this promise for their young master and the honors for themselves, they retired.

Then Xun You asked Cao Cao, "Why these two evident self-seekers and flatterers have been treated so generously?"

Cao Cao replied, "Do I not know all about them? Only in the north, where we have been, we know very little of war by water, and these two men do. I want their help for the present. When my end is achieved, I can do as I like with them."

Liu Zong was highly delighted when his two chief supporters returned with the promise Cao Cao had given them. Soon after he gave up his seal and military commission and proceeded to welcome Cao Cao, who received him very graciously.

Cao Cao next proceeded to camp near Xiangyang. The populace, led by Cai Mao and Zhang Yun, welcomed him with burning incense, and he on his part put forth proclamations couched in comforting terms.

Cao Cao presently entered the city and took his seat in the residence in state. Then he summoned Kuai Yue and said to him graciously, "I do not rejoice so much at gaining Jingzhou as at meeting you, friend Kuai Yue."

Cao Cao made Kuai Yue Governor of Jiangling and Lord of Fancheng; Wang Can, Fu Xuan, and Kuai Yue's other adherents were all ennobled. Liu Zong became Imperial Protector of Qingzhou in the north and was ordered to proceed to his region forthwith.

Liu Zong was greatly frightened and said, "I have no wish to become an actual official. I wish to remain in the place where my father and mother live."

Said Cao Cao, "Your protectorship is quite near the capital, and I have sent you there as a full official to remove you from the intrigues of this place."

In vain Liu Zong declined the honors thus thrust upon him: He was compelled to go and he departed, taking his mother with him. Of his friends, only Wang Wei accompanied him. Some of his late officers escorted him as far as the river and then took their leave.

Then Cao Cao called his trusty officer Yu Jin and said, "Follow Liu Zong and put him and his mother to death. Our worries are thus removed."

Yu Jin followed the small party.

When he drew near he shouted, "I have an order from the great Prime Minister to put you both to death, mother and son! You may as well submit quietly."

Lady Cai threw her arms about her son, lifted up her voice and wept. Yu Jin bade his soldiers get on with their bloody work. Only Wang Wei made any attempt to save his mistress, and he was soon killed. The two, mother and son, were soon finished, and Yu Jin returned to report his success. He was richly rewarded.

Next Cao Cao sent to discover and seize the family of Zhuge Liang, but they had already disappeared. Zhuge Liang had moved them to the Three Gorges. It was much to Cao Cao's disgust that the search was fruitless.

So Xiangyang was settled. Then Xun You proposed a further advance.

He said, "Jiangling is an important place, and very rich. If Liu Bei gets it, it will be difficult to dislodge him."

"How could I have overlooked that?" said Cao Cao.

Then he called upon the officers of Xiangyang for one who could lead the way. They all came except Wen Ping. Cao Cao sent for him and soon he came also.

"Why are you late?" asked Cao Cao.

Wen Ping said, "To be a minister and see one's master lose his own boundaries is most shameful. Such a person has no face to show to anyone else, and I was too ashamed to come."

His tears fell fast as he finished this speech. Cao Cao admired his loyal conduct and rewarded him with office of Governorship of Jiangxia and a title of Lordship, and also bade him open the way.

The spies returned and said, "Liu Bei is hampered by the crowds of people who have followed him. He can proceed only three or four miles daily, and he is only one hundred miles away."

Cao Cao decided to take advantage of Liu Bei's plight, so he chose out five thousand of tried horsemen and sent them after the cavalcade, giving them a limit of a day and a night to come up therewith. The main army would follow.

As has been said Liu Bei was traveling with a huge multitude of followers, to guard whom he had taken what precautions were possible. Zhang Fei was in charge of the rear guard, and Zhao Zilong was to protect his lord's family. Guan Yu had been sent to Jiangxia.

One day Zhuge Liang came in and said, "There is as yet no news from Jiangxia. There must be some difficulties."

"I wish that you yourself would go there," said Liu Bei. "Liu Qi would remember your former kindness to him and consent to anything you proposed."

Zhuge Liang said he would go and set out with Liu Feng, the adopted son of Liu Bei, taking an escort of five hundred troops.

A few days after, while on the march in company with three of his commanders—Jian Yong, Mi Zhu, and Mi Fang—a sudden whirlwind rose just in front of Liu Bei, and a huge column of dust shot up into the air hiding the face of the sun.

Liu Bei was frightened and asked, "What might that portend?"

Jian Yong, who knew something of the mysteries of nature, took the auspices by counting secretly on his fingers.

Pale and trembling, he announced, "A calamity is threatening this very night. My lord must leave the people to their fate and flee quickly."

"I cannot do that," said Liu Bei.

"If you allow your pity to overcome your judgment, then misfortune is very near," said Jian Yong.

Thus spoke Jian Yong to his lord, who then asked what place was near.

His people replied, "Dangyang is quite close, and there is a very famous mountain near it called Prospect Mountain."

Then Liu Bei bade them lead the way thither.

The season was late autumn, just changing to winter, and the icy wind penetrated to the very bones. As evening fell, long-drawn howls of misery were heard on every side. At the middle of the fourth watch, two hours after midnight, they heard a rumbling sound in the northwest. Liu Bei halted and placed himself at the head of his own guard of two thousand soldiers to meet whatever might come.

Presently Cao Cao's men appeared and made fierce onslaught. Defense was impossible, though Liu Bei fought desperately. By good fortune just at the crisis Zhang Fei came up, cut an alley through, rescued his brother, and got him away to the east. Presently they were stopped by Wen Ping.

"Turncoat! Can you still look humans in the face?" cried Liu Bei.

Wen Ping was overwhelmed with shame and led his troops away. Zhang Fei, now fighting, protected his brother till dawn.

By that time Liu Bei had got beyond the sound of battle, and there was time to rest. Only a few of his followers had been able to keep near him. He knew nothing of the fate of his officers or the people.

He lifted up his voice in lamentation, saying, "Myriads of living souls are suffering from love of me, and my officers and my loved ones are lost. One would be a graven image not to weep at such loss!"

Still plunged in sadness, presently he saw hurrying toward him Mi Fang, with an enemy's arrow still sticking in his face.

Mi Fang exclaimed, "Zhao Zilong has gone over to Cao Cao!"

Liu Bei angrily bade him be silent, crying, "Do you think I can believe that of my old friend?"

"Perhaps he has gone over," said Zhang Fei. "He must see that we are nearly lost and there are riches and honors on the other side."

"He has followed me faithfully through all my misfortunes. His heart is firm as a rock. No riches or honors would move him," said Liu Bei.

"I saw him go away northwest," said Mi Fang.

"Wait till I meet him," said Zhang Fei. "If I run against him, I will kill him!"

"Beware how you doubt him," said Liu Bei. "Have you forgotten the circumstances under which your brother Guan Yu had to slay Cai Yang to ease your doubts of him? Zhao Zilong's absence is due to good reason wherever he has gone, and he would never abandon me."

But Zhang Fei was not convinced. Then he, with a score of his men, rode to the Long Slope Bridge. Seeing a wood near the bridge, an idea suddenly struck him. He bade his followers cut branches from the trees, tie them to the tails of the horses, and ride to and fro so as to raise a great dust as though an army were concealed in the wood. He himself took up his station on the bridge facing the west with spear set ready for action. So he kept watch.

Now Zhao Zilong, after fighting with the enemy from the fourth watch till daylight, could see no sign of his lord and, moreover, had lost his lord's family.

He thought bitterly within himself, "My master confided to me his family and the child lord Liu Shan; and I have lost them. How can I look him in the face? I can only go now and fight to the death. Whatever happen, I must go to seek the women and my lord's son."

Turning about he found he had but some forty followers left. He rode quickly to and fro among the scattered soldiers seeking the lost women. The lamentations of the people about him were enough to make heaven and earth weep. Some had been wounded by arrows, others by spears; they had thrown away their children, abandoned their wives, and were flying they knew not whither in crowds.

Presently Zhao Zilong saw a man lying in the grass and recognized him as Jian Yong.

"Have you seen the two mothers?" cried he.

Jian Yong replied, "They left their carriage and ran away taking the child lord Liu Shan in their arms. I followed but on the slope of the hill I was wounded and fell from my horse. The horse was stolen. I could fight no longer, and I lay down here."

Zhao Zilong put his colleague on the horse of one of his followers, told off two soldiers to support Jian Yong, and bade Jian Yong ride to their lord and tell him of the loss.

"Say," said Zhao Zilong, "that I will seek the lost ones in heaven or hell, through good or evil. And if I find them not, I will die in the battlefield."

Then Zhao Zilong rode off toward the Long Slope Bridge.

As he went, a voice called out, "General Zhao Zilong, where are you going?"

"Who are you?" said Zhao Zilong, pulling up.

"One of the Princely One's carriage guards. I am wounded."

"Do you know anything of the two ladies?"

"Not very long ago I saw Lady Gan go south with a party of other women. Her hair was down, and she was barefooted"

Hearing this, without even another glance at the speaker, Zhao Zilong put his horse at full gallop toward the south. Soon he saw a small crowd of people, male and female, walking hand in hand.

"Is Lady Gan among you?" he called out.

A woman in the rear of the party looked up at him and uttered a loud cry.

He slipped off his steed, stuck his spear in the sand, and wept, "It was my fault that you were lost. But where are Lady Mi and our child lord?"

Lady Gan replied, "She and I were forced to abandon our carriage and mingle with the crowd on foot. Then a band of soldiers came up, and we were separated. I do not know where they are. I ran for my life."

As she spoke, a howl of distress rose from the crowd of fugitives, for a thousand of soldiers appeared. Zhao Zilong recovered his spear and mounted ready for action. Presently he saw among the soldiers a prisoner bound upon a horse, and the prisoner was Mi Zhu. Behind Mi Zhu followed a general gripping a huge sword. The troops belonged to the army of Cao Ren, and the general was Chunyu Dao. Having captured Mi Zhu, he was just taking him to his chief as a proof of his prowess.

Zhao Zilong shouted and rode at the captor who was speedily slain by a spear thrust and his captive was set free. Then taking two of the horses, Zhao Zilong set Lady Gan on one and Mi Zhu took the other. They rode away toward Long Slope Bridge.

But there, standing grim on the bridge, was Zhang Fei.

As soon as he saw Zhao Zilong, he called out, "Zhao Zilong, why have you betrayed our lord?"

"I fell behind because I was seeking the ladies and our child lord," said Zhao Zilong. "What do you mean by talking of betrayal?"

"If it had not been that Jian Yong arrived before you and told me the story, I should hardly have spared you."

"Where is the master?" said Zhao Zilong.

"Not far away, in front there," said Zhang Fei.

"Conduct Lady Gan to him. I am going to look for Lady Mi," said Zhao Zilong to his companion, and he turned back along the road by which he had come.

Before long he met a leader armed with an iron spear and carrying a sword slung across his back, riding a curveting steed, and leading ten other horsemen. Without uttering a word Zhao Zilong rode straight toward him and engaged. At the first pass Zhao Zilong disarmed his opponent and brought him to earth. His followers galloped away.

This fallen officer was no other than Xiahou En, Cao Cao's sword-bearer. And the sword on Xiahou En's back was his master's. Cao Cao had two swords, one called "Trust of God" and the other "Blue Blade". Trust of God was the weapon Cao Cao usually wore at his side, the other being carried by his sword-bearer. The Blue Blade would cut clean through iron as though it were mud, and no sword had so keen an edge.

Before Zhao Zilong thus fell in with Xiahou En, the latter was simply plundering, depending upon the authority implied by his office. Least of all thought he of such sudden death as met he at Zhao Zilong's hands.

So Zhao Zilong got possession of a famous sword. The name Blue Blade was chased in gold characters so that he recognized its value at once. He stuck it in his belt and again plunged into the press. Just as he did so, he turned his head and saw he had not a single follower left. He was quite alone.

Nevertheless not for a single instant thought he of turning back. He was too intent upon his quest. To and fro, back and forth, he rode questioning this person and that.

At length a man said, "A woman with a child in her arms, and wounded in the thigh so that she cannot walk, is lying over there through that hole in the wall."

Zhao Zilong rode to look and there, beside an old well behind the broken wall of a burned house, sat the mother clasping the child to her breast and weeping.

Zhao Zilong was on his knees before her in a moment.

"My child will live then since you are here," cried Lady Mi. "Pity him, O General! Protect him, for he is the only son of his father's flesh and blood. Take him to his father, and I can die content."

"It is my fault that you have suffered," replied Zhao Zilong. "But it is useless to say more. I pray you take my horse, while I will walk beside and protect you till we get clear."

She replied, "I may not do that. What would you do without a steed? But the boy here I confide to your care. I am badly wounded and cannot hope to live. Pray take him and go your way. Do not trouble more about me."

"I hear shouting," said Zhao Zilong. "The soldiers will be upon us again in a moment. Pray mount quickly!"

"But really I cannot move," she said. "Do not let there be a double loss!"

And she held out the child toward him as she spoke.

"Take the child!" cried Lady Mi. "His life and safety are in your hands."

Again and again Zhao Zilong besought her to get on his horse, but she would not.

The shouting drew nearer and nearer, Zhao Zilong spoke harshly, saying, "If you will not do what I say, what will happen when the soldiers come up?"

She said no more. Throwing the child on the ground, she turned over and threw herself into the old well. And there she perished.

The warrior relies upon the strength of his charger,  
Afoot, how could he bear to safety his young prince?  
Brave mother! Who died to preserve the son of her husband's line;  
Heroine was she, bold and decisive!

Seeing that Lady Mi had resolved the question by dying, there was nothing more to be done. Zhao Zilong pushed over the wall to fill the well, and thus making a grave for the lady. Then he loosened his armor, let down the heart-protecting mirror, and placed the child in his breast. This done he slung his spear and remounted.

Zhao Zilong had gone but a short distance, when he saw a horde of enemy led by Yan Ming, one of Cao Hong's generals. This warrior used a double edged, three pointed weapon and he offered battle. However, Zhao Zilong disposed of him after a very few bouts and dispersed his troops.

As the road cleared before him, Zhao Zilong saw another detachment barring his way. At the head of this

was a general exalted enough to display a banner with his name Zhang He of Hejian. Zhao Zilong never waited to parley but attacked. However, this was a more formidable antagonist, and half a score bouts found neither any nearer defeat. But Zhao Zilong, with the child in his bosom, could only fight with the greatest caution, and so he decided to flee.

Zhang He pursued, and as Zhao Zilong thought only of thrashing his steed to get away, and little of the road, suddenly he went crashing into a pit. On came his pursuer, spear at poise. Suddenly a brilliant flash of light seemed to shoot out of the pit, and the fallen horse leapt with it into the air and was again on firm earth.

A bright glory surrounds the child of the imperial line, now in danger,  
The powerful charger forces his way through the press of battle,  
Bearing to safety him who was destined to the throne two score years and two;  
And the general thus manifested his godlike courage.

This apparition frightened Zhang He, who abandoned the pursuit forthwith, and Zhao Zilong rode off.

Presently he heard shouts behind, "Zhao Zilong, Zhao Zilong, stop!" and at the same time he saw ahead of him two generals who seemed disposed to dispute his way.

Ma Yan and Zhang Zi following and Jiao Chu and Zhang Neng in front, his state seemed desperate, but Zhao Zilong quailed not.

As the men of Cao Cao came pressing on, Zhao Zilong drew Cao Cao's own sword to beat them off. Nothing could resist the blue blade sword. Armor, clothing, it went through without effort and blood gushed forth in fountains wherever it struck. So the four generals were soon beaten off, and Zhao Zilong was once again free.

Now Cao Cao from a hilltop of the Prospect Mountain saw these deeds of derring-do and a general showing such valor that none could withstand him, so Cao Cao asked of his followers whether any knew the man. No one recognized him.

So Cao Hong galloped down into the plain and shouted out, "We should hear the name of the warrior!"

"I am Zhao Zilong of Changshan!" replied Zhao Zilong.

Cao Hong returned and told his lord, who said, "A very tiger of a leader! I must get him alive."

Whereupon he sent horsemen to all detachments with orders that no arrows were to be fired from an ambush at any point Zhao Zilong should pass: He was to be taken alive.

And so Zhao Zilong escaped most imminent danger, and Liu Shan's safety, bound up with his savior's, was also secured. On this career of slaughter which ended in safety, Zhao Zilong, bearing in his bosom the child lord Liu Shan, cut down two main banners, took three spears, and slew or wounded of Cao Cao's generals half a hundred, all men of renown.

Blood dyed the fighting robe and crimsoned his buff coat;  
None dared engage the terrible warrior at Dangyang;  
In the days of old lived the brave Zhao Zilong,  
Who fought in the battlefield for his lord in danger.

Having thus fought his way out of the press, Zhao Zilong lost no time in getting away from the battle field. His white battle robe had turned red, soaking in blood.

On his way, near the rise of the hills, he met with two other bodies of troops under two brothers, Zhong Jin and Zhong Shen. One of these was armed with a massive ax, the other a halberd.

As soon as they saw Zhao Zilong, they knew him and shouted, "Quickly dismount and be bound!"

He has only escaped from the tiger cave,  
To risk the dragon pool's sounding wave.

How Zhao Zilong escaped will be next related.

## Chapter 42

*Screaming Zhang Fei Triumphs At Long Slope Bridge; Defeated Liu Bei Marches To Hanjin.*

As related in the last chapter two generals appeared in front of Zhao Zilong, who rode at them with his spear ready for a thrust. Zhong Jin was leading, flourishing his battle-ax. Zhao Zilong engaged and very soon unhorsed him. Then Zhao Zilong galloped away. Zhong Shen rode up behind ready with his halberd, and his horse's nose got so close to the other's tail that Zhao Zilong could see in his armor the reflection of the play of Zhong Shen's weapon. Then suddenly, and without warning, Zhao Zilong wheeled round his horse so that he faced his pursuer, and their two steeds struck breast to breast. With his spear in his left hand, Zhao Zilong warded off the halberd strokes, and in his right he swung the blue blade sword. One slash and he had cut through both helmet and head. Zhong Shen fell to the ground, a corpse with only half a head on his body. His followers fled, and Zhao Zilong retook the road toward Long Slope Bridge.

But in his rear arose another tumultuous shouting, seeming to rend the very sky, and Wen Ping came up behind. However, although the man was weary and his steed spent, Zhao Zilong got close to the bridge where he saw standing, all ready for any fray, Zhang Fei.

"Help me, Zhang Fei!" he cried and crossed the bridge.

"Hasten!" cried Zhang Fei, "I will keep back the pursuers!"

About seven miles from the bridge, Zhao Zilong saw Liu Bei with his followers reposing in the shade of some trees. He dismounted and drew near, weeping. The tears also started to Liu Bei's eyes when he saw his commander.

Still panting from his exertions, Zhao Zilong gasped out, "My fault—death is too light a punishment. Lady Mi was severely wounded. She refused my horse and threw herself into a well. She is dead, and all I could do was to fill in the well with the rubbish that lay around. But I placed the babe in the breast of my fighting robe and have won my way out of the press of battle. Thanks to the little lord's grand luck I have escaped. At first he cried a good deal, but for some time now he has not stirred or made a sound. I fear I may not have saved his life after all."

Then Zhao Zilong opened his robe and looked: The child was fast asleep.

"Happily, Sir, your son is unhurt," said Zhao Zilong as he drew him forth and presented him in both hands.

Liu Bei took the child but threw it aside angrily, saying, "To preserve that suckling I very nearly lost a great general!"

Zhao Zilong picked up the child again and, weeping, said, "Were I ground to powder, I could not prove my gratitude."

From out Cao Cao's host a tiger rushed,  
His wish but to destroy;  
Though Liu Bei's consort lost her life,  
Zhao Zilong preserved her boy.  
"Too great the risk you ran to save  
This child," the father cried.  
To show he rated Zhao Zilong high,  
He threw his son aside.

Wen Ping and his company pursued Zhao Zilong till they saw Zhang Fei's bristling mustache and fiercely glaring eyes before them. There he was seated on his battle steed, his hand grasping his terrible serpent spear, guarding the bridge. They also saw great clouds of dust rising above the trees and concluded they would fall into an ambush if they ventured across the bridge. So they stopped the pursuit, not daring to advance further.

In a little time Cao Ren, Xiahou Dun, Xiahou Yuan, Li Dian, Yue Jing, Zhang Liao, Xu Chu, Zhang He, and other generals of Cao Cao came up, but none dared advance, frightened not only by Zhang Fei's fierce look, but lest they should become victims of a ruse of Zhuge Liang. As they came up, they formed a line on the west side, halting till they could inform their lord of the position.

As soon as the messengers arrived and Cao Cao heard about it, he mounted and rode to the bridge to see for himself. Zhang Fei's fierce eye scanning the hinder position of the army opposite him saw the silken umbrella, the axes and banners coming along, and concluded that Cao Cao came to see for himself how matters stood.

So in a mighty voice he shouted: "I am Zhang Fei of Yan. Who dares fight with me?"

At the sound of this thunderous voice, a terrible quaking fear seized upon Cao Cao, and he bade them take the umbrella away.

Turning to his followers, he said, "Guan Yu had said that his brother Zhang Fei was the sort of man to go through an army of a hundred legions and take the head of its commander-in-chief, and do it easily. Now here is this terror in front of us, and we must be careful."

As he finished speaking, again that terrible voice was heard, "I am Zhang Fei of Yan. Who dares fight with me?"

Cao Cao, seeing his enemy so fierce and resolute, was too frightened to think of anything but retreat.

Zhang Fei, seeing a movement going on in the rear, once again shook his spear and roared, "What mean you?

You will not fight nor do you run away!"

This roar had scarcely begun when one of Cao Cao's staff, Xiahou Jie, reeled and fell from his horse terror-stricken, paralyzed with fear. The panic touched Cao Cao and spread to his whole surroundings, and he and his staff galloped for their lives. They were as frightened as a suckling babe at a clap of thunder or a weak woodcutter at the roar of a tiger. Many threw away their spears, dropped their casques and fled, a wave of panic-stricken humanity, a tumbling mass of terrified horses. None thought of ought but flight, and those who ran trampled the bodies of fallen comrades under foot.

Zhang Fei was wrathful; and who dared  
To accept his challenge? Fierce he glared;  
His thunderous voice rolled out, and then  
In terror fled Cao Cao's armed soldiers.

Panic-stricken Cao Cao galloped westward with the rest, thinking of nothing but getting away. He lost his headdress, and his loosened hair streamed behind him. Presently Zhang Liao and Xu Chu came up with him and seized his bridle; fear had deprived him of all self-control.

"Do not be frightened," said Zhang Liao. "After all Zhang Fei is but one man and not worthy of extravagant fear. If you will only return and attack, you will capture your enemy."

That time Cao Cao had somewhat overcome his panic and become reasonable. Two generals were ordered back to the bridge to reconnoiter.

Zhang Fei saw the disorderly rout of the enemy but he dared not pursue. However, he bade his score or so of dust-raising followers to cut loose the branches from their horses' tails and come to help destroy the bridge. This done he went to report to his brother and told him of the destruction of the bridge.

"Brave as you are, brother, and no one is braver, but you are no strategist," said Liu Bei.

"What mean you, brother?"

"Cao Cao is very deep. You are no match for him. The destruction of the bridge will bring him in pursuit."

"If he ran away at a yell of mine, think you he will dare return?"

"If you had left the bridge, he would have thought there was an ambush and would not have dared to pass it. Now the destruction of the bridge tells him we are weak and fearful, and he will pursue. He does not mind a broken bridge. His legions could fill up the biggest rivers that we could get across."

So orders were given to march, and they went by a bye-road which led diagonally to Hanjin by the road of Minyang.

The two generals sent by Cao Cao to reconnoiter near Long Slope Bridge returned, saying, "The bridge has been destroyed. Zhang Fei has left."

"Then he is afraid," said Cao Cao.

Cao Cao at once gave orders to set ten thousand men at work on three floating bridges to be finished that night. Li Dian said, "I fear this is one of the wiles of Zhuge Liang. So be careful."

"Zhang Fei is just a bold warrior, but there is no guile about him," said Cao Cao.

He gave orders for immediate advance.

Liu Bei was making all speed to Hanjin. Suddenly there appeared in his track a great cloud of dust whence came loud rolls of drums and shoutings.

Liu Bei was dismayed and said, "Before us rolls the Great River; behind is the pursuer. What hope is there for us?"

But he bade Zhao Zilong organize a defense.

Now Cao Cao in an order to his army had said, "Liu Bei is a fish in the fish kettle, a tiger in the pit. Catch him this time, or the fish will get back to the sea and the tiger escape to the mountains. Therefore every general must use his best efforts to press on."

In consequence every leader bade those under him hasten forward. And they were pressing on at great speed, when suddenly a body of soldiers appeared from the hills and a voice cried, "I have waited here a long time!"

The leader who had shouted this bore in his hand the green-dragon saber and rode Red Hare, for indeed it was no other than Guan Yu. He had gone to Jiangxia for help and had returned with a whole legion of ten thousand. Having heard of the battle, he had taken this very road to intercept pursuit.

As soon as Guan Yu appeared, Cao Cao stopped and said to his officers, "Here we are, tricked again by that Zhuge Liang!"

Without more ado he ordered a retreat. Guan Yu followed him some three miles and then drew off to act as guard to his elder brother on his way to the river. There boats were ready, and Liu Bei and family went on board. When all were settled comfortably in the boat, Guan Yu asked where was his sister, the second wife of his brother,

Lady Mi. Then Liu Bei told him the story of Dangyang.

"Alas!" said Guan Yu. "Had you taken my advice that day of the hunting in Xutian, we should have escaped the misery of this day."

"But," said Liu Bei, "on that day it was 'Ware damaged when pelting rats.'"

Just as Liu Bei spoke, he heard war drums on the south bank. A fleet of boats, thick as a flight of ants, came running up with swelling sails before the fair wind. He was alarmed.

The boats came nearer. There Liu Bei saw the white clad figure of a man wearing a silver helmet who stood in the prow of the foremost ship.

The leader cried, "Are you all right, my uncle? I am very guilty."

It was Liu Qi. He bowed low as the ship passed, saying, "I heard you were in danger from Cao Cao, and I have come to aid you."

Liu Bei welcomed Liu Qi with joy, and his soldiers joined in with the main body, and the whole fleet sailed on, while they told each other their adventures.

Unexpectedly in the southwest there appeared a line of fighting ships swishing up before a fair wind.

Liu Qi said, "All my troops are here, and now there is an enemy barring the way. If they are not Cao Cao's ships, they must be from the South Land. We have a poor chance. What now?"

Liu Bei went to the prow and gazed at them. Presently he made out a figure in a turban and Daoist robe sitting in the bows of one of the boats and knew it to be Zhuge Liang. Behind him stood Sun Qian.

When they were quite near, Liu Bei asked Zhuge Liang how he came to be there.

And Zhuge Liang reported what he had done, saying, "When I reached Jiangxia, I sent Guan Yu to land at Han-jin with reinforcements, for I feared pursuit from Cao Cao and knew that road you would take instead of Jiangling. So I prayed your nephew to go to meet you, while I went to Xiakou to muster as many soldiers as possible."

The new-comers added to their strength, and they began once more to consider how their powerful enemy might be overcome.

Said Zhuge Liang, "Xiakou is strong and a good strategic point. It is also rich and suited for a lengthy stay. I would ask you, my lord, to make it a permanent camp. Your nephew can go to Jiangxia to get the fleet in order and prepare weapons. Thus we can create two threatening angles for our position. If we all return to Jiangxia, the position will be weakened."

Liu Qi replied, "The Directing Instructor's words are excellent, but I wish rather my uncle stayed awhile in Jiangxia till the army was in thorough order. Then he could go to Xiakou."

"You speak to the point, nephew," replied Liu Bei.

Then leaving Guan Yu with five thousand troops at Xiakou he, with Zhuge Liang and his nephew, went to Jiangxia.

When Cao Cao saw Guan Yu with a force ready to attack, he feared lest a greater number were hidden away behind, so he stopped the pursuit. He also feared lest Liu Bei should take Jiangling, so he marched thither with all haste.

The two officers in command at Jingzhou City, Deng Yi and Liu Xin, had heard of the death of their lord Liu Zong at Xiangyang and, knowing that there was no chance of successful defense against Cao Cao's armies, they led out the people of Jingzhou to the outskirts and offered submission. Cao Cao entered the city and, after restoring order and confidence, he released Han Song and gave him the dignified office of Director of Ambassadorial Receptions. He rewarded the others.

Then said Cao Cao, "Liu Bei has gone to Jiangxia and may ally himself with the South Land, and the opposition to me will be greater. Can he be destroyed?"



**IMAGE 7.6: THREE BROTHERS** | Liu Bei, Guan Yu, and Zhang Fei stand close together reading a scroll.

**Author:** User "Jonathan Groß"

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

Xun You said, "The splendor of your achievements has spread wide. Therefore you might send a messenger to invite Sun Quan to a grand hunting party at Jiangxia, and you two could seize Liu Bei, share Jingzhou with Sun Quan, and make a solemn treaty. Sun Quan will be too frightened not to come over to you, and your end will be gained."

Cao Cao agreed. He sent the letters by a messenger, and he prepared his army—horse and foot and marines. He had in all eight hundred thirty thousand troops, but he called them a million. The attack was to be by land and water at the same time.

The fleet advanced up the river in two lines. On the west it extended to Jingxia, on the east to Qichun. The stockades stretched one hundred miles.

The story of Cao Cao's movements and successes reached Sun Quan, then in camp at Chaisang. He assembled his strategists to decide on a scheme of defense.

Lu Su said, "Jingzhou is contiguous to our borders. It is strong and defensive, its people are rich. It is the sort of country that an emperor or a king should have. Liu Biao's recent death gives an excuse for me to be sent to convey condolence and, once there, I shall be able to talk over Liu Bei and the officers of the late Imperial Protector to combine with you against Cao Cao. If Liu Bei does as I wish, then success is yours."

Sun Quan thought this a good plan, so he had the necessary letters prepared, and the gifts, and sent Lu Su with them.

All this time Liu Bei was at Jiangxia where, with Zhuge Liang and Liu Qi, he was endeavoring to evolve a good plan of campaign.

Zhuge Liang said, "Cao Cao's power is too great for us to cope with. Let us go over to the South Land and ask help from Sun Quan. If we can set north and south at grips, we ought to be able to get some advantage from our intermediate position between them."

"But will they be willing to have anything to do with us?" said Liu Bei. "The South Land is a large and populous country, and Sun Quan has ambitions of his own."

Zhuge Liang replied, "Cao Cao with his army of a million holds the Han River and a half of the Great River. The South Land will certainly send to find out all possible about the position. Should any messenger come, I shall borrow a little boat and make a little trip over the river and trust to my little lithe tongue to set north and south at each other's throats. If the south wins, we will assist in destroying Cao Cao in order to get Jingzhou. If the north wins, we shall profit by the victory to get the South Land. So we shall get some advantage either way."

"That is a very fine view to take," said Liu Bei. "But how are you going to get hold of anyone from the South Land to talk to?"

Liu Bei's question was answered by the arrival of Lu Su, and as the ship touched the bank and the envoy came ashore, Zhuge Liang laughed, saying, "It is done!"

Turning to Liu Qi he asked, "When Sun Ce died, did your country send any condolences?"

"It is impossible there would be any mourning courtesies between them and us. We had caused the death of his father, Sun Jian."

"Then it is certain that this envoy does not come to present condolences but to spy out the land."

So he said to Liu Bei, "When Lu Su asks about the movements of Cao Cao, you will know nothing. If he presses the matter, say he can ask me."

Having thus prepared their scheme, they sent to welcome the envoy, who entered the city in mourning garb. The gifts having been accepted, Liu Qi asked Lu Su to meet Liu Bei. When the introductory ceremonies were over, the three men went to one of the inner chambers to drink a cup of wine.

Presently Lu Su said to Liu Bei, "By reputation I have known you a long time, Uncle Liu Bei, but till today I have not met you. I am very gratified at seeing you. You have been fighting Cao Cao, though, lately, so I suppose you know all about him. Has he really so great an army? How many, do you think, he has?"

"My army was so small that we fled whenever we heard of his approach. So I do not know how many he had."

"You had the advice of Zhuge Liang, and you used fire on Cao Cao twice. You burned him almost to death so that you can hardly say you know nothing about his soldiers," said Lu Su.

"Without asking my adviser, I really do not know the details."

"Where is Zhuge Liang? I should like to see him," said Lu Su.

So they sent for him, and he was introduced.

When the ceremonies were over, Lu Su said, "I have long admired your genius but have never been fortunate enough to meet you. Now that I have met you, I hope I may speak of present politics."

Replied Zhuge Liang, "I know all Cao Cao's infamies and wickednesses, but to my regret we were not strong enough to withstand him. That is why we avoided him."

"Is the Imperial Uncle going to stay here?"

"The Princely One is an old friend of Wu Ju, Governor of Changwu, and intends to go to him."

"Wu Ju has few troops and insufficient supplies. He cannot ensure safety for himself. How can he receive the Uncle?" said Lu Su.

"Changwu is not one to remain in long, but it is good enough for the present. We can make other plans for the future."

Lu Su said, "Sun Quan is strongly posted in the six southern territories and is exceedingly well supplied. He treats able people and scholars with the greatest courtesy and so they gather round him. Now if you are seeking a plan for your Prince, you cannot do better than send some friend to confer with him."

"There have never been any relations between my master and yours," said Zhuge Liang. "I fear there would be nothing but a waste of words. Besides, we have no one to send."

"Your elder brother Zhuge Jin is there as adviser and is longing to see you. I am but a simple wight, but I should be pleased to discuss affairs with my master and you."

"But Zhuge Liang is my Directing Instructor," said Liu Bei, "and I cannot do without him. He cannot go."

Lu Su pressed him. Liu Bei pretended to refuse permission.

"It is important. I pray you give me leave to go," said Zhuge Liang.

Then Liu Bei consented. And they soon took leave and the two set out by boat for Sun Quan's headquarters.

A little boat sailed down the stream  
With Zhuge Liang well content;  
For he could see his enemies  
To fiery perdition sent.

The result of this journey will appear in the following chapter.

### Chapter 43

#### *Zhuge Liang Disputes With The Southern Scholars; Lu Su Denounces The Majority Opinion.*

In the boat on the way to Chaisang, the two travelers beguiled the time by discussing affairs.

Lu Su impressed upon his companion, saying, "When you see my master, do not reveal the truth about the magnitude of Cao Cao's army."

You do not have to remind me," replied Zhuge Liang, "but I shall know how to reply."

When the boat arrived, Zhuge Liang was lodged in the guests' quarters, and Lu Su went alone to see his master. Lu Su found Sun Quan actually at a council, assembled to consider the situation. Lu Su was summoned thereto and questioned at once upon what he had discovered.

"I know the general outline, but I want a little time to prepare my report," replied Lu Su.

Then Sun Quan produced Cao Cao's letter and gave it to Lu Su.

"That came yesterday. I have sent the bearer of it back, and this gathering is to consider the reply," said he. Lu Su read the letter:

"When I, the Prime Minister, received the imperial command to punish a fault, my banners went south and Liu Zong became my prisoner, while the people of Jingzhou flocked to my side at the first rumor of my coming. Under my hand are one million strong and a thousand able leaders. My desire is, General, that we go on a great hunting expedition into Jiangxia and together attack Liu Bei. We will share his land between us, and we will swear perpetual amity. If happily you would not be a mere looker-on, I pray you reply quickly."

"What have you decided upon, my lord?" asked Lu Su as he finished the letter.

"I have not yet decided."

Then Zhang Zhao said, "It would be imprudent to withstand Cao Cao's hundred legions backed by the imperial authority. Moreover, your most important defense against him is the Great River; and since Cao Cao has gained possession of Jingzhou, the river is his ally against us. We cannot withstand him, and the only way to tranquillity, in my opinion, is submission."

"The words of the speaker accord with the manifest decree of providence," echoed all the assembly.

Sun Quan remaining silent and thoughtful.

Zhang Zhao again took up the argument, saying, "Do not hesitate, my lord. Submission to Cao Cao means tranquillity to the people of the South Land and safety for the inhabitants of the six territories."

Sun Quan still remained silent. His head bent in deep thought. Presently he arose and paced slowly out at the door, and Lu Su followed him.

Outside he took Lu Su by the hand, saying, "What do you desire?"

"What they have all been saying is very derogatory to you. A common person might submit. You cannot."

"Why? How do you explain that?"

"If people like us servants submitted, we would just return to our village or continue holding our offices, and everything would go on as before. If you submit, whither will you go? You will be created a lord of some humble fief, perhaps. You will have one carriage, no more; one saddle horse, that is all. Your retinue will be some ten. Will you be able to sit facing the south and call yourself by the kingly title of 'The Solitary'? Each one in that crowd of hangers-on is thinking for himself, is purely selfish, and you should not listen to them, but take a line of your own and that quickly. Determine to play a bold game!"

Sun Quan sighed, "They all talk and talk: They miss my point of view. Now you have just spoken of a bold game, and your view is the same as mine. Surely God has expressly sent you to me. Still Cao Cao is now the stronger by all Yuan Shao's and Liu Biao's armies, and he has possession of Jingzhou. I fear he is almost too powerful to contend with."

"I have brought back with me Zhuge Liang, the younger brother of our Zhuge Jin. If you questioned him, he would explain clearly."

"Is Master Sleeping Dragon really here?"

"Really here, in the guest-house."

"It is too late to see him today. But tomorrow I will assemble my officials, and you will introduce him to all my best. After that we will debate the matter."

With these instructions Lu Su retired.

Next day he went to the guest-house and conveyed Sun Quan's commands to the guest, particularly saying, "When you see my master, say nothing of the magnitude of Cao Cao's army."

Zhuge Liang smiled, saying, "I shall act as circumstances dictate. You may be sure I shall make no mistakes."

Zhuge Liang was then conducted to where the high officers, civil and military to the number of forty and more, were assembled. They formed a dignified conclave as they sat in stately ranks with their tall headdresses and broad girdles.

Zhang Zhao sat at the head, and Zhuge Liang first saluted him. Then, one by one, he exchanged the formal courtesies with them all. This done he took his seat in the guest's chair.

They, on their part, noted with interest Zhuge Liang's refined and elegant manner and his commanding figure, thinking within themselves, "Here is a persuader fitted for discourse."

Zhang Zhao led the way in trying to bait the visitor. He said, "You will pardon the most insignificant of our official circle, myself, if I mention that people say you compare yourself with those two famous men of talent, Guan Zhong and Yue Yi. Is there any truth in this?"

"To a trifling extent I have compared myself with them," replied Zhuge Liang.

"I have heard that Liu Bei made three journeys to visit you when you lived in retirement in your simple dwelling in the Sleeping Dragon Ridge, and that when you consented to serve him, he said he was as lucky as a fish in getting home to the ocean. Then he desired to possess the region about Jingzhou. Yet today all that country belongs to Cao Cao. I should like to hear your account of all that."

Zhuge Liang thought, "This Zhang Zhao is Sun Quan's first adviser. Unless I can nonplus him, I shall never have a chance with his master."

So he replied, "In my opinion the taking of the region around the Han River was as simple as turning over one's hand. But my master Liu Bei is both righteous and humane and would not stoop to filching the possession of a member of his own house. So he refused the offer of succession. But Liu Zong, a stupid lad, misled by specious words, submitted to Cao Cao and fell victim to his ferocity. My master is in camp at Jiangxia, but what his future plans may be cannot be divulged at present."

Zhang Zhao said, "Be it so; but your words and your deeds are something discordant. You say you are the equal of the two famous ones. Well, Guan Zhong, as minister of Prince Huan, put his master at the very head of the feudal nobles, making his master's will supreme in all the land. Under the able statesmanship of Yue Yi, the feeble state of Yan conquered Qi, reducing nearly seventy of its cities. These two were men of most commanding and conspicuous talent."

"When you lived in retirement, you smiled scornfully at ordinary people, passed your days in idleness, nursing your knees and posing in a superior manner, implying that if you had control of affairs, Liu Bei would be more than human; he should bring good to everybody and remove all evil; rebellion and robbery would be no more. Poor Liu Bei, before he obtained your help, was an outcast and a vagabond, stealing a city here and there where he could. With you to help him, he was to become the cynosure of every eye, and every lisping school child was to say that

he was a tiger who had grown wings; the Hans were to be restored and Cao Cao and his faction exterminated; the good old days would be restored, and all the people who had been driven into retirement by the corruption of political life would wake up, rub the sleep out of their eyes, and be in readiness to lift the cloud of darkness that covered the sky and gaze up at the glorious brilliancy of the sun and moon, to pull the people out of fire and water and put all the world to rest on a couch of comfort. That was all supposed to happen forthwith.

"Why then, when you went to Xinye, did not Cao Cao's army throw aside their arms and armors and flee like rats? Why could you not have told Liu Biao how to give tranquillity to his people? Why could you not aid his orphan son to protect his frontiers? Instead you abandoned Xinye and fled to Fancheng; you were defeated at Dangyang and fled to Xiakou with no place to rest in. Thus, after you had joined Liu Bei, he was worse off than before. Was it thus with Guan Zhong and Yue Yi? I trust you do not mind my blunt speech."

Zhuge Liang waited till Zhang Zhao had closed his oration, then laughed and said, "How can the common birds understand the long flight of the cranes? Let me use an illustration. A man has fallen into a terrible malady. First the physician must administer hashish, then soothing drugs until his viscera shall be calmed into harmonious action. When the sick man's body shall have been reduced to quietude, then may he be given strong meats to strengthen him and powerful drugs to correct the disorder. Thus the disease will be quite expelled, and the man restored to health. If the physician does not wait till the humors and pulse are in harmony, but throws in his strong drugs too early, it will be difficult to restore the patient."

"My master suffered defeat at Runan and went to Liu Biao. He had then less than one thousand soldiers and only three generals—Guan Yu, Zhang Fei, and Zhao Zilong. That was indeed a time of extreme weakness. Xinye was a secluded, rustic town with few inhabitants and scanty supplies, and my master only retired there as a temporary refuge. How could he even think of occupying and holding it? Yet, with insufficient force, in a weak city, with untrained men and inadequate supplies, we burned Xiahou Dun at Bowang Slope, drowned Cao Ren and Cao Hong and their army in the White River, and set them in terror as they fled. I doubt whether the two ancient heroes would have done any better. As to the surrender of Liu Zong, Liu Bei knew nothing of it. And he was too noble and too righteous to take advantage of a kinsman's straits to seize his inheritance. As for the defeat at Dangyang, it must be remembered that Liu Bei was hampered with a huge voluntary following of common people, with their aged relatives and their children, whom he was too humane to abandon. He never thought of taking Jiangling, but willingly suffered with his people. This is a striking instance of his magnanimity."

"Small forces are no match for large armies. Victory and defeat are common episodes in every campaign. The great Founder of the Hans suffered many defeats at the hands of Xiang Yu, but Liu Bang finally conquered at Gaixia, and that battle was decisive. Was not this due to the strategy of Han Xin who, though he had long served Liu Bang, had never won a victory. Indeed real statesmanship and the restoration of stable government is a master plan far removed from the vapid discourses and debates of a lot of bragging babblers and specious and deceitful talkers, who, as they themselves say, are immeasurably superior to the rest of humankind but who, when it comes to deeds and decisions to meet the infinite and constant vicissitudes of affairs, fail to throw up a single capable person. Truly such people are the laughing stock of all the world."

Zhang Zhao found no reply to this diatribe.

But another in the assembly lifted up his voice, saying, "But what of Cao Cao's present position? There he is, encamped with one hundred legions and a thousand leaders. Whither he goes he is invincible as wriggling dragon, and whither he looks he is as fearsome as roaring tiger. He seems to have taken Jiangxia already, as we see."

The speaker was Yu Fan.

And Zhuge Liang replied, "Cao Cao has acquired the swarms of Yuan Shao and stolen the crowds of Liu Biao. Yet I care not for all his mob legions."

Yu Fan smiled icily, saying, "When you got thrashed at Dangyang and in desperation sent this way and that to ask help, even then did you not care? But do you think big talk really takes people in?"

Zhuge Liang replied, "Liu Bei had a few thousand scrupulous soldiers to oppose against a million fierce brutes. He retired to Xiakou for breathing space. The South Land have strong and good soldiers, and there are ample supplies, and the Great River is a defense. Is now a time for you to convince your lord to bend the knee before a renegade, to be careless of his honor and reputation? As a fact Liu Bei is not the sort of man to fear such a rebel as Cao Cao."

Yu Fan had nothing to reply.

Next, Bu Zhi, who was among those seated, said, "Will you talk of our southern land with a tongue like the tongues of the persuaders Zhang Yi and Su Qin in the ancient time?"

Zhuge Liang replied, "You regard those two as mere speculative talkers; you do not recognize them also as heroes. Su Qin bore the Prime Ministers' seals of six federated states; Zhang Yi was twice Prime Minister of the state of Qin. Both were men of conspicuous ability who brought about the reformation of their governments. They are not to be compared with those who quail before the strong and overbear the weak, who fear the dagger and run

away from the sword. You, Sir, have listened to Cao Cao's crafty and empty threat, and it has frightened you into advising surrender. Dare you ridicule Su Qin and Zhang Yi?"

Bu Zhi was silenced.

Then suddenly another interjected the question, "What do you think of Cao Cao?"

It was Xue Zong who had spoken.

And Zhuge Liang replied, "Cao Cao is one of the rebels against the dynasty. Why ask about him?"

"You are mistaken," said Xue Zong. "The Hans have outlasted their allotted time, and the end is near. Cao Cao already has two-thirds of the empire, and people are turning to him. Your master has not recognized the fateful moment, and to contend with a man so strong is to try to smash stones with eggs. Failure is certain."

Zhuge Liang angrily replied, "Why do you speak so undutiful words, as if you knew neither father nor prince? Loyalty and filial duty are the essentials of a person's being. For a minister of Han, correct conduct demands that one is pledged to the destruction of anyone who does not follow the canon of a minister's duty. Cao Cao's forbears enjoyed the bounty of Han, but instead of showing gratitude, he nourishes in his bosom thoughts of rebellion. The whole world is incensed against him, and yet you would claim for him the indication of destiny. Truly you are a man who knows neither father nor prince, a man unworthy of any words, and I decline to argue with you further."

The blush of shame overspread Xue Zong's face, and he said no more.

But another, Lu Ji, took up the dispute and said, "Although Cao Cao overawes the Emperor and in his name coerces the nobles, yet he is the descendant of the Supreme Ancestor's Prime Minister Cao Shen; while your master, though he says he is descended from a prince, has no proof thereof. In the eyes of the world, Liu Bei is just a weaver of mats, a seller of straw shoes. Who is he to strive with Cao Cao?"

Zhuge Liang laughed and replied, "Are you not that Lu Ji who pocketed the orange when you were sitting among Yuan Shu's guests? Listen to me: I have a word to say to you. Inasmuch as Cao Cao is a descendant of a minister of state, he is by heredity a servant of the Hans. But now he has monopolized all state authority and knows only his own arbitrary will, heaping every indignity upon his lord. Not only does he forget his prince, but he ignores his ancestors; not only is he a rebellious servant of Han, but the renegade of his family. Liu Bei of Yuzhou is a noble scion of the imperial family upon whom the Emperor has conferred rank, as is recorded in the annals. How then can you say there is no evidence of his imperial origin? Beside, the very founder of the dynasty was himself of lowly origin, and yet he became emperor. Where is the shame in weaving mats and selling shoes? Your mean, immature views are unfit to be mentioned in the presence of scholars of standing."

This put a stop to Lu Ji's flow of eloquence.

But another of those present said, "Zhuge Liang's words are overbearing, and he distorts reason. It is not proper argument, and he had better say no more. But I would ask him what classical canon he studied."

Zhuge Liang looked at his interlocutor, who was Yan Jun, and said, "The dryasdusts of every age select passages and choose phrases. What else are they good for? Do they ever initiate a policy or manage an affair? Yi Yin, who was a farmer in the state of Shen, and Lu Wang, the fisherman of the River Wei, Zhang Liang and Chen Ping, Zheng Yu and Geng Yan—all were men of transcendent ability, but I have never inquired what classical canon they followed or on whose essays they formed their style. Would you liken them to your rusty students of books, whose journeys are comprised between their brush and their inkstone, who spend their days in literary futilities, wasting both time and ink?"

No reply was forthcoming. Yan Jun hung his head with shame.

But another disputant, Cheng Deshu by name, suddenly shouted, "You are mightily fond of big words, Sir, but they do not give any proof of your scholarship after all. I am inclined to think that a real scholar would just laugh at you."

Zhuge Liang replied, "There is the noble scholar, loyal and patriotic, of perfect rectitude and a hater of any crookedness. The concern of such a scholar is to act in full sympathy with his day and leave to future ages a fine reputation. There is the scholar of the mean type, a pedant and nothing more. He labors constantly with his pen, in his callow youth composing odes and in hoary age still striving to understand the classical books completely. Thousands of words flow from his pen, but there is not a solid idea in his breast. He may, as did Yang Xiong, glorify the age with his writings and yet stoop to serve a tyrant such as Wang Mang. No wonder Yang Xiong threw himself out of a window; he had to. That is the way of the scholar of mean type. Though he composes odes by the hundred, what is the use of him?"

Cheng Deshu could make no reply. The other officers now began to hold this man of torrential speech in wholesome fear.

Only two of them, Zhang Wen and Luo Tong, had failed to challenge him, but when they would have tried to pose Zhuge Liang, suddenly someone appeared from without and angrily shouted, "This is not paying fit respect to a guest. You have among you the most wonderful man of the day, and you all sit there trying to entangle him in speech while our archenemy Cao Cao is nearing our borders. Instead of discussing how to oppose Cao Cao, you are

all wrangling and disputing!"

All eyes turned toward the speaker. It was Huang Gai of Lingling, who was the Chief of the Commissariat of the South Land.

He turned to address Zhuge Liang, saying, "There is a saying that though something may be gained by talk, there is more to be got by silence. Why not give my lord the advantage of your valuable advice instead of wasting time in discussion with this crowd?"

"They did not understand," replied Zhuge Liang, "and it was necessary to enlighten them, so I had to speak."

As Huang Gai and Lu Su led the guest toward their master's apartments, they met his brother Zhuge Jin. Zhuge Liang saluted him with the deference due to an elder brother.

Zhuge Jin said, "Why have you not been to see me, brother?"

"I am now in the service of Liu Bei of Yuzhou, and it is right that public affairs precede private obligations. I cannot attend to any private matters till my work is done. You must pardon me, brother."

"After you have seen Marquis Sun Quan, you will come and tell me your news," said he as he left.

As they went along to the audience chamber, Lu Su again cautioned Zhuge Liang against any rash speech, saying, "Do not tell the magnitude of Cao Cao's forces. Please remember."

The latter nodded but made no other reply. When they reached the hall, Sun Quan came down the steps to welcome his guests and was extraordinarily gracious. After the mutual salutations, the guest was given a chair while the Marquis' officials were drawn up in two lines, on one side the civil, on the other the military. Lu Su stood beside Zhuge Liang and listened to his introductory speech.

As Zhuge Liang spoke of Liu Bei's intentions, he glanced up at his host. He noted the green eyes and purple beard and the dignified commanding air of the man and thought within himself, "Certainly in appearance this is no common man. He is one to be incited perhaps, but not to be persuaded. It will be better to see what he has to say first, then I will try to stir him to action."

The serving of tea being now finished, Sun Quan began with the usual gracious ceremonial expressions.

"Lu Su has often spoken of your genius," said the host. "It is a great pleasure to meet you. I trust you will confer upon me the advantage of your instruction."

"I am neither clever nor learned," was the reply. "It humiliates me to hear such words."

"You have been at Xinye lately, and you helped your master to fight that decisive battle with Cao Cao, so you must know exactly the measure of his military strength."

"My master's army was small and his generals were few; the city was paltry and lacked supplies. Hence no stand could be made against such a force as Cao Cao had."

"How many has he in all?"

"Horse and foot, land and marine, he has a million."

"Is there not some doubt about that?" said Sun Quan, surprised.

"None whatever. When Cao Cao went to Yanzhou, he had the two hundred thousand soldiers of Qingzhou. He gained five or six hundred thousand more when Yuan Shao fell. He has three or four hundred thousand troops newly recruited in the capital. Lately he has acquired two or three hundred thousand troops in Jingzhou. And if these be reckoned up, the total is not less than a million and a half. Hence I said a million for I was afraid of frightening your officers."

Lu Su was much disturbed and turned pale. He looked meaningfully at the bold speaker, but Zhuge Liang would not see. Sun Quan went on to ask if his archenemy had a corresponding number of leaders.

"Cao Cao has enough administrators and strategists to control such a host, and his capable and veteran leaders are more than a thousand; perhaps more than two thousand."

"What will be Cao Cao's next move now that he has overcome Jingzhou?"

"He is camped along the river, and he has collected a fleet. If he does not intend to invade the South Land, what can his intentions be?"

"Since that is his intention, it is a case of fight or not fight. I wish you would decide that for me."

"I have something I could say, but I fear, Sir, you would not care to hear it."

"I am desirous of hearing your most valuable opinion."

"Strife has prevailed for a long time; and so you have raised your army in the South Land and Liu Bei collected his forces south of the Han River to act in contest for the empire against Cao Cao. Now Cao Cao has overcome most of his difficulties, and his recent conquest of Jingzhou has won him great and wide renown. Though there might be one bold enough to tackle him, yet there is no foothold for such. That is how Liu Bei has been forced to come here. But, General, I wish you to measure your forces and decide whether you can venture to meet Cao Cao and that without loss of time. If you cannot, then follow the advice of your councilors: Cease your military preparations and yield, turn your face to the north and serve."

Sun Quan did not reply. But his guest went on, "You have the reputation of being reasonable, but I know also

you are inclined to hesitate. Still this matter is most important, and evil will be quickly upon you if you do not decide."

Then replied Sun Quan, "If what you say represents the actual conditions, why does not Liu Bei yield?"

"Well, you know Tian Heng, that hero of the state of Qi: His character was too noble for him to submit to any shame. It is necessary to remember that Liu Bei also is an off-shoot from the Dynastic Family, beside being a man of great renown. Everyone looks up to him. His lack of success is simply the will of Heaven, but manifestly he could not bow the knee to anyone."

These last words touched Sun Quan to the quick, and he could not control his anger. He shook out his sleeves, rose, and left the audience chamber. Those present smiled at each other as they dispersed.

But Lu Su was annoyed and reproached Zhuge Liang for his maladroit way of talking to Sun Quan, saying, "Luckily for you, my lord is too large-minded to rebuke you to your face, for you spoke to him most contemptuously."

Zhuge Liang threw back his head and laughed.

"What a sensitive fellow it is!" cried he. "I know how Cao Cao could be destroyed, but he never asked me. So I said nothing."

"If you really do know how that could be done, I will certainly beg my lord to ask you."

"Cao Cao's hosts in my eyes are but as swarms of ants. I have but to lift my hand, and they will be crushed," said Zhuge Liang.

Lu Su at once went into his master's private room, where he found Sun Quan still very irritable and angry.

"Zhuge Liang insulted me too deeply," said Sun Quan.

"I have already reproached him," said Lu Su, "and he laughed and said you were too sensitive. He would not give you any advice without being asked for it. Why did you not seek advice from him, my lord?"

At once Sun Quan's anger changed to joy.

He said, "So he had a plan ready, and his words were meant to provoke me. I did despise him for a moment, and it has very nearly lost me."

So Sun Quan returned to the audience chamber where the guest was still seated and begged Zhuge Liang to continue his speech.

Sun Quan spoke courteously, saying, "I offended you just now. I hope you are not implacable."

"And I also was rude," replied Zhuge Liang. "I entreat pardon."

Host and guest retired to the inner room where wine was served.

After it had gone round several times, Sun Quan said, "The enemies of Cao Cao were Lu Bu, Liu Biao, Yuan Shao, Yuan Shu, Liu Bei, and my poor self. Now most of these are gone, and only Liu Bei and I remain. I will never allow the land of Wu to be dictated to by another. The only one who could have withstood Cao Cao was Liu Bei, but he has been defeated lately and what can he do now against such force?"

Zhuge Liang replied, "Although defeated, Liu Bei still has Guan Yu with ten thousand veterans. And Liu Qi still leads the troops of Jiangxia, another ten thousand. Cao Cao's army is far from home, and the soldiers are worn out. They made a frantic effort to come up with my master, and the light horse marched one hundred miles in a day and a night. This was the final kick of the crossbow spring, and the bolt was not swift enough to penetrate even the thin silken vesture of Lu. The army can do no more. They are northern people, unskilled in water warfare, and the people of Jingzhou are unwilling supporters. They have no desire to help Cao Cao. Now if you, General, will assist Liu Bei, Cao Cao will certainly be broken, and he must retire northwards. Then your country and Jingzhou will be strong, and the tripod will be firmly established. But the scheme must be carried out without delay, and only you can decide."

Sun Quan joyfully replied, "Your words, Master, open up the road clearly. I have decided and shall have no further doubts."

So the orders were issued forthwith to prepare for a joint attack on Cao Cao. And Sun Quan bade Lu Su bear the news of his decision to all his officers. He himself escorted Zhuge Liang to the guest-quarters and saw to his comfort.

When Zhang Zhao heard of the decision he met his colleagues and said to them, "Our master has fallen into the trap set by this Zhuge Liang."

They went in a body to their lord and said, "We hear you are going to attack Cao Cao. But how do you stand when compared with Yuan Shao? In those days Cao Cao was comparatively weak, and yet he overcame. What is he like today with his countless legions? He is not to be lightly attacked, and to listen to Zhuge Liang's advice to engage in a conflict is like carrying fuel to a fire."

Sun Quan made no reply, and Gu Yong took up the argument.

Gu Yong said, "Liu Bei has been defeated, and he wants to borrow our help to beat his enemy. Why must our lord lend himself to his schemes? Pray listen to our leader's words."

Doubts again surged up in the mind of Sun Quan.

When the troop of advisers had retired, Lu Su came in, saying, "They came to exhort you not to fight, but to compel you to surrender. All this is simply because they wish to secure the safety of their families. They distort their sense of duty to serve their own ends, and I hope you will not take their advice."

Sun Quan being sunk in thought and saying nothing, Lu Su went on, "If you hesitate, you will certainly be led astray by the majority and—"

"Retire for a time," said his master. "I must think it over carefully."

So Lu Su left the chamber. Among the soldiers some wished for war, but of the civil officers, all were in favor of surrender; and so there were many discussions and much conflict of opinion. Sun Quan went to his private apartments greatly perplexed. There his worry was easily discernible, and he neither ate nor slept. He was quite unable to decide finally upon a course of action.

Then Lady Wu, the sister of his late mother, whom he also regarded as his own mother, asked him what so troubled him, and he told her of the threatened danger of Cao Cao and the different opinions his advisers held one and another and all his doubts and fears.

"If I fight, I might fail. But if I offer to surrender, perhaps Cao Cao will not tolerate me," said he.

Then she replied, "Have you forgotten the last words of my sister?"

As to one recovering from a fit of drunkenness, or waking out of a dream, so came to him the dying words of the mother who bore him.

His mother's advice he called to mind,  
"In Zhou Yu's counsels you safety find."

What happened will be told in the next chapter.

## Chapter 44

### *Zhuge Liang Stirs Zhou Yu To Actions; Sun Quan Decides To Attack Cao Cao.*

The dying message which Lady Wu recalled to Sun Quan's memory was, "For internal matters consult Zhang Zhao; for external policy Zhou Yu."

Wherefore Zhou Yu was summoned.

But Zhou Yu was already on the way. He had been training his naval forces on Poyang Lake when he heard of the approach of Cao Cao's hosts and had started for Chaisang without loss of time. So, before the messenger ordered to call him could start, he had already arrived. As he and Lu Su were close friends, the latter went to welcome him and told him of all that had happened.

"Have no anxiety," said Zhou Yu. "I shall be able to decide this. But go quickly and beg Zhuge Liang to come to see me."

So Lu Su went to seek out Zhuge Liang.

Zhou Yu had many other visitors. First came Zhang Zhao, Zhang Hong, Gu Yong, and Bu Zhi to represent their faction to find out what might be afoot.

They were received, and after the exchange of the usual commonplaces, Zhang Zhao said, "Have you heard of our terrible danger?"

"I have heard nothing," said Zhou Yu.

"Cao Cao and his hordes are encamped up the Han River. He has just sent letters asking our lord to hunt with him in Jiangxia. He may have a desire to absorb this country but, if so, the details of his designs are still secret. We prayed our master to give in his submission and so avoid the horrors of war, but now Lu Su has returned bringing with him the Directing Instructor of Liu Bei's army, Zhuge Liang. Zhuge Liang, desiring to avenge himself for the recent defeat, has talked our lord into a mind for war, and Lu Su persists in supporting that policy. They only await your final decision."

"Are you all unanimous in your opinions?"

"We are perfectly unanimous," said Zhang Zhao.

Zhou Yu said, "The fact is I have also desired to submit for a long time. I beg you to leave me now, and tomorrow we will see our master, and I shall make up his mind for him."

So they took their leave. Very soon came the military party led by Cheng Pu, Huang Gai, and Han Dang. They were admitted and duly inquired after their host's health.

Then the leader Cheng Pu said, "Have you heard that our country is about to pass under another's government?"

"No, I have heard nothing," replied the host.

"We helped General Sun Quan to establish his authority here and carve out this kingdom, and to gain that end we fought many a battle before we conquered the country. Now our lord lends his ear to his civil officers and desires to submit himself to Cao Cao. This is a most shameful and pitiful course, and we would rather die than follow it. So we hope you will decide to fight, and you may depend upon our struggling to the last person."

"And are you unanimous, Generals?" asked Zhou Yu.

Huang Gai suddenly started up and smote his forehead, saying, "They may take my head, but I swear never to surrender."

"Not one of us is willing to surrender," cried all the others.

"My desire also is to decide matters with Cao Cao on the battlefield. How could we think of submission? Now I pray you retire, Generals, and when I see our lord, I will settle his doubts."

So the war party left. They were quickly succeeded by Zhuge Jin, Lu Fan, and their faction.

They were brought in and, after the usual courtesies, Zhuge Jin said, "My brother has come down the river saying that Liu Bei desires to ally himself with our lord against Cao Cao. The civil and military hold different opinions as to the course to be pursued. But as my brother is so deeply concerned, I am unwilling to say much on either side. We are awaiting your decision."

"And what do you think about it?" asked Zhou Yu.

"Submission is an easy road to tranquillity, while the result of war is hard to foretell."

Zhou Yu smiled, "I shall have my mind made up. Come tomorrow to the palace, and the decision shall be announced."

The trimmers took their leave. But soon after came Lu Meng, Gan Ning, and their supporters, also desirous of discussing the same thing, and they told him that opinions differed greatly, some being for peace and others for war. One party constantly disputed with the other.

"I must not say much now," replied Zhou Yu, "but you will see tomorrow in the palace, when the matter will be fully debated."

They went away leaving Zhou Yu smiling cynically.

About eventide Lu Su and Zhuge Liang came, and Zhou Yu went out to the main gate to receive them.

When they had taken their proper seats, Lu Su spoke first, saying, "Cao Cao has come against the South Land with a huge army. Our master cannot decide whether to submit or give battle and waits for your decision. What is your opinion?"

Zhou Yu replied, "We may not oppose Cao Cao when he acts at the command of the Emperor. Moreover, he is very strong, and to attack him is to take serious risks. In my opinion, opposition would mean defeat and, since submission means peace, I have decided to advise our lord to write and offer surrender."

"But you are wrong!" stammered Lu Su. "This country has been under the same rule for three generations and cannot be suddenly abandoned to some other. Our late lord Sun Ce said that you were to be consulted on matters beyond the border, and we depended upon you to keep the country as secure and solid as the Taishan Mountains. Now you adopt the view of the weaklings and propose to yield! I cannot believe you mean it."

Replied Zhou Yu, "The six territories contain countless people. If I am the means of bringing upon them the misery of war, they will hate me. So I have decided to advise submission."

"But do you not realize our lord's might and the strength of our country? If Cao Cao does attack, it is very uncertain that he will realize his desire."

The two wrangled for a long time, while Zhuge Liang sat smiling with folded arms.

Presently Zhou Yu asked, "Why do you smile thus, Master?"

And Zhuge Liang replied, "I am smiling at no other than your opponent Lu Su, who knows nothing of the affairs of the day."

"Master," said Lu Su, "what do you mean?"

"Why, this intention to submit is perfectly reasonable. It is the one proper thing."

"There!" exclaimed Zhou Yu. "Zhuge Liang knows the times perfectly well, and he agrees with me."

"But, both of you, why do you say this?" said Lu Su.

Said Zhuge Liang, "Cao Cao is an excellent commander, so good that no one dares oppose him. Only very few have ever attempted it, and they have been exterminated—the world knows them no more. The only exception is Liu Bei, who did not understand the conditions and vigorously contended against him, with the result that he is now at Jiangxia in a very parlous state. To submit is to secure the safety of wives and children, to be rich and honored. But the dignity of the country would be left to chance and fate—however, that is not worth consideration."

Lu Su interrupted angrily, "Would you make our lord crook the knee to such a rebel as Cao Cao?"

"Well," replied Zhuge Liang, "there is another way, and a cheaper. There would be no need to 'lead the sheep and shoulder wine pots' for presents, nor any need to yield territory and surrender seals of office. It would not even

be necessary to cross the river yourselves. All you would require is a simple messenger and a little boat to ferry a couple of persons across the river. If Cao Cao only got these two under his hand, his hordes and legions would just drop their weapons, furl their banners, and silently vanish away."

"What two persons could cause Cao Cao to go away as you say?" asked Zhou Yu.

"Two persons who could be easily spared from this populous country. They would not be missed any more than a leaf from a tree or a grain of millet from a granary. But if Cao Cao could only get them, would he not go away rejoicing?"

"But who are the two?" asked Zhou Yu again.

"When I was living in the country, they told me that Cao Cao was building a pavilion on the River Zhang. It was to be named the Bronze Bird Tower. It is an exceedingly handsome building, and he has sought throughout all the world for the most beautiful women to live in it. For Cao Cao really is a sensualist."

"Now there are two very famous beauties in Wu, born of the Qiao family. So beautiful are they that birds alight and fishes drown, the moon hides her face and the flowers blush for shame at sight of them. Cao Cao has declared with an oath that he only wants two things in this world: The imperial throne in peace and the sight of those two women on the Bronze Bird Terraces. Given these two, he would go down to his grave without regret. This expedition of his, his huge army that threatens this country, has for its real aim these two women. Why do you not buy these two from their father, the State Patriarch Qiao, for any sum however large and send them over the river? The object of the army being attained, it will simply be marched away. This is the ruse that Fan Li of Yue made to the king of Wu of the famous beauty Xi Shi."

"How do you know Cao Cao so greatly desires these two?" said Zhou Yu.

"Because his son Cao Zhi, who is an able writer, at the command of his father wrote a poem 'An Ode to the Bronze Bird Terrace,' theme only allowing allusions to the family fitness for the throne. He has sworn to possess these two women. I think I can remember the poem, if you wish to hear it. I admire it greatly."

"Try," said Zhou Yu.

So Zhuge Liang recited the poem:

"Let me follow in the footsteps of the enlightened ruler that I may rejoice,  
 And ascend the storied terrace that I may gladden my heart,  
 That I may see the wide extent of the palace,  
 That I may gaze upon the plans of the virtuous one.  
 He has established the exalted gates high as the hills,  
 He has built the lofty towers piercing the blue vault,  
 He has set up the beautiful building in the midst of the heavens,  
 Whence the eye can range over the cities of the west.  
 On the banks of the rolling River Zhang he planned it,  
 Whence abundance of fruits could be looked for in his gardens.  
 The two towers rise, one on either flank,  
 This named Golden Phoenix, that Jade Dragon.  
 He would have the two Qiaos, these beautiful ladies of Wu,  
 That he might rejoice with them morning and evening.  
 Look down; there is the grand beauty of an imperial city,  
 And the rolling vapors lie floating beneath.  
 He will rejoice in the multitude of scholars that assemble,  
 Answering to the felicitous dream of King Wen.  
 Look up; and there is the gorgeous harmony of springtime,  
 And the singing of many birds delighting the ear;  
 The lofty sky stands over all.  
 The house desires success in its double undertaking,  
 That the humane influence may be poured out over all the world,  
 That the perfection of reverence may be offered to the Ruler.  
 Only the richly prosperous rule of Kings Wu and Huan  
 Could compare with that of the sacred understanding  
 That fortune! What beauty!  
 The gracious kindness spreads afar,  
 The imperial family is supported,  
 Peace reigns over all the empire,  
 Bounded only by the universe.

Bright as the glory of the sun and moon,  
 Ever honorable and ever enduring,  
 The Ruler shall live to the age of the eastern emperor,  
 The dragon banner shall wave to the farthest limit.  
 His glorious chariot shall be guided with perfect wisdom,  
 His thoughts shall reform all the world,  
 Felicitous produce shall be abundant,  
 And the people shall rest firm.  
 My desire is that these towers shall endure forever,  
 And that joy shall never cease through all the ages.

Zhou Yu listened to the end but then suddenly jumped up in a tremendous rage.

Turning to the north and pointing with his finger, he cried, "You old rebel, this insult is too deep!"

Zhuge Liang hastily rose too and soothed him, saying, "But remember the Khan of the Xiongnu People. The Han emperor gave him a princess of the family to wife although he had made many incursions into our territory. That was the price of peace. You surely would not grudge two more women from among the common people."

"You do not know, Sir," replied Zhou Yu. "Of those two women of the Qiao family you mentioned, Elder Qiao is the widow of Sun Ce, our late ruler, and Younger Qiao is my wife!"

Zhuge Liang feigned the greatest astonishment and said, "No indeed: I did not know. I blundered—a deadly fault—a deadly fault!"

"One of us two has to go: Either the old rebel or I. We shall not both live. I swear that!" cried Zhou Yu.

"However, such a matter needs a good deal of thought," replied Zhuge Liang. "We must not make any mistake."

Zhou Yu replied, "I hold a sacred trust from my late lord, Sun Ce. I would not bow the knee to any such as Cao Cao. What I said just now was to see how you stood. I left Poyang Lake with the intention of attacking the north, and nothing can change that intention, not even the sword at my breast or the ax on my neck. But I trust you will lend an arm, and we will smite Cao Cao together."

"Should I be happy enough not to be rejected, I would render such humble service as I could. Perhaps presently I might be able to offer a plan to oppose him."

"I am going to see my lord tomorrow to discuss this matter," said Zhou Yu.

Zhuge Liang and Lu Su then left.

Next day at dawn Sun Quan went to the council chamber, where his officials, civil and military, were already assembled. They numbered about sixty in all. The civil, with Zhang Zhao at their head, were on the right; the military, with Cheng Pu as their leader, were ranged on the left. All were in full ceremonial dress, and the swords of the soldiers clanked on the pavement.

Soon Zhou Yu entered.

When Sun Quan had finished the usual gracious remarks, Zhou Yu said, "I hear that Cao Cao is encamped on the river and has sent a dispatch to you, my lord. I would ask what your opinion is."

Thereupon the dispatch was produced and handed to Zhou Yu.

After reading it through he said, smiling, "The old thief thinks there are no people in this land that he writes in this contemptuous strain."

"What do you think, Sir?" asked Sun Quan.

"Have you discussed this with the officials?" asked Zhou Yu.

"We have been discussing this for days. Some counsel surrender and some advise fight. I am undecided, and therefore I have asked you to come and decide the point."

"Who advise surrender?" asked Zhou Yu.

"Zhang Zhao and his party are firmly set in this opinion."

Zhou Yu then turned to Zhang Zhao and said, "I should be pleased to hear why you are for surrender, Master."

Then Zhang Zhao replied, "Cao Cao has been attacking all opponents in the name of the Emperor, who is entirely in his hands. He does everything in the name of the government. Lately he has taken Jingzhou and thereby increased his prestige. Our defense against him was the Great River, but now he also has a large fleet and can attack by water. How can we withstand him? Wherefore I counsel submission till some chance shall offer."

"This is but the opinion of an ill-advised student," said Zhou Yu. "How can you think of abandoning this country that we have held for three generations?"

"That being so," said Sun Quan, "where is a plan to come from?"

"Though Cao Cao assumes the name of the Prime Minister of the empire, he is at heart a rebel. You, O General, are able in war and brave. You are the heir to your father and brother. You command brave and tried soldiers, and you have plentiful supplies. You are able to overrun the whole country and rid it of every evil. There is no reason

why you should surrender to a rebel.

"Moreover, Cao Cao has undertaken this expedition in defiance of all the rules of war. The north is unsubdued. Ma Teng and Han Sui threaten his rear, and yet he persists in his southern march. This is the first point against Cao Cao. The northern soldiers are unused to fighting on the water. Cao Cao is relinquishing his well-tried cavalry and trusting to ships. That is the second point against him. Again, we are now in full winter and the weather is at its coldest so there is no food for the horses. That is the third point against. Soldiers from the central state marching in a wet country among lakes and rivers will find themselves in an unaccustomed climate and suffer from malaria. That is the fourth point against. Now when Cao Cao's armies have all these points against them, defeat is certain, however numerous they may be, and you can take Cao Cao captive just as soon as you wish. Give me a few legions of veterans, and I will go and destroy him."

Sun Quan started up from his place, saying, "The rebellious old rascal has been wanting to overthrow the Hans and set up himself for years. He has rid himself of all those he feared, save only myself, and I swear that one of us two shall go now. Both of us cannot live. What you say, noble friend, is just what I think, and Heaven has certainly sent you to my assistance."

"Thy servant will fight a decisive battle," said Zhou Yu, "and shrink not from any sacrifice. Only, General, do not hesitate."

Sun Quan drew the sword that hung at his side and slashed off a corner of the table in front of him, exclaiming, "Let any other person mention surrender, and he shall be served as I have served this table!"

Then he handed the sword to Zhou Yu, at the same time giving him a commission as Commander-in-Chief and Supreme Admiral, Cheng Pu being Vice-Admiral. Lu Su was also nominated as Assistant Commander.

In conclusion Sun Quan said, "With this sword you will slay any officer who may disobey your commands."

Zhou Yu took the sword and turning to the assembly said, "You have heard our lord's charge to me to lead you to destroy Cao Cao. You will all assemble tomorrow at the riverside camp to receive my orders. Should any be late or fail, then the full rigor of military law—the seven prohibitions and the fifty-four capital penalties—there provided, will be enforced."

Zhou Yu took leave of Sun Quan and left the chamber. The various officers also went their several ways.

When Zhou Yu reached his own place, he sent for Zhuge Liang to consult over the business in hand. He told Zhuge Liang of the decision that had been taken and asked for a plan of campaign.

"But your master has not yet made up his mind," said Zhuge Liang. "Till he has, no plan can be decided upon."

"What do you mean?"

"In his heart, Sun Quan is still fearful of Cao Cao's numbers and frets over the inequality of the two armies. You will have to explain away those numbers and bring him to a final decision before anything can be effected."

"What you say is excellent," said Zhou Yu, and he went to the palace that night to see his master.

Sun Quan said, "You must have something of real importance to say if you come like this at night."

Zhou Yu said, "I am making my dispositions tomorrow. You have quite made up your mind?"

"The fact is," said Sun Quan, "I still feel nervous about the disparity of numbers. Surely we are too few. That is really all I feel doubtful about."

"It is precisely because you have this one remaining doubt that I am come. And I will explain. Cao Cao's letter speaks of a million of marines, and so you feel doubts and fears and do not wait to consider the real truth. Let us examine the case thoroughly. We find that he has of central regions' soldiers, say, some one hundred fifty thousand troops, and many of them are sick. He only got seventy or eighty thousand northern soldiers from Yuan Shao, and many of those are of doubtful loyalty. Now these sick men and these men of doubtful loyalty seem a great many, but they are not at all fearsome. I could smash them with fifty thousand soldiers. You, my lord, have no further anxiety."

Sun Quan patted his general on the back, saying, "You have explained my difficulty and relieved my doubts. Zhang Zhao is a fool who constantly bars my expeditions. Only you and Lu Su have any real understanding of my heart. Tomorrow you and Lu Su and Cheng Pu will start, and I shall have a strong reserve ready with plentiful supplies to support you. If difficulties arise, you can at once send for me, and I will engage with my own army."

Zhou Yu left. But in his innermost heart, he said to himself, "If that Zhuge Liang can gauge my master's thoughts so very accurately, he is too clever for me and will be a danger. He will have to be put out of the way."

Zhou Yu sent a messenger over to Lu Su to talk over this last scheme. When he had laid it bare, Lu Su did not favor it.

"No, no," said Lu Su, "it is self-destruction to make away with your ablest officer before Cao Cao shall have been destroyed."

"But Zhuge Liang will certainly help Liu Bei to our disadvantage."

"Try what his brother Zhuge Jin can do to persuade him. It would be an excellent thing to have these two in our service."

"Yes, indeed," replied Zhou Yu.

Next morning at dawn, Zhou Yu went to his camp and took his seat in the council tent. The armed guards took up their stations right and left, and the officers ranged themselves in lines to listen to the orders.

Now Cheng Pu, who was older than Zhou Yu but was made second in command, was very angry at being passed over, so he made a pretense of indisposition and stayed away from this assembly. But he sent his eldest son, Cheng Zi, to represent him.

Zhou Yu addressed the gathering, saying, "The law knows no partiality, and you will all have to attend to your several duties. Cao Cao is now more absolute than ever was Dong Zhuo, and the Emperor is really a prisoner in Xuchang, guarded by the most cruel soldiers. We have a command to destroy Cao Cao, and with your willing help we shall advance. The army must cause no hardship to the people anywhere. Rewards for good service and punishments for faults shall be given impartially."

Having delivered this charge, Zhou Yu told off Han Dang and Huang Gai as Leaders of the Van, and ordered the ships under their own command to get under way and go to the Three Gorges. They would get orders by and bye. Then he appointed four armies with two leaders over each: The first body was under Jiang Qin and Zhou Tai; the second, Pan Zhang and Ling Tong; the third, Taishi Ci and Lu Meng; the fourth, Lu Xun and Dong Xi. Lu Fan and Zhu Zhi were appointed inspectors, to move from place to place and keep the various units up to their work and acting with due regard to the general plan. Land and marine forces were to move simultaneously. The expedition would soon start.

Having received their orders, each returned to his command and busied himself in preparation. Cheng Zi, the son of Cheng Pu, returned and told his father what arrangements had been made, and Cheng Pu was amazed at Zhou Yu's skill.

Said he, "I have always despised Zhou Yu as a mere student who would never be a general, but this shows that he has a leader's talent. I must support him."

So Cheng Pu went over to the quarters of the Commander-in-Chief and confessed his fault. He was received kindly and all was over.

Next Zhou Yu sent for Zhuge Jin and said to him, "Evidently your brother is a genius, a man born to be a king's counselor. Why then does he serve Liu Bei? Now that he is here, I wish you to use every effort to persuade him to stay with us. Thus our lord would gain able support and you two brothers would be together, which would be pleasant for you both. I wish you success."

Zhuge Jin replied, "I am ashamed of the little service I have rendered since I came here, and I can do no other than obey your command to the best of my ability."

Thereupon he went away to his brother, whom he found in the guest-house. The younger brother received him; and when he had reached the inner rooms, Zhuge Liang bowed respectfully and, weeping, told his experiences since they parted and his sorrow at their separation.

Then Zhuge Jin, weeping also, said, "Brother, do you remember the story of Bo Yi and Shu Qi, the brothers who would not be separated?"

"Ah, Zhou Yu has sent him to talk me over," thought Zhuge Liang. So he replied, "They were two of the noble people of old days. Yes, I know."

"Those two, although they perished of hunger near the Shouyang Hills, yet never separated. You and I, born of the same mother and suckled at the same breast, yet serve different masters and never meet. Are you not ashamed when you think of such examples as Bo Yi and Shu Qi?"

Zhuge Liang replied, "You are talking now of love, but what I stand for is duty. We are both men of Han, and Liu Bei is of the family. If you, brother, could leave the South Land and join me in serving the rightful branch, then on the one side we should be honored as Ministers of Han, and on the other we should be together as people of the same flesh and blood should be. Thus love and duty would both receive their proper meed. What do you think of it, my brother?"

"I came to persuade him and lo! It is I who is being talked over," thought Zhuge Jin.

He had no fitting reply to make, so he rose and took his leave. Returning to Zhou Yu, he related the story of the interview.

"What do you think?" asked Zhou Yu.

"General Sun Quan has treated me with great kindness, and I could not turn my back on him," replied Zhuge Jin. "Since you decide to remain loyal, there is no need to say much. I think I have a plan to win over your brother."

The wisest people see eye to eye,  
For each but sees the right;  
But should their several interests clash,  
They all the fiercer fight.

The means by which Zhou Yu tried to get the support of Zhuge Liang will be described in the next chapter.

## Chapter 45

### *At The Three Gorges, Cao Cao Loses Soldiers; In The Gathering Of Heroes, Jiang Gan Is Trapped.*

Zhou Yu was very annoyed by the words of Zhuge Jin, and a fierce hatred for Zhuge Liang took root in his heart. He nourished a secret resolve to make away with Zhuge Liang. He continued his preparations for war, and when the troops were all mustered and ready, he went in for a farewell interview with his lord.

"You go on first, Noble Sir," said Sun Quan. "I will then march to support you."

Zhou Yu took his leave and then, with Cheng Pu and Lu Su, marched out with the army. He invited Zhuge Liang to accompany the expedition, and when Zhuge Liang cheerfully accepted, the four embarked in the same ship. They set sail, and the fleet made for Xiakou.

About twenty miles from Three Gorges the fleet anchored near the shore, and Zhou Yu built a stockade on the bank near the middle of their line with the Western Hills as a support. Other camps were made near his. Zhuge Liang, however, took up his quarters in a small ship.

When the camp dispositions were complete, Zhou Yu sent to request Zhuge Liang to come and give him advice. Zhuge Liang came.

After the salutations were ended, Zhou Yu said, "Cao Cao, though he had fewer troops than Yuan Shao, nevertheless overcame Yuan Shao because he followed the advice given by Xun You to destroy Yuan Shao's supplies at Wuchao. Now Cao Cao has over eight hundred thousand troops while I have but fifty or sixty thousand. In order to defeat him, his supplies must be destroyed first. I have found out that the main depot is at the Iron Pile Mountains. As you have lived hereabout, you know the topography quite well, and I wish to entrust the task of cutting off supplies to you and your colleagues Guan Yu, Zhang Fei, and Zhao Zilong. I will assist you with a thousand soldiers. I wish you to start without delay. In this way we can best serve our masters."

Zhuge Liang saw through this at once. He thought to himself, "This is a ruse in revenge for my not having been persuaded to enter the service of the South Land. If I refuse, I shall be laughed at. So I will do as he asks and trust to find some means of deliverance from the evil he intends."

Therefore Zhuge Liang accepted the task with alacrity, much to the joy of Zhou Yu.

After the leader of the expedition had taken his leave, Lu Su went to Zhou Yu secretly and said, "Why have you set him this task?"

"Because I wish to compass his death without appearing ridiculous. I hope to get him killed by the hand of Cao Cao and prevent his doing further mischief."

Lu Su left and went to see Zhuge Liang to find out if he suspected anything. Lu Su found him looking quite unconcerned and getting the soldiers ready to march.

Unable to let Zhuge Liang go without a warning, however, Lu Su put a tentative question, "Do you think this expedition will succeed?"

Zhuge Liang laughingly replied, "I am an adept at all sorts of fighting, with foot, horse, and chariots on land and marines on the water. There is no doubt of my success. I am not like you and your friend, only capable in one direction."

"What do you mean by our being capable only in one direction?" said Lu Su.

"I have heard the street children in your country singing:

"To lay an ambush, hold a pass,  
Lu Su is the man to choose;  
But when you on the water fight,  
Zhou Yu is the man to use."

"You are only fit for ambushes and guarding passes on land, just as Zhou Yu only understands fighting on the water," said Zhuge Liang.

Lu Su carried this story to Zhou Yu, which only incensed him the more against Zhuge Liang.

"How dare he flout me, saying I cannot fight a land battle? I will not let him go. I will go myself with ten thousand troops and cut off Cao Cao's supplies."

Lu Su went back and told this to Zhuge Liang, who smiled and said, "Zhou Yu only wanted me to go on this expedition because he wanted Cao Cao to kill me. And so I teased him a little. But he cannot bear that. Now is the critical moment, and Marquis Sun Quan and my master must act in harmony if we are to succeed. If each one tries

to harm the other, the whole scheme will fail. Cao Cao is no fool, and it is he who usually attack enemies through cutting off their supplies. Do you not think Cao Cao has already taken double precautions against any surprise of his own depot? If Zhou Yu tries, he will be taken prisoner. What he ought to do is to bring about a decisive naval battle, whereby to dishearten the northern soldiers, and then find some other means to defeat them utterly. If you could persuade him what his best course was, it would be well."

Without loss of time, Lu Su went to Zhou Yu to relate what Zhuge Liang had told him.

Zhou Yu shook his head when he heard it and beat the ground with his foot, saying, "This man is far too clever. He beats me ten to one. He will have to be done away with, or the South Land will suffer."

Said Lu Su, "This is the moment to use people. You must think of the country's good first of all. When once Cao Cao is defeated, you may do as you please."

Zhou Yu had to confess the reasonableness of this.

Liu Bei had ordered his nephew Liu Qi to hold Jiangxia, while he and the bulk of the army returned to Xiakou. Thence he saw the opposite bank thick with banners and flags and glittering with every kind of arms and armors. He knew then that the expedition from the South Land had started. So he moved all his force from Jiangxia to Fankou.

Then he assembled his officers and said to them, "Zhuge Liang went to Wu some time ago, and no word has come from him, so I know not how the business stands. Will anyone volunteer to go to find out?"

"I will go," said Mi Zhu.

So presents were prepared and gifts of flesh and wine, and Mi Zhu prepared to journey to the South Land on the pretext of offering a congratulatory feast to the army. He set out in a small ship and went down river. He stopped opposite the camp, and the soldiers reported his arrival to Zhou Yu, who ordered him to be brought in. Mi Zhu bowed low and expressed the respect which Liu Bei had for Zhou Yu and offered the various gifts. The ceremony of reception was followed by a banquet in honor of the guest.

Mi Zhu said, "Zhuge Liang has been here a long time, and I desire that he may return with me."

"Zhuge Liang is making plans with me, and I could not let him return," said Zhou Yu. "I also wish to see Liu Bei that we may make joint plans. But when one is at the head of a great army, one cannot get away even for a moment. If your master would only come here, it would be very gracious on his part."

Mi Zhu agreed that Liu Bei might come and presently took his leave.

Then Lu Su asked Zhou Yu, "What is your reason for desiring Liu Bei to come?"

"Liu Bei is the one bold and dangerous man and must be removed. I am taking this opportunity to persuade him to come. When he shall be slain, a great danger will cease to threaten our interests."

Lu Su tried to dissuade him from this scheme, but Zhou Yu was deaf to all Lu Su said.

Zhou Yu even issued orders: "Arrange half a hundred executioners to be ready to hide within the lining of the tent if Liu Bei decides to come; and when I drop a cup, that will be a signal for them to fall on and slay him."

Mi Zhu returned and told Liu Bei that his presence was desired by Zhou Yu. Suspecting nothing, Liu Bei at once ordered them to prepare a fast vessel to take him without loss of time.

Guan Yu was opposed to his going, saying, "Zhou Yu is artful and treacherous, and there is no news from Zhuge Liang. Pray think more carefully."

Liu Bei replied, "I have joined my forces to theirs in this attack on our common enemy. If Zhou Yu wishes to see me and I refuse to go, it is a betrayal. Nothing will succeed if both sides nourish suspicions."

"If you have finally decided to go, then will I go with you," said Guan Yu.

"And I also," cried Zhang Fei.

But Liu Bei said, "Let Guan Yu come with me while you and Zhao Zilong keep guard. Jian Yong will hold Exian. I shall not be away long."

So leaving these orders, Liu Bei embarked with Guan Yu on a small boat. The escort did not exceed twenty. The light craft traveled very quickly down the river. Liu Bei rejoiced greatly at the sight of the war vessels in tiers by the bank, the soldiers in their breastplates, and all the pomp and panoply of war. All was in excellent order.

As soon as he arrived, the guards ran to tell Zhou Yu.

"How many ships has he?" asked Zhou Yu.

They replied, "Only one; and the escort is only about a score."

"His fate is sealed," said Zhou Yu.

Zhou Yu sent for the executioners and placed them in hiding between the outer and inner tents, and when all was arranged for the assassination he contemplated, he went out to receive his visitor. Liu Bei came with his brother and escort into the midst of the army to the Admiral's tent.

After the salutations, Zhou Yu wished Liu Bei to take the upper seat, but he declined saying, "General, you are famous throughout all the empire, while I am a nobody. Do not overwhelm me with too great deference."

So they took the positions of simple friends, and refreshments were brought in.

Now by chance Zhuge Liang came on shore and heard that his master had arrived and was with the Commander-in-Chief. The news gave Zhuge Liang a great shock, and he said to himself, "What is to be done now?"

He made his way to the reception tent and stole a look therein. He saw murder written on Zhou Yu's countenance and noted the assassins hidden within the walls of the tent. Then he got a look at Liu Bei, who was laughing and talking quite unconcernedly. But when he noticed the redoubtable figure of Guan Yu near his master's side, he became quite calm and contented.

"My lord faces no danger," said Zhuge Liang, and he went away to the river bank to await the end of the interview.

Meanwhile the banquet of welcome proceeded. After the wine had gone around several times, Zhou Yu picked up a cup to give the signal agreed upon. But at that moment Zhou Yu saw so fierce a look upon the face of the trusty henchman who stood, sword in hand, behind his guest, that Zhou Yu hesitated and hastily asked who he was.

"That is my brother, Guan Yu," replied Liu Bei.

Zhou Yu, quite startled, said, "Is he the slayer of Yan Liang and Wen Chou?"

"Exactly; he it is," replied Liu Bei.

The sweat of fear broke out all over Zhou Yu's body and trickled down his back. Then he poured out a cup of wine and presented it to Guan Yu.

Just then Lu Su came in, and Liu Bei said to him, "Where is Zhuge Liang? I would trouble you to ask him to come."

"Wait till we have defeated Cao Cao," said Zhou Yu, "then you shall see him."

Liu Bei dared not repeat his request, but Guan Yu gave him a meaningful look which Liu Bei understood and rose, saying, "I would take leave now. I will come again to congratulate you when the enemy has been defeated and your success shall be complete."

Zhou Yu did not press him to remain, but escorted him to the great gates of the camp, and Liu Bei left. When he reached the river bank, they found Zhuge Liang awaiting them in their boat.

Liu Bei was exceedingly pleased, but Zhuge Liang said, "Sir, do you know in how great danger you were today?"

Suddenly sobered, Liu Bei said, "No, I did not think of danger."

"If Guan Yu had not been there, you would have been killed," said Zhuge Liang.

Liu Bei, after a moment's reflection, saw that it was true. He begged Zhuge Liang to return with him to Fankou, but Zhuge Liang refused.

"I am quite safe," said Zhuge Liang. "Although I am living in the tiger's mouth, I am as steady as the Taishan Mountains. Now, my lord, return and prepare your ships and soldiers. On the twentieth day of the eleventh month, send Zhao Zilong with a small ship to the south bank to wait for me. Be sure there is no miscarriage."

"What are your intentions?" said Liu Bei.

"When the southeast wind begins, I shall return."

Liu Bei would have questioned him further, but Zhuge Liang pressed him to go. So the boat started up river again, while Zhuge Liang returned to his temporary lodging.

The boat had not proceeded far when appeared a small fleet of fifty ships sweeping down with the current, and in the prow of the leading vessel stood a tall figure armed with a spear. Guan Yu was ready to fight. But when they were near, they recognized that was Zhang Fei, who had come down fearing lest his brother might be in some difficulty from which the strong arm of Guan Yu might even be insufficient to rescue him.

The three brothers thus returned together.

After Zhou Yu, having escorted Liu Bei to the gate of his camp, had returned to his quarters, Lu Su soon came to see him.

"Then you had cajoled Liu Bei into coming, why did you not carry out your plan?" asked Lu Su.

"Because of that Guan Yu. He is a very tiger, and he never left his brother for a moment. If anything had been attempted, he would certainly have had my life."

Lu Su knew that Zhou Yu spoke the truth. Then suddenly they announced a messenger with a letter from Cao Cao. Zhou Yu ordered them to bring him in and took the letter. But when he saw the superscription The First Minister of Han to Commander-in-Chief Zhou Yu, he fell into a frenzy of rage, tore the letter to fragments, and threw them on the ground.

"To death with this fellow!" cried he.

"When two countries are at war, their emissaries are not slain," said Lu Su.

"Messengers are slain to show one's dignity and independence," replied Zhou Yu.

The unhappy bearer of the letter was decapitated, and his head sent back to Cao Cao by the hands of his escort.

Zhou Yu then decided to move. The van under Gan Ning was to advance, supported by two wings led by Han Dang and Jiang Qin. Zhou Yu would lead the center body in support. The next morning the early meal was eaten in the fourth watch, and the ships got under way in the fifth with a great beating of drums.

Cao Cao was greatly angered when he heard that his letter had been torn to fragments, and he resolved to attack forthwith. His advance was led by the Supreme Admiral Cai Mao, the Vice-Admiral Zhang Yun, and others of the Jingzhou officers who had joined his side. Cao Cao went as hastily as possible to the meeting of the three rivers and saw the ships of the South Land sailing up.

In the bow of the foremost ship from the south stood a fine figure of a warrior, who cried, "I am Gan Ning. I challenge anyone to combat!"

Cai Mao sent his young brother, Cai Xun, to accept the challenge. But as Cai Xun's ship approached, Gan Ning shot an arrow and Cai Xun fell. Gan Ning pressed forward, his crossbowmen keeping up a heavy discharge which Cao Cao's troops could not stand. The wings of Han Dang from the left and Jiang Qin from the right also joined in.

Cao Cao's soldiers, being mostly from the dry plains of the north, did not know how to fight effectually on water, and the southern ships had the battle all their own way. The slaughter was very great. However, after a contest lasting till afternoon, Zhou Yu thought it more prudent, in view of the superior numbers of his enemy, not to risk further the advantage he had gained. So he beat the gongs as the signal to cease battle and recall the ships.

Cao Cao was worsted, but his ships returned to the bank, where a camp was made and order was restored.

Cao Cao sent for his defeated leaders and reproached them, saying, "You did not do your best. You let an inferior force overcome you."

Cai Mao defended himself, saying, "The Jingzhou marines have not been exercised for a long time, and the others have never been trained for naval warfare at all. A naval camp must be instituted, the northern soldiers trained, and the Jingzhou force drilled. When they have been made efficient, they will win victories."

"You are the Supreme Admiral. If you know what should be done, why have you not done it?" said Cao Cao. "What is the use of telling me this?"

So Cai Mao and Zhang Yun organized a naval camp on the river bank. They established twenty-four "Water Gates," with the large ships outside as a sort of rampart, and under their protection the smaller ships went to and fro freely. At night when the lanterns and torches were lit, the very sky was illuminated, and the water shone red with the glare. On land the smoke of the camp fires could be traced for one hundred mile without a break.

Zhou Yu returned to camp and feasted his victorious fighting force. A messenger bore the joyful tidings of victory to his master Sun Quan. When night fell, Zhou Yu went up to the summit of one of the hills and looked out over the long line of bright lights stretching toward the west, showing the extent of the enemy's camp. He said nothing, but a great fear came in upon him.

Next day Zhou Yu decided that he would go in person to find out the strength of the enemy. So he bade them prepare a small squadron which he manned with strong, hardy men armed with powerful bows and stiff crossbows. He also placed musicians on each ship. They set sail and started up the stream. When they got opposite Cao Cao's camp, the heavy stones that served as anchors were dropped, and the music was played while Zhou Yu scanned the enemy's naval camp. What he saw gave him no satisfaction, for everything was most admirable.

He said, "How well and correctly built is that naval base! Anyone knows the names of those in command?"

"They are Cai Mao and Zhang Yun," said his officers.

"They have lived in the south a long time," said Zhou Yu, "and are thoroughly experienced in naval warfare. I must find some means of removing them before I can effect anything."

Meanwhile on shore the sentinels had told Cao Cao that the enemy craft were spying upon them, and Cao Cao ordered out some ships to capture the spies. Zhou Yu saw the commotion of the commanding flags on shore and hastily gave the order to unmoor and sail down stream. The squadron at once got under way and scattered; to and fro went the oars, and each ship seemed to fly. Before Cao Cao's ships could get out after them, they were all far away.

Cao Cao's ships took up the chase but soon saw pursuit was useless. They returned and reported their failure.

Again Cao Cao found fault with his officers and said, "The other day you lost a battle, and the soldiers were greatly dispirited. Now the enemy have spied out our camp. What can be done?"

In eager response to his question one stepped out, saying, "When I was a youth, Zhou Yu and I were fellow students and pledged friends. My three-inch tongue is still good, and I will go over and persuade him to surrender."

Cao Cao, rejoiced to find so speedy a solution, looked at the speaker. It was Jiang Gan of Jiujiang, one of the counseling staff in the camp.

"Are you a good friend of Zhou Yu?" said Cao Cao.

"Rest content, O Prime Minister," replied Jiang Gan. "If I only get on the other side of the river, I shall succeed."

"What preparations are necessary?" asked Cao Cao.

"Just a youth as my servant and a couple of rowers. Nothing else."

Cao Cao offered him wine, wished him success, and sent him on his way.

Clad in a simple linen robe and seated in his little craft, the messenger reached Zhou Yu's camp and bade the guards say that an old friend Jiang Gan wished to see him.

The commander was in his tent at a council when the message came, and he laughed as he said to those about him, "A persuader is coming."

Then he whispered certain instructions in the ear of each one of them, and they went out to await his arrival.

Zhou Yu received his friend in full ceremonial garb. A crowd of officers in rich silken robes were about him. The guest appeared, his sole attendant a lad dressed in a simple blue gown. Jiang Gan bore himself proudly as he advanced, and Zhou Yu made a low obeisance.

"You have been well I hope since last we met," said Jiang Gan.

"You have wandered far and suffered much in this task of emissary in Cao Cao's cause," said Zhou Yu.

"I have not seen you for a very long time," said the envoy much taken aback, "and I came to visit you for the sake of old times. Why do you call me an emissary for the Cao Cao's cause?"

"Though I am not so profound a musician as Shi Kuang of old, yet I can comprehend the thought behind the music," replied Zhou Yu.

"As you choose to treat your old friend like this, I think I will take my leave," said Jiang Gan.

Zhou Yu laughed again, and taking Jiang Gan by the arm, said, "Well, I feared you might be coming on his behalf to try to persuade me. But if this is not your intention, you need not go away so hastily."

So they two entered the tent. When they had exchanged salutes and were seated as friends, Zhou Yu bade them call his officers that he might introduce them. They soon appeared civil and military officials, all dressed in their best. The military officers were clad in glittering silver armor and the staff looked very imposing as they stood ranged in two lines.

The visitor was introduced to them all. Presently a banquet was spread, and while they feasted, the musicians played songs of victory and the wine circulated merrily.

Under the mellowing influence, Zhou Yu's reserve seemed to thaw and he said, "Jiang Gan is an old fellow student of mine, and we are pledged friends. Though he has arrived here from the north, he is no artful pleader so you need not be afraid of him."

Then Zhou Yu took off the commanding sword which he wore as Commander-in-Chief and handed it to Taishi Ci, saying, "You take this and wear it for the day as master of the feast. This day we meet only as friends and speak only of friendship, and if anyone shall begin a discussion of the questions at issue between Cao Cao and the South Land, just slay him."

Taishi Ci took the sword and seated himself in his place. Jiang Gan was not a little overcome, but he said no word.

Zhou Yu said, "Since I assumed command, I have tasted no drop of wine; but today as an old friend is present and there is no reason to fear him, I am going to drink freely."

So saying he quaffed a huge goblet and laughed loudly.

The rhinoceros cups went swiftly round from guest to guest till all were half drunk. Then Zhou Yu, laying hold of the guest's hand, led him outside the tent. The guards who stood around all braced themselves up and seized their shinning weapons.

"Do you not think my soldiers a fine lot of fellows?" said Zhou Yu.

"Strong as bears and bold as tigers," replied Jiang Gan.

Then Zhou Yu led him to the rear of the tent whence he saw the grain and forage piled up in mountainous heaps.

"Do you not think I have a fairly good store of grain and forage?"

"Your troops are brave and your supplies ample: The empire's gossip is not baseless, indeed."

Zhou Yu pretended to be quite intoxicated and went on, "When you and I were students together, we never looked forward to a day like this, did we?"

"For a genius like you, it is nothing extraordinary," said the guest.

Zhou Yu again seized his hand, and they sat down.

"A man of the time, I have found a proper lord to serve. In his service, we rely upon the right feeling between minister and prince outside, and at home we are firm in the kindly feeling of relatives. He listens to my words and follows my plans. We share the same good or evil fortune. Even when the great old persuaders like Su Qin, Zhang Yi, Lu Jia, and Li Yiji lived again, even when their words poured forth like a rushing river, their tongues were as a sharp sword, it is impossible to move such as I am!"

Zhou Yu burst into a loud laugh as he finished, and Jiang Gan's face had become clay-colored. Zhou Yu then led his guest back into the tent, and again they fell to drinking.

Presently Zhou Yu pointed to the others at table and said, "These are all the best and bravest of the land of the south. One might call this the 'Gathering of Heroes'."

They drank on till daylight failed and continued after lamps had been lit. Zhou Yu even gave an exhibition of sword play and sang this song:

When a man is in the world, O,  
 He ought to do his best.  
 And when he's done his best, O.  
 He ought to have his rest.  
 And when I have my rest, O,  
 I'll quaff my wine with zest.  
 And when I'm drunk as drunk can be, O,  
 I'll sing the madman's litany.

A burst of applause greeted the song. By this time it was getting late, and the guest begged to be excused. "The wine is too much for me," said Jiang Gan.

His host bade them clear the table.

As all the others left, Zhou Yu said, "It has been many a day since I shared a couch with my friend, but we will do so tonight."

Putting on the appearance of irresponsible intoxication, he led Jiang Gan into the tent and they went to bed. Zhou Yu simply fell, all dressed as he was, and lay there emitting uncouth grunts and groans, so that to the guest sleep was impossible.

Jiang Gan lay and listened to the various camp noises without and his host's thunderous snores within. About the second watch he rose and looked at his friend by the dim light of the small lamp. He also saw on the table a heap of papers, and coming out and looking at them furtively, he saw they were letters. Among them he saw one marked as coming from Cai Mao and Zhang Yun, Cao Cao's Supreme Admiral and Vice-Admiral. He read it and this is what it said:

"We surrendered to Cao Cao, not for the sake of pay but under stress of circumstances. Now we have been able to hold these northern soldiers into this naval camp but, as soon as occasion offers, we mean to have the rebel's head to offer as a sacrifice to your banner. From time to time there will be reports as occasions serve, but you may trust us. This is our humble reply to your letter."

"Those two were connected with the South Land in the beginning," thought Jiang Gan, so he secreted the letter in his dress and began to examine the others. But at that moment Zhou Yu turned over, and so Jiang Gan hastily blew out the light and went to his couch.

Zhou Yu was muttering as he lay there as if dreaming, saying, "Friend, I am going to let you see Cao Cao's head in a day or two."

Jiang Gan hastily made some reply to load on his host to say more. Then came, "Wait a few days; you will see Cao Cao's head. The old wretch!"

Jiang Gan tried to question him as to what he meant, but Zhou Yu was fast asleep and seemed to hear nothing. Jiang Gan lay there on his couch wide awake till the fourth watch was beating.

Then someone came in, saying, "General, are you awake?"

At that moment as if suddenly awakened from the deepest slumber, Zhou Yu started up and said, "Who is this on the couch?"

The voice replied, "Do you not remember, General? You asked your old friend to stay the night with you. It is he, of course."

"I drank too much last night," said Zhou Yu in a regretful tone, "and I forgot. I seldom indulge to excess and am not used to it. Perhaps I said many things I ought not."

The voice went on, "A man has arrived from the north."

"Speak lower," said Zhou Yu, and turning toward the sleeper, he called him by name. But Jiang Gan affected to be sound asleep and made no sign.

Zhou Yu crept out of the tent, while Jiang Gan listened with all his ears. He heard the man say, "Cai Mao and Zhang Yun, the two commanders, said that they cannot execute the plan in a hurry."

But listening as he did with straining ears, he could not make out what followed. Soon after Zhou Yu reentered and again called out his companion's name. But no reply came, for Jiang Gan was pretending to be in the deepest slumber and to hear nothing. Then Zhou Yu undressed and went to bed.

As Jiang Gan lay awake, he remembered that Zhou Yu was known to be meticulously careful in affairs, and if in the morning Zhou Yu found that a letter had disappeared, he would certainly slay the offender. So Jiang Gan lay there till near daylight and then called out to his host. Getting no reply, he rose, dressed, and stole out of the tent. Then he called his servant and made for the camp gate.

"Whither are you going, Sir?" said the watchmen at the gate.

"I fear I am in the way here," replied Jiang Gan, "and so I have taken leave of the Commander-in-Chief for a time. So do not stop me."

He found his way to the river bank and reembarked. Then, with flying oars, he hastened back to Cao Cao's camp. When he arrived, Cao Cao asked at once how he had sped, and he had to acknowledge failure.

"Zhou Yu is very clever and perfectly high-minded," said Jiang Gan. "Nothing that I could say moved him in the least."

"Your failure makes me look ridiculous," said Cao Cao.

"Well, if I did not win over Zhou Yu, I found out something for you. Send away these people, and I will tell you," said Jiang Gan.

The servants were dismissed, and then Jiang Gan produced the letter he had stolen from Zhou Yu's tent. He gave it to Cao Cao. Cao Cao was very angry and sent for Cai Mao and Zhang Yun at once.

As soon as they appeared, he said, "I want you two to attack."

Cai Mao replied, "But the soldiers are not yet sufficiently trained."

"The soldiers will be well enough trained when you have sent my head to Zhou Yu, eh?"

Both commanders were dumb-founded, having not the least idea what this meant. They remained silent for they had nothing to say. Cao Cao bade the executioners lead them away to instant death. In a short time their heads were produced.

By this time Cao Cao had thought over the matter, and it dawned upon him that he had been tricked. A poem says:

No one could stand against Cao Cao,  
Of sin he had full share,  
But Zhou Yu was more treacherous,  
And caught him in a snare.  
Two commanders to save their lives,  
Betrayed a former lord,  
Soon after, as was very met.  
Both fell beneath the sword.

The death of these two naval commanders caused much consternation in the camp, and all their colleagues asked the reason for their sudden execution. Though Cao Cao knew they had been victimized, he would not acknowledge it.

So he said, "These two had been remiss, and so had been put to death."

The others were aghast, but nothing could be done. Two other officers, Mao Jie and Yu Jin, were put in command of the naval camp.

Spies took the news to Zhou Yu, who was delighted at the success of his ruse.

"Those two Cai Mao and Zhang Yun were my only source of anxiety," said he. "Now they are gone: I am quite happy."

Lu Su said, "General, if you can continue like this, you need not fear Cao Cao."

"I do not think any of them saw my game," said Zhou Yu, "except Zhuge Liang. He beats me, and I do not think this ruse was hidden from him. You go and sound him. See if he knew."

Zhou Yu's treacherous plot succeeded well,  
Dissension sown, his rivals fell.  
Drunk with success was he, but sought  
To know what cynic Zhuge Liang thought.

What passed between Lu Su and Zhuge Liang will next be related.

## Chapter 46

*Using Strategy, Zhuge Liang Borrows Arrows; Joining A Ruse, Huang Gai Accepts Punishment.*

Lu Su departed on his mission and found Zhuge Liang seated in his little craft.

"There has been so much to do that I have not been able to come to listen to your instructions," said Lu Su. "That is truly so," said Zhuge Liang, "and I have not yet congratulated the Commander-in-Chief."

"What have you wished to congratulate him upon?"

"Why Sir, the matter upon which he sent you to find out whether I knew about it or not. Indeed I can congratulate him on that."

Lu Su turned pale and gasped, saying, "But how did you know, Master?"

"The ruse succeeded well thus played off on Jiang Gan. Cao Cao has been taken in this once, but he will soon rise to it. Only he will not confess his mistake. However, the two men are gone, and the South Land is freed from a grave anxiety. Do you not think that is a matter for congratulation? I hear Mao Jie and Yu Jin are the new admirals, and in their hands lie both good and evil for the fate of the northern fleet."

Lu Su was quite dumbfounded. He stayed a little time longer passing the time in making empty remarks, and then took his leave.

As he was going away, Zhuge Liang cautioned him, saying, "Do not let Zhou Yu know that I know his ruse. If you let him know, he will seek some chance to do me harm."

Lu Su promised. Nevertheless he went straight to his chief and related the whole thing just as it happened.

"Really he must be got rid of," said Zhou Yu. "I have quite decided to put the man out of the way."

"If you slay him, will not Cao Cao laugh at you?"

"Oh, no! I will find a legitimate way of getting rid of him so that he shall go to his death without resentment."

"But how can you find a legitimate way of assassinating him?"

"Do not ask too much. You will see presently."

Soon after all the officers were summoned to the main tent, and Zhuge Liang's presence was desired. He went contentedly enough.

When all were seated, Zhou Yu suddenly addressed Zhuge Liang, saying, "I am going to fight a battle with the enemy soon on the water. What weapons are the best?"

"On a great river arrows are the best," said Zhuge Liang.

"Your opinion and mine agree. But at the moment we are short of them. I wish you would undertake to supply about a hundred thousand arrows for the naval fight. As it is for the public service, you will not decline, I hope."

"Whatever task the Commander-in-Chief lays upon me, I must certainly try to perform," replied Zhuge Liang.

"May I inquire by what date you require the hundred thousand arrows?"

"Could you have them ready in ten days?"

"The enemy will be here very soon. Ten days will be too late," said Zhuge Liang.

"In how many days do you estimate the arrows can be ready?"

"Let me have three days. Then you may send for your hundred thousand."

"No joking, remember!" said Zhou Yu. "There is no joking in war time."

"Dare I joke with the Commander-in-Chief? Give me a formal military order. If I have not completed the task in three days, I will take my punishment."

Zhou Yu, secretly delighted, sent for the secretaries and prepared the commission then and there.

Then he drank to the success of the undertaking and said, "I shall have to congratulate you most heartily when this is accomplished."

"This day is too late to count," said Zhuge Liang. "On the third from tomorrow morning send five hundred soldiers to the river side to convey the arrows."

They drank a few more cups together, and then Zhuge Liang took his leave.

After he had gone, Lu Su said, "Do you not think there is some deceit about this?"

"Clearly it is not I! It is he who has signed his own death warrant," said Zhou Yu. "Without being pressed in the least, he asked for a formal order in the face of the whole assembly. Even if he grew a pair of wings, he could not escape. Only I will just order the workers to delay him as much as they can, and not supply him with materials, so that he is sure to fail. And then, when the certain penalty is incurred, who can criticize? You can go and inquire about it all and keep me informed."

So off went Lu Su to seek Zhuge Liang, who at once reproached him with having blabbed about the former business.

Zhuge Liang said, "He wants to hurt me, as you know, and I did not think you could not keep my secret. And now there is what you saw today, and how do you think I can get a hundred thousand arrows made in three days? You will simply have to rescue me."

"You brought the misfortune on yourself, and how can I rescue you?" said Lu Su.

"I look to you for the loan of twenty vessels, manned each by thirty people. I want blue cotton screens and bundles of straw lashed to the sides of the boats. I have good use for them. On the third day, I shall undertake to deliver the fixed number of arrows. But on no account must you let Zhou Yu know, or my scheme will be wrecked."

Lu Su consented, and this time he kept his word. He went to report to his chief as usual, but he said nothing about the boats.

He only said, "Zhuge Liang is not using bamboo or feathers or glue or varnish, but has some other way of getting arrows."

"Let us await the three days' limit," said Zhou Yu, puzzled though confident.

On his side Lu Su quietly prepared a score of light swift boats, each with its crew and the blue screens and bundles of grass complete and, when these were ready, he placed them at Zhuge Liang's disposal.

Zhuge Liang did nothing on the first day, nor on the second. On the third day at the middle of the fourth watch, Zhuge Liang sent a private message asking Lu Su to come to his boat.

"Why have you sent for me, Sir?" asked Lu Su.

"I want you to go with me to get those arrows."

"Whither are you going?"

"Do not ask. You will see."

Then the twenty boats were fastened together by long ropes and moved over to the north bank. The night proved very foggy and the mist was very dense along the river, so that one person could scarcely see another. In spite of the fog, Zhuge Liang urged the boats forward as if into the vast fairy kingdom.

There is a poem on these river fogs:

Mighty indeed is the Great River!  
 Rising far in the west, in the Emei and Min Mountains,  
 Plowing its way through Wu, east flowing, restless,  
 Swelled by its nine tributary streams, rolling down from the far north,  
 Aided and helped by a hundred rivulets swirling and foaming,  
 Ocean receives it at last welcoming, joyful, its waters.  
 Therein abide sea nymphs and water gods,  
 Enormous whales a thousand fathoms long,  
 Nine-headed monstrous beasts, reptiles and octopi,  
 Demons and uncouth creatures wondrous strange.  
 In faith it is the home and safe retreat  
 Of devils and sprites, and wondrous growths,  
 And eke the battle ground of valiant humans.  
 At times occur strange strife of elements,  
 When darkness strives on light's domains that encroach,  
 Whereat arises in the vaulted dome of blue  
 White wreaths of fog that toward the center roll.  
 Then darkness falls, too dense for any torch  
 Illumine; only clanging sounds can pass.  
 The fog at first appears, a vaporous wreath  
 Scarce visible. But thickening fast, it veils  
 The Southern Hills, the painted leopard's home.  
 And spreads afar, until the northern sea  
 Leviathans are amazed and lose their course.  
 And denser yet it touches on the sky.  
 And spreads a heavy mantle over the earth.  
 Then, wide as is the high pitched arch of heaven,  
 Therein appears no single rift of blue.  
 Now mighty whales lead up their spouses to sport  
 Upon the waves, the sinuous dragons dive  
 Deep down and, breathing, swell the heaving sea,  
 The earth is moist as with the early rains,  
 And spring's creative energy is chilled.  
 Both far and wide and high the damp fog spreads,  
 Great cities on the eastern bank are hid,  
 Wide ports and mountains in the south are lost,  
 Whole fleets of battle ships, a thousand keels,  
 Hide in the misty depths; frail fishing boats  
 High riding on a wave are seen—and lost.  
 The gloom increases and the domed sky  
 Grows dark and darker as the sun's light fails.

The daylight dies, dim twilight's reign begins,  
 The ruddy hills dissolve and lose their hue.  
 The skill of matchless King Yu would fail to sound  
 The depth and height; and Li Lou's eye, though keen,  
 Could never pierce this gloom.  
 Now is the time, O sea and river gods, to use your powers.  
 The gliding fish and creeping water folk  
 Are lost; there is no track for bird or beast.  
 Fair Penglai Isles are hidden from our sight,  
 The lofty gates of heaven have disappeared.  
 Nature is blurred and indistinct, as when  
 A driving rain storm hurries over the earth.  
 And then, perhaps, within the heavy haze,  
 A noisome serpent vents his venom foul  
 And plagues descend, or impish demons work  
 Their wicked wills.  
 Ills fall on humans but do not stay,  
 Heaven's cleansing breath sweeps them sway,  
 But while they last the mean ones cry,  
 The nobler suffer silently.  
 The greatest turmoil is a sign  
 Of quick return to state benign.

The little fleet reached Cao Cao's naval camp about the fifth watch, and Zhuge Liang gave orders to form line lying prows west, and then to beat the drums and shout.

"But what shall we do if they attack us?" exclaimed Lu Su.

Zhuge Liang replied with a smile, "I think their fleet will not venture out in this fog. Go on with your wine, and let us be happy. We will go back when the fog lifts."

As soon as the shouting from the river was heard by those in the camp, the two admirals, Mao Jie and Yu Jin, ran off to report to Cao Cao, who said, "Coming up in a fog like this means that they have prepared an ambush for us. Do not go out, but get all the force together and shoot at them."

He also sent orders to the ground camps to dispatch six thousand of archers and crossbowmen to aid the marines.

The naval forces were then lined up shooting on the bank to prevent a landing. Presently the soldiers arrived, and ten thousand and more soldiers were shooting down into the river, where the arrows fell like rain. By and bye Zhuge Liang ordered the boats to turn round so that their prows pointed east and to go closer in so that many arrows might hit them.

Zhuge Liang ordered the drums to be kept beating till the sun was high and the fog began to disperse, when the boats got under way and sailed down stream. The whole twenty boats were bristling with arrows on both sides.

As they left, Zhuge Liang asked all the crews to shout derisively, "We thank you, Sir Prime Minister, for the arrows!"

They told Cao Cao, but by the time he came, the light boats helped by the swift current were seven miles long down the river and pursuit was impossible. Cao Cao saw that he had been duped and was very sorry, but there was no help for it.

On the way down Zhuge Liang said to his companion, "Every boat must have five or six thousand arrows and so, without the expenditure of an ounce of energy, we must have more than ten myriad arrows, which tomorrow can be shot back again at Cao Cao's army to his great inconvenience."

"You are really superhuman," said Lu Su. "But how did you know there would be a thick fog today?"

"One cannot be a leader without knowing the workings of heaven and the ways of earth. One must understand the secret gates and the interdependence of the elements, the mysteries of tactics and the value of forces. It is but an ordinary talent. I calculated three days ago that there would be a fog today, and so I set the limit at three days. Zhou Yu would give me ten days, but neither artificers nor materials, so that he might find occasion to put me to death as I knew. But my fate lies with the Supreme, and how could Zhou Yu harm me?"

Lu Su could not but agree. When the boats arrived, five hundred soldiers were in readiness on the bank to carry away the arrows. Zhuge Liang bade them go on board the boats, collect them and bear them to the tent of the Commander-in-Chief. Lu Su went to report that the arrows had been obtained and told Zhou Yu by what means.

Zhou Yu was amazed and sighed sadly, saying, "He is better than I. His methods are more than human."

Thick lies the fog on the river,  
 Nature is shrouded in white,  
 Distant and near are confounded,  
 Banks are no longer in sight.  
 Fast fly the pattering arrows,  
 Stick in the boats of the fleet.  
 Now can full tale be delivered,  
 Zhuge Liang is victor complete.

When, shortly after his return, Zhuge Liang went to the tent of the Commander-in-Chief, he was welcomed by Zhou Yu, who came forward to greet him, saying, "Your superhuman predictions compel one's esteem."

"There is nothing remarkable in that trifling trick," replied he.

Zhou Yu led him within and wine was brought.

Then Zhou Yu said, "My lord sent yesterday to urge me to advance, but I have no master plan ready. I wish you would assist me, Master."

"But where should I, a man of poor everyday ability, find such a plan as you desire?"

"I saw the enemy's naval camp just lately, and it looked very complete and well organized. It is not an ordinary place to attack. I have thought of a plan, but I am not sure it will answer. I should be happy if you would decide for me."

"General," replied Zhuge Liang, "do not say what your plan is, but each of us will write in the palm of his hand and see whether our opinions agree."

So brush and ink were sent for, and Zhou Yu first wrote on his own palm, and then passed the pen to Zhuge Liang who also wrote. Then getting close together on the same bench, each showed his hand to the other, and both burst out laughing, for both had written the same word, "Fire."

"Since we are of the same opinion," said Zhou Yu, "there is no longer any doubt. But our intentions must be kept secret."

"Both of us are public servants, and what would be the sense of telling our plans? I do not think Cao Cao will be on his guard against this, although he has had two experiences. You may put your scheme into force."

They finished their wine and separated. Not an officer knew a word of their plans.

Now Cao Cao had expended a myriad arrows in vain and was much irritated in consequence. He deeply desired revenge.

Then Xun You proposed a ruse, saying, "The two strategists on the side of the enemy are Zhou Yu and Zhuge Liang, two men most difficult to get the better of. Let us send someone who shall pretend to surrender to them but really be a spy on our behalf and a helper in our schemes. When we know what is doing, we can plan to meet it."

"I had thought of that myself," replied Cao Cao. "Whom do you think the best person to send?"

"Cai Mao has been put to death, but all his clan and family are in the army, and his two younger brothers are junior generals. You have them most securely in your power and may send them to surrender. The ruler of the South Land will never suspect deceit there."

Cao Cao decided to act on this plan, and in the evening summoned Cai Zhong and Cai He to his tent, where he told them, saying, "I want you to pretend to surrender to the South Land so that you can gather intelligence and sent it back. When all done, you will be richly rewarded. But do not betray me."

"Our families are in Jingzhou, and that place is yours," replied they. "Should we dare betray? You need have no doubts, Sir. You will soon see the heads of both Zhou Yu and Zhuge Liang at your feet."

Cao Cao gave them generous gifts. Soon after the two men, each with his five hundred soldiers, set sail with a fair wind for the opposite bank.

Now as Zhou Yu was preparing for the attack, the arrival of some northern ships was announced. They bore the two younger brothers of Cai Mao, who had come as deserters.

They were led in and, bowing before the general, said, weeping, "Our innocent brother has been put to death, and we desire vengeance. So we have come to offer allegiance to you. We pray you appoint us to the vanguard."

Zhou Yu appeared very pleased and made them presents. Then he ordered them to join Gan Ning in leading the van. They thanked him and regarded their scheme as already a success.

But Zhou Yu gave Gan Ning secret orders, saying, "They have come without their families, and so I know their desertion is only pretense. They have been sent as spies, and I am going to meet their ruse with one of my own. They shall have some information to send. You will treat them well, but keep a careful guard over them. On the day our soldiers start the offense, they shall be sacrificed to the flag. But be very careful that nothing goes wrong."

Gan Ning went away.

Then Lu Su came to tell Zhou Yu, saying, "Everyone agrees in thinking the surrender of Cai Zhong and Cai He

feigned and they should be rejected."

"But they wish to revenge the death of their brother," said the Fleet Admiral. "Where is the pretense? If you are so suspicious, you will receive nobody at all."

Lu Su left much piqued and went to see Zhuge Liang to whom he told the story. Zhuge Liang only smiled.

"Why do you smile?" said Lu Su.

"I smile at your simplicity. The General is playing a game. Spies cannot easily come and go, so these two have been sent to feign desertion that they may act as spies. The General is meeting one ruse with another. He wants them to give false information. Deceit is not to be despised in war, and his scheme is the correct one to employ."

Then Lu Su understood.

That night as Zhou Yu was sitting in his tent, Huang Gai came to see him privately.

Zhou Yu said, "You have surely some wise plan to propose that you come at night like this."

Huang Gai replied, "The enemy are more numerous than we, and it is wrong to delay. Why not burn them out?"

"Who suggested that to you?"

"I thought of it myself. Nobody suggested it," replied Huang Gai.

"I just wanted something like this, and that is why I kept those two pretended deserters. I want them to give some false news. The pity is that I have no one to feign desertion to the other side and work my plan."

"But I will carry out your plan," said Huang Gai.

"But if you cannot show some injury, you will not be believed," said Zhou Yu.

"The Sun family have been very generous to me, and I would not resent being crushed to death to repay them," said Huang Gai.

Zhou Yu bowed and thanked him, saying, "If you would not object to some bodily suffering, then the South Land would indeed be happy."

"Kill me. I do not mind," repeated Huang Gai as he took his leave.

Next day the drums called all the officers together to the Commander-in-Chief's tent, and Zhuge Liang came with the others.

Zhou Yu said, "The enemy's camps extend about one hundred miles so that the campaign will be a long one. Each leader is to prepare supplies for three months."

Scarcely had he spoken when Huang Gai started up, crying, "Say not three months. Be ready for thirty months, and even then it will not be ended. If you can destroy them this month, then all is well. If you cannot, then it were better to take Zhang Zhao's advice, throw down your weapons, turn to the north, and surrender."

Zhou Yu's anger flared up, and he flushed, crying, "Our lord's orders were to destroy Cao Cao, and whoever mentioned the word surrender should be put to death! Now, the very moment when the two armies are to engage, you dare talk of surrender and damp the ardor of my army! If I do not slay you, how can I support the others?"

He ordered the lictors to remove Huang Gai and execute him without delay.

Huang Gai then flamed up in turn, saying, "This is the third generation since I went with General Sun Jian, and we overran the southeast. Whence have you sprung up?"

This made Zhou Yu perfectly furious, and Huang Gai was ordered to instant death. But Gan Ning interceded. Said he, "He is a veteran officer of the South Land. Pray pardon him!"

"What are you prating about?" cried Zhou Yu. "Dare you come between me and my duty?"

Turning to the lictors, Zhou Yu ordered them to drive Gan Ning forth with blows.

The other officials fell on their knees entreating pity for Huang Gai.

"He is indeed most worthy of death, but it would be a loss to the army. We pray you forgive him. Record his fault for the moment; and after the enemy shall have been defeated, then put him to death."

But Zhou Yu was implacable. The officers pleaded with tears.

At length he seemed moved, saying, "Had you not interceded, he should certainly have suffered death. But now I will mitigate the punishment to a beating. He shall not die."

Zhou Yu turned to the lictors and bade them deal the culprit one hundred blows. Again his colleagues prayed for remission, but Zhou Yu angrily pushed over the table in front of him and roared to the officers to get out of the way and let the sentence be executed.

So Huang Gai was stripped, thrown to the ground, and fifty blows were given. At this point the officers again prayed that he be let off.

Zhou Yu sprang from his chair and pointing his finger at Huang Gai said, "If you dare flout me again, you shall have the other fifty. If you are guilty of any disrespect, you shall be punished for both faults!"

With this he turned into the inner part of the tent, growling as he went, while the officers helped their beaten colleague to his feet. He was in a deplorable state. His back was cut in many places, and the blood was flowing in streams. They led him to his own quarters and on the way he swooned several times. His case seemed most pitiable.

Lu Su went to see the suffering officer and then called on Zhuge Liang in his boat.

Lu Su related the story of the beating and said, "Though the other officers have been cowed into silence, I think thought you, Sir, might have interceded. You are a guest and not under Zhou Yu's orders. Why did you stand by with your hands up your sleeves and say never a word?"

"You insult me," said Zhuge Liang smiling.

"Why do you say that? I have never insulted you: Never since the day we came here together."

"Do you not know that terrible beating was but a ruse? How could I try to dissuade Zhou Yu?"

Then Lu Su began to perceive, and Zhuge Liang continued, saying, "Cao Cao would not be taken in unless there was some real bodily suffering. Zhou Yu is going to send Huang Gai over as a deserter, and Zhou Yu will see to it that the two Cao Cao's spies duly tell the tale. But when you see the General, you must not tell him that I saw through the ruse. You say that I am very angry like the others."

Lu Su went to see Zhou Yu and asked, "Why have you so cruelly beaten a proved and trusty officer?"

"Do the officers resent it?" asked Zhou Yu.

"They are all upset about it."

"And what does your friend think?"

"Zhuge Liang also resents it in his heart, and he thinks you have made a mistake."

"Then I have deceived him for once," said Zhou Yu gleefully.

"What mean you?" cried Lu Su.

"That beating that Huang Gai got is part of my ruse. I am sending him to Cao Cao as a deserter, and so I have supplied a reason for desertion. Then I am going to use fire against the enemy."

Lu Su kept silence, but he recognized that Zhuge Liang was again right.

Meanwhile Huang Gai lay in his tent, whither all his colleague officers went to condole with him and inquire after his health. But Huang Gai would say never a word. He only lay sighing deeply from time to time.

But when the Strategist Kan Ze came, Huang Gai told them to bring him to the room where he lay. Then he bade the servants go away.

Kan Ze said, "Surely you must have some serious quarrel with the General."

"I have none," said Huang Gai.

"Then this beating is just part of a ruse?"

"How did you guess?" said Huang Gai.

"Because I watched the General, and I guessed about nine tenths of the truth."

Huang Gai said, "You see I have been very generously treated by the Sun family, all three of them, and have no means of showing my gratitude except by offering to help in this ruse. True I suffer, but I do not regret that. Among all those I know in the army, there is not one I am intimate with except yourself. You are true, and I can talk with you as a friend."

"I suppose you wish me to present your surrender letter to Cao Cao. Is that it?"

"Just that; will you do it?" said Huang Gai.

Kan Ze consented joyfully.

Even the warrior's body is but a stake in the game,  
The friend so ready to help him proves that their hearts are the same.

Kan Ze's reply will be read in the next chapter.

## Chapter 47

### *Kan Ze Presents A Treacherous Letter; Pang Tong Suggests Chaining The Ships.*

Kan Ze was from Shanyin, a son of a humble family. He loved books, but as he was too poor to buy, he used to borrow. He had a wonderfully tenacious memory, was very eloquent and no coward. Sun Quan had employed him among his advisers, and he and Huang Gai were excellent friends.

Now Huang Gai had thought of Kan Ze to present the treacherous letter to Cao Cao, as Kan Ze's gifts made him most suitable.

Kan Ze accepted with enthusiasm, saying, "When you, my friend, have suffered so much for our lord, could I spare myself? No! While a person lives, he must go on fulfilling his mission, or he is no better than the herbs that rot in the field."

Huang Gai slipped off the couch and came over to salute him.

"However, this matter must speed," continued Kan Ze. "There is no time to lose."

"The letter is already written," said Huang Gai.

Kan Ze received it and left. That night he disguised himself as an old fisherman and started in a small punt for

the north shore, under the cold, glittering light of the stars. Soon he drew near the enemy's camp and was captured by the patrol.

"Without waiting for day, they informed Cao Cao, who said at once, "Is he not just a spy?"

"No," said they, "he is alone, just an old fisherman. And he says he is an adviser in the service of the South Land named Kan Ze, and he has come on secret business."

"Bring him," said Cao Cao, and Kan Ze was led in.

Cao Cao was seated in a brilliantly lighted tent. He was leaning on a small table, and as soon as he saw the prisoner, he said harshly, "You are an adviser of East Wu. What then are you doing here?"

"People say that you greedily welcome people of ability. I do not think your question a very proper one. O friend Huang Gai, you made a mistake," said Kan Ze.

"You know I am fighting against East Wu, and you come here privately. Why should I not question you?"

"Huang Gai is an old servant of Wu, one who has served three successive rulers. Now he has been cruelly beaten, for no fault, before the face of all the officers in Zhou Yu's camp. He is grievously angry about this and wishes to desert to your side that he may be revenged. He discussed it with me, and as we are inseparable, I have come to give you his letter asking whether you would receive him."

"Where is the letter?" said Cao Cao.

The missive was produced and presented. Cao Cao opened it and read:

"I, Huang Gai, have been generously treated by the Sun family and have served them single-heartedly.

Lately they have been discussing an attack with our forces on the enormous army of the central government. Everyone knows our few are no match for such a multitude, and every officer of the South Land, wise or foolish, recognizes that quite well. However, Zhou Yu who, after all, is but a youth and a shallow minded simpleton, maintains that success is possible and rashly desires to smash stones with an egg. Beside, he is arbitrary and tyrannical, punishing for no crime, and leaving meritorious service unrewarded. I am an old servant and for no reason have been shamed in the sight of people. Wherefore I hate him in my heart.

"You, O Prime Minister, treat people with sincerity and are ready to welcome ability and so I, and those under my leadership, desire to enter your service whereby to acquire reputation and remove the shameful stigma. The commissariat, weapons, and the supply ships that I am commanding will also come over to you. In perfect sincerity I state these matters. I pray you not to doubt me."

Leaning there on the low table by his side, Cao Cao turned this letter over and over and read it again and again.

Then he smacked the table, opened his eyes wide with anger, saying, "Huang Gai is trying to play the personal injury trick on me, is he? And you are in it as the intermediary to present the letter. How dare you come to sport with me?"

Cao Cao ordered the lictors to thrust forth the messenger and take off his head. Kan Ze was hustled out, his face untroubled. On the contrary, he laughed aloud.

At this Cao Cao told them to bring him back and harshly said to him, "What do you find to laugh at now that I have foiled you and your ruse has failed?"

"I was not laughing at you. I was laughing at my friend's simplicity."

"What do you mean by his simplicity?"

"If you want to slay, slay. Do not trouble me with a multitude of questions."

"I have read all the books on the art of war, and I am well versed in all ways of misleading the enemy. This ruse of yours might have succeeded with many, but it will not do for me."

"And so you say that the letter is a vicious trick?" said Kan Ze.

"What I say is that your little slip has sent you to the death you risked. If the thing was real and you were sincere, why does not the letter name a time of coming over? What have you to say to that?"

Kan Ze waited to the end and then laughed louder than ever, saying, "I am so glad you are not frightened but can still boast of your knowledge of the books of war. Now you will not lead away your soldiers. If you fight, Zhou Yu will certainly capture you. But how sad to think I die at the hand of such an ignorant fellow!"

"What mean you? I, ignorant?"

"You are ignorant of any strategy and a victim of unreason. Is not that sufficient?"

"Well then, tell me where is any fault?"

"You treat wise people too badly for me to talk to you. You can finish me and let there be an end of it."

"If you can speak with any show of reason, I will treat you differently."

"Do you not know that when one is going to desert one's master and become a renegade, one cannot say exactly when the chance will occur? If one binds one's self to a fixed moment and the thing cannot be done just then, the secret will be discovered. One must watch for an opportunity and take it when it comes. Think: Is it possible to

know exactly when? But you know nothing of common sense. All you know is how to put good people to death. So you really are an ignorant fellow!"

At this Cao Cao changed his manner, got up, and came over to the prisoner bowing, "I did not see clearly. That is quite true. I offended you, and I hope you will forget it."

"The fact is that Huang Gai and I are both inclined to desert to you. We even yearn for it as a child desires its parents. Is it possible that we should play you false?"

"If you two could render me so great a service, you shall certainly be richly rewarded."

"We do not desire rank or riches. We come because it is the will of Heaven and the plain way of duty."

Then wine was set out, and Kan Ze was treated as an honored guest. While they were drinking, someone came in and whispered in Cao Cao's ear.

He replied, "Let me see the letter."

Whereupon the man pulled out and gave him a letter, which evidently pleased him.

"That is from the two Cai brothers," thought Kan Ze. "They are reporting the punishment of my friend, and that will be a proof of the sincerity of his letter."

Turning toward Kan Ze, Cao Cao said, "I must ask you to return to settle the date with your friend. As soon as I know, I will have a force waiting."

"I cannot return. Pray, Sir, send some other one you can trust."

"If someone else should go, the secret would be discovered."

Kan Ze refused again and again but at last gave way, saying, "If I am to go, I must not wait here. I must be off at once."

Cao Cao offered him gold and silks, which were refused. Kan Ze started, left the camp, and reembarked for the south bank, where he related all that had happened to Huang Gai.

"If it had not been for your persuasive tongue, then had I undergone this suffering in vain," said Huang Gai.

"I will now go to get news of the two Cai brothers," said Kan Ze.

"Excellent," said Huang Gai.

Kan Ze went to the camp commanded by Gan Ning.

When they were seated, Kan Ze said to his host, "I was much distressed when I saw how disgracefully you were treated for your intercession on behalf of Huang Gai."

Gan Ning smiled. Just then the two Cai brothers came, and host and guest exchanged glances.

Gan Ning said, "The truth is Zhou Yu is over confident, and he reckons us as nobody. We count for nothing. Everyone is talking of the way I was insulted."

And he shouted and gritted his teeth and smacked the table in his wrath.

Kan Ze leaned over toward his host and said something in a very low voice, at which Gan Ning bent his head and sighed.

Cai He and Cai Zhong gathered from this scene that both Gan Ning and Kan Ze were ripe for desertion and determined to probe them.

"Why, Sir, do you anger him? Why not be silent about your injuries?" said they.

"What know you of our bitterness?" said Kan Ze.

"We think you seem much inclined to go over to Cao Cao," said they.

Kan Ze at this lost color. Gan Ning started up and drew his sword, crying, "They have found out. They must die to keep their mouths shut!"

"No, no," cried the two in a flurry. "Let us tell you something quite secret!"

"Quick, then!" cried Gan Ning.

So Cai He said, "The truth is that we are only pretended deserters, and if you two gentlemen are of our way of thinking, we can manage things for you."

"But are you speaking the truth?" said Gan Ning.

"Is it likely we should say such a thing if it were untrue?" cried both at the same moment.

Gan Ning put on a pleased look and said, "Then this is the very heaven-given chance."

"You know we have already told Cao Cao of the Huang Gai affair and how you were insulted."

"The fact is I have given the Prime Minister a letter on behalf of Huang Gai, and he sent me back again to settle the date of Huang Gai's desertion," said Kan Ze.

"When an honest person happens upon an enlightened master, his heart will always be drawn toward him," said Gan Ning.

The four then drank together and opened their hearts to each other. The two Cai Zhong and Cai He wrote a private letter to their master saying Gan Ning has agreed to join in our plot and play the traitor, and Kan Ze also wrote, and they sent the letters secretly to Cao Cao.

Kan Ze's letter said:

"Huang Gai has found no opportunity so far. However, when he comes, his boat can be recognized by a black, indented flag. That shall mean he is on board."

However, when Cao Cao got these two letters, he was still doubtful and called together his advisers to talk over the matter.

Said he, "On the other side Gan Ning has been put to shame by the Commander-in-Chief whom he is prepared to betray for the sake of revenge. Huang Gai has been punished and sent Kan Ze to propose that he should come over to our side. Only I still distrust the whole thing. Who will go over to the camp to find out the real truth?"

Then Jiang Gan spoke up, saying, "I failed in my mission the other day and am greatly mortified. I will risk my life again and, this time, I shall surely bring good news."

Cao Cao approved of him as messenger and bade him start. Jiang Gan set out in a small craft and speedily arrived in the Three Gorges, landing near the naval camp. Then he sent to inform Zhou Yu.

Hearing who it was, Zhou Yu chuckled, saying, "Success depends upon this man."

Then Zhou Yu called Lu Su and told him to call Pang Tong to come and do certain things for him.

This Pang Tong was from Xiangyang. And he had gone to the east of the river to get away from the strife. Lu Su had recommended him to Zhou Yu, but he had not yet presented himself.

When Zhou Yu sent Lu Su to ask what scheme of attack he would recommend against Cao Cao, Pang Tong had said to Lu Su, "You must use fire against him. But the river is wide and if one ship is set on fire, the others will scatter unless they are fastened together so that they must remain in one place. That is the one road to success."

Lu Su took this message to Zhou Yu, who pondered over it and then said, "The only person who can manage this is Pang Tong himself."

"Cao Cao is very wily," said Lu Su. "How can Pang Tong go?"

So Zhou Yu was sad and undecided. He could think of no method till suddenly the means presented itself in the arrival of Jiang Gan.

Zhou Yu at once sent instructions to Pang Tong how to act, and then sat himself in his tent to await his visitor Jiang Gan.

But the visitor became ill at ease and suspicious when he saw that his old student friend did not come to welcome him, and he took the precaution of sending his boat into a retired spot to be made fast before he went to the general's tent.

When Zhou Yu saw Jiang Gan, Zhou Yu put on an angry face and said, "My friend, why did you treat me so badly?"

Jiang Gan laughed and said, "I remembered the old days when we were as brothers, and I came expressly to pour out my heart to you. Why do you say I treated you badly?"

"You came to persuade me to betray my master, which I would never do unless the sea dried up and the rocks perished. Remembering the old times, I filled you with wine and kept you to sleep with me. And you, you plundered my private letters and stole away with never a word of farewell. You betrayed me to Cao Cao and caused the death of my two friends on the other side and so caused all my plans to miscarry. Now what have you come for? Certainly, it is not out of kindness to me. I would cut you in two, but I still care for our old friendship. I would send you back again, but within a day or two I shall attack that rebel. If I let you stay in my camp, my plans will leak out. So I am going to tell my attendants to conduct you to a certain retired hut in the Western Hills, and keep you there till I shall have won the victory. Then I will send you back again."

Jiang Gan tried to say something, but Zhou Yu would not listen. He turned his back and went into the recesses of his tent. The attendants led the visitor off, set him on a horse, and took him away over the hills to the small hut, leaving two soldiers to look after him.

When Jiang Gan found himself in the lonely hut, he was very depressed and had no desire to eat or sleep. But one night, when the stars were very brilliant, he strolled out to enjoy them. Presently he came to the rear of his lonely habitation and heard, near by, someone crooning over a book. Approaching with stealthy steps, he saw a tiny cabin half hidden in a cliff whence a slender beam or two of light stole out between the rafters. He went nearer and peeping in, saw a man reading by the light of a lamp near which hung a sword. And the book was Sun Zi's classic "The Art of War."

"This is no common person," thought Jiang Gan, and so he knocked at the door.

The door was opened by the reader, who bade him welcome with cultivated and refined ceremony. Jiang Gan inquired his name.

The host replied, "I am Pang Tong."

"Then you are surely the Master known as Young Phoenix, are you not?"

"Yes, I am he."

"How often have I heard you talked about! You are famous. But why are you hidden away in this spot?"

"That fellow Zhou Yu is too conceited to allow that anyone else has any talent, and so I live here quietly. But who are you, Sir?"

"I am Jiang Gan."

Then Pang Tong made him welcome and led him in, and the two sat down to talk.

"With your gifts, you would succeed anywhere," said Jiang Gan. "If you would enter Cao Cao's service, I would recommend you to him."

"I have long desired to get away from here. And if you, Sir, will present me, there is no time like the present. If Zhou Yu heard of my wish, he would kill me, I am sure."

So without more ado, they made their way down the hill to the water's edge to seek the boat in which Jiang Gan had come. They embarked and, rowing swiftly, they soon reached the northern shore. At the central camp, Jiang Gan landed and went to seek Cao Cao to whom he related the story of the discovery of his new acquaintance.

When Cao Cao heard that the newcomer was Master Young Phoenix, Cao Cao went to meet him personally, made him very welcome, and soon they sat down to talk on friendly terms.

Cao Cao said, "And so Zhou Yu in his youth is conceited and annoys his officers and rejects all their advice: I know that. But your fame has been long known to me, and now that you have been gracious enough to turn my way, I pray you not to be thrifty of your advice."

"I, too, know well that you are a model of military strategy," said Pang Tong, "but I should like to have one look at your disposition."

So horses were brought, and the two rode out to the lines, host and visitor on equal terms, side by side. They ascended a hill whence they had a wide view of the land base.

After looking all round Pang Tong remarked, "Wu Qi the Great General, came to life again, could not do better, nor Sun Zi the Famed Strategist if he reappeared! All accords with the precepts. The camp is beside the hills and is flanked by a forest. The front and rear are within sight of each other. Gates of egress and ingress are provided, and the roads of advance and retirement are bent and broken."

"Master, I entreat you not to overpraise me, but to advise me where I can make further improvements," said Cao Cao.

Then the two men rode down to the naval camp, where twenty four gates were arranged facing south. The cruisers and the battleships were all lined up so as to protect the lighter crafts which lay inside. There were channels to pass to and fro and fixed anchorages and stations.

Pang Tong surveying all this smiled, saying, "Sir Prime Minister, if this is your method of warfare, you enjoy no empty reputation."

Then pointing to the southern shore, he went on, "Zhou Yu! Zhou Yu! You are finished. You will have to die."

Cao Cao was mightily pleased. They rode back to the chief tent and wine was brought. They discussed military matters, and Pang Tong held forth at length. Remarks and comments flowed freely between the two, and Cao Cao formed an exalted opinion of his new adherent's abilities and treated him with the greatest honor.

By and bye the guest seemed to have succumbed to the influence of many cups and said, "Have you any capable medical people in your army?"

"What are they for, Master?" said Cao Cao.

"There is a lot of illness among the marines, and you ought to find some remedy."

The fact was that at this time Cao Cao's men were suffering from the climate. Many were vomiting and not a few had died. It was a source of great anxiety to him, and when the newcomer suddenly mentioned it, of course he had to ask advice.

Pang Tong said, "Your marine force is excellent, but there is just one defect. It is not quite perfect."

Cao Cao pressed him to say where the imperfection lay.

"I have a plan to overcome the ailment of the soldiers so that no one shall be sick and all fit for service."

"What is this excellent scheme?" said Cao Cao.

"The river is wide, and the tides ebb and flow. The winds and waves are never at rest. Your troops from the north are unused to ships, and the motion makes them ill. If your ships, large and small, were classed and divided into thirties, or fifties, and joined up stem to stem by iron chains and boards spread across them, to say nothing of soldiers being able to pass from one to the next, even horses could move about on them. If this were done, then there would be no fear of the wind and the waves and the rising and falling tides."

Coming down from his seat, Cao Cao thanked his guest, saying, "I could never defeat the land of the south without this scheme of yours."

"That is only my idea," said Pang Tong. "It is for you to decide about it."

Orders were then issued to call up all the blacksmiths and set them to work, night and day, forging iron chains and great bolts to lock together the ships. And the soldiers rejoiced when they heard of the plan.

In the Red Cliffs' fight they used the flame,  
The weapon here will be the same.  
By Pang Tong's advice the ships were chained,  
Else Zhou Yu had not that battle gained.

Pang Tong further told Cao Cao, saying, "I know many bold people on the other side who hate Zhou Yu. If I may use my little tongue in your service, I can induce them to come over to you. If Zhou Yu be left alone, you can certainly take him captive. And Liu Bei is of no account."

"Certainly if you could render me so great a service, I would memorialize the Throne and obtain for you one of the highest offices," said Cao Cao.

"I am not doing this for the sake of wealth or honors, but from a desire to succor humankind. If you cross the river, I pray you be merciful."

"I am Heaven's means of doing right and could not bear to slay the people."

Pang Tong thanked him and begged for a document that would protect his own family.

Cao Cao asked, "Where do they live?"

"All are near the river bank."

And Cao Cao ordered a protection declaration to be prepared. Having sealed it, he gave it to Pang Tong.

Pang Tong said, "You should attack as soon as I have gone, but do not let Zhou Yu doubt anything."

Cao Cao promised secrecy, and the wily traitor took his leave. Just as he was about to embark, he met a man in a Daoist robe, with a bamboo comb in his hair, who stopped him.

The man said, "You are very bold. Huang Gai is planning to use the 'personal injury ruse', and Kan Ze has presented the letter of pretended desertion. You have proffered the fatal scheme of chaining the ships together lest the flames may not completely destroy them. This sort of mischievous work may have been enough to deceive Cao Cao, but I saw it all."

Pang Tong became helpless with fear—his viscera flown away, his spirit scattered.

By guileful means one may succeed,  
The victims too find friends in need.

The next chapter will tell who the stranger was.

## Chapter 48

### *Banquet On The Great River, Cao Cao Sings A Song; Battle On Water, Northerners Fight With Chained Ships.*

In the last chapter Pang Tong was brought up with a sudden shock when someone seized him and said of his scheme. Upon turning to look at the man, Pang Tong saw it was Xu Shu, an old friend, and his heart revived.

Looking around and seeing no one near, Pang Tong said, "It would be a pity if you upset my plan. The fate of the people of all the eighty-one southern counties is in your hands."

Xu Shu smiled, saying, "And what of the fate of these eight hundred thirty thousand soldiers and horse of the north?"

"Do you intend to wreck my scheme, Xu Shu?"

"I have never forgotten the kindness of Uncle Liu Bei, nor my oath to avenge the death of my mother at Cao Cao's hands. I have said I would never think out a plan for him. So am I likely to wreck yours now, brother? But I have followed Cao Cao's army thus far; and after they shall have been defeated, good and bad will suffer alike and how can I escape? Tell me how I can secure safety, and I sew up my lips and go away."

Pang Tong smiled, "If you are as high-minded as that, there is no great difficulty."

"Still I wish you would instruct me."

So Pang Tong whispered something in his ear, which seemed to please Xu Shu greatly, for he thanked him most cordially and took his leave. Then Pang Tong betook himself to his boat and left for the southern shore.

His friend gone, Xu Shu mischievously spread certain rumors in the camp, and next day were to be seen everywhere soldiers in small groups, some talking, others listening, heads together and ears stretched out, till the camps seemed to buzz.

Some of the officers went to Cao Cao and told him, saying, "A rumor is running around the camps that Han Sui and Ma Teng are marching from Xiliang to attack the capital."

This troubled Cao Cao, who called together his advisers to council.

Said he, "The only anxiety I have felt in this expedition was about the possible doings of Han Sui and Ma Teng. Now there is a rumor running among the soldiers, and though I know not whether it be true or false, it is necessary to be on one's guard."

At this point Xu Shu said, "You have been kind enough to give me an office, Sir, and I have really done nothing in return. If I may have three thousand troops, I will march at once to San Pass and guard this entrance. If there be any pressing matter, I will report at once."

"If you would do this, I should be quite at my ease. There are already troops beyond the Pass, who will be under your command, and now I will give you three thousand of horse and foot, and Zang Ba shall lead the van and march quickly."

Xu Shu took leave of the Prime Minister and left in company with Zang Ba. This was Pang Tong's scheme to secure the safety of Xu Shu.

A poem says:

Cao Cao marched south, but at his back  
There rode the fear of rear attack.  
Pang Tong's good counsel Xu Shu took,  
And thus the fish escaped the hook.

Cao Cao's anxiety diminished after he had thus sent away Xu Shu. Then he rode round all the camps, first the land forces and then the naval. He boarded one of the large ships and thereon set up his standard. The naval camps were arranged along two lines, and every ship carried a thousand bows and crossbows.

While Cao Cao remained with the fleet, it occurred the full moon of the eleventh month of the thirteenth year of Rebuilt Tranquillity (AD 208). The sky was clear; there was no wind; and the river lay unruffled. He prepared a great banquet, with music, and thereto invited all his leaders. As evening drew on, the moon rose over the eastern hills in its immaculate beauty, and beneath it lay the broad belt of the river like a band of pure silk. It was a great assembly, and all the guests were clad in gorgeous silks and embroidered robes, and the arms of the fighting soldiers glittered in the moonlight. The officers, civil and military, were seated in their proper order of precedence.

The setting, too, was exquisite. The Southern Hills were outlined as in a picture; the boundaries of Chaisang lay in the east; the river showed west as far as Xiakou; on the south lay the Fan Mountains, on the north was the Black Forest. The view stretched wide on every side.

Cao Cao's heart was jubilant, and he harangued the assembly, saying, "My one aim since I enlisted my first small band of volunteers has been the removal of evil from the state, and I have sworn to cleanse the country and restore tranquillity. Now there is only left this land of the south to withstand me. I am at the head of a hundred legions. I depend upon you, gentlemen, and have no doubt of my final success. After I have subdued the South Land, there will be no trouble in all the country. Then we shall enjoy wealth and honor and revel in peace."

They rose in a body and expressed their appreciation, saying, "We trust that you may soon report complete victory, and we shall all repose in the shade of your good fortune."

In his elation, Cao Cao bade the servants bring more wine and they drank till late at night.

Warmed and mellowed, the host pointed to the south bank, saying, "Zhou Yu and Lu Su know not the appointed time. Heaven is aiding me bringing upon them the misfortune of the desertion of their most trusted friends."

"O Prime Minister, say nothing of these things lest they become known to the enemy," said Xun You.

But the Prime Minister only laughed.

"You are all my trusty friends," said he, "both officers and humble attendants. Why should I refrain?"

Pointing to Xiakou, he continued, "You do not reckon for much with your puny force, Liu Bei and Zhuge Liang. How foolish of you to attempt to shake the Taishan Mountains!"

Then turning to his officers, he said, "I am now fifty-four; and if I get the South Land, I shall have the where-withal to rejoice. In the days of long ago, the Patriarch Duke Qiao in the south and I were great friends, and we came to an agreement on certain matters, for I knew his two daughters—Elder Qiao and Younger Qiao—were lovely beyond words. Then by some means, they became wives to Sun Ce and Zhou Yu. But now my palace of rest is built on the River Zhang, and victory over the South Land will mean that I marry these two fair women. I will put them in the Bronze Bird Tower, and they shall rejoice my declining years. My desires will then be completely attained."

He smiled at the anticipation.

Du Mu, a famous poet of the Tang Dynasty, in one poem says:

A broken halberd buried in the sand,  
With deep rust eaten,

Loud tells of ancient battles on the strand,  
When Cao Cao was beaten.  
Had eastern winds Zhou Yu's plan refused to aid  
And fan the blaze,  
The two fair Qiaos, in the Bronze Bird's shade,  
Would have been locked at spring age.

But suddenly amid the merriment was heard the hoarse cry of a raven flying toward the south.  
"Why does the raven thus cry in the night?" said Cao Cao to those about him.

"The moon is so bright that it thinks it is day," said they, "and so it leaves its tree."

Cao Cao laughed. By this time he was quite intoxicated. He set up his spear in the prow of the ship and poured a libation into the river and then drank three brimming goblets.

As he lowered the spear, he said, "This is the spear that broke up the Yellow Scarves, captured Lu Bu, destroyed Yuan Shao, and subdued Yuan Shu, whose armies are now mine. In the north it reached to Liaodong, and it stretched out over the whole south. It has never failed in its task. The present scene moves me to the depths, and I will sing a song in which you shall accompany me."

And so he sang:

"When goblets are brimming then sang is near birth,  
But life is full short and has few days of mirth,  
Life goes as the dew drops fly swiftly away,  
Beneath the glance of the glowing hot ruler of day.  
Human's life may be spent in the noblest enterprise,  
But sorrowful thoughts in his heart oft arise.  
Let us wash clean away the sad thoughts that intrude,  
With bumpers of wine such as Du Kang once brewed.  
Gone is my day of youthful fire  
And still ungained is my desire.  
The deer feed on the level plain  
And joyful call, then feed again.  
My noble guests are gathered round.  
The air is trilled with joyful sound.  
Bright my future lies before me.  
As the moonlight on this plain;  
But I strive in vain to reach it.  
When shall I my wish attain?  
None can answer; and so sadness  
Grips my inmost heart again.  
Far north and south,  
Wide east and west,  
We safety seek;  
Vain is the quest.  
Human's heart oft yearns  
For converse sweet.  
And my heart burns  
When old friends greet.  
The stars are paled by the full moon's light,  
The raven wings his southward flight.  
And thrice he circles round a tree,  
No place thereon to rest finds he.  
They weary not the mountains of great height,  
The waters deep of depth do not complain,  
Duke Zhou no leisure found by day or night  
Stern toil is his who would the empire gain."

The song made they sang it with him and were all exceedingly merry, save one guest who suddenly said,  
"When the great army is on the point of battle and lives are about to be risked, why do you, O Prime Minister, speak

such ill words?"

Cao Cao turned quickly toward the speaker, who was Liu Fu, Imperial Protector of Yangzhou. This Liu Fu sprang from Hefei. When first appointed to his post, he had gathered in the terrified and frightened people and restored order. He had founded schools and encouraged the people to till the land. He had long served under Cao Cao and rendered valuable service.

When Liu Fu spoke, Cao Cao dropped his spear to the level and said, "What ill-omened words did I use?"

"You spoke of the moon paling the stars and the raven flying southward without finding a resting place. These are ill-omened words."

"How dare you try to belittle my endeavor?" cried Cao Cao, very wrathful. And with that he smote Liu Fu with his spear and slew him.

The assembly broke up, and the guests dispersed in fear and confusion. Next day, when Cao Cao had recovered from his drunken bout, he was very grieved at what he had done. When the murdered man's son, Liu Xi, came to crave the body of his father for burial, Cao Cao wept and expressed his sorrow.

"I am guilty of your father's death. I was drunk yesterday. I regret the deed exceedingly. Your father shall be interred with the honors of a minister of the highest rank."

Cao Cao sent an escort of soldiers to take the body to the homeland for burial.

A few days after, the two leaders of the naval force, Mao Jie and Yu Jin, came to say the ships were all connected together by chains as had been ordered, and all was now ready. They asked for the command to start.

Thereupon the leaders of both land and naval forces were assembled on board a large ship in the center of the squadron to receive orders. The various armies and squadrons were distinguished by different flags: Mao Jie and Yu Jin led the central naval squadron with yellow flag; Zhang He, the leading squadron, red flag; Lu Qian, the rear squadron, black flag; Wen Ping, the left squadron, blue flag; and Li Tong, the right squadron, white flag. On shore Xu Huang commanded the horsemen with red flag; Li Dian, the vanguard, black flag; Yue Jing, the left wing, blue flag; and Xiahou Yuan, the right wing, white flag. Xiahou Dun and Cao Hong were in reserve, and the general staff was under the leadership of Xu Chu and Zhang Liao. The other leaders were ordered to remain in camps, but ready for action.

All being ready, the squadron drums beat the roll thrice, and the ships sailed out under a strong northwest wind on a trial cruise. When they got among the waves, they were found to be as steady and immovable as the dry land itself. The northern soldiers showed their delight at the absence of motion by capering and flourishing their weapons. The ships moved on, the squadrons keeping quite distinct. Fifty light cruisers sailed to and fro keeping order and urging progress.

Cao Cao watched his navy from the Command Terrace and was delighted with their evolutions and maneuvers. Surely this meant complete victory. He ordered the recall and the squadrons returned in perfect order to their base.

Then Cao Cao went to his tent and summoned his advisers.

He said, "If Heaven had not been on my side, should I have got this excellent plan from the Young Phoenix? Now that the ships are attached firmly to each other, one may traverse the river as easily as walking on firm earth."

"The ships are firmly attached to each other," said Cheng Yu, "but you should be prepared for an attack by fire so that they can scatter to avoid it."

Cao Cao laughed.

"You look a long way ahead," said he, "but you see what cannot happen."

"Cheng Yu speaks much to the point, my lord," said Xun You. "Why do you laugh at him?"

Cao Cao said, "Anyone using fire depends upon the wind. This is now winter and only west winds blow. You will get neither east nor south winds. I am on the northwest, and the enemy is on the southeast bank. If they use fire, they will destroy themselves. I have nothing to fear. If it was the tenth moon, or early spring, I would provide against fire."

"The Prime Minister is indeed wise," said the others in chorus. "None can equal him."

"With northern troops unused to shipboard, I could never have crossed the river but for this chaining plan," said Cao Cao.

Then he saw two of the secondary leaders stand up, and they said, "We are from the north, but we are also sailors. Pray give us a small squadron, and we will seize some of the enemy's flags and drums for you that we may prove ourselves adepts on the water."

The speakers were two men who had served under Yuan Shao, named Jiao Chu and Zhang Neng.

"I do not think naval work would suit you two, born and brought up in the north," said Cao Cao. "The southern soldiers are thoroughly accustomed to ships. You should not regard your lives as a child's plaything."

They cried, "If we fail, treat us according to army laws!"

"The fighting ships are all chained together, there are only small, twenty-men boats free. They are unsuitable for fighting."

"If we took large ships, where would be the wonderful in what we will do? No! Give us a score of the small ships, and we will take half each and go straight to the enemy's naval port. We will just seize a flag, slay a leader, and come home."

"I will let you have the twenty ships and five hundred of good, vigorous marines with long spears and stiff crossbows. Early tomorrow the main fleet shall make a demonstration on the river, and I will also tell Wen Ping to support you with thirty ships."

The two men retired greatly elated.

Next morning, very early, food was prepared, and at the fifth watch all was ready for a start. Then from the naval camp rolled out the drums and the gongs clanged, as the ships moved out and took up their positions, the various flags fluttering in the morning breeze. And the two intrepid leaders with their squadron of small scouting boats went down the lines and out into the stream.

Now a few days before the sound of Cao Cao's drums had been heard on the southern bank, Zhou Yu had watched the maneuvers of the northern fleet on the open river from the top of a hill till the fleet had gone in again. So when the sound of drums was again heard, all the southern army went up the hills to watch the northern fleet. All they saw was a squadron of small ships bounding over the waves.

As the northern fleet came nearer, the news was taken to Zhou Yu who called for volunteers to go out against them. Han Dang and Zhou Tai offered themselves. They were accepted and orders were issued to the camps to remain ready for action but not to move till told.

Han Dang and Zhou Tai sailed out each with a small squadron of five ships in line.

The two braggarts from the north, Jiao Chu and Zhang Neng, really only trusted to their boldness and luck. Their ships came down under the powerful strokes of the oars. As they neared, the two leaders put on their heart-protectors, gripped their spears, and each took his station in the prow of the leading ship of his division. Jiao Chu's ship led and as soon as he came near enough, his troops began to shoot at Han Dang, who fended off the arrows with his buckler. Jiao Chu twirled his long spear as he engaged his opponent. But, at the first thrust, he was killed.

His comrade Zhang Neng with the other ships was coming up with great shouts, when Zhou Tai sailed up at an angle, and these two squadrons began shooting arrows at each other in clouds. Zhou Tai fended off the arrows with his shield and stood gripping his sword firmly till his ships came within a few spans of the enemy's ships, when he leaped across and cut down Zhang Neng. Zhang Neng's dead body fell into the water. Then the battle became confused, and the attacking ships rowed hard to get away. The southerners pursued but soon came in sight of Wen Ping's supporting fleet. Once more the ships engaged and the forces fought with each other.

Zhou Yu with his officers stood on the summit of a mountain and watched his own and the enemy ships out on the river. The flags and the ensigns were all in perfect order. Then he saw Wen Ping and his own fleets engaged in battle, and soon it was evident that the former was not a match for his own sailors. Wen Ping turned about to retire, Han Dang and Zhou Tai pursued. Zhou Yu fearing lest his sailors should go too far, then hoisted the white flag of recall.

To his officers Zhou Yu said, "The masts of the northern ships stand thick as reeds. Cao Cao himself is full of wiles. How can we destroy him?"

No one replied, for just then the great yellow flag that flapped in the breeze in the middle of Cao Cao's fleet suddenly fell over into the river.

Zhou Yu laughed.

"That is a bad omen," said he.

Then an extra violent blast of wind came by, and the waves rose high and beat upon the bank. A corner of his own flag flicked Zhou Yu on the cheek, and suddenly a thought flashed through his mind. Zhou Yu uttered a loud cry, staggered, and fell backward. They picked him up. There was blood upon his lips, and he was unconscious. Presently, however, he revived.

And once he laughed, then gave a cry,  
This is hard to ensure a victory.

Zhou Yu's fate will appear as the story unfolds.

## Chapter 49

On Seven-Star Altar, Zhuge Liang Sacrifices To The Winds; At Three Gorges, Zhou Yu Liberates The Fire.

In the last chapter Zhou Yu was seized with sudden illness as he watched the fleets of his enemy. He was

borne to his tent, and his officers came in multitudes to inquire after him.

They looked at each other, saying, "What a pity our general should be taken ill, when Cao Cao's legions threaten so terribly! What would happen if Cao Cao attacked?"

Messengers with the evil tidings were sent to Sun Quan, while the physicians did their best for the invalid. Lu Su was particularly sad at the illness of his patron and went to see Zhuge Liang to talk it over.

"What do you make of it?" said Zhuge Liang.

"Good luck for Cao Cao; bad for us," said Lu Su.

"I could cure him," said Zhuge Liang laughing.

"If you could, Wu would be very fortunate," said Lu Su.

Lu Su prayed Zhuge Liang to go to see the sick man. They went, and Lu Su entered first. Zhou Yu lay in bed, his head covered by a quilt.

"How are you, General?" said Lu Su.

"My heart pains me. Every now and again I feel faint and dizzy."

"Have you taken any remedies?"

"My gorge rises at the thought. I could not."

"I saw Zhuge Liang just now, and he says he could heal you. He is just outside, and I will call him if you like."

"Ask him to come in."

Zhou Yu bade his servants help him to a sitting position, and Zhuge Liang entered.

"I have not seen you for days," said Zhuge Liang. "How could I guess that you were unwell?"

"How can anyone feel secure? We are constantly the playthings of luck, good or bad."

"Yes. Heaven's winds and clouds are not to be measured. No one can reckon their comings and goings, can they?"

Zhou Yu turned pale and a low groan escaped him, while his visitor went on, "You feel depressed, do you not? As though troubles were piling up in your heart?"

"That is exactly how I feel," said Zhou Yu.

"You need cooling medicine to dissipate this sense of oppression."

"I have taken a cooling draught, but it has done no good."

"You must get the humors into good order before the drugs will have any effect."

Zhou Yu began to think Zhuge Liang knew what was really the matter and resolved to test him.

"What should be taken to produce a favorable temper?" said Zhou Yu.

"I know one means of producing a favorable temper," replied Zhuge Liang.

"I wish you would tell me."

Zhuge Liang got out writing materials, sent away the servants, and then wrote a few words:

"To defeat Cao Cao  
You have to use fire;  
All are in your wish,  
But wind from the east."

This he gave to the sick general, saying, "That is the origin of your illness."

Zhou Yu read the words with great surprise, and it confirmed his secret opinion that Zhuge Liang really was rather more than human. He decided that the only course was to be open and tell him all.

So he said, "Since you know the cause of the disease, what do you recommend as treatment? The need of a remedy is very urgent."

"I have no great talent," said Zhuge Liang, "but I have had to do with humans of no ordinary gifts from whom I have received certain magical books called 'Concealing Method'. I can call the winds and summon the rains. Since you need a southeast breeze, General, you must build an altar on the Southern Hills, the Altar of the Seven Stars. It must be nine spans high, with three steps, surrounded by a guard of one hundred and twenty humans bearing flags. On this altar I will work a spell to procure a strong southeast gale for three days and three nights. Do you approve?"

"Never mind three whole days," said Zhou Yu. "One day of strong wind will serve my purpose. But it must be done at once and without delay."

"I will sacrifice for a wind for three days from the twentieth day of the moon. Will that suit you?"

Zhou Yu was delighted and hastily rose from his couch to give the necessary orders. He commanded that five hundred men should be sent to the mountains to build the altar, and he told off the guard of one hundred and twenty to bear the flags and be at the orders of Zhuge Liang.

Zhuge Liang took his leave, went forth, and rode off with Lu Su to the mountains where they measured out the ground. He bade the soldiers build the altar of red earth from the southeast quarter. It was two hundred and forty

spans in circuit, square in shape, and of three tiers, each of three spans, in all nine spans high.

On the lowest tier he placed the flags of the twenty-eight "houses" of the heavens and four constellations: On the east seven, with blue flags; on the north seven, with black flags; on the west seven, with white flags; and on the south seven, with red flags.

Around the second tier he placed sixty-four yellow flags, corresponding to the number of the diagrams of the Book of Divination, in eight groups of eight.

Four men were stationed on the highest platform, each wearing a Daoist headdress and a black silk robe embroidered with the phoenix and confined with wide sashes. They wore scarlet boots and square-cut skirts. On the left front stood a man supporting a tall pole bearing at its top a plume of light feathers to show by their least movement the wind's first breathing. On the right front was a man holding a tall pole whereon was a flag with the symbol of the seven stars to show the direction and force of the wind. On the left rear stood a man with a sword, and on the right rear a man with a censer.

Below the altar were forty-four men holding flags, umbrellas, spears, lances, yellow banners, white axes, red banderolles, and black ensigns. And these were spaced about the altar.

On the appointed day Zhuge Liang, having chosen a propitious moment, bathed his body and purified himself. Then he robed himself as a Daoist, loosened his locks, and approached the altar.

He bade Lu Su retire, saying, "Return to the camp and assist the General in setting out his forces. Should my prayers avail not, do not wonder."

So Lu Su left him. Then Zhuge Liang commanded the guards on no account to absent themselves, to maintain strict silence, and to be reverent. Death would be the penalty of disobedience.

Next, with solemn steps he ascended the altar, faced the proper quarter, lighted the incense, and sprinkled the water in the basins. This done he gazed into the heavens and prayed silently. The prayer ended he descended and returned to his tent. After a brief rest he allowed the soldiers by turns to go away to eat.

Thrice that day he ascended the altar and thrice descended, but there was no sign of the wind.

During that time, Zhou Yu, with Cheng Pu and Lu Su and other military officials on duty, sat waiting in the tent till the wished-for wind should blow and the attack could be launched. Messengers were also sent to Sun Quan to prepare to support the forward movement.

Huang Gai had his fire ships ready, twenty of them. The fore parts of the ships were thickly studded with large nails, and they were loaded with dry reeds, wood soaked in fish oil, and covered with sulfur, saltpeter, and other inflammables. The ships were covered in with black oiled cloth. In the prow of each was a black dragon flag with indentations. A fighting ship was attached to the stern of each to propel it forward. All were ready and awaited orders to move.

Meanwhile Cao Cao's two spies, Cai He and Cai Zhong, were being guarded carefully in an outer camp far from the river bank and daily entertained with feasting. They were not allowed to know of the preparations. The watch was so close that not a trickle of information reached the prisoners.

Presently, while Zhou Yu was anxiously awaiting in his tent for the desired wind, a messenger came to say that Sun Quan had anchored at a place thirty miles from the camp, where he awaited news from the Commander-in-Chief.

Lu Su was sent to warn all the various commanders to be ready, the ships and their weapons, sails and oars, all for instant use, and to impress upon them the penalties of being caught unprepared. The soldiers were indeed ready for the fight and yearning for the fray.

But the sky remained obstinately clear, and as night drew nigh no breath of air stirred.

"We have been cajoled," said Zhou Yu. "Indeed what possibility is there of a southeast wind in midwinter?"

"Zhuge Liang would not use vain and deceitful words," replied Lu Su.

Towards the third watch, the sound of a movement arose in the air. Soon the flags fluttered out. And when the Commander-in-Chief went out to make sure, he saw they were flowing toward the northwest. In a very short time the southeast wind was in full force.

Zhou Yu was, however, frightened at the power of the man whose help he had invoked.

He said, "Really the man has power over the heavens and authority over the earth. His methods are incalculable, beyond the ken of god or devil. He cannot be allowed to live to be a danger to our land of the south. We must slay him soon to fend off later evils."

So Zhou Yu resolved to commit a crime to remove his dangerous rival.

He called two of the generals of his guard, Ding Feng and Xu Sheng, and said to them, "Each of you take a party of one hundred troops, one along the river, the other along the road, to the altar on the mountains. As soon as you get there, without asking questions or giving reasons, you are to seize and behead Zhuge Liang. Rich reward will be given when you bring his head back."

Xu Sheng and Ding Feng went off on their errand, the former leading dagger and ax-men going as fast as oars

could propel them along the river, the latter at the head of archers and bowmen on horseback. The southeast wind buffeted them as they went on their way.

High was raised the Seven Stars Altar,  
On it prayed the Sleeping Dragon  
For an eastern wind, and straightway  
Blew the wind. Had not the wizard  
Exercised his mighty magic  
Nought had Zhou Yu's skill availed.

Ding Feng first arrived. He saw the guards with their flags, dropped off his steed, and marched to the altar, sword in hand. But he found no Zhuge Liang.

When he asked the guards, they told him, saying, "He has just gone down."

Ding Feng ran down the hill to search. There he met his fellow Xu Sheng, and they joined forces.

Presently a simple soldier told them, saying, "The evening before a small, fast boat anchored there near a sand spit, and Zhuge Liang was seen to go on board. Then the boat went up river."

So Xu Sheng and Ding Feng divided their party into two, one to go by water, the other by land.

Xu Sheng bade his boatmen put on all sail and take every advantage of the wind. Before very long he saw the fugitive's boat ahead, and when near enough, stood in the prow of his own and shouted, "Do not flee, O Instructor of the Army! The General requests your presence."

Zhuge Liang, who was seated in the stern of his boat, just laughed aloud, saying, "Return and tell the General to make good use of his soldiers. Tell him I am going up river for a spell and will see him again another day."

"Pray wait a little while," cried Xu Sheng. "I have something most important to tell you!"

"I knew all about it, that Zhou Yu would not let me go and that he wanted to kill me. That is why Zhao Zilong was waiting for me. You had better not approach nearer."

Seeing the other ship had no sail, Xu Sheng thought he would assuredly come up with it and so maintained the pursuit.

Then when he got too close, Zhao Zilong fitted an arrow to the bowstring and, standing up in the stern of his boat, cried, "You know who I am, and I came expressly to escort the Directing Instructor. Why are you pursuing him? One arrow would kill you, only that would cause a breach of the peace between two houses. I will shoot and just give you a specimen of my skill."

With that he shot, and the arrow whizzed overhead cutting the rope that held up the sail. Down came the sail trailing in the water and the boat swung round. Then Zhao Zilong's boat hoisted its sail, and the fair wind speedily carried it out of sight.

On the bank stood Ding Feng. He bade his comrade come to the shore and said, "Zhuge Liang is too clever for anyone; and Zhao Zilong is bravest of the brave. You remember what he did at Dangyang, at the Long Slope Bridge. All we can do is to return and report."

So they returned to camp and told their master about the preparations that Zhuge Liang had made to ensure safety. Zhou Yu was indeed puzzled at the depth of his rival's insight.

"I shall have no peace day or night while he lives," said Zhou Yu.

"At least wait till Cao Cao is done with," said Lu Su.

And Zhou Yu knew Lu Su spoke wisely.

Having summoned the leaders to receive orders, first Zhou Yu gave orders to Gan Ning: "Take with you the false deserter Cai Zhong and his soldiers, and go along the south bank, showing the flags of Cao Cao, till you reach the Black Forest just opposite the enemy's main store of grain and forage. Then you are to penetrate as deeply as possible into the enemy's lines and light a torch as a signal. Cai He is to be kept in camp for another purpose."

The next order was: "Taishi Ci is to lead two thousand troops as quickly as possible to Huangzhou and cut the enemy's communications with Hefei. When near the enemy, he is to give a signal. If he sees a red flag, he will know that our lord, Sun Quan, is at hand with reinforcements."

Gan Ning and Taishi Ci had the farthest to go and started first.

Then Lu Meng was sent into the Black Forest with three thousand troops as a support to Gan Ning who was ordered to set fire to Cao Cao's depot. A fourth party of three thousand troops was led by Ling Tong to the borders of Yiling and attack as soon as the signal from the forest was seen. A fifth party of three thousand under Dong Xi went to Hanyang to fall upon the enemy along the River Han. Their signal was a white flag; and a sixth division of three thousand commanded by Pan Zhang would support them.

When these six parties had gone off. Huang Gai got ready his fire ships and sent a soldier with a note to tell Cao Cao that he was coming over that evening. Four naval squadrons were told off to support Huang Gai.

The four squadrons, each of three hundred ships, were placed under four commanders: Han Dang, Zhou Tai, Jiang Qin, and Chen Wu. Twenty fire ships preceded each fleet. Zhou Yu and Cheng Pu went on board one of the large ships to direct the battle. Their guards were Ding Feng and Xu Sheng. Lu Su, Kan Ze, and the advisers were left to guard the camp. Cheng Pu was greatly impressed with Zhou Yu's ordering of the grand attack.

Then came a messenger bearing a mandate from Sun Quan making Lu Xun Leader of the Van. He was ordered to go to Qichun. Sun Quan himself would support Lu Xun. Zhou Yu also sent two command units, one to the Western Hills to make fire signals, and the other to the Southern Hills to hoist flags.

So all being prepared they waited for dusk.

Liu Bei was at Xiakou anxiously awaiting the return of his adviser. Then appeared a fleet, led by Liu Qi, who had come to find out how matters were progressing.

Liu Bei sent to call him to the battle tower and said, "The southeast wind had begun to blow, and that Zhao Zilong had gone to meet Zhuge Liang."

Not long after a single sail was seen coming up before the wind, and Liu Bei knew it was Zhuge Liang, the Directing Instructor of the Army.

So Liu Bei and Liu Qi went down to meet the boat. Soon the vessel reached the shore, and Zhuge Liang and Zhao Zilong disembarked.

Liu Bei was very glad, and after they had inquired after each other's well-being, Zhuge Liang said, "There is no time to tell of any other things now. Are the soldiers and ships ready?"

"They have long been ready," replied Liu Bei. "They only await you to direct how they are to be used."

The three then went to the tent and took their seats.

Zhuge Liang at once began to issue orders: "Zhao Zilong, with three thousand troops is to cross the river and go to the Black Forest by the minor road. He will choose a dense jungle and prepare an ambush. Tonight, after the fourth watch, Cao Cao will hurry along that way. When half his troops have passed, the jungle is to be fired. Cao Cao will not be wholly destroyed but many will perish."

"There are two roads," said Zhao Zilong. "One leads to the southern regions and the other to Jingzhou. I do not know by which he will come."

"The south road is too dangerous. Cao Cao will certainly pass along the Jingzhou road, so that he may get away to Xuchang."

Then Zhao Zilong went away.

Next Zhuge Liang said to Zhang Fei, "You will take three thousand troops over the river to cut the road to Yiling. You will ambush in the Hulu Valley. Cao Cao, not daring to go to South Yiling, will go to North Yiling. Tomorrow, after the rain, he will halt to refresh his troops. As soon as the smoke is seen to rise from their cooking fires, you will fire the hill side. You will not capture Cao Cao, but you will render excellent service."

So Zhang Fei left. Next was called Mi Zhu, Mi Fang, and Liu Feng. They were to take command of three squadrons and go along the river to collect beaten soldiers and their weapons.

The three left. Then Zhuge Liang said to Liu Qi, "The country around Wuchang is very important, and I wish you to take command of your own troops and station them at strategic points. Cao Cao, being defeated, will flee thither, and you will capture him. But you are not to leave the city without the best of reasons."

And Liu Qi took leave.

Then Zhuge Liang said to Liu Bei, "I wish you to remain quietly and calmly in Fankou, in a high tower, to watch Zhou Yu work out his great scheme this night."

All this time Guan Yu has been silently waiting his turn, but Zhuge Liang said no word to him.

When Guan Yu could bear this no longer, he cried, "Since I first followed my brother to battle many years ago, I have never been left behind. Now that great things are afoot, is there no work for me? What is meant by it?"

"You should not be surprised. I wanted you for service at a most important point, only that there was a something standing in the way that prevented me from sending you," said Zhuge Liang.

"What could stand in the way? I wish you would tell me."

"You see Cao Cao was once very kind to you, and you cannot help feeling grateful. Now when his soldiers have been beaten, he will have to flee along the Huarong Road. If I sent you to guard it, you would have to let him pass. So I will not send you."

"You are most considerate, Instructor. But though it is true that he treated me well, yet I slew two of his most redoubtable opponents, Yan Liang and Wen Chou, by way of repayment, beside raising a siege. If I happened upon him on this occasion, I should hardly let him go."

"But what if you did?"

"You could deal with me by military rules."

"Then put that in writing."

So Guan Yu wrote a formal undertaking and gave the document to Zhuge Liang.

"What happens if Cao Cao does not pass that way?" said Guan Yu.

"I will give you a written engagement that he will pass." Then Zhuge Liang continued, "On the hills by the Huanglong Valley, you are to raise a heap of wood and grass to make a great column of smoke and mislead Cao Cao into coming."

"If Cao Cao sees a smoke, he will suspect an ambush and will not come," said Guan Yu.

"You are very simple," said Zhuge Liang. "Do you not know more of war's ruses than that? Cao Cao is an able leader, but you can deceive him this time. When he sees the smoke, he will take it as a subterfuge and risk going that way. But do not let your kindness of heart rule your conduct."

Thus was his duty assigned Guan Yu, and he left, taking his adopted son Guan Ping, his general Zhou Cang, and five hundred swordsmen.

Said Liu Bei, "His sense of rectitude is very profound. I fear if Cao Cao should come that way, my brother will let him pass."

"I have consulted the stars lately, and the rebel Cao Cao is not fated to come to his end yet. I have purposely designed this manifestation of kindly feeling for Guan Yu to accomplish and so act handsomely."

"Indeed there are few such far-seeing humans as you are," said Liu Bei.

The two then went to Fankou whence they might watch Zhou Yu's evolutions. Sun Qian and Jian Yong were left on guard of Xiakou.

Cao Cao was in his great camp in conference with his advisers and awaiting the arrival of Huang Gai. The southeast wind was very strong that day, and Cheng Yu was insisting on the necessity for precaution.

But Cao Cao laughed, saying, "The Winter Solstice depends upon the sun and nothing else. There is sure to be a southeast wind at some one or other of its recurrences. I see nothing to wonder at."

Just then they announced the arrival of a small boat from the other shore with a letter from Huang Gai. The bearer of the letter was brought in and presented it. Cao Cao read it:

"Zhou Yu has kept such strict watch that there has been no chance of escape. But now some grain is coming down river, and I, Huang Gai, have been named as Escort Commander which will give me the opportunity I desire. I will slay one of the known generals and bring his head as an offering when I come. This evening at the third watch, if boats are seen with dragon toothed flags, they will be the grain boats."

This letter delighted Cao Cao who, with his officers, went to the naval camp and boarded a great ship to watch for the arrival of Huang Gai.

In the South Land, when evening fell, Zhou Yu sent for Cai He and bade the soldiers bind him.

The unhappy man protested, saying, "I have committed no crime!"

But Zhou Yu said, "What sort of a fellow are you, think you, to come and pretend to desert to my side? I need a small sacrifice for my flag, and your head will serve my purpose. So I am going to use it."

Cai He being at the end of his tether unable to deny the charge suddenly cried, "Two of your own side, Kan Ze and Gan Ning, are also in the plot!"

"Under my directions!" said Zhou Yu.

Cai He was exceedingly repentant and sad, but Zhou Yu bade them take Cai He to the river bank where the black standard had been set up and there, after the pouring of a libation and the burning of paper, Cai He was beheaded, his blood being a sacrifice to the flag.

This ceremony over, the ships started, and Huang Gai took his place on the third ship. He merely wore breast armor and carried a keen blade. On his flag were written four large characters Van Leader Huang Gai. With a fair wind his fleet sailed toward the Red Cliffs.

The wind was strong and the waves ran high. Cao Cao in the midst of the central squadron eagerly scanned the river which rolled down under the bright moon like a silver serpent writhing in innumerable folds. Letting the wind blow full in his face, Cao Cao laughed aloud for he was now to obtain his desire.

Then a soldier pointing to the river said, "The whole south is one mass of sails, and they are coming up on the wind."

Cao Cao went to a higher point and gazed at the sails intently, and his officers told him that the flags were black and dragon shaped, and indented, and among them there flew one very large banner on which was a name Huang Gai.

"That is my friend, the deserter!" said he joyfully. "Heaven is on my side today."

As the ships drew closer, Cheng Yu said, "Those ships are treacherous. Do not let them approach the camp."

"How know you that?" asked Cao Cao.

And Cheng Yu replied, "If they were laden with grain, they would lie deep in the water. But these are light and float easily. The southeast wind is very strong, and if they intend treachery, how can we defend ourselves?"

Cao Cao began to understand. Then he asked who would go out to stop the approaching fleet, and Wen Ping volunteered, saying, "I am well used to the waters."

Thereupon Wen Ping sprang into a small light craft and sailed out, followed by ten cruisers which came at his signal.

Standing in the prow of his ship, Wen Ping called out to those advancing toward them, "You southern ships are not to approach! Such are the orders of the Prime Minister. Stop there in mid stream!"

The soldiers all yelled to them to lower their sails. The shout had not died away when a bowstring twanged, and Wen Ping rolled down into the ship with an arrow in the left arm. Confusion reigned on his ship, and all the others hurried back to their camp.

When the ships were about a mile of distant, Huang Gai waved his sword and the leading ships broke forth into fire, which, under the force of the strong wind, soon gained strength and the ships became as fiery arrows. Soon the whole twenty dashed into the naval camp.

All Cao Cao's ships were gathered there, and as they were firmly chained together not one could escape from the others and flee. There was a roar of bombs and fireships came on from all sides at once. The face of the three rivers was speedily covered with fire which flew before the wind from one ship to another. It seemed as if the universe was filled with flame.

Cao Cao hastened toward the shore. Huang Gai, with a few troops at his back, leaped into a small boat, dashed through the fire, and sought Cao Cao. Cao Cao, seeing the imminence of the danger, was making for the land. Zhang Liao got hold of a small boat into which he helped his master; none too soon, for the ship was burning. They got Cao Cao out of the thick of the fire and dashed for the bank.

Huang Gai, seeing a handsomely robed person get into a small boat, guessed it must be Cao Cao and pursued.

He drew very near and he held his keen blade ready to strike, crying out, "You rebel! Do not flee. I am Huang Gai."

Cao Cao howled in the bitterness of his distress. Zhang Liao fitted an arrow to his bow and aimed at the pursuer, shooting at short range. The roaring of the gale and the flames kept Huang Gai from hearing the twang of the string, and he was wounded in the shoulder. He fell and rolled over into the water.

He fell in peril of water  
When flames were high;  
Ere cudgel bruises had faded,  
An arrow struck.

Huang Gai's fate will be told in the next chapter.

## Chapter 50

### *Zhuge Liang Foresees The Huarong Valley Episode; Guan Yu Lifts His Saber To Release Cao Cao.*

The last chapter closed with Huang Gai in the water wounded, Cao Cao rescued from immediate danger, and confusion rampant among the soldiers. Pressing forward to attack the naval camp, Han Dang was told by his soldiers that someone was clinging to the rudder of his boat and shouting to him by his familiar name. Han Dang listened carefully and in the voice at once he recognized that Huang Gai was calling to him for help.

"That is my friend Huang Gai!" cried he, and they quickly pulled the wounded leader out of the water.

Then they saw Huang Gai was wounded for the arrow still stuck. Han Dang bit out the shaft of the arrow but the point was deeply buried in the flesh. They hastily pulled off his wet garments and cut out the metal arrowhead with a dagger, tore up one of the flags, and bound up the wound. Then Han Dang gave Huang Gai his own fighting robe to put on and sent him off in a small boat back to camp.

Huang Gai's escape from drowning must be taken as proof of his natural affinity for, or sympathy with, water. Although it was the period of great cold and he was heavy with armor when he fell into the river, yet he escaped with life.

In this great battle at the junction of the three rivers, the Three Gorges, when fire seemed to spread wide over all the wide surface of the water, when the earth quaked with the roar of battle, when land forces closed in on both wings and four battle squadrons advanced on the front, when the ferocity of fire answered the clash of weapons and weapons were aided by fire, under the thrusts of spears and the flights of arrows, burnt by fire and drowned by water, Cao Cao lost an incalculable number of troops. And a poet wrote:

When Wei and Wu together strove  
 For the mastery,  
 In the Red Cliffs fight the tall ships  
 Vanished from the sea,  
 For there the fierce flames, leaping high.  
 Burned them utterly.  
 So Zhou Yu for his liege lord  
 Got the victory.

And another poem runs:

The hills are high, the moon shines faint.  
 The waters stretch afar;  
 I sigh to think how oft this land  
 Has suffered stress of war;  
 And I recall how southerners  
 Shrank from the northern army's might,  
 And how a favoring eastern gale  
 Helped them to win the fight.

While fire was consuming the naval base of Cao Cao, Gan Ning made Cai Zhong guide him into the inner-most recesses of Cao Cao's camp. Then Gan Ning slew Cai Zhong with one slash of his sword. After this Gan Ning set fire to the jungle; and at this signal, Lu Meng put fire to the grass in ten places near to each other. Then other fires were started, and the noise of battle was on all sides.

Cao Cao and Zhang Liao, with a small party of horsemen, fled through the burning forest. They could see no road in front; all seemed on fire. Presently Mao Jie and Wen Ping, with a few more horsemen, joined them. Cao Cao bade the soldiers seek a way through.

Zhang Liao pointed out, saying, "The only suitable road is through the Black Forest."  
 And they took it.

They had gone but a short distance when they were overtaken by a small party of the enemy, and a voice cried, "Cao Cao, stop!"

It was Lu Meng, whose ensign soon appeared against the fiery background. Cao Cao urged his small party of fugitives forward, bidding Zhang Liao defend him from Lu Meng.

Soon after Cao Cao saw the light of torches in front, and from a gorge there rushed out another force. And the leader cried, "Ling Tong is here!"

Cao Cao was scared. His liver and gall both seemed torn from within.

But just then on his half right, he saw another company approach and heard a cry, "Fear not, O Prime Minister, I am here to rescue you!"

The speaker was Xu Huang, and he attacked the pursuers and held them off.

A move to the north seemed to promise escape, but soon they saw a camp on a hill top. Xu Huang went ahead to reconnoiter and found the officers in command were Cao Cao's Generals Ma Yan and Zhang Zi, who had once been in the service of Yuan Shao. They had three thousand of northern soldiers in camp. They had seen the sky redden with the flames, but knew not what was afoot so dared make no move.

This turned out lucky for Cao Cao who now found himself with a fresh force. He sent Ma Yan and Zhang Zi, with a thousand troops, to clear the road ahead while the others remained as guard. And he felt much more secure.

The two went forward, but before they had gone very far, they heard a shouting and a party of soldiers came out, the leader of them shouting, "I am Gan Ning of Wu!"

Nothing daunted the two leaders, but the redoubtable Gan Ning cut down Ma Yan. And when his brother warrior Zhang Zi set his spear and dashed forward, he too fell beneath a stroke from the fearsome sword of Gan Ning. Both leaders dead, the soldiers fled to give Cao Cao the bad news.

At this time Cao Cao expected aid from Hefei, for he knew not that Sun Quan was barring the road. But when Sun Quan saw the fires and so knew that his soldiers had won the day, he ordered Lu Xun to give the answering signal. Taishi Ci seeing this came down and his force joined up with that of Lu Xun, and they went against Cao Cao.

As for Cao Cao, he could only get away toward Yiling. On the road Cao Cao fell in with Zhang He and ordered him to protect the retreat. Cao Cao pressed on as quickly as possible.

At the fifth watch he was a long way from the glare and he felt safer. He asked, "What is this place?"  
 They told him, "It is west of the Black Forest and north of Yidu."

Seeing the thickly crowded trees all about him, and the steep hills and narrow passes, Cao Cao threw up his head and laughed.

Those about him asked, "Why are you, Sir, so merry?"

And he said, "I am only laughing at the stupidity of Zhou Yu and the ignorance of Zhuge Liang. If they have only set an ambush there, as I would have done, why, there is no escape."

Cao Cao had scarcely finished his explanation when from both sides came a deafening roll of drums and flames sprang up to heaven. Cao Cao nearly fell off his horse—he was so startled.

And from the side dashed in a troop, with Zhao Zilong leading, who cried, "I am Zhao Zilong, and long have I been waiting here!"

Cao Cao ordered Xu Huang and Zhang He to engage this new opponent, and he himself rode off into the smoke and fire. Zhao Zilong did not pursue; he only captured the banners, and Cao Cao escaped.

The faint light of dawn showed a great black cloud all around, for the southeast wind had not ceased. Suddenly began a heavy downpour of rain, wetting everyone to the skin, but still Cao Cao maintained his headlong flight till the starved faces of the soldiers made a halt imperative. He told the men to forage in the villages about for grain and the means of making a fire. But when these had been found and they began to cook a meal, another pursuing party came along, and Cao Cao again was terrified. However, these proved to be Li Dian and Xu Chu escorting some of his advisers whom he saw with joy.

When giving the order to advance again, Cao Cao asked, "What places lay ahead?"

They told him, "There are two roads. One was the highway to South Yiling, and the other a mountain road to North Yiling."

"Which is the shorter way to Jiangling?" asked Cao Cao.

"The best way is to take the south road through Hulu Valley," was the reply.

So Cao Cao gave orders to march that way. By the time Hulu Valley was reached, the soldiers were almost starving and could march no more; horses too were worn out. Many had fallen by the roadside. A halt was then made, food was taken by force from the villagers, and as there were still some boilers left, they found a dry spot beside the hills where they could rest and cook. And there they began to prepare a meal, boiling grain, and roasting strips of horse flesh. Then they took off their wet clothes and spread them to dry. The beasts, too, were unsaddled and turned out to graze.

Seated comfortably in a somewhat open spot, Cao Cao suddenly looked up and began to laugh loud and long.

His companions, remembering the sequel of his last laugh, said, "Not long since, Sir, you laughed at Zhou Yu and Zhuge Liang. That resulted in the arrival of Zhao Zilong and great loss of troops to us. Why do you now laugh?"

"I am laughing again at the ignorance of the same two men. If I were in their place, and conducting their campaign, I should have had an ambush here, just to meet us when we were tired out. Then, even if we escaped with our lives, we should suffer very severely. They did not see this, and therefore I am laughing at them."

Even at that moment behind them rose a great yell. Thoroughly startled, Cao Cao threw aside his breastplate and leaped upon his horse. Most of the soldiers failed to catch theirs, and then fires sprang up on every side and filled the mouth of the valley. A force was arrayed before them and at the head was the man of ancient Yan, Zhang Fei, seated on his steed with his great spear leveled.

"Whither would you flee, O rebel?" shouted he.

The soldiers grew cold within at the sight of the terrible warrior. Xu Chu, mounted on a bare-backed horse, rode up to engage him, and Zhang Liao and Xu Huang galloped up to his aid. The three gathered about Zhang Fei and a melee began, while Cao Cao made off at top speed. The other leaders set off after him, and Zhang Fei pursued. However, Cao Cao by dint of hard riding got away, and gradually the pursuers were out-distanced. But many had received wounds.

As they were going, the soldiers said, "There are two roads before us. Which shall we take?"

"Which is the shorter?" asked Cao Cao.

"The high road is the more level, but it is fifteen miles longer than the bye road which goes to Huarong Valley. Only the latter road is narrow and dangerous, full of pits and difficult."

Cao Cao sent men up to the hill tops to look around.

They returned, saying: "There are several columns of smoke rising from the hills along the bye road. The high road seems quiet."

Then Cao Cao bade them lead the way along the bye road.

"Where smoke arises there are surely soldiers," remarked the officers. "Why go this way?"

"Because the 'Book of War' says that the hollow is to be regarded as solid, and the solid as hollow. That fellow Zhuge Liang is very subtle and has sent people to make those fires so that we should not go that way. He has laid an ambush on the high road. I have made up my mind, and I will not fall a victim to his wiles."

"O Prime Minister, your conclusions are most admirable. None other can equal you," said the officers.

And the soldiers were sent along the bye road. They were very hungry and many almost too weak to travel. The horses too were spent. Some had been scorched by the flames, and they rode forward resting their heads on their whips. The wounded struggled on to the last of their strength. All were soaking wet and all were feeble. Their arms and accoutrements were in a deplorable state, and more than half had been left upon the road they had traversed. Few of the horses had saddles or bridles, for in the confusion of pursuit they had been left behind. It was the time of greatest winter cold, and the suffering was indescribable.

Noticing that the leading party had stopped, Cao Cao sent to ask the reason.

The messenger returned, saying, "The rain water collected in the pits makes the ground a mire, and the horses cannot move."

Cao Cao raged. He said, "When soldiers come to hills, they cut a road; when they happen upon streams, they bridge them. Such a thing as mud cannot stay an army."

So he ordered the weak and wounded to go to the rear and come on as they could, while the robust and able were to cut down trees, and gather herbage and reeds to fill up the holes. And it was to be done without delay, or death would be the punishment of the disobedient or remiss.

So the soldiers dismounted and felled trees and cut bamboos, and they leveled the road. And because of the imminence and fear of pursuit, a party of one hundred under Zhang Liao, Xu Chu, and Xu Huang was told off to hasten the workers and slay any that idled.

The soldiers made their way along the shallower parts, but many fell, and cries of misery were heard the whole length of the way.

"What are you howling for?" cried Cao Cao. "The number of your days is fixed by fate. Anyone who howls shall be put to death."

The remnant of the army, now divided into three, one to march slowly, a second to fill up the waterways and hollows, and a third to escort Cao Cao, gradually made its way over the precipitous road. When the going improved a little and the path was moderately level, Cao Cao turned to look at his following and saw he had barely three hundred soldiers. And these lacked clothing and armor and were tattered and disordered.

But he pressed on, and when the officers told him the horses were quite spent and must rest, he replied, "Press on to Jingzhou, and there we shall find repose."

So they pressed on. But they had gone only one or two miles when Cao Cao flourished his whip and broke once again into loud laughter.

"What is there to laugh at?" asked the officers.

"People say those two, Zhou Yu and Zhuge Liang, are able and crafty. I do not see it. They are a couple of incapables. If an ambush had been placed here, we should all be prisoners."

Cao Cao had not finished this speech when the explosion of a bomb broke the silence, and a company of five hundred troops with swords in their hands appeared and barred the way. The leader was Guan Yu, holding his green-dragon saber, bestriding the Red Hare. At this sight, the spirits of Cao Cao's soldiers left them, and they gazed into each others' faces in panic.

"Now we have but one course," said Cao Cao. "We must fight to the death!"

"How can we?" said the officers. "Though the leaders may have some strength left, the horses are spent."

Cheng Yu said, "I have always heard that Guan Yu is haughty to the proud but kindly to the humble; he despises the strong, but is gentle with the weak. He discriminates between love and hate and is always righteous and true. You, O Prime Minister, have shown him kindness in the past. If you will remind him of that, we shall escape this evil."

Cao Cao agreed to try. He rode out to the front, bowed low and said, "General, I trust you have enjoyed good health."

"I had orders to await you, O Prime Minister," replied Guan Yu, bowing in return, "and I have been expecting you these many days."

"You see before you one Cao Cao—defeated and weak. I have reached a sad pass, and I trust you, O General, will not forget the kindness of former days."

"Though indeed you were kind to me in those days, yet I slew your enemies for you and relieved the siege of Baima. As to the business of today, I cannot allow private feelings to outweigh public duty."

"Do you remember my six generals, slain at the five passes? The noble person values righteousness. You are well versed in the histories and must recall the action of Yu Gong, the archer, when he released his master Zi Zhuo, for he determined not to use Zi Zhuo's teaching to kill Zi Zhuo."

Guan Yu was indeed a very mountain of goodness and could not forget the great kindness he had received at Cao Cao's hands, and the magnanimity Cao Cao had shown over the deeds at the five passes. He saw the desperate straits to which his benefactor was reduced, and tears were very near to the eyes of both. He could not press Cao

Cao hard.

He pulled at the bridle of his steed and turned away saying to his followers, "Break up the formation!"

From this it was evident that his design was to release Cao Cao, who then went on with his officers. When Guan Yu turned to look back, they had all passed. He uttered a great shout, and Cao Cao's soldiers jumped off their horses and knelt on the ground crying for mercy. But he also had pity for them. Then Zhang Liao, whom he knew well, came along and was allowed to go free also.

Cao Cao, his army lost, fled to the Huarong Valley;  
There in the throat of the gorge met he Guan Yu.  
Grateful was Guan Yu, and mindful of former kindness,  
Wherefore slipped he the bolt and freed the imprisoned dragon.

Having escaped this danger, Cao Cao hastened to get out of the valley. As the throat opened out, he glanced behind him and saw only forty-seven horsemen. As evening fell, they reached Jiangling, and they came upon an army that they took to be more enemies.

Cao Cao thought the end had surely come, but to his delight they were his own soldiers and he regained all his confidence.

Cao Ren, who was the leader, said, "I heard of your misfortunes, my lord, but I was afraid to venture far from my charge, else I would have met you before."

"I thought I would never see you again," said Cao Cao.

The fugitives found repose in the city, where Zhang Liao soon joined them. He also praised the magnanimity of Guan Yu.

When Cao Cao mustered the miserable remnant of his officers, he found nearly all were wounded and he bade them rest. Cao Ren poured the wine of consolation whereby his master might forget his sorrows.

As Cao Cao drank among his familiars, he became exceedingly sad.

Wherefore they said, "O Prime Minister, when you were in the cave of the tiger and trying to escape, you showed no sign of sorrow. Now that you are safe in a city, where you have food and the horses have forage, where all you have to do is to prepare for revenge, suddenly you lose heart and grieve. Why thus?"

Replied Cao Cao, "I am thinking of my friend Guo Jia: Had he been alive, he would not have let me suffer this loss."

He beat his breast and wept, saying, "Alas for Guo Jia! I grieve for Guo Jia! I sorrow for Guo Jia!"

The reproach shamed the advisers, who were silent.

Next day Cao Cao called Cao Ren and said, "I am going to the capital to prepare another army for revenge. You are to guard this region and, in case of necessity, I leave with you a sealed plan. You are only to open the cover when hard-pressed, and then you are to act as directed. The South Land will not dare to look this way."

"Who is to guard Hefei and Xiangyang?"

"Jingzhou is particularly your care, and Xiahou Dun is to hold Xiangyang. As Hefei is most important, I am sending Zhang Liao thither with good aids of Li Dian and Yue Jing. If you get into difficulties, send at once to tell me."

Having made these dispositions, Cao Cao set off at once with a few followers. He took with him the officers who had come over to his side when Jingzhou fell into his hands.

Cao Ren placed Cao Hong in charge of Yiling and Jiangling.

After having allowed the escape of Cao Cao, Guan Yu found his way back to headquarters. By this time the other detachments had returned bringing spoil of horses and weapons and supplies of all kinds. Only Guan Yu came back empty-handed. When he arrived, Zhuge Liang was with his brother congratulating him on his success. When Guan Yu was announced, Zhuge Liang got up and went to welcome him, bearing a cup of wine.

"Joy! O General," said Zhuge Liang. "You have done a deed that overtops the world. You have removed the empire's worst foe and ought to have been met at a distance and felicitated."

Guan Yu muttered inaudibly, and Zhuge Liang continued, "I hope it is not because we have omitted to welcome you on the road that you seem sad."

Turning to those about him, Zhuge Liang said, "Why did you not tell us Guan Yu was coming?"

"I am here to ask for death," said Guan Yu.

"Surely Cao Cao came through the valley?"

"Yes, he came that way. But I could not help it: I let him go."

"Then whom have you captured?"

"No one."

"Then you remembered the old kindness of Cao Cao and so allowed him to escape. But your acceptance of the

task with its conditions is here. You will have to suffer the penalty."

Zhuge Liang called in the lictors and told them to take away Guan Yu and put him to death.

Guan Yu risked life when he spared  
Cao Cao in direst need,  
And age-long admiration gained  
For kindly deed.

What actually befell will be seen in the next chapter.

### Chapter 51

#### *Cao Ren Withstands The South Land; Zhuge Liang Angers Zhou Yu.*

Guan Yu would have died there but for his elder brother, who said to Zhuge Liang, "We three pledged ourselves to live and die together. Although my brother Guan Yu has offended, I cannot bear to break our oath. I hope you will only record this against him and let him atone later for the fault by some specially meritorious service."

So the sentence was remitted.

In the meantime, Zhou Yu mustered his officers and called over his soldiers, noted the special services of each, and sent full reports to his master. The soldiers who had surrendered were all transported across the river. All this done they spread the feast of victory.

The next step was to attack and capture Nanjun. The van of the army camped on the river bank. There were five camps and the Commander-in-Chief's tent was in the center. He summoned his officers to a council. At this moment Sun Qian arrived with congratulations from Liu Bei.

Zhou Yu received him and, having saluted in proper form, Sun Qian said, "My lord sent me on this special mission to felicitate the General on his great virtue and offer some unworthy gifts."

"Where is Liu Bei?" asked Zhou Yu.

"He is now encamped at Youkou, the mouth of River You."

"Is Zhuge Liang there?" asked Zhou Yu, taken aback.

"Both are there," said Sun Qian.

"Then return quickly, and I will come in person to thank them."

The presents handed over, Sun Qian was sent back forthwith to his own camp. Then Lu Su asked Zhou Yu why he had started when he heard where Liu Bei was camped.

"Because," replied Zhou Yu, "camping at the mouth of River You means that he has the intention of taking Nanjun. Having spent much military energy and spared no expenditure, we thought the territory should fall to us easily. Those others are opposed to us, and they wish to get the advantage of what we have already accomplished. However, they must remember that I am not dead yet."

"How can you prevent them?" asked Lu Su.

"I will go myself and speak with them. If all goes well, then, let it be so. In case it does not, then I shall immediately settle up with Liu Bei without waiting for Nanjun to be taken."

"I should like to accompany you," said Lu Su.

The commander and his adviser started, taking with them a guard of three thousand light horse. Having arrived at Youkou, they sought out Sun Qian, who, in turn, went in to see Liu Bei and told him Zhou Yu had come to render thanks.

"Why has he come?" asked Liu Bei of his Directing Instructor.

"He is not likely to come out of simple politeness. Surely he has come in connection with Nanjun."

"But if he brings an army, can we stand against it?" asked Liu Bei.

"When he comes, you may reply thus and thus."

Then they drew up the warships in the river and ranged the soldiers upon the bank. When the arrival of Zhou Yu was formally announced, Zhao Zilong, with some horsemen, went to welcome him. When Zhou Yu saw what bold soldiers they looked, he began to feel uncomfortable, but he went on his way. Being met at the camp gates by Liu Bei and Zhuge Liang, he was taken in to the chief tent, where the ceremonies were performed and preparations for a banquet had been made.

Presently Liu Bei raised his cup in felicitation on the recent victory gained by his guest. The banquet proceeded.

After a few more courses Zhou Yu said, "Of course you are camped here with no other idea than to take Nanjun?"

Liu Bei said, "We heard you were going to take the place and came to assist. Should you not take it, then we will occupy it."

Zhou Yu laughed, saying, "We of the South Land have long wished for this territory. Now that it is within our grasp, we naturally shall take it."

Liu Bei said, "There is always some uncertainty. Cao Cao left Cao Ren to guard the region, and you may be certain that there is good strategy behind Cao Ren, to say nothing of his boldness as a warrior. I fear you may not get it."

"Well, if we do not take it then, Sir, you may have it," said Zhou Yu.

"Here are witnesses to your words," said Liu Bei, naming Lu Su, Zhuge Liang, and those at table. "I hope you will never repent what you have just said."

Lu Su stammered and seemed unwilling to be cited as one of the witnesses, but Zhou Yu said, "When the word of a noble person has gone forth, it is ended. He never regrets."

"This speech of yours, Sir, is very generous," interjected Zhuge Liang. "The South Land shall try first. But if the place does not fall, there is no reason why my lord should not capture it."

The two visitors then took their leave and rode away.

As soon as they had left, Liu Bei turned to Zhuge Liang and said, "O Master, you bade me thus reply to Zhou Yu. But though I did so, I have turned it over and over in my mind without finding any reason in what I said. I am alone and weak, without a single foot of land to call my own. I desired to get possession of Nanjun that I might have, at least, a temporary shelter, yet I have said that Zhou Yu may attack it first. If it falls to the South Land, how can I get possession?"

Zhuge Liang laughed and replied, "First I advised you to attack Jingzhou, but you would not listen. Do you remember?"

"But it belonged to Liu Biao, and I could not bear to attack it then. Now it belongs to Cao Cao, I might do so."

"Do not be anxious," replied the adviser. "Let Zhou Yu go and attack it. Some day, my lord, I shall make you sit in the high place thereof."

"But what design have you?"

"So and so," said Zhuge Liang, whispering.

Liu Bei was satisfied with the reply, and only strengthened his position at Youkou.

In the meantime Zhou Yu and Lu Su returned to their own camp, and the latter said, "Why did you tell Liu Bei that he might attack Nanjun?"

"I can take it with a flick of my finger," replied Zhou Yu, "but I just manifested a little pretended kindness."

Then he inquired among his officers for a volunteer to attack the city. Jiang Qin offered himself, and was put in command of the vanguard, with Xu Sheng and Ding Feng as helpers. He was given five thousand of veterans, and they moved across the river. Zhou Yu promised to follow with supports.

On the other side Cao Ren ordered Cao Hong to guard Yiling, and so hold one corner of an ox-horn defense.

When the news came that the South Land's force had crossed the River Han, Cao Ren said, "We will defend and not offer battle."

But General Niu Jin said impetuously, "To let the enemy approach the walls and not offer battle is timidity. Our troops, lately worsted, need heartening and must show their mettle. Let me have five hundred of veterans, and I will fight to a finish."

Cao Ren could not withstand this offer, and so the five hundred went out of the city. At once Ding Feng came to challenge the leader, and they fought a few bouts. Then Ding Feng pretended to be defeated, gave up the fight, and retreated into his own lines. Niu Jin followed him hard. When he had got within the South Land's formation, at a signal from Ding Feng, the army closed round and Niu Jin was surrounded. He pushed right and left, but could find no way out. Seeing Niu Jin in the toils, Cao Ren, who had watched the fight from the wall, donned his armor and came out of the city at the head of his own bold company of horsemen and burst in among the forces of the South Land to try to rescue his colleague. Beating back Xu Sheng, Cao Ren fought his way in and presently rescued Niu Jin.

However, having got out, Cao Ren saw several score of horsemen still in the middle unable to make their way out, whereupon he turned again to the battle and dashed in to their rescue. This time he met Jiang Qin on whom Cao Ren and Niu Jin made a violent attack. Then his brother Cao Chun came up with supports, and the great battle ended in a defeat for the troops of the South Land.

So Cao Ren went back victor, while the unhappy Jiang Qin returned to report his failure. Zhou Yu was very angry and would have put to death his hapless subordinate but for the intervention of the other officers. Then Zhou Yu prepared for another attack where he himself would lead.

But Gan Ning said, "General, do not be in too great hurry. Let me go first and attack Yiling, the supporting angle of the ox-horn formation. After that the conquest of Nanjun will be easy."

Zhou Yu accepted the plan and Gan Ning, with three thousand troops, went to attack Yiling.

When news of the approaching army reached him, Cao Ren called to his side Chen Jiao, who said, "If Yiling be lost, then Nanjun is lost too. So help must be sent quickly."

Thereupon Cao Chun and Niu Jin were sent by secret ways to the aid of Cao Hong. Cao Chun sent a messenger to the city to ask that they should cause a diversion by a sortie at the time the reinforcements should arrive.

So when Gan Ning drew near, Cao Hong went out to meet and engage him. They fought a score of rounds, but Cao Hong was overcome at last, and Gan Ning took the city. However, as evening fell the reinforcements under Cao Chun and Niu Jin came up, and the captor was surrounded in the city he had taken. The scouts went off immediately to tell Zhou Yu of this sudden change of affairs which greatly alarmed him.

"Let us hasten to his rescue," said Cheng Pu.

"Our place is of the greatest importance," said Zhou Yu, "and I am afraid to leave it undefended lest Cao Ren should attack."

"But Gan Ning is one of our first leaders and must be rescued," said Lu Meng.

"I should like to go myself to his aid, but whom can I leave here in my place?" said Zhou Yu.

"Leave Ling Tong here," said Lu Meng. "I will push on ahead, and you can protect my advance. In less than ten days we shall be singing the paean of victory."

"Are you willing?" said Zhou Yu to the man who was to act for him.

Ling Tong said, "If the ten-day period is not exceeded, I may be able to carry on for that time. I am unequal to more than that."

Ling Tong's consent pleased Zhou Yu who started at once, leaving ten thousand troops for the defense of the camp.

Lu Meng said to his chief, "South of Yiling is a little-used road that may prove very useful in an attack on Nanjun. Let us send a party to fell trees and barricade this road so that horses cannot pass. In case of defeat, the defeated will take this road and will be compelled to abandon their horses, which we shall capture."

Zhou Yu approved, and the men set out. When the main army drew near Yiling, Zhou Yu asked who would try to break through the besiegers, and Zhou Tai offered himself. He girded on his sword, mounted his steed, and burst straight into the Cao Hong's army. He got through to the city wall.

From the city wall Gan Ning saw the approach of his friend Zhou Tai and went out to welcome him. Zhou Tai told him the Commander-in-Chief was on the way to his relief, and Gan Ning at once bade the defenders prepare from within to support the attack of the rescuers.

When the news of the approach of Zhou Yu had reached Yiling, Cao Hong, Cao Chun, and Niu Jin had sent to tell Cao Ren, who was at Nanjun, and at the same time they prepared to repel the assailants.

As the army of the South Land came near, they at once attacked. Simultaneously Gan Ning and Zhou Tai went out to attack on two sides, and the troops of Cao Hong were thrown into confusion. The soldiers of the South Land fell on lustily, and the three leaders all fled by a bye road, but, finding the way barred with felled trees and other obstacles, they had to abandon their horses and go afoot. In this way the troops of the South Land gained some five hundred steeds.

Zhou Yu, pressing on as quickly as possible toward Nanjun, came upon Cao Ren and his army marching to save Yiling. The two armies engaged and fought a battle which lasted till late in the evening. Then both drew off, and Cao Ren withdrew into the city.

During the night he called his officers to a council.

Then said Cao Hong, "The loss of Yiling has brought us to a dangerous pass. Now it seems the time to open the guide-letter of the Prime Minister, and see what plans he arranged for our salvation in this peril."

"You but say what I think," replied Cao Ren.

Whereupon he tore open the guide-letter and read it. His face lighted up with joy, and he at once issued orders to have the morning meal prepared at the fifth watch. At daylight the whole army moved out of the city through three gates, but they left a semblance of occupation in the shape of banners on the walls.

Zhou Yu went up to the tower of observation and looked over the city. He saw that the flags along the battlements had no guards behind them, and he noticed that all troops carried bundles at their waists behind so that they were ready for a long march.

Thought Zhou Yu to himself, "Cao Ren must be prepared for a long march."

So Zhou Yu went down from the tower of observation and sent out an order for two wings of the army to be ready. One of these was to attack and, in case of its success, the other was to pursue at full speed till the clanging of the gongs should call them to return. He took command of the leading force in person, and Cheng Pu commanded the other. Thus they advanced to attack the city.

The armies being arrayed facing each other, the drums rolled out across the plain. Cao Hong rode forth and challenged, and Zhou Yu, from his place by the standard, bade Han Dang respond. The two champions fought near two score bouts, and then Cao Hong fled. Thereupon Cao Ren came out to help him, and Zhou Tai rode out at full

speed to meet him. These two exchanged a half score passes and then Cao Ren tied.

Cao Ren's army fell into confusion. Thereupon Zhou Yu gave the signal for the advance of both his wings, and the forces of Cao Ren were sore smitten and defeated. Zhou Yu pursued to the city wall, but Cao Ren's troops did not enter the city. Instead, they went away northwest. Han Dang and Zhou Tai pressed them hard.

Zhou Yu, seeing the city gates standing wide open and no guards upon the walls, ordered the raiding of the city. A few score horsemen rode in first, Zhou Yu followed and whipping his steed. As he galloped into the enclosure around the gate, Chen Jiao stood on the defense tower. When he saw Zhou Yu enter, in his heart he applauded the god-like perspicacity of the Prime Minister Cao Cao.

Then was heard the clap-clap of a watchman's rattle. At this signal the archers and crossbowmen let fly, and the arrows and bolts flew forth in a sudden fierce shower, while those who had won their way to the van of the inrush went headlong into a deep trench. Zhou Yu managed to pull up in time, but turning to escape, he was wounded in the left side and fell to the ground. Niu Jin rushed out from the city to capture the chief, but Xu Sheng and Ding Feng at the risk of their lives got him away safe. Then the troops of Cao Ren dashed out of the city and wrought confusion among the troops of the South Land, who trampled each other down and many more fell into the trenches. Cheng Pu tried to draw off, but Cao Ren and Cao Hong came toward him from different directions, and the battle went hardly against the soldiers of Zhou Yu, till help came from Ling Tong, who bore back their assailants. Satisfied with their success, Cao Ren led his forces into the city, while the losers marched back to their own camp.

Zhou Yu, sorely wounded, was taken to his own tent and the army physician called in. With iron forceps, he extracted the sharp bolt and dressed the wound with a lotion designed to counteract the poison of the metal. But the pain was intense, and the patient rejected all nourishment.

The physician said, "The missile had been poisoned, and the wound will require a long time to heal. You, General, must be kept quiet and especially free from any irritation, which will cause the wound to reopen."

Thereupon Cheng Pu gave orders that each division was to remain in camp. Three days later, Niu Jin came within sight and challenged the men of the South Land to battle, but they did not stir. The enemy hurled at them taunts and insults till the sun had fallen low in the sky, but it was of no avail and Niu Jin withdrew.

Next day Niu Jin returned and repeated his insulting abuse. Cheng Pu dared not tell the wounded general. The third day, waxing bolder, the enemy came to the very gates of the stockade, the leader shouting that he had come for the purpose of capturing Zhou Yu.

Then Cheng Pu called together his officers, and they discussed the feasibility of retirement into the South Land that they might seek the opinion of Sun Quan.

Ill as he was, Zhou Yu still retained control of the expedition. He knew that the enemy came daily to the gates of his camp and reviled him, although none of his officers told him. One day Cao Ren came in person, and there was much rolling of drums and shouting. Cheng Pu, however, steadily refused to accept the challenge and would not let anyone go out.

Then Zhou Yu summoned the officers to his bedside and said, "What mean the drums and the shouting?"

"The soldiers are drilling," was the reply.

"Why do you deceive me?" said Zhou Yu angrily. "Do I not know that our enemies come day by day to our gates and insult us? Yet Cheng Pu suffers this in silence and makes no use of his powers and authority."

He sent for Cheng Pu and, when he arrived, asked him why he acted thus.

"Because you are ill, and the physician said you were on no account to be provoked to anger. Wherefore, although the enemy challenged us to battle, I kept it from you."

"And if you do not fight, what think you should be done?" said Zhou Yu.

And they all said they desired to return to the South Land till he had recovered from his wound, when they would make another expedition.

Zhou Yu lay and listened. Suddenly he sprang up, crying, "The noble person who has eaten of his lord's bounty should die in his lord's battles. To return home dead and wrapped in a horse's hide is a happy fate. Am I the sort of people to bring to nought the grand designs of my lord?"

So speaking he proceeded to gird on his armor, and he mounted his horse. The wonder of the officers only redoubled when their General placed himself at the head of some hundreds of horsemen and went out of the camp gates toward the enemy, then fully arrayed. Cao Ren, their general, stood beneath the great standard.

At sight of the opponents, Cao Ren flourished his whip and began to hurl abuse at them, "Zhou Yu, you babe! I think your fate has met you. You dare not face my army!"

The stream of insult never ceased.

Presently Zhou Yu could stand it no longer. Riding out to the front he cried, "Here I am, base churl. Look at me!"

The whole Cao Ren's army were taken aback. But Cao Ren turned to those about him and said, "Let us all revile him!"

And the whole army yelled insults.

Zhou Yu grew angry and sent Pan Zhang out to fight. But before he had delivered his first blow, Zhou Yu suddenly uttered a loud cry, and he fell to the ground with blood gushing from his mouth.

At this Cao Ren's army rushed to the battle, and the army of the South Land pressed forward to meet them. A fierce struggle waged around Zhou Yu's body, but he was borne off safely and taken to his tent.

"Do you feel better?" asked Cheng Pu anxiously.

"It was a ruse of mine," whispered Zhou Yu in reply.

"But what avails it?"

"I am not suffering, but I did that to make our enemies think I was very ill and so oppose them by deceit. I will send a few trusty men to pretend desertion and tell them I am dead. That will cause them to try a night raid on the camp, and we shall have an ambush ready for them. We shall get Cao Ren easily."

"The plan seems excellent," said Cheng Pu.

Soon from the tent there arose the sound of wailing as for the dead. The soldiers around took up the cry and said one to another, "The General is dead of his wound!" and they all put on the symbols of mourning.

Meanwhile Cao Ren was consulting with his officers.

Said he, "Zhou Yu lost his temper, and that has caused his wound to reopen and brought on that flow of blood. You saw him fall to the ground, and he will assuredly die soon."

Just then there came in one who said that a few men had come over from the enemy asking to be allowed to join the army of Cao Ren. Among them were two of Cao Cao's men who had been made prisoners. Cao Ren sent for the deserters and questioned them.

They told him, saying, "Zhou Yu's wound reopened at his anger, and he died in the camp that day. The leaders are all clothing in white and in mourning. We desert because we have been put to shame by the second in command."

Pleased at this news, Cao Ren at once began to arrange to make a night attack on the camp and, if possible, get the head of the dead general to send to the capital.

"Success depends upon promptitude, so act without delay," said Chen Jiao.

Niu Jin was told off as Van Leader, Cao Ren himself led the center, while the rear was commanded by Cao Hong and Cao Chun. Chen Jiao and a small force were left to guard Nanjun.

At the first watch they left the city and took the way toward Zhou Yu's camp. When they drew near, not a soldier was visible in the camp, but flags and banners and spears were all there, evidently to keep up an appearance of preparation. Feeling at once that they had been tricked, they turned to retreat.

But a bomb exploded, and this was the signal for an attack on all four sides. Han Dang and Jiang Qin pressed in from the east; Zhou Tai and Pan Zhang, from the west; Chen Wu and Lu Meng, from the north; and Xu Sheng and Ding Feng, from the south. The result was a severe defeat for the raiders, and the army of Cao Ren was entirely broken and scattered abroad so that no one part of the beaten army could aid the other.

Cao Ren, with a few horsemen got out of the press and presently met Cao Hong. The two leaders ran away together, and by the fifth watch they had got near Nanjun. Then they heard a beating of drums, and Ling Tong appeared barring the way. There was a small skirmish, and Cao Ren went off at an angle. But he fell in with Gan Ning, who attacked him vigorously. Cao Ren dared not go back to Nanjun, but he made for Xiangyang along the main road. The forces of the South Land pursued him for a time and then desisted.

Zhou Yu and Cheng Pu then made their way to Nanjun where they were startled to see flags on the walls and every sign of occupation.

Before they had recovered from their surprise, there appeared one who cried, "Pardon, General! I had orders from the Directing Instructor to take this city. I am Zhao Zilong of Changshan."

Zhou Yu was fiercely angry and gave orders to assault the city, but the defenders sent down flights and flights of arrows, and his troops could not stay near the rampart. So he withdrew and took counsel. In the meantime he decided to send Gan Ning with a force of several thousand to capture Jingzhou City, and Ling Tong with another army to take Xiangyang. Nanjun could be taken later.

But even as these orders were being given, the scouts came in hurriedly to report, saying, "After Nanjun fell, Zhuge Liang, suddenly forging a military commission, induced the guards of Jingzhou City to leave it and go to the rescue of Cao Ren. Whereupon Zhang Fei occupied the capital."

Soon after another messenger came, saying, "Xiahou Dun, at Xiangyang, received from Zhuge Liang dispatches, supported by a commission in due form, saying that Cao Ren was in danger and needed help, whereupon Xiahou Dun marched off, and Guan Yu seized that city."

Thus the two cities that Zhou Yu wanted had fallen, without the least effort, into the hands of his rival Liu Bei.

"How did Zhuge Liang get this military commission with which he has imposed on the generals?" asked Zhou Yu. Cheng Pu replied, "He seized that of Chen Jiao and so has got all this region into his power."

Zhou Yu uttered a great cry, for at that moment his wound had suddenly burst open.

A city falls, but not to us the gain;  
The guerdon is another's; ours the pain.

The next chapter will say what befell Zhou Yu.

# 8

## Japan

---

Japan's classical and medieval periods roughly converge with the European Middle Ages that generally range from the fifth to fifteenth centuries. By the eighth century, the Yamato clan had taken control of Japan, and in 710 C.E. Nara became the first stable capital. During the Nara period (710-784 C.E.), Japan produced two historical chronicles that legitimize Yamato's authority historically. *Records of Ancient Matters* (712 C.E.) connects the Yamato clan to Amaterasu, the sun goddess, and *Chronicles of Japan* (720 C.E.) explains the creation of the Japanese islands. Religiously and philosophically influential by this period were Shintoism (a polytheistic Japanese indigenous religion), Confucianism (which probably arrived in Japan in the fifth century), and Buddhism (adopted via China and Korea in the sixth century). During the Nara period, Japan also produced *Florilegium of Cherished Airs* (751 C.E.), the Chinese-style poetry of Japan's earliest extant poetry anthology, and *The Manyōshū* (*Collection of Ten Thousand Leaves*) (ca. 8<sup>th</sup> century C.E.), the earliest vernacular poetry anthology.

In 794 C.E., the emperor Kammu shifted his capital to Heian, modern-day Kyoto, to stop the involvement of the Buddhist clergy in Nara in the state affairs. In the tenth century, *kana*, the new phonetic writing system, was developed, which led to the flourishing of rich vernacular prose literature, especially by women writers, although literature was still created by and for the capital elite during the Heian period (794-1185 C.E.). Up to that point, Japan had borrowed Chinese characters for writing. Two of the noteworthy literary works of this time are *The Tale of Genji* (ca. 1010 C.E.) and *The Pillow Book* (ca. 1000 C.E.), written by prestigious court ladies, Murasaki Shikibu and Sei Shōnagon respectively. Lady Murasaki and others in the Heian court used a writing system called *onnade*, i.e., "woman's hand," which used Chinese characters, but modified them to be phonological, making composition much easier and thus facilitating writing. Also, *waka*, a poetic form consisting of 31 syllables, was an integral part of the lives of the aristocracy.

The prolonged civil war between the Heike and the Genji and the rise of the warrior class led to the dissolution of the Heian period in the second half of the twelfth century. These factors resulted in the establishment of a military state in Kamakura, southeast of modern-day Tokyo and ushered in the medieval age (1192–1600 C.E.) in Japan. Military clans dominated Japan until the restoration of imperial power in 1868 C.E. The battle between the Heike and the Genji is recorded in the well-known Japanese medieval tale *The Tale of the Heike* (ca. 1240 C.E.). The military rulers, or shoguns, became patrons of the arts beyond the imperial court. For example, the shoguns supported theatre performances, including Noh theatre. In this cultural milieu, Zeami Mokochiyo (1363-1443 C.E.) was able to produce numerous exemplary Noh plays. Although medieval Japanese literature is still connected to Heian values in many ways, it is also characterized by the influence of the warrior culture and diverse cultural elements beyond the imperial court.

As already indicated above, the selections in this chapter, *The Tale of Genji* and Zeami's plays, are good examples of the Heian period and Medieval Japan under military rule, respectively. While marked by the different periods and their different literary characteristics, they also show shared literary, cultural, and religious values.



**IMAGE 8.1: BYŌDŌ-IN'S PHOENIX HALL** | A picture of Buddhist temple and Japanese National Treasure, Byōdō-in, built in the Heian period in the eleventh century

**Author:** User "663highland"

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** CC BY 2.5

**AS YOU READ, CONSIDER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:**

- In what specific ways do *The Tale of Genji* and Zeami's plays reveal the characteristics of the Heian period and the Medieval Japan of military rule?
- How does *The Tale of Genji*, a novel focusing on a prince and his legacy, reveal a woman's perspective?
- How might some of Zeami's plays dramatize and even reconcile conflicts between opposites—e.g., warrior culture vs. Buddhism, warrior ethos vs. Heian aristocratic values, the past vs. the present, the dead vs. the living, etc.?

**FOR MORE INFORMATION, SEE THE FOLLOWING SOURCES:**

- You can watch the whole performance of the Noh play “Atsumori” on the following website:  
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3mXuGC16ix4>

*Written by Kyounghye Kwon*

## ATSUMORI

Zeami Motokiyo (1363-1443 C.E.)

Appeared distinctively in the fourteenth century  
Japan

Noh (also spelled No, meaning “talent” or “skill”) theatre is a traditional Japanese theatrical form that came to have a distinctive form in the fourteenth century and continued to develop up to the Tokugawa period (1603-1867). Noh theatre, one of the oldest extant theatre forms in the world, has been handed down from generation to generation, keeping its early forms fairly intact. Unlike performers of Kabuki (another traditional Japanese theatrical form) who use elaborate makeup, Noh performers wear masks. Compared to typical western theatre, a Noh play is relatively short without a lot of action; instead, Noh performers emphasize sounds and movements as visual metaphors suggesting the story on stage. Traditionally, they were performed mainly for the warrior class, whereas currently this theatre is protected and supported at the national level. Zeami Motokiyo, along with his father, wrote many of the most exemplary Noh plays. Zeami also formulated the principles of the Noh theatre. There are five types of Noh plays: the plays about 1) gods, 2) warriors, 3) a female protagonist, 4) a madwoman in a contemporary setting, and 5) devils, monsters, and supernatural beings. Zeami's play “Atsumori,” for example, belongs to the plays about warriors. It dramatizes a well-known episode from *The Tale of the Heike* (ca. 1240 C.E.), a famous, medieval Japanese epic.

*Written by Kyounghye Kwon*

## THE NŌ PLAYS OF JAPAN

License: Public Domain

Arthur Waley

### Introduction

The theatre of the West is the last stronghold of realism. No one treats painting or music as mere transcripts of life. But even pioneers of stage-reform in France and Germany appear to regard the theatre as belonging to life and not to art. The play is an organized piece of human experience which the audience must as far as possible be allowed to share with the actors.

A few people in America and Europe want to go in the opposite direction. They would like to see a theatre that aimed boldly at stylization and simplification, discarding entirely the pretentious lumber of 19th century stageland. That such a theatre exists and has long existed in Japan has been well-known here for some time. But hitherto very few plays have been translated in such a way as to give the Western reader an idea of their literary value. It is only through accurate scholarship that the “soul of Nō” can be known to the West. Given a truthful rendering of the texts the American reader will supply for himself their numerous connotations, a fact which Japanese writers do not

always sufficiently realize. The Japanese method of expanding a five-line poem into a long treatise in order to make it intelligible to us is one which obliterates the structure of the original design. Where explanations are necessary they have been given in footnotes. I have not thought it necessary to point out (as a Japanese critic suggested that I ought to have done) that, for example, the "mood" of *Komachi* is different from the "mood" of *Kumasaka*. Such differences will be fully apparent to the American reader, who would not be the better off for knowing the technical name of each *kurai* or class of Nō. Surely the Japanese student of Shakespeare does not need to be told that the *kurai* of "Hamlet" is different from that of "Measure for Measure"?

It would be possible to burden a book of this kind with as great a mass of unnecessary technicality as irritates us in a smart sale-catalogue of Japanese Prints. I have avoided such terms to a considerable extent, treating the plays as literature, not as some kind of Delphic mystery.

In this short introduction I shall not have space to give a complete description of modern Nō, nor a full history of its origins. But the reader of the translations will find that he needs some information on these points. I have tried to supply it as concisely as possible, sometimes in a schematic rather than a literary form.

These are some of the points about which an American reader may wish to know more:

### The Nō Stage

The actual stage is about 18 feet square. On the boards of the back wall is painted a pine-tree; the other sides are open. A gallery (called *hashigakari*) leads to the green-room, from which it is separated by a curtain which is raised to admit the actor when he makes his entry. The audience sits either on two or three sides of the stage. The chorus, generally in two rows, sit (or rather squat) in the recess. The musicians sit in the recess at the back of the stage, the stick-drum nearest the "gallery," then the two hand-drums and the flute. A railing runs round the musician's recess, as also along the gallery. To the latter railing are attached three real pine-branches. The stage is covered by a roof of its own, imitating in form the roof of a Shintō temple.

### The Performers

#### *The Actors*

The first actor who comes on to the stage (approaching from the gallery) is the *waki* or assistant. His primary business is to explain the circumstances under which the principal actor (called *shite* or "doer") came to dance the central dance of the play. Each of these main actors (*waki* and *shite*) has "adjuncts" or "companions."

Some plays need only the two main actors. Others use as many as ten or even twelve. The female rôles are of course taken by men. The *waki* is always a male rôle.

#### *The Chorus*

This consists of from eight to twelve persons in ordinary native dress seated in two rows at the side of the stage. Their sole function is to sing an actor's words for him when his dance-movements prevent him from singing comfortably. They enter by a side-door before the play begins and remain seated till it is over.

#### *The Musicians*

Nearest to the gallery sits the "big-drum," whose instrument rests on the ground and is played with a stick. This stick-drum is not used in all plays.

Next comes a hand-drummer who plays with thimbled finger; next a second who plays with the bare hand.

Finally, the flute. It intervenes only at stated intervals, particularly at the beginning, climax and end of plays.

#### Costume

Though almost wholly banishing other extrinsic aids, the Nō relies enormously for its effects on gorgeous and elaborate costume. Some references to this will be found in Oswald Sickert's letters at the end of my book.

Masks are worn only by the *shite* (principal actor) and his subordinates. The *shite* always wears a mask if playing the part of a woman or very old man. Young men, particularly warriors, are usually unmasked. In child-parts



IMAGE 8.2: TAIRA NO ATSUMORI | The samurai Atsumori plays a woodwind instrument.

Author: Kikuchi Yosai

Source: Wikimedia Commons

License: Public Domain

(played by boy-actors) masks are not worn. The reproduction of a female mask will be found on Plate I. The masks are of wood. Many of those still in use are of great antiquity and rank as important specimens of Japanese sculpture.

### Properties

The properties of the Nō stage are of a highly conventionalized kind. An open frame-work represents a boat; another differing little from it denotes a chariot. Palace, house, cottage, hovel are all represented by four posts covered with a roof. The fan which the actor usually carries often does duty as a knife, brush or the like. Weapons are more realistically represented. The short-sword, belt-sword, pike, spear and Chinese broad-sword are carried; also bows and arrows.

### Dancing and Acting

Every Nō play (with, I think, the sole exception of *Hachi no Ki*) includes a *mai* or dance, consisting usually of slow steps and solemn gestures, often bearing little resemblance to what is in America associated with the word "dance." When the *shite* dances, his dance consists of five "movements" or parts; a "subordinate's" dance consists of three. Both in the actors' miming and in the dancing an important element is the stamping of beats with the shoeless foot.

### The Plays

The plays are written partly in prose, partly in verse. The prose portions serve much the same purpose as the iambics in a Greek play. They are in the Court or upper-class colloquial of the 14th century, a language not wholly dead to-day, as it is still the language in which people write formal letters.

The chanting of these portions is far removed from singing; yet they are not "spoken." The voice falls at the end of each sentence in a monotonous cadence.

A prose passage often gradually heightens into verse. The chanting, which has hitherto resembled the intoning of a Roman Catholic priest, takes on more of the character of "recitativo" in opera, occasionally attaining to actual song. The verse of these portions is sometimes irregular, but on the whole tends to an alternation of lines of five and seven syllables.

The verse of the lyric portions is marked by frequent use of pivot-words and puns, particularly puns on place-names. The 14th century Nō-writer, Seami, insists that pivot-words should be used sparingly and with discretion. Many Nō-writers did not follow this advice; but the use of pivot-words is not in itself a decoration more artificial than rhyme, and I cannot agree with those European writers to whom this device appears puerile and degraded. Each language must use such embellishments as suit its genius.

Another characteristic of the texts is the use of earlier literary material. Many of the plays were adapted from dance-ballads already existing and even new plays made use of such poems as were associated in the minds of the audience with the places or persons named in the play. Often a play is written round a poem or series of poems, as will be seen in the course of this book.

This use of existing material exceeds the practice of Western dramatists; but it must be remembered that if we were to read Webster, for example, in editions annotated as minutely as the Nō-plays, we should discover that he was far more addicted to borrowing than we had been aware. It seems to me that in the finest plays this use of existing material is made with magnificent effect and fully justifies itself.

The reference which I have just made to dance-ballads brings us to another question. What did the Nō-plays grow out of?

### Origins

Nō as we have it to-day dates from about the middle of the 14th century. It was a combination of many elements.

These were:

- Sarugaku, a masquerade which relieved the solemnity of Shintō ceremonies. What we call Nō was at first called Sarugaku no Nō.
- Dengaku, at first a rustic exhibition of acrobatics and jugglery; later, a kind of opera in which performers alternately danced and recited.
- Various sorts of recitation, ballad-singing, etc.
- The Chinese dances practised at the Japanese Court.

Nō owes its present form to the genius of two men. Kwanami Kiyotsugu (1333-1384 A. D.) and his son Seami Motokiyo (1363-1444 A. D.)

Kwanami was a priest of the Kasuga Temple near Nara. About 1375 the Shōgun Yoshimitsu saw him performing in a Sarugaku no Nō at the New Temple (one of the three great temples of Kumano) and immediately took him under his protection.

This Yoshimitsu had become ruler of Japan in 1367 at the age of ten. His family had seized the Shōgunate in 1338 and wielded absolute power at Kyōto, while two rival Mikados, one in the north and one in the south, held impotent and dwindling courts.

The young Shōgun distinguished himself by patronage of art and letters; and by his devotion to the religion of the Zen Sect. It is probable that when he first saw Kwanami he also became acquainted with the son Seami, then a boy of twelve.

A diary of the period has the following entry for the 7th day of the 6th month, 1368:

For some while Yoshimitsu has been making a favourite of a Sarugaku-boy from Yamato, sharing the same meat and eating from the same vessels. These Sarugaku people are mere mendicants, but he treats them as if they were Privy Counsellors.

From this friendship sprang the art of Nō as it exists to-day. Of Seami we know far more than of his father Kwanami. For Seami left behind him a considerable number of treatises and autobiographical fragments. These were not published till 1908 and have not yet been properly edited. They establish, among other things, the fact that Seami wrote both words and music for most of the plays in which he performed. It had before been supposed that the texts were supplied by the Zen priests. For other information brought to light by the discovery of Seami's *Works* see Appendix II.

### Yūgen

It is obvious that Seami was deeply imbued with the teachings of Zen, in which cult his patron Yoshimitsu may have been his master. The difficult term *yūgen* which occurs constantly in the *Works* is derived from Zen literature. It means "what lies beneath the surface"; the subtle as opposed to the obvious; the hint, as opposed to the statement. It is applied to the natural grace of a boy's movements, to the restraint of a nobleman's speech and bearing. "When notes fall sweetly and flutter delicately to the ear," that is the *yūgen* of music. The symbol of *yūgen* is "a white bird with a flower in its beak." "To watch the sun sink behind a flower-clad hill, to wander on and on in a huge forest with no thought of return, to stand upon the shore and gaze after a boat that goes hid by far-off islands, to ponder on the journey of wild-geese seen and lost among the clouds"—such are the gates to *yūgen*.

I will give a few specimens of Seami's advice to his pupils:

### *Patrons*

The actor should not stare straight into the faces of the audience, but look between them. When he looks in the direction of the Daimyōs he must not let his eyes meet theirs, but must slightly avert his gaze.

At Palace-performances or when acting at a banquet, he must not let his eyes meet those of the Shōgun or stare straight into the Honourable Face. When playing in a large enclosure he must take care to keep as close as possible to the side where the Nobles are sitting; if in a small enclosure, as far off as possible. But particularly in Palace-performances and the like he must take the greatest pains to keep as far away as he possibly can from the August Presence.

Again, when the recitations are given at the Palace it is equally essential to begin at the right moment. It is bad to begin too soon and fatal to delay too long.

It sometimes happens that the "noble gentlemen" do not arrive at the theatre until the play has already reached its Development and Climax. In such cases the play is at its climax, but the noble gentlemen's hearts are ripe only for Introduction. If they, ready only for Introduction, are forced to witness a Climax, they are not likely to get pleasure from it. Finally even the spectators who were there before, awed by the entry of the "exalted ones," become so quiet that you would not know they were there, so that the whole audience ends by returning to the Introductory mood. At such a moment the Nō cannot possibly be a success. In such circumstances it is best to take Development-Nō and give it a slightly "introductory" turn. Then, if it is played gently, it may win the August Attention.

It also happens that one is suddenly sent for to perform at a Shōgunal feast or the like. The audience is already in a "climax-mood"; but "introductory" Nō must be played. This is a great difficulty. In such circumstances the best plan is to tinge the introduction with a *nuance* of "development." But this must be done without "stickiness," with the lightest possible touch, and the transition to the real Development and Climax must be made as quickly as possible.

In old times there were masters who perfected themselves in Nō without study. But nowadays the nobles and gentlemen have become so critical that they will only look with approbation on what is good and will not give attention to anything bad.

Their honourable eyes have become so keen that they notice the least defect, so that even a masterpiece that is as pearls many times polished or flowers choicely culled will not win the applause of our gentlemen to-day.

At the same time, good actors are becoming few and the Art is gradually sinking towards its decline. For this reason, if very strenuous study is not made, it is bound to disappear altogether.

When summoned to play before the noble gentlemen, we are expected to give the regular "words of good-wish" and to divide our performance into the three parts, Introduction, Development and Climax, so that the pre-arranged order cannot be varied.... But on less formal occasions, when, for example, one is playing not at a Shōgunal banquet but on a common, everyday (*yo no tsune*) stage, it is obviously unnecessary to limit oneself to the set forms of "happy wish."

One's style should be easy and full of graceful *yūgen*, and the piece selected should be suitable to the audience. A ballad (*ko-utai*) or dance-song (*kuse-mai*) of the day will be best. One should have in one's repertory a stock of such pieces and be ready to vary them according to the character of one's audience.

In the words and gestures (of a farce, *kyōgen*) there should be nothing low. The jokes and repartee should be such as suit the august ears of the nobles and gentry. On no account must vulgar words or gestures be introduced, however funny they may be. This advice must be carefully observed.

Introduction, Development and Climax must also be strictly adhered to when *dancing* at the Palace. If the chanting proceeds from an "introductory-mood," the dancing must belong to the same mood.... When one is suddenly summoned to perform at a riotous banquet, one must take into consideration the state of the noble gentlemen's spirits.

### *Imitation (Monomane)*

In imitation there should be a tinge of the "unlike." For if imitation be pressed too far it impinges on reality and ceases to give an impression of likeness. If one aims only at the beautiful, the "flower" is sure to appear. For example, in acting the part of an old man, the master actor tries to reproduce in his dance only the refinement and venerability of an old gentleman. If the actor is old himself, he need not think about producing an impression of old age....

The appearance of old age will often be best given by making all movements a little late, so that they come just after the musical beat. If the actor bears this in mind, he may be as lively and energetic as he pleases. For in old age the limbs are heavy and the ears slow; there is the will to move but not the corresponding capacity.

It is in such methods as this that true imitation lies.... Youthful movements made by an old person are, indeed, delightful; they are like flowers blossoming on an old tree.

If, because the actor has noticed that old men walk with bent knees and back and have shrunken frames, he simply imitates these characteristics, he may achieve an appearance of decrepitude, but it will be at the expense of the "flower." And if the "flower" be lacking there will be no beauty in his impersonation.

Women should be impersonated by a young actor.... It is very difficult to play the part of a Princess or lady-in-waiting, for little opportunity presents itself of studying their august behaviour and appearance. Great pains must be taken to see that robes and cloaks are worn in the correct way. These things do not depend on the actor's fancy but must be carefully ascertained.

The appearance of ordinary ladies such as one is used to see about one is easy to imitate.... In acting the part of a dancing-girl, mad-woman or the like, whether he carry the fan or some fancy thing (a flowering branch, for instance) the actor must carry it loosely; his skirts must trail low so as to hide his feet; his knees and back must not be bent, his body must be poised gracefully. As regards the way he holds himself—if he bends back, it looks bad when he faces the audience; if he stoops, it looks bad from behind. But he will not look like a woman if he holds his head too stiffly. His sleeves should be as long as possible, so that he never shows his fingers.

### *Apparitions*

Here the outward form is that of a ghost; but within is the heart of a man.

Such plays are generally in two parts. The beginning, in two or three sections, should be as short as possible. In the second half the *shite* (who has hitherto appeared to be a man) becomes definitely the ghost of a dead person.

Since no one has ever seen a real ghost from the Nether Regions, the actor may use his fancy, aiming only at the beautiful. To represent real life is far more difficult.

If ghosts are terrifying, they cease to be beautiful. For the terrifying and the beautiful are as far apart as black and white.

### *Child Plays*

In plays where a lost child is found by its parents, the writer should not introduce a scene where they clutch and cling to one another, sobbing and weeping....

Plays in which child-characters occur, even if well done, are always apt to make the audience exclaim in disgust, "Don't harrow our feelings in this way!"

### Restraint

In representing anger the actor should yet retain some gentleness in his mood, else he will portray not anger but violence.

In representing the mysterious (*yūgen*) he must not forget the principle of energy.

When the body is in violent action, the hands and feet must move as though by stealth. When the feet are in lively motion, the body must be held in quietness. Such things cannot be explained in writing but must be shown to the actor by actual demonstration.

It is above all in "architecture," in the relation of parts to the whole, that these poems are supreme. The early writers created a "form" or general pattern which the weakest writing cannot wholly rob of its beauty. The plays are like those carved lamp-bearing angels in the churches at Seville; a type of such beauty was created by a sculptor of the sixteenth century that even the most degraded modern descendant of these masterpieces retains a certain distinction of form.

First comes the *jidai* or opening-couplet, enigmatic, abrupt. Then in contrast to this vague shadow come the hard outlines of the *waki's* exposition, the formal naming of himself, his origin and destination. Then, shadowy again, the "song of travel," in which picture after picture dissolves almost before it is seen.

But all this has been mere introduction—the imagination has been quickened, the attention grasped in preparation for one thing only—the hero's entry. In the "first chant" in the dialogue which follows, in the successive dances and climax, this absolute mastery of construction is what has most struck me in reading the plays.

Again, Nō does not make a frontal attack on the emotions. It creeps at the subject warily. For the action, in the commonest class of play, does not take place before our eyes, but is lived through again in mimic and recital by the ghost of one of the participants in it. Thus we get no possibility of crude realities; a vision of life indeed, but painted with the colours of memory, longing or regret.

In a paper read before the Japan Society in 1919 I tried to illustrate this point by showing, perhaps in too fragmentary and disjointed a manner, how the theme of Webster's "Duchess of Malfi" would have been treated by a Nō writer. I said then (and the Society kindly allows me to repeat those remarks):

The plot of the play is thus summarized by Rupert Brooke in his "John Webster and the Elizabethan Drama": "The Duchess of Malfi is a young widow forbidden by her brothers, Ferdinand and the Cardinal, to marry again. They put a creature of theirs, Bosola, into her service as a spy. The Duchess loves and marries Antonio, her steward, and has three children. Bosola ultimately discovers and reports this. Antonio and the Duchess have to fly. The Duchess is captured, imprisoned and mentally tortured and put to death. Ferdinand goes mad. In the last Act he, the Cardinal, Antonio and Bosola are all killed with various confusions and in various horror."

Just as Webster took his themes from previous works (in this case from Painter's "Palace of Pleasure"), so the Nō plays took theirs from the Romances or "Monogatari." Let us reconstruct the "Duchess" as a Nō play, using Webster's text as our "Monogatari."

Great simplification is necessary, for the Nō play corresponds in length to one act of our five-act plays, and has no space for divagations. The comic is altogether excluded, being reserved for the *kyōgen* or farces which are played as interludes between the Nō.

The persons need not be more than two—the Pilgrim, who will act the part of *waki*, and the Duchess, who will be *shite* or Protagonist. The chorus takes no part in the action, but speaks for the *shite* while she is miming the more engrossing parts of her rôle.

The Pilgrim comes on to the stage and first pronounces in his *Jidai* or preliminary couplet, some Buddhist aphorism appropriate to the subject of the play. He then names himself to the audience thus (in prose):

"I am a pilgrim from Rome. I have visited all the other shrines of Italy, but have never been to Loretto. I will journey once to the shrine of Loretto."

Then follows (in verse) the "Song of Travel" in which the Pilgrim describes the scenes through which he passes on his way to the shrine. While he is kneeling at the shrine, *Shite* (the Protagonist) comes on to the stage. She is a young woman dressed, "contrary to the Italian fashion," in a loose-bodied gown. She carries in her hand an unripe apricot. She calls to the Pilgrim and engages him in conversation. He asks her if it were not at this shrine that the Duchess of Malfi took refuge. The young woman answers with a kind of eager exaltation, her words gradually rising from prose to poetry. She tells the story of the Duchess's flight, adding certain intimate touches which force the priest to ask abruptly, "Who is it that is speaking to me?"

And the girl shuddering (or it is hateful to a ghost to name itself) answers: "Hazukashi ya! I am the soul of the Duke Ferdinand's sister, she that was once called Duchess of Malfi. Love still ties my soul to the earth. *Toburai tabi-tamaye!* Pray for me, oh, pray for my release!"

Here closes the first part of the play. In the second the young ghost, her memory quickened by the Pilgrim's prayers (and this is part of the medicine of salvation), endures again the memory of her final hours. She mimes the action of kissing the hand (*vide* Act IV, Scene 1), finds it very cold:

I fear you are not well after your travel. Oh! horrible! What witchcraft does he practise, that he hath left A dead man's hand here?

And each successive scene of the torture is so vividly mimed that though it exists only in the Protagonist's brain, it is as real to the audience as if the figure of dead Antonio lay propped upon the stage, or as if the madmen were actually leaping and screaming before them.

Finally she acts the scene of her own execution:

Heaven-gates are not so highly arched  
As princes' palaces; they that enter there  
Must go upon their knees. [She kneels.]  
Come, violent death,  
Serve for mandragora to make me sleep!  
Go tell my brothers, when I am laid out,  
They then may feed in quiet.  
[She sinks her head and folds her hands.]

The chorus, taking up the word "quiet," chant a phrase from the Hokkekyō: *Sangai Mu-an*, "In the Three Worlds there is no quietness or rest."

But the Pilgrim's prayers have been answered. Her soul has broken its bonds: is free to depart. The ghost recedes, grows dimmer and dimmer, till at last

*use-ni-keri*  
*use-ni-keri*

it vanishes from sight.

### Note on Buddhism



IMAGE 8.3: NOH STAGE | An illustration depicting a traditional Noh stage and the styles and positions of the performers.

**Author:** User "Toto-tarou"  
**Source:** Wikimedia Commons  
**License:** CC BY-SA 3.0

between Buddha and man. These Bodhisattvas are beings who, though fit to receive Buddhahood, have of their own free will renounced it, that they may better alleviate the miseries of mankind.

Chief among them is Kwannon, called in India Avalokiteshvara, who appears in the world both in male and female form, but it is chiefly thought of as a woman in China and Japan; Goddess of Mercy, to whom men pray in war, storm, sickness or travail.

The doctrine of Karma and of the transmigration of souls was common both to the earlier and later forms of Buddhism. Man is born to an endless chain of re-incarnations, each one of which is, as it were, the fruit of seed sown in that which precedes.

The only escape from this “Wheel of Life and Death” lies in *satori*, “Enlightenment,” the realization that material phenomena are thoughts, not facts.

Each of the four chief sects which existed in medieval Japan had its own method of achieving this Enlightenment.

1. The Amidists sought to gain *satori* by the study of the *Hokke Kyō*, called in Sanskrit *Saddharma Pundarika Sūtra* or “Scripture of the Lotus of the True Law,” or even by the mere repetition of its complete title “Myōhō Renge Hokke Kyō.” Others of them maintained that the repetition of the formula “Praise to Amida Buddha” (*Namu Amida Butsu*) was in itself a sufficient means of salvation.
2. Once when Shākyamuni was preaching before a great multitude, he picked up a flower and twisted it in his fingers. The rest of his hearers saw no significance in the act and made no response; but the disciple Kāshyapa smiled.

In this brief moment a perception of transcendental truth had flashed from Buddha’s mind to the mind of his disciple. Thus Kāshyapa became the patriarch of the Zen Buddhists, who believe that Truth cannot be communicated by speech or writing, but that it lies hidden in the heart of each one of us and can be discovered by “Zen” or contemplative introspection.

At first sight there would not appear to be any possibility of reconciling the religion of the Zen Buddhists with that of the Amidists. Yet many Zen masters strove to combine the two faiths, teaching that Amida and his Western Paradise exist, not in time or space, but mystically enshrined in men’s hearts.

Zen denied the existence of Good and Evil, and was sometimes regarded as a dangerous sophistry by pious Buddhists of other sects, as, for example, in the story of Shunkwan and in *The Hōka Priests*, where the murderer’s interest in Zen doctrines is, I think, definitely regarded as a discreditable weakness and is represented as the cause of his undoing.

The only other play, among those I have here translated, which deals much with Zen tenets, is *Sotoba Komachi*. Here the priests represent the *Shingon Shū* or Mystic Sect, while Komachi, as becomes a poetess, defends the doctrines of Zen. For Zen was the religion of artists; it had inspired the painters and poets of the Sung dynasty in China; it was the religion of the great art-patrons who ruled Japan in the fifteenth century.

It was in the language of Zen that poetry and painting were discussed; and it was in a style tinged with Zen that Seami wrote of his own art. But the religion of the Nō plays is predominantly Amidist; it is the common, average Buddhism of medieval Japan.

3. I have said that the priests in *Sotoba Komachi* represent the Mystic Sect. The followers of this sect sought salvation by means of charms and spells, corruptions of Sanskrit formulae. Their principal Buddha was Dainichi, “The Great Sun.” To this sect belonged the Yamabushi, mountain ascetics referred to in *Tanikō* and other plays.
4. Mention must be made of the fusion between Buddhism and Shintō. The Tendai Sect which had its headquarters on Mount Hiyei preached an eclectic doctrine which aimed at becoming the universal religion of Japan. It combined the cults of native gods with a Buddhism tolerant in dogma, but magnificent in outward pomp, with a leaning towards the magical practices of Shingon.

The Little Saint of Yokawa in the play *Aoi no Uye* is an example of the Tendai ascetic, with his use of magical incantations.

*Hatsuyuki* appeared in “Poetry,” Chicago, and is here reprinted with the editor’s kind permission.

### Atsumori, Ikuta, and Tsunemasa

In the eleventh century two powerful clans, the Taira and the Minamoto, contended for mastery. In 1181 Kiyomori the chief of the Tairas died, and from that time their fortunes declined. In 1183 they were forced to flee from Kyōto, carrying with them the infant Emperor. After many hardships and wanderings they camped on the shores of Suma, where they were protected by their fleet.

Early in 1184 the Minamotos attacked and utterly routed them at the Battle of Ichi-no-Tani, near the woods of Ikuta. At this battle fell Atsumori, the nephew of Kiyomori, and his brother Tsunemasa.

When Kumagai, who had slain Atsumori, bent over him to examine the body, he found lying beside him a bamboo-flute wrapped in brocade. He took the flute and gave it to his son.

The bay of Suma is associated in the mind of a Japanese reader not only with this battle but also with the stories of Prince Genji and Prince Yukihira.

**“ATSUMORI” FROM THE NŌ PLAYS OF JAPAN**

Seami, Translated by Arthur Waley

License: Public Domain

**PERSONS:**

The Priest Rensei (formerly the warrior Kumaga).  
 A Young Reaper, *who turns out to be the ghost of Atsumori.*  
 His Companion.  
 Chorus.

**PRIEST**

Life is a lying dream, he only wakes  
 Who casts the World aside.

I am Kumagai no Naozane, a man of the country of Musashi.

I have left my home and call myself the priest Rensei; this I have done because of my grief at the death of Atsumori, who fell in battle by my hand. Hence it comes that I am dressed in priestly guise. And now I am going down to Ichi-no-Tani to pray for the salvation of Atsumori's soul.

[*He walks slowly across the stage, singing a song descriptive of his journey.*]

I have come so fast that here I am already at Ichi-no-Tani, in the country of Tsu.

Truly the past returns to my mind as though it were a thing of to-day.

But listen! I hear the sound of a flute coming from a knoll of rising ground. I will wait here till the flute-player passes, and ask him to tell me the story of this place.

**REAPERS [together]**

To the music of the reaper's flute  
 No song is sung  
 But the sighing of wind in the fields.

**YOUNG REAPER**

They that were reaping,  
 Reaping on that hill,  
 Walk now through the fields  
 Homeward, for it is dusk.

**REAPERS [together]**

Short is the way that leads  
 From the sea of Suma back to my home.  
 This little journey, up to the hill  
 And down to the shore again, and up to the hill—  
 This is my life, and the sum of hateful tasks.  
 If one should ask me I too would answer  
 That on the shores of Suma I live in sadness.  
 Yet if any guessed my name,  
 Then might I too have friends.  
 But now from my deep misery  
 Even those that were dearest  
 Are grown estranged.  
 Here must I dwell abandoned  
 To one thought's anguish:  
 That I must dwell here.

**PRIEST**

Hey, you reapers! I have a question to ask you.

YOUNG REAPER

Is it to us you are speaking? What do you wish to know?

PRIEST

Was it one of you who was playing on the flute just now?

YOUNG REAPER

Yes, it was we who were playing.

PRIEST

It was a pleasant sound, and all the pleasanter because one does not look for such music from men of your condition.

YOUNG REAPER

Unlooked for from men of our condition, you say!

Have you not read:—

“Do not envy what is above you

Nor despise what is below you”?

Moreover the songs of woodmen and the flute-playing of herdsmen,

Flute-playing even of reapers and songs of wood-fellers

Through poets' verses are known to all the world.

Wonder not to hear among us

The sound of a bamboo-flute.

PRIEST

You are right. Indeed it is as you have told me.

Songs of woodmen and flute-playing of herdsmen...

REAPER

Flute-playing of reapers...

PRIEST

Songs of wood-fellers...

REAPER

Guide us on our passage through this sad world.

PRIEST

Song...

REAPER

And dance...

PRIEST

And the flute...

REAPER

And music of many instruments...

CHORUS

These are the pastimes that each chooses to his taste.

Of floating bamboo-wood

Many are the famous flutes that have been made;

Little-Branch and Cicada-Cage,

And as for the reaper's flute, Its name is Green-leaf;

On the shore of Sumiyoshi

The Corean flute they play.

And here on the shore of Suma  
On Stick of the Salt-kilns  
The fishers blow their tune.

PRIEST

How strange it is! The other reapers have all gone home, but you alone stay loitering here. How is that?

REAPER

How is it, you ask? I am seeking for a prayer in the voice of the evening waves. Perhaps you will pray the Ten Prayers for me?

PRIEST

I can easily pray the Ten Prayers for you, if you will tell me who you are.

REAPER

To tell you the truth—I am one of the family of Lord Atsumori.

PRIEST

One of Atsumori's family? How glad I am!  
Then the priest joined his hands [*he kneels down*] and prayed:—

NAMU AMIDABU

Praise to Amida Buddha!  
"If I attain to Buddhahood,  
In the whole world and its ten spheres  
Of all that dwell here none shall call on my name  
And be rejected or cast aside."

CHORUS

"Oh, reject me not!  
One cry suffices for salvation,  
Yet day and night  
Your prayers will rise for me.  
Happy am I, for though you know not my name,  
Yet for my soul's deliverance  
At dawn and dusk henceforward I know that you will pray."  
So he spoke. Then vanished and was seen no more.

[*Here follows the Interlude between the two Acts, in which a recitation concerning Atsumori's death takes place. These interludes are subject to variation and are not considered part of the literary text of the play.*]

PRIEST

Since this is so, I will perform all night the rites of prayer for the dead, and calling upon Amida's name will pray again for the salvation of Atsumori.

[*The ghost of Atsumori appears, dressed as a young warrior.*]

ATSUMORI

Would you know who I am  
That like the watchmen at Suma Pass  
Have wakened at the cry of sea-birds roaming  
Upon Awaji shore?  
Listen, Rensei. I am Atsumori.

PRIEST

How strange! All this while I have never stopped beating my gong and performing the rites of the Law. I cannot for a moment have dozed, yet I thought that Atsumori was standing before me. Surely it was a dream.

ATSUMORI

Why need it be a dream?  
It is to clear the karma of my waking life that  
I am come here in visible form before you.

PRIEST

Is it not written that one prayer will wipe away ten thousand sins?  
Ceaselessly I have performed the ritual of the  
Holy Name that clears all sin away.  
After such prayers, what evil can be left?  
Though you should be sunk in sin as deep...

ATSUMORI

As the sea by a rocky shore,  
Yet should I be salved by prayer.

PRIEST

And that my prayers should save you...

ATSUMORI

This too must spring  
From kindness of a former life.

PRIEST

Once enemies ...

ATSUMORI

But now...

PRIEST

In truth may we be named...

ATSUMORI

Friends in Buddha's Law.

CHORUS

There is a saying, "Put away from you a wicked friend; summon to your side a virtuous enemy." For you it was said, and you have proven it true.

And now come tell with us the tale of your confession, while the night is still dark.

He bids the flowers of Spring  
Mount the tree-top that men may raise their eyes  
And walk on upward paths;  
He bids the moon in autumn waves be drowned  
In token that he visits laggard men  
And leads them out from valleys of despair.

ATSUMORI

Now the clan of Taira, building wall to wall,  
Spread over the earth like the leafy branches of a great tree:

CHORUS

Yet their prosperity lasted but for a day;  
It was like the flower of the convolvulus.  
There was none to tell them  
That glory flashes like sparks from flint-stone,  
And after,—darkness.  
Oh wretched, the life of men!

## ATSUMORI

When they were on high they afflicted the humble;  
 When they were rich they were reckless in pride.  
 And so for twenty years and more  
 They ruled this land.  
 But truly a generation passes like the space of a dream.  
 The leaves of the autumn of Juyei  
 Were tossed by the four winds;  
 Scattered, scattered (like leaves too) floated their ships.  
 And they, asleep on the heaving sea, not even in dreams  
 Went back to home.  
 Caged birds longing for the clouds,—  
 Wild geese were they rather, whose ranks are broken  
 As they fly to southward on their doubtful journey.  
 So days and months went by; Spring came again  
 And for a little while  
 Here dwelt they on the shore of Suma  
 At the first valley.  
 From the mountain behind us the winds blew down  
 Till the fields grew wintry again.  
 Our ships lay by the shore, where night and day  
 The sea-gulls cried and salt waves washed on our sleeves.  
 We slept with fishers in their huts  
 On pillows of sand.  
 We knew none but the people of Suma.  
 And when among the pine-trees  
 The evening smoke was rising,  
 Brushwood, as they call it,  
 Brushwood we gathered  
 And spread for carpet.  
 Sorrowful we lived  
 On the wild shore of Suma,  
 Till the clan Taira and all its princes  
 Were but villagers of Suma.

But on the night of the sixth day of the second month  
 My father Tsunemori gathered us together.  
 "To-morrow," he said, "we shall fight our last fight.  
 To-night is all that is left us."  
 We sang songs together, and danced.

## PRIEST

Yes, I remember; we in our siege-camp  
 Heard the sound of music  
 Echoing from your tents that night;  
 There was the music of a flute...

## ATSUMORI

The bamboo-flute! I wore it when I died.

## PRIEST

We heard the singing...

## ATSUMORI

Songs and ballads...

## PRIEST

Many voices

## ATSUMORI

Singing to one measure.

[*Atsumori dances.*]

First comes the Royal Boat.

## CHORUS

The whole clan has put its boats to sea.  
He will not be left behind;  
He runs to the shore.  
But the Royal Boat and the soldiers' boats  
Have sailed far away.

## ATSUMORI

What can he do?  
He spurs his horse into the waves.  
He is full of perplexity.  
And then

## CHORUS

He looks behind him and sees  
That Kumagai pursues him;  
He cannot escape.  
Then Atsumori turns his horse  
Knee-deep in the lashing waves,  
And draws his sword.  
Twice, three times he strikes; then, still saddled,  
In close fight they twine; roll headlong together  
Among the surf of the shore.  
So Atsumori fell and was slain, but now the  
Wheel of Fate Has turned and brought him back.  
[*Atsumori rises from the ground and advances toward the Priest with uplifted sword.*]

“There is my enemy,” he cries, and would strike,  
But the other is grown gentle  
And calling on Buddha’s name  
Has obtained salvation for his foe;  
So that they shall be re-born together  
On one lotus-seat.  
“No, Rensei is not my enemy.  
Pray for me again, oh pray for me again.”

## IKUTA

License: Public Domain

Zembō Motoyasu, Translated by Arthur Waley

## PERSONS:

Priest (*a follower of Hōnen Shōnin*).

Atsumori’s Child.

Atsumori.

Chorus.

## PRIEST

I am one that serves Hōnen Shōnin of Kurodani; and as for this child here,—once when Hōnen was on a visit to the Temple of Kamō he saw a box lying under a trailing fir-tree; and when he raised the lid, what should he find inside but a lovely man-child one year old! It did not seem to be more than a common foundling, but my master in

his compassion took the infant home with him. Ever since then he has had it in his care, doing all that was needful for it; and now the boy is over ten years old.

But it is a hard thing to have no father or mother, so one day after his preaching the Shōnin told the child's story. And sure enough a young woman stepped out from among the hearers and said it was her child. And when he took her aside and questioned her, he found that the child's father was Taira no Atsumori, who had fallen in battle at Ichi-no-Tani years ago. When the boy was told of this, he longed earnestly to see his father's face, were it but in a dream, and the Shōnin bade him go and pray at the shrine of Kamo. He was to go every day for a week, and this is the last day.

That is why I have brought him out with me.  
But here we are at the Kamo shrine.  
Pray well, boy, pray well!

## BOY

How fills my heart with awe  
When I behold the crimson palisade  
Of this abode of gods!  
Oh may my heart be clean  
As the River of Ablution;  
And the God's kindness deep  
As its unfathomed waters. Show to me,  
Though it were but in dream,  
My father's face and form.  
Is not my heart so ground away with prayer,  
So smooth that it will slip  
Unfelt into the favour of the gods?  
But thou too, Censor of our prayers,  
God of Tadasu, on the gods prevail  
That what I crave may be!  
How strange! While I was praying I fell half-asleep and had a wonderful dream.

## PRIEST

Tell me your wonderful dream.

## BOY

A strange voice spoke to me from within the Treasure Hall, saying, "If you are wanting, though it were but in a dream, to see your father's face, go down from here to the woods of Ikuta in the country of Settsu." That is the marvellous dream I had.

## PRIEST

It is indeed a wonderful message that the God has sent you. And why should I go back at once to Kurodani? I had best take you straight to the forest of Ikuta. Let us be going.

PRIEST [*describing the journey*]

From the shrine of Kamo,  
From under the shadow of the hills,  
We set out swiftly;  
Past Yamazaki to the fog-bound  
Shores of Minasé;  
And onward where the gale  
Tears travellers' coats and winds about their bones.  
"Autumn has come to woods where yesterday  
We might have plucked the green."  
To Settsu, to those woods of Ikuta  
Lo! We are come.

We have gone so fast that here we are already at the woods of Ikuta in the country of Settsu. I have heard tell in

the Capital of the beauty of these woods and the river that runs through them. But what I see now surpasses all that I have heard.

Look! Those meadows must be the Downs of Ikuta. Let us go nearer and admire them.  
But while we have been going about looking at one view and another, the day has dusked.  
I think I see a light over there. There must be a house. Let us go to it and ask for lodging.

ATSUMORI [*speaking from inside a hut*]

Beauty, perception, knowledge, motion, consciousness,—  
The Five Attributes of Being,—  
All are vain mockery.  
How comes it that men prize  
So weak a thing as body?  
For the soul that guards it from corruption  
Suddenly to the night-moon flies,  
And the poor naked ghost wails desolate  
In the autumn wind.  
Oh! I am lonely. I am lonely!

## PRIEST

How strange! Inside that grass-hut I see a young soldier dressed in helmet and breastplate. What can he be doing there?

## ATSUMORI

Oh foolish men, was it not to meet me that you came to this place? I am—oh! I am ashamed to say it,—I am the ghost of what once was ... Atsumori.

## BOY

Atsumori? My father...

## CHORUS

And lightly he ran,  
Plucked at the warrior's sleeve,  
And though his tears might seem like the long woe  
Of nightingales that weep,  
Yet were they tears of meeting-joy,  
Of happiness too great for human heart.  
So think we, yet oh that we might change  
This fragile dream of joy  
Into the lasting love of waking life!

## ATSUMORI

Oh pitiful!  
To see this child, born after me,  
Darling that should be gay as a flower,  
Walking in tattered coat of old black cloth.  
Alas!  
Child, when your love of me  
Led you to Kamo shrine, praying to the God  
That, though but in a dream,  
You might behold my face,  
The God of Kamo, full of pity, came  
To Yama, king of Hell.  
King Yama listened and ordained for me  
A moment's respite, but hereafter, never.

## CHORUS

“The moon is sinking.  
Come while the night is dark,” he said,  
“I will tell my tale.”

## ATSUMORI

When the house of Taira was in its pride,  
 When its glory was young,  
 Among the flowers we sported,  
 Among birds, wind and moonlight;  
 With pipes and strings, with song and verse  
 We welcomed Springs and Autumns.  
 Till at last, because our time was come,  
 Across the bridges of Kiso a host unseen  
 Swept and devoured us.  
 Then the whole clan  
 Our lord leading  
 Fled from the City of Flowers.  
 By paths untrodden  
 To the Western Sea our journey brought us.  
 Lakes and hills we crossed  
 Till we ourselves grew to be like wild men.  
 At last by mountain ways—  
 We too tossed hither and thither like its waves—  
 To Suma came we,  
 To the First Valley and the woods of Ikuta.  
 And now while all of us,  
 We children of Taira, were light of heart  
 Because our homes were near,  
 Suddenly our foes in great strength appeared.

## CHORUS

Noriyori, Yoshitsune,—their hosts like clouds,  
 Like mists of spring.  
 For a little while we fought them,  
 But the day of our House was ended,  
 Our hearts weakened  
 That had been swift as arrows from the bowstring.  
 We scattered, scattered; till at last  
 To the deep waters of the Field of Life.  
 We came, but how we found there Death, not Life,  
 What profit were it to tell?

## ATSUMORI

Who is that?  
 [Pointing in terror at a figure which he sees off the stage.]

Can it be Yama's messenger? He comes to tell me that I have out-stayed my time. The Lord of Hell is angry: he asks why I am late?

## CHORUS

So he spoke. But behold  
 Suddenly black clouds rise,  
 Earth and sky resound with the clash of arms;  
 War-demons innumerable  
 Flash fierce sparks from brandished spears.

## ATSUMORI

The Shura foes who night and day  
 Come thick about me!

## CHORUS

He waves his sword and rushes among them,  
Hither and thither he runs slashing furiously;  
Fire glints upon the steel.  
But in a little while  
The dark clouds recede;  
The demons have vanished,  
The moon shines unsullied;  
The sky is ready for dawn.

## ATSUMORA

Oh! I am ashamed.... And the child to see me so....

## CHORUS

“To see my misery!  
I must go back.  
Oh pray for me; pray for me  
When I am gone,” he said,  
And weeping, weeping,  
Dropped the child’s hand.  
He has faded; he dwindle  
Like the dew from rush-leaves  
Of hazy meadows.  
His form has vanished.

## TSUNEMASA

License: Public Domain

Seami, Translated by Arthur Waley

## PERSONS:

The Priest Gyōkei.  
The Ghost of Taira No Tsunemasa.  
Chorus.

## GYŌKEI

I am Gyōkei, priest of the imperial temple Ninnaji. You must know that there was a certain prince of the House of Taira named Tsunemasa, Lord of Tajima, who since his boyhood has enjoyed beyond all precedent the favour of our master the Emperor. But now he has been killed at the Battle of the Western Seas.

It was to this Tsunemasa in his lifetime that the Emperor had given the lute called Green Hill. And now my master bids me take it and dedicate it to Buddha, performing a liturgy of flutes and strings for the salvation of Tsunemasa’s soul. And that was my purpose in gathering these musicians together.

Truly it is said that strangers who shelter under the same tree or draw water from the same pool will be friends in another life. How much the more must intercourse of many years, kindness and favour so deep...

Surely they will be heard,  
The prayers that all night long  
With due performance of rites  
I have reverently repeated in this Palace  
For the salvation of Tsunemasa  
And for the awakening of his soul.

## CHORUS

And, more than all, we dedicate  
The lute Green Hill for this dead man;  
While pipe and flute are joined to sounds of prayer.  
For night and day the Gate of Law

Stands open and the Universal Road  
Rejects no wayfarer.

TSUNEMASA [*speaking off the stage*]

“The wind blowing through withered trees: rain from a cloudless sky.  
The moon shining on level sands: frost on a summer’s night.”  
Frost lying... but I, because I could not lie at rest,  
Am come back to the World for a while,  
Like a shadow that steals over the grass.  
I am like dews that in the morning  
Still cling to the grasses. Oh pitiful the longing  
That has beset me!

GYŌKEI

How strange! Within the flame of our candle that is burning low because the night is far spent, suddenly I seemed to see a man’s shadow dimly appearing. Who can be here?

TSUNEMASA [*his shadow disappearing*]

I am the ghost of Tsunemasa. The sound of your prayers has brought me in visible shape before you.

GYŌKEI

“I am the ghost of Tsunemasa,” he said, but when I looked to where the voice had sounded nothing was there, neither substance nor shadow!

TSUNEMASA

Only a voice,

GYŌKEI

A dim voice whispers where the shadow of a man Visibly lay, but when I looked

TSUNEMASA

It had vanished—

GYŌKEI

This flickering form ...

TSUNEMASA

Like haze over the fields.

CHORUS

Only as a tricking magic,  
A bodiless vision,  
Can he hover in the world of his lifetime,  
Swift-changing Tsunemasa.  
By this name we call him, yet of the body  
That men named so, what is left but longing?  
What but the longing to look again, through the wall of death,  
On one he loved?  
“Sooner shall the waters in its garden cease to flow  
Than I grow weary of living in the Palace of my Lord.”  
Like a dream he has come,  
Like a morning dream.

GYŌKEI

How strange! When the form of Tsunemasa had vanished, his voice lingered and spoke to me! Am I dreaming or waking? I cannot tell. But this I know,—that by the power of my incantations I have had converse with the dead. Oh! marvellous potency of the Law!

## TSUNEMASA

It was long ago that I came to the Palace. I was but a boy then, but all the world knew me; for I was marked with the love of our Lord, with the favour of an Emperor. And, among many gifts, he gave to me once while I was in the World this lute which you have dedicated. My fingers were ever on its strings.

## CHORUS

Plucking them even as now  
 This music plucks at your heart;  
 The sound of the plectrum, then as now  
 Divine music fulfilling  
 The vows of Sarasvati.  
 But this Tsunemasa,  
 Was he not from the days of his childhood pre-eminent  
 In faith, wisdom, benevolence,  
 Honour and courtesy; yet for his pleasure  
 Ever of birds and flowers,  
 Of wind and moonlight making  
 Ballads and songs to join their harmony  
 To pipes and lutes? So springs and autumns passed he.  
 But in a World that is as dew,  
 As dew on the grasses, as foam upon the waters,  
 What flower lasteth?

## GYŌKEI

For the dead man's sake we play upon this lute Green Hill that he loved when he was in the World. We follow the lute-music with a concord of many instruments.

[*Music.*]

## TSUNEMASA

And while they played the dead man stole up behind them. Though he could not be seen by the light of the candle, they felt him pluck the lute-strings....

## GYŌKEI

It is midnight. He is playing *Yabanraku*, the dance of midnight-revel. And now that we have shaken sleep from our eyes...

## TSUNEMASA

The sky is clear, yet there is a sound as of sudden rain....

## GYŌKEI

Rain beating carelessly on trees and grasses. What season's music ought we to play?

## TSUNEMASA

No. It is not rain. Look! At the cloud's fringe

## CHORUS

The moon undimmed  
 Hangs over the pine-woods of Narabi Hills.  
 It was the wind you heard;  
 The wind blowing through the pine-leaves  
 Pattered, like the falling of winter rain.  
 O wonderful hour!  
 "The big strings crashed and sobbed  
 Like the falling of winter rain.  
 And the little strings whispered secretly together.  
 The first and second string  
 Were like a wind sweeping through pine-woods,

Murmuring disjointedly.  
 The third and fourth string  
 Were like the voice of a caged stork  
 Crying for its little ones at night  
 In low, dejected notes.”  
 The night must not cease.  
 The cock shall not crow  
 And put an end to his wandering.

TSUNEMASA

“One note of the phoenix-flute

CHORUS

Shakes the autumn clouds from the mountain-side.”  
 The phoenix and his mate swoop down  
 Charmed by its music, beat their wings  
 And dance in rapture, perched upon the swaying boughs  
 Of kiri and bamboo.  
 [Dance.]

TSUNEMASA

Oh terrible anguish!

For a little while I was back in the World and my heart set on its music, on revels of midnight. But now the hate is rising in me....

GYŌKEI

The shadow that we saw before is still visible. Can it be Tsunemasa?

TSUNEMASA

Oh! I am ashamed; I must not let them see me. Put out your candle.

CHORUS

“Let us turn away from the candle and watch together  
 The midnight moon.”  
 Lo, he who holds the moon,  
 The god Indra, in battle appeareth  
 Warring upon demons.  
 Fire leaps from their swords,  
 The sparks of their own anger fall upon them like rain.  
 To wound another he draws his sword,  
 But it is from his own flesh  
 That the red waves flow;  
 Like flames they cover him.  
 “Oh, I am ashamed of the woes that consume me.  
 No man must see me.  
 I will put out the candle!” he said;  
 For a foolish man is like a summer moth that flies into the flame.  
 The wind that blew out the candle  
 Carried him away.  
 In the darkness his ghost has vanished.  
 The shadow of his ghost has vanished.

## THE TALE OF GENJI

Murasaki Shikibu (ca. 978-1014 C.E.)

Composed ca. 1010 C.E.

Japan

*The Tale of Genji*, regarded as the world's first novel, is a Japanese *monogatari* (i.e., a long, Japanese, fictional narrative of different literary elements), written by Murasaki Shikibu, an eleventh-century court lady. Written in the Heian period (794-1185 C.E.) in Japan, when Chinese was the serious scholarly language and prose was considered inferior to poetry, *The Tale of Genji* revealed a vast knowledge of both Chinese and Japanese poetry in graceful prose. The novel is about Prince Genji and his legacy in fifty-four chapters and entails about eight hundred *waka* (a poetic form consisting of 31 syllables) courtly poems. It sheds light on the aristocratic culture in early Heian Japan and conveys sensitive narratives about human emotions and natural beauty. The first complete English translation (1925-33 C.E.) was by Arthur Waley, and other English translations include Edward Seidensticker's (1976) and Royall Tyler's (2001).

*Written by Kyouunghye Kwon*

### “GENJI MONOGATARI” SELECTIONS FROM JAPANESE LITERATURE

License: Public Domain

Murasaki Shikib, Translated by Suyematz Kenchio

#### Chapter I

##### *The Chamber of Kiri*

In the reign of a certain Emperor, whose name is unknown to us, there was, among the Niogo and Koyi of the Imperial Court, one who, though she was not of high birth, enjoyed the full tide of Royal favor. Hence her superiors, each one of whom had always been thinking—"I shall be the *one*," gazed upon her disdainfully with malignant eyes, and her equals and inferiors were more indignant still.

Such being the state of affairs, the anxiety which she had to endure was great and constant, and this was probably the reason why her health was at last so much affected, that she was often compelled to absent herself from Court, and to retire to the residence of her mother.

Her father, who was a Dainagon, was dead; but her mother, being a woman of good sense, gave her every possible guidance in the due performance of Court ceremony, so that in this respect she seemed but little different from those whose fathers and mothers were still alive to bring them before public notice, yet, nevertheless, her friendliness made her oftentimes feel very diffident from the want of any patron of influence.

These circumstances, however, only tended to make the favor shown to her by the Emperor wax warmer and warmer, and it was even shown to such an extent as to become a warning to after-generations. There had been instances in China in which favoritism such as this had caused national disturbance and disaster; and thus the matter became a subject of public animadversion, and it seemed not improbable that people would begin to allude even to the example of Yo-ki-hi.

In due course, and in consequence, we may suppose, of the Divine blessing on the sincerity of their affection, a jewel of a little prince was born to her. The first prince who had been born to the Emperor was the child of Koki-den-Niogo, the daughter of the Udaijin (a great officer of State). Not only was he first in point of age, but his influence on his mother's side was so great that public opinion had almost unanimously fixed upon him as heir-apparent. Of this the Emperor was fully conscious, and he only regarded the new-born child with that affection which one lavishes on a domestic favorite. Nevertheless, the mother of the first prince had, not unnaturally, a foreboding that unless matters were managed adroitly her child might be superseded by the younger one. She, we may observe, had been established at Court before any other lady, and had more children than one. The Emperor, therefore, was obliged to treat her with due respect, and reproaches from her always affected him more keenly than those of any others.

To return to her rival. Her constitution was extremely delicate, as we have seen already, and she was surrounded by those who would fain lay bare, so to say, her hidden scars. Her apartments in the palace were Kiri-Tsubo (the chamber of Kiri); so called from the trees that were planted around. In visiting her there the Emperor had to pass



**IMAGE 8.4: MURASAKI SHIKIBU** | Statue of Lady Murasaki kneeling down, holding folds of fabric.

**Author:** User "FlickreviewR"

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** CC BY-SA 2.0

of the first Prince. In fact, all available treasures were exhausted on the occasion. And again the public manifested its disapprobation. In the summer of the same year the Kiri-Tsubo-Koyi became ill, and wished to retire from the palace. The Emperor, however, who was accustomed to see her indisposed, strove to induce her to remain. But her illness increased day by day; and she had drooped and pined away until she was now but a shadow of her former self. She made scarcely any response to the affectionate words and expressions of tenderness which her Royal lover caressingly bestowed upon her. Her eyes were half-closed: she lay like a fading flower in the last stage of exhaustion, and she became so much enfeebled that her mother appeared before the Emperor and entreated with tears that she might be allowed to leave. Distracted by his vain endeavors to devise means to aid her, the Emperor at length ordered a Te-gruma to be in readiness to convey her to her own home, but even then he went to her apartment and cried despairingly: "Did not we vow that we would neither of us be either before or after the other even in travelling the last long journey of life? And can you find it in your heart to leave me now?" Sadly and tenderly looking up, she thus replied, with almost failing breath:—

"Since my departure for this dark journey, Makes you so sad and lonely, Fain would I stay though weak and weary, And live for your sake only!"

"Had I but known this before—"

She appeared to have much more to say, but was too weak to continue. Overpowered with grief, the Emperor at one moment would fain accompany her himself, and at another moment would have her remain to the end where she then was.

At the last, her departure was hurried, because the exorcism for the sick had been appointed to take place on that evening at her home, and she went. The child Prince, however, had been left in the Palace, as his mother wished, even at that time, to make her withdrawal as privately as possible, so as to avoid any invidious observations on the part of her rivals. To the Emperor the night now became black with gloom. He sent messenger after messenger to make inquiries, and could not await their return with patience. Midnight came, and with it the sound of lamentation. The messenger, who could do nothing else, hurried back with the sad tidings of the truth. From that moment the mind of the Emperor was darkened, and he confined himself to his private apartments.

He would still have kept with himself the young Prince now motherless, but there was no precedent for this, and it was arranged that he should be sent to his grandmother for the mourning. The child, who understood nothing, looked with amazement at the sad countenances of the Emperor, and of those around him. All separations have their sting, but sharp indeed was the sting in a case like this.

Now the funeral took place. The weeping and wailing mother, who might have longed to mingle in the same flames, entered a carriage, accompanied by female mourners. The procession arrived at the cemetery of Otagi, and the solemn rites commenced. What were then the thoughts of the desolate mother? The image of her dead daughter

before several other chambers, whose occupants universally chafed when they saw it. And again, when it was her turn to attend upon the Emperor, it often happened that they played off mischievous pranks upon her, at different points in the corridor, which leads to the Imperial quarters. Sometimes they would soil the skirts of her attendants, sometimes they would shut against her the door of the covered portico, where no other passage existed; and thus, in every possible way, they one and all combined to annoy her.

The Emperor at length became aware of this, and gave her, for her special chamber, another apartment, which was in the Koro-Den, and which was quite close to those in which he himself resided. It had been originally occupied by another lady who was now removed, and thus fresh resentment was aroused.

When the young Prince was three years old the Hakamagi took place. It was celebrated with a pomp scarcely inferior to that which adorned the investiture

was still vividly present to her—still seemed animated with life. She must see her remains become ashes to convince herself that she was really dead. During the ceremony, an Imperial messenger came from the Palace, and invested the dead with the title of Sammi. The letters patent were read, and listened to in solemn silence. The Emperor conferred this title now in regret that during her lifetime he had not even promoted her position from a Koyi to a Niogo, and wishing at this last moment to raise her title at least one step higher. Once more several tokens of disapprobation were manifested against the proceeding. But, in other respects, the beauty of the departed, and her gracious bearing, which had ever commanded admiration, made people begin to think of her with sympathy. It was the excess of the Emperor's favor which had created so many detractors during her lifetime; but now even rivals felt pity for her; and if any did not, it was in the Koki-den. "When one is no more, the memory becomes so dear," may be an illustration of a case such as this.

Some days passed, and due requiem services were carefully performed. The Emperor was still plunged in thought, and no society had attractions for him. His constant consolation was to send messengers to the grandmother of the child, and to make inquiries after them. It was now autumn, and the evening winds blew chill and cold. The Emperor—who, when he saw the first Prince, could not refrain from thinking of the younger one—became more thoughtful than ever; and, on this evening, he sent Yugei-no Miobu to repeat his inquiries. She went as the new moon just rose, and the Emperor stood and contemplated from his veranda the prospect spread before him. At such moments he had usually been surrounded by a few chosen friends, one of whom was almost invariably his lost love. Now she was no more. The thrilling notes of her music, the touching strains of her melodies, stole over him in his dark and dreary reverie.

The Miobu arrived at her destination; and, as she drove in, a sense of sadness seized upon her.

The owner of the house had long been a widow; but the residence, in former times, had been made beautiful for the pleasure of her only daughter. Now, bereaved of this daughter, she dwelt alone; and the grounds were overgrown with weeds, which here and there lay prostrated by the violence of the winds; while over them, fair as elsewhere, gleamed the mild lustre of the impartial moon. The Miobu entered, and was led into a front room in the southern part of the building. At first the hostess and the messenger were equally at a loss for words. At length the silence was broken by the hostess, who said:—

"Already have I felt that I have lived too long, but doubly do I feel it now that I am visited by such a messenger as you." Here she paused, and seemed unable to contend with her emotion.

"When Naishi-no-Ske returned from you," said the Miobu, "she reported to the Emperor that when she saw you, face to face, her sympathy for you was irresistible. I, too, see now how true it is!" A moment's hesitation, and she proceeded to deliver the Imperial message:—

"The Emperor commanded me to say that for some time he had wandered in his fancy, and imagined he was but in a dream; and that, though he was now more tranquil, he could not find that it was only a dream. Again, that there is no one who can really sympathize with him; and he hopes that you will come to the Palace, and talk with him. His Majesty said also that the absence of the Prince made him anxious, and that he is desirous that you should speedily make up your mind. In giving me this message, he did not speak with readiness. He seemed to fear to be considered unmanly, and strove to exercise reserve. I could not help experiencing sympathy with him, and hurried away here, almost fearing that, perhaps, I had not quite caught his full meaning."

So saying, she presented to her a letter from the Emperor. The lady's sight was dim and indistinct. Taking it, therefore, to the lamp, she said, "Perhaps the light will help me to decipher," and then read as follows, much in unison with the oral message: "I thought that time only would assuage my grief; but time only brings before me more vividly my recollection of the lost one. Yet, it is inevitable. How is my boy? Of him, too, I am always thinking. Time once was when we both hoped to bring him up together. May he still be to you a memento of his mother!"

Such was the brief outline of the letter, and it contained the following:—

"The sound of the wind is dull and drear Across Miyagi's dewy lea, And makes me mourn for the motherless deer That sleeps beneath the Hagi tree."

She put gently the letter aside, and said, "Life and the world are irksome to me; and you can see, then, how reluctantly I should present myself at the Palace. I cannot go myself, though it is painful to me to seem to neglect the honored command. As for the little Prince, I know not why he thought of it, but he seems quite willing to go. This is very natural. Please to inform his Majesty that this is our position. Very possibly, when one remembers the birth of the young Prince, it would not be well for him to spend too much of his time as he does now."

Then she wrote quickly a short answer, and handed it to the Miobu. At this time her grandson was sleeping soundly.

"I should like to see the boy awake, and to tell the Emperor all about him, but he will already be impatiently awaiting my return," said the messenger. And she prepared to depart.

"It would be a relief to me to tell you how a mother laments over her departed child. Visit me, then, sometimes, if you can, as a friend, when you are not engaged or pressed for time. Formerly, when you came here, your visit was

ever glad and welcome; now I see in you the messenger of woe. More and more my life seems aimless to me. From the time of my child's birth, her father always looked forward to her being presented at Court, and when dying he repeatedly enjoined me to carry out that wish. You know that my daughter had no patron to watch over her, and I well knew how difficult would be her position among her fellow-maidens.

Yet, I did not disobey her father's request, and she went to Court. There the Emperor showed her a kindness beyond our hopes. For the sake of that kindness she uncomplainingly endured all the cruel taunts of envious companions. But their envy ever deepening, and her troubles ever increasing, at last she passed away, worn out, as it were, with care. When I think of the matter in that light, the kindest favors seem to me fraught with misfortune. Ah! that the blind affection of a mother should make me talk in this way!"

"The thoughts of his Majesty may be even as your own," said the Miobu. "Often when he alluded to his overpowering affection for her, he said that perhaps all this might have been because their love was destined not to last long. And that though he ever strove not to injure any subject, yet for Kiri-Tsubo, and for her alone, he had sometimes caused the ill-will of others; that when all this has been done, she was no more! All this he told me in deep gloom, and added that it made him ponder on their previous existence."

The night was now far advanced, and again the Miobu rose to take leave. The moon was sailing down westward and the cool breeze was waving the herbage to and fro, in which numerous *mushi* were plaintively singing. The messenger, being still somehow unready to start, hummed—

"Fain would one weep the whole night long,  
As weeps the Sudu-Mushi's song,  
Who chants her melancholy lay,  
Till night and darkness pass away."

As she still lingered, the lady took up the refrain—

"To the heath where the Sudu-Mushi sings,  
From beyond the clouds one comes from on high  
And more dews on the grass around she flings,  
And adds her own, to the night wind's sigh."

A Court dress and a set of beautiful ornamental hairpins, which had belonged to Kiri-Tsubo, were presented to the Miobu by her hostess, who thought that these things, which her daughter had left to be available on such occasions, would be a more suitable gift, under present circumstances, than any other.

On the return of the Miobu she found that the Emperor had not yet retired to rest. He was really awaiting her return, but was apparently engaged in admiring the Tsubo-Senzai—or stands of flowers—which were placed in front of the palaces, and in which the flowers were in full bloom. With him were four or five ladies, his intimate friends, with whom he was conversing. In these days his favorite topic of conversation was the "Long Regret." Nothing pleased him more than to gaze upon the picture of that poem, which had been painted by Prince Teishi-In, or to talk about the native poems on the same subject, which had been composed, at the Royal command, by Ise, the poetess, and by Tsurayuki, the poet. And it was in this way that he was engaged on this particular evening.

To him the Miobu now went immediately, and she faithfully reported to him all that she had seen, and she gave to him also the answer to his letter. That letter stated that the mother of Kiri-Tsubo felt honored by his gracious inquiries, and that she was so truly grateful that she scarcely knew how to express herself. She proceeded to say that his condescension made her feel at liberty to offer to him the following:—

"Since now no fostering love is found,  
And the Hagi tree is dead and sere,  
The motherless deer lies on the ground,  
Helpless and weak, no shelter near."

The Emperor strove in vain to repress his own emotion; and old memories, dating from the time when he first saw his favorite, rose up before him fast and thick. "How precious has been each moment to me, but yet what a long time has elapsed since then," thought he, and he said to the Miobu, "How often have I, too, desired to see the daughter of the Dainagon in such a position as her father would have desired to see her. 'Tis in vain to speak of that now!"

A pause, and he continued, "The child, however, may survive, and fortune may have some boon in store for him; and his grandmother's prayer should rather be for long life."

The presents were then shown to him. "Ah," thought he, "could they be the souvenirs sent by the once lost love," as he murmured—

"Oh, could I find some wizard sprite,  
To bear my words to her I love,  
Beyond the shades of envious night,  
To where she dwells in realms above!"

Now the picture of beautiful Yo-ki-hi, however skilful the painter may have been, is after all only a picture. It lacks life and animation. Her features may have been worthily compared to the lotus and to the willow of the Imperial gardens, but the style after all was Chinese, and to the Emperor his lost love was all in all, nor, in his eyes, was any other object comparable to her. Who doubts that they, too, had vowed to unite wings, and intertwine branches! But to what end? The murmur of winds, the music of insects, now only served to cause him melancholy.

In the meantime, in the Koki-Den was heard the sound of music. She who dwelt there, and who had not now for a long time been with the Emperor, was heedlessly protracting her strains until this late hour of the evening.

How painfully must these have sounded to the Emperor!

"Moonlight is gone, and darkness reigns E'en in the realms 'above the clouds,' Ah! how can light, or tranquil peace, Shine o'er that lone and lowly home!"

Thus thought the Emperor, and he did not retire until "the lamps were trimmed to the end!" The sound of the night watch of the right guard was now heard. It was five o'clock in the morning. So, to avoid notice, he withdrew to his bedroom, but calm slumber hardly visited his eyes. This now became a common occurrence.

When he rose in the morning he would reflect on the time gone by when "they knew not even that the case-moment was bright." But now, too, he would neglect "Morning Court." His appetite failed him. The delicacies of the so-called "great table" had no temptation for him. Men pitied him much. "There must have been some divine mystery that predetermined the course of their love," said they, "for in matters in which she is concerned he is powerless to reason, and wisdom deserts him. The welfare of the State ceases to interest him." And now people actually began to quote instances that had occurred in a foreign Court.

Weeks and months had elapsed, and the son of Kiri-Tsubo was again at the Palace. In the spring of the following year the first Prince was proclaimed heir-apparent to the throne. Had the Emperor consulted his private feelings, he would have substituted the younger Prince for the elder one. But this was not possible, and, especially for this reason:—There was no influential party to support him, and, moreover, public opinion would also have been strongly opposed to such a measure, which, if effected by arbitrary power, would have become a source of danger. The Emperor, therefore, betrayed no such desire, and repressed all outward appearance of it. And now the public expressed its satisfaction at the self-restraint of the Emperor, and the mother of the first Prince felt at ease.

In this year, the mother of Kiri-Tsubo departed this life. She may not improbably have longed to follow her daughter at an earlier period; and the only regret to which she gave utterance, was that she was forced to leave her grandson, whom she had so tenderly loved.

From this time the young Prince took up his residence in the Imperial palace; and next year, at the age of seven, he began to learn to read and write under the personal superintendence of the Emperor. He now began to take him into the private apartments, among others, of the Koki-den, saying, "The mother is gone! now at least, let the child be received with better feeling." And if even stony-hearted warriors, or bitter enemies, if any such there were, smiled when they saw the boy, the mother of the heir-apparent, too, could not entirely exclude him from her sympathies. This lady had two daughters, and they found in their half-brother a pleasant playmate. Every one was pleased to greet him, and there was already a winning coquetry in his manners, which amused people, and made them like to play with him. We need not allude to his studies in detail, but on musical instruments, such as the flute and the *koto*, he also showed great proficiency.

About this time there arrived an embassy from Corea, and among them was an excellent physiognomist. When the Emperor heard of this, he wished to have the Prince examined by him. It was, however, contrary to the warnings of the Emperor Wuda, to call in foreigners to the Palace. The Prince was, therefore, disguised as the son of one Udaiben, his instructor, with whom he was sent to the Koro-Kwan, where foreign embassies are entertained.

When the physiognomist saw him, he was amazed, and, turning his own head from side to side, seemed at first to be unable to comprehend the lines of his features, and then said, "His physiognomy argues that he might ascend to the highest position in the State, but, in that case, his reign will be disturbed, and many misfortunes will ensue. If, however, his position should only be that of a great personage in the country, his fortune may be different."

This Udaiben was a clever scholar. He had with the Corean pleasant conversations, and they also interchanged with one another some Chinese poems, in one of which the Corean said what great pleasure it had given him to have seen before his departure, which was now imminent, a youth of such remarkable promise. The Coreans made some valuable presents to the Prince, who had also composed a few lines, and to them, too, many costly gifts were offered from the Imperial treasures.

In spite of all the precautions which were taken to keep all this rigidly secret, it did, somehow or other, become known to others, and among those to the Udaijin, who, not unnaturally, viewed it with suspicion, and began to entertain doubts of the Emperor's intentions. The latter, however, acted with great prudence. It must be remembered that, as yet, he had not even created the boy a Royal Prince. He now sent for a native physiognomist, who approved of his delay in doing so, and whose observations to this effect, the Emperor did not receive unfavorably. He wisely thought to be a Royal Prince, without having any influential support on the mother's side, would be of no real advantage to his son. Moreover, his own tenure of power seemed precarious, and he, therefore, thought it better for his own dynasty, as well as for the Prince, to keep him in a private station, and to constitute him an outside supporter of the Royal cause.

And now he took more and more pains with his education in different branches of learning; and the more the boy studied, the more talent did he evince—talent almost too great for one destined to remain in a private station. Nevertheless, as we have said, suspicions would have been aroused had Royal rank been conferred upon him, and the astrologists, whom also the Emperor consulted, having expressed their disapproval of such a measure, the Emperor finally made up his mind to create a new family. To this family he assigned the name of Gen, and he made the

young Prince the founder of it.

Some time had now elapsed since the death of the Emperor's favorite, but he was still often haunted by her image. Ladies were introduced into his presence, in order, if possible, to divert his attention, but without success.

There was, however, living at this time a young Princess, the fourth child of a late Emperor. She had great promise of beauty, and was guarded with jealous care by her mother, the Empress-Dowager. The Naishi-no-Ske, who had been at the Court from the time of the said Emperor, was intimately acquainted with the Empress and familiar with the Princess, her daughter, from her very childhood. This person now recommended the Emperor to see the Princess, because her features closely resembled those of Kiri-Tsubo.

"I have now fulfilled," she said, "the duties of my office under three reigns, and, as yet, I have seen but one person who resembles the departed. The daughter of the Empress-Dowager does resemble her, and she is singularly beautiful."

"There may be some truth in this," thought the Emperor, and he began to regard her with awakening interest.

This was related to the Empress-Dowager. She, however, gave no encouragement whatever to the idea, "How terrible!" she said. "Do we not remember the cruel harshness of the mother of the Heir-apparent, which hastened the fate of Kiri-Tsubo!"

While thus discountenancing any intimacy between her daughter and the Emperor, she too died, and the princess was left parentless. The Emperor acted with great kindness, and intimated his wish to regard her as his own daughter. In consequence of this her guardian, and her brother, Prince Hiob-Kio, considering that life at Court would be better for her and more attractive for her than the quiet of her own home, obtained for her an introduction there.

She was styled the Princess Fuji-Tsubo (of the Chamber of Wistaria), from the name of the chamber which was assigned to her.

There was, indeed, both in features and manners a strange resemblance between her and Kiri-Tsubo. The rivals of the latter constantly caused pain both to herself and to the Emperor; but the illustrious birth of the Princess prevented any one from ever daring to humiliate her, and she uniformly maintained the dignity of her position. And to her alas! the Emperor's thoughts were now gradually drawn, though he could not yet be said to have forgotten Kiri-Tsubo.

The young Prince, whom we now style Genji (the Gen), was still with the Emperor, and passed his time pleasantly enough in visiting the various apartments where the inmates of the palace resided. He found the companionship of all of them sufficiently agreeable; but beside the many who were now of maturer years, there was one who was still in the bloom of her youthful beauty, and who more particularly caught his fancy, the Princess Wistaria. He had no recollection of his mother, but he had been told by Naishi-no-Ske that this lady was exceedingly like her; and for this reason he often yearned to see her and to be with her.

The Emperor showed equal affection to both of them, and he sometimes told her that he hoped she would not treat the boy with coldness or think him forward. He said that his affection for the one made him feel the same for the other too, and that the mutual resemblance of her own and of his mother's face easily accounted for Genji's partiality to her. And thus as a result of this generous feeling on the part of the Emperor, a warmer tinge was gradually imparted both to the boyish humor and to the awakening sentiment of the young Prince.

The mother of the Heir-apparent was not unnaturally averse to the Princess, and this revived her old antipathy to Genji also. The beauty of her son, the Heir-apparent, though remarkable, could not be compared to his, and so bright and radiant was his face that Genji was called by the public Hikal-Genji-no-Kimi (the shining Prince Gen).

When he attained the age of twelve the ceremony of Gembuk (or crowning) took place. This was also performed with all possible magnificence. Various *fêtes*, which were to take place in public, were arranged by special order by responsible officers of the Household. The Royal chair was placed in the Eastern wing of the Seirio-Den, where the Emperor dwells, and in front of it were the seats of the hero of the ceremony and of the Sadaijin, who was to crown him and to regulate the ceremonial.

About ten o'clock in the forenoon Genji appeared on the scene. The boyish style of his hair and dress excellently became his features; and it almost seemed matter for regret that it should be altered. The Okura-Kio-Kurahito, whose office it was to rearrange the hair of Genji, faltered as he did so. As to the Emperor, a sudden thought stole into his mind. "Ah! could his mother but have lived to have seen him now!" This thought, however, he at once suppressed. After he had been crowned the Prince withdrew to a dressing-room, where he attired himself in the full robes of manhood. Then descending to the Court-yard he performed a measured dance in grateful acknowledgment. This he did with so much grace and skill that all present were filled with admiration; and his beauty, which some feared might be lessened, seemed only more remarkable from the change. And the Emperor, who had before tried to resist them, now found old memories irresistible.

Sadaijin had by his wife, who was a Royal Princess, an only daughter. The Heir-apparent had taken some notice of her, but her father did not encourage him. He had, on the other hand, some idea of Genji, and had sounded the

Emperor on the subject. He regarded the idea with favor, and especially on the ground that such a union would be of advantage to Genji, who had not yet any influential supporters.

Now all the Court and the distinguished visitors were assembled in the palace, where a great festival was held; Genji occupied a seat next to that of the Royal Princess. During the entertainment Sadaijin whispered something several times into his ear, but he was too young and diffident to make any answer.

Sadaijin was now summoned before the daïs of the Emperor, and, according to custom, an Imperial gift, a white O-Uchiki (grand robe), and a suit of silk vestments were presented to him by a lady. Then proffering his own wine-cup, the Emperor addressed him thus:—

“In the first hair-knot of youth, Let love that lasts for age be bound!”

This evidently implied an idea of matrimony. Sadaijin feigned surprise and responded:—

“Aye! if the purple of the cord, I bound so anxiously, endure!”

He then descended into the Court-yard, and gave expression to his thanks in the same manner in which Genji had previously done. A horse from the Imperial stables and a falcon from the Kurand-Dokoro were on view in the yard, and were now presented to him. The princes and nobles were all gathered together in front of the grand staircase, and appropriate gifts were also presented to each one of them. Among the crowd baskets and trays of fruits and delicacies were distributed by the Emperor's order, under the direction of Udaiben; and more rice-cakes and other things were given away now than at the Gembuk of the Heir-apparent.

In the evening the young Prince went to the mansion of the Sadaijin, where the espousal with the young daughter of the latter was celebrated with much splendor. The youthfulness of the beautiful boy was well pleasing to Sadaijin; but the bride, who was some years older than he was, and who considered the disparity in their age to be unsuitable, blushed when she thought of it.

Not only was this Sadaijin himself a distinguished personage in the State, but his wife was also the sister of the Emperor by the same mother, the late Empress; and her rank therefore was unequivocal. When to this we add the union of their daughter with Genji, it was easy to understand that the influence of Udaijin, the grandfather of the Heir-apparent, and who therefore seemed likely to attain great power, was not after all of very much moment.

Sadaijin had several children. One of them, who was the issue of his Royal wife, was the Kurand Shioshio.

Udaijin was not, for political reasons, on good terms with this family; but nevertheless he did not wish to estrange the youthful Kurand. On the contrary, he endeavored to establish friendly relations with him, as was indeed desirable, and he went so far as to introduce him to his fourth daughter, the younger sister of the Koki-Den.

Genji still resided in the palace, where his society was a source of much pleasure to the Emperor, and he did not take up his abode in a private house. Indeed, his bride, Lady Aoi (Lady Hollyhock), though her position insured her every attention from others, had few charms for him, and the Princess Wistaria much more frequently occupied his thoughts. “How pleasant her society, and how few like her!” he was always thinking; and a hidden bitterness blended with his constant reveries.

The years rolled on, and Genji being now older was no longer allowed to continue his visits to the private rooms of the Princess as before. But the pleasure of overhearing her sweet voice, as its strains flowed occasionally through the curtained casement, and blended with the music of the flute and *koto*, made him still glad to reside in the Palace. Under these circumstances he seldom visited the home of his bride, sometimes only for a day or two after an absence of five or six at Court.

His father-in-law, however, did not attach much importance to this, on account of his youth; and whenever they did receive a visit from him, pleasant companions were invited to meet him, and various games likely to suit his taste were provided for his entertainment.

In the Palace, Shigeisa, his late mother's quarters, was allotted to him, and those who had waited on her waited on him. The private house, where his grandmother had resided, was beautifully repaired for him by the Shuri Takmi—the Imperial Repairing Committee—in obedience to the wishes of the Emperor. In addition to the original loveliness of the landscape and the noble forest ranges, the basin of the lake was now enlarged, and similar improvements were effected throughout with the greatest pains. “Oh, how delightful would it not be to be in a place like that which such an one as one might choose!” thought Genji within himself.

We may here also note that the name Hikal Genji is said to have been originated by the Corean who examined his physiognomy.

## Chapter II

### *The Broom-Like Tree*

Hikal Genji—the name is singularly well known, and is the subject of innumerable remarks and censures. Indeed, he had many intrigues in his lifetime, and most of them are vividly preserved in our memories. He had always striven to keep all these intrigues in the utmost secrecy, and had to appear constantly virtuous. This caution was ob-

served to such an extent that he scarcely accomplished anything really romantic, a fact which Katano-no-Shioshio would have ridiculed.

Even with such jealous watchfulness, secrets easily transpire from one to another; so loquacious is man! Moreover, he had unfortunately from nature a disposition of not appreciating anything within easy reach, but of directing his thought in undesirable quarters, hence sundry improprieties in his career.

Now, it was the season of continuous rain (namely, the month of May), and the Court was keeping a strict Monoimi. Genji, who had now been made a Chiujio, and who was still continuing his residence in the Imperial Palace, was also confined to his apartments for a considerable length of time. His father-in-law naturally felt for him, and his sons were sent to bear him company. Among these, Kurand Shioshio, who was now elevated to the post of To-no-Chiujio, proved to be the most intimate and interesting companion. He was married to the fourth daughter of the Udaijin, but being a man of lively disposition, he, too, like Genji, did not often resort to the mansion of the bride. When Genji went to the Sadaijin's he was always his favorite associate; they were together in their studies and in their sports, and accompanied each other everywhere. And so all stiffness and formality were dispensed with, and they did not scruple to reveal their secrets to each other.

It was on an evening in the above-mentioned season. Rain was falling drearily. The inhabitants of the Palace had almost all retired, and the apartment of Genji was more than usually still. He was engaged in reading near a lamp, but at length mechanically put his book aside, and began to take out some letters and writings from a bureau which stood on one side of the room. To-no-Chiujio happened to be present, and Genji soon gathered from his countenance that he was anxious to look over them.

"Yes," said Genji; "some you may see, but there may be others!"

"Those others," retorted To-no-Chiujio, "are precisely those which I wish to see; ordinary ones, even your humble servant may have received. I only long to look upon those which may have been written by fair hands, when the tender writer had something to complain of, or when in twilight hour she was outpouring all her yearning!"

Being so pressed, Genji allowed his brother-in-law to see them all. It is, however, highly probable that any very sacred letters would not have been loosely deposited in an ordinary bureau; and these would therefore seem, after all, to have been of second-rate importance.

"What a variety," said To-no-Chiujio, as he turned them over, and he asked several questions guessingly about this or that. About some he guessed correctly, about others he was puzzled and suspicious. Genji smiled and spoke little, only making some obscure remark, and continuing as he took the letters: "but you, surely, must have collected many. Will not you show me some? And then my bureau also may open more easily."

"You do not suppose that I have any worth reading, do you?" replied To-no-Chiujio. "I have only just now discovered," continued he, "how difficult it is to meet with a fair creature, of whom one can say, 'This is, indeed, *the* one; here is, at last, perfection.' There are, indeed, many who fascinate; many who are ready with their pens, and who, when occasion may require, are quick at repartee. But how often such girls as these are conceited about their own accomplishments, and endeavor unduly to disparage those of others! There are again some who are special pets of their parents, and most jealously watched over at home. Often, no doubt, they are pretty, often graceful; and frequently they will apply themselves with effect to music and to poetry, in which they may even attain to special excellence. But then, their friends will keep their drawbacks in the dark, and eulogize their merits to the utmost. If we were to give full credence to this exaggerated praise, we could not but fail in every single instance to be more or less disappointed."

So saying To-no-Chiujio paused, and appeared as if he were ashamed of having such an experience, when Genji smilingly remarked, "Can any one of them, however, exist without at least one good point?

"Nay, were there any so little favored as that, no one would ever be misled at all!" replied To-no-Chiujio, and he continued, "In my opinion, the most and the least favored are in the same proportion. I mean, they are both not many. Their birth, also, divides them into three classes. Those, however, who are especially well born, are often too jealously guarded, and are, for the most part, kept secluded from the outside gaze, which frequently tends to make their deportment shy and timid. It is those of the middle class, who are much more frequently seen by us, who afford us most chance of studying their character. As for the lower class, it would be almost useless to trouble ourselves with them."

Thus To-no-Chiujio appeared to be thoroughly at home in his description of the merits of the fair sex, which made Genji amused, and he said: "But how do you define the classes you have referred to, and classify them into three? Those who are of high birth sink sometimes in the social scale until the distinction of their rank is forgotten in the abjectness of their present position. Others, again, of low origin, rise to a high position, and, with self-important faces and in ostentatious residences, regard themselves as inferior to none. Into what class will you allot *these*?"

Just at this moment the Sama-no-Kami and To Shikib-no-Jio joined the party. They came to pay their respects to Genji, and both of them were gay and light-hearted talkers. So To-no-Chiujio now made over the discussion to

them, and it was carried to rather questionable lengths.

"However exalted a lady's position may be," said Sama-no-Kami, "if her origin is an unenviable one, the estimation of the public for her would be widely different from that which it shows to those who are naturally entitled to it. If, again, adverse fortune assails one whose birth is high, so that she becomes friendless and helpless, degradation here will meet our eyes, though her heart may still remain as noble as ever. Examples of both of these are very common. After much reflection, I can only come to the conclusion that both of them should be included in the middle class. In this class, too, must be included many daughters of the Durio, who occupy themselves with local administration. These ladies are often very attractive, and are not seldom introduced at Court and enjoy high favor."

"And successes depend pretty much upon the state of one's fortune, I fancy," interrupted Genji, with a placid smile.

"That is a remark very unlikely to fall from the lips of a champion of romance," chimed in To-no-Chiujo.

"There may be some," resumed Sama-no-Kami, "who are of high birth, and to whom public respect is duly paid, yet whose domestic education has been much neglected. Of a lady such as this we may simply remark, 'Why, and how, is it that she is so brought up?' and she would only cause discredit to her class. There are, of course, some who combine in themselves every perfection befitting their position. These best of the best are, however, not within every one's reach. But, listen! Within an old dilapidated gateway, almost unknown to the world, and overgrown with wild vegetation, perchance we might find, shut up, a maiden charming beyond imagination. Her father might be an aged man, corpulent in person, and stern in mien, and her brothers of repulsive countenance; but there, in an uninviting room, she lives, full of delicacy and sentiment, and fairly skilled in the arts of poetry or music, which she may have acquired by her own exertions alone, unaided. If there were such a case, surely she deserves our attention, save that of those of us who themselves are highly exalted in position."

So saying, Sama-no-Kami winked slyly at Shikib-no-Jio. The latter was silent: perhaps he fancied that Sama-no-Kami was speaking in the above strain, with a hidden reference to his (Shikib's) sisters, who, he imagined, answered the description.

Meantime, Genji may have thought, "If it is so difficult to choose one even from the best class, how can—Ah!" and he began to close his eyes and doze. His dress was of soft white silk, partly covered by the *naoshi*, worn carelessly, with its cord left loose and untied. His appearance and bearing formed quite a picture.

Meanwhile, the conversation went on about different persons and characters, and Sama-no-Kami proceeded: "It is unquestionable that though at first glance many women appear to be without defects, yet when we come to the actual selection of any one of them, we should seriously hesitate in our choice.

"Let me illustrate my meaning by reference to the numerous public men who may be aspiring to fulfil the duties of several important posts. You will at once recognize the great difficulty there would be in fixing upon the individual statesman under whose guardianship the empire could best repose. And supposing that, if at last, by good fortune, the most able man were designated, even then we must bear in mind that it is not in the power of one or two individuals, however gifted they may be, to carry on the whole administration of the kingdom alone. Public business can only be tranquilly conducted when the superior receives the assistance of subordinates, and when the subordinate yields a becoming respect and loyalty to his superior, and affairs are thus conducted in a spirit of mutual conciliation. So, too, it is in the narrow range of the domestic circle. To make a good mistress of that circle, one must possess, if our ideal is to be fully realized, many important qualifications. Were we to be constantly indulging in the severity of criticism, always objecting to this or that, a perfect character would be almost unattainable. Men should therefore bear with patience any trifling dissatisfaction which they may feel, and strive constantly to keep alive, to augment, and to cherish, the warmth of their early love. Only such a man as this can be called faithful, and the partner of such a man alone can enjoy the real happiness of affection. How unsatisfactory to us, however, seems the actual world if we look round upon it. Still more difficult must it be to satisfy such as you who seek your companions but from among the best!

"How varied are the characters and the dispositions of women! Some who are youthful and favored by Nature strive almost selfishly to keep themselves with the utmost reserve. If they write, they write harmlessly and innocently; yet, at the same time, they are choice in their expressions, which have delicate touches of bewitching sentiment. This might possibly make us entertain a suddenly conceived fancy for them; yet they would give us but slight encouragement. They may allow us just to hear their voices, but when we approach them they will speak with subdued breath, and almost inaudibly. Beware, however, lest among these you chance to encounter some astute artiste, who, under a surface that is smooth, conceals a current that is deep. This sort of lady, it is true, generally appears quite modest; but often proves, when we come closer, to be of a very different temperament from what we anticipated. Here is one drawback to be guarded against.

"Among characters differing from the above, some are too full of sentimental sweetness—whenever occasion offers them romance they become spoilt. Such would be decidedly better if they had less sentiment, and more sense.

"Others, again, are singularly earnest—too earnest, indeed—in the performance of their domestic duty; and

such, with their hair pushed back, devote themselves like household drudges to household affairs. Man, whose duties generally call him from home all the day, naturally hears and sees the social movements both of public and private life, and notices different things, both good and bad. Of such things he would not like to talk freely with strangers, but only with some one closely allied to him. Indeed, a man may have many things in his mind which cause him to smile or to grieve. Occasionally something of a political nature may irritate him beyond endurance. These matters he would like to talk over with his fair companion, that she might soothe him, and sympathize with him. But a woman as above described is often unable to understand him, or does not endeavor to do so; and this only makes him more miserable. At another time he may brood over his hopes and aspirations; but he has no hope of solace. She is not only incapable of sharing these with him, but might carelessly remark, 'What ails you?' How severely would this try the temper of a man!

"If, then, we clearly see all these, the only suggestion I can make is that the best thing to do is to choose one who is gentle and modest, and strive to guide and educate her according to the best ideal we may think of. This is the best plan; and why should we not do so? Our efforts would not be surely all in vain. But no! A girl whom we thus educate, and who proves to be competent to bear us company, often disappoints us when she is left alone. She may then show her incapability, and her occasional actions may be done in such an unbecoming manner that both good and bad are equally displeasing. Are not all these against us men?—Remember, however, that there are some who may not be very agreeable at ordinary times, yet who flash occasionally upon us with a potent and almost irresistible charm."

Thus Sama-no-Kami, though eloquent, not having come to one point or another, remained thoughtful for some minutes, and again resumed:—

"After all, as I have once observed, I can only make this suggestion: That we should not too much consider either birth or beauty, but select one who is gentle and tranquil, and consider her to be best suited for our last haven of rest. If, in addition, she is of fair position, and is blessed with sweetness of temper, we should be delighted with her, and not trouble ourselves to search or notice any trifling deficiency. And the more so as, if her conscience is clear and pure, calmness and serenity of features can naturally be looked for.

"There are women who are too diffident, and too reserved, and carry their generosity to such an extent as to pretend not to be aware even of such annoyances as afford them just grounds of complaint. A time arrives when their sorrows and anxieties become greater than they can bear. Even then, however, they cannot resort to plain speaking, and complain. But, instead thereof, they will fly away to some remote retreat among the mountain hamlets, or to some secluded spot by the seaside, leaving behind them some painful letter or despairing verses, and making themselves mere sad memories of the past. Often when a boy I heard such stories read by ladies, and the sad pathos of them even caused my tears to flow; but now I can only declare such deeds to be acts of mere folly. For what does it all amount to? Simply to this: That the woman, in spite of the pain which it causes her, and discarding a heart which may be still lingering towards her, takes to flight, regardless of the feelings of others—of the anguish, and of the anxiety, which those who are dearest to her suffer with her. Nay, this act of folly may even be committed simply to test the sincerity of her lover's affection for her. What pitiable subtlety!"

"Worse than this, the woman thus led astray, perhaps by ill advice, may even be beguiled into more serious errors. In the depth of her despairing melancholy she will become a nun. Her conscience, when she takes the fatal vow, may be pure and unsullied, and nothing may seem able to call her back again to the world which she forsook. But, as time rolls on, some household servant or aged nurse brings her tidings of the lover who has been unable to cast her out of his heart, and whose tears drop silently when he hears aught about her. Then, when she hears of his affections still living, and his heart still yearning, and thinks of the uselessness of the sacrifice she has made voluntarily, she touches the hair on her forehead, and she becomes regretful. She may, indeed, do her best to persevere in her resolve, but if one single tear bedews her cheek, she is no longer strong in the sanctity of her vow. Weakness of this kind would be in the eyes of Buddha more sinful than those offences which are committed by those who never leave the lay circle at all, and she would eventually wander about in the 'wrong passage'.

"But there are also women, who are too self-confident and obtrusive. These, if they discover some slight inconsistency in men, fiercely betray their indignation and behave with arrogance. A man may show a little inconsistency occasionally, but yet his affection may remain; then matters will in time be come right again, and they will pass their lives happily together. If, therefore, the woman cannot show a tolerable amount of patience, this will but add to her unhappiness. She should, above all things, strive not to give way to excitement; and when she experiences any unpleasantness, she should speak of it frankly but with moderation. And if there should be anything worse than unpleasantness she should even then complain of it in such a way as not to irritate the men. If she guides her conduct on principles such as these, even her very words, her very demeanor, may in all probability increase his sympathy and consideration for her. One's self-denial and the restraint which one imposes upon one's self, often depend on the way in which another behaves to us. The woman who is too indifferent and too forgiving is also inconsiderate. Remember 'the unmoored boat floats about.' Is it not so?"

To-no-Chiujo quickly nodded assent, as he said, "Quite true! A woman who has no strength of emotion, no passion of sorrow or of joy, can never be holders of us. Nay even jealousy, if not carried to the extent of undue suspicion, is not undesirable. If we ourselves are not in fault, and leave the matter alone, such jealousy may easily be kept within due bounds. But stop"—added he suddenly—"Some women have to bear, and do bear, every grief that they may encounter with unmurmuring and suffering patience."

So said To-no-Chiujo, who implied by this allusion that his sister was a woman so circumstanced. But Genji was still dozing, and no remark came from his lips.

Sama-no-Kami had been recently made a doctor of literature, and (like a bird) was inflating his feathers, so To-no-Chiujo, willing to draw him out as much as possible, gave him every encouragement to proceed with his discourse.

Again, therefore, he took up the conversation, and said, "Call to your mind affairs in general, and judge of them. Is it not always true that reality and sincerity are to be preferred to merely artificial excellence? Artisans, for instance, make different sorts of articles, as their talents serve them. Some of them are keen and expert, and cleverly manufacture objects of temporary fashion, which have no fixed or traditional style, and which are only intended to strike the momentary fancy. These, however, are not the true artisans. The real excellence of the true artisan is tested by those who make, without defects or sensational peculiarities, articles to decorate, we will say, some particular building, in conformity with correct taste and high æsthetic principles. Look for another instance at the eminence which has been attained by several of the artists of the Imperial College of Painting. Take the case of draughtsmen in black ink. Pictures, indeed, such as those of Mount Horai, which has never been beheld by mortal eye, or of some raging monstrous fish in a rough sea, or of a wild animal of some far-off country, or of the imaginary face of the demon, are often drawn with such striking vividness that people are startled at the sight of them. These pictures, however, are neither real nor true. On the other hand, ordinary scenery, of familiar mountains, of calm streams of water, and of dwellings just before our eyes, may be sketched with an irregularity so charming, and with such excellent skill, as almost to rival Nature. In pictures such as these, the perspective of gentle mountain slopes, and sequestered nooks surrounded by leafy trees, are drawn with such admirable fidelity to Nature that they carry the spectator in imagination to something beyond them. These are the pictures in which is mostly evinced the spirit and effectiveness of the superior hand of a master; and in these an inferior artist would only show dulness and inefficiency.

"Similar observations are applicable to handwriting. Some people boldly dash away with great freedom and endless flourishes, and appear at the first glance to be elegant and skilful. But that which is written with scrupulous neatness, in accordance with the true rules of penmanship, constitutes a very different handwriting from the above. If perchance the upstrokes and downstrokes do not, at first sight, appear to be fully formed, yet when we take it up and critically compare it with writing in which dashes and flourishes predominate, we shall at once see how much more of real and sterling merit it possesses.

"Such then is the nature of the case in painting, in penmanship, and in the arts generally. And how much more then are those women undeserving of our admiration, who though they are rich in outward and in fashionable display, attempting to dazzle our eyes, are yet lacking in the solid foundations of reality, fidelity, and truth! Do not, my friends, consider me going too far, but let me proceed to illustrate these observations by my own experience."

So saying, Sama-no-Kami advanced his seat, and Genji awoke. To-no-Chiujo was quite interested in the conversation, and was keeping his eye upon the speaker, leaning his cheek upon his hand. This long discourse of Sama-no-Kami reminds us of the preacher's sermon, and amuses us. And it seems that, on occasions like these, one may easily be carried away by circumstances, until he is willing to communicate even his own private affairs.

"It was at a time," continued Sama-no-Kami, "when I was in a still more humble position, that there was a girl to whom I had taken a fancy. She was like one of those whom I described in the process of my discourse; not a regular beauty. Although for this reason my youthful vanity did not allow me to pledge myself to her forever, I still considered her a pleasant companion. Nevertheless, from occasional fits of restlessness, I roamed often here and there. This she always resented fiercely, and with so much indignation that I sighed for a sweeter temper and more moderation. Indeed, there were times when her suspicion and spitefulness were more than I could endure. But my irritation was generally calmed down, and I even felt sorry myself, when I reflected how strong and devoted her affection for me was, in spite of the mean state of my circumstances. As to her general character, her only endeavor seemed to be to do everything for my sake, even what was beyond her powers, while she struggled to perfect herself in anything in which she might be deficient, and took the most faithful care of all my interests, striving constantly and earnestly to please me. She appeared at first even too zealous, but in time became more moderate. She seemed as if she felt uneasy lest her plain face should cause me displeasure, and she even denied herself the sight of other people, in order to avoid unbecoming comment.

"As time went by, the more I became accustomed to observe how really simple-hearted she was, the more I sympathized with her. The one thing that I could not bear, however, was that jealousy of hers. Sincere and devoted as she is, thought I, is there no means of ridding her of this jealous weakness? Could I but do that, it would not mat-

ter even if I were to alarm her a little. And I also thought that since she was devoted to me, if I showed any symptoms of getting tired of her, she would, in all probability, be warned by it. Therefore, I purposely behaved to her with great coolness and heartlessness. This she resented as usual. I then said to her, that though our affection had been of old date, I should not see her again; 'if you wish to sever from me you may suspect me as much as you like. If you prefer to enjoy long happiness with me in future, be modest and patient in trifling matters. If you can only be so, how can I do otherwise than love you? My position also may in time be improved, and then we may enjoy greater happiness!'

"In saying this, I thought I had managed matters very ingeniously. Without meaning it, however, I had in fact spoken a little too harshly. She replied, with a bitter smile, that 'to put up with a life of undistinguished condition, even though with faint hopes of future promotion, was not a thing about which we ought to trouble ourselves, but that it was indeed a hard task to pass long wearisome days in waiting until a man's mind should be restored to a sense of propriety. And that for this reason we had, perhaps, better separate at once.'

"This she said with such sarcastic bitterness that I was irritated and stung to the quick, and overwhelmed her with a fresh torrent of reproaches. At this juncture she gave way to an uncontrollable fit of passion, and snatching up my hand, she thrust my little finger into her mouth and bit off the end of it. Then, notwithstanding my pain, I became quite cool and collected, and calmly said, 'insulted and maimed as I have now been, it is most fitting that I should absent myself for the future from polite society. Office and title would ill become me now. Your spite has now left me without spirit to face the world in which I should be ridiculed, and has left me no alternative but to withdraw my maimed person from the public gaze!' After I had alarmed her by speaking in this exalted strain, I added, 'to-day we meet for the last time,' and bending these fingers (pointing to them as she spoke) I made the farewell remark:—

When on my fingers, I must say I count the hours I spent with thee, Is this, and this alone, I pray The only pang you've caused to me?

You are now quits with me,' At the instant I said so, she burst into tears and without premeditation, poured forth the following:—

'From me, who long bore grievous harms, From that cold hand and wandering heart, You now withdraw your sheltering arms, And coolly tell me, we must part.'

"To speak the truth, I had no real intention of separating from her altogether. For some time, however, I sent her no communication, and was passing rather an unsettled life. Well! I was once returning from the palace late one evening in November, after an experimental practice of music for a special festival in the Temple of Kamo. Sleet was falling heavily. The wind blew cold, and my road was dark and muddy. There was no house near where I could make myself at home. To return and spend a lonely night in the palace was not to be thought of. At this moment a reflection flashed across my mind. 'How cold must she feel whom I have treated so coldly,' thought I, and suddenly became very anxious to know what she felt and what she was about. This made me turn my steps towards her dwelling, and brushing away the snow that had gathered on my shoulders I trudged on: at one moment shyly biting my nails, at another thinking that on such a night at least all her enmity towards me might be all melted away. I approached the house. The curtains were not drawn, and I saw the dim light of a lamp reflected on the windows. It was even conceivable that a soft quilt was being warmed and thrown over the large couch. The scene was such as to give you the notion that she was really anticipating that I might come at least on such an evening. This gave me encouragement, but alas! she whom I hoped to see was not at home. I was told she had gone to her parents that very evening. Previous to that time, she had sent me no sad verses, no conciliatory letter, and this had already given birth to unpleasant feelings on my part. And at this moment, when I was told that she had gone away, all these things seemed to have been done almost purposely, and I involuntarily began to suspect that her very jealousy had only been assumed by her on purpose to cause me to become tired of her.

"As I reflected what our future might be after such an estrangement as this, I was truly depressed. I did not, however, give up all hope, thinking that she would not be so determined as to abandon me forever. I had even carefully selected some stuff for a dress for her. Some time, however, passed away without anything particularly occurring. She neither accepted nor refused the offers of reconciliation which I made to her. She did not, it is true, hide herself away like any of those of whom I have spoken before. But, nevertheless, she did not evince the slightest symptom of regret for her previous conduct.

"At last, after a considerable interval, she intimated to me that her final resolve was not to forgive me any more if I intended in future to behave as I had done before; but that, on the other hand, she should be glad to see me again if I would thoroughly change my habits, and treat her with the kindness which was her due. From this I became more convinced that she still entertained longings for me. Hence, with the hope of warning her a little more, I made no expressions of any intention to make a change in my habits, and I tried to find out which of us had the most patience.

"While matters were in this state, she, to my great surprise, suddenly died, perhaps broken-hearted.

"I must now frankly confess that she certainly was a woman in whom a man might place his confidence. Often, too, I had talked with her on music and on poetry, as well as on the more important business of life, and I found her to be by no means wanting in intellect and capability. She had too the clever hands of Tatyta-himè and Tanabata.

"When I recall these pleasant memories my heart still clings to her endearingly."

"Clever in weaving, she may have been like Tanabata, that is but a small matter," interposed To-no-Chiujo, "we should have preferred to have seen your love as enduring as Tanabata's. Nothing is so beautiful as the brilliant dyes spread over the face of Nature, yet the red tints of autumn are often not dyed to a color so deep as we desire, because of the early drying of the dew, so we say, 'such is the uncertain fate of this world,'" and so saying, he made a sign to Sama-no-Kami to go on with his story. He went on accordingly.

"About that time I knew another lady. She was on the whole a superior kind of person. A fair poetess, a good musician, and a fluent speaker, with good enunciation, and graceful in her movements. All these admirable qualities I noticed myself, and heard them spoken of by others. As my acquaintance with her commenced at the time when I was not on the best of terms with my former companion, I was glad to enjoy her society. The more I associated with her the more fascinating she became.

"Meanwhile my first friend died, at which I felt truly sorry, still I could not help it, and I therefore paid frequent visits to this one. In the course of my attentions to her, however, I discovered many unpleasant traits. She was not very modest, and did not appear to be one whom a man could trust. On this account, I became somewhat disappointed, and visited her less often. While matters were on this footing I accidentally found out that she had another lover to whom she gave a share of her heart.

"It happened that one inviting moonlight evening in October, I was driving out from home on my way to a certain Dainagon. On the road I met with a young noble who was going in the same direction. We therefore drove together, and as we were journeying on, he told me that 'some one might be waiting for him, and he was anxious to see her'; well! by and by we arrived at the house of my lady-love. The bright reflection of the waters of an ornamental lake was seen through crevices in the walls; and the pale moon, as she shed her full radiance over the shimmering waves, seemed to be charmed with the beauty of the scene. It would have been heartless to pass by with indifference, and we both descended from the carriage, without knowing each other's intention.

"This youth seems to have been 'the other one'; he was rather shy. He sat down on a mat of reeds that was spread beside a corridor near the gateway; and, gazing up at the sky, meditated for some moments in silence. The chrysanthemums in the gardens were in full bloom, whose sweet perfume soothed us with its gentle influence; and round about us the scarlet leaves of the maple were falling, as ever and anon they were shaken by the breeze. The scene was altogether romantic.

"Presently, he took a flute out of his bosom and played. He then whispered, 'Its shade is refreshing.'

"In a few minutes the fair one struck up responsively on a sweet-toned *wagon* (a species of *koto*).

"The melody was soft and exquisite, in charming strains of modern music, and admirably adapted to the lovely evening. No wonder that he was fascinated; he advanced towards the casement from which the sounds proceeded, and glancing at the leaves scattered on the ground, whispered in invidious tones, 'Sure no strange footsteps would ever dare to press these leaves.' He then culled a chrysanthemum, humming, as he did so:—

'Even this spot, so fair to view With moon, and Koto's gentle strain, Could make no other lover true, As me, thy fond, thy only swain.'

"Wretched!" he exclaimed, alluding to his poetry; and then added, 'One tune more! Stay not your hand when one is near, who so ardently longs to hear you.' Thus he began to flatter the lady, who, having heard his whispers, replied thus, in a tender, hesitating voice:—

'Sorry I am my voice too low To match thy flute's far sweeter sound; Which mingles with the winds that blow The Autumn leaves upon the ground.'

"Ah! she little thought I was a silent and vexed spectator of all this flirtation. She then took up a *soh* (another kind of *koto* with thirteen strings) and tuned it to a Banjiki key (a winter tune), and played on it still more excellently. Though an admirer of music, I cannot say that these bewitching melodies gave me any pleasure under the peculiar circumstances I stood in.

"Now, romantic interludes, such as this, might be pleasant enough in the case of maidens who are kept strictly in Court service, and whom we have very little opportunity of meeting with, but even there we should hesitate to make such a one our life companion. How much less could one ever entertain such an idea in a case like my own? Making, therefore, that evening's experience a ground of dissatisfaction I never saw her more.

"Now, gentlemen, let us take into consideration these two instances which have occurred to myself and see how equally unsatisfactory they are. The one too jealous, the other too forward. Thus, early in life, I found out how little reliance was to be placed on such characters. And now I think so still more; and this opinion applies more especially to the latter of the two. Dewdrops on the 'Hagi flower' of beauty so delicate that they disappear as soon as we touch them—hailstones on the bamboo grass that melt in our hand as soon as we prick them—appear at a distance

extremely tempting and attractive. Take my humble advice, however, and go not near them. If you do not appreciate this advice now, the lapse of another seven years will render you well able to understand that such adventures will only bring a tarnished fame."

Thus Sama-no-Kami admonished them, and To-no-Chiujio nodded as usual. Genji slightly smiled; perhaps he thought it was all very true, and he said, "Your twofold experience was indeed disastrous and irritating!"

"Now," said To-no-Chiujio, "I will tell you a story concerning myself. It was the evil fortune of Sama-no-Kami to meet with too much jealousy in one of the ladies to whom he might otherwise have given his heart; while he could feel no confidence in another owing to flirtations. It was my hard lot to encounter an instance of excessive diffidence. I once knew a girl whose person was altogether pleasing, and although I, too, had no intention, as Sama-no-Kami said, of forming an everlasting connection with her, I nevertheless took a great fancy to her. As our acquaintance was prolonged, our mutual affection grew warmer. My thoughts were always of her, and she placed entire confidence in me. Now, when complete confidence is placed by one person in another, does not Nature teach us to expect resentment when that confidence is abused? No such resentment, however, seemed under any circumstances to trouble her. When I very seldom visited her, she showed no excitement or indignation, but behaved and looked as if we had never been separated from each other. This patient silence was more trying to me than reproaches. She was parentless and friendless. For this reason responsibility weighed more heavily on me. Abusing her gentle nature, however, I frequently neglected her. About this time, moreover, a certain person who lived near her, discovered our friendship, and frightened her by sending, through some channel, mischief-making messages to her. This I did not become aware of till afterwards, and, it seems, she was quite cast down and helpless. She had a little one for whose sake, it appears, she was additionally sad. One day I unexpectedly received a bunch of Nadeshiko flowers. They were from her."

At this point To-no-Chiujio became gloomy.

"And what," inquired Genji, "were the words of her message?"

"Sir! nothing but the verse,

Forgot may be the lowly bed From which these darling flowerets spring, Still let a kindly dew be shed, Upon their early nurturing.

"No sooner had I read this than I went to her at once. She was gentle and sedate as usual, but evidently absent and preoccupied. Her eyes rested on the dew lying on the grass in the garden, and her ears were intent upon the melancholy singing of the autumn insects. It was as if we were in a real romance. I said to her:—

When with confused gaze we view The mingled flowers on gay parterre, Amid their blooms of radiant hue The Tokonatz, my love, is there.

And avoiding all allusion to the Nadeshiko flowers, I repeatedly endeavored to comfort the mother's heart. She murmured in reply:—

'Ah! Flower already bent with dew, The winds of autumn cold and chill Will wither all thy beauteous hue, And soon, alas, unpitying kill.'

Thus she spoke sadly. But she reproached me no further. The tears came involuntarily into her eyes. She was, however, apparently sorry for this, and tried to conceal them. On the whole she behaved as if she meant to show that she was quite accustomed to such sorrows. I certainly deeply sympathized with her, yet still further abusing her patience. I did not visit her again for some time; but I was punished. When I did so she had flown, leaving no traces behind her. If she is still living she must needs be passing a miserable existence.

"Now, if she had been free from this excessive diffidence, this apathy of calmness, if she had complained when it was necessary, with becoming warmth and spirit, she need never have been a wanderer, and I would never have abused her confidence. But, as I said before, a woman who has no strength of emotion, no passionate bursts of sorrow or of joy, can never retain a dominion over us.

"I loved this woman without understanding her nature; and I am constantly, but in vain, trying to find her and her little darling, who was also very lovely; and often I think with grief and pain that, though I may succeed in forgetting her, she may possibly not be able to forget me, and, surely, there must be many an evening when she is disquieted by sad memories of the past.

"Let us now sum up our experiences, and reflect on the lessons which they teach us. One who bites your finger will easily estrange your affection by her violence. Falseness and forwardness will be the reproach of some other, in spite of her melodious music and the sweetness of her songs. A third, too self-contained and too gentle, is open to the charge of a cold silence, which oppresses one, and cannot be understood.

"Whom, then, are we to choose? All this variety, and this perplexing difficulty of choice, seems to be the common lot of humanity. Where, again, I say, are we to go to find the one who will realize our desires? Shall we fix our aspirations on the beautiful goddess, the heavenly Kichijio? Ah! this would be but superstitious and impracticable."

So mournfully finished To-no-Chiujio; and all his companions, who had been attentively listening, burst simultaneously into laughter at his last allusion.

"And now, Shikib, it is your turn. Tell us your story," exclaimed To-no-Chiujo, turning to him.

"What worth hearing can your humble servant tell you?"

"Go on; be quick; don't be shy; let us hear!"

Shikib-no-Jio, after a little meditation, thus began:—

"When I was a student at the University, I met there with a woman of very unusual intelligence. She was in every respect one with whom, as Sama-no-Kami has said, you could discuss affairs, both public and private. Her dashing genius and eloquence were such that all ordinary scholars would find themselves unable to cope with her, and would be at once reduced to silence. Now, my story is as follows:—

"I was taking lessons from a certain professor, who had several daughters, and she was one of them. It happened by some chance or other I fell much into her society. The professor, who noticed this, once took up a wine-cup in his hand, and said to me, 'Hear what I sing about two choices.'

"This was a plain offer put before me, and thenceforward I endeavored, for the sake of his tuition, to make myself as agreeable as possible to his daughter. I tell you frankly, however, that I had no particular affection for her, though she seemed already to regard me as her victim. She seized every opportunity of pointing out to me the way in which we should have to steer, both in public and private life. When she wrote to me she never employed the effeminate style of the Kana, but wrote, oh! so magnificently! The great interest which she took in me induced me to pay frequent visits to her; and, by making her my tutor, I learned how to compose ordinary Chinese poems. However, though I do not forget all these benefits, and though it is no doubt true that our wife or daughter should not lack intelligence, yet, for the life of me, I cannot bring myself to approve of a woman like this. And still less likely is it that such could be of any use to the wives of high personages like yourselves. Give me a lovable nature in lieu of sharpness! I quite agree with Sama-no-Kami on this point."

"What an interesting woman she must have been," exclaimed To-no-Chiujo, with the intention of making Shikib go on with his story.

This he fully understood, and, making a grimace, he thus proceeded:—

"Once when I went to her after a long absence—a way we all have, you know—she did not receive me openly as usual, but spoke to me from behind a screen. I surmised that this arose from chagrin at my negligence, and I intended to avail myself of this opportunity to break with her. But the sagacious woman was a woman of the world, and not like those who easily lose their temper or keep silence about their grief. She was quite as open and frank as Sama-no-Kami would approve of. She told me, in a low clear voice, 'I am suffering from heartburn, and I cannot, therefore, see you face to face; yet, if you have anything important to say to me, I will listen to you.' This was, no doubt, a plain truth; but what answer could I give to such a terribly frank avowal? 'Thank you,' said I, simply; and I was just on the point of leaving, when, relenting, perhaps, a little, she said aloud, 'Come again soon, and I shall be all right.' To pass this unnoticed would have been impolite; yet I did not like to remain there any longer, especially under such circumstances: so, looking askance, I said—

Here I am, then why excuse me, is my visit all in vain: And my consolation is, you tell me, come again?

No sooner had I said this than she dashed out as follows with a brilliancy of repartee which became a woman of her genius:—

'If we fond lovers were, and meeting every night, I should not be ashamed, were it even in the light!'

"Nonsense, nonsense!" cried Genji and the others, who either were, or pretended to be, quite shocked. "Where can there be such a woman as that? She must have been a devil! Fearful! fearful!" And, snapping their fingers with disapproving glances, they said, "Do tell us something better—do give us a better story than that."

Shikib-no-Jio, however, quietly remarked: "I have nothing else to relate," and remained silent.

Hereupon a conversation took place to the following effect:—

"It is a characteristic of thoughtless people—and that, without distinction of sex—that they try to show off their small accomplishments. This is, in the highest degree, unpleasant. As for ladies, it may not, indeed, be necessary to be thorough master of the three great histories, and the five classical texts; yet they ought not to be destitute of some knowledge of both public and private affairs, and this knowledge can be imperceptibly acquired without any regular study of them, which, though superficial, will yet be amply sufficient to enable them to talk pleasantly about them with their friends. But how contemptible they would seem if this made them vain of it! The Manna style and pedantic phrases were not meant for them; and, if they use them, the public will only say, 'would that they would remember that they are women and not men,' and they would only incur the reproach of being pedants, as many ladies, especially among the aristocracy, do. Again, while they should not be altogether unversed in poetical compositions, they should never be slaves to them, or allow themselves to be betrayed into using strange quotations, the only consequence of which would be that they would appear to be bold when they ought to be reserved, and abstracted when very likely they have practical duties to attend to. How utterly inappropriate, for instance, it would be on the May festival if, while the attention of all present was concentrated on the solemnity of the occasion, the thoughts of these ladies were wandering on their own poetical imaginations about 'sweet flags;' or if, again, on the Ninth-day

festival, when all the nobles present were exercising their inventive faculties on the subject of Chinese poems, they were to volunteer to pour forth their grand ideas on the dew-laid flowers of the chrysanthemum, thus endeavoring to rival their opponents of the stronger sex. There is a time for everything; and all people, but more especially women, should be constantly careful to watch circumstances, and not to air their accomplishments at a time when nobody cares for them. They should practise a sparing economy in displaying their learning and eloquence, and should even, if circumstances require, plead ignorance on subjects with which they are familiar."

As to Genji, even these last observations seemed only to encourage his reverie still to run upon a certain one, whom he considered to be the happy medium between the too much and the too little; and, no definite conclusion having been arrived at through the conversation, the evening passed away.

The long-continued rainy weather had now cleared up bright and fine, and the Prince Genji proceeded to the mansion of his father-in-law, where Lady Aoi, his bride, still resided with him. She was in her private suite of apartments, and he soon joined her there. She was dignified and stately, both in manners and demeanor, and everything about her bore traces of scrupulous neatness.

"Such may be one of those described by Sama-no-Kami, in whom we may place confidence," he thought, as he approached her. At the same time, her lofty queenliness caused him to feel a momentary embarrassment, which he at once tried to hide by chatting with the attendant maid. The air was close and heavy, and he was somewhat oppressed by it. His father-in-law happened to pass by the apartment. He stopped and uttered a few words from behind the curtain which overhung the door. "In this hot weather," said Genji, in a low tone, "what makes him come here?" and did not give the slightest encouragement to induce his father-in-law to enter the room; so he passed along. All present smiled significantly, and tittered. "How indiscreet!" exclaimed Genji, glancing at them reprovingly, and throwing himself back on a *kio-sok* (arm-stool), where he remained calm and silent.

It was, by no means, becoming behavior on the part of the Prince.

The day was drawing to an end when it was announced that the mansion was closed in the certain celestial direction of the Naka-gami (central God). His own mansion in Nijo (the one mentioned as being repaired in a previous chapter) was also in the same line of direction.

"Where shall I go then?" said Genji, and without troubling himself any further, went off into a doze. All present expressed in different words their surprise at his unusual apathy. Thereupon some one reported that the residence of Ki-no-Kami, who was in waiting on the Prince, on the banks of the middle river (the River Kiogok) had lately been irrigated by bringing the stream into its gardens, making them cool and refreshing.

"That's very good, especially on such a close evening," exclaimed Genji, rousing himself, and he at once intimated to Ki-no-Kami his desire of visiting his house. To which the latter answered simply, "Yes." He did not, however, really like the Prince's visit, and was reluctantly telling his fellow attendants that, owing to a certain circumstance which had taken place at Iyo-no-Kami's residence, his wife (Ki-no-Kami's stepmother) had taken up her abode with him that very evening, and that the rooms were all in confusion.

Genji heard all this distinctly, but he would not change his mind, and said, "That is all the better! I don't care to stay in a place where no fair statue dwells; it is slow work."

Being thus pressed, no alternative remained for the Ki-no-Kami, and a messenger was despatched to order the preparation of apartments for the Prince. Not long after this messenger had gone, Genji started on his way to the house of Ki-no-Kami, whose mild objections against this quick proceeding were not listened to.

He left the mansion as quietly as possible, even without taking formal leave of its master, and his escort consisted of a few favorite attendants.

The "eastern front room" in the "dwelling quarters" was wide open, and a temporary arrangement was made for the reception of the Prince, who arrived there very quickly. The scene of the garden struck him before anything else. The surface of the lake sparkled with its glittering waters. The hedges surrounded it in rustic beauty, and luxuriant shrubs grew in pleasing order. Over all the fair scene the breeze of evening swept softly, summer insects sang distinctly here and there, and the fireflies hovered about in mazy dances.

The escort took up its quarters in a position which overlooked the stream of water which ran beneath the corridor, and here began to take cups of *saké*. The host hastened to order also some refreshment to be prepared for Genji.

The latter was meanwhile gazing abstractedly about him, thinking such a place might belong to the class which Sama-no-Kami fairly placed in the middle category. He knew that the lady who was under the same roof was a young beauty of whom he had heard something before, and he was looking forward to a chance of seeing her.

He then noticed the rustling of a silken dress escaping from a small boudoir to the right, and some youthful voices, not without charm, were also heard, mingled with occasional sounds of suppressed laughter. The casement of the boudoir had been, until a short time before, open, but was pulled down by order of Ki-no-Kami, who, perhaps, doubted the propriety of its being as it was, and now only allowed a struggling light to issue through the paper of the "sliding screen!" He proceeded to one side of his room that he might see what could be seen, but there was no chance. He still stood there that he might be able, at least, to catch some part of the conversation. It seems that this

boudoir adjoined the general family room of the female inmates, and his ears were greeted by some faint talking. He inclined his head attentively, and heard them whispering probably about himself.

"Is it not a pity that the fate of so fine a prince should be already fixed?" said one voice.

"Yet he loses no opportunity of availing himself of the favors of fortune," added another.

These remarks may have been made with no serious intention, but as to Genji, he, even in hearing them, could not help thinking of a certain fair image of which he so fondly dreamt. At the same time feeling a thrill on reflecting that, if this kind of secret were to be discovered and discussed in such a manner, what could be done.

He then heard an observation in delicate allusion to his verse which he had presented to the Princess Momozono (peach-gardens) with the flowers of Asagao (morning-glory, or convolvulus).

"What *cautious* beauties they are to talk in that way! But I wonder if their forms when seen will answer to the pictures of my fancy," thought Genji, as he retired to his original position, for he could hear nothing more interesting.

Ki-no-Kami presently entered the room, brought in some fruits, trimmed the lamp, and the visitor and host now began to enjoy a pleasant leisure.

"What has become of the ladies? Without some of them no society is cheerful," observed Genji.

"Who can there be to meet such wishes?" said the Ki-no-Kami to himself, but took no notice of Genji's remark.

There were several boys in the house who had followed Ki-no-Kami into the room. They were the sons and brothers of Ki-no-Kami. Among them there was one about twelve or thirteen, who was nicer-looking than the others. Genji, of course, did not know who they all were, and accordingly made inquiries. When he came to the last-mentioned boy, Ki-no-Kami replied:—

"He is the youngest son of the late Lord Yemon, now an orphan, and, from his sister's connections, he is now staying here. He is shrewd and unlike ordinary boys. His desire is to take Court service, but he has as yet no patron."

"What a pity! Is, then, the sister you mentioned your stepmother?"

"Yes, sir, it is so."

"What a good mother you have got. I once overheard the Emperor, to whom, I believe, a private application had been some time made in her behalf, referring to her, said, 'What has become of her? Is she here now?' said Genji; and lowering his voice, added, "How changeable are the fortunes of the world!"

"It is her present state, sir. But, as you may perceive, it differs from her original expectation. Changeable indeed are the fortunes of this world, especially so the fortunes of women!"

"Does Iyo respect her? Perhaps he idolizes her, as his master."

"That is a question, perhaps, as a *private* master. I am the foremost to disapprove of this infatuation on his part."

"Are you? Nevertheless he trusts her to such a one as you. He is a kind father! But where are they all?"

"All in their private apartments."

Genji by this time apparently desired to be alone, and Ki-no-Kami now retired with the boys. All the escort were already slumbering comfortably, each on his own cool rush mat, under the pleasant persuasion of *saké*.

Genji was now alone. He tried to doze, but could not. It was late in the evening, and all was still around. His sharpened senses made him aware that the room next but one to his own was occupied, which led him to imagine that the lady of whom he had been speaking might be there. He rose softly, and once more proceeded to the other side of the room to listen to what he might overhear. He heard a tender voice, probably that of Kokimi, the boy spoken of before, who appeared to have just entered the room, saying:—

"Are you here?"

To which a female voice replied, "Yes, dear, but has the visitor yet retired?" And the same voice added—

"Ah! so near, and yet so far!"

"Yes, I should think so, he is so nice-looking, as they say."

"Were it daytime I would see him, too," said the lady in a drowsy voice.

"I shall go to bed, too! But what a bad light," said the boy, and Genji conjectured that he had been trimming the lamp.

The lady presently clapped her hands for a servant, and said, "Where is Chiujo, I feel lonely, I wish to see her."

"Madam, she is in the bath now, she will be here soon," replied the servant.

"Suppose I pay my visit to her, too? What harm! no harm, perhaps," said Genji to himself. He withdrew the fastening of the intervening door, on the other side there was none, and it opened. The entrance to the room where the lady was sitting was only screened by a curtain, with a glimmering light inside. By the reflection of this light he saw travelling trunks and bags all scattered about; through these he groped his way and approached the curtain. He saw, leaning on a cushion, the small and pretty figure of a lady, who did not seem to notice his approach, probably thinking it was Chiujo, for whom she had sent. Genji felt nervous, but struggling against the feeling, startled the lady by saying:—

"Chiujo was called for, I thought it might mean myself, and I come to offer you my devoted services."

This was really an unexpected surprise, and the lady was at a loss.

"It is, of course, natural," he said, "you should be astonished at my boldness, but pray excuse me. It is solely from my earnest desire to show at such an opportunity the great respect for you which I have felt for a very long time."

He was clever enough to know how to speak, and what to say, under all circumstances, and made the above speech in such an extremely humble and insinuating manner that the demon himself could not have taken offence, so she forbore to show any sudden resentment. She had, however, grave doubts as to the propriety of his conduct, and felt somewhat uncomfortable, saying shyly, "Perhaps you have made a mistake!"

"No, certainly not," he replied. "What mistake can I have made? On the other hand, I have no wish to offend you. The evening, however, is very irksome, and I should feel obliged if you would permit me to converse with you." Then gently taking her hand he pressed her to return with him to his lonely apartment.

She was still young and weak, and did not know what was most proper to do under these circumstances, so half yielding, half reluctantly was induced to be led there by him.

At this juncture Chiujo, for whom she had sent previously, entered the room. Upon which Genji exclaimed "Ha!"

Chiujo stared with astonishment at him, whom she at once recognized as the Prince, by the rich perfume which he carried about him.

"What does this mean?" thought Chiujo. She could still do nothing. Had he been an ordinary personage she would have immediately seized him. Even in that case, however, there was enough room to doubt whether it would not have been better to avoid any violent steps lest it might have given rise to a disagreeable family scandal, hence Chiujo was completely perplexed and mechanically followed them.

Genji was too bold to fear bystanders, a common fault with high personages, and coolly closed the door upon her saying, "She will soon return to you."

The lady being placed in such an awkward position, and not knowing what Chiujo might imagine, became, as it were, bewildered. Genji was, however, as artful and insinuating as might be expected in consoling her, though we do not know where he had learnt his eloquence. This was really trying for her, and she said, "Your condescension is beyond my merit. I cannot disregard it. It is, however, absolutely necessary to know 'Who is who.'"

"But such ignorance," he a little abashed, rejoined "as not to know 'Who is who,' is the very proof of my inexperience. Were I supposed to understand too well, I should indeed be sorry. You have very likely heard how little I mix in the world. This perhaps is the very reason why you distrust me. The excess of the blindness of my mind seems strange even to myself."

He spoke thus insinuatingly. She, on her part, feared that if his fascinating address should assume a warmer tone it would be still more trying for her and more difficult to withstand, so she determined, however hard she might appear, not to give any encouragement to his feelings, and showed therefore a coolness of manner. To her meek character there was thus added a firm resolution, and it seemed like a young bamboo reed with its strength and tenderness combined, difficult to bend! Still she felt the struggle very keenly, and tears moistened her eyes.

Genji could not help feeling touched. Not knowing exactly how to soothe her, he exclaimed, "What makes you treat me so coolly? It is true we are not old acquaintances, but it does not follow that this should prevent us from becoming good friends. Please don't discompose yourself like one who does not know the world at all: it pierces my heart."

This speech touched her, and her firmness began to waver.

"Were my position what it once was," said she, "and I received such attention, I might, however unworthy, have been moved by your affection, but as my position in life is now changed, its unsatisfactory condition often makes me dream of a happiness I cannot hope to enjoy." Hereupon she remained silent for some moments, and looked as if she meant to say that she could no longer help thinking of the line:—

Don't tell anyone you've seen my home.

But these few moments of silence agitated the pure waters of her virtuous mind, and the sudden recollection of her aged husband, whom she did not generally think much about, occurred tenderly to her memory. She shuddered at the idea of his seeing her in such a dilemma as this, even in a dream, and without a word fled back to her apartment, and Genji was once more alone.

Now the chanticleer began to proclaim the coming day, and the attendants rose from their couches, some exclaiming "How soundly we have slept," others, "Let us get the carriage ready."

Ki-no-Kami also came out saying, "Why so early, no need of such hurry for the Prince."

Genji also arose, and putting on his *naoshi*, went out on a balcony on the southern side of the house, where he leaned upon the wooden balustrade and meditated as he looked round him.

It appears that people were peeping out of the casement on the western side, probably being anxious to catch a glimpse of the Prince, whose figure was indistinctly to be seen by them from the top of a short screen standing

within the trellis. Among these spectators there was one who perhaps might have felt a thrill run through her frame as she beheld him. It was the very moment when the sky was being tinted by the glowing streaks of morn, and the moon's pale light was still lingering in the far distance. The aspect of the passionless heavens becomes radiant or gloomy in response to the heart of him who looks upon it. And to Genji, whose thoughts were secretly occupied with the events of the evening, the scene could only have given rise to sorrowful emotions.

Reflecting how he might on some future occasion convey a message to the lady, and looking back several times, he presently quitted the house and returned to the mansion of his father-in-law.

During some days succeeding the above events, he was staying at the mansion with his bride. His thoughts, however, were now constantly turning to the lady on the bank of the middle river. He therefore summoned Ki-no-Kami before him, and thus addressed him:—

“Cannot you let me have the boy, the son of the late Chiunagon whom I saw the other day? He is a nice lad, and I wish to have him near at hand. I will also introduce him to the Emperor.”

“I receive your commands. I will talk with his *sister*, and see if she consents to it,” replied Ki-no-Kami with a bow.

These last words alluding to the object which occupied his thoughts caused Genji to start, but he said with apparent calmness—

“Has the lady presented you yet with a brother or a sister?”

“No, sir, not yet; she has been married now these two years, but it seems she is always thinking she is not settled in the way her parents desired, and is not quite contented with her position.”

“What a pity! I heard, however, she was a very good lady. Is it so?”

“Yes, I quite believe so; but hitherto we have lived separately, and were not very cordial, which, as all the world knows, is usual in such relationship.”

After the lapse of five or six days the boy Kokimi was brought to him. He was not tall or handsome but very intelligent, and in manners perfectly well-bred. Genji treated him with the greatest kindness, at which, in his boyish mind, he was highly delighted. Genji now asked him many questions about his sister, to which he gave such answers as he could, but often with shyness and diffidence. Hence Genji was unable to take him into his confidence, but by skilfully coaxing and pleasing him, he ventured to hand him a letter to be taken to his sister. The boy, though he possibly guessed at its meaning, did not trouble himself much, but taking it, duly delivered it to his sister. She became confused and thoughtful as she took it, and fearing what the boy might think, opened the letter and held it before her face as she read, in order to conceal the expression of her countenance.

It was a long one, and among other things contained the following lines:—

I had a dream, a dream so sweet, Ah! would that I could dream again; Alas, no sleep these eyes will greet, And so I strive to dream in vain!

It was beautifully written, and as her eyes fell upon the passionate words, a mist gathered over them, and a momentary thought of her own life and position once more flashed over her mind, and without a word of comment to the boy, she retired to rest.

A few days afterwards Kokimi was again invited to join the Prince. Thereupon he asked his sister to give him an answer to the Prince's letter.

“Tell the Prince,” she said, “there is no one *here* who reads such letters.”

“But,” said the boy, “he does not expect such an answer as this! How can I tell him so?”

At first, she half-resolved to explain everything to Kokimi, and to make him thoroughly understand why she ought not to receive such letters, but the effort was too painful, so she simply said, “It is all the better for you not to talk in that way. If you think it so serious why should you go to him at all?”

“Yet, how can I disobey his commands to go back?” exclaimed the boy, and so he returned to Genji without any written answer to him.

“I was weary of waiting for you. Perhaps you, too, had forgotten me,” said Genji, when he saw the boy, who was, however, silent and blushed. “And what answer have you brought me?” continued Genji, and then the boy replied in the exact words which his sister had used.

“What?” cried Genji: and continued, “Perhaps you may not know, so I will tell you. I knew your sister before she knew Iyo. But she likes to treat me so because she thinks she has got a very good friend in Iyo; but do you be like a brother to me. The days of Iyo will be probably fewer than mine.”

He now returned to the Palace taking Komini with him, and, going to his dressing-room, attired him nicely in the Court style; in a word, he treated him as a parent would do.

By the boy's assistance several more letters were conveyed to his sister. Her resolution, however, remained unshaken.

“If one's heart were once to deviate from the path,” she reflected, “the only end we could expect would be a damaged reputation and misery for life: the good and the bad result from one's self!”

Thus thinking, she resolved to return no answer. She might, indeed, have admired the person of Genji, and

probably did so, yet, whenever such feelings came into her mind, the next thought that suggested itself was, "What is the use of such idle admiration?"

Meanwhile, Genji was often thinking of paying a visit to the house where she was staying, but he did not consider it becoming to do so, without some reasonable pretext, more especially as he would have been sorry, and for her sake more than his own, to draw a suspicion upon her.

It happened, however, after a prolonged residence at the Court, that another occasion of closing the Palace in the certain celestial line of direction arrived. Catching at this opportunity he left the Palace, and suddenly turning out of his road, went straight to Ki-no-Kami's residence, with the excuse that he had just discovered the above fact on his way. Ki-no-Kami surprised at this unexpected visit, had only to bow before him, and acknowledge the honor of his presence. The boy, Kokimi, was already there before him, having been secretly informed of his intention beforehand, and he attended on him as usual in his apartment on his arrival.

The lady, who had been told by her brother that the Prince earnestly desired to see her, knew well how dangerous it was to approach an inviting flower growing on the edge of a precipice. She was not, of course, insensible to his coming in such a manner, with an excuse for the sake of seeing her, but she did not wish to increase her dreamlike inquietude by seeing him. And again, if he ventured to visit her apartment, as he did before, it might be a serious compromise for her.



**IMAGE 8.5: TALE OF GENJI TOYOKUNI UTAGAWA PRINT** | A man with an umbrella and a woman with a broom stand against a snowy background.

**Author:** Utagawa Kunisada

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

For these reasons she retired while her brother was with Genji, to a private chamber of Chiujo, her companion, in the rear of the main building, under the pretence that her own room was too near that of the Prince, besides she was indisposed and required "Tataki," which she desired to have done in a retired part of the house.

Genji sent his attendants very early to their own quarters, and then, through Kokimi, requested an interview with the lady. Kokimi at first was unable to find her, till after searching everywhere, he, at last, came to the apartment of Chiujo, and with great earnestness endeavored to persuade her to see Genji, in an anxious and half trembling voice, while she replied in a tone slightly angry, "What makes you so busy? Why do you trouble yourself? Boys carrying such messages are highly blamable."

After thus daunting him, she added, more mildly, "Tell the Prince I am somewhat indisposed, and also that some friends are with me, and I cannot well leave them now." And she again cautioned the boy not to be too officious, and sent him away from her at once.

Yet, at the bottom of her heart, different feelings might have been struggling from those which her words

seemed to express, and some such thoughts as these shaped themselves to her mind: "Were I still a maiden in the home of my beloved parents, and occasionally received his visits there, how happy might I not be? How trying to act as if no romantic sentiment belonged to my heart!"

Genji, who was anxiously waiting to know how the boy would succeed in persuading his sister, was soon told that all his efforts were in vain. Upon hearing this he remained for some moments silent, and then relieved his feelings with a long-drawn sigh, and hummed:—

"The Hahaki-gi distant tree Spreads broom-like o'er the silent waste; Approach, how changed its shape we see,  
In vain we try its shade to taste."

The lady was unable to sleep, and her thoughts also took the following poetic shape:—

Too like the Hahaki-gi tree, Lonely and humble, I must dwell, Nor dare to give a thought to thee, But only sigh a long farewell.

All the other inmates of the house were now in a sound slumber, but sleep came not to Genji's eyes. He did, indeed, admire her immovable and chaste nature, but this only drew his heart more towards her. He was agitated. At one moment he cried, "Well, then!" at another, "However!" "Still!" At last, turning to the boy, he passionately exclaimed, "Lead me to her at once!"

Kokimi calmly replied, "It is impossible, too many eyes are around us!"

Genji with a sigh then threw himself back on the cushion, saying to Kokimi, "You, at least, will be my friend, and shall share my apartment!"

## Chaoter V

### *Young Violet*

It was the time when Genji became subject to periodical attacks of ague, that many exorcisms and spells were performed to effect a cure, but all in vain. At length he was told by a friend that in a certain temple on the northern mountain (Mount Kurama) there dwelt a famous ascetic, and that when the epidemic had prevailed during the previous summer, many people had recovered through his exorcisms. "If," added the friend, "the disease is neglected it becomes serious; try therefore, this method of procuring relief at once, and before it is too late."

Genji, therefore, sent for the hermit, but he declined to come, saying that he was too old and decrepit to leave his retreat. "What shall I do?" exclaimed Genji, "shall I visit him privately?" Eventually, taking four or five attendants, he started off early one morning for the place, which was at no great distance on the mountain.

It was the last day of March, and though the height of the season for flowers in the capital was over, yet, on the mountain, the cherry-trees were still in blossom. They advanced on their way further and further. The haze clung to the surface like a soft sash does round the waist, and to Genji, who had scarcely ever been out of the capital, the scenery was indescribably novel. The ascetic lived in a deep cave in the rocks, near the lofty summit. Genji did not, however, declare who he was, and the style of his retinue was of a very private character. Yet his nobility of manners was easily recognizable.

"Welcome your visit!" cried the hermit, saluting him. "Perhaps you are the one who sent for me the other day? I have long since quitted the affairs of this world, and have almost forgotten the secret of my exorcisms. I wonder why you have come here for me." So saying, he pleasingly embraced him. He was evidently a man of great holiness. He wrote out a talismanic prescription, which he gave to Genji to drink in water, while he himself proceeded to perform some mysterious rite. During the performance of this ceremony the sun rose high in the heavens. Genji, meantime, walked out of the cave and looked around him with his attendants. The spot where they stood was very lofty, and numerous monasteries were visible, scattered here and there in the distance beneath. There was immediately beyond the winding path in which they were walking a picturesque and pretty building enclosed by hedges. Its well arranged balconies and the gardens around it apparently betokened the good taste of its inhabitants. "Whose house may that be?" inquired Genji of his attendants. They told him it was a house in which a certain priest had been living for the last two years. "Ah! I know him," said Genji. "Strange, indeed, would it be if he were to discover that I am here in this privacy." They noticed a nun and a few more females with her walking in the garden, who were carrying fresh water for their offerings, and were gathering flowers. "Ah! there are ladies walking there," cried the attendants in tones of surprise. "Surely, the Reverend Father would not indulge in flirtations! Who can they be?" And some of them even descended a little distance, and peered over the enclosure, where a pretty little girl was also seen amongst them.

Genji now engaged in prayer until the sun sank in the heavens. His attendants, who were anxious about his disease, told him that it would be good for him to have a change from time to time. Hereupon, he advanced to the back of the temple, and his gaze fell on the far-off Capital in the distance, which was enveloped in haze as the dusk was setting in, over the tops of the trees around. "What a lovely landscape!" exclaimed Genji. "The people to whom such scenery is familiar, are perhaps happy and contented." "Nay," said the attendants, "but were you to see the

beautiful mountain ranges and the sea-coast in our various provinces, the pictures would indeed be found lovely." Then some of them described to him Fuji Yama, while others told him of other mountains, diverting his attention by their animated description of the beautiful bays and coasts of the Western Provinces; thus as they depicted them to him, they cheered and gladdened his mind. One of them went on to say: "Among such sights and at no great distance, there is the sea-coast of Akashi, in the Province of Harima, which is, I think, especially beautiful. I cannot, indeed, point out in detail its most remarkable features, but, in general, the blue expanse of the sea is singularly charming. Here, too, the home of the former Governor of the Province constitutes an object of great attraction. He has assumed the tonsure, and resides there with his beautiful daughter. He is the descendant of a high personage, and was not without hope of elevation at Court, but, being of an eccentric character, he was strongly averse to society. He had formerly been a Chiujio of the Imperial Guard, but having resigned that office, had become Governor of Harima. He was not, however, popular in that office. In this state of affairs he reflected within himself, no doubt, that his presence in the Capital could not but be disagreeable. When, therefore, his term of office expired, he determined still to remain in the province. He did not, however, go to the mountainous regions of the interior, but chose the sea-coast. There are in this district several places which are well situated for quiet retirement, and it would have seemed inconsistent in him had he preferred a part of the sea-coast so near the gay world; nevertheless, a retreat in the too remote interior would have been too solitary, and might have met with objections on the part of his wife and child. For this reason, it appears, that he finally selected the place which I have already alluded to for the sake of his family. When I went down there last time, I became acquainted with the history and circumstances of the family, and I found that though he may not have been well received in the Capital, yet, that here, having been formerly governor, he enjoys considerable popularity and respect. His residence, moreover, is well appointed and of sufficient magnitude, and he performs with punctuality and devoutness his religious duties—nay, almost with more earnestness than many regular priests." Here Genji interrupted. "What is his daughter like?" "Without doubt," answered his companion, "the beauty of her person is unrivalled, and she is endowed with corresponding mental ability. Successive governors often offer their addresses to her with great sincerity, but no one has ever yet been accepted. The dominant idea of her father seems to be this: 'What, have I sunk to such a position! Well, I trust, at least, that my only daughter may be successful and prosperous in her life!' He often told her, I heard, that if she survived him, and if his fond hopes for her should not be realized, it would be better for her to cast herself into the sea."

Genji was much interested in this conversation, and the rest of the company laughingly said, "Ah! she is a woman who is likely to become the Queen of the Blue Main. In very truth her father must be an extraordinary being!"

The attendant who had given this account of the ex-governor and his daughter, was the son of the present Governor of the Province. He was until lately a Kurand, and this year had received the title of Jugoi. His name was Yoshikiyo, and he, too, was a man of gay habits, which gave occasion to one of his companions to observe: "Ah! perhaps you also have been trying to disappoint the hopes of the aged father." Another said, "Well, our friend has given us a long account, but we must take it with some reserve. She must be, after all, a country maiden, and all that I can give credit to is this much: that her mother may be a woman of some sense, who takes great care of the girl. I am only afraid that if any future governor should be seized with an ardent desire to possess her, she would not long remain unattached."

"What possible object could it serve if she were carried to the bottom of the sea? The natives of the deep would derive no pleasure from her charms," remarked Genji, while he himself secretly desired to behold her.

"Ay," thought his companions, "with his susceptible temperament, what wonder if this story touches him."

The day was far advanced, and the Prince prepared to leave the mountain. The Hermit, however, told him that it would be better to spend the evening in the Temple, and to be further prayed for. His attendants also supported this suggestion. So Genji made up his mind to stay there, saying, "Then I shall not return home till to-morrow."

The days at this season were of long duration, and he felt it rather tiresome to pass a whole evening in sedate society, so, under the cover of the shades of the evening, he went out of the Temple, and proceeded to the pretty building enclosed by hedges. All the attendants had been despatched home except Koremitz, who accompanied him. They peeped at this building through the hedges. In the western antechamber of the house was placed an image of Buddha, and here an evening service was performed. A nun, raising a curtain before Buddha, offered a garland of flowers on the altar, and placing a Kio (or Sutra, i.e., Buddhist Bible) on her "arm-stool," proceeded to read it. She seemed to be rather more than forty years old. Her face was rather round, and her appearance was noble. Her hair was thrown back from her forehead and was cut short behind, which suited her very well. She was, however, pale and weak, her voice, also, being tremulous. Two maiden attendants went in and out of the room waiting upon her, and a little girl ran into the room with them. She was about ten years old or more, and wore a white silk dress, which fitted her well and which was lined with yellow. Her hair was waved like a fan, and her eyes were red from crying. "What is the matter? Have you quarrelled with the boy?" exclaimed the nun, looking at her. There was some resemblance between the features of the child and the nun, so Genji thought that she possibly might be her daughter.

"Inuki has lost my sparrow, which I kept so carefully in the cage," replied the child.

"That stupid boy," said one of the attendants. "Has he again been the cause of this? Where can the bird be gone? And all this, too, after we had tamed it with so much care." She then left the room, possibly to look for the lost bird. The people who addressed her called her Shionagon, and she appeared to have been the little girl's nurse.

"To you," said the nun to the girl, "the sparrow may be dearer than I may be, who am so ill; but have I not told you often that the caging of birds is a sin? Be a good girl; come nearer!"

The girl advanced and stood silent before her, her face being bathed in tears. The contour of the child-like forehead and of the small and graceful head was very pleasing. Genji, as he surveyed the scene from without, thought within himself, "If she is thus fair in her girlhood, what will she be when she is grown up?" One reason why Genji was so much attracted by her was, that she greatly resembled a certain lady in the Palace, to whom he, for a long time, had been fondly attached. The nun stroked the beautiful hair of the child and murmured to herself, "How splendid it looks! Would that she would always strive to keep it thus. Her extreme youth makes me anxious, however. Her mother departed this life when she only a very young girl, but she was quite sensible at the age of this one. Supposing that I were to leave her behind, I wonder what would happen to her!" As she thus murmured, her countenance became saddened by her forebodings.

The sight moved Genji's sympathy as he gazed. It seemed that the tender heart of the child was also touched, for she silently watched the expression of the nun's features, and then with downcast eyes bent her face towards the ground, the lustrous hair falling over her back in waves.

The nun hummed, in a tone sufficiently audible to Genji,

"The dews that wet the tender grass, At the sun's birth, too quickly pass, Nor e'er can hope to see it rise In full perfection to the skies."

Shionagon, who now joined them, and heard the above distich, consoled the nun with the following:—

"The dews will not so quickly pass, Nor shall depart before they see The full perfection of the grass, They loved so well in infancy."

At this juncture a priest entered and said, "Do you know that this very day Prince Genji visited the hermit in order to be exorcised by him. I must forthwith go and see him."

Genji observing this movement quickly returned to the monastery, thinking as he went what a lovely girl he had seen. "I can guess from this," thought he, "why those gay fellows (referring to his attendants) so often make their expeditions in search of good fortune. What a charming little girl have I seen to-day! Who can she be? Would that I could see her morning and evening in the palace, where I can no longer see the fair loved one whom she resembles!" He now returned to the monastery, and retired to his quarters. Soon after a disciple of the priest came and delivered a message from him through Koremitz, saying, "My master has just heard of the Prince's visit to the mountain, and would have waited on him at once, but thought it better to postpone calling. Nevertheless he would be much pleased to offer a humble welcome, and feels disappointed that he has not yet had an opportunity of doing so."

Genji said in reply, "I have been afflicted with constant attacks of ague for the last few weeks, and, therefore, by the advice of my friends, I came to this mountain to be exorcised. If, however, the spells of the holy man are of no avail to me, his reputation might suffer in consequence. For that reason I wish to keep my visit as private as possible, nevertheless I will come now to your master." Thereupon the priest himself soon made his appearance, and, after briefly relating the circumstances which had occasioned his retirement to this locality, he offered to escort Genji to his house, saying, "My dwelling is but a rustic cottage, but still I should like you to see, at least, the pretty mountain streamlet which waters my garden."

Genji accepted the offer, thinking as he went, "I wonder what the priest has said at home about myself to those to whom I have not yet been introduced. But it will be pleasant to see them once more."

The night was moonless. The fountain was lit up by torches, and many lamps also were lighted in the garden. Genji was taken to an airy room in the southern front of the building, where incense which was burning threw its sweet odors around. The priest related to him many interesting anecdotes, and also spoke eloquently of man's future destiny. Genji as he heard him, felt some qualms of conscience, for he remembered that his own conduct was far from being irreproachable. The thought troubled him that he would never be free from the sting of these recollections through his life, and that there was a world to come, too! "Oh, could I but live in a retreat like this priest!" As he thus thought of a retreat, he was involuntarily taken by a fancy, that how happy would he be if accompanied to such a retreat by such a girl as he had seen in the evening, and with this fancy her lovely face rose up before him.

Suddenly he said to the priest, "I had once a dream which made me anxious to know who was living in this house, and here to-day that dream has again come back to my memory!" The priest laughed, and said, "A strange dream! even were you to obtain your wish it might not gratify you. The late Lord Azuchi Dainagon died long ago, and perhaps you know nothing about him. Well! his widow is my sister, and since her husband's death her health has not been satisfactory, so lately she has been living here in retirement."

"Ah, yes," said Genji, venturing upon a guess, "and I heard that she bore a daughter to Dainagon."

"Yes, she had a daughter, but she died about ten years ago. After her father's death the sole care of her fell upon her widowed mother alone. I know not how it came to pass, but she became secretly intimate with Prince Hiobkio. But the Prince's wife was very jealous and severe, so she had much to suffer and put up with. I saw personally the truth that 'care kills more than labor.'"

"Ah, then," thought Genji, "the little one is her daughter, and no wonder that she resembles the one in the palace (because Prince Hiobkio was the brother of the Princess Wistaria). How would it be if I had free control over her, and had her brought up and educated according to my own notions?" So thinking, he proceeded to say how sad it was that she died! "Did she leave any offspring?"

"She gave birth to a child at her death, which was also a girl, and about this girl the grandmother is always feeling very anxious."

"Then," said Genji, "let it not appear strange to you if I say this, but I should be very happy to become the guardian of this girl. Will you speak to her grandmother about it? It is true that there is one to whom my lot is linked, but I care but little for her, and indeed usually lead a solitary life."

"Your offer is very kind," replied the priest, "but she is extremely young. However every woman grows up under the protecting care of some one, and so I cannot say much about her, only it shall be mentioned to my sister."

The priest said this with a grave and even a stern expression on his countenance, which caused Genji to drop the subject.

He then asked the Prince to excuse him, for it was the hour for vespers, and as he quitted the room to attend the service, said he would return as soon as it was finished.

Genji was alone. A slight shower fell over the surrounding country, and the mountain breezes blew cool. The waters of the torrent were swollen, and the roar of them might be heard from afar. Broken and indistinct, one might hear the melancholy sound of the sleepy intonation of prayers. Even those people who have no sorrow of their own often feel melancholy from the circumstances in which they are placed. So Genji, whose mind was occupied in thought, could not slumber here. The priest said he was going to vespers, but in reality it was later than the proper time for them. Genji perceived that the inmates had not yet retired to rest in the inner apartments of the house. They were very quiet, yet the sound of the telling of beads, which accidentally struck the lectern, was heard from time to time. The room was not far from his own. He pulled the screen slightly aside, and standing near the door, he struck his fan on his hand, to summon some one.

"What can be the matter," said an attendant, and as she came near to the Prince's room she added, "Perhaps my ear was deceived," and she began to retire.

"Buddha will guide you; fear not the darkness, I am here," said Genji.

"Sir!" replied the servant, timidly.

"Pray do not think me presumptuous," said Genji; "but may I beg you to transmit this poetical effusion to your mistress for me?

Since first that tender grass I viewed,  
My heart no soft repose e'er feels,  
But gathering mist my sleeve bedews,  
And pity to my bosom steals."

"Surely you should know, sir, that there is no one here to whom such things can be presented!"

"Believe me, I have my own reasons for this," said Genji. "Let me beseech you to take it."

So the attendant went back, and presented it to the nun.

"I do not see the real intent of the effusion," thought the nun. "Perhaps he thinks that she is already a woman. But"—she continued, wonderingly—"how could he have known about the young grass?" And she then remained silent for a while. At last, thinking it would be unbecoming to take no notice of it, she gave orally the following reply to the attendant to be given to Genji:—

"You say your sleeve is wet with dew, 'Tis but one night alone for you, But there's a mountain moss grows nigh,  
Whose leaves from dew are never dry."

When Genji heard this, he said: "I am not accustomed to receive an answer such as this through the mouth of a third person. Although I thank the lady for even that much, I should feel more obliged to her if she would grant me an interview, and allow me to explain to her my sincere wishes."

This at length obliged the nun to have an interview with the Prince. He then told her that he called Buddha to witness that, though his conduct may have seemed bold, it was dictated by pure and conscientious motives.

"All the circumstances of your family history are known to me," continued he. "Look upon me, I pray, as a substitute for your once loved daughter. I, too, when a mere infant, was deprived by death of my best friend—my mother—and the years and months which then rolled by were fraught with trouble to me. In that same position your little one is now. Allow us, then, to become friends. We could sympathize with each other. 'Twas to reveal these wishes to you that I came here, and risked the chance of offending you in doing so."

"Believe me, I am well disposed at your offer," said the nun; "but you may have been incorrectly informed. It

is true that there is a little girl dependent upon myself, but she is but a child. Her society could not afford you any pleasure; and forgive me, therefore, if I decline your request."

"Yet let there be no reserve in the expression of your ideas," interrupted Genji; but, before they could talk further, the return of the priest put an end to the subject, and Genji retired to his quarters, after thanking the nun for his kind reception.

The night passed away, and dawn appeared. The sky was again hazy, and here and there melodious birds were singing among the mountain shrubs and flowers that blossomed around. The deer, too, which were to be seen here, added to the beauty of the picture. Gazing around at these Genji once more proceeded to the temple. The hermit—though too infirm to walk—again contrived to offer up his prayers on Genji's behalf, and he also read from the Darani. The tremulous accents of the old man—poured forth from his nearly toothless mouth—imparted a greater reverence to his prayers.

Genji's attendants now arrived from the capital, and congratulated him on the improvement in his health. A messenger was despatched from the Imperial Palace for the same purpose. The priest now collected wild and rare fruits, not to be met with in the distant town, and, with all respect, presented them to Genji, saying: "The term of my vow has not yet expired; and I am, therefore, sorry to say that I am unable to descend the mountain with you on your departure." He then offered to him the parting cup of *saké*.

"This mountain, with its waters, fill me with admiration," said Genji, "and I regret that the anxiety of my father the Emperor obliges me to quit the charming scene; but before the season is past, I will revisit it: and—

The city's folk from me shall hear How mountain cherries blossom fair, And ere the Spring has passed away, I'll bid them view the prospect gay."

To this the priest replied—

"Your noble presence seems to me Like the rare flowers of Udon tree, Nor does the mountain cherry white, Attract my gaze while you're in sight."

Genji smiled slightly, and said: "That is a very great compliment; but the Udon tree does not blossom so easily."

The hermit also raised the cup to his lips, and said:—

"Opening my lonely hermit's door, Enclosed around by mountain pine, A blossom never seen before My eyes behold that seems divine."

And he presented to him his *toko* (a small ecclesiastical wand). On seeing this, the priest also made him the following presents:—A rosary of Kongoji (a kind of precious stone), which the sage Prince Shotok obtained from Corea, enclosed in the original case in which it had been sent from that country; some medicine of rare virtue in a small emerald jar; and several other objects, with a spray of Wistaria, and a branch of cherry blossoms.

Genji, too, on the other hand, made presents, which he had ordered from the capital, to the hermit and his disciples who had taken part in the religious ceremonies, and also to the poor mountaineers. He also sent the following to the nun, by the priest's page:—

"In yester-eve's uncertain light, A flower I saw so young and bright, But like a morning mist. Now pain Impels me yet to see again."

A reply from the nun was speedily brought to him, which ran thus:—

"You say you feel, perhaps 'tis true, A pang to leave these mountain bowers, For sweet the blossoms, sweet the view, To strangers' eyes of mountain flowers."

While this was being presented to him in his carriage, a few more people came, as if accidentally, to wait upon him on his journey. Among them was To-no-Chiujo, and his brother Ben, who said: "We are always pleased to follow you; it was unkind of you to leave us behind."

Just as the party were on the point of starting, some of them observed that it was a pity to leave so lovely a spot without resting awhile among the flowers. This was immediately agreed to, and they took their seats on a moss-grown rock, a short distance from which a little streamlet descended in a murmuring cascade.

They there began to drink *saké*, and To-no-Chiujo taking his flute, evoked from it a rich and melodious strain; while Ben, tapping his fan in concert, sang "The Temple of Toyora," while the Prince, as he leaned against a rock, presented a picturesque appearance, though he was pale and thin.

Among the attendants was one who blew on a long flute, called Hichiriki, and another on a Shio flute. The priest brought a *koto*, and begged Genji to perform upon it, saying: "If we are to have music at all, let us have a harmonious concert." Genji said that he was no master of music; but, nevertheless, he played, with fair ability, a pleasing air. Then they all rose up, and departed.

After they had quitted the mountain, Genji first of all went to the Palace, where he immediately had an interview with the Emperor, who considered his son to be still weak in health; and who asked him several questions with regard to the efficacy of the prayers of the reverend hermit. Genji gave him all particulars of his visit to the mountain.

"Ah!" said the Emperor, "he may some day be entitled to become a dean (Azali). His virtue and holiness have

not yet been duly appreciated by the government and the nation."

Sadaijin, the father-in-law of the Prince, here entered, and entreated Genji to accompany him to his mansion, and spend a few days. Genji did not feel very anxious to accept this invitation, but was persuaded to do so. Sadaijin conveyed him in his own carriage, and gave up to him the seat of honor.

They arrived; but, as usual, his bride did not appear, and only presented herself at last at the earnest request of her father. She was one of those model princesses whom one may see in a picture—very formal and very sedate—and it was very difficult to draw her into conversation. She was very uninteresting to Genji. He thought that it would only lead to a very unpleasant state of affairs, as years grew on, if they were to be as cool and reserved to each other as they had been hitherto. Turning to her, he said, with some reproachfulness in his accents, "Surely you should sometimes show me a little of the ordinary affection of people in our position!"

She made no reply; but, glancing coolly upon him, murmured with modest, yet dignified, tone—

"When you cease to care for me, What can I then do for thee?"

"Your words are few; but they have a sting in them. You say I cease to care for you; but you do me wrong in saying so. May the time come when you will no longer pain me thus," said Genji; and he made every effort to conciliate her. But she was not easily appeased. He was unsuccessful in his effort, and presently they retired to their apartment, where he soon relapsed into sleepy indifference. His thoughts began to wander back into other regions, and hopes of the future growth and charms of the young mountain-violet again occupied his mind. "Oh! how difficult it is to secure a prize," thought he. "How can I do so? Her father, Prince Hiobkio, is a man of rank, and affable, but he is not of prepossessing appearance. Why does his daughter resemble so much, in her personal attractions, the lovely one in the chamber of Wistaria. Is it that the mother of her father and of Wistaria is the same person? How charming is the resemblance between them! How can I make her mine?"

Some days afterwards he sent a letter to the mountain home, and also a communication—perhaps with some hint in it—to the priest. In his letter to the nun he said that her indifference made it desirable to refrain from urging his wishes; but, nevertheless, that he should be deeply gratified if she would think more favorably of the idea which was now so deeply rooted in his mind. Inside the letter he enclosed a small folded slip of paper, on which was written:—

"The mountain flower I left behind I strive but vainly to forget, Those lovely traits still rise to mind And fill my heart with sad regret."

This ludicrous effusion caused the nun to be partly amused and partly vexed. She wrote an answer as follows:—

"When you came into our neighborhood your visit was very pleasing to us, and your special message does us honor. I am, however, at a loss how to express myself with regard to the little one, as yet she cannot even manage the naniwadz."

Enclosed in the note were the following lines, in which she hinted as to her doubts of the steadfastness of Genji's character:

"Your heart admires the lowly flower That dwells within our mountain bower. Not long, alas! that flower may last Torn by the mountain's angry blast."

The tenor of the priest's answer was much the same, and it caused Genji some vexation.

About this time the Lady Wistaria, in consequence of an attack of illness, had retired from the palace to her private residence, and Genji, while sympathizing with the anxiety of the Emperor about her, longed greatly for an opportunity of seeing her, ill though she was. Hence at this time he went nowhere, but kept himself in his mansion at Nijio, and became thoughtful and preoccupied. At length he endeavored to cajole O Miobu, Wistaria's attendant, into arranging an opportunity for him to see her. On Wistaria's part there were strong doubts as to the propriety of complying with his request, but at last the earnestness of the Prince overcame her scruples, and O Miobu managed eventually to bring about a meeting between them.

Genji gave vent to his feelings to the Princess, as follows:—

"Though now we meet, and not again We e'er may meet, I seem As though to die, I were full fain Lost in this blissful dream."

Then the Princess replied to him, full of sadness:—

"We might dream on but fear the name, The envious world to us may give, Forgetful of the darkened fame, That lives when we no longer live."

For some time after this meeting had taken place, Genji found himself too timid to appear at his father's palace, and remained in his mansion. The Princess, too, experienced a strong feeling of remorse. She had, moreover, a cause of anxiety special in its nature and peculiar to herself as a woman, for which she alone felt some uneasiness of conscience.

Three months of the summer had passed away, and her secret began to betray itself externally. The Emperor was naturally anxious about the health of his favorite, and kind inquiries were sent from time to time to her. But the kinder he was to her the more conscience-stricken she felt.

Genji at this time was often visited by strange dreams. When he consulted a diviner about them, he was told that something remarkable and extraordinary might happen to him, and that it behooved him to be cautious and prudent.

"Here is a pretty source of embarrassment," thought Genji.

He cautioned the diviner to be discreet about it, especially because he said the dreams were not his own but another person's. When at last he heard authentically about the condition of the Princess, he was extremely anxious to communicate with her, but she now peremptorily objected to any kind of correspondence between them, and O Miobu too refused any longer to assist him.

In July Wistaria returned to the palace. There she was received by the Emperor with great rejoicing, and he thought that her condition did but add to her attractiveness.

It was now autumn, the season when agreeable receptions were often held by the Emperor in Court, and it was awkward when Genji and the Princess happened to face each other on these occasions, as neither of them could be free from their tender recollections.

During these autumn evenings the thoughts of Genji were often directed to the granddaughter of the nun, especially because she resembled the Princess so much. His desire to possess her was considerably increased, and the recollection of the first evening when he heard the nun intoning to herself the verses about the tender grass, recurred to his mind. "What," thought he, "if I pluck this tender grass, would it then be, would it then grow up, as fair as now?"

"When will be mine this lovely flower Of tender grace and purple hue? Like the Wistaria of the bower, Its charms are lovely to my view."

The Emperor's visit to the Palace Suzak-in was now announced to take place in October, and dancers and musicians were selected from among the young nobles who were accomplished in these arts, and Royal Princes and officers of State were fully engaged in preparation for the *fête*. After the Royal festivities, a separate account of which will be given hereafter, he sent again a letter to the mountain. The answer, however, came only from the priest, who said that his sister had died on the twentieth day of the last month; and added that though death is inevitable to all of us, still he painfully felt her loss.

Genji pondered first on the precariousness of human life, and then thought how that little one who had depended on her must be afflicted, and gradually the memory of his own childhood, during which he too had lost his mother, came back to his mind.

When the time of full mourning was over, Shionagon, together with the young girl, returned to their house in the capital. There one evening Genji paid them a visit. The house was rather a gloomy one, and was tenanted by fewer inmates than usual.

"How timid the little girl must feel!" thought Genji, as he was shown in. Shionagon now told him with tearful eyes every circumstance which had taken place since she had seen him. She also said that the girl might be handed over to her father, who told her that she must do so, but his present wife was said to be very austere. The girl is not young enough to be without ideas and wishes of her own, but yet not old enough to form them sensibly; so were she to be taken to her father's house and be placed with several other children, much misery would be the result. Her grandmother suffered much on this account. "Your kindness is great," continued she, "and we ought not, perhaps, to think too anxiously about the future. Still she is young, too young, and we cannot think of it without pity."

"Why do you recur to that so often?" said Genji, "it is her very youthfulness which moves my sympathy. I am anxious to talk to her,

Say, can the wave that rolls to land, Return to ocean's heaving breast, Nor greet the weed upon the strand With one wild kiss, all softly pressed.

How sweet it would be!"

"That is very beautifully put, sir," said Shionagon, "but,

Half trembling at the coming tide That rolls about the sea-beat sand, Say, can the tender weed untried, Be trusted to its boisterous hand?"

Meanwhile the girl, who was with her companions in her apartment, and who was told that a gentleman in Court dress had arrived, and that perhaps it was the Prince, her father, came running in, saying, "Shionagon, where is the gentleman in Court dress; has the Prince, my father, arrived?"

"Not the Prince, your father," uttered Genji, "but I am here, and I too am your friend. Come here!"

The girl, glancing with shy timidity at Genji, for whom she already had some liking, and thinking that perhaps there was impropriety in what she had spoken, went over to her nurse, and said, "Oh! I am very sleepy, and wish to lie down!"

"See how childish she still is," remarked Shionagon.

"Why are you so timid, little one, come here and sleep on my knees," said Genji.

"Go, my child, as you are asked," observed Shionagon, and she pushed her towards Genji.

Half-unconsciously she took her place by his side. He pushed aside a small shawl which covered her hair, and

played with her long tresses, and then he took her small hand in his. "Ah, my hand!" cried she, and drawing it back, she ran into a neighboring room. Genji followed her, and tried to coax her out of her shyness, telling her that he was one of her best friends, and that she was not to be so timid.

By this time darkness had succeeded to the beautiful evening, and hail began to fall.

"Close the casement, it is too fearful, I will watch over you this evening," said Genji, as he led the girl away, to the great surprise of Shionagon and others who wondered at his ease in doing this.

By and by she became sleepy, and Genji, as skilfully as any nurse could, removed all her outer clothing, and placed her on the couch to sleep, telling her as he sat beside her, "some day you must come with me to some beautiful palace, and there you shall have as many pictures and playthings as you like." Many other similar remarks he added to arrest her attention and to please her.

Her fears gradually subsided, and as she kept looking on the handsome face of Genji, and taking notice of his kindness, she did not fall asleep for some time.

When the night was advanced, and the hailstorm had passed away, Genji at last took his departure. The temperature now suddenly changed, and the hail was lying white upon the grass. "Can it be," thought he, "that I am leaving this place as a lover?" At that moment he remembered that the house of a maiden with whom he had had an acquaintance was on his road home. When he came near to it he ordered one of his attendants to knock at the door. No one, however, came forth. Thereupon Genji turned to another, who had a remarkably good voice, and ordered him to sing the following lines:—

"Though wandering in the morning gray,  
This gate is one I cannot pass,  
A tender memory bids me stay  
To see once more a pretty lass."

This was repeated twice, when presently a man came to the door and sang, in reply, as follows:—

"If you cannot pass the gate,  
Welcome all to stop and wait.  
Nought prevents you. Do not fear,  
For the gate stands always here."

And then went in, slamming the door in their faces, and appearing no more. Genji, therefore disappointed, proceeded on his way home.

On the morrow he took up his pen to write a letter to Violet, but finding that he had nothing in particular to say, he laid it aside, and instead of a letter several beautiful pictures were sent for her.

From this time Koremitz was sent there very often, partly to do them service, and partly to watch over their movements. At last the time when the girl's father was to take her home approached within a night, and Shionagon was busily occupied in sewing a dress for the girl, and was thus consequently unable to take much notice of Koremitz when he arrived. Noting these preparatory arrangements, Koremitz at once hastened to inform Genji about them. He happened to be this evening at the mansion of Sadaijin, but Lady Aoi was not, as was often the case, with him, and he was amusing himself there with thumping a *wagon* as he sang a "Hitachi" song. Koremitz presented himself before him, and gave him the latest information of what was going on.

Genji, when he had listened to Koremitz, thought, "This will never do; I must not lose her in this way. But the difficulty is indeed perplexing. If, on the one hand, she goes to her father, it will not become me to ask him for her. If, on the other hand, I carry her off, people may say that I stole her. However, upon consideration, this latter plan, if I can manage to shut people's mouths beforehand, will be much better than that I should demand her from her father."

So, turning to Koremitz, he said, "I must go there. See that the carriage is ready at whatever hour I may appoint. Let two or three attendants be in readiness." Koremitz, having received these orders, retired.

Long before dawn broke, Genji prepared to leave the mansion. Lady Aoi, as usual, was a little out of temper, but Genji told her that he had some particular arrangements to make at his mansion at Nijio, but that he would soon return to her. He soon started, Koremitz alone following him on horseback.

On their arrival Koremitz proceeded to a small private entrance and announced himself. Shionagon recognized his voice and came out, and upon this he informed her that the Prince had come. She, presuming that he did so only because he happened to pass by them, said, "What! at this late hour?" As she spoke, Genji came up and said:—

"I hear that the little one is to go to the Prince, her father, and I wish to say a few words to her before she goes."

"She is asleep; really, I am afraid that she cannot talk with you at this hour. Besides, what is the use?" replied Shionagon, with a smile.

Genji, however, pressed his way into the house, saying:—

"Perhaps the girl is not awake yet, but I will awake her," and, as the people could not prevent his doing so, he proceeded to the room where she was unconsciously sleeping on a couch. He shook her gently. She started up, thinking it was her father who had come.

Genji pushed the hair back from her face, as he said to her, "I am come from your father;" but this she knew to be false, and was alarmed. "Don't be frightened," said Genji; "there is nothing in me to alarm you." And in spite of Shionagon's request not to disturb her, he lifted her from the couch, abruptly saying that he could not allow her to

go elsewhere, and that he had made up his mind that he himself would be her guardian. He also said she should go with him, and that some of them should go with her.

Shionagon was thunderstruck. "We are expecting her father to-morrow, and what are we to say to him?" She added, "Surely, you can find some better opportunity to manage matters than this."

"All right, you can come afterward; we will go first," retorted Genji, as he ordered his carriage to drive up.

Shionagon was perplexed, and Violet also cried, thinking how strange all this was. At last Shionagon saw it was no use to resist, and so having hurriedly changed her own dress for a better one, and taking with her the pretty dress of Violet which she had been making in the evening, got into the carriage, where Genji had already placed the little one.

It was no great distance to Nijio, and they arrived there before dawn. The carriage was driven up to the western wing of the mansion. To Shionagon the whole affair seemed like a dream. "What am I to do?" she said to Genji, who teasingly answered, "What you choose. You may go if you like; so long as this darling is here I am content." Genji lifted the girl out and carried her into the house. That part of the mansion in which they now were, had not been inhabited, and the furniture was scanty and inappropriate; so, calling Koremitz, the Prince ordered him to see that proper furniture was brought. The beds were therefore taken from the eastern wing, where he himself lived.

Day broke, and Shionagon surveyed with admiration all the magnificence with which she was surrounded. Both the exterior of the building and its internal arrangements left nothing to be desired. Going to the casement, she saw the gravelled walks flashing brightly in the sun. "Ah," thought she, "where am I amidst all this splendor? This is too grand for me!"

Bath water for their ablutions, and rice soup were now brought into the apartment, and Genji afterward made his appearance.

"What! no attendants? No one to play with the girl? I will send some," and he then ordered some young persons from the eastern wing of the mansion. Four accordingly came.

Violet was still fast asleep in her night-dress, and now Genji gently shook and woke her. "Do not be frightened any more," he said quietly to her; "a good girl would not be so, but would know that it is best to be obedient." She became more and more pleasing to him, and he tried to please her by presenting to her a variety of pretty pictures and playthings, and by consulting her wishes in whatever she desired. She was still wearing the dress of mourning, of sombre color and of soft material, and it was only now at last that she began to smile a little, and this filled Genji with delight. He now had to return to the eastern wing, and Violet, for the first time, went to the casement and looked out on the scenery around. The trees covered with foliage, a small lake, and the plantations round about expanded before her as in a picture. Here and there young people were going in and out. "Ah! what a pretty place," she exclaimed, charmed as she gazed around. Then, turning again into the apartment, she saw beautiful pictures painted on the screens and walls, which could not but please her.

Genji did not go to the Palace for two or three days, but spent his time in trying to train Violet. "She must soon take lessons in writing," he thought, and he wrote several writing copies for her. Among these was one in plain characters on violet-colored paper, with the title, "Musashi-no" (The field of Musashi is known for its violets). She took it up, and in handwriting plain and clear though small, she found the following:

Though still a bud the violet be,  
A still unopened blossom here,  
Its tenderness has charms for me,  
Recalling one no longer near.

"Come, *you* must write one now," said Genji.

"I cannot write well enough," said Violet, looking up at him, with an extremely charming look.

"Never mind, whether good or bad," said he, "but still write something, to refuse is unkind. When there is any difficulty I will help you through with it."

Thereupon she turned aside shyly and wrote something, handling the pen gracefully with her tiny fingers. "I have done it badly" she cried out, and tried to conceal what she had written, but Genji insisted on seeing it and found the following:—

I wonder what's the floweret's name,  
From which that bud its charm may claim!

This was, of course, written in a childish hand, but the writing was large and plain, giving promise of future excellence.

"How like her grandmother's it is," thought Genji. "Were she to take lessons from a good professor she might become a master of the art."

He ordered for her a beautiful doll's house, and played with her different innocent and amusing games.

In the meantime, the Prince, her father, had duly arrived at the old home of Violet and asked for her. The servants were embarrassed, but as they had been requested by Genji not to tell, and as Shionagon had also enjoined them to keep silence, they simply told him that the nurse had taken her and absconded. The Prince was greatly amazed, but he remembered that the girl's grandmother never consented to send his daughter to his house, and knowing Shionagon to be a shrewd and intelligent woman, he concluded that she had found out the reasons which

influenced her, and that so out of respect to her, and out of dislike to tell him the reason of it, she had carried the girl off in order that she might be kept away from him. He therefore merely told the servants to inform him at once if they heard anything about them, and he returned home.

Our story again brings us back to Nijo. The girl gradually became reconciled to her new home, as she was most kindly treated by Genji. True, during those evenings when Genji was absent she thought of her dead grandmother, but the image of her father never presented itself to her, as she had seldom seen him. And now, naturally enough, Genji, whom she had learned to look upon as a second father, was the only one for whom she cared. She was the first to greet him when he came home, and she came forward to be fondled and caressed by him without shame or diffidence. Girls at her age are usually shy and under restraint, but with her it was quite different. And again, if a girl has somewhat of jealousy in her disposition, and looks upon every little trifle in a serious light, a man will have to be cautious in his dealings with her, and she herself, too, will often have to undergo vexation. Thus many disagreeable and unexpected incidents might often result. In the case of Violet, however, things were very different, and she was ever amiable and invariably pleasant.

## Chapter VII

### *Maple Fête*

The Royal visit to the Suzak-in was arranged to take place towards the middle of October, and was anticipated to be a grand affair. Ladies were not expected to take part in it, and they all regretted their not being able to be present.

The Emperor, therefore, wished to let his favorite, the Princess Wistaria, above others, have an opportunity of witnessing a rehearsal that would represent the coming *fête*, and ordered a preliminary concert to be performed at the Court, in which Genji danced the "Blue Main Waves," with To-no-Chiujo for his partner. They stood and danced together, forming a most pleasing contrast—one, so to speak, like a bright flower; the other, an everlasting verdure beside it. The rays of the setting sun shone over their heads, and the tones of the music rose higher and higher in measure to their steps. The movements both of hand and foot were eminently graceful; as well, also, was the song of Genji, which was sung at the end of his dance, so that some of the people remarked that the sound of the holy bird, Kariobinga, might be even like this. And so the rehearsal ended.

When the day of the *fête* came, all the Royal Princes, including the Heir-apparent, and all personages of State, were present at the scene. On the lake, "the music boat," filled with selected musicians, floated about, as usual on such occasions; and in the grounds, the bands, which were divided into two divisions on the right and left, under the direction of two Ministers and two Yemon-no-Kami, played. With this music different dances, including Chinese and Corean, were performed, one after another, by various dancers. As the performance went on, the high winds rustled against the tall fir-trees, as though Divine strains of music had broken forth on high in harmony with them. The tune of the bands became quick and thrilling, as different colored leaves whirled about overhead.

Then, at length, the hero of the "Blue Main Waves" made his appearance, to the delight of the suddenly startled spectators, from the midst of a knoll in the grounds, covered with maple leaves. The twigs of maple which crowned his head, became thinned as he danced, and a Sadaishio, plucking a bunch of chrysanthemums from in front of the Royal stand, replaced the lessened maple leaves. The sun was by this time descending, and the sky had become less glaring, while the face of Nature seemed as if it were smiling on the scene. Genji danced with unusual skill and energy. All the pages and attendants, who were severally stationed here under the side of the rock, there under the shade of the foliage, were quite impressed with the effects of the performance.

After Genji, a little prince, the child of the Niogo of Jokio-den, danced the "Autumn Gales," with a success next to that of Genji. Then, the principal interest of the day being over, as these dances were finished, the *fête* ended. This very evening Genji was invested with the title of Shosammi, and To-no-Chiujo with that of Shoshii. Many other persons also received promotion in rank according to their merits.

It was after this *fête* that the young Violet was taken into the mansion of Genji at Nijo, and she lived with him. The more care he took of her the more amiable she became, while nothing pleased him more than teaching her to read and write.

The full extent of her mourning for her grandmother was three months, as it is for the maternal side; and on the last day of December her dress was changed. As she, however, had been always brought up under the care of her grandmother, her indebtedness to the latter was not to be held lightly; consequently any bright colors were not advisable for her, so she wore plain scarlet, mauve, and light yellow, without trimmings or ornament on them.

The dawn ushered in the New Year's day. Genji was about to leave his mansion to attend the New Year's *levée*. Just before starting, he came into Violet's room to see her.

"How are you? Are you becoming less childish now?" said he, with a smile to the girl who was playing with her Hina (toys).

"I am trying to mend this. Inuki damaged it when he was playing what he called 'driving out devils,'" replied the girl.

"What carelessness! I will soon get it mended for you. Don't cry this day, please," said Genji, and he went off, the maidens who attended on Violet accompanying him to the door. This example was also followed by Violet herself.

She went back again to her toys, and presented a toy prince, whom she called Genji, at the Court of her toy house. Shionagon was beside her. She said:—

"You might really be a little more womanly, as the Prince told you. How very childish! a girl older than ten always playing with toys!"

Violet said nothing; but she seemed, for the first time, to have become aware that she was expected to be a woman in the course of time.

From the Court, Genji went to the mansion of Sadaijin. Lady Aoi was as cool to him as ever. His persuasive eloquence availed him but little. She was older than Genji by four years, and was as cold and stately in her mien as ever. Her father, however, received him joyfully whenever he called, although he was not always satisfied with the capriciousness of his son-in-law.

The next morning Genji rose early, and was arranging his toilet, with a view of making his New Year's visits, when Sadaijin entered the room, and officially assisted him in putting on his dress, except, perhaps, his boots. He, moreover, had brought him a belt mounted with rare jewels, and requested him to wear it.

Genji observed: "Such a belt is more suited for some special occasion—such as a Royal banquet, or the like." But Sadaijin insisted on his putting it on, telling him that for that sort of occasion he possessed a much more valuable one.

These New Year's visits were only paid to the Emperor, to the Heir-apparent, and to the Princess Wistaria at her private residence in Sanjio, where she had retired, but she did not receive him personally. At this time, the Princess was not in her usual state of health, for she was approaching her confinement. Many people, who thought that they might have heard of the event in December, now began to say, "At least we shall receive the intelligence this month," and the Emperor himself became impatient; but the month passed away, and yet it did not happen. In the middle of February, however, she was safely delivered of a Prince. During the following April the child was presented to the Emperor. He was rather big for his age, and had already begun to notice those around him.

In these days much of Genji's time was passed at Nijio with Violet, and Lady Aoi was still greatly neglected. The circumstances which induced him to stay at home more than ever were these: He would order his carriage to be brought in readiness to take him; but, before it was ready, he would proceed to the western wing, where Violet lived. Perhaps, with eyes drowsy after dozing, and playing on a flute as he went, he would find her moping on one side of the room, like a fair flower moistened with dews. He would then approach her side, and say, "How are you? Are you not well?" She, without being startled, would slowly open her eyes, and murmur: "Sad like the weed in a creek," and then put her hand on her mouth deprecatingly. On this he would remark, "How knowing you are! Where did you learn such things?" He would then call for a *koto*, and saying "The worst of the *soh-koto* is that its middle chord should break so easily," would arrange it for a Hiojio tune, and when he had struck a few chords on it, would offer it to her, asking her to play, and would presently accompany her with his flute. They would then play some difficult air, perhaps Hosoroguseri, a very ugly name, but a very lively tune, and she would keep very good time, and display her skill. The lamp would be presently brought in, and they would look over some pictures together. In due time, the carriage would be announced. Perhaps it might be added, "It is coming on to rain." Upon hearing this, she would, perhaps, put her pictures aside, and become downcast. He would then smooth her wavy hair, and say, "Are you sorry when I am not here?" To this question she would indicate her feelings by slightly nodding an affirmative, and she would lean on his knee and begin to doze.

He would then say, "I shall not go out to-night." The servant having brought in supper, would tell her that Genji was not going out that evening. Then she would manifest the greatest delight, and would partake of the supper. And thus it came to pass that he often disappointed one who was expecting him.

The way that Genji neglected his bride gradually became known to the public—nay, to the Emperor himself, who sometimes admonished him, telling him that his father-in-law always took great interest in him and great care from his earliest childhood, and saying that he hoped that he would surely not forget all these benefits, and that it was strange to be unkind to his daughter. But when these remarks were made to Genji, he answered nothing.

Let us now change our subject. The Emperor, though he had already passed the meridian of life, was still fond of the society of the fair sex. And his Court was full of ladies who were well versed in the ways of the world. Some of these would occasionally amuse themselves by paying attentions to Genji. We will here relate the following amusing incident:—

There was at the Court a Naishi-no-Ske, who was already no longer young, and commonly called Gen-Naishi-no-Ske. Both her family and character were good. She was, however, in spite of her age, still coquettish, which was her only fault. Genji often felt amused at her being so young in temperament, and he enjoyed occasionally talking

nonsense with her. She used to attend on the Emperor while his hair was being dressed. One day, after he had retired into his dressing-room, she remained in the other room, and was smoothing her own hair. Genji happened to pass by. He stole unperceived into the room, and slyly tugged the skirt of her robe. She started, and instinctively half concealed her face with an old-fashioned fan, and looked back at Genji with an arch glance in her sunken eyes. "What an unsuitable fan for you!" exclaimed Genji, and took it from her hand. It was made of reddish paper, apparently long in use, and upon it an ancient forest had been thickly painted. In a corner was written, in antique style, the following words:—

"On grasses old, 'neath forest trees,  
No steed will browse or swain delay,  
However real that grass may be, 'Tis  
neither good for food nor play."

Genji was highly amused. "There are many things one might write on fans," thought he; "what made her think of writing such odd lines as these?"

"Ah!" said Genji, "I see, 'tis summer shade is still thick though!"

While he was joking he felt something like nervousness in thinking what people might say if anyone happened to see him flirting with such an elderly lady. She, on her side, had no such fear. She replied—

"If beneath that forest tree, The steed should come or swain should be,  
Where that ancient forest grows, Is grass  
for food, and sweet repose."

"What?" retorted Genji,

"If my steed should venture near, Perhaps he'd find a rival there, Some one's steed full well, I ween, Rejoices in  
these pastures green."

And quitted the room.

The Emperor, who had been peeping unobserved into it, after he had finished his toilet, laughed heartily to himself at the scene.

To-no-Chiujio was somehow informed of Genji's fun with this lady, and became anxious to discover how far he meant to carry on the joke. He therefore sought her acquaintance. Genji knew nothing of this. It happened on a cool summer evening that Genji was sauntering round the Ummeiden in the palace yard. He heard the sound of a *biwa* (mandolin) proceeding from a veranda. It was played by this lady. She performed well upon it, for she was often accustomed to play it before the Emperor along with male musicians. It sounded very charming. She was also singing to it the "Melon grower."

"Ah!" thought Genji, "the singing woman in Gakshoo, whom the poet spoke of, may have been like this one," and he stood still and listened. Slowly he approached near the veranda, humming slowly, as he went, "Adzmaya," which she soon noticed, and took up the song, "Do open and come in! but I do not believe you're in the rain, Nor that you really wish to come in."

Genji at once responded, "Whose love you may be I know not, But I'll not stand outside your cot," and was going away, when he suddenly thought, "This is too abrupt!" and coming back, he entered the apartment.

How great was the joy of To-no-Chiujio, who had followed Genji unperceived by him, when he saw this. He contrived a plan to frighten him, so he reconnoitred in order to find some favorable opportunity.

The evening breeze blew chill, and Genji it appears was becoming very indifferent. Choosing this moment To-no-Chiujio slyly stepped forth to the spot where Genji was resting.

Genji soon noticed his footsteps, but he never imagined that it was his brother-in-law. He thought it was Su-ri-no-Kami, a great friend of the lady. He did not wish to be seen by this man. He reproached her for knowing that he was expected, but that she did not give him any hint. Carrying his Naoshi on his arm, he hid himself behind a folding screen. To-no-Chiujio, suppressing a laugh, advanced to the side of the screen, and began to fold it from one end to the other, making a crashing noise as he did so. The lady was in a dilemma, and stood aloof. Genji would fain have run out, and concealed himself elsewhere, but he could not get on his Naoshi, and his head-dress was all awry. The Chiujio spoke not a word lest he should betray himself, but making a pretended angry expostulation, he drew his sword. All at once the lady threw herself at his feet, crying, "My lord! my lord!" To-no-Chiujio could scarcely constrain himself from laughing. She was a woman of about fifty seven, but her excitement was more like that of a girl of twenty.

Genji gradually perceived that the man's rage was only simulated, and soon became aware who it was that was there; so he suddenly rushed out, and catching hold of To-no-Chiujio's sword-arm, pinched it severely. To-no-Chiujio no longer maintained his disguise, but burst into loud laughter.

"How are you my friend, were you in earnest?" exclaimed Genji, jestingly—"but first let me put on my Naoshi?" But To-no-Chiujio caught it, and tried to prevent him putting it on.

"Then I will have yours," cried Genji, seizing the end of To-no-Chiujio's sash, and beginning to unfasten it, while the latter resisted. Then they both began to struggle, and their Naoshi soon began to tear.

"Ah," cried To-no-Chiujio,

"Like the Naoshi to the eye, Your secrets all discovered lie."

"Well," replied Genji,

"This secret if so well you know, Why am I now disturbed by you?"

And they both quitted the room without much noticing the state of their garments.

To-no-Chiujio proceeded to his official chamber, and Genji to his own apartment. The sash and other things which they had left behind them were soon afterwards sent to Genji by the lady.

The sash was that of To-no-Chiujio. Its color was somewhat deeper than his own, and while he was looking at this, he suddenly noticed that one end of a sleeve of his own Naoshi was wanting. "To-no-Chiujio, I suppose, has carried it off, but I have him also, for here is his sash!" A page boy from To-no-Chiujio's office hereupon entered, carrying a packet in which the missing sleeve was wrapped, and a message advising Genji to get it mended before all things. "Fancy if I had not got this sash?" thought Genji, as he made the boy take it back to his master in return.

In the morning they were in attendance at Court. They were both serious and solemn in demeanor, as it happened to be a day when there was more official business than on other days; To-no-Chiujio (who being chief of the Kurand, which office has to receive and despatch official documents) was especially much occupied. Nevertheless they were amused themselves at seeing each other's solemn gravity.

In an interval, when free from duty, To-no-Chiujio came up to Genji and said, with envious eyes, "Have you not been a little scared in your private expedition?" when Genji replied, "No, why so? there was nothing serious in it; but I do sympathize with one who took so much useless trouble."

They then cautioned each other to be discreet about the matter, which became afterwards a subject for laughter between them.

Now even some Royal Princes would give way to Genji, on account of his father's favor towards him, but To-no-Chiujio, on the contrary, was always prepared to dispute with him on any subject, and did not yield to him in any way. He was the only brother of the Lady Aoi by the same Royal mother, with an influential State personage for their father, and in his eyes there did not seem to be much difference between himself and Genji.

The incidents of the rivalry between them, therefore, were often very amusing, though we cannot relate them all.

In the month of July the Princess Wistaria was proclaimed Empress. This was done because the Emperor had a notion of abdication in favor of the Heir-apparent and of making the son of the Princess Wistaria the Heir-apparent to the new Emperor, but there was no appropriate guardian or supporter, and all relations on the mother's side were of the Royal blood, and thereby disqualified from taking any active part in political affairs.

For this reason the Emperor wished to make the position of the mother firmer.

The mother of the Heir-apparent, whom this arrangement left still a simple Niogo, was naturally hurt and uneasy at another being proclaimed Empress. Indeed she was the mother of the Heir-apparent, and had been so for more than twenty years. And the public remarked that it was a severe trial for her to be thus superseded by another.

## Chapter IX

### *Hollyhock*

The Emperor has at last abdicated his throne, as he has long intended, in favor of the Heir-apparent, and the only child of the Princess Wistaria is made Heir-apparent to the new Emperor.

The ex-Emperor now lived in a private palace with this Princess in a less royal style; and the Niogo of Kokiden, to whom was given the honorary title of ex-Empress, resided in the Imperial Palace with the Emperor, her son, and took up a conspicuous position. The ex-Emperor still felt some anxiety about the Heir-apparent, and appointed Genji as his guardian, as he had not yet a suitable person for that office.

This change in the reigning Emperor, and the gradual advancement of Genji's position, gave the latter greater responsibility, and he had to restrain his wandering.

Now, according to usage, the Saigu and Saiin were selected; for the latter the second sister of the Emperor was chosen, and for the former the only daughter of the Lady of Rokjio, whose husband had been a Royal Prince.

The day of the departure of the Saigu for Ise was not yet fixed; and the mind of her mother, who had some reasons for dissatisfaction with Genji, was still wavering in her indecision, whether or not she should go to Ise with her daughter.

The case of the Saiin, however, was different, and the day of her installation was soon fixed. She was the favorite child of her mother as well as of her father, and the ceremonies for the day of consecration were arranged with especial splendor. The number of persons who take a share in the procession on this occasion is defined by regulations; yet the selection of this number was most carefully made from the most fashionable of the nobles of the time, and their dresses and saddles were all chosen of beautiful appearance. Genji was also directed by special order to take part in the ceremony.

As the occasion was expected to be magnificent, every class of the people showed great eagerness to witness the

scene, and a great number of stands were erected all along the road. The day thus looked forward to at last arrived.

Lady Aoi seldom showed herself on such occasions; besides, she was now in a delicate state of health, near her confinement, and had, therefore, no inclination to go out. Her attendants, however, suggested to her that she ought to go. "It is a great pity," they said, "not to see it; people come from a long distance to see it." Her mother also said, "You seem better to-day. I think you had better go. Take these girls with you."

Being pressed in this way, she hastily made up her mind, and went with a train of carriages. All the road was thronged by multitudes of people, many dressed in a style which is called Tsubo-Shozok. Many of great age prostrated themselves in an attitude of adoration, and many others, notwithstanding their natural plainness, looked almost blooming, from the joy expressed in their countenances—nay, even nuns and aged women, from their retreats, were to be seen amongst them. Numerous carriages were also squeezed closely together, so that the broad thoroughfare of the Ichijio road was made almost spaceless. When, however, the carriages of the Lady Aoi's party appeared, her attendants ordered several others to make way, and forced a passage to the spot where the best view could be obtained, and where the common people were not allowed. Among these happened to be two *ajiro* carriages, and their inmates were plainly incognito and persons of rank.

These belonged to the party of the Lady of Rokjio. When these carriages were forced to give place, their attendants cried out, "These carriages do not belong to people who ought to be so abruptly forced away." But the attendants of the Lady Aoi, who were slightly under the influence of drink, would not listen to their expostulations, and they at last made their way and took up their position, pushing the other two back where nothing could be seen, even breaking their poles.

The lady so maltreated was of course extremely indignant, and she would fain have gone home without seeing the spectacle, but there was no passage for retiring. Meanwhile the approach of the procession was announced, and only this calmed her a little.

Genji was as usual conspicuous in the procession. There were several carriages along the roads on whose occupants his glance was cast; that of Lady Aoi, however, was the most striking, and as he passed by the attendants saluted him courteously, which act Genji acknowledged. What were the feelings of the Lady of Rokjio, who had been driven back, at this moment!

In due course the procession passed, and the exciting scene of the day was over. The quarrels about the carriage naturally came to the ears of Genji. He thought that Lady Aoi was too modest to be the instigator of such a dispute; but her house was one of great and powerful families famous for overweening pride, a tendency shared by its domestics; and they, for other motives, also of rivalry, were glad to have an opportunity of mortifying the Lady of Rokjio.

He felt for the wounded lady, and hastened to see her; but she, under some pretext, refused to see him.

The day of the hollyhock *fête* of the same temple came. It was especially grand, as it was the first one after the installation of the new Saiin, but neither Lady Aoi or the Lady of Rokjio was present, while Genji privately took Violet with him in a close carriage to see the festival, and saw the horse-races.

We have already mentioned that the mind of the Lady of Rokjio was still wavering and unsettled whether or not she should go to Ise with her daughter; and this state of mind became more and more augmented and serious after the day of the dispute about the carriages, which made her feel a bitter disdain and jealousy towards the Lady Aoi. Strange to say, that from about the same time, Lady Aoi became ill, and began to suffer from spiritual influences. All sorts of exorcisms were duly performed, and some spirits came forth and gave their names. But among them was a spirit, apparently a "living one," which obstinately refused to be transmitted to the third party. It caused her great suffering, and seemed not to be of a casual nature, but a permanent hostile influence. Some imagined this to be the effect of fearful jealousy of some one who was intimately known to Genji and who had most influence over him; but the spirit gave no information to this effect. Hence some even surmised that the wandering spirit of some aged nurse, or the like, long since dead, still haunted the mansion, and might have seized the opportunity of the lady's delicate health, and taken possession of her. Meanwhile at the mansion of Rokjio, the lady, when she was informed of the sufferings of Lady Aoi, felt somewhat for her, and began to experience a sort of compassion.

This became stronger when she was told that the sufferings of the Lady Aoi were owing to some living spirit. She thought that she never wished any evil to her; but, when she reflected, there were several times when she began to think that a wounded spirit, such as her own, might have some influence of the kind. She had sometimes dreams, after weary thinking, between slumber and waking, in which she seemed to fly to some beautiful girl, apparently Lady Aoi, and to engage in bitter contention and struggle with her. She became even terrified at these dreams; but yet they took place very often. "Even in ordinary matters," she thought, "it is too common a practice, to say nothing of the good done by people, but to exaggerate the bad; and so, in such cases, if it should be rumored that mine was that living spirit which tormented Lady Aoi, how trying it would be to me! It is no rare occurrence that one's disembodied spirit, after death, should wander about; but even that is not a very agreeable idea. How much more, then, must it be disagreeable to have the repute that one's living spirit was inflicting pain upon another!"

These thoughts still preyed upon her mind, and made her listless and depressed.

In due course, the confinement of Lady Aoi approached. At the same time, the jealous spirit still vexed her, and now more vigorous exorcising was employed. She became much affected by it, and cried out, "Please release me a little; I have something to tell the Prince."

Hereupon he was ushered into the room. The curtain was dropped, and the mother of the lady left the room, as she thought her daughter might prefer to speak to him in private. The sound of the spells performed in the next chamber ceased, and Hoke-kio was read in its place. The lady was lying on her couch, dressed in a pure white garment, with her long tresses unfastened. He approached her, and taking her hand, said: "What sad affliction you cause us!" She then lifted her heavy eyelids, and gazed on Genji for some minutes.

He tried to soothe her, and said, "Pray don't trouble yourself too much about matters. Everything will come right. Your illness, I think, will soon pass away. Even supposing you quit this present world, there is another where we shall meet, and where I shall see you once more cheerful, and there will be a time when your mother and father will also join you."

"Ah! no. I only come here to solicit you to give me a little rest. I feel extremely disturbed. I never thought of coming here in such a way; but it seems the spirit of one whose thoughts are much disconcerted wanders away unknown even to itself.

Oh, bind my wandering spirit, pray, Dear one, nor let it longer stray."

The enunciation of these words was not that of Lady Aoi herself; and when Genji came to reflect, it clearly belonged to the Lady of Rokjio. Always before, when anyone had talked with him about a living spirit coming to vex Lady Aoi, he felt inclined to suppress such ideas; but now he began to think that such things might really happen, and he felt disturbed. "You speak thus," said Genji, as if he was addressing the spirit, "but you do not tell me who you are. Do, therefore, tell me clearly." At these words, strange to say, the face of the Lady Aoi seemed momentarily to assume the likeness of that of Rokjio. On this, Genji was still more perplexed and anxious, and put a stop to the colloquy. Presently she became very calm, and people thought that she was a little relieved. Soon after this, the lady was safely delivered of a child.

Now, to perform due thanksgiving for this happy deliverance, the head of the monastery on Mount Hiye and some other distinguished priests were sent for. They came in all haste, wiping off the perspiration from their faces as they journeyed; and, from the Emperor and Royal princes down to the ordinary nobles, all took an interest in the ceremony of Ub-yashinai (first feeding), and the more so as the child was a boy.

To return to the Lady of Rokjio. When she heard of the safe delivery of Lady Aoi, a slightly jealous feeling once more seemed to vex her; and when she began to move about, she could not understand how it was, but she perceived that her dress was scented with a strange odor. She thought this most surprising, and took baths and changed her dress, in order to get rid of it; but the odor soon returned, and she was disgusted with herself.

Some days passed, and the day of autumn appointments arrived. By this time, Lady Aoi's health seemed progressing favorably, and Genji left her in order to attend the Court.

When he said good-by to her, there was a strange and unusual look in her eyes. Sadaijin also went to Court, as well as his sons, who had some expectation of promotion, and there were few people left in the mansion.

It was in the evening of that day that Lady Aoi was suddenly attacked by a spasm, and before the news of this could be carried to the Court, she died.

These sad tidings soon reached the Court, and created great distress and confusion: even the arrangements for appointments and promotion were disturbed. As it happened late in the evening there was no time to send for the head of the monastery, or any other distinguished priest. Messengers of inquiry came one after another to the mansion, so numerous that it was almost impossible to return them all answers. We need not add how greatly affected were all her relations.

As the death took place from a malign spiritual influence, she was left untouched during two or three days, in the hope that she might revive; but no change took place, and now all hope was abandoned. In due course the corpse was taken to the cemetery of Toribeno. Numerous mourners and priests of different churches crowded to the spot, while representatives of the ex-Emperor, Princess Wistaria, and the Heir-apparent also were present. The ceremony of burial was performed with all solemnity and pathos.

Thus the modest and virtuous Lady Aoi passed away forever.

Genji forthwith confined himself to his apartment in the grand mansion of Sadaijin, for mourning and consolation. To-no-Chiujio, who was now elevated to the title of Sammi, constantly bore him company, and conversed with him both on serious and amusing subjects. Their struggle in the apartment of Gen-naishi, and also their rencontre in the garden of the "Saffron Flower," were among the topics of their consoling conversation.

It was on one of these occasions that a soft shower of rain was falling. The evening was rendered cheerless, and To-no-Chiujio came to see him, walking slowly in his mourning robes of a dull color. Genji was leaning out of a window, his cheek resting on his hand; and, looking out upon the half-fading shrubberies, was humming—

"Has she become rain or cloud? 'Tis now unknown."

To-no-Chiujo gently approached him. They had, as usual, some pathetic conversation, and then the latter hummed, as if to himself—

"Beyond the cloud in yonder sky, From which descends the passing rain, Her gentle soul may dwell, Though we may cease to trace its form in vain."

This was soon responded to by Genji:—

"That cloudy shrine we view on high, Where my lost love may dwell unseen, Looks gloomy now to this sad eye That looks with tears on what has been."

There was among the faded plants of the garden a solitary Rindo-nadeshko. When To-no-Chiujo had gone, Genji picked this flower, and sent it to his mother-in-law by the nurse of the infant child, with the following:—

"In bowers where all beside are dead Survives alone this lovely flower, Departed autumn's cherished gem, Symbol of joy's departed hour."

Genji still felt lonely. He wrote a letter to the Princess Momo-zono (peach-gardens). He had known her long. He admired her, too. She had been a spectator, with her father, on the day of

the consecration of the Saiin, and was one of those to whom the appearance of Genji was most welcome. In his letter he stated that she might have a little sympathy with him in his sorrow, and he also sent with it the following:—

"Many an autumn have I past In gloomy thought, but none I ween Has been so mournful as the last, Which rife with grief and change hath been."

There was, indeed, nothing serious between Genji and this princess; yet, as far as correspondence was concerned, they now and then exchanged letters, so she did not object to receiving this communication. She felt for him much, and an answer was returned, in which she expressed her sympathy at his bereavement.

Now, in the mansion of Sadaijin every performance of requiem was celebrated. The forty-ninth day had passed, and the mementoes of the dead, both trifling and valuable, were distributed in a due and agreeable manner; and Genji at length left the grand mansion with the intention of first going to the ex-Emperor, and then of returning to his mansion at Nijio. After his departure, Sadaijin went into the apartment occupied till lately by him. The room was the same as before, and everything was unchanged; but his only daughter, the pride of his old days, was no more, and his son-in-law had gone too.

He looked around him for some moments. He saw some papers lying about. They were those on which Genji had been practising penmanship for amusement—some in Chinese, others in Japanese; some in free style, others in stiff. Among these papers he saw one on which the words "Old pillows and old quilts" were written, and close to these the following:—

"How much the soul departed, still May love to linger round this couch, My own heart tells me, even I Reluctant am to leave it now."

And on another of these papers, accompanying the words, "The white frost lies upon the tiles," the following:—

"How many more of nights shall I On this lone bed without thee lie; The flower has left its well-known bed, And o'er its place the dews are shed."

As Sadaijin was turning over these papers a withered flower, which seems to have marked some particular occasion, dropped from amongst them.

Return we now to Genji. He went to the ex-Emperor, to whom he still seemed thin and careworn. He had some affectionate conversation with him, remained till evening, and then proceeded to his mansion at Nijio. He went to the western wing to visit the young Violet. All were habited in new winter apparel, and looked fresh and blooming.

"How long it seems since I saw you!" he exclaimed. Violet turned her glance a little aside. She was apparently shy, which only increased her beauty.

He approached, and after having a little conversation, said, "I have many things to say to you, but now I must have a little rest," and returned to his own quarters.

The next morning, first of all he sent a letter to Sadaijin's, making inquiry after his infant child.

At this time he confined himself more than usual to his own house, and for companionship he was constantly with Violet, who was now approaching womanhood. He would sometimes talk with her differently from the manner in which he would speak to a mere girl; but on her part she seemed not to notice the difference, and for their daily amusement either Go or Hentski was resorted to, and sometimes they would play on till late in the evening.

Some weeks thus passed away, and there was one morning when Violet did not appear so early as usual. The inmates of the house, who did not know what was the reason, were anxious about her, thinking she was indisposed. About noon Genji came. He entered the little room, saying, "Are you not quite well? Perhaps you would like to play at Go again, like last night, for a change;" but she was more than ever shy.

"Why are you so shy?" he exclaimed; "be a little more cheerful—people may think it strange," said he, and stayed with her a long time trying to soothe her; but to no effect—she still continued silent and shy.

This was the evening of Wild Boar's day, and some *mochi* (pounded rice cake) was presented to him, according

to custom, on a tray of plain white wood.

He called Koremitz before him and said, "To-day is not a very opportune day; I would rather have them to-morrow evening. Do send in some to-morrow. It need not be of so many colors." So saying, he smiled a little, and sharp Koremitz soon understood what he meant. And this he accordingly did on the morrow, on a beautiful flower-waiter.

Up to this time nothing about Violet had been publicly known, and Genji thought it was time to inform her father about his daughter; but he considered he had better have the ceremony of Mogi first performed, and ordered preparations to be made with that object.

Let us here notice that the young daughter of Udaijin, after she saw Genji, was longing to see him again. This inclination was perceived by her relations. It seems that her father was not quite averse to this liking, and he told his eldest daughter, the reigning Emperor's mother, that Genji was recently bereaved of his good consort, and that he should not feel discontented if his daughter were to take the place of Lady Aoi; but this the royal mother did not approve. "It would be far better for her to be introduced at Court," she said, and began contriving to bring this about.

## Chapter XII

### *Exile at Suma*

Genji at last made up his mind to undergo a voluntary exile, before the opinion of the Imperial Court should be publicly announced against him. He heard that the beautiful sea-coast along Suma was a most suitable place for retirement, and that, though formerly populous, there were now only a few fishermen's dwellings scattered here and there. To Suma he finally determined to go into voluntary exile.

When he had thus made up his mind he became somewhat regretful to leave the capital, although it had hitherto appeared ungenial. The first thing which disturbed his mind was the young Violet, whom he could not take with him. The young lady, also, in the "Villa of Falling Flowers" (notwithstanding that he was not a frequent visitor) was another object of his regret.

In spite of these feelings he prepared to set off at the end of March, and at length it came within a few days of the time fixed for his departure, when he went privately, under the cover of the evening, to the mansion of the ex-Sadaijin, in an ajiro carriage, generally used by women. He proceeded into the inner apartments, where he was greeted by the nurse of his little child. The boy was growing fast, was able to stand by this time and to toddle about, and run into Genji's arms when he saw him. The latter took him on his knee, saying, "Ah! my good little fellow, I have not seen you for some time, but you do not forget me, do you?" The ex-Sadaijin now entered. He said, "Often have I thought of coming to have a talk with you, but you see my health has been very bad of late, and I seldom appear at Court, having resigned my office. It would be impolitic to give cause to be talked about, and for it to be said that I stretch my old bones when private matters please me. Of course, I have no particular reason to fear the world; still, if there is anything dreadful, it is the demagogical world. When I see what unpleasant things are happening to you, which were no more probable than that the heavens should fall, I really feel that everything in the world is irksome to me."

"Yes, what you say is indeed true," replied Genji. "However, all things in the world—this or that—are the outcome of what we have done in our previous existence. Hence if we dive to the bottom we shall see that every misfortune is only the result of our own negligence. Examples of men's losing the pleasures of the Court are, indeed, not wanting. Some of these cases may not go so far as a deprivation of titles and honors, as is mine; still, if one thus banished from the pleasures of Court, behaves himself as unconcernedly as those to whom no such misfortune has happened, this would not be becoming. So, at least, it is considered in a foreign country. Repentance is what one ought to expect in such circumstances, and banishment to a far-off locality is a measure generally adopted for offences different from ordinary ones. If I, simply relying on my innocence, pass unnoticed the recent displeasure of the Court, this would only bring upon me greater dishonor. I have, therefore, determined to go into voluntary exile, before receiving such a sentence from the Court."

Then the conversation fell back, as usual, on the times of the late ex-Emperor, which made them sad; while the child also, who innocently played near, made them still more gloomy. The ex-Sadaijin went on to say:—"There is no moment when I ever forget the mother of the boy, but now I almost dare to think that she was fortunate in being short lived, and being free from witnessing the dreamlike sorrow we now suffer. With regard to the boy, the first thing which strikes me as unbearable is that he may pass some time of his lovely childhood away from the gaze of your eyes. There are, as you say, no want of instances of persons suffering a miserable fate, without having committed any real offence; yet still, in such cases, there was some pretext to justify their being so treated. I cannot see any such against you."

While he was thus speaking To-no-Chiujio joined them, and, partaking of *saké*, they continued their conversation till late in the evening. This night Genji remained in the mansion.

Early the next morning he returned to his own residence, and he spent the whole day with Violet in the western wing. It should here be noticed that she was scarcely ever with her father, even from childhood. He strongly disapproved of his daughter being with Genji, and of the way in which she had been carried off, so he scarcely ever had any communication with her, or did he visit her. These circumstances made her feel Genji's affection more keenly than she otherwise would have; hence her sorrow at the thought of parting with him in a few days may be easily imagined.

Towards the evening Prince Sotz came with To-no-Chiujo and some others to pay him a visit. Genji, in order to receive them, rose to put on one of his Naoshi, which was plain, without pattern, as proper for one who had no longer a title. Approaching the mirror, to comb his hair, he noticed that his face had grown much thinner.

"Oh, how changed I appear," he exclaimed. "Am I really like this image which I see of myself?" he said, turning to the girl, who cast on him a sad and tearful glance. Genji continued:—

"Though changed I wander far away, My soul shall still remain with you, Perhaps in this mirror's mystic ray, My face may linger still in view."

To this Violet replied:—

"If in this mirror I could see, Always your face, then it would be My consolation when thou art gone."

As she said this she turned her face to one side of the room, and by doing so obscured the tears gathering in her soft eyes. Genji then left her to receive his friends, who, however, did not remain long, leaving the mansion after a short conversation of a consolatory nature. This evening Genji paid his visit to the sisters of the "Falling Flower" villa.

On the following day the final arrangements necessary for his household affairs were made at his residence. The management of the mansion was intrusted to a few confidential friends; while that of his lands and pasture, and the charge of his documents, were intrusted to the care of Violet, to whom he gave every instruction what she should do. Besides, he enjoined Shionagon, in whom he placed his confidence, to give her every assistance. He told all the inmates who wished to remain in the mansion, in order to await his return, that they might do so. He also made an appropriate present to the nurse of his boy, and to the ladies of the "Villa of Falling Flowers." When all these things were accomplished, he occupied himself in writing farewell letters to his intimate friends, such as the young daughter of Udaijin and others, to none of whom he had paid a visit.

On the evening prior to his departure he went on horseback to visit the tomb of his father. On his way he called on the Princess Wistaria, and thence proceeded to the mountain where the remains reposed. The tomb was placed among tall growing grass, under thick and gloomy foliage. Genji advanced to the tomb, and, half kneeling down before it, and half sobbing, uttered many words of remembrance and sorrow. Of course no reply came forth. The moon by this time was hidden behind dark clouds, and the winds blew keen and nipping, when suddenly a shadowy phantom of the dead stood before Genji's eyes.

"How would his image look on me, Knew he the secret of the past; As yonder moon in clouded sky, Looks o'er the scene mysteriously."

He returned to his mansion late in the night.

Early in the morning he sent a letter to O Miobu, the nurse of the Heir-apparent, in which he said: "I at last leave the capital, to-day. I know not when I may come and see the Prince again. On him my thoughts and anxieties are concentrated, above all else. Realize these feelings in your own mind, and tell them to him." He also sent the following, fastened to a bough of cherry flowers, already becoming thin:—

"When shall I see these scenes again, And view the flowers of spring in bloom, Like rustic from his mountain home, A mere spectator shall I come?"

These were carefully read by O Miobu to the Prince, and when he was asked what she should write in answer, he said: "Write that I said that since I feel every longing to see him, when I do not see him for a long time, how shall I feel when he goes away altogether?" Thereupon she wrote an answer, in which she indefinitely stated that she had shown the letter to the Prince, whose answer was simple, yet very affectionate, and so on, with the following:—

"'Tis sad that fair blossoms so soon fade away, In the darkness of winter no flower remains, But let spring return with its sunshiny ray, Then once more the flowers we look on again."

Now, with regard to the recent disgrace of Genji, the public in general did not approve of the severity which the Court had shown to him. Moreover, he had been constantly with the Emperor, his father, since the age of seven, and his requests had been always cheerfully listened to by the latter; hence there were very many, especially among public servants of the ordinary class, who were much indebted to him. However, none of them now came to pay their respects to him. It seems that in a world of intrigue none dares do what is right for fear of risking his own interests. Such being the state of things, Genji, during the whole day, was unoccupied, and the time was entirely spent with Violet. Then, at his usual late hour in the evening, he, in a travelling dress of incognito, at length left the capital, where he had passed five-and-twenty years of his life.

His attendants, Koremitz and Yoshikiyo being among them, were seven or eight in number. He took with him

but little luggage. All ostentatious robes, all unnecessary articles of luxury were dispensed with. Among things taken, was a box containing the works of Hak-rak-ten (a famous Chinese poet), with other books, and besides these a *kin-koto* for his amusement. They embarked in a boat and sailed down the river. Early the next morning they arrived at the sea-coast of Naniwa. They noticed the Oye Palace standing lonely amidst the group of pine trees. The sight of this palace gave a thrill of sadness to Genji, who was now leaving, and not returning, home. He saw the waves rolling on the coast and again sweep back. He hummed, as he saw them:—

“The waves roll back, but unlike me, They come again.”

From Naniwa they continued their voyage, sailing in the bay. As they proceeded they looked back on the scenes they had left. They saw all the mountains veiled in haze, growing more and more distant, while the rowers gently pulled against the rippling waves. It seemed to them as if they were really going “three thousand miles’ distance.”

“Our home is lost in the mist of the mountain, Let us gaze on the sky which is ever the same.”

The day was long and the wind was fair, so they soon arrived at the coast of Suma. The place was near the spot where the exiled Yukihira had lived, and had watched the beautiful smoke rising from the salt ovens. There was a thatched house in which the party temporarily took up their residence. It was a very different home from what they had been used to, and it might have appeared even novel, had the circumstances of their coming there been different. The authorities of the neighborhood were sent for, and a lodge was built under the direction of Yoshikiyo, in accordance with Genji’s wishes. The work was hurried on, and the building was soon completed. In the garden, several trees, cherries and others, were planted, and water was also conducted into it. Here Genji soon took up his abode. The Governor of the province, who had been at Court, secretly paid attention to the Prince, with as much respect as was possible.

For some time Genji did not feel settled in his new residence. When he had become in some degree accustomed to it, the season of continuous rain had arrived (May); his thoughts more than ever reverted to the old capital.

The thoughtful expression of Violet’s face, the childish affection of the Heir-apparent, and the innocent playfulness of his little son, became the objects of his reveries and anxiety, nor did he forget his old companions and acquaintances. He, therefore, sent a special messenger to the capital bearing his letters, so that speedy answers might be returned from every quarter. He also sent a messenger to Ise to make inquiry after the lady, who also sent one to him in return.

Now the young daughter of Udaijin had been remaining repentlying in the mansion of her father since the events of the stormy evening. Her father felt much for her, and interceded with the Empress-mother in her behalf, and also with her son, that is, the Emperor, thus getting permission to introduce her once more into Court, an event which took place in the month of July.

To return to Suma. The rainy season had passed, and autumn arrived. The sea was at some distance from the residence of Genji, but the dash of its waves sounded close to their ears as the winds passed by, of which Yukihira sang,

“The autumn wind which passes the barrier of Suma.”

The autumn winds are, it seems, in such a place as this, far more plaintive than elsewhere.

It happened one evening that when all the attendants were fast asleep Genji was awake and alone. He raised his head and rested his arms on his pillow and listened to the sound of the waves which reached his ear from a distance. They seemed nearer than ever, as though they were coming to flood his pillows. He drew his *koto* towards him and struck a melancholy air, as he hummed a verse of a poem in a low tone. With this every one awoke and responded with a sigh.

Such was a common occurrence in the evening, and Genji always felt saddened whenever he came to think that all his attendants had accompanied him, having left their families and homes simply for his sake. In the daytime, however, there were changes. He would then enjoy pleasant conversations. He also joined several papers into long rolls on which he might practise penmanship. He spent a good deal of time in drawing and sketching. He remembered how Yoshikiyo, on one occasion in Mount Kurama, had described the beautiful scenery of the place on which he was now gazing. He sketched every beautiful landscape of the neighborhood, and collected them in albums, thinking how nice it would be if he could send for Tsunenori, a renowned contemporary artist, and get him to paint the sketches which he had made.

Out of all the attendants of Genji there were four or five who had been more especially his favorites, and who had constantly attended on him. One evening they were all sitting together in a corridor which commanded a full view of the sea. They perceived the island of Awaji lying in the distance, as if it were floating on the horizon, and also several boats with sailors, singing as they rowed to the shore over the calm surface of the water, like waterfowl in their native element. Over their heads flocks of wild geese rustled on their way homeward with their plaintive cry, which made the thoughts of the spectators revert to their homes. Genji hummed this verse:—

“Those wandering birds above us flying, Do they our far-off friends resemble. With their voice of plaintive crying Make us full of thoughtful sighing.”

Yoshikiyo took up the idea and replied:—

“Though these birds no friends of ours Are, and we to them are nought, Yet their voice in these still hours Bring those old friends to our thought.”

Then Koremitz continued:—

“Before to-day I always thought They flew on pleasure’s wing alone, But now their fate to me is fraught With some resemblance to our own.”

Ukon-no-Jio added:—

“Though we, like them, have left our home To wander forth, yet still for me There’s joy to think where’er I roam My faithful friends are still with me.”

Ukon-no-Jio was the brother of Ki-no-Kami. His father, Iyo-no-Kami, had now been promoted to be Hitachi-no-Kami (Governor of Hitachi), and had gone down to that province, but Ukon-no-Jio did not join his father, who would have gladly taken him, and faithfully followed Genji.

This evening happened to be the fifteenth of August, on which day a pleasant reunion is generally held at the Imperial Palace. Genji looked at the silvery pale sky, and as he did so the affectionate face of the Emperor, his brother, whose expression strikingly resembled their father’s, presented itself to his mind. After a deep and long sigh, he returned to his couch, humming as he went:—

“Here is still a robe His Majesty gave to me.”

It should be here noticed that he had been presented by the Emperor on a certain occasion with a robe, and this robe he had never parted with, even in his exile.

About this time Daini (the senior Secretary of the Lord-Lieutenant of Kiusiu) returned to the capital with his family, having completed his official term. His daughter had been a virgin dancer, and was known to Genji. They preferred to travel by water, and slowly sailed up along the beautiful coast. When they arrived at Suma, the distant sound of a *kin* was heard, mingled with the sea-coast wind, and they were told that Genji was there in exile. Daini therefore sent his son Chikzen-no-Kami to the Prince with these words: “Coming back from a distant quarter I expected as soon as I should arrive in the capital to have had the pleasure of visiting you and listening to your pleasant voice, and talking of events which have taken place there, but little did I think that you had taken up your residence in this part of the country. How greatly do I sympathize with you! I ought to land and see you at once, but there are too many people in the same boat, therefore I think it better to avoid the slightest grounds which may cause them to talk. However, possibly I shall pay you a visit soon.”

This Chikzen-no-Kami had been for some time previously a Kurand (a sort of equerry) to Genji, therefore his visit was especially welcome to him. He said that since he had left the capital it had become difficult to see any of his acquaintances, and that therefore this especial visit was a great pleasure to him. His reply to the message of Daini was to the same effect. Chikzen-no-Kami soon took his leave, and returning to the boat, reported to his father and others all he had seen. His sister also wrote to Genji privately thus: “Pray excuse me if I am too bold.

Know you not the mind is swayed Like the tow-rope of our boat, At the sounds your Kin has made, Which around us sweetly float.”

When Genji received this, his pleasure was expressed by his placid smile, and he sent back the following:—

“If this music moves the mind So greatly as you say, No one would care to leave behind These lonely waves of Suma’s bay.”

This recalls to our mind that there was in the olden time an exile who gave a stanza even to the postmaster of a village. Why then should not Genji have sent to her whom he knew this stanza?

In the meantime, as time went on, more sympathizers with Genji were found in the capital, including no less a personage than the Emperor himself. True it is that before Genji left, many even of his relatives and most intimate friends refrained from paying their respects to him, but in the course of time not a few began to correspond with him, and sometimes they communicated their ideas to each other in pathetic poetry. These things reached the ears of the Empress-mother, who was greatly irritated by them. She said: “The only thing a man who has offended the Court should do is to keep himself as quiet as possible. It is most unpardonable that such a man should haughtily cause scandal to the Court from his humble dwelling. Does he intend to imitate the treacherous example of one who made a deer pass for a horse? Those who intrigue with such a man are equally blamable.” These spiteful remarks once more put a stop to the correspondence.

Meanwhile, at Suma, the autumn passed away and winter succeeded, with all its dreariness of scene, and with occasional falls of snow. Genji often spent the evening in playing upon the *kin*, being accompanied by Koremitz’s flute and the singing of Yoshikiyo. It was on one of these evenings that the story of a young Chinese Court lady, who had been sent to the frozen land of barbarians, occurred to Genji’s mind. He thought what a great trial it would be if one were obliged to send away one whom he loved, like the lady in the tale, and as he reflected on this, with some melancholy feelings, it appeared to him as vividly as if it were only an event of yesterday, and he hummed:—

“The sound of the piper’s distant strain Broke on her dreams in the frozen eve.”

He then tried to sleep, but could not do so, and as he lay the distant cry of Chidori reached his ears. He hummed again as he heard them:—

“Although on lonely couch I lie Without a mate, yet still so near, At dawn the cries of Chidori, With their fond mates, ‘tis sweet to hear.”

Having washed his hands, he spent some time in reading a Kio (Sutra), and in this manner the winter-time passed away.

Towards the end of February the young cherry-trees which Genji had planted in his garden blossomed, and this brought to his memory the well-known cherry-tree in the Southern Palace, and the *fête* in which he had taken part. The noble countenance of the late ex-Emperor, and that of the present one, the then Heir-apparent, which had struck him much at that time, returned to his recollection with the scene where he had read out his poem.

“While on the lordly crowd I muse, Which haunts the Royal festive hours, The day has come when I’ve put on The crown of fairest cherry flowers.”

While thus meditating on the past, strange to say, To-no-Chiujo, Genji’s brother-in-law, came from the capital to see the Prince. He had been now made Saishio (privy councillor). Having, therefore, more responsibility, he had to be more cautious in dealing with the public. He had, however, a personal sympathy with Genji, and thus came to see him, at the risk of offending the Court.

The first thing which struck his eyes was, not the natural beauty of the scenery, but the style of Genji’s residence, which showed the novelty of pure Chinese fashion. The enclosure was surrounded by “a trellis-work of bamboo,” with “stone steps,” and “pillars of pine-tree.”

He entered, and the pleasure of Genji and To-no-Chiujo was immense, so much so that they shed tears. The style of the Prince’s dress next attracted the attention of To-no-Chiujo. He was habited in a plain, simple country style, the coat being of an unforbidden color, a dull yellow, the trousers of a subdued green.

The furniture was all of a temporary nature, with Go and Sugorok playing boards, as well as one for the game of Dagi. He noticed some articles for the services of religion, showing that Genji was wont to indulge in devotional exercises. The visitor told Genji many things on the subject of affairs in the capital, which he had been longing to impart to him for many months past; telling him also how the grandfather of his boy always delighted in playing with him, and giving him many more interesting details.

Several fishermen came with the fish which they had caught. Genji called them in and made them show their spoils. He also led them to talk of their lives spent on the sea, and each in his own peculiar local dialect gave him a narration of his joys and sorrows. He then dismissed them with the gift of some stuff to make them clothing. All this was quite a novelty to the eyes of To-no-Chiujo, who also saw the stable in which he obtained a glimpse of some horses. The attendants at the time were feeding them. Dinner was presently served, at which the dishes were necessarily simple, yet tasteful. In the evening they did not retire to rest early, but spent their time in continuing their conversation and in composing verses.

Although To-no-Chiujo had, in coming, risked the displeasure of the Court, he still thought it better to avoid any possible slander, and therefore he made up his mind to set out for his home early next morning. The *saké* cup was offered, and they partook of it as they hummed,

“In our parting cup, the tears of sadness fall.”

Several presents had been brought from the capital for Genji by To-no-Chiujo, and, in return, the former made him a present of an excellent dark-colored horse, and also a celebrated flute, as a token of remembrance.

As the sun shed forth his brilliant rays To-no-Chiujo took his leave, and as he did so he said, “When shall I see you again, you cannot be here long?” Genji replied,

“Yon noble crane that soars on high, And hovers in the clear blue sky, Believe my soul as pure and light; As spotless as the spring day bright.

However, a man like me, whose fortune once becomes adverse seldom regains, even in the case of great wisdom, the prosperity he once fully enjoyed, and so I cannot predict when I may find myself again in the capital.”

So To-no-Chiujo, having replied as follows:—

“The crane mounts up on high, ‘tis true, But now he soars and cries alone, Still fondly thinking of his friend, With whom in former days he flew; ”

set off on his homeward road, leaving Genji cast down for some time.

Now the coast of Akashi is a very short distance from Suma, and there lived the former Governor of the province, now a priest, of whom we have spoken before. Yoshikiyo well remembered his lovely daughter, and, after he came to Suma with Genji, he wrote to her now and then. He did not get any answer from her, but sometimes heard from her father, to whom Genji’s exile became soon known, and who wished to see him for a reason not altogether agreeable to himself. It should be remembered that this old man always entertained aspirations on behalf of his daughter, and in his eyes the successive governors of the province who came after him, and whose influence had been unbounded, were considered as nobodies. To him, his young daughter was everything; and he used to send

her twice a year to visit the temple of Sumiyoshi, in order that she might obtain good fortune by the blessing of the god.

She was not of an ideal beauty, but yet expressive in countenance and exalted in mind. She could, in this respect, rival any of those of high birth in the capital.

The priest said one day to his wife, "Prince Genji, the imperial son of the Koyi of Kiritsubo is now at Suma in exile, having offended the Court. How fortunate it would be if we could take the opportunity of presenting our child to him!"

The wife replied, "Ah, how dreadful, when I heard what the townspeople talk, I understood that he has several mistresses. He went even so far as to carry on a secret intimacy, which happened to be obnoxious to the Emperor, and it is said that this offence was the cause of his exile."

"I have some reason for mentioning this to you," he interrupted, impatiently; "it is not a thing which you understand, so make up your mind, I shall bring the matter about, and take an opportunity of making him come to us."

"No matter how distinguished a personage he is," replied the wife, "it is a fact that he has offended the Court and is exiled. I do not understand why you could take a fancy to such a man for our maiden daughter. It is not a joking matter. I hope you will take it into graver consideration."

"That a man of ability and distinction should meet with adverse fortune is a very common occurrence," said he, still more obstinately, "both in our empire and in that of China. How then do you venture to say such things against the Prince? His mother was the daughter of an Azechi Dainagon, who was my uncle. She enjoyed a good reputation, and when she was introduced at Court, became both prosperous and distinguished. Although her life was shortened by the suffering caused by the fierce jealousy of her rivals, she left behind the royal child, who is no other person than Prince Genji. A woman should always be aspiring, as this lady was. What objection then is there in the idea of introducing our only child to a man like him? Although I am now only a country gentleman, I do not think he would withdraw his favor from me."

Such were the opinions of this old man, and hence his discouragement of the advances of Yoshikiyo.

The first of March came, and Genji was persuaded by some to perform Horai (prayer for purification) for the coming occasion of the Third. He therefore sent for a calendar-priest, with whom he went out, accompanied by attendants, to the sea-shore. Here a tent was erected ceremoniously, and the priest began his prayers, which were accompanied by the launching of a small boat, containing figures representing human images. On seeing this Genji said,

"Never thought I, in my younger day, To be thrown on the wild sea-shore, And like these figures to float away, And perhaps see my home no more."

As he contemplated the scene around him, he perceived that the wild surface of the sea was still and calm, like a mirror without its frame. He offered prayers in profound silence, and then exclaimed,

"Oh, all ye eight millions of gods, hear my cry, Oh, give me your sympathy, aid me, I pray, For when I look over my life, ne'er did I Commit any wrong, or my fellows betray."

Suddenly, as he spoke these words, the wind arose and began to blow fiercely. The sky became dark, and torrents of rain soon followed. This caused great confusion to all present, and each ran back to the house without finishing the ceremony of prayers. None of them were prepared for the storm, and all got drenched with the rain. From this the rain continued to pour down, and the surface of the sea became as it were tapestried with white, over which the lightning darted and the thunder rolled. It seemed as if thunderbolts were crashing overhead, and the force of the rain appeared to penetrate the earth. Everyone was frightened, for they thought the end of the world was near.

Genji occupied his time in quietly reading his Buddhist Bible. In the evening, the thunder became less loud, though the wind still blew not less violently than in the daytime. Everyone in the residence said that they had heard of what is termed a flood-tide, which often caused a great deal of damage, but they had never witnessed such a scene as they had that day. Genji dropped off into a slumber, when indistinctly the resemblance of a human figure came to him and said, "You are requested to come to the palace, why don't you come?"

Genji was startled by the words, and awoke. He thought that the king of the dragon palace might have admired him, and was perhaps the author of this strange dream. These thoughts made him weary of remaining at Suma.

### Chapter XIII

#### *Exile at Akashi*

The storm and thunder still continued for some days, and the same strange dream visited Genji over and over again.

This made him miserable. To return to the capital was not yet to be thought of, as to do so before the imperial permission was given, would only be to increase his disgrace. On the other hand, to render himself obscure by

seeking further retreat was also not to be thought of, as it might cause another rumor that he had been driven away by mere fear of the disturbed state of the ocean.

In the meantime, a messenger arrived from the capital with a letter from Violet. It was a letter of inquiry about himself. It was written in most affectionate terms, and stated that the weather there was extremely disagreeable, as rain was pouring down continuously, and that this made her especially gloomy in thinking of him. This letter gave Genji great pleasure.

The messenger was of the lowest class. At other times Genji would never have permitted such sort of people to approach him, but under the present circumstances of his life he was only too glad to put up with it. He summoned the man to his presence, and made him talk of all the latest news in the capital.

The messenger told him, in awkward terms, that in the capital these storms were considered to be a kind of heavenly warning, that a Nin-wo-ye was going to be held; and that many nobles who had to go to Court were prevented from doing so by the storms, adding that he never remembered such violent storms before.

From the dawn of the next day the winds blew louder, the tide flowed higher, and the sound of the waves resounded with a deafening noise. The thunder rolled and the lightning flashed, while everyone was trembling in alarm, and were all, including Genji, offering up prayers and vows to the God of Sumiyoshi, whose temple was at no great distance, and also to other gods. Meanwhile a thunderbolt struck the corridor of Genji's residence and set fire to it. The Prince and his friends retired to a small house behind, which served as a kitchen. The sky was as if blackened with ink, and in that state of darkness the day ended. In the evening the wind gradually abated, the rain diminished to a thin shower, and even the stars began to blink out of the heavens.

This temporary retreat was now irksome, and they thought of returning to their dwelling quarters, but they saw nothing but ruins and confusion from the storm, so they remained where they were. Genji was occupied in prayer. The moon began to smile from above, the flow of the tide could be seen, and the rippling of the waves heard. He opened the rude wooden door, and contemplated the scene before him. He seemed to be alone in the world, having no one to participate in his feelings. He heard several fishermen talking in their peculiar dialect. Feeling much wearied by the events of the day, he soon retired, and resigned himself to slumber, reclining near one side of the room, in which there were none of the comforts of an ordinary bedchamber.

All at once his late father appeared before his eyes in the exact image of life, and said to him, "Why are you in so strange a place?" and taking his hand, continued, "Embark at once in a boat, as the God of Sumiyoshi guides you, and leave this coast."

Genji was delighted at this, and replied, "Since I parted from you I have undergone many misfortunes, and I thought that I might be buried on this coast."

"It must not be thus," the phantom replied; "your being here is only a punishment for a trifling sin which you have committed. For my own part, when I was on the throne, I did no wrong, but I have somehow been involved in some trifling sin, and before I expiated it I left the world. Hurt, however, at beholding you oppressed with such hardships I came up here, plunging into the waves, and rising on the shore. I am much fatigued; but I have something I wish to tell the Emperor, so I must haste away," and he left Genji, who felt very much affected, and cried out, "Let me accompany you!" With this exclamation he awoke, and looked up, when he saw nothing but the moon's face shining through the windows, with the clouds reposing in the sky.

The image of his father still vividly remained before his eyes, and he could not realize that it was only a dream. He became suddenly sad, and was filled with regret that he did not talk a little more, even though it was only in a dream. He could not sleep any more this night, and dawn broke, when a small boat was seen approaching the coast, with a few persons in it.

A man from the boat came up to the residence of Genji. When he was asked who he was, he replied that the priest of Akashi (the former Governor) had come from Akashi in his boat, and that he wished to see Yoshikiyo, and to tell him the reason of his coming. Yoshikiyo was surprised, and said, "I have known him for years, but there was a slight reason why we were not the best of friends, and some time has now passed without correspondence. What makes him come?"

As to Genji, however, the arrival of the boat made him think of its coincidence with the subject of his dream, so he hurried Yoshikiyo to go and see the new comers. Thereupon the latter went to the boat, thinking as he went, "How could he come to this place amidst the storms which have been raging?"

The priest now told Yoshikiyo that in a dream which he had on the first day of the month, a strange being told him a strange thing, and, said he, "I thought it too credulous to believe in a dream, but the object appeared again, and told me that on the thirteenth of this month he will give me a supernatural sign, directing me also to prepare a boat, and as soon as the storm ceased, to sail out to this coast. Therefore, to test its truth I launched a boat, but strange to say, on this day the extraordinarily violent weather of rain, wind, and thunder occurred. I then thought that in China there had been several instances of people benefiting the country by believing in dreams, so though this may not exactly be the case with mine, yet I thought it my duty, at all events, to inform you of the fact. With

these thoughts I started in the boat, when a slight miraculous breeze, as it were, blew, and drove me to this coast. I can have no doubt that this was divine direction. Perhaps there might have been some inspiration in this place, too; and I wish to trouble you to transmit this to the Prince."

Yoshikiyo then returned and faithfully told Genji all about his conversation with the priest. When Genji came to reflect, he thought that so many dreams having visited him must have some significance. It might only increase his disgrace if he were to despise such divine warnings merely from worldly considerations, and from fear of consequences. It would be better to resign himself to one more advanced in age, and more experienced than himself. An ancient sage says, that "resigning one's self makes one happier," besides, his father had also enjoined him in the dream to leave the coast of Suma, and there remained no further doubt for taking this step. He, therefore, gave this answer to the priest, that "coming into an unknown locality, plunged in solitude, receiving scarcely any visits from friends in the capital, the only thing I have to regard as friends of old times are the sun and the moon that pass over the boundless heavens. Under these circumstances, I shall be only too delighted to visit your part of the coast, and to find there such a suitable retreat."

This answer gave the priest great joy, and he pressed Genji to set out at once and come to him. The Prince did so with his usual four or five confidential attendants. The same wind which had miraculously blown the vessel of the priest to Suma now changed, and carried them with equal favor and speed back to Akashi. On their landing they entered a carriage waiting for them, and went to the mansion of the priest.

The scenery around the coast was no less novel than that of Suma, the only difference being that there were more people there. The building was grand, and there was also a grand Buddha-hall adjoining for the service of the priest. The plantations of trees, the shrubberies, the rock-work, and the mimic lakes in the garden were so beautifully arranged as to exceed the power of an artist to depict, while the style of the dwelling was so tasteful that it was in no way inferior to any in the capital.

The wife and the daughter of the priest were not residing here, but were at another mansion on the hill-side, where they had removed from fear of the recent high tides.

Genji now took up his quarters with the priest in this seaside mansion. The first thing he did when he felt a little settled was to write to the capital, and tell his friends of his change of residence. The priest was about sixty years old, and was very sincere in his religious service. The only subject of anxiety which he felt was, as we have already mentioned, the welfare of his daughter. When Genji became thoroughly settled he often joined the priest, and spent hours in conversing with him. The latter, from his age and experience, was full of information and anecdotes, many of which were quite new to Genji, but the narration of them seemed always to turn upon his daughter.

April had now come. The trees began to be clothed with a thick shade of leaves, which had a peculiar novelty of appearance, differing from that of the flowers of spring, or the bright dyes of autumn. The Kuina (a particular bird of summer) commenced their fluttering. The furniture and dresses were changed for those more suitable to the time of year. The comfort of the house was most agreeable. It was on one of these evenings that the surface of the broad ocean spread before the eye was unshadowed by the clouds, and the Isle of Awaji floated like foam on its face, just as it appeared to do at Suma. Genji took out his favorite *kin*, on which he had not practised for some time, and was playing an air called "Korio," when the priest joined him, having left for awhile his devotions, and said that his music recalled to his mind the old days and the capital which he had quitted so long. He sent for a *biwa* (mandolin) and a *soh-koto* from the hill-side mansion, and, after the fashion of a blind singer of ballads to the *biwa*, played two or three airs.

He then handed the *soh-koto* to Genji, who also played a few tunes, saying, as he did so, in a casual manner, "This sounds best when played upon by some fair hand." The priest smiled, and rejoined: "What better hand than yours need we wish to hear playing; for my part, my poor skill has been transmitted to me, through three generations, from the royal hand of the Emperor Yenghi, though I now belong to the past; but, occasionally, when my loneliness oppresses me, I indulge in my old amusement, and there is one who, listening to my strains, has learnt to imitate them so well that they resemble those of the Emperor Yenghi himself. I shall be very happy, if you desire, to find an opportunity for you to hear them."

Genji at once laid aside the instrument, saying: "Ah, how bold! I did not know I was among proficients," and continued, "From olden time the *soh-koto* was peculiarly adopted by female musicians. The fifth daughter of the Emperor Saga, from whom she had received the secret, was a celebrated performer, but no one of equal skill succeeded her. Of course there are several players, but these merely strike or strum on the instrument; but in this retreat there is a skilful hand. How delightful it will be."

"If you desire to hear, there is no difficulty. I will introduce her to you. She also plays the *biwa* very well. The *biwa* has been considered from olden time very difficult to master, and I am proud of her doing so."

In this manner the priest led the conversation to his own daughter, while fruit and *sake* were brought in for refreshment. He then went on talking of his life since he first came to the coast of Akashi, and of his devotion to religion, for the sake of future happiness, and also out of solicitude for his daughter. He continued: "Although I

feel rather awkward in saying it, I am almost inclined to think your coming to this remote vicinity has something providential in it, as an answer, as it were, to our earnest prayers, and it may give you some consolation and pleasure. The reason why I think so is this—it is nearly eighteen years since we began to pray for the blessing of the God Sumiyoshi on our daughter, and we have sent her twice a year, in spring and autumn, to his temple. At the 'six-time' service, also, the prayers for my own repose on the lotus flower, are only secondary to those which I put up for the happiness of my daughter. My father, as you may know, held a good office in the capital, but I am now a plain countryman, and if I leave matters in their present state, the status of my family will soon become lower and lower. Fortunately this girl was promising from her childhood, and my desire was to present her to some distinguished personage in the capital, not without disappointment to many suitors, and I have often told her that if my desire is not fulfilled she had better throw herself into the sea."

Such was the tedious discourse which the priest held on the subject of his family affairs; yet it is not surprising that it awakened an interest in the susceptible mind of Genji for the fair maiden thus described as so promising. The priest at last, in spite of the shyness and reserve of the daughter, and the unwillingness of the mother, conducted Genji to the hill-side mansion, and introduced him to the maiden. In the course of time they gradually became more than mere acquaintances to each other. For some time Genji often found himself at the hill-side mansion, and her society appeared to afford him greater pleasure than anything else, but this did not quite meet with the approval of his conscience, and the girl in the mansion at Nijo returned to his thoughts. If this flirtation of his should become known to her, he thought, it perhaps would be very annoying to her. True, she was not much given to be jealous, but he well remembered the occasional complaints she had now and then made to him while in the capital. These feelings induced him to write more frequently and more minutely to her, and he soon began to frequent the hill-side mansion less often. His leisure hours were spent in sketching, as he used to do in Suma, and writing short poetic effusions explanatory of the scenery. This was also going on in the mansion at Nijo, where Violet passed the long hours away in painting different pictures, and also in writing, in the form of a diary, what she saw and did. What will be the issue of all these things?

Now, since the spring of the year there had been several heavenly warnings in the capital, and things in general were somewhat unsettled. On the evening of the thirteenth of March, when the rain and wind had raged, the late Emperor appeared in a dream to his son the Emperor, in front of the palace, looking reproachfully upon him. The Emperor showed every token of submission and respect when the dead Emperor told him of many things, all of which concerned Genji's interests. The Emperor became alarmed, and when he awoke he told his mother all about his dream. She, however, told him that on such occasions, when the storm rages, and the sky is obscured by the disturbance of the elements, all things, especially on which our thoughts have been long occupied, appear to us in a dream in a disturbed sleep; and she continued, "I further counsel you not to be too hastily alarmed by such trifles." From this time he began to suffer from sore eyes, which may have resulted from the angry glances of his father's spirit. About the same time the father of the Empress-mother died. His death was by no means premature; but yet, when such events take place repeatedly, it causes the mind to imagine there is something more than natural going on, and this made the Empress-mother feel a little indisposed.

The Emperor then constantly told her that if Genji were left in his present condition it might induce evil, and, therefore, it would be better to recall him, and restore his titles and honors to him. She obstinately opposed these ideas, saying, "If a person who proved to be guilty, and has retired from the capital, were to be recalled before the expiration of at least three years, it would naturally show the weakness of authority."

She gained her point, and thus the days were spent and the year changed.

The Emperor still continually suffered from indisposition, and the unsettled state of things remained the same as before. A prince had been born to him, who was now about two years old, and he began to think of abdicating the throne in favor of the Heir-apparent, the child of the Princess Wistaria. When he looked around to see who would best minister public affairs, he came to think that the disgrace of Genji was a matter not to be allowed to continue, and at last, contrary to the advice of his mother, he issued a public permission for Genji's return to the capital, which was repeated at the end of July. Genji therefore prepared to come back. Before, however, he started, a month passed away, which time was mostly spent in the society of the lady of the hill-side mansion. The expected journey of Genji was now auspicious, even to him, and ought also to have been so to the family of the priest, but parting has always something painful in its nature. This was more so because the girl had by this time the witness of their love in her bosom, but he told her that he would send for her when his position was assured in the capital.

Towards the middle of August everything was in readiness, and Genji started on his journey homeward. He went to Naniwa, where he had the ceremony of Horai performed. To the temple of Sumiyoshi he sent a messenger to say that the haste of his journey prevented him coming at this time, but that he would fulfil his vows as soon as circumstances would permit. From Naniwa he proceeded to the capital, and returned once more, after an absence of nearly three years, to his mansion at Nijo. The joy and excitement of the inmates of the mansion were unbounded, and the development of Violet charmed his eyes. His delight was great and the pleasure of his mind was of the

most agreeable nature; still, from time to time, in the midst of this very pleasure, the recollection of the maiden whom he had left at Akashi occurred to his thoughts. But this kind of perturbation was only the result of what had arisen from the very nature of Genji's character.

Before the lapse of many days all his titles and honors were restored to him, and he was soon created an extra Vice-Dainagon.

All those who had lost dignities or office on account of Genji's complications were also restored to them. It seemed to these like a sudden and unexpected return of spring to the leafless tree.

In the course of a few days Genji was invited by the Emperor to come and see him. The latter had scarcely recovered from his indisposition, and was still looking weak and thin. When Genji appeared before him, he manifested great pleasure, and they conversed together in a friendly way till the evening.

## Chapter XXV

### *Fireflies*

Genji was famous and life was secure and peaceful. His ladies had in their several ways made their own lives and were happy. There was an exception, Tamakazura, who faced a new crisis and was wondering what to do next. She was not as genuinely frightened of him, of course, as she had been of the Higo man; but since few people could possibly know what had happened, she must keep her disquiet to herself, and her growing sense of isolation. Old enough to know a little of the world, she saw more than ever what a handicap it was not to have a mother.

Genji had made his confession. The result was that his longing increased. Fearful of being overheard, however, he found the subject a difficult one to approach, even gingerly. His visits were very frequent. Choosing times when she was likely to have few people with her, he would hint at his feelings, and she would be in an agony of embarrassment. Since she was not in a position to turn him away, she could only pretend that she did not know what was happening.

She was of a cheerful, affectionate disposition. Though she was also of a cautious and conservative nature, the chief impression she gave was of a delicate, winsome girlishness.

Prince Hotaru continued to pay energetic court. His labors had not yet gone on for very long when he had the early-summer rains to be resentful of.

"Admit me a little nearer, please," he wrote. "I will feel better if I can unburden myself of even part of what is in my heart."

Genji saw the letter. "Princes," he said, "should be listened to. Aloofness is not permitted. You must let him have an occasional answer." He even told her what to say.

But he only made things worse. She said that she was not feeling well and did not answer.

There were few really highborn women in her household. She did have a cousin called Saisho, daughter of a maternal uncle who had held a seat on the council. Genji had heard that she had been having a difficult time since her father's death, and had put her in Tamakazura's service. She wrote a passable hand and seemed generally capable and well informed. He assigned her the task of composing replies to gentlemen who deserved them. It was she whom he summoned today. One may imagine that he was curious to see all of his brother's letters. Tamakazura herself had been reading them with more interest since that shocking evening. It must not be thought that she had fallen in love with Hotaru, but he did seem to offer a way of evading Genji. She was learning rapidly.

Unaware that Genji himself was eagerly awaiting him, Hotaru was delighted at what seemed a positive invitation and quietly came calling. A seat was put out for him near the corner doors, where she received him with only a curtain between them. Genji had given close attention to the incense, which was mysterious and seductive—rather more attention, indeed, than a guardian might have felt that his duty demanded. One had to admire the results, whatever the motive. Saisho was at a loss to reply to Hotaru's overtures. Genji pinched her gently to remind her that her mistress must not behave like an unfeeling lump, and only added to her discomfiture. The dark nights of the new moon were over and there was a bland quarter-moon in the cloudy sky. Calm and dignified, the prince was very handsome indeed. Genji's own very special perfume mixed with the incense that drifted through the room as people moved about. More interesting than he would have expected, thought the prince. In calm control of himself all the while (and in pleasant contrast to certain other people), he made his avowals.

Tamakazura withdrew to the east penthouse and lay down. Genji followed Saisho as she brought a new message from the prince.

"You are not being kind," he said to Tamakazura. "A person should behave as the occasion demands. You are unnecessarily coy. You should not be sending a messenger back and forth over such distances. If

you do not wish him to hear your voice, very well, but at least you should move a little nearer."

She was in despair. She suspected that his real motive was to impose himself upon her, and each course open to her seemed worse than all the others. She slipped away and lay down at a curtain between the penthouse and the main hall.

She was sunk in thought, unable to answer the prince's outpourings. Genji came up beside her and lifted the curtain back over its frame. There was a flash of light. She looked up startled. Had someone lighted a torch?

No—Genji had earlier in the evening put a large number of fireflies in a cloth bag. Now, letting no one guess what he was about, he released them. Tamakazura brought a fan to her face. Her profile was very beautiful.

Genji had worked everything out very carefully. Prince Hotaru was certain to look in her direction. He was making a show of passion, Genji suspected, because he thought her Genji's daughter, and not because he had guessed what a beauty she was. Now he would see, and be genuinely excited. Genji would not have gone to such trouble if she had in fact been his daughter. It all seems rather perverse of him.

He slipped out through another door and returned to his part of the house.

The prince had guessed where the lady would be. Now he sensed that she was perhaps a little nearer. His heart racing, he looked through an opening in the rich gossamer curtains. Suddenly, some six or seven feet away, there was a flash of light—and such beauty as was revealed in it! Darkness was quickly restored, but the brief glimpse he had had was the sort of thing that makes for romance. The figure at the curtains may have been indistinct but it most certainly was slim and tall and graceful. Genji would not have been disappointed at the interest it had inspired.

"You put out this silent fire to no avail. Can you extinguish the fire in the human heart?

"I hope I make myself understood."

Speed was the important thing in answering such a poem.

"The firefly but burns and makes no comment. Silence sometimes tells of deeper thoughts."

It was a brisk sort of reply, and having made it, she was gone. His lament about this chilly treatment was rather wordy, but he would not have wished to overdo it by staying the night. It was late when he braved the dripping eaves (and tears as well) and went out. I have no doubt that a cuckoo sent him on his way, but did not trouble myself to learn all the detd ls.

So handsome, so poised, said the women—so very much like Genji. Not knowing their lady's secret, they were filled with gratitude for Genji's attentions. Why, not even her mother could have done more for her.

Unwelcome attentions, the lady was thinking. If she had been recognized by her father and her situation were nearer the ordinary, then they need not be entirely unwelcome. She had had wretched luck, and she lived in dread of rumors.

Genji too was determined to avoid rumors. Yet he continued to have his ways. Can one really be sure, for instance, that he no longer had designs upon Akikonomu? There was something different about his manner. When he was with her, something especially charming and seductive. But she was beyond the reach of direct overtures. Tamakazura was a modern sort of girl, and approachable. Sometimes dangerously near losing control of himself, he would do things which, had they been noticed, might have aroused suspicions. It was a difficult and complicated relationship indeed, and he must be given credit for the fact that he held back from the final line.

On the fifth day of the Fifth Month, the Day of the Iris, he stopped by her apartments on his way to the equestrian grounds.

"What happened? Did he stay late? You must be careful with him. He is not to be trusted—not that there are very many men these days a girl really can trust."

He praised his brother and blamed him. He seemed very young and was very handsome as he offered this word of caution. As for his clothes, the singlets and the robe thrown casually over them glowed in such rich and pleasing colors that they seemed to brim over and seek more space. One wondered whether a supernatural hand might not have had some part in the dyeing. The colors themselves were familiar enough, but the woven patterns were as if everything had pointed to this day of flowers. The lady was sure she would have been quite intoxicated with the perfumes burned into them had she not had these worries.

A letter came from Prince Hotaru, on white tissue paper in a fine, aristocratic hand. At first sight the contents seemed very interesting, but somehow they became ordinary upon repeating.

"Even today the iris is neglected. Its roots, my cries, are lost among the waters."

It was attached to an iris root certain to be much talked of.

"You must get off an answer," said Genji, preparing to leave.

Her women argued that she had no choice.

Whatever she may have meant to suggest by it, this was her answer, a simple one set down in a faint, delicate hand:

"It might have flourished better in concealment, The iris root washed purposelessly away. Exposure seems rather unwise."

A connoisseur, the prince thought that the hand could just possibly be improved.

Gifts of medicinal herbs in decorative packets came from this and that well-wisher. The festive brightness did much to make her forget earlier unhappiness and hope that she might come uninjured through this new trial.

Genji also called on the lady of the orange blossoms, in the east wing of the same northeast quarter.

"Yugiri is to bring some friends around after the archery meet. I should imagine it will still be daylight. I have never understood why our efforts to avoid attention always end in failure. The princes and the rest of them hear that something is up and come around to see, and so we have a much noisier party than we had planned on. We must in any event be ready."

The equestrian stands were very near the galleries of the northeast quarter.

"Come, girls," he said. "Open all the doors and enjoy yourselves. Have a look at all the handsome officers. The ones in the Left Guards are especially handsome, several cuts above the common run at court."

They had a delightful time. Tamakazura joined them. There were fresh green blinds all along the galleries, and new curtains too, the rich colors at the hems fading, as is the fashion these days, to white above. Women and little girls clustered at all the doors. The girls in green# robes and trains of purple gossamer seemed to be from Tamakazura's wing. There were four of them, all very pretty and well behaved. Her women too were in festive dress, trains blending from lavender at the waist down to deeper purple and formal jackets the color of carnation shoots.

The lady of the orange blossoms had her little girls in very dignified dress, singlets of deep pink and trains of red lined with green It was very amusing to see all the women striking new poses as they draped their finery about them. The young courtiers noticed and seemed to be striking poses of their own.

Genji went out to the stands toward midafternoon. All the princes were there, as he had predicted. The equestrian archery was freer and more varied than at the palace. The officers of the guard joined in, and everyone sat entranced through the afternoon. The women may not have understood all the finer points, but the uniforms of even the common guardsmen were magnificent and the horsemanship was complicated and exciting. The grounds were very wide, fronting also on Murasaki's southeast quarter, where young women were watching. There was music and dancing, Chinese polo music and the Korean dragon dance. As night came on, the triumphal music rang out high and wild. The guardsmen were richly rewarded according to their several ranks. It was very late when the assembly dispersed.

Genji spent the night with the lady of the orange blossoms.li "Prince Hotaru is a man of parts," he said. "He may not be the handsomest man in the world, but everything about him tells of breeding and cultivation, and he is excellent company. Did you chance to catch a glimpse of him? He has many good points, as I have said, but it may be that in the final analysis there is something just a bit lacking in him."

"He is younger than you but I thought he looked older. I have heard that he never misses a chance to come calling. I saw him once long ago at court and had not really seen him again until today. He has improved. Prince Sochi is a very fine gentleman too, but somehow he does not quite look like royalty."

Genji smiled. Her judgment was quick and sure. But he kept his own counsel. This sort of open appraisal of people still living was not to his taste. He could not understand why the world had such a high opinion of Higekuro and would not have been pleased to receive him into the family, but these views too he kept to himself.

They were good friends, he and she, and no more, and they went to separate beds. Genji wondered when they had begun to drift apart. She never let fall the tiniest hint of jealousy. It had been the usual thing over the years for reports of such festivities to come to her through others. The events of the day seemed to bring new recognition to her and her household.

She said softly:

"You honor the iris on the bank to which No pony comes to taste of withered grasses?" One could scarcely have called it a masterpiece, but he was touched.

"This pony, like the love grebe, wants a comrade. Shall it forget the iris on the bank?" Nor was his a very exciting poem.

"I do not see as much of you as I would wish, but I do enjoy you."

There was a certain irony in the words, from his bed to hers, but also affection. She was a dear, gentle lady. She had let him have her bed and spread quilts for herself outside the curtains. She had in the course of time come to accept such arrangements as proper, and he did not suggest changing them.

The rains of earlyd ummer continued without a break, even gloomier than in most years. The ladies at

Rokjio amused themselves with illustrated romances. The Akashi lady, a talented painter, sent pictures to her daughter.

Tamakazura was the most avid reader of all. She quite lost herself in pictures and stories and would spend whole days with them. Several of her young women were well informed in literary matters. She came upon all sorts of interesting and shocking incidents (she could not be sure whether they were true or not), but she found little that resembled her own unfortunate career. There was *The Tale of Sumiyoshi*, popular in its day, of course, and still well thought of. She compared the plight of the heroine, within a hairbreadth of being taken by the chief accountant, with her own escape from the Higo person.

Genji could not help noticing the clutter of pictures and manuscripts. "What a nuisance this all is," he said one day. "Women seem to have been born to be cheerfully deceived. They know perfectly well that in all these old stories there is scarcely a shred of truth, and yet they are captured and made sport of by the whole range of trivialities and go on scribbling them down, quite unaware that in these warm rains their hair is all dank and knotted."

He smiled. "What would we do if there were not these old romances to relieve our boredom? But amid all the fabrication I must admit that I do find real emotions and plausible chains of events. We can be quite aware of the frivolity and the idleness and still be moved. We have to feel a little sorry for a charming princess in the depths of gloom. Sometimes a series of absurd and grotesque incidents which we know to be quite improbable holds our interest, and afterwards we must blush that it was so. Yet even then we can see what it was that held us. Sometimes I stand and listen to the stories they read to my daughter, and I think to myself that there certainly are good talkers in the world. I think that these yarns must come from people much practiced in lying. But perhaps that is not the whole of the story?"

She pushed away her inkstone. "I can see that that would be the view of someone much given to lying himself. For my part, I am convinced of their truthfulness."

He laughed. "I have been rude and unfair to your romances, haven't I. They have set down and preserved happenings from the age of the gods to our own. *The Chronicles of Japan* and the rest are a mere fragment of the whole truth. It is your romances that fill in the details."

"We are not told of things that happened to specific people exactly as they happened; but the beginning is when there are good things and bad things, things that happen in this life which one never tires of seeing and hearing about, things which one cannot bear not to tell of and must pass on for all generations. If the storyteller wishes to speak well, then he chooses the good things; and if he wishes to hold the reader's attention he chooses bad things, extraordinarily bad things. Good things and bad things alike, they are things of this world and no other."

"Writers in other countries approach the matter differently. Old stories in our own are different from new. There are differences in the degree of seriousness. But to dismiss them as lies is itself to depart from the truth. Even in the writ which the Buddha drew from his noble heart are parables, devices for pointing obliquely at the truth. To the ignorant they may seem to operate at cross purposes. The Greater Vehicle is full of them, but the general burden is always the same. The difference between enlightenment and confusion is of about the same order as the difference between the good and the bad in a romance. If one takes the generous view, then nothing is empty and useless."

He now seemed bent on establishing the uses of fiction.

"But tell me: is there in any of your old stories a proper, upright fool like myself?" He came closer. "I doubt that even among the most unworldly of your heroines there is one who manages to be as distant and unnoticed as you are. Suppose the two of us set down our story and give the world a really interesting one."

"I think it very likely that the world will take notice of our curious story even if we do not go to the trouble." She hid her face in her sleeves.

"Our curious story? Yes, incomparably curious, I should think." Smiling and playful, he pressed nearer.

"Beside myself, I search through all the books, And come upon no daughter so unfilial. You are breaking one of the commandments."

He stroked her hair as he spoke, but she refused to look up. Presently, however, she managed a reply:

"So too it is with me. I too have searched, And found no cases quite so unparental."

Somewhat chastened, he pursued the matter no further. Yet one worried. What was to become of her?

Murasaki too had become addicted to romances. Her excuse was that Genji's little daughter insisted on being read to.

"Just see what a fine one this is," she said, showing Genji an illustration for *The Tale of Kumano*. The young girl in tranquil and confident slumber made her think of her own younger self. "How precocious even very little children seem to have been. I suppose I might have set myself up as a specimen of the slow, plodding variety. I would have won that competition easily."

Genji might have been the hero of some rather more eccentric stories.

"You must not read love stories to her. I doubt that clandestine affairs would arouse her unduly, but we would

not want her to think them commonplace."

What would Tamakazura have made of the difference between his remarks to her and these remarks to Murasaki?

"I would not of course offer the wanton ones as a model," replied Murasaki, "but I would have doubts too about the other sort. Lady Atemiya in *The Tale of the Hollow Tree*, for instance. She is always very brisk and efficient and in control of things, and she never makes mistakes; but there is something unwomanly about her cool manner and clipped speech."

"I should imagine that it is in real life as in fiction. We are all human and we all have our ways. It is not easy to be unerringly right. Proper, well-educated parents go to great trouble over a daughter's education and tell themselves that they have done well if something quiet and demure emerges. It seems a pity when defects come to light one after another and people start asking what her good parents can possibly have been up to. Yet the rewards are very great when a girl's manner and behavior seem just right for her station. Even then empty praise is not satisfying. One knows that the girl is not perfect and looks at her more critically than before. I would not wish my own daughter to be praised by people who have no standards."

He was genuinely concerned that she acquit herself well in the tests that lay before her.

Wicked stepmothers are of course standard fare for the romancers, and he did not want them poisoning relations between Murasaki and the child. He spent a great deal of time selecting romances he thought suitable, and ordered them copied and illustrated.

He kept Yugiri from Murasaki but encouraged him to be friends with the girl. While he himself was alive it might not matter a great deal one way or the other, but if they were good friends now their affection was likely to deepen after he was dead. He permitted Yugiri inside the front room, though the inner rooms were forbidden. Having so few children, he had ample time for Yugiri, who was a sober lad and seemed completely dependable. The girl was still devoted to her dolls. They made Yugiri think of his own childhood games with Kumoinokari. Sometimes as he waited in earnest attendance upon a doll princess, tears would come to his eyes. He sometimes joked with ladies of a certain standing, but he was careful not to lead them too far. Even those who might have expected more had to make do with a joke. The thing that really concerned him and never left his mind was getting back at the nurse who had sneered at his blue sleeves. He was fairly sure that he could better To-no-Chiujo at a contest of wills, but sometimes the old anger and chagrin came back and he wanted more. He wanted to make To-no-Chiujo genuinely regretful for what he had done. He revealed these feelings only to Kumoinokari. Before everyone else he was a model of cool composure.

Her brothers sometimes thought him rather conceited. Kashiwagi, the oldest, was greatly interested these days in Tamakazura. Lacking a better intermediary, he came sighing to Yugiri. The friendship of the first generation was being repeated in the second.

"One does not undertake to plead another's case," replied Yugiri quietly.

To-no-Chiujo was a very important man, and his many sons were embarked upon promising careers, as became their several pedigrees and inclinations. He had only two daughters. The one who had gone to court had been a disappointment. The prospect of having the other do poorly did not of course please him. He had not forgotten the lady of the evening faces. He often spoke of her, and he went on wondering what had happened to the child. The lady had put him off guard with her gentleness and appearance of helplessness, and so he had lost a daughter. A man must not under any circumstances let a woman out of his sight. Suppose the girl were to turn up now in some outlandish guise and stridently announce herself as his daughter—well, he would take her in.

"Do not dismiss anyone who says she is my daughter," he told his sons. In my younger days I did many things I ought not to have done. There was a lady of not entirely contemptible birth who lost patience with me over some triviality or other, and so I lost a daughter, and I have so few."

There had been a time when he had almost forgotten the lady. Then he began to see what great things his friends were doing for their daughters, and to feel resentful that he had been granted so few.

One night he had a dream. He called in a famous seer and asked for an interpretation.

"Might it be that you will hear of a long-lost child who has been taken in by someone else?"

This was very puzzling. He could think of no daughters whom he had put out for adoption. He began to wonder about Tamakazura.

## Chapter XL

### *The Rites*

Murasaki had been in uncertain health since her great illness. Although there were no striking symptoms and there had been no recurrence of the crisis that had had her near death, she was progressively weaker. Genji could not face the thought of surviving her by even a day. Murasaki's one regret was that she must cause him pain and so be unfaithful to their vows. For the rest, she had no demands to make upon this world and few ties with it. She was ready to go, and wanted only to prepare herself for the next world. Her deepest wish, of which she sometimes spoke, had long been to give herself over entirely to prayers and meditations. But even now Genji refused to hear of it.

Yet he had for some time had similar wishes. Perhaps the time had come and they should take their vows together. He would permit himself no backward glances, however, once the decision was made. They had promised, and neither of them doubted, that they would one day have their places side by side upon the same lotus, but they must live apart, he was determined, a peak between them even if they were on the same mountain, once they had taken their vows. They would not see each other again. The sight of her now, ravaged with illness, made him fear that the final separation would be too much for him. The clear waters of their mountain retreat would be muddied. Years went by, and he had been left far behind by people who, their conversion far from thorough, had taken holy orders heedlessly and impulsively.

It would have been ill mannered of Murasaki to insist on having her way, and she would be running against her own deeper wishes if she opposed his; and so resentment at his unyielding ways was tempered by a feeling that she might be at fault herself.

For some years now she had had scriveners at work on the thousand copies of the Lotus Sutra that were to be her final offering to the Blessed One. They had their studios at Nijo, which she still thought of as home. Now the work was finished, and she made haste to get ready for the dedication. The robes of the seven priests were magnificent, as were all the other details. Not wanting to seem insistent, she had not asked Genji's help, and he had stayed discreetly in the background. No other lady, people said, could have arranged anything so fine. Genji marveled that she should be so conversant with holy ritual, and saw once again that nothing which she set her mind to was beyond her. His own part in the arrangements had been of the most general and perfunctory sort. Yu-giri gave a great deal of time and thought to the music and dancing. The emperor, the empresses, the crown prince, and the ladies at Rokjio limited themselves to formal oblations, and even these threatened to overflow the Nijo mansion. There were others as well, all through the court, who wanted some small part in the ceremonies, which in the end were so grand that people wondered when she might have commenced laying her plans. They suggested a holy resolve going back through all the ages of the god of Furu. The lady of the orange blossoms and the lady of Akashi were among those who assembled at Nijo. Murasaki's place was in a walled room to the west of the main hall, sequestered but for doors at the south and east opening upon the ceremonies. The other ladies were in the northern rooms, separated from the altar by screens.

It was the tenth day of the Third Month. The cherries were in bloom and the skies were pleasantly clear. One felt that Amitabha's paradise could not be far away, and for even the less than devout it was as if a burden of sin were being lifted. At the grand climax the voices of the brushwood bearers and of all the priests rose to describe in solemn tones the labors of the Blessed One, and then there was silence, more eloquent than the words. It spoke to the least sensitive of those present, and it spoke worlds to her for whom everything these days was vaguely, delicately sad.

She sent a poem to the Akashi lady through little Niou, the Third Prince:

"I have no regrets as I bid farewell to this life.

Yet the dying away of the fire is always sad."

If the lady's answer seemed somewhat cool and noncommittal, it may have been because she wished above all to avoid theatrics.

"Our prayers, the first of them borne in on brushwood,  
Shall last the thousand years of the Blessed One's toils."

The chanting went on all through the night, and the drums beat intricate rhythms. As the first touches of dawn came over the sky the scene was as if made especially for her who so loved the spring. All across the garden cherries were a delicate veil through spring mists, and bird songs rose numberless, as if to outdo the flutes. One would have thought that the possibilities of beauty were here exhausted, and then the dancer on the stage became the handsome General Ling, and as the dance gathered momentum and the delighted onlookers stripped off multicolored robes and showered them upon him, the season and the occasion brought a yet higher access of beauty. All the finest performers among the princes and grandes had quite outdone themselves. Looking out upon all this joy and beauty, Murasaki thought how little time she had left.

She was almost never up for a whole day, and today she was back in bed again. These were the familiar faces, the people who had gathered over the years. They had delighted her one last time with flute and koto. Some had meant more to her than others. She gazed intently at the most distant of them and thought that she could never have enough of those who had been her companions at music and the other pleasures of the seasons. There had

been rivalries, of course, but they had been fond of one another. All of them would soon be gone, making their way down the unknown road, and she must make her lonely way ahead of them.

The services were over and the other Rokjio ladies departed. She was sure that she would not see them again. She sent a poem to the lady of the orange blossoms:

“Although these holy rites must be my last,  
The bond will endure for all the lives to come.”

This was the reply:

“For all of us the time of rites is brief.  
More durable by far the bond between us.”

They were over, and now they were followed by solemn and continuous readings from the holy writ, including the Lotus Sutra. The Nijo mansion had become a house of prayers. When they seemed to do no good for its ailing lady, readings were commissioned at favored temples and holy places.

Murasaki had always found the heat very trying. This summer she was near prostration. Though there were no marked symptoms and though there was none of the unsightliness that usually goes with emaciation, she was progressively weaker. Her women saw the world grow dark before their eyes as they contemplated the future.

Distressed at reports that there was no improvement, the empress visited Nijo. She was given rooms in the east wing and Murasaki waited to receive her in the main hall. Though there was nothing unusual about the greetings, they reminded Murasaki, as indeed did everything, that the empress's little children would grow up without her. The attendants announced themselves one by one, some of them very high courtiers. A familiar voice, thought Murasaki, and another. She had not seen the empress in a very long while and hung on the conversation with fond and eager attention.

Genji looked in upon them briefly. “You find me disconsolate this evening,” he said to the empress, “a bird turned away from its nest. But I shall not bore you with my complaints.” He withdrew. He was delighted to see Murasaki out of bed, but feared that the pleasure must be a fleeting one.

“We are so far apart that I would not dream of troubling you to visit me, and I fear that it will not be easy for me to visit you.”

After a time the Akashi lady came in. The two ladies addressed each other affectionately, though Murasaki left a great deal unsaid. She did not want to be one of those who eloquently prepare the world to struggle along without them. She did remark briefly and quietly upon the evanescence of things, and her wistful manner said more than her words.

Genji's royal grandchildren were brought in.

“I spend so much time imagining futures for you, my dears. Do you suppose that I do after all hate to go?”

Still very beautiful, she was in tears. The empress would have liked to change the subject, but could not think how.

“May I ask a favor?” said Murasaki, very casually, as if she hesitated to bring the matter up at all. “There are numbers of people who have been with me for a very long while, and some of them have no home but this. Might I ask you to see that they are taken care of?” And she gave the names.

Having commissioned a reading from the holy writ, the empress returned to her rooms.

Little Niou, the prettiest of them all, seemed to be everywhere at once. Choosing a moment when she was feeling better and there was no one else with her, she seated him before her.

“I may have to go away. Will you remember me?”

“But I don't want you to go away.” He gazed up at her, and presently he was rubbing at his eyes, so charming that she was smiling through her tears. “I like my granny, better than Father and Mother. I don't want you to go away.”

“This must be your own house when you grow up. I want the rose plum and the cherries over there to be yours. You must take care of them and say nice things about them, and sometimes when you think of it you might put flowers on the altar.”

He nodded and gazed up at her, and then abruptly, about to burst into tears, he got up and ran out. It was Niou and the First Princess whom Murasaki most hated to leave. They had been her special charges, and she would not live to see them grow up.

The cool of autumn, so slow to come, was at last here. Though far from well, she felt somewhat better. The winds were still gentle, but it was a time of heavy dews all the same. She would have liked the empress to stay with her just a little while longer but did not want to say so. Messengers had come from the emperor, all of them summoning the empress back to court, and she did not want to put the empress in a difficult position. She was no longer able to leave her room, however much she might want to respect the amenities, and so the empress called on her. Apologetic and at the same time very grateful, for she knew that this might be their last meeting, she had made careful preparations for the visit.

Though very thin, she was more beautiful than ever—one would not have thought it possible. The fresh, vivacious beauty of other years had asked to be likened to the flowers of this earth, but now there was a delicate serenity that seemed to go beyond such present similes. For the empress the slight figure before her, the very serenity bespeaking evanescence, was utter sadness.

Wishing to look at her flowers in the evening light, Murasaki pulled herself from bed with the aid of an armrest.

Genji came in. “Isn’t this splendid? I imagine Her Majesty’s visit has done wonders for you.”

How pleased he was at what was in fact no improvement at all—and how desolate he must soon be!

“So briefly rests the dew upon the *hagi*.

Even now it scatters in the wind.”

It would have been a sad evening in any event, and the plight of the dew even now being shaken from the tossing branches, thought Genji, must seem to the sick lady very much like her own.

“In the haste we make to leave this world of dew,

May there be no time between the first and last.”

He did not try to hide his tears.

And this was the empress’s poem:

“A world of dew before the autumn winds.

Not only theirs, these fragile leaves of grass.”

Gazing at the two of them, each somehow more beautiful than the other, Genji wished that he might have them a thousand years just as they were; but of course time runs against these wishes. That is the great, sad truth.

“Would you please leave me?” said Murasaki. “I am feeling rather worse. I do not like to know that I am being rude and find myself unable to apologize.” She spoke with very great difficulty.

The empress took her hand and gazed into her face. Yes, it was indeed like the dew about to vanish away. Scores of messengers were sent to commission new services. Once before it had seemed that she was dying, and Genji hoped that whatever evil spirit it was might be persuaded to loosen its grip once more. All through the night he did everything that could possibly be done, but in vain. Just as light was coming she faded away. Some kind power above, he thought, had kept the empress with her through the night. He might tell himself, as might all the others who had been with her, that these things have always happened and will continue to happen, but there are times when the natural order of things is unacceptable. The numbing grief made the world itself seem like a twilight dream. The women tried in vain to bring their wandering thoughts together. Fearing for his father, more distraught even than they, Yugiri had come to him.

“It seems to be the end,” said Genji, summoning him to Murasaki’s curtains. “To be denied one’s last wish is a cruel thing. I suppose that their reverences will have finished their prayers and left us, but someone qualified to administer vows must still be here. We did not do a great deal for her in this life, but perhaps the Blessed One can be persuaded to turn a little light on the way she must take into the next. Tell them, please, that I want someone to give the tonsure. There is still someone with us who can do it, surely?”

He spoke with studied calm, but his face was drawn and he was weeping.

“But these evil spirits play very cruel tricks,” replied Yugiri, only slightly less benumbed than his father. “Don’t you suppose the same thing has happened all over again? Your suggestion is of course quite proper. We are told that even a day and a night of the holy life brings untold blessings. But suppose this really is the end—can we hope that anything we do will throw so very much light on the way she must go? No, let us come to terms with the sorrow we have before us and try not to make it worse.”

But he summoned several of the priests who had stayed on, wishing to be of service through the period of mourning, and asked them to do whatever could still be done.

He could congratulate himself on his filial conduct over the years, upon the fact that he had permitted himself no improper thoughts; but he had had one fleeting glimpse of her, and he had gone on hoping that he might one day be permitted another, even as brief, or that he might hear her voice, even faintly. The second hope had come to nothing, and the other—if he did not see her now he never would see her. He was in tears himself, and the room echoed with the laments of the women.

“Do please try to be a little quieter, just for a little while.” He lifted the curtains as he spoke, making it seem that Genji had summoned him. In the dim morning twilight Genji had brought a lamp near Murasaki’s dead face. He knew that Yugiri was beside him, but somehow felt that to screen this beauty from his son’s gaze would only add to the anguish.

“Exactly as she was,” he whispered. “But as you see, it is all over.”

He covered his face. Yugiri too was weeping. He brushed the tears away and struggled to see through them as the sight of the dead face brought them flooding back again. Though her hair had been left untended through her illness, it was smooth and lustrous and not a strand was out of place. In the bright lamplight the skin was a purer, more radiant white than the living lady, seated at her mirror, could have made it. Her beauty, as if in untroubled

sleep, emptied words like "peerless" of all content. He almost wished that the spirit which seemed about to desert him might be given custody of the unique loveliness before him.

Since Murasaki's women were none of them up to such practical matters, Genji forced himself to think about the funeral arrangements. He had known many sorrows, but none quite so near at hand, demanding that he and no one else do what must be done. He had known nothing like it, and he was sure that there would be nothing like it in what remained of his life.

Everything was finished in the course of the day. We are not permitted to gaze upon the empty shell of the locust. The wide moor was crowded with people and carriages. The services were solemn and dignified, and she ascended to the heavens as the frailest wreath of smoke. It is the way of things, but it seemed more than anyone should be asked to endure. Helped to the scene by one or two of his men, he felt as if the earth had given way beneath him. That such a man could be so utterly defeated, thought the onlookers; and there was no one among the most insensitive of menials who was not reduced to tears. For Murasaki's women, it was as if they were wandering lost in a nightmare. Threatening to fall from their carriages, they put the watchfulness of the grooms to severe test. Genji remembered the death of his first wife, Yugiri's mother. Perhaps he had been in better control of himself then—he could remember that there had been a clear moon that night. Tonight he was blinded with tears. Murasaki had died on the fourteenth and it was now the morning of the fifteenth. The sun rose clear and the dew had no hiding place. Genji thought of the world he must return to, bleak and comfortless. How long must he go on alone? Perhaps he could make grief his excuse for gratifying the old, old wish and leaving the world behind. But he did not want to be remembered as a weakling. He would wait until the immediate occasion had passed, he decided, his heart threatening to burst within him.

Yugiri stayed at his father's side all through the period of mourning. Genuinely concerned, he did what he could for the desperately grieving Genji. A high wind came up one evening, and he remembered with a new onset of sorrow an evening of high winds long before. He had seen her so briefly, and at her death that brief glimpse had been like a dream. Invoking the name of Lord Amitabha, he sought to drive away these almost unbearable memories—and to let his tears lose themselves among the beads of his rosary.

"I remember an autumn evening long ago  
As a dream in the dawn when we were left behind."

He set the reverend gentlemen to repeating the holy name and to reading the Lotus Sutra, very sad and very moving. Still Genji's tears flowed on. He thought back over his life. Even the face he saw in the mirror had seemed to single him out for unusual honors, but there had very early been signs that the Blessed One meant him more than others to know the sadness and evanescence of things. He had made his way ahead in the world as if he had not learned the lesson. And now had come grief which surely did single him out from all men, past and future. He would have nothing more to do with the world. Nothing need stand in the way of his devotions. Nothing save his uncontrollable grief, which he feared would not permit him to enter the path he so longed to take. He prayed to Amitabha for even a small measure of forgetfulness.

Many had come in person to pay condolences, and there had been messages from the emperor and countless others, all of them going well beyond conventional expressions of sympathy. Though he had no heart for them, he did not want the world to think him a ruined old man. He had had a good and eventful life, and he did not want to be numbered among those who were too weak to go on. And so to grief was added dissatisfaction at his inability to follow his deepest wishes.

There were frequent messages from To-no-Chiujo, who always did the right thing on sad occasions and who was honestly saddened that such loveliness should have passed so swiftly. His sister, Yugiri's mother, had died at just this time of the year, and so many of the people who had sent condolences then had themselves died since. There was so very little time between the first and last. He gazed out into the gathering darkness and presently set down his thoughts in a long and moving letter which he had delivered to Genji by one of his sons and which contained this poem:

"It is as if that autumn had come again  
And tears for the one were falling on tears for the other."

This was Genji's answer:

"The dews of now are the dews of long ago,  
And autumn is always the saddest time of all."

"It is very kind of you to write so often," he added, not wanting his perceptive friend to guess how thoroughly the loss had undone him. He wore darker mourning than the gray weeds of that other autumn.

The successful and happy sometimes arouse envy, and sometimes they let pride and vanity have their way and bring unhappiness to others. It was not so with Murasaki, whom the meanest of her servants had loved and the smallest of whose acts had seemed admirable. There was something uniquely appealing about her, having to do, perhaps, with the fact that she always seemed to be thinking of others. The wind in the trees and the insect songs in the grasses

brought tears this autumn to the eyes of many who had not known her, and her intimates wondered when they might find consolation. The women who had long been with her saw the life they must live without her as utter bleakness. Some of them, wishing to be as far as possible from the world, went off into remote mountain nunneries.

There were frequent messages from Akikonomu, seeking to describe an infinite sorrow.

"I think that now, finally, I understand.

She did not like the autumn, that I knew—

Because of the wasted moors that now surround us?"

Hers were the condolences that meant most, the letters that spoke to Genji through the numbness of his heart. He wept quietly on, lost in a sad reverie, and took a very long time with his answer.

"Look down upon me from your cloudy summit,

Upon the dying autumn which is my world."

He folded it into an envelope and still held it in his hand. He had taken residence in the women's quarters, not wanting people to see what a useless dotard he had become. A very few women with him, he lost himself in prayer. He and Murasaki had exchanged their vows for a thousand years, and already she had left him. His thoughts must now be on that other world. The dew upon the lotus: it was what he must strive to become, and nothing must be allowed to weaken the resolve. Alas, he did still worry about the name he had made for himself in this world.

Yugiri took charge of the memorial services. If they had been left to Genji they would have been managed far less efficiently. He would take his vows today, Genji told himself; he would take his vows today. Dream-like, the days went by.

The empress too remained inconsolable.



# 9

## South Asia

---

This chapter introduces a representative poet from the late phase of the medieval *bhakti* (meaning “devotion”) movement in India. While there are many notable works from this period, the *bhakti* movement is perhaps the most representative of the meeting of two civilizations, Islam and Hinduism, a major factor in South Asia during the Middle Ages.

Arab traders brought Islam to India as early as the seventh century C.E. However, the greater influence of Islam in South Asia took place from the twelfth century on, when Muhammad of Ghor (modern-day Afghanistan) took over the northern part of India and established the Delhi Sultanate (a Sultan is a sovereign of a Muslim state). There have been interactions between Islamic and Hindu cultures from that point on, if not earlier. Further, from the early sixteenth to the mid-eighteenth century, most of northern India was ruled by the Mughal (also spelled Mogul) dynasty, a Muslim dynasty of Turkic-Mongol origin. During the two centuries of rule over much of India, the Mughals, who were Muslims, made attempts to integrate Hindus and Muslims into a united Indian state.

The *bhakti* movement is a prominent example of the interaction between Islam and Hinduism, which began from the twelfth century. The *bhakti* movement, which emphasized commitment and devotion to one chosen god out of many in the Hindu religion, was a movement to reform aspects of Hinduism, for example, asserting that *moksha*, or liberation, is attainable by everyone, unlike the views and practices of classical Hindu religion based on caste hierarchy. Under the influence of Islam, *bhakti* showed characteristics of monotheism, iconoclasm, and egalitarianism. Despite the synthesis of two religions, *bhakti* still emphasized the Hindu concepts of *moksha* and *karma* (the idea that good or bad actions determine the future modes of an individual’s existence). Whereas earlier *bhakti* poets like Kabir from northern India in the fifteenth century shows the mixing of Hindu and Muslim ideas, Tukaram from western India in the seventeenth century, while still part of the *bhakti* movement, focuses on reenergizing Hinduism in his regions.

Although Tukaram is from the seventeenth century, selected poems by Tukaram in this chapter are good examples of the medieval *bhakti* movement, a result of the crossroads of Islam and Hinduism in South Asia’s Middle Ages.

**AS YOU READ, CONSIDER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:**

- How do Tukaram’s poems seem to convey such Hindu concepts as *karma* and *moksha*?
- Can you point out the influence of the synthesis of Hindu and Muslim ideas, or the *bhakti* movement, in Tukaram’s poems?
- Select specific poems by Tukaram and develop your own interpretive thesis statement for each poem, along with supporting ideas.

**FOR MORE INFORMATION, SEE THE FOLLOWING SOURCES:**

- Go to the following website for the history, timelines, culture, and maps of India:  
<http://www.mapsofindia.com/history/>
- Go to the following website for a BBC documentary, “The Story of India- Episode 5,” which is about Middle Ages India.  
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4NorPxKaqA0>
- Go to the following website for an educational video about Hinduism:  
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fkAwQ3HqBac>

*Written by Kyounghye Kwon*

## TUKARAM'S SELECTED POEMS

Tukaram (1608-1649 C.E.)

Composed ca. 1621-1649 C.E.

India

Tukaram is a Marathi poet, born near Pune, India, who is often regarded as the greatest writer in the Marathi language. Tukaram was devoted to the Hindu god Vitthala, a local incarnation of Visnu, a principal Hindu deity that has ten avatars or incarnations. He was part of the *bhakti* movement that promoted the idea that *moksha* (or liberation) is attainable by anyone, and he came into conflict with the local Brahmins (the highest Hindu caste of priesthood) because he challenged caste hierarchy in Hindu religious practices. In the areas of Maharashtra (the western region of India), he is regarded as the most important poetic and spiritual figure; for this, he is also called “Sant Tukaram,” the epithet “Sant” noting his saintly quality. The canon of Tukaram’s poetry contains about 4600 *abhangas* (short “unbroken” hymns), which are among the most famous Indian poems. These poems are designed to be sung and performed with musical instruments. J. Nelson Fraser and K. B. Marathe translated his poems into English; they were published in 1909-15 and reprinted in 1981.

*Written by Kyounghye Kwon*



**IMAGE 9.1: TUKARAM LEAVES FOR VAIKUNTHA, SUPREME ABODE OF GOD VISHNU |** Tukaram ascends to the heaven of Vishnu.

**Author:** Ravi Varma Press

**Source:** Wikimedia Commons

**License:** Public Domain

**"TUKARAM" SELECTED FROM PSLAMS OF MARATHA SAINTS: ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHT HYMNS**

License: Public Domain

Tukaram, Translated by Nicol Macnicol

The Mother's House

As the bride looks back to her mother's house,  
     And goes, but with dragging feet;  
 So my soul looks up unto thee and longs,  
     That thou and I may meet.

As a child cries out and is sore distressed,  
     When its mother it cannot see,  
 As a fish that is taken from out the wave,  
     So 'tis, says Tuka, with me.

The Suppliant

How can I know the right,—  
     So helpless I—  
 Since thou thy face hast hid from me,  
     O thou most high!

I call and call again  
     At thy high gate.  
 None hears me; empty is the house  
     And desolate.

If but before thy door  
     A guest appear,  
 Thou'l speak to him some fitting word,  
     Some word of cheer.

Such courtesy, O Lord,  
     Becometh thee,  
 And we,—ah, we're not lost to sense  
     So utterly.

A Beggar For Love

A beggar at thy door,  
     Pleading I stand;  
 Give me an alms, O God,  
     Love from thy loving hand.

Spare me the barren task,  
     To come, and come for nought.  
 A gift poor Tuka craves,  
     Unmerited, unbought.

God Who Is Our Home

To the child how dull the Fair  
     If his mother be not there!

So my heart apart from thee,  
     O thou Lord of Pandharl I

Chatak turns from stream and lake,  
     Only rain his thirst can slake.

How the lotus all the night  
Dreameth, dreameth of the light!

As the stream to fishes thou,  
As is to the calf the cow.

To a faithful wife how dear  
Tidings of her Lord to hear!

How a miser's heart is set  
On the wealth he hopes to get!

Such, says Tuka, such am I!  
But for thee I'd surely die.

### The Strife of Sense

Wearied by strife of sense,  
By call and counter-call,  
To thee I hie me thence,  
And tell thee all.

Yea, Lord, thou knowest this;  
I've brought my life to thee.  
Cast down my burden is  
And I am free!

Now all my being yearns,  
Yearns with a strong desire,  
My love within me burns,  
A wasting fire.

If thou canst help indeed—  
(Hear what I, Tuka, say)—  
Narayan, help with speed,  
Make no delay!

### Waiting

With head on hand before my door,  
I sit and wait in vain.  
Along the road to Pandhari  
My heart and eyes I strain.

When shall I look upon my Lord?  
When shall I see him come?  
Of all the passing days and hours  
I count the heavy sum.

With watching long my eyelids throb,  
My limbs with sore distress,  
But my impatient heart forgets  
My body's weariness.

Sleep is no longer sweet to me;  
I care not for my bed;  
Forgotten are my house and home,  
All thirst and hunger fled.  
Says Tuka, Blest shall be the day,

Ah, soon may it betide!  
When one shall come from Pandhari  
To summon back the bride.

### Desolation

Sobs choke my throat; my eyes  
Are wet with tears,  
Still waiting for my Pandurang,  
Till he appears.

So long cast off by thee,  
My heart despairs.  
Ah, whither hast thou gone, absorbed  
In other cares?

So many tasks and cares  
Are thine, while I  
I am forgotten thus, alas,  
And left to die.

Pilgrims and saints go past  
To Pandhari,  
And many messages they bear  
From me to thee.

Who else but thee would run  
To help my need?  
O come to me, my Pandurang,  
O come with speed.

How long still must I wait,  
To see thy face?  
Thou hast forgot thy trembling child,  
Thou full of grace.

Once more remember me,  
I, Tuka, pray.  
O come to fetch thy darling home,  
Make no delay.

### Thee, Lord of Pity, I Beseech

Thee, Lord of Pity, I beseech,  
Come speedily and set me free.  
Yea, when he hears my piteous speech,  
All eager should Narayan be.

Lo, in the empty world apart  
I hearken, waiting thy footfall:  
Vitthal, thou father, mother art,  
Thou must not loiter at my call.

Thou, thou alone art left to me  
All else when weighed is vanity.  
Now, Tuka pleads, thy gift of grace complete;  
Now let mine eyes behold thy equal feet.

From The Depths

O Pandurang, this once  
 Hark to my cry,  
 For I thy servant am,  
 Thine only I.

Save me by whatso means  
 Thou best may'st deem;  
 No longer now I make  
 Or plan or scheme.

How carefully my plans  
 And schemes I wrought!  
 My falsehood and my pride  
 Bring all to nought.

One dull of wit am I,  
 Of low degree,  
 By selfishness possessed  
 And vanity.

An instant and on me  
 Ruin may fall.  
 Come to my help, O God,  
 Come to my call.

Forsake Me Not!

If far from home the poor faun roam,  
 With grief its heart will break.  
 Thus lonely I with thee not nigh  
 O do not me forsake!

Thy heart within, all, all my sin  
 Ah, hide; make no delay.  
 Eternal thou look on me now  
 In love, I, Tuka, pray.

Mother Vithoba

Ah, Pandurang, if, as men say,  
 A sea of love thou art,  
 Then wherefore dost thou so delay?  
 take me to thy heart!

I cry for thee as for the hind  
 The faun makes sore lament.  
 Nowhere its mother it can find,  
 With thirst and hunger spent.

With milk of love, ah, suckle me  
 At thy abounding breast,  
 O Mother, haste—In thee, in thee  
 My sad heart findeth rest.

### Me Miserable

Since little wit have I,  
hear my mournful cry.

Grant now, O grant to me  
That I thy feet may see.

I have no steadfastness,  
Narayan, I confess.

Have mercy, Tuka prays,  
On my unhappy case.

### Within My Heart

I know no way by which  
My faith thy feet can reach  
Nor e'er depart.

How, how can I attain  
That thou, O Lord, shall reign  
Within my heart?

Lord, I beseech thee, hear  
And grant to faith sincere,  
My heart within,

Thy gracious face to see,  
Driving afar from me  
Deceit and sin.

O come, I, Tuka, pray,  
And ever with me stay,  
Mine, mine to be.

Thy mighty hand outstretch  
And save a fallen wretch,  
Yea, even me.

### The Restless Heart

As on the bank the poor fish lies  
And gasps and writhes in pain,  
Or as a man with anxious eyes  
Seeks hidden gold in vain,—  
So is my heart distressed and cries  
To come to thee again.

Thou knowest, Lord, the agony  
Of the lost infant's wail,  
Yearning his mother's face to see.  
(How oft I tell this tale!)  
O at thy feet the mystery  
Of the dark world unveil!

The fire of this harassing thought  
Upon my bosom preys.

Why is it I am thus forgot?  
 (O, who can know thy ways?)  
 Nay, Lord, thou seest my hapless lot;  
 Have mercy, Tuka says.

### I Long To See Thy Face

I long to see thy face,  
 But ah, in me hath holiness no place.  
 By thy strength succour me,  
 So only, only I thy feet may see!  
 Though Sadhu's robes I've worn,  
 Within I'm all unshaven and unshorn.  
 Lost, lost, O God, am I,  
 Unless thou help me, Tuka,—me who cry!

### Keep Me From Vanity

Keep me from vanity  
 Keep me from pride,  
 For sure I perish if  
 I quit thy side.  
 From this deceiving world  
 How hard to flee!  
 Ah, thou, Vaikuntha's Lord,  
 Deliver me!  
 If once thy gracious face  
 I look upon,  
 The world's enticement then  
 Is past and gone.

### Aspiration

One favour grant, O God, that now by me  
 My flesh may be forgot;  
 So shall I have (for I at last have learned)  
 Bliss for my lot.

Give to my heart and all its moods a place  
 Close by thy side;  
 Break, break the bond that binds me to desire,  
 To passion, shame and pride.

Thy name to utter and the saints to know,  
 I beg but this of thee.  
 Here is no feigning, Lor; my service take  
 Of faith and purity!

### The Only Refuge

I am a mass of sin;  
 Thou art all purity;  
 Yet thou must take me as I am  
 And bear my load for me.  
 Me Death has all consumed;  
 In thee all power abides.  
 All else forsaking, at thy feet  
 Thy servant Tuka hides.

### Desolate

When thought of all but thee  
Has from me gone,  
Still by thy strength upheld  
I struggle on.

Come to me, Vitthal, come!  
For thee I wait.  
O, wherefore hast thou me  
Left desolate.

Many oppress me sore  
With cruel might;  
My very enemies  
Are day and night.

Ah come and take thy place  
At my heart's core;  
Then shall the net of ill  
Snare me no more.

### O Save Me, Save Me!

O save me, save me, Mightiest,  
Save me and set me free.  
O let the love that fills my breast  
Cling to thee lovingly.

Grant me to taste how sweet thou art;  
Grant me but this, I pray,  
And never shall my love depart  
Or turn from thee away.

Then I thy name shall magnify  
And tell thy praise abroad,  
For very love and gladness I  
Shall dance before my God.

Grant to me, Vitthal, that I rest  
Thy blessed feet beside;  
Ah, give me this, the dearest, best,  
And I am satisfied.

### Near Yet Far

There is no place, small as a sesamum,  
But thou, they say, art there.  
That deep in all this universe thou dwell'st  
Sages and saints declare.

So, I, of old thy child, in faith of this  
Come seeking help from thee.  
Thou overflow'st the world, and yet, and yet,  
Thy face I cannot see.

"Why should I meet this abject I to whom  
There is nor bound nor end?"

Is it with such a thought thou comest not,  
My father and my friend?  
Ah, what shall Tuka do that he thy feet  
May touch and tend?

### Beyond The Mountains, God

Here tower the hills of passion and of lust,—  
Far off the Infinite!  
No path I find and all impassable  
Fronts me the hostile height.

Ah, God is lost, my friend. Narayan now  
How can I e'er attain?  
Thus it appears that all my life, so dear,  
I've spent, alas, in vain.

### I Cannot Understand: I Love

Thy greatness none can comprehend  
All dumb the Vedas are.  
Forspent the powers of mortal mind;  
They cannot climb so far.  
How can I compass him whose light  
Illumes both sun and star?

The serpent of a thousand tongues  
Cannot tell all thy praise;  
Then how, poor I? Thy children we,  
Mother of loving ways!  
Within the shadow of thy grace,  
Ah, hide me, Tuka says.

### Not One But Two

Advait contents me not, but dear to me  
The service of thy feet.  
O grant me this reward! To sing of thee  
To me how sweet!

Setting us twain, lover and Lord, apart,  
This joy to me display.  
Grant it to Tuka—Lord of all thou art—  
Some day, some day.

### Man's Extremity

Ah, then, O God, the efforts all are vain  
By which I've sought thy blessed feet to gain.  
First there was loving faith, but faith I've none;  
Nowise my restless soul can I restrain.

Then pious deeds, but no good will have I  
For these; nor wealth to help the poor thereby;  
I know not how to honour Brahman guests;  
Alas! the springs of love in me are dry.

I cannot serve the guru or the saint;  
 Not mine to chant the name, with toil to faint,  
 Perform the sacred rites, renounce the world.  
 I cannot hold my senses in restraint.

My heart has never trod the pilgrim's way;  
 The vows I make I know not how to pay.  
 "Ah, God is here," I cry. Not so, not so.  
 For me distinctions have not passed away.

Therefore, I come, O God, to plead for grace,  
 I, worthy only of a servant's place.  
 No store of merit such an one requires.  
 My firm resolve is taken, Tuka says.

### Though He Slay Me

Now I submit me to thy will,  
 Whether thou save or whether kill;  
 Keep thou me near or send me hence,  
 Or plunge me in the war of sense.

Thee in my ignorance I sought,  
 Of true devotion knowing nought.  
 Little could I, a dullard, know,  
 Myself the lowest of the low.

My mind I cannot steadfast hold;  
 My senses wander uncontrolled.  
 Ah, I have sought and sought for peace.  
 In vain ; for me there's no release.

Now bring I thee a faith complete  
 And lay my life before thy feet.  
 Do thou, O God, what seemeth best;  
 In thee, in thee alone is rest.

In thee I trust, and, hapless wight,  
 Cling to thy skirts with all my might.  
 My strength is spent, I, Tuka say;  
 Now upon thee this task I lay.

### Pandurang

Who asks if spent and weary we?  
 Who else, O Pandurang, but thee?

Whom shall we tell our joy or grief?  
 Who to our thirst will bring relief?

Who else this fever will assuage?  
 Who bear us o'er the ocean's rage?

Who will our heart's desire impart  
 And clasp us to his loving heart?

What other master shall we own?  
 What helper else but thee alone?

Ah, Tuka says, thou knowest all,  
Prostrate before thy feet I fall.

### Complete Surrender

Now Pandurang I've chosen for my part,  
None, none but his to be.  
In all my thoughts he dwells, dwells in my heart,  
Sleeping and waking he.

Yea, all my being's powers before him bow;  
None other faith is aught.  
See, Tuka says, mine eyes behold him now,  
Standing all wrapt in thought.

### To Thy Dear Feet!

To thy dear feet my love I bind:  
No other longing stirs my mind.

I think of thee through days and nights,  
And so discharge my holy rites.

Nought know I but thy name alone:  
Thus to myself myself am known.

When comes at last the hour of death  
O save me, save me, Tuka saith.

### He Leadeth Me

Holding my hand thou leadest me,  
My comrade everywhere.  
As I go on and lean on thee,  
My burden thou dost bear.

If, as I go, in my distress  
I frantic words should say,  
Thou settest right my foolishness  
And tak'st my shame away.

Thus thou to me new hope dost send,  
A new world bringest in;  
Now know I every man a friend  
And all I meet my kin.

So like a happy child I play  
In thy dear world, O God,  
And everywhere—I, Tuka, say—  
Thy bliss is spread abroad.

### The Joy Of The Name

Lord, let it be that when thy name  
Into my thoughts shall come,  
My love to thee shall mount like flame,  
My lips with joy be dumb.

Filled are my eyes with happy tears,  
With rapture every limb;  
Yea, with thy love my frame appears  
Filled to the very brim.

Thus all my body's strength I'll spend  
In hymns of joyful praise;  
Thy name I'll sing nor ever end  
Through all the nights and days.

Yea, Tuka says, for ever so  
I'll do, for this is best,  
Since at the feet of saints, I know,  
Is found eternal rest.

#### Love's Captive

Bound with cords of love I go,  
By Harl captive led,  
Mind and speech and body, lo,  
To him surrendered.

He shall rule my life for he  
Is all compassionate.  
His is sole authority,  
And we his will await.

#### The Bhakta's Duty

The duty of the man of faith  
Is trust and loyalty,  
A purpose hid within his heart  
That cannot moved be.

A steadfast faith and passionless  
In Vitthal that abides,  
A faith that not an instant strays  
To any god besides.

Who that is such a one as that  
Was ever cast away?  
Never has such a tale been told,  
Never, I, Tuka, say.

#### Love Finds Out God

Thy nature is beyond the grasp  
Of human speech or thought.  
So love I've made the measure-rod,  
By which I can be taught.

Thus with the measure-rod of love  
I mete the Infinite.  
In sooth, to measure him there is  
None other means so fit.

Not Yoga's power, nor sacrifice,  
Nor fierce austerity,

Nor yet the strength of thought profound  
Hath ever found out thee.

And so, says Tuka, graciously,  
Oh Kesav, take, we pray  
Love's service that with simple hearts  
Before thy feet we lay.

### God Is Ours

God is ours, yea, ours is he,  
Soul of all the souls that be.

God is nigh without a doubt,  
Nigh to all, within, without.

God is gracious, gracious still;  
Every longing he'll fulfil.

God protects, protects his own;  
Strife and death he casteth down.

Kind is God, ah, kind indeed;  
Tuka he will guard and lead.

### One Thing I Do

I serve thee, not because  
Honour I crave;  
Nay, KeSav, for I am  
Thy slave.

Therefore to serve thy feet,—  
For this I cry;  
For naught, for naught but this  
Crave I.

To my Lord's service, see,  
One heart I've brought,  
Ever,—without, within,—  
One thought.

Thus mine appointed task  
Do I somehow;  
Whether 'tis wrong or right  
Judge thou.

### He Knows Our Needs

Unwearied he bears up the universe;  
How light a burden I!  
Does not his care the frog within the stone  
With food supply?

The bird, the creeping thing, lays up no store;  
This great One knows their need.  
And if I, Tuka, cast on him my load,  
Will not his mercy heed?

### In Him Abide

The mother knows her child, his secret heart,  
His joy or woe.  
Who holds the blind man's hand alone can tell  
Where he desires to go.  
The timid suppliant at his champion's back  
Can safely hide.  
Who only clings, see, the strong swimmer bears  
To the stream's further side.  
Vitthal, says Tuka, knows our every need;  
Only in him abide.

### The Boldness Of Faith

Launch upon the sea of life;  
Fear not aught that thou mayst meet.  
Stout the ship of Pandurang;  
Not a wave shall wet thy feet.  
Many saints await thee there,  
Standing on the further shore:  
Haste, says Tuka, haste away,  
Follow those who've gone before.

### Beata Culpa

How couldst thou e'er have cleansed me,  
But for my sinful plight?  
So first come I, and then thy grace,  
O mercy infinite.

The magic stone was nothing worth,  
Till iron brought it fame.  
Did no one by the Wish Tree wish,  
Whence would it get its name?

### The Snare Of Pride

None skilled as I in craft of subtle speech;  
But, ah, the root of things I cannot reach.

Therefore, O Lord of Pandharl, my heart  
Is sore distressed. Who knows my inward part?

I proud became from honour that men paid  
To me, and thus my upward growth was stayed.

Alas! The way of truth I cannot see,  
Held fast by Self in dark captivity.

### I Am Poor And Needy

No deeds I've done nor thoughts I've thought;  
Save as thy servant, I am nought.

Guard me, O God, and O, control  
The tumult of my restless soul.  
Ah, do not, do not cast on me  
The guilt of mine iniquity.

My countless sins, I, Tuka, say,  
Upon thy loving heart I lay.

### A Blind Leader Of The Blind

I have grown very wise  
In mine own foolish eyes,  
But faith has fled.  
My life is vain indeed;  
But worse than rage and greed  
Dwell in faith's stead.  
The world's possessed by sin  
And envy reigns within  
The human breast;  
And I shall teach mankind,  
Though I'm myself as blind  
As all the rest.

### The Pride of Knowledge

Though I'm a man of lowly birth  
The saints have magnified my worth.

And so within my heart to hide  
Has come the great destroyer, pride.

In my fond heart the fancy dwells  
That I am wise and no one else.

O, save me, save me, Tuka prays;  
Spent like the wind are all my days.

### The Unveiling Of Love

Enlighten thou mine eyes  
Making me lowly wise;  
Thy love to me unveil.  
Then in the world I'll be  
As, from all soilure free,  
The lotus pure and pale.

Whether men praise or jeer,  
Hearing I shall not hear;  
Like the rapt yogi I.  
To me the world shall seem  
Like visions of a dream  
That, with our waking, fly.

Till we that state attain  
All, all our toil is vain,  
I, Tuka, testify.

### The Haven

Ah, wherefore so unkind?  
Let my sad breast  
At the hid centre find  
It's place of rest.

No wind of good or ill  
Shall enter there,  
But peace, supremely still,  
Supremely fair.

To me the flux of things  
Brings sore distress;  
The world's mutation brings  
But heaviness.

Therefore I, Tuka, cry,  
Clinging thy feet,  
"Break, break my 'me' and 'my,'  
My vain conceit."

#### Weariness

Shall we, sham saints, the world beguile  
Glutting our belly's greed the while?

O tell thy thought, if this it be,  
For I am weary utterly.

Shall we the poet's mood rehearse  
And string together endless verse?

Shall Tuka ope his shop again  
And, O Narayan, ruin men?

#### God's Counterfeit

Is there a man who says of all,  
Whether upon them sorrow fall,  
Or whether joy— "These, these are mine"?  
That is the saint: mark well the sign.  
God dwells in him. The good man's breast  
Is of all men's the tenderest.  
Is any helpless or undone?  
Be he a slave, be he a son:—  
On all alike he mercy shows,  
On all an equal love bestows.

How oft must I this tale repeat!  
That man is God's own counterfeit.

#### Self-Surrender

My self I've rendered up to thee;  
I've cast it from me utterly.

Now here before thee, Lord, I stand,  
Attentive to thy least command.  
The self within me now is dead,  
And thou enthroned in its stead.

Yea, this I, Tuka, testify,  
No longer now is "me" or "my."

Dying To Live

Before my eyes my dead self lies;  
 O, bliss beyond compare!  
 Joy fills the worlds, and I rejoice,  
 The soul of all things there.

My selfish bonds are loosed, and now  
 I reach forth far and free.  
 Gone is the soil of birth and death,  
 The petty sense of "me."

Narayan's grace gave me this place,  
 Where I in faith abide.  
 Now, Tuka says, my task I've done  
 And spread the message wide.

The Root Of Longing

Who is he would act the true gosavl's part?  
 Let him dig the root of longing from his heart.  
 If he dare not, in his pleasures let him stay  
 Folly were it should he choose another way.  
 For when longing he hath slain victoriously,  
 Only then shall he from all come forth set free.  
 Yea, says Tuka, does thy heart for union thirst?  
 Crush—be sure!—the seed of longing in thee first.

The Secret Of Peace

Calm is life's crown; all other joy beside  
 Is only pain.  
 Hold thou it fast, thou shalt, whate'er betide,  
 The further shore attain.

When passions rage and we are wrung with woe  
 And sore distress,  
 Comes calm, and then—yea, Tuka knows it—lo!  
 The fever vanishes.

The Fellowship Of Saints

What enters fire, its former nature lost,  
 Fire to itself transforms.  
 Touched by the magic stone, lo, iron now  
 Gold that the world adorns.  
 Into the Ganga flow the little streams,  
 With the great Ganga blent.  
 Nay, e'en its neighbour trees the sandal tree  
 Infects with its sweet scent.  
 So to the feet of saints is Tuka bound,  
 Linked in a blest content.

The Simple Path

Diverse men's thoughts as are their vanities,  
 Distract not thou thy mind to follow these.  
 Cling to the faith that thou hast learned, the love  
 That, coming, filled thee with its fragrances.

For Hari's worship is a mother,—rest  
It is and peace, shade for the weariest.  
Why, then, who ties a stone about his neck  
And drowns himself, is but a fool confessed.

### The Way Of Love

The learned in Brahma I shall make to long  
With new desire; those once so safe and strong,  
Set free, I bring back glad to bondage. So,  
They are made one with Brahma by a song.  
God is their debtor now, O glad release.  
I'll bid the weary pilgrim take his ease.  
The proud ascetic may forsake his pride.  
Away with offerings and charities!  
By love and true devotion life's high goal  
I'll help men to attain—yea, Brahma's soul.  
“O, happy we, who Tuka's face have seen”—  
So men will say and Tuka they'll extol.

### The Thief

I came to him in woful plight;  
He, gracious, girded me with might.  
His house I entered unaware  
And stole the treasure hidden there.  
So I have wrought a deep design  
That all his riches shall be mine.  
I kissed his feet and then by stealth  
I, Tuka, robbed him of his wealth.

### The Traveller

Let thy thought at all times be,—  
Over life's tempestuous sea  
We must fare.  
Soon the body perisheth;  
Life is swallowed up of Death.  
O beware!  
Seek the fellowship of saints;  
Seek, until thy spirit faints,  
Heaven's ways!  
Let not dust make blind thine eyes,  
Dust of worldly enterprise,  
Tuka says.

### By Faith Alone

In God, in God—forget him not!—  
Do thou thy refuge find.  
Let every other plan or plot  
Go with the wind!  
Why toil for nought? Wake, wake from sleep!  
By learning's load weighed down,  
Thou in the world's abysses deep  
Art like to drown.

O, flee from thence. Only by faith  
 Canst thou to God attain.  
 And all thy knowledge, Tuka saith,  
 Will prove in vain.

### A Steadfast Mind

Honour, dishonour that men may pay,  
 Bundle them up and throw them away.

Where there is ever a steadfast mind,  
 There thou the vision of God shalt find.

Whereso the fountains of peace abide,  
 Stayed is the passage of time and tide.

Calm thou the impulse that stirs thy breast;  
 Surely, says Tuka, a small request.

### The Name Of The Living One

Hear, O God, my supplication,—  
 Do not grant me Liberation.

‘Tis what men so much desire;  
 Yet how much this joy is higher!

Home of every Vaisnavite,  
 See, with glow of love alight!

By their door with folded hands  
 Full Attainment waiting stands.

Heavenly joy is not for me,  
 For it passeth speedily;

But that name how strangely dear  
 That in songs of praise we hear!

Yea, thou, dark as clouds that lower,  
 Knowest not thine own name’s power.

Ah, says Tuka, it is this  
 Makes our lives so full of bliss.

### The Dedicated Life

Ah, wherefore fast or wherefore go  
 To solitude apart?  
 Whether thou joy or sorrow know  
 Have God within thy heart.

If in his mother’s arms he be  
 The child knows nougat amiss.  
 Cast out, yea, cast out utterly  
 All other thought than this.

Love not the world nor yet forsake  
 Its gifts in fear and hate.  
 Thy life to God an offering make  
 And to him dedicate.

Nay, Tjukasays, ask not again,  
 Waking old doubts anew.  
 Whatever else is taught by men,  
 None other word is true.

### The Inward Purpose

To keep the Holy Order pure,—  
 This ever is my purpose sure.

The Vedic statutes I proclaim;  
 To imitate the saints my aim.

For, with no firm resolve within,  
 To quit the world is deadly sin.

Vile he who does so, Tuka says,—  
 Evil the worship that he pays.

### The Bhakta's Task

When from Vaikuntha forth we came  
 This of our coming was the aim—  
 That what the sages taught we by our lives proclaim.

Since filled the world with sedge and weed,  
 To sweep the paths our lowly meed,  
 Trod by the saints, and on their sacred scraps 3 to feed.

Gone the old wisdom, and instead  
 Mere words that wide have ruin spread.  
 Lustful men's minds, the way to God quite vanished.

Beat we the drum of Love, whose din  
 Brings terror to this age of sin.  
 Hail, Tuka bids, with joy the victory we win.

### Maya

If the river be a mirage that I see  
 Then what need for me  
 Of a ford?

If the children buy and sell in make-believe,  
 Who should joy or grieve,  
 Gain or lose?

Are not maidens still in kinship just the same,  
 Though they wedded in a game,  
 Girl with girl?

Joy or sorrow that we meet with in our dreams  
 To us waking seems  
 Nothing real.

So, says Tuka, births and dying,—nought is true.  
 Bondage, freedom too,  
 Weary me.

### The World Passeth Away

Who dares call aught his own  
 As swiftly speed the days?  
 Time keeps the fatal score,  
 And not a moment strays.

Hair, ears, and eyes grow old,  
 As, dullard, grow they must;  
 The best is nigh thee, yet  
 Thou fill'st thy mouth with dust.

Dying and yet thou buildst  
 As for eternity!  
 Nay, haste to Pandurang!  
 'Tis Tuka says it: flee!

### The Way Of Death

Ah, friend, beware; see how they bear  
 The dead men to the ghaut.  
 To God on high with agony  
 Call and cease not.

Though 'mong the dead not numbered,  
 Within thy scrip is death.  
 Fill up, fill up with good thy cup,  
 While thou hast breath.

List what I say;—the narrow way  
 Is dense with dying men;  
 'Mong them at last thy lot is cast.  
 No succour then.

### The Night Cometh

Lo, Death draws nigh; and what know I  
 Of rite, or vow, or prayer?  
 To God alone who guards his own  
 I flee and hide me there.

The tally's score grows more and more,  
 Then night and all is done.  
 Hear Tuka say, dear every day  
 From that grim robber won.

### 'Tis All For Naught

With whatso skill he may his verse refine,  
 'Tis all for naught without the breath divine.

Let him put on the holy beggar's dress;  
 'Tis all for naught without unworldliness.

He paints the sun or moon upon a wall;  
 'Tis all for naught without the light of all.

O, he may play, of course, a soldier's part;  
 'Tis all for naught without a warrior heart.

So, Tuka says, they've danced and songs they've sung,  
 'Tis naught without the love of Pandurang.

### The Divine Inspiration

'Tis not I who speak so feately;  
 All my words my Lover's are.  
 Hark, Salunki singing sweetly,  
 Taught, as I, by One afar.  
 How could I, abject, achieve it?  
 'Tis the all-upholding One.  
 Deep his skill, who can conceive it?  
 He can make the lame to run.

### Drowning Men

For men's saving I make known  
 These devices—this alone  
 My desire.  
 Can my heart unmoved be  
 When before my eyes I see  
 Drowning men?  
 I shall see them with my eyes  
 When their plight they realise  
 At the last.

### Without And Within

Soon as the season of Simhasth comes in,  
 The barber and the priest—what wealth they win!  
 Thousands of sins may lurk within his heart,  
 If only he will shave his head and chin!  
 What is shaved off is gone, but what else, pray?  
 What sign that sin is gone? His evil way  
 Is still unchanged. Yea, without faith and love  
 All is but vanity, I, Tuka, say.

### And Have Not Charity

Your heart from rage and lust has nowise turned  
 For all the rice and sesamum you've burned.  
 You've toiled for naught with learned words whose fruit  
 Is vain display—and Pandurang you've spurned.

By pilgrimage and grim austerity  
 Only your pride has grown; your "I" and "me"  
 Swell with your alms; the secret, Tuka says,  
 You've missed: your acts are sinful utterly.

### The Mendicant

Lust binds the preacher, fear  
The doubting hearts of those his words who hear.

He knows not what he sings:  
His mouth he opes for what each comer brings.

A greedy cat, he steals  
From door to door, begging from men his meals.

What Tuka says is true;  
The sack is empty and the measure too.

### The Proud Advaitist

To such pay thou no heed: the words he saith  
Are only chaff, empty of loving faith.  
He praises high *Advait* which only brings  
To speaker and to hearer pain and scaithe.

He fills his belly saying, "I am Brahm."  
Waste not thy words upon him; shamed and dumb  
Is he, blasphemer, when he meets the saints.  
Who scorns God's love Tuka calls vilest scum.

### The Hypocrite: I

His speech—the hypocrite's—is well and fair,  
But all his thought is how he can ensnare.

He outwardly appears a godly man;  
In truth he is a very ruffian.

His forehead-mark, his beads, a saint denote,  
But in the darkness he would cut your throat.

Ay, Tuka. says, a very scoundrel he;  
The pains of Yama wait him certainly.

### The Hypocrite: II

Possessed with devils they grow long their hair.  
No saints are they, nor trace of God they bear.  
They tell of omens to a gaping crowd.  
Rogues are they, Tuka says; Govind's not there.

# Bibliography

---

- Boccaccio, Giovanni. "Introduction: To the Ladies." *Stories of Boccaccio (The Decameron): translated from the Italian into English; with eleven original etching.* de luxe ed. Trans. Leopold, Flameng. Philadelphia: G. Barrie, 1881. HathiTrust. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015.
- Boccaccio, Giovanni. *The Decameron of Giovanni Boccaccio*. Trans. John Payne. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015.
- Chaucer, Geoffrey. *The Canterbury Tales*. Ed. and Trans. Gerard, NeCastro. Machias: University of Maine at Machias, 2007. eChaucer. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015.
- Chaucer, Geoffrey. *The Parliament of Fowls*. Ed. and Trans. Gerard, NeCastro. Machias: University of Maine at Machias, 2007. eChaucer. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015.
- "China." *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition*. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 20 Feb. 2015.
- "Chinese Literature." Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 20 Feb. 2015.
- Chrétien de Troyes. "Lancelot, the Knight of the Cart." Chretien de Troyes: Arthurian Romances. Trans. W.W. Comfort. London: Everyman's Library, 1914. Camelot On-line. n.d. Web. 29 Jul. 2015
- Dante, Alighieri. *The Divine Comedy of Dante Alighieri: The Italian Text with a Translation in English Blank Verse and a Commentary*. Vol. 1 English version. Trans. Courtney Langdon. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1918. *The Online Library of Liberty*. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015
- "Du Fu." *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition*. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 20 Feb. 2015.
- Firdusi. "Shah Nameh." Persian Literature: Comprising the Shah Nameh, the Rubaiyat, the Divan, and the Gulistan. Vol. 1. Trans. James Atkinson. 26 Nov. 2003 Web. 28 Jul. 2015
- Guanzhong, Luo. The Romance of the Three Kingdoms. Trans. C.H. Brewitt-Taylor. Adelaide: The University of Adelaide, 2005. The University of Adelaide. n.d. Web. 29 Jul. 2015
- "Hinduism (religion)." *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition*. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 21 Feb. 2015.
- "India." *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition*. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 21 Feb. 2015.
- "Indian Poetry after Islam." *The Norton Anthology of World Literature*. Eds. Martin Puchner, et al. Shorter 3rd ed. New York: Norton, 2013. 1585. Print.
- "Islam." *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition*. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 30 Jan. 2015.
- "Japan." *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition*. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 15 Feb. 2015.
- "Japan's Classical Age." *The Norton Anthology of World Literature*. Eds. Martin Puchner, et al. Shorter 3rd ed. New York: Norton, 2013. 1345-53. Print.

- “Japanese Literature.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 15 Feb. 2015.
- “The Lay of the Cid”. *Semicentennial Publications of the University of California: 1868-1918*. Trans. R. Selden Rose and Leonard Bacon. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1919. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015
- “Li Bai.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 20 Feb. 2015.
- Li, Bai. The Poet Li Po A.D. 701-762. Trans. Arthur Waley. London: East and West LTD., 1919. n.d. Web. 29 Jul. 2015.
- “Li Bo.” *The Norton Anthology of World Literature*. Eds. Martin Puchner, et al. Shorter 3rd ed. New York: Norton, 2013. 1311-12. Print.
- “Luo Guanzhong.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 20 Feb. 2015.
- “Marco Polo.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 19 Feb. 2015.
- Marie de France. *Old-world Love Stories from the lays of Marie de France, & other mediaeval romances & legends*. Trans. Eugene Mason. London: J.M. Dent, 1913. HathiTrust. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015
- “Monogatari.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 14 Feb. 2015.
- “Mughal dynasty.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 21 Feb. 2015.
- “Noh Theatre.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 14 Feb. 2015.
- Polo, Marco. The Travels of Marco Polo. Trans. Hugh Murray. New York: Harper & Brothers, 1858. HathiTrust. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015.
- “The Quran.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 30 Jan. 2015.
- The Qur'an with Surah Introductions and Appendices. Saheeh International Translation. Ed. A.B. al-Mehri. Birmingham: Maktabah Booksellers and Publishers, 2009. The Internet Archive. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015.“The Tale of Genji.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc.*, 2015. Web. 14 Feb. 2015.
- Rumi, Jalāl ad-Dīn. “Divani Shamsi Tabriz.” The Persian Mystics. Wisdom of the East. Ed. F. Hadland Davis. New York: E.P. Dutton and Company, 1908. The Internet Archive. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015.
- .“I to Myself am Unknown.” Flowers from Persian Poets. Vol. I. Eds. Nathan Haskell Dole and Belle M. Walker. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell & Co., 1901. The Internet Archive. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015
- .“Masnavi.” The Persian Mystics. Wisdom of the East. Ed. F. Hadland Davis. New York: E.P. Dutton and Company, 1908. The Internet Archive. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015
- Sa’di, Shaikh. The Rose Garden of Sa’di. The Wisdom of the East. Eds. L. Crammer-Byng and Dr. S.A. Kapadia. London: J. Murray, 1905. HathiTrust. n.d. Web. 28 Jul. 2015
- Seami, Motokiyo. The Nō Plays of Japan. Trans. Arthur Waley. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1922. n.d. Web. 29 Jul. 2015.
- “Shah Nameh.” Persian Literature: Comprising the Shah Nameh, the Rubaiyat, the Divan, and the Gulistan. Vol. 1. 26 Nov. 2003 Web. 28 Jul. 2015.
- Shikib, Murasaki. “Genji Monogatari.” Trans. Suyematz Kenchio. Japanese Literature: Including Selections from Genji Monogatari and Classical Poetry and Drama of Japan. Ed. Epiphanius Wilson. London: Colonial, 1900. n.d. Web. 29 Jul. 2015.

“South Asian Arts.” *Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition*. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 21 Feb. 2015.

The Thousand and One Nights. Vol. 1. Ed. Edward Stanley Poole. Trans. Edward William Lane. London: Chatto and Windus, 1912. 3 Nov. 2010. Web. 29 Jul. 2015.

“The Thousand and On Nights.” Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online Academic Edition. Encyclopædia Britannica Inc., 2015. Web. 30 Jan. 2015.

Tukārām. “Tukārām.” Psalms of Marāthā Saint: One Hundred and Eight Hymns Translated from the Marathi. Trans. Macnicol, Nicol. Calcutta: Assiation Press, 1920. HathiTrust. n.d. Web. 29 Jul. 2015.

# Appendix

---

## URL LINKS FOR ORIGINAL TEXTS:

*Ballads of the Cid*

<http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=njp.32101068154143;view=1up;seq=20#view=1up;seq=20>

“Divani Shamsi Tabriz.” *The Persian Mystics*

<https://archive.org/details/persianmystics00davigoog>

“Genji Monogatari.” *Japanese Literature*

Google search: “Genji Monogatari.”

“I to Myself am Unknown.” *Flowers from Persian Poets*

<https://archive.org/details/flowersfrompers00sagoog>

“Lancelot, the Knight of the Cart”

<http://www.heroofcamelot.com/docs/Lancelot-Knight-of-the-Cart.pdf>

“Masnavi.” *The Persian Mystics*

<https://archive.org/details/persianmystics00davigoog>

“Shah Nameh.” *Persian Literature*

Google search: “Shah Nameh.” *Persian Literature*

*Old-world Love Stories from the lays of Marie de France, & other mediaeval romances & legends.*

<http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=njp.32101072852633;view=1up;seq=9>

*The Canterbury Tales*

<http://machias.edu/faculty/necastro/chaucer/translation/ct/01gppt.txt>

<http://machias.edu/faculty/necastro/chaucer/translation/ct/13frantpt.txt>

<http://machias.edu/faculty/necastro/chaucer/translation/ct/07wbtpt.txt>

<http://machias.edu/faculty/necastro/chaucer/translation/ct/03miltpt.txt>

*The Decameron*

<http://catalog.hathitrust.org/Record/008672778>

Google search: *The Decameron*

*The Divine Comedy*

<http://oll.libertyfund.org/people/dante-alighieri>

*The Nō Plays of Japan*

Google search: *The Nō Plays of Japan*

*The Parliament of Fowls*

<http://machias.edu/faculty/necastro/chaucer/translation/pf/pfpt.txt>

*The Poet Li Po*

Google search: *The Poet Li Po*

*The Qur'an*

[https://archive.org/details/Quran\\_20140710](https://archive.org/details/Quran_20140710)

*The Romance of the Three Kingdoms*

<https://ebooks.adelaide.edu.au/l/literature/chinese/romance-of-the-three-kingdoms/>

*The Rose Garden of Sa'di*

<http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=mdp.39015024274873;view=1up;seq=7>

*The Thousand and One Nights*

Google search: *The Thousand and One Nights*

*The Travels of Marco Polo*

<http://catalog.hathitrust.org/Record/006800127>

Tukārām Selected Poems. *Psalms of Marāthā Saint*

<http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=uc2.ark:/13960/t8jd4rp72;view=1up;seq=18>

#### URL LINKS FOR IMAGES:

Image 5.1 THE WORKS OF GEOFFREY CHAUCER FRONTISPICE

[https://ia601804.us.archive.org/BookReader/BookReaderImages.php?zip=/13/items/worksogeoffreyc00chau\\_0/39999063785610\\_jp2.zip&file=39999063785610\\_jp2/39999063785610\\_0011.jp2&scale=4.672897196261682&rotate=0](https://ia601804.us.archive.org/BookReader/BookReaderImages.php?zip=/13/items/worksogeoffreyc00chau_0/39999063785610_jp2.zip&file=39999063785610_jp2/39999063785610_0011.jp2&scale=4.672897196261682&rotate=0)

Image 5.2 Parliament of Fowls

[https://archive.org/stream/worksgeoffreyc00chau\\_0/39999063785610#page/n323/mode/2up](https://archive.org/stream/worksgeoffreyc00chau_0/39999063785610#page/n323/mode/2up)

Image 5.3 Canterbury Tales Title Page

[https://ia601804.us.archive.org/BookReader/BookReaderImages.php?zip=/13/items/worksogeoffreyc00chau\\_0/39999063785610\\_jp2.zip&file=39999063785610\\_jp2/39999063785610\\_0012.jp2&scale=6&rotate=0](https://ia601804.us.archive.org/BookReader/BookReaderImages.php?zip=/13/items/worksogeoffreyc00chau_0/39999063785610_jp2.zip&file=39999063785610_jp2/39999063785610_0012.jp2&scale=6&rotate=0)

Image 5.4 Hengwrt Manuscript

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/General\\_Prologue#/media/File:HengwrtChaucerOpening.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/General_Prologue#/media/File:HengwrtChaucerOpening.jpg)

Image 5.5 The Franklin's Tale

[https://archive.org/stream/worksgeoffreyc00chau\\_0/39999063785610#page/n171/mode/2up](https://archive.org/stream/worksgeoffreyc00chau_0/39999063785610#page/n171/mode/2up)

Image 5.6 The Wife of Bath Prologue

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The\\_Wife\\_of\\_Bath%27s\\_Tale#/media/File:Wife-of-Bath-ms.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Wife_of_Bath%27s_Tale#/media/File:Wife-of-Bath-ms.jpg)

Image 5.7 Giovanni Boccaccio and Florentines Who Have Fled From the Plague

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Giovanni\\_Boccaccio#/media/File:Giovanni\\_Boccaccio\\_and\\_Florentines\\_who\\_have\\_fled\\_from\\_the\\_plague.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Giovanni_Boccaccio#/media/File:Giovanni_Boccaccio_and_Florentines_who_have_fled_from_the_plague.jpg)

Image 5.8 Boccacio by Morghen

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Giovanni\\_Boccaccio#/media/File:Boccacio\\_by\\_Morghen.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Giovanni_Boccaccio#/media/File:Boccacio_by_Morghen.jpg)

Image 5.9 A Tale from the Decameron

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The\\_Decameron#/media/File:Waterhouse\\_decameron.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Decameron#/media/File:Waterhouse_decameron.jpg)

Image 5.10 Decameron

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The\\_Decameron#/media/File:Decameron1.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Decameron#/media/File:Decameron1.jpg)

Image 5.11 Portrait of Dante Alighieri

<http://uploads6.wikiart.org/images/gustave-dore/portrait-of-dante-alighieri-1860.jpg>

Image 5.12 Inferno: Canto One

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630012.jpg>

Image 5.13 Inferno: Canto Two

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630013.jpg>

Image 5.14 Inferno: Canto Twenty-Six

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630033.jpg>

Image 5.15 Purgatorio: Canto One

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630041.jpg>

Image 5.16 Purgatorio: Canto Twenty-Two

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630052.jpg>

Image 5.17 Purgatorio: Canto Thirty-One

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630058.jpg>

Image 5.18 Paradiso: Canto Four

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630065.jpg>

Image 5.19 Paradiso: Canto Twenty

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630074.jpg>

Image 5.20 Paradiso: Canto Thirty-Three

<http://dante-staging.cdrs.columbia.edu/wp-content/uploads/2014/09/1401630088.jpg>

Image 5.21 Marie de France

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Marie\\_de\\_France#/media/File:Marie\\_de\\_France\\_1.tif](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Marie_de_France#/media/File:Marie_de_France_1.tif)

Image 5.22 The Lai of Sir Launfal

<http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/imgsrv/image?id=njp.32101072852633;seq=84;width=680>

Image 5.23 German Woodcut

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shapeshifting#/media/File:GermanWoodcut1722.jpg>

Image 5.24 The Lai of the Honeysuckle

<http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/imgsrv/image?id=njp.32101072852633;seq=133;width=680>

Image 5.25 Idylls of the King

[https://no.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lancelot#/media/File:Idylls\\_of\\_the\\_King\\_20.jpg](https://no.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lancelot#/media/File:Idylls_of_the_King_20.jpg)

Image 5.26 Chrétien de Troyes

[https://pl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chr%C3%A9tien\\_de\\_Troyes#/media/File:Chr%C3%A9tien\\_de\\_Troyes.jpg](https://pl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chr%C3%A9tien_de_Troyes#/media/File:Chr%C3%A9tien_de_Troyes.jpg)

Image 5.27 Knights' Tournament

[https://pl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chr%C3%A9tien\\_de\\_Troyes#/media/File:Lancelot-Graal.jpg](https://pl.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chr%C3%A9tien_de_Troyes#/media/File:Lancelot-Graal.jpg)

Image 5.28 Statue of the Cid

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/El\\_Cid#/media/File:Burgos-Estatua\\_del\\_Cid.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/El_Cid#/media/File:Burgos-Estatua_del_Cid.jpg)

Image 5.29 The Cid's Signature

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/El\\_Cid#/media/File:Firma\\_del\\_Cid.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/El_Cid#/media/File:Firma_del_Cid.jpg)

Image 5.30 Jura de Santa Gadea

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/El\\_Cid#/media/File:Jura\\_de\\_Santa\\_Gadea.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/El_Cid#/media/File:Jura_de_Santa_Gadea.jpg)

Image 5.31 The Travels of Marco Polo

<http://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=wu.89097014351;view=1up;seq=11#view=1up;seq=11>

Image 6.1 Saadi in a Rose Garden

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gulistan\\_%28book%29#/media/File:Sadi\\_in\\_a\\_Rose\\_garden.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gulistan_%28book%29#/media/File:Sadi_in_a_Rose_garden.jpg)

Image 6.2 The Qu'ran

[https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:CBL\\_Quran.jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:CBL_Quran.jpg)

Image 6.3 Molavi

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumi#/media/File:Molana.jpg>

Image 6.4 Jalal al-Din Rumi Mathnawi-i Ma'navi

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Masnawi#/media/File:JALAL\\_AL-%E2%80%93DIN\\_MUHAMMAD\\_RUMI\\_MATHNAVI-I\\_MA-%E2%80%99NAVI1.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Masnawi#/media/File:JALAL_AL-%E2%80%93DIN_MUHAMMAD_RUMI_MATHNAVI-I_MA-%E2%80%99NAVI1.jpg)

Image 6.5 Masnavi

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Masnavi#/media/File:Turkey\\_Konya049.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Masnavi#/media/File:Turkey_Konya049.jpg)

Image 6.6 Statue of Ferdowsi

[http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Statue\\_of\\_Ferdowsi\\_in\\_Rome.JPG](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Statue_of_Ferdowsi_in_Rome.JPG)

Image 6.7 Ferdowsi and the Three Ghaznavid Court Poets

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ferdowsi#/media/File:Courtpoets1532max.jpg>

Image 6.8 Sheherazade and Sultan Schariar

[http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ferdinand\\_Keller\\_-\\_Scheherazade\\_und\\_Sultan\\_Schariar\\_\(1880\).jpg](http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ferdinand_Keller_-_Scheherazade_und_Sultan_Schariar_(1880).jpg)

Image 6.9 The Story of Seyf ol-Molûk and Badî` ol-Jamâl

<https://www.flickr.com/photos/e-codices/11229348853/in/photolist-9D1tvT-9D4pjf-8cawd3-8QN6m3-9Mg6Vj-9Mfx5u-9Mg4Wd-9Mg7Nm-9MdfP6-9MfZgh-9MfYhu-jDJvzb-jDKuat-jDMBtd-jDLiqk-jDLcya-9Md-dWp-9MdexT-9MdfoV-7Td8NU-dpMGcA-92TWW9-i7imbZ-72J6rM-brHsqW-7oq6Q7-nKpPRA-ggGrt9-ggGAWQ-egRGxJ-ouMEn1-7YtKkt-5erbtB-9y18dL-83Aak7-8xxvK2-rVVPSi-dxd21d-dxcUEY-dxcNj1-kA9RF-q-ggGw5V-ggGfAC-ggGTcT-ggGvhU-ggGux7-ggGrXM-ggGcqQ-ggGqzB-ggGPdR/>

Image 7.1 Kublai Khan

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yuan\\_dynasty#/media/File:Qubilai\\_Setsen\\_Khaan.JPG](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yuan_dynasty#/media/File:Qubilai_Setsen_Khaan.JPG)

Image 7.2 Eighty Seven Celestials

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tang\\_dynasty#/media/File:EightySevenCelestials3.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tang_dynasty#/media/File:EightySevenCelestials3.jpg)

Image 7.3 Li Bai in Stroll

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Li\\_Bai#/media/File:LiBai.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Li_Bai#/media/File:LiBai.jpg)

Image 7.4 Going Up to Sun Terrace

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Li\\_Bai#/media/File:Libai\\_shangyangtai.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Li_Bai#/media/File:Libai_shangyangtai.jpg)

Image 7.5 Peach Garden Ceremony

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Romance\\_of\\_the\\_Three\\_Kingdoms#/media/File:Peach\\_garden\\_ceremony.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Romance_of_the_Three_Kingdoms#/media/File:Peach_garden_ceremony.jpg)

Image 7.6 Three Brothers

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Romance\\_of\\_the\\_Three\\_Kingdoms#/media/File:Three\\_Brothers.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Romance_of_the_Three_Kingdoms#/media/File:Three_Brothers.jpg)

Image 8.1 Byōdō-in's Phoenix Hall

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heian\\_period#/media/File:Byodo-in\\_Uji02pbs3400.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heian_period#/media/File:Byodo-in_Uji02pbs3400.jpg)

Image 8.2 Taira no Atsumori

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Taira\\_no\\_Atsumori#/media/File:Taira\\_no\\_Atsumori.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Taira_no_Atsumori#/media/File:Taira_no_Atsumori.jpg)

Image 8.3 Noh Stage

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Noh#/media/File:Noh-stage.png>

Image 8.4 Murasaki Shikibu

[https://hu.wikipedia.org/wiki/Muraszaki\\_Sikibu#/media/File:MurasakiShikibu.jpg](https://hu.wikipedia.org/wiki/Muraszaki_Sikibu#/media/File:MurasakiShikibu.jpg)

Image 8.5 Tale of Genji Toyokuni Utagawa Print

[https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tale\\_of\\_Genji\\_Toyokuni\\_Utagawa\\_print.jpg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tale_of_Genji_Toyokuni_Utagawa_print.jpg)

Image 9.1 Tukaram Leaves for Vaikuntha, Supreme Abode of God Vishnu

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tukaram#/media/File:Tukaram\\_print.jpg](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tukaram#/media/File:Tukaram_print.jpg)